

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08245846 8



Digitized by Google



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100













THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



*Henry Lichtenstein.*

*Painted by Henry Delmege, South Street, London.*

*Alfred Southey - 1810*

**TRAVELS**

IN

**SOUTHERN AFRICA,**

IN THE YEARS 1803, 1804, 1805, AND 1806,

BY

**HENRY LICHTENSTEIN,**

DOCTOR IN MEDICINE AND PHILOSOPHY, AND PROFESSOR OF NATURAL HISTORY IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN; MEMBER OF SEVERAL LEARNED SOCIETIES; AND  
FORMERLY IN THE DUTCH SERVICE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

---

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN,

BY

**ANNE PLUMPTRE.**

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR HENRY COLBURN,  
ENGLISH AND FOREIGN PUBLIC LIBRARY, CONDUIT-STREET;  
GEORGE GOLDIE, EDINBURGH; AND JOHN CUMMINGS, DUBLIN.

1812.

WIOY WEM  
ALERT  
WABOLI

WIOY WEM  
ALERT

E. Cassin's Printer, Well-Street, London.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE first Part of my Travels in Southern Africa is here presented to the public. It does not appear without considerable apprehensions on my part, from a conviction that the book is far from being as perfect as I could wish; but I also cannot help entertaining a confident hope that it contains much matter which will be found of real utility; in any case, I can safely affirm that it has been compiled with the greatest care, and with a strict regard to truth. I consider the latter quality so much as the first requisite in a book of travels, that I rest my highest claim to public favour upon this ground, and desire nothing so much as that the reader may take the work into his hand with the firmest reliance upon my veracity. Deeply impressed with this idea, it was once my intention that a principal object in my Preface should be to speak of myself, in hopes that by making the reader acquainted with my modes of thinking, and my manner of observing things, as well as by giving a short sketch of my history, I might obtain the confidence I wish. It is, however, so difficult for any one to form a just judgment of himself, and concealed vanity is so apt to appear obliquely through all our efforts to preserve an appearance of modesty and humility, that upon mature consideration I determined rather to leave my friends and my book to speak for me. I rest then in the hope that my endeavours to make them partakers in my own firm and inward conviction, upon the various matters on which I treat, will not be mistaken.

I have for the same reason avoided all attempts to embellish my descriptions, lest they might endanger the throwing an improper shade over the whole of the picture; though I am ready to acknowledge that some external ornaments arranged with taste might have rendered the whole more agreeable and attractive. My Travels may therefore possibly be thought barren

of rare adventures and extraordinary occurrences; but if so, this advantage will be derived from it, that the few which are recorded will appear the more striking. The charm, however, derived from such descriptions, particularly if the writer in his manner of giving them derives much assistance from his own fancy, must, to sensible minds, be of little value, in comparison with endeavours to detail the simple truth in a clear, natural, and easy style. In my own case it has cost me the less to sacrifice imagination to truth, since I am not by nature desirous of coming forward as the hero of strange and romantic adventures.

I am well aware that this barrenness of ornament is not without its disadvantages. He who would seek to represent every thing in its most natural colours, divested as much as possible of whatever approaches to the marvellous, and who is desirous that this should be fully understood by his readers, will find himself sometimes constrained to enter into minute details nearly allied to prolixity. But too much conciseness has always to a certain degree the appearance of want of sincerity, as if by the hasty manner in which the subject is treated, the writer hopes the more effectually to escape detection. Besides, in compiling my work, it was not to German, or even to European readers alone that I wished to address myself; I had equally in view the rendering my labours useful to citizens of Africa, and to future travellers in the southern parts of that vast peninsula. I was the more desirous of this, from finding the little attention that had been paid to such objects by my precursors both in the route that I travelled, and in the reports given of their travels. Their sole object in their publications seems to have been to make them entertaining to their own countrymen, or, at the utmost, to their contemporaries in general;—they seem never to have thought of rendering them useful to the travelling part of the community. Thence it happens that each one in succession has found great fault with his immediate precursor, and indeed too often not undeservedly. Le Caille and Menzel are severe upon Kolbe, Sparrman criticises Le Caille and Menzel, and Le Vaillant comes under the censures of Mr. Barrow. For myself I must confess that the descriptions of the two latter, partly given without sufficient impartiality, partly too much loaded with ornament, have had a considerable influence upon the form which I have given to my work, earnestly desirous as I was of avoiding former failures.

Perhaps the above sketch of my views in the present publication may serve in some measure as my justification for not having combated with a more determined resolution my inclination to give it to the world; for having ventured, notwithstanding the many works already written upon Southern Africa, and very generally read, to hazard the writing another, nay, to offer it as a better than any preceding one. I can indeed truly say, that this inclination originated less in considerations that merely concerned myself, than in a variety of extraneous motives. I may besides call upon Aristotle and Pliny, as well as upon Sparrman, who next to them has spoken the most forcibly upon the subject, as vouchers that something new, and well worthy our attention, relating to Africa, is constantly rising, and will long continue to rise.

Almost every traveller takes a different view of things according to the colouring they receive from his peculiar turn of thinking, or from the particular circumstances under which they were seen by him. One overlooks what makes a deep impression upon another; to one opportunities are presented of obtaining information, of entering into investigations, which never occur to another. I was the earlier, during my travels in Africa, impressed with a desire of communicating my remarks to the world, from comparing the notices already given, with the information I had been enabled to obtain, and finding the one so little in conformity with the other. With this desire was soon combined the determination to strike into a new path, from that pursued by my precursors. It was never my idea to give the public a mere detail of the occurrences that happened during my travels; I wished to give a regular description of the country, as to its topography, political situation, natural history, and ethnography; above all, I was anxious to give what has hitherto been entirely neglected, a general history of the colony.

For this purpose I began early to collect materials for such a work, and the kindness of friends in power supported me in it not a little. A very favourable opportunity of travelling through the country was to my no small satisfaction soon presented me; and I had but just returned from my first journey, in which I obtained no inconsiderable stock of important information, when the means were unexpectedly afforded of greatly improving and increasing my stores. The renewal of the war gave a totally different aspect to our

situation at the Cape, and occasioned a great revolution in my destiny. Soon after my return from my second excursion I was appointed Army Physician, and in that capacity shared in an expedition, which carried me farther up the country than I had ever before dreamt of penetrating even in my most sanguine moments. During this excursion I was inspired with the idea of greatly enlarging the plan of my work, and two additional short excursions, united with the campaign against the English in 1806, put me in possession of as ample and extensive a knowledge of the country as I could desire.

I returned to Holland in the train of General Janssens, and even in the same ship. The Commissary-general De Mist returned the year before, and had in the interim been revising and arranging his observations upon his journey. When my intentions were made known to him, he in the most obliging manner lent me his manuscript, and permitted me the free use of any materials which it contained. I availed myself largely of this permission, not however following his plan, but true to my old ideas, I separated the narrative part from the descriptive, intending that this latter should be first made public, that the reader might be entirely at home upon the theatre of action before the detail of occurrences upon it was to begin. A considerable progress was made in the work according to this plan, when the advice of some very able literary judges, combined with several other circumstances, occasioned a change in my purpose, and determined me to give the precedence to the narrative part, preparing the reader by that for the descriptive. The first volume was soon completed after this idea, and I must confess with gratitude that the Commissary-general's manuscript assisted me exceedingly in the compilation. A part only of his remarks are, however, here employed; the remainder are reserved till I come to my description of the country, where they will be more appropriate, and will not interrupt the narrative. That many things have concurred since the completion of this volume in the summer of 1809 to retard its publication till the present moment I cannot very much lament, since it is now published under circumstances peculiarly gratifying to me.

Notwithstanding all my endeavours at compressing the work, I have found it impossible to include the whole of my first journey in one volume, without making it unreasonably thick, and it is therefore broken off at the end

of the third part. It may not perhaps be amiss here to give a sketch, for the benefit of those who may purchase this first volume, of what is to be expected in the succeeding ones.

The second volume will contain six parts, commencing with our return from Graaff-Reynett to the Cape Town, which forms the fourth part of the work. In the fifth will be given a sketch of a botanical journey to Zwelendam and the neighbouring country. The sixth and seventh parts will include the journey to the newly visited tribes of the Beetjuans, in which will be given an ample description of that people, as well as of the Boesjesmans, and other tribes of Hottentot savages. The eighth part will contain a solitary excursion to the borders of the Roggeveld; and the ninth a journey to Boesjeveld and Tulbagh, with the contests which occurred during the campaign against the English, and our return to Europe.

The remainder of the work will be devoted to giving a systematic description of Southern Africa from Cape Agulhas to the district of the Steinbock, including all such observations as I have reserved in order to avoid splitting upon the same rock as my precursors, and interrupting too often the course of the narrative. Here will moreover be given all that concerns the most important object of the work, the correcting whatever has been erroneously represented by other writers. If the task may be invidious, I yet do not know how to dispense with myself from performing it, desirous as I am to give all possible amplitude and accuracy to the descriptive part of the work.

This division will be preceded by an introduction, in which will be given a list of all the works that have hitherto appeared upon Southern Africa, with some short strictures upon the merits of each. The materials will then be divided into nine parts. The first part will comprehend a general view of the country, and of the origin of its population; an examination into the climate, the aspect of the country, the properties of the vegetable kingdom, the general character of the animal world, and lastly, an ample account of the human race, natives of these parts, with an analysis of the influence which so many years intercourse with emigrant Europeans has had upon them. The second part will treat of the history of Southern Africa both before and since its colonization: the earliest information which could illustrate this subject has been diligently sought, and every thing written upon it even to the latest times has been carefully examined. In the third part

will be given a description of the customs and manners of the present generation; in the fourth a political and geographical description of the Dutch colony, and in the fifth a sketch of the form of its government. The four remaining parts will be occupied with the public institutions, the state of knowledge and of the arts, the objects of trade, the mode of husbandry, and lastly with remarks upon the Cape of Good Hope, considered as a military station.

Whether from the importance of these divers objects, and the rich store of materials collected for treating of them, it will be possible to compress all into one volume, it is impossible here to decide. The question will be in great measure determined by the manner in which the public shall condescend to receive this first volume; and if on account of the expense attending the publication it should be found expedient to abridge my plan, I must, however reluctantly, give up some parts entirely.

HENRY LICHTENSTEIN.

Berlin, March, 1811.

---

The Publisher has to regret that a Map of the Dutch colony, at the Cape of Good Hope, which ought to have accompanied this work, and to which reference is frequently made in the course of it, was omitted to be sent with the German copy which he received; and it appears that no other copy of the original besides his own has yet found its way into this country. It was not possible to procure it from the continent in sufficient time to accompany the present volume; it will therefore be given with the next, which it is expected will appear the ensuing season.

---

ERRATA.

- Page 6, line 9, dele *task*.  
 33 — 14, for *the bay*, read *Saldanha bay*.  
 82 — 28, dele *often*.  
 92 — 24, for *frequent*, read *subsequent*.  
 165 — bottom line, for *bucophæa*, read *leucophæa*.  
 166 — 30, before *the cattle*, add *for*.  
 175 — 23, before *other*, add *the*.  
 188 — 21, for *strong*, read *thick*.  
 219 — 3 from the bottom, for *defence*, read *offence*.  
 251 — 26, for *corporal*, read *corporeal*.  
 274 — 9, for *is perpetually pushed it*, read, *it is perpetually pushed*.

# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

*Occasion of the Journey.—Voyage to the Cape.—Stay at the Cape-Town.—Journey of General Janssens to the Caffre Tribes.—Resolution of the Commissary-General De Mist to Travel through the Colony.—Preparations for the Journey.—Names of the Persons who composed the travelling Party.—Enumeration of the Things necessary to be taken for the Performance of the Journey. . . . . Page 1*

### PART I.

#### JOURNEY THROUGH THE WESTERN AND NORTHERN PARTS OF THE COLONY.

##### CHAP. I.

*Departure from the Cape-Town.—Rietvalley.—Troublesome Insects.—Brakkefontein.—Bad Water there.—Hartebeestkraal.—Ausspannplatze. . . . . 17*

##### CHAP. II.

*The Klaoervalley.—Groenekloof.—Gansekraal.—The Van Reenens' Farms and Stud.—Musical Slaves.—Le Vaillant's Friend, John Slaber.—Uylekraal.—Dexterity of the African Waggoners.—Teefontein.—Collection of Plants and Insects. . . . . 24*

##### CHAP. III.

*Saldanha-bay.—Frugal Meal at Geelbek.—History and Description of Saldanha-bay.—Upon its Advantages and Disadvantages, and upon the different Plans which have been proposed for obviating the latter.—Flock of Flamingos.—The Islands of Saldanha-bay.—Interesting old Soldier . . . . . 33*

##### CHAP. IV.

*Departure from Saldanha-bay.—Laubscher's Farm.—Hippopotamos Hunt.—Extreme Age of a Slave.—The Mouth of the Berg-river.—Bay of St. Helena.—Tedious Passage of the Berg-river.—The Piket Mountain.—The widow Lieuwenberg's Farm.—District of the Four-and-twenty rivers.—Leiste's Farm.—Gelukwaard.—Forwardness of the European Plants here.—Cultivation of Rice and Indigo. . . . . 46*

##### CHAP. V.

*The White Ant heaps.—Pikenienskloof.—Upon Mr. Barrow's Exaggerations respecting the Barbarity of the Colonists.—The Berg-valley.—Tribes of Apes.—The Hottentotkraal.—A Hottentot of the Tribe of the Great Namaquas.—Encampment in the Long-valley.—Picturesque Mountain Scenery.—Jakkal's-valley.—Preparation of Leather for Thongs . . . . . 62*

## CHAP. VI.

*The Elephants'-river.—Salt Lake.—Fatiguing Passage of the Nardouw Mountain.—The Party lose their Way by Night in an almost uninhabited Country.—Night passed upon the Bank of the Doorn-river.—The Valley of Moedoverlooren.—The Lower Bokkeveld.—Uye-valley* ..... 76

## CHAP. VII.

*The Namaaqua Partridge.—The Matjes-fontein.—John Strauss.—On the Diseases of the Colonists.—The Tyger-point.—The District of Hantam.—Van Reenen's Property there.—Character of the Colonists of these Parts.—Impressions of Fish in the Slate-stone.—The Spurting-Snake.—The Roggeveld Mountain.—Huntings of the Colonists beyond the Borders.—Cold Climate of the Roggeveld.—The Legplaats.—The Lower Roggeveld.—Account of the Murder of a Family of Colonists by Slaves and Bosjesmans.—The Kuil-river.—Natron Rising out of the Ground* ..... 87

## CHAP. VIII.

*The Middle Roggeveld.—Description of the Habitation of a Colonist.—Quarrels among the Inhabitants of the Roggeveld.—Large Flock of Ostriches.—Komberg.—An Instance of the increasing Population of the Colony.—The Little Roggeveld.—Visit from some Bosjesmans.* ..... 104

## CHAP. IX.

*The Great Karroo.—Description of it.—The Cold Bokkeveld.—Its Fertility.—Remarkable form of the Schurfsdeberge.—Rocks near the House of the Cyclops-like Overseer.—Fine Prospect from the Summit of the Witseberg.—Arduous Descent of this Mountain.—Arrival at Rodezand.* ..... 120

## PART II.

JOURNEY FROM ROODEZAND TO ZWELLEN DAM, AND ALONG THE SOUTHERN COAST TO ALGOA BAY.

## CHAP. X.

*Description of the Valley of Rodezand.—Character of its Inhabitants.—Prevailing Bigotry.—The surrounding Country.—The Water-fall Mountain.—Mosterhoek.—Breede-river.—Goudinie.—Hot Spring in the Brand-valley.* ..... 141

## CHAP. XI.

*Bosjesveld.—The River Zonder-end.—Bavianskloof.—Description of the Society of United Brethren there.—Zoetemelks-valley.—Essaquaskloof.—Breede-river.—Arrival in Zwelldam.* ..... 150

## CHAP. XII.

*Description of Zwelldam.—The Devil's Bush.—The Klip-river.—Rotterdam.—Buffeljagd-river.—Dupre's Farm.—The Krombek-river.—Preparation of the Aloe-gum.—False-river.—Extraordinary Appearance in the Air, like the distant Sea.—The Gaurits-river.—The Party again lose their Way in the Night.—Arrival at Mosselbay* ..... 163

## CHAP. XIII.

*The Government Magazines at Mosselbay.—The Dove Abuse.—The Muscle Caves described.—Murray the Englishman's Coasting-trade.—Farther Description of the Country.—Brakke-river.—Outeniqualand.—Woody Clefts in the Mountains. . . 177*

## CHAP. XIV.

*Kaiman's-river, and troublesome Passage of the Kaiman's Cleft.—Kradakow.—Silver-river.—Zwart-river.—Dankamta.—Ruinated Farm.—The Lake of Neisna and the circumjacent Country.—Arrival at Plettenberg's-bay. . . . . 189*

## CHAP. XV.

*Description of Plettenberg's-bay, and Stay there.—The Postholder Meding.—Journ over the Black Mountains to the Long-kloof.—The Pisang-river.—Diana's Bath.—Augusta's Rest.—Matthias Zondag.—Description of the Long-kloof.—Conrad Buys.—The deaf and dumb Man, Gildenhuis.—Celebration of the New-Year.—The Field-Cornet, Rademeier. . . . . 201*

## CHAP. XVI.

*First Rencontre with travelling Caffres, and many particulars concerning the Interview.—Leewenbosch.—Magic power of Snakes.—Kabeljau-river —Chantoo-river, and difficult passage of it.—Beautiful Country on the other side.—Elephant-hunt.—Riet-river.—Embarrassment of the Travellers from the Delay of the Waggon.—Lead-mine at Van Stade's-river . . . . . 216*

## CHAP. XVII.

*Algoa-bay.—Fort Frederic.—Baaker-river.—Industry of the German Garrison.—Description of the Bay.—The Missionary Vander Kemp.—His Hottentot School at Bethelsdorp. . . . . 232*

## PART III.

DESCRIPTION OF THE CAFFRE TRIBE OF KOSSAS.—FRAGMENT FROM THE JOURNAL OF GENERAL JANSSENS.—OUR OWN JOURNEY ALONG THE BORDERS OF THE CAFFRE COUNTRY TO GRAAFF-REYNETT.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*The Caffres —Name, Extent of Country, and universal Characteristic of this People.—Opinions with Regard to their Origin.—Caffreland.—The Tribe of Kossas.—Their Personal Figure, their Diseases, their Religious Opinions, with various other Particulars. . . . . 241*

## CHAP. XIX.

*Description of the Koossa Caffres continued.—Their Habitations and Cattle-folds.—Their manner of keeping their Cattle.—Their Food.—The Chace.—Agriculture.—Cloathing and Ornaments.—Their Arms.—Manner of fighting.—Works of Art. . 267*

## CHAP. XX.

*Description of the Country of Ammakosina, or of the Koossas.—Its Political Relations and Institutions.—Power of the King.—Judiciary Proceedings, and Punishments.. 282*

## CHAP. XXI.

*History of the Koossa Tribe, and of its Wars with the Colony and with the English.—The Caffre Tribes of the Interior..... 290*

## CHAP. XXII.

*Fragment from the Journal of General Janssens.—His stay in Algoa bay, and Conference with the Rebel Caffre Chiefs.—Journey into the Caffre Country, and Interviews with their King Geika.—Intercourse with him.—Transactions of the Commandant Alberti in the Caffre Country..... 302*

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Continuation of our Journey.—Departure from Algoa bay.—Zwartkop's-river.—Remarkable Salt-lake.—The Koega-river.—The Order established in pitching our Camp.—Zondag's-river.—Visits from a great Number of Caffres.—Large Flocks of Antelopes and Quaggas.—The Springbok.—The Bosjesmans'-river.—The Arrival of the Caffre Chiefs expected in vain.—Hofmansgat.—Deformity of the Mimosas.—Nieuwejaarsdrift.—The Little Fish-river..... 334*

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Arrival at the Modderfontein in Agtebruintjeshoote.—Journey along the Bank of the Great Fish-river to meet King Geika.—Camp at Hermannuskraal.—The King does not arrive.—Conference with his Ambassadors.—Return to the Modderfontein.—Reconciliation between Geika and some of the Rebel Chiefs. .... 346*

## CHAP. XXV.

*Bruintjeshoogte.—Uniformity and Poverty of the Lives led by the Colonists there.—Camdeboo.—The African Horses, and the Manner of refreshing them upon a Journey.—The Melk-river.—The Spandau Mountain.—Arrival at Graaff-Reynett. .... 359*

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Description of Graaff-Reynett.—The Character of the Colonists of these Parts, and the Circumstances which occasioned the Dissensions that prevailed there, both before and after it came under the English Government.—Regulations made by the Commissary-general for the Restoration of Order and Tranquillity.—Losses sustained by the District in the Caffre War..... 368*

# TRAVELS

IN

## SOUTHERN AFRICA.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

*Occasion of the Journey.—Voyage to the Cape.—Stay at the Cape-Town.—Situation of the Colony.—Journey of General Janssens to the Caffre Tribes.—Resolution of the Commissary General de Mist to Travel through the Colony.—Preparations for the Journey.—Names of the Persons who composed the travelling Party.—Enumeration of the Things necessary to be taken for the Performance of the Journey.*

**BY** the stipulations at the peace of Amiens, which was concluded towards the end of the year 1801, the colony of the Cape of Good Hope was to be restored to the Dutch: this colony, after having been in their possession for nearly a century and a half, had been taken by the English in the year 1795. The Batavian Republic immediately began to occupy itself assiduously with considering the means of regulating this important possession so as to derive from it the greatest advantages that it was capable of affording. In this undertaking they found so much the more difficulty, since from the dissolution of the Dutch East India Company some years before (under whose direction the colony of the Cape had been till that time), and the influence which the being seven years under the dominion of a foreign power must have had upon the government, the customs of the inhabitants, and the revenues of the colony, few of the former institutions and ordinances could continue any longer in force, none could remain unchanged.

Even so early as in December, 1801, before the preliminaries were confirmed by the definitive treaty of peace, the States asked the advice of the council for the Asiatic possessions (by which department the business of the former

East India Company was now to be administered) upon the best manner of regulating the colony of the Cape on its restoration to the Batavian Republic ; and a committee of the council was appointed, by whom an opinion was to be given. A member of this committee, Mr. J. A. de Mist, a man whom neither the misfortunes of his native country during the changes occasioned by fifteen years of divisions and disturbances, nor the insolence of self-erected adversaries, on whom the caprice of the populace confers a power commonly dangerous, but always merely ephemeral, could ever dishearten, or turn aside from pursuing with zeal the straight path of truth and integrity, was the person to whose lot it fell to draw up the answer. This task he with astonishing diligence accomplished in a few weeks, and it was to the no small satisfaction of the committee that on the 1st of April, 1802, the honourable post was conferred upon him of receiving the colony of the Cape from the hands of the English in quality of Commissary General for the Republic : by this appointment it fell also to his lot to superintend the carrying into effect his ideas for the regulation of the colony, as well as to instal the new governor, J. W. Janissens, into his high office. The latter had been appointed governor as early as in the month of February.

Some months were however requisite before the equipment of the vessels, the assembling and cloathing the troops destined for the possession of the Cape, the embarking the stores for the magazines, and other business necessary on the occasion could be accomplished. It was not till the middle of July that the ships were ready to sail, although it was in the first days of this month that the troops had been embarked, and between the 6th and 15th that the Commissary general and the governor themselves, with their train, had gone on board. I was myself among the train of the latter. An unconquerable inclination to try my powers amid the vicissitudes and toils of wandering through new climes and under a different heaven ; an ardent desire to be acquainted with a country upon which, even in my boyish years, my imagination had eagerly dwelt, and which since my arrival at a maturer age I had always had an unbounded curiosity to explore, induced me to offer my services to the governor, who, a short time before his departure, was seeking out a tutor from Germany for his son, then thirteen years of age. He accepted my offers, when, with a cheerful heart and placid confidence in my future fate, I quitted my native country, my parents, my brethren, my friends, and blessed,

even at that moment, the determined resolution with which I was enabled to engage in the career prompted by my genius.

The dispositions of the excellent persons in whose service I was engaged forbids me to say all that I could gladly say of them. From the mouth of one who owes them so much, the most truly deserved praise, the mere expression of the gratitude due to them, might appear too much like flattery; and there is a certain class of readers, who can discover in ever so slight a tribute of applause sufficient ground for a suspicion of partiality, which would ill become a German writer. True it is, that in these people I love a whole nation, but I should consider it as the most unpardonable weakness were I to degrade my narrative with any thing that might have the remotest appearance of untruth in order to gratify that love; and I had rather remain wholly silent than forbear to speak with the frankness and sincerity which foreigners have always found so praise-worthy in the character of my countrymen. What renders the present work, however, one of the most pleasing undertakings of my life is, that I have never had any temptation, through indiscretion towards my benefactors, to hazard losing the recompense which posterity will perhaps first bestow upon my undeviating adherence to truth.

Four weeks passed before a favourable east wind permitted our sailing out of the Texel. It was on the 5th of August that we left this road in company with a numerous fleet of transports destined to the East and West Indies. We were afterwards, by the contrary winds which we encountered in the British Channel, constrained to run into Plymouth, and when still farther advanced on our voyage were detained by an unusual calm; but towards the end of September we reached the Canary Islands, and lay ten days in the road of Santa-Cruz, off the Island of Teneriffe. The wind was not more favourable to us as we pursued our course, till we passed the line, which we did on the 20th of November. From this time our voyage was fortunate and quick, so that we came to anchor in Table Bay on the 23rd of December.\*

---

\* I pass over in this place the account of our sea voyage, with several perhaps not uninteresting observations, because more important matter is here amply presented, and reserve them for a short publication by itself, which I hope to render useful to future voyagers by sea. An extract from my journal during our stay at Teneriffe is through the goodness of Counsellor Brun of Helmstadt published in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides* for 1806. Many too evident traces of the original destination of this journal I could have wished suppressed in the fragment.

I say nothing concerning the early part of my abode at the Cape, and of the occurrences with which the delays in delivering up the colony were accompanied. Another part of the work, devoted entirely to the history of the colony, will give ample information and satisfactory elucidations upon this subject. Let me only be permitted here to make the following remarks.

When the Cape was taken by the English in the year 1795, the colony was in an unusual state of anarchy and internal distraction, which not a little contributed towards rendering the conquest so easy to the enemy; for in the eyes of impartial observers, the evil of falling under a foreign yoke appeared incomparably less than the probable ones which were then hanging over them. Some restless adventurers from Europe had introduced here the fanaticism of freedom, and awakened among the people, otherwise too much inclined to discord and disobedience, a revolutionary rage, which their ignorance and crude conceptions rendered no less laughable than dangerous, and which, without the intervention of the enemy, would very likely have spread ruin over the whole colony. The comfortless situation of the mother country, torn herself by political divisions, the insecurity of her existing government, and the exhausted state of her powers, which prevented any portion of her attention being turned to her colonies; all these circumstances, without doubt, contributed very much to the overthrow of the factious, and to induce the sober-minded rather to submit to a government, in whose strength they could place some confidence. It was not, however, possible for the new English administration to suppress entirely the ill consequences arising from the rage of freedom which had been excited, particularly since their true purposes being mistaken, they were considered as supporters of the orange party, to oppose which the general judgment was perfectly agreed.\*

It was chiefly in the district of Graaff Reynett and the eastern part of Zwellendam, that the greatest opposition was shewn to the English government during the whole time of their continuing here. The refractory were indeed quieted by force of arms, but this was done with so little discretion and foresight, that the evil was thereby rather increased than diminished.

---

\* This opinion became at the attack of the English so much the more universal, as she herself made it a principal object in the hasty capitulation. Colonel Gordon, who signed it, was a professed adherent of the orange party. A few days after, this otherwise upright man, made a public confession of his error to the world by destroying himself.

Thence arose discords with the Caffre tribe who inhabit the eastern borders of the colony, and as in the case of Graaff Reynett, by the most imprudent measures the Hottentots were employed in subduing the rebellious peasants. The latter thereupon, after a formal engagement, fled with their women and children to a remote corner of the colony, when a numerous body of these savages spread themselves along the sea-coast, overthrew the dwellings, destroyed the gardens and fields, made themselves a path by burning and massacre, and pressed forward to Outeniqualand, near Mosselbay. A body of English soldiers, under General Vandeleur, did indeed drive them back to their ancient borders, but the contest was not a slight one, nor was the happy termination purchased without many sacrifices; and even at the time of our arrival a great enmity subsisted between the Caffres and the English government.\*

From all these circumstances, and from the deplorable state to which, through them, the eastern part of the colony was reduced, the attention of the new Dutch government was more particularly called to it. No sooner then was the colony at length restored in February, 1803, than General Janssens formed the resolution of visiting these parts himself; and he hoped by personal observations, and regulations made upon the spot, to put an end powerfully and speedily to the evil. Since the organization of the government, with which the Commissary general even then occupied himself diligently, nevertheless could not be completed in the first months, the governor, as executor of the standing laws, could at this moment better permit himself to be absent from the capital than later, when he should have received the reins out of the hands of the representatives of the sovereign power. He therefore commenced his journey early in April, and the many hardships which he had to encounter in his progress were well repaid in the complete success of his benevolent views, as well as by acquiring an accurate knowledge of the country which henceforward was to be entrusted to his administration. The particular occurrences of this journey will more properly find a place when my own travels, in the train of the Commissary general, through the country now visited by General Janssens, come to be related.

---

\* An imperfect account of these transactions has been given to the public in the second part of Barrow's Travels. I shall give a more complete account of them in another part of this work.

In the mean time, during his absence, that is on the 6th of July, 1803, the intelligence reached the Cape, by means of a dispatch boat, of the renewal of the war between France and England. The presence of the commander was now imperiously demanded for the regulation of the defence of the place, and he returned with so much haste that he performed his journey back, of an hundred and seventy hours,\* in only ten days. From the day of his arrival, the 1st of August, he occupied himself indefatigably with these regulations, while the Commissary general completed his labours for the organization of the colony task, and circulated his new code for its civil government.

He also had the intention of visiting the interior of the colony, that he might obtain from his own observations an accurate knowledge both of particular parts and of the whole, so that at his return to his native country he might be able to render an accurate account of all the advantages to be derived from the colony, as well as of all its wants and necessities. It was a question, however, for some time, whether, since an attack from the enemy might be supposed a thing not very remote, his removing to a distance from the capital could at that time be permitted: yet soon the suggestion of the utility that might probably be derived both to the mother country and to the colony from such a journey superseded all other considerations, especially as for many reasons it did not appear probable that the English ministry would immediately think of directing an attack upon it from the East Indies; and since in the activity and bravery of the governor the colony had a protection upon which it might very safely rely. Besides, in the case of an attack, the presence of a magistrate high in office, in the remoter districts, might be of great advantage towards the defence of the colony.

As soon, therefore, as this journey was resolved on, the necessary preparations for it were immediately commenced. It is expedient here to state particularly that the governor had before taken this very same journey, and his information concerning the things necessary to be attended to, and the means of performing such a journey, so as to derive the greatest portion of

---

\* The German mode of reckoning distances is commonly by hours, and they consider a German mile, which is equal to five English ones, as equivalent to an hour. The distance that the governor therefore travelled in ten days is to be supposed one hundred and seventy German miles, or eight hundred and fifty English ones.—TRANSLATOR.

advantage from it, without being subjected to greater privations and inconveniences than were absolutely necessary, were imparted to us, and lightened our way exceedingly. The captain of artillery, Paravicini di Capelli, aide-de-camp to the general, and who had accompanied him on his journey, a man of great penetration and foresight, directed these preparations with much kindness; and through the pains he took deserved on many occasions the warmest thanks of the whole travelling party.

From the travels of Le Vaillant, which have been so universally read, we know very well the necessary provisions to be made by a single traveller—an enquirer into nature, so that he may pursue his way with the best effect through the inhospitable regions of Southern Africa;—so that he may not be subjected to a want of the absolute necessaries of life, or be prevented in attaining the objects of his researches as a man of knowledge and science. Yet any one will have but a very imperfect idea through this medium of what we found requisite for the equipment of a company of forty stout men, forming a sort of little caravan.

But principally because this journey was unlike any which has perhaps ever fallen under the reader's observation, since no travels into the interior of Africa resemble it in any way, I think I may venture to dwell somewhat more at large upon our preparations, as the mode of our travelling will by that means be better understood, and through the novelty of the objects to which we were obliged to attend, a more lively interest will be awakened.

Journeys similar to that which the Commissary general was now about to undertake had at all times since the foundation of the colony been occasionally performed, and the people were accustomed to see the magistrates, who were high in rank, travel with a sort of state, and with a train of followers which would distinguish them from the people around, and point out their rank and dignity.\* This custom had its origin in an imitation of the

---

\* Mr. Barrow, in the first chapter of the second part of his Travels, has thought proper to laugh extremely at these journeys, which his French translator calls *Expeditions de parade*, and remarks that they are of no advantage whatever for obtaining a knowledge of the country. That was not their object, and the use which most of them had upon the whole will be pointed out in the history of the colony. Above all, it is exceedingly unjust to impute to the Dutch of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, as a piece of mercantile meanness, the secrecy they

Batavian customs at Java, which was the model of all the ceremonials at the Cape; and since it had been once introduced here, it was not even now to be neglected by any one who would appear with the dignity attached to his post. This numerous train, and this show of armed men, was more particularly requisite on the present occasion, since the course lay in the neighbourhood of several savage tribes, and through solitary uninhabited parts, in which hordes of the Bosjesmans, and bands of run-away slaves or English deserters, might have made the travellers feelingly repent the neglect of so useful a precaution.

As necessary as was this train itself, equally necessary was it for the whole society to take with them provisions for their wants of every sort; and it will be seen in the sequel that the care displayed throughout for this purpose was not so much as to the conveniences and accommodations which are pleasant on a journey, but for things absolutely necessary to the support of life and health. If the voluntary privations of one of Robinson's pedestrian wanderers displays an interesting spectacle, I hope not to entertain my readers less with a representation of the numberless hardships sustained every step by a company of Europeans in their progress through a hot, hilly, unfruitful, thinly-inhabited, half-waste country, where scarcely even any water was to be had;—of the wants, the privations they endured, and the earnest longings with which they were sometimes seized to taste again the sweets and comforts they enjoyed in their own country. Indeed, the equipment of such a journey by land required scarcely less thought and attention to things the most minute than a sea voyage would have done; so inhospitable is the country, so entirely destitute of all the advantages which in other parts of the world art and nature combine to present for the accommodation of travellers. Scarcely is it indeed possible to give other than a general idea of the unavoidable number and variety of things with which one must be encumbered.

Before, however, we enter upon an enquiry into them, let me first be permitted to say something about the persons who composed our society,

---

are said to have observed with regard to their geographical discoveries, since the existence of the discoveries was rested upon these journeys, which they turn into so much ridicule; and it was in fact the geographical and political situation of the country which rendered them necessary.

since then the nature and number of our wants will be better understood. It consisted of the following persons.

Mr. J. A. de Mist, commissary-general.

Mr. A. L. de Mist, his son, and secretary.

C. A. H. Michgorius, clerk in the chamber of accounts of the colony, and belonging to the office of the commissary-general.

H. Gilmer, lieutenant in a squadron of light dragoons, commander of the escort. He had already accompanied General Janssens upon his journey, and took upon himself at once the inspection of the waggons and teams belonging to them, and the care of providing forage for the riding-horses, &c. &c.

P. J. Le Sueur, a cadet of the same corps, in the ordonnance of the commissary-general.

Myself, whom the commissary-general had chosen as his attendant in case of necessity to superintend the medical department. At the same time he hoped to derive some advantage from the little knowledge I had in natural history, from the observations it would induce me to make, and the objects which it was my purpose to collect. General Janssens, in whose particular service I had come to the Cape, gave me permission to undertake the journey the more readily, since his eldest son, Henry Janssens, my pupil, was destined to accompany us; besides, my having occasionally rendered myself useful in various cases of illness had made him much my friend.

F. Winters, surgeon to the Military Hospital at Cape Town.

M. Halewyn, book-keeper and house-steward.

P. Menger and H. Kummel, gentlemen of the chamber.

A corporal with seven dragoons, every one of whom followed some trade, as sadler, smith, carpenter, &c. &c.

A sergeant of infantry as superintendant of the Hottentots and slaves.

A French-horn player of the corps of Jägers, a very useful, indeed an almost indispensable person, since according to certain signals he collected the cavalcade together when they were to set forwards, summoned the cattle with their keepers from the pastures where the former were feeding, or if any one was wandering away from the company called him back to the right path, &c. &c. The care of our little camp, to blow the *reville* and the retreat, was also committed to him.

Twelve Hottentots, who acted as servants in all capacities; to them were added daily ten or twelve others, who belonged to the *atelages* of the day.

Four slaves for the service of particular members of the society, or to attend upon their horses.

Lastly, a courier of the government, who went forwards every day to order the *atelages* that would be wanted, and to take care that forage and provisions were prepared.

Our travelling party was moreover embellished in a very agreeable manner by the addition of female society. Augusta de Mist, youngest daughter to the commissary general, could not be restrained at his departure from Holland from following her father in his migration. This instance of true filial love, so delightful under every point of view, inspired her with fortitude to despise the dangers of the sea, and the inconveniences attending a long voyage, to leave her sisters and her friends, and readily to renounce the joys of a life of ease and social comfort, perhaps for many years. Many young women of nineteen, accustomed to live in the first circles in their own country, would have been staggered in their filial duty at the prospect of an interruption to these joys; but not so our traveller. Even the consolations which she found in the lively scenes of the Cape Town, which atoned to her in some measure for what she had abandoned, were equally given up to remain by the side of her father amid the sultry deserts of the interior of Africa. It seemed to her far preferable to share with him the dangers and difficulties inseparable from such a journey, than, at a distance, at home to tremble for his life, to think of him in illness, perhaps, confided to the care of strange and mercenary hands. Her father had not omitted to represent to her in the clearest manner every danger and hardship she might be subjected to encounter, and entreated her to reflect that the objects of his journey could not in any way be restrained or contracted by her being his companion, that she must even resolve to forego all personal wishes which might interfere with his attaining the objects for which the journey was undertaken.

All this could not awaken any terrors in her mind, or deter her in the slightest degree from pursuing her purpose; and how eagerly soever she assured him beforehand that he might rely upon her resignation, her assurances were even exceeded by the firmness with which she adhered to all that

was required of her, by the patience with which she endured every hardship, by the punctuality with which she conformed to all the regulations made by, even to all the expectations and wishes, of her father. It is not less incredible than true, that through the whole journey, which was extended to nearly six months, never was at any time the least delay occasioned either by her or her female attendants, never was the setting off in the morning postponed on her account, never was any regulation whatever broken in upon. It must indeed be remarked that such privations were the less felt by her since her richly stored mind received a constant recompense and gratification in the perpetual succession of new and remarkable objects with which it was presented. The delight of having so many of the wonders of nature hitherto known only by description placed before her eyes, and of studying a race of men, whose frame and colour of body, no less than their habits and customs, were so different from any she had yet seen, left no room to think of petty objects of ease and convenience, and sweetened even the most wearisome restraints. There was, indeed, in this young lady a singular union of feminine softness and tenderness of heart, with a manly resolution and firmness of mind not often to be found among the rougher part of her sex;—through both she often shamed one or other of the members of our society. One of her young friends from the Cape Town, Mademoiselle Versveld, had at her own particular desire been permitted to accompany her. With equal firmness did she support the toils, the hardships, and the inconveniences of the journey. Each was attended by a young European female servant.

It was determined that the whole company, those who belonged to the waggons excepted, should perform the journey on horseback. We were twenty-five horsemen, some of whose horses were always led by the slaves, to render the fatigue less. A large waggon attended, which carried all that was necessary for the general wants of the day, and the little packages of each individual; it was also provided with accommodations to carry any one who might be ill or worn down with fatigue;\* and, according to the custom of

---

\* It is worthy of remark that the chief of the expedition, probably the oldest of the whole society, a man of fifty-four years of age, was the only one who never availed himself of this convenience, but performed the whole journey of nearly nine hundred hours (four thousand five hundred English miles) on horseback.

the country, it was furnished with arms and ammunition, the carrying which to any extent would very much have incommoded the company on horseback. Five other waggons were filled with our larger baggage; they contained in the first place a large provision of dry food and liquors, such as rice, sea-biscuit, pease, dried fruits, coffee, tea, sugar, tobacco, wax candles, &c. &c. besides wine, brandy, and vinegar.

Next, that we might not be reduced in travelling through such very thinly inhabited countries to the necessity of sleeping entirely in the open air, which, notwithstanding the mildness of the climate, is always dangerous to the health even of Europeans born in the country, we had ten or twelve tents with us of different sizes, which, with the necessary appendages belonging to them, of poles, pegs, cords, and fastenings, filled of themselves one waggon. Equally necessary was it to carry a provision of simple field-beds, since the number of serpents and venomous insects rendered it very dangerous to sleep upon the bare ground. Some new mattresses, bolsters, and woollen coverlids, were furnished from the magazine for the hospitals, on which, indeed, we did not lie very soft, but soft enough to sleep well after the fatigues of the day. Much room was occupied by things necessary for cooking in the open field, such as kettles, saucepans, &c. To give an idea of all that it was necessary to provide in this way it is sufficient only to refer to the number and variety of persons of which we were composed, and to the different provisions which were to be made for each; especially as in traversing the borders of the Caffre tribes we were several weeks without coming into an inhabited country. Besides the society who lived with the commissary general, there was to be provided for, the steward and the servants, the dragoons, the Jägers, the Hottentots, and the slaves. Then in order to eat the meat with any degree of comfort there must be field-tables, field-stools, plates, dishes, knives, forks, spoons, and table-linen. Indeed, it required a man with all the attention and activity of our steward to think of such a variety of things, and have them all in such excellent order.

To be prepared against any accidents that might befall our waggons or our horses, it was necessary to carry with us a travelling forge, with a provision of carpenters' tools, wheel-bands, nails, and horse-shoes. We had, besides, a chest filled with all sorts of trinkets and frippery, as presents for the Caffres and Hottentots, or to exchange with them for the rareties

of the country and their own household implements. Another was filled with medical drugs, chirurgical instruments and bandages. There were two barrels of gunpowder with about two hundred pound of shot and bullets, and a variety of guns and other arms. There were chests with clothes, linen, books and maps, as well as spare saddles, and other appurtenances for the horses. To these are to be added the daily provision of corn for our cavalry, and the quantity of bread, meat, pulse, &c. which we were often obliged to provide when we were to travel for several days through parts almost uninhabited. It will not then appear surprising that our six waggons were no more than was absolutely necessary to contain such a number and variety of objects. Indeed, it was not long before we were convinced that most of them were too heavy loaded, and it was found expedient to increase their number.

It is sufficient here once for all to remark that the waggons used in a journey like the present are differently constructed from what would be employed in Europe for a similar purpose; and that they differ equally from those kept in the vicinity of the Cape Town for little parties of pleasure. The dry and hot weather, and above all, the extreme badness of the mountain-roads, renders it necessary to make them of much more solid materials, and to put them much more firmly together than is usual with our waggons. Many kinds of trees in these parts furnish a wood, which, from its hardness and toughness, is particularly adapted to such kind of uses, and we may safely venture to assert, that no where are such strong and durable waggons made as at the Cape. They are commonly about the size of a moderate baggage waggon, but are much neater and better finished, something like the best of the post waggons in the north of Germany, and have a canvas awning over them, called in the country a tent; they are thirteen feet in length within, and sixty-two inches broad, Rhineland measure. The iron bands of the wheels are almost half an inch thick.

Repeated experiments have taught us that carriages sent hither from Europe are of no use whatever; at least they do not last long. The English therefore made all their carriages for this place without exception with iron axle-trees.

The waggons, according to the weight of their lading, and to the length and difficulty of the way they have to go, are drawn by eight, twelve, and even sometimes by sixteen oxen. These are yoked together two and two by a

beam over the back of the neck, which is fastened by a thong of leather under the neck, and two others running on each side of the hams. In the middle of the beam is a strong iron ring, and through this is passed a cord, which is fastened to the leather thong.\* In other countries it has been found more convenient rather to make the oxen draw by their heads, and Europeans have endeavoured to introduce the same practice here; but the particular form of the African oxen, which are distinguished by being very high in the haunches, should seem in their case to plead in favour of the established mode.

As drivers to these waggons, Hottentots or Bastards † are generally preferred since they know best how to keep pace with the oxen, as well as how to dress and tend upon them. No reins are used; the drivers manage the animals with merely calling to them; every ox has his particular name, and by pronouncing the word *hot* or *haar*, they turn to the right or left according to the signification of the word used.‡ The well-known whips with bamboo handles from fourteen to sixteen feet in length, and lashes of at least an equal length, with which a dexterous driver can readily strike any of his cattle from the first to the last, are very seldom used among a well-ordered team; never unless any of the poor creatures happen to be extremely weary, or the difficulties to be encountered in the way render a more than usual exertion of strength necessary.

This perpetual calling to the animals, which is done in a high rough-toned voice not easily to be imitated, and which is more intelligible to the oxen themselves from the tone in which it is done than from the expression used, is indescribably wearisome to the traveller, who is compelled to ride in the

\* I cannot attempt to go any farther in describing this African mode of harnessing the oxen; since we have no words by which a thing wholly unknown to us can be accurately described, it is better to waive the attempt than to use expressions which may lead only to misunderstanding.

† These are a mixture of Hottentots and white people, or Hottentots and slaves. More will be said concerning them in the second part of this work.

‡ The drivers of carriages in the south of France will in like manner manage their horses or mules merely by calling to them. As the country is hilly, they commonly dismount in going up the hills and walk by the side of their cattle, when they have two modes of calling to them, one if they are to go to the right, the other if to the left, which the animals understand just as well as their drivers, and turn accordingly.—TRANSLATOR.

waggon. In very narrow and bad roads, however, the driver does not depend wholly upon his vocal powers for managing his *atelage*; a boy is then added, who leads the foremost oxen by a thong fastened to the horns. It is, indeed, extraordinary to see how a boy can with so much dexterity lead so long a team through heights and depths, over hills and crags, without risk either to himself or to the vehicle he has under his care. This is principally done when the team consists of more than sixteen oxen, for the driver alone can hardly manage above that number, partly because the most spirited being selected for the leading oxen, while the strongest are reserved for the hinder ones, they are more difficult to be kept in order, and partly because the little stones slipping about under their feet are apt to throw the middle yokes out of their ranks, and one pair will perhaps be inclining to one side while the next draws towards the other. Is a river to be passed, the poor boy must often wade through the water up to his chin, still holding the thong fast, to prevent the fore oxen stumbling or reeling in the middle of the stream, and oversetting the whole equipage.\*

The strength of the draught oxen here is easily exhausted. On a level road, with only a moderate load, and if the air be tolerably cool, they will get on as far in an hour as a man who walks pretty quick; but if the way be sandy, the load be heavy, or the sun be very hot, they cannot at all keep pace with him. The distance from place to place is reckoned by hours; but in different parts they compute differently as to the quantity of ground that may be gone over in an hour. It is calculated that a distance of eight hours with a team of twelve oxen, and the customary load of twenty hundred weight, may without difficulty be performed in a day, rising early in the morning, or in the very hot season of the year rather travelling all night, and resting in the middle of the day. Such a distance is here called a *schaft*, and all greater distances are calculated by so many *schofts*, or days journeys. The keeping of the draught oxen costs little or nothing. As soon as they are unyoked they go immediately to the water to drink, and then regale themselves with the thinly scattered forage that the African fields afford. As pure grass is a thing rarely to be found, they are commonly obliged to be contented with heath plants, rushes, and even with succulent plants; to the

---

\* We had sometimes, when our route lay over very steep parts, as many as twenty-four, or even twenty-six oxen, and yet half a day would elapse before all the waggons arrived happily at their destination.

latter indeed they are confined almost entirely in summer in the Karroo country, unless they prefer the hard stalks of the brushwood.\* The oxen of the European breed are considered as stronger and able to endure more labour than the natives; but of this, as of many things now only slightly noticed, more shall be said hereafter.

The enumeration of my own little apparatus may perhaps be permitted here to find a place. Besides the books and maps mentioned below,† I was furnished with an excellent compass, and some small pocket compasses; a very good telescope and microscope, and a thermometer.‡ A case of anatomical instruments, two pound of orpiment for preserving birds and quadrupeds, and a cask of brandy for keeping reptiles, &c. Some thousands of needles of various sizes for fastening insects, tin boxes for insects, and butterfly nets. Twelve wooden boxes for receiving my daily collections,§ some stronger ones with divisions for minerals; and a large provision of paper for drying plants. Such were the preparations I made for rendering our journey useful, as I hoped, in gaining a more extended knowledge of the natural history of the country, as well as by the attainment of more important objects.

---

\* In some places this is the only provender which they can find. An extraordinary instance how long the poor animals can be subsisted upon no other than such wretched food will be found in the sixth part of this work.

† My library consisted of such travels of my precursors in the present journey as are the most generally celebrated, those of Kolbe, Sparmann, Thunberg, Le Vaillant, and Barrow. Besides some of these in the French language the commissary general had with him Stavorinus's, Degrandpre's, and Crossigny's travels, with several works in Dutch upon the same subject. In the second place I furnished myself with a variety of books of Natural History, particularly in botany and entomology, and was very exact in procuring those that had all the latest discoveries; yet still, thanks to the inexhaustible treasures of Nature in Southern Africa, I seldom found them of much use to me. And as amusement was no less necessary occasionally than instruction, I carried with me as companions for my hours of relaxation Göthe's Works, Lessing's Nathan, Schiller's Don Carlos, Sterne's Sentimental Journey, and Tasso's Aminta. During the six months that our journey continued, I read daily in some one or other of these books, yet found them such a constant source of entertainment that I never wished I had taken more.

‡ My travelling barometer was during our voyage broken and spoiled; and one intended for the same purpose which I had at the Cape was omitted to be packed up.

§ I found the simple mode of preparing insects recommended by Le Vaillant the most preferable. It is necessary for that purpose that the chests should be made strong, so that every needle may have a proper hold when stuck into the wood.

## PART I.

## JOURNEY THROUGH THE WESTERN AND NORTHERN PARTS OF THE COLONY.

## CHAP. I.

*Departure from the Cape Town.—Rietvalley.—Troublesome Insects.—Brakkefontein  
Bad Water there.—Hartebeestkraal.—Ausspannplatze.*

As General Janssens in his travels had bent his course towards the eastern borders of the Caffre countries, and since from the menacing aspect of public affairs it seemed wholly uncertain how long the Commissary-general could continue at a distance from the Cape Town, he thought it better in the first place to visit the western and northern parts of the colony, as an assurance to the inhabitants of these districts, who were not often in like manner visited, that their welfare was no less an object dear to the hearts of the new Batavian government than that of the rest of their dependents. Perhaps also it was a great advantage to travel through these parts at this early season of the year, when we might be tolerably secure of finding a plentiful supply of water, and good feed for the cattle; whereas, parched as the country is in the height of summer, it was very likely that we might then fail of both.

The necessary preparations, as well as the multiplicity of public business which it was necessary for the Commissary-general to conclude before his departure, delayed us so long that we could not set out before the ninth of October. Early in the night the waggons were dispatched, as the commencement of the cavalcade; they were followed at day-break by a great majority of the travelling party, and at six o'clock the Commissary general himself brought up the rear, he being attended out of the town by the governor and all the principal civil and military officers of the garrison. As representative of the States, the honours due to his rank were paid him,

and the castle announced his departure to the town by a salute of one and twenty cannon.

We had halted at the Rietvalley, a spot about two hours journey from the town, at the Government Place\* upon the Strand, to wait his arrival. Here were assembled, some Hottentots, the commencement of a corps of these people, which was to be raised under the command of Captain Le Sueur, and which afterwards was increased to a batallion, the same officer being continued in the command as lieutenant colonel.† He inhabited the principal house, which under the English Government had been exceedingly neglected, and suffered to fall into decay; we received from him a very kind and hospitable welcome, and he regaled us with an excellent breakfast. Round the house the swarthy recruits had built themselves little huts of reeds and rush-mats, in and out of which were running women and children half naked.

The governor, with the rest of the friends who were not to be of our travelling party, here took his leave of us. The warmth of the adieus, and the concern for us expressed by those who were returning to the town, excited in our breasts the first presentiments we had experienced of the dangers and hardships we were about to encounter: hitherto every thing had appeared to us under the brightest aspect; every one had formed his ideas according to his wishes, consequently nothing was foreseen but what the mind could with pleasure foresee. We moved on silent and thoughtful: a dead calm, a deep sandy road, and the heat of noon, did not conspire to raise our spirits. It seemed as if a foreboding of what was one day to happen had seized the whole company, as if they saw in the order of their future destinies, that ere scarcely two years and a half were expired, the Dutch arms would be called upon to fight in that very spot in defence of the colony. For it was indeed on the plain between the Blue and the Tiger mountains, on the 8th of January, 1806,

---

\* *Place*, as thus used, signifies every spot cultivated and inhabited, or capable of being so. Such provincial terms I have left unchanged, because they are more appropriate than any term that could be given them in our language, and the reader soon accustoms himself to them. For this reason also I leave all proper names, without attempting to translate them, thinking it much better to talk of the Rietvalley, and the Zout river, than to render the names laughable by attempting to Germanise them.

† In a year after the batallion was raised I was appointed surgeon major to it.

that the unfortunate battle was fought which decided the fate of the colony, and gave it once more into the hands of England.

The disagreeableness of the way was very much increased by an innumerable multitude of flies, here improperly called musquitos, that teased us exceedingly. They were scarcely half as big as the smallest chamber-flies, and appeared particularly to abound where the ground was somewhat moist. Their sting, though not accompanied with any smart, occasioned at first a sort of involuntary shuddering, which was succeeded by a considerable itching. The gauze veils which we had had the precaution to take with us protected us very little against these troublesome insects. Their number, their extreme smallness, and the heat, occasioned us soon to give up attempting by this means to defend ourselves against them. I seldom afterwards, when we were actually assailed by the musquitos, saw them in such numbers together.

After having for several hours endured these inconveniences, about noon we reached a place called Brakkefontein, belonging to a butcher in the Cape Town, of the name of Pfeil. The owner, happening to be there himself, brought us some refreshments, which were particularly welcome after the hardships of a course to which we were as yet unaccustomed, in a hot day over a parched heath, without water, and without shade. The water of these parts, which is collected in hollow trunks from the springs in the Table Mountain, is very ill flavoured, indeed, in the hot summer months it is almost intolerable; and yet in the sequel we found that many springs along the western coast were so much more so, that we should not unfrequently have been very glad of a glass of this water which we were now so ready to spurn and despise.

When the great heat of the day was over, we again set forwards, and two hours farther arrived at a very pretty spring of fine fresh clear water, which was extremely reviving to us: our horses, who could not at all reconcile themselves to the Brakkefontein, enjoyed their present regale no less than ourselves. This place is called the Hartebeestkraal, and was one of the many stations to which the name of *Ausspannplatze* was given,\* because they

---

\* The same reason which the German author gives in a former note for retaining the names of places, as they are called in the country, without attempting to translate them, may be

were established by the government for the benefit of travellers as resting-places at every half day's journey, and were open to every body: nobody had exclusive possession of them. These establishments were more particularly intended for the accommodation of the colonists living at a distance from the Cape, who used every year, or at least every two years, to come down to the town either to dispose of their objects of trade, such as butter, soap, elephant's teeth, aloes, hides, &c. &c. or to collect the money for the cattle purchased from them by the butchers of the Cape Town, who sent their own servants up the country for this purpose. At their return the traders carried back such things as were requisite to supply their own little wants. These objects consisted principally of linen and woollen cloth, implements of husbandry, tea, coffee, tobacco, groceries, spices, and drugs. Other objects included in these journeys were to pay the imposts to the government; to petition for new grants of lands, or for an extension of the old ones; to settle disputes which often arose with regard to the boundaries of their different properties, and in general every thing relating to law business. But a no less important object than any above enumerated was to conclude the marriages which had been agreed upon, and to baptize the children which had been born in the interim; for these were ceremonies which could only be performed in the Cape Town. One of the new regulations made by the Commissary-general in his progress through the country was, that such ceremonies were thenceforward to be performed before the Landdrost of each district.

The time when these journeys of the colonists were usually undertaken was in the early part of the summer, or rather in the spring, that is to say,

---

urged as a reason for retaining the German term, here used *ausspannplatze*; since nothing of the kind being known in England, no English term could express what is meant. *Spann* in German has exactly the same signification as *atelage* in French, meaning the whole together of the cattle attached to any carriage, whether horses, mules, or oxen: it may be expressed by the word *team* in English as far as it relates to waggons or carts, but we never apply that term to carriages, whereas the German *spann* and the French *atelage* applies equally to the one or the other; and *ausspannplatze* is a compound word, signifying a place to unharness and rest the *spann*. These places appear to have had no resemblance to inns, since they had no houses upon them: they were only enclosures for the cattle to feed in, and were government establishments for the accommodation of the public, not private ones for the profit of those by whom they were kept.—TRANSLATOR.

in the months which are so in these parts, viz. about September or October, since at that time the cattle are fatter and stronger, and find better feed by the way. The proper winter months, from April to August, would have been still better for the cattle, but the wet and cold of that time would have been pernicious to the human beings; besides which, there would have been danger of their being stopped on the road, even for weeks together, by the rivers being swelled so as to be rendered impassable.

It not unfrequently happened on these occasions that a whole month was spent upon the road, since it was not only by the head but by the whole family that the journey was to be performed. This was done partly because it was thought unsafe to leave the wife and children at home unprotected, liable to attacks from the neighbouring savages, and partly because it was necessary to take all the draught cattle for the waggons which were to carry the commodities, as well as most of the slaves and Hottentots, so that the wife would have been left without servants and assistants; but the women were besides very much accustomed to roving, since the colonists of many parts were from the very nature of the country compelled to follow a sort of Nomade life, and take up their abode in winter at the distance of several day's journey from their summer residence. There were even some families who had no fixed abode (though this was against the express orders of the government), but who moved from place to place with their household and cattle, living in their waggons or under tents, only remaining in the same spot as long as they could find provender and water for their cattle, and any thing whereupon to subsist themselves. It was chiefly against these rovers that a very wise regulation made by the government was directed, viz. that no company should be permitted to remain more than two days at an *ausspannplatze*; if greater latitude had been given, it is very probable that such parties might not unfrequently have taken up their abode at these places till all the forage around them was devoured, and they were deprived of the means of being of general utility.

The utility of such institutions as the *ausspannplatzen*, which many people considered pernicious, because they said much cultivable land was lost by them, could not be more clearly evinced than by seeing the process of a halt made at them by one of the travelling families above described. The best inn could not be equally eligible with one of these places, where

they might consider themselves at home, and where they found free of expence every thing requisite to gratify their most pressing wants. An African colonist, whom circumstances compelled to travel with so large a retinue, must unavoidably be provided with most things necessary for the subsistence of himself and his family during the journey, and when he stopped he wanted little more than a supply of water, and feed for his cattle. It must here be observed, that the hospitality ascribed in general so justly to the Africans never extended to the cattle: the colonist would with the utmost readiness set before a guest who came to his habitation a superfluity both of provisions and drink for himself, without any idea of remuneration; but he would not entertain the draught oxen in the same liberal way; for every one of them he expected to be paid at the rate of about a shilling a head per day. Travellers must therefore find great convenience in stopping at an *ausspannplatze* where their oxen could feed gratis, and any wants they might have themselves were readily supplied by the inhabitants of the neighbourhood.

As the oxen are generally found to be stronger and not so soon fatigued by travelling in the night as in the day, the common practice was to set off late in the evening, and calculate the time so as to arrive at an *ausspannplatze* about sun-rise, or soon after. The women then built up a sort of hut under the shade of the waggon, where they made a fire, and getting out their pots and kettles, began to prepare their cookery. Of the salted meat which they brought with them, or of the flesh of a sheep killed the day before, a soup was made, exceedingly strong and savoury; but besides this very relishable dish, among these wanderers, whose table was nothing more than a mat spread upon the ground, was to be seen the choicest game, which they had killed in their way with scarcely any trouble; such as might be contemplated with envy by those who partake almost daily of what are commonly esteemed much more luxurious repasts. At noon they lay down to sleep, and at night the oxen were again put to the waggons, and the journey continued. Another advantage supposed to be obtained by travelling in the night was, that less danger was to be apprehended either from wild men or wild beasts. As both the animals and their masters must be more watchful and active while going on, than when lying by to rest, the approach of an enemy of either kind was more immediately perceived, and the means of defence

more expeditiously resorted to. This manner of travelling would not, however, suit those who are desirous of gaining a knowledge of the country, consequently it was never practised by us but in cases of absolute necessity.

It was not uncommon for the colonists to petition the government to grant them these *ausspannplatzen* (which were generally enclosures of from ten to twelve thousand square roods) in fee, and sometimes they were granted on a solemn engagement made that they should still be continued upon the same footing as places of public utility and accommodation. But wherever this was done it led to endless discords and contentions; for not only did the holders of these farmed *ausspannplatzen* endeavour in various ways to evade the condition of furnishing travellers with water and feed for their cattle gratis, but in countries much frequented the whole benefit was engrossed by the farmers. It is a much better regulation that at certain times of the year the colonists living in the neighbourhood of an *ausspannplatze* shall be permitted the use of it as a common place of forage. In general the spots which have hitherto been selected to be devoted to these purposes were the least cultivable of the whole neighbourhood.

## CHAP. II.

*The Klavervalley.—Groenekloof.—Ganzekraal.—The Van Reenens' Farms and Stud.—Musical Slaves.—Le Vaillant's Friend John Slaber.—Uylekraal.—Dexterity of the African Waggoners.—Teefontein.—Collection of Plants and Insects.*

To return from the digression which concluded my former chapter. Towards evening we arrived at the Klavervalley, a place made not many years before by Mr. Sebastian Van Reenen. Here we were received with the utmost kindness and friendship by the owner and his whole family, and found the rest, which, after a journey of fourteen hours, we began so much to want. Our waggons had arrived a short time before us, but they had found so much difficulty in getting through the sandy road, that it was deemed necessary to add another waggon to our former number, thereby to lighten the weight of them all. The necessary arrangements for this purpose could be made with great ease since we had determined to spend the following day in taking a survey of the neighbouring country.

The next morning, therefore, I accompanied the Commissary-general, with some others of our fellow travellers, an hour's journey eastward to the part called the Groenekloof. This is the principal place of a district which goes under the same name, comprehending about thirty farms, some larger some smaller. In a still more extended sense the name of Groenekloof is applied to a neighbouring chain of hills broken by a number of little vallies; these hills abound in springs of excellent water, and afford besides good grass for the cattle. This domain was at the time of its first cultivation devoted to feeding the oxen destined for furnishing the garrison, the hospitals, and the slaves, at the Cape Town. It has since been judged better to farm out the furnishing meat for these purposes to private persons, and as the contractors send to distant parts for the cattle, which often grow lean upon the journey from its great length, they are kept here for a time to recover their flesh before they are killed. Six other domains have in like manner been granted by the

government to the same contractors for the purposes of husbandry and feeding cattle.

In these domains the farmers had also the liberty of carrying on salt-works, for which they paid a yearly rent of about twelve hundred dollars, they being bound to furnish the Cape Town with fine salt at the price of three dollars and a half per bushel. - The salt-pans were at some distance upon the shore, but the space was so confined that the works were carried on to great disadvantage, so that the government were in the end obliged to make considerable alterations in the compact.

We returned about noon to the Klavervalley, and in the afternoon visited the brother of our host, Mr. Jacob Van Reenen, a man whose name is well known from his travels into Caffraria.\* This gentleman lives at a place upon the coast called the Ganzekraal, about an hour's distance from the Klavervalley: it formerly belonged to the government, but is now his own property. Both this place and the Klavervalley are among the best and most fertile spots, not only of these parts, but of the whole colony. No people deserve more credit for the great pains they have taken in the improvement of agriculture and the treatment of cattle than the numerous family of the Van Reenens: almost all these brothers, those even who are properly citizens, and inhabitants of the Cape Town, have some farming concerns in the interior. As an instance of Mr. Jacob Van Reenen's attention to these things, and of his ardour in the pursuit of them, it may be mentioned, that he this year has cultivated two hundred and forty acres of land † on which he has bestowed sixteen hundred loads of manure. He told us, moreover, that he could insure excellent crops by only manuring his lands every three years. One of his fields, husbanded in this way, had already produced him crops for twenty-four years successively.

Equal fertility is not observable every where in these parts, and it is in this instance rather to be ascribed to the neighbourhood of the sea than to the goodness of the soil: there are many other spots, particularly the Klavervalley,

---

\* Journal of a journey from the Cape of Good Hope, undertaken in 1790 and 1791, by Jacob Van Reenen and others of his countrymen. By Captain Edward Riou, London, 1792.

† Wherever I speak of measures in this work I must be understood to mean the usual Rhine land measure.

much more fertile by nature than the lands of Mr. Jacob Van Reenen. The property of the latter consists almost entirely of a tract of land more than an hour in length, but seldom exceeding five hundred feet in breadth, which seems formerly to have been the bed of a river, and which towards the south is bounded by a tolerably high shore, which shelters it from the parching winds that blow from that quarter, as well as in some measure from the scorching rays of the sun, both of which have double force when they come over the water. It requires only some observations upon the draining of tracts subject to be overflowed, to render them extremely valuable. That a field of lucerne was mowed eight times in a summer is a striking proof of the great fertility of this valley. Some sorts of European grass which Mr. Van Reenen has sown here have succeeded particularly well. It must not be forgotten that it is these lands which especially require after some years to be supported by plenty of manure.

That such ample returns from the lands is not generally to be expected must not, however, be entirely ascribed to ignorance and want of attention in the owners, but much more to the great distance from the Cape Town, so that they cannot have the same supply of manure, to the want of a sufficient capital to expend upon the culture, and to not having a sufficient number of slaves for tilling the ground. As long as these obstacles continue, and the proprietors depend only on slaves for the culture of their lands, no sanguine hopes are to be entertained of agriculture being greatly improved in the interior of the colony.

Our second day of rest at the Klaver valley was devoted by the Commissary general to visiting another government station called the Groote-post, by which means we saw a different part of the Groenekloof. In the afternoon we were visited by Mr. Jacob Van Reenen and other colonists of the neighbourhood. The former gave me many very interesting details respecting his travels in Caffraria, and evinced a knowledge of the natural history and geography of the country which is seldom to be found among the inhabitants of southern Africa. In his youth he had been in Europe, and had travelled through France and Holland: his wife is sister to our celebrated Mr. Persoon.

Mr. Van Reenen had some of the best horses of his stud brought out to show us. The finest among them was an English horse, which, under the

former government, he had procured from England at much trouble and expence, but he hoped to repay himself by the improvement it had introduced among his breed; indeed, the colts we saw were a convincing proof that his hopes were not likely to be deceived. It is not easy to determine of what species the original race of horses at the Cape may have been, as many of these animals were brought from Europe very early in the establishment of the colony. This is certain, that in the time of Vander Stell, horses were brought hither from Persia; and in the middle of the last century some of the race from South America, here called Spanish horses, were introduced at the Cape Town. These are a sort of dapple-grey horse, of a middling size, very strong in the breast, and are found extremely useful as draught horses. Some of the pure race of the Persians have been preserved in the northern districts of the colony; the peculiar characteristics of these are, that they are very tall, have great strength in their knee bones, and can endure a great deal of fatigue: they are of a light brown colour. Few among either race are strikingly handsome.

People who have studied these matters, assert that an African horse is a third weaker in drawing than an European one, but the former have very much the advantage of the latter in climbing mountains and steep places. The Africans, besides, owing to their being accustomed from their youth to seek their nourishment upon dry mountains, are easily satisfied, and grow so hard in the hoofs that there is no occasion to shoe them. They do not bear very severe or long continued exertion, so that oxen are universally employed to draw heavy waggons destined to go any considerable distance from the Cape Town. To enable them to continue at their work they must often be suffered to rest, and must be well fed with barley or oats. If attention be paid to these things they will hold out longer than European horses under similar circumstances: it is indeed almost incredible what a prodigious quantity of ground they will traverse in a very few days. Most of them go a sort of short gallop, very agreeable to the rider as well as to the horse, and they will hold it out for a long time, if not unreasonably pressed forwards; if pressed, they soon become lame and stiff. This pace appears so natural to the race of horses in question that it is not without some difficulty the riders can ever get them into a trot or walk.

In the evening Mr. Van Recnen entertained the company with a concert performed by his slaves. They played first a chorus, and afterwards several marches and dances upon clarinets, french horns, and bassoons. The instruments were good, and there was great reason altogether to be pleased with the performance, though much was wanting to render the harmony complete. They afterwards played upon violins, violoncellos, and flutes, on which they performed equally well. It is not uncommon to find the same thing among many families at the Cape, and there are many freed-men in the town who gain their living by instructing the slaves in music: but neither master or scholars know a single note: they all play entirely by the ear. This practice receives great encouragement from the natural inclination that the slaves, particularly the Malays, have to music, from the passion for dancing that prevails among the young people of the colony, and from the advantage the gentlemen find in having them at hand on all occasions of festivity. I know many great houses in which there is not one of the slaves that cannot play upon some instrument, and where an orchestra is immediately collected together, if the young people of the house, when they are visited in the afternoon by their acquaintance, like to amuse themselves with dancing for an hour or two. At a nod the cook exchanges his saucepan for a flute, the groom quits his curry-comb and takes his violin, and the gardener throwing aside his spade sits down to the violoncello.\*

On the morning of the 12th of October we quitted the Klaver valley and its hospitable owner. At the departure of the Commissary general he was saluted according to the custom of the country, as the representative of the government, with the firing of some small guns. The same was repeated at almost every place we visited, or only passed by, and it seemed to be made so great a point of by the good people, that they would not have considered

---

\* This account of the readiness with which at the Cape the slaves exchange one employment for another forms a striking contrast to the Hindoo servants in India, no one of whom is ever engaged for more than one purpose, or will ever stir a hand or foot to do any thing which is not his or her particular province. The cook, the groom, the gardener, will work indefatigably from morning till night at their respective occupations, but nothing can induce them, neither threats nor intreaties, neither the hope of being rewarded nor the fear of offending, to give the least assistance in any other, though it should be ever so much wanted.—TRANSLATOR.

any thing but an absolute want of powder a sufficient excuse for omitting it. Even guests of an inferior rank, if they are in any way entitled to distinction, or if people wish to do them honour, are saluted at their departure with firing off a couple of common fowling-pieces. It has many times happened to me in my subsequent travels, when I was alone, that in case of having performed a cure, or done any thing else which gave particular pleasure, such honours were paid to me. The value of this token of respect will be best understood by those who are well aware how much gunpowder is an object of indispensable necessity to the colonists, and how ill they can afford to use it unnecessarily. Without this medium of defence against their savage neighbours and against wild beasts, without the power that it gives of upholding acquisitions already made, and of making new ones in the game that contributes towards the supply of their table, no African household can be long supported:—and it must be moreover taken into consideration, that from the general scarcity of powder which sometimes prevails in the colony, the government will not allow an individual to have more than one or two pounds in his possession at a time;—the value of a single salute is then indeed very great.

Our way lay at first through the hills and valleys of the Groenekloof, till at the north-west extremity of this circuit we arrived at a place called the Oranjefontein: here the country becomes more flat, sandy, and dry. After travelling four hours and a half, we arrived at a small house which stood in a solitary and mournful situation on the declivity of a steep hill, called the Klipberg. This hill had formerly been a signal station, as we recognised from an old cannon now lying upon the top, and the house had been the habitation of the watchman who attended to the signals. Here we found Le Vaillant's well-known hunting companion, John Slaber, now a lean haggard looking old man, who had already exceeded the ordinary limits of man's life. His venerable father, so justly celebrated by Le Vaillant, had been dead more than seventeen years. He died so poor that it was necessary to sell the Teeffontein, and his children were all settled in small farms. He, as well as all belonging to him, spoke in very warm terms of Le Vaillant, and talked over with evident pleasure a thousand little circumstances of his visit. He had learned from other travellers that he was mentioned by Le Vaillant in his writings, and seemed much delighted at being thus brought into notice.

When we questioned our host upon the subject of the tiger-hunt represented by the traveller as so extremely dangerous, he did not seem to make much of it, and on our reading to him the description given by Le Vaillant, he declared that the principal circumstances were mere invention. The good old mother of John Slaber I had seen several times at the Cape Town at the house of my friend Hesse, the Lutheran minister. From her and her daughters I heard like expressions of regard for Le Vaillant, which however were sometimes accompanied with exceptions against his too minute description of their household economy and manner of living together. This worthy woman died in 1804, at the very advanced age of ninety; a length of years rarely attained in these parts.

The continuation of our way was along a stony and sandy plain, which was strewn over with some low solitary shrubs. Many sorts of heath plants enlivened in a degree the dreariness of the scene: we saw several *pelargonias*, *gnidæ*, and *passerinæ*, with here and there a plant something of the lily kind, and abundance of *garteria*, *asters*, *elichrysia*, and others of the *syngenesia* class, the rays of which were even now expanded to the mid-day sun. To our right the great chain of hills which runs from the north to Cape Agulhas reared their rugged heads in the distance, and we could plainly distinguish the peak, at the foot of which on the other side is the ravine which runs to the valleys of Roodezand.

The place which we reached towards evening, and where we determined to take up our abode for the night, is called Uylekraal. It was the farm of a certain Conrad Laubscher, who supported himself by growing corn and breeding horses. In the rude manner in which his house was built, in the scanty manner in which it was furnished, and in the humble clothing of our host, we immediately recognised our being already at a considerable distance from the Cape Town; yet even here there was an attention to neatness and cleanliness, which we could not but acknowledge was extremely commendable; and this we never failed to see among the colonists, even in the most wretched houses upon the borders. The house was too small to lodge the whole party, so some of our tents were set up, and here we commenced sleeping in the field. As there was yet some time remaining before the hour of retiring to rest, Laubscher brought out a light waggon, to which he harnessed eight horses, and taking the reins with one hand and his long whip

with the other, drove our ladies and a part of the company (the rest following on horseback) in an hour to the Teefonstein; which estate now belongs to Mr. John Van Reenen, the eldest brother of the gentlemen whom we had already visited.

All the address of our European waggon drivers vanishes entirely before the very superior dexterity in this way shewn by the Africans. In a very brisk trot, or even in a gallop, they are perfect masters of eight horses, and if the road be indifferent they avoid with the utmost skill every hole and every stone. With horses, as with oxen, the long whip serves not only to regulate the pace of the animals, but to keep them all in a strait line; if any one inclines ever so little from it, a touch from the whip puts him immediately into his place again. Laubscher gave us a singular proof of his dexterity in using his whip, for while we were in full trot he saw at a little distance from the road on a ploughed land a bird which had alighted upon the ground, when giving the whip a flourish, he struck the bird instantly, and killed it upon the spot. His talents in driving astonished us so much the more, as he took the whole management upon himself, nor had any assistance from the slave who usually sits by the driver, and holds the reins, while he only touches them when he wants to guide the horses to the one side or the other: the sharpest corners are turned in this way at full trot. This dexterity is so universal that the people seemed surprised at our seeing any thing in it to admire.

The Teefonstein is one of the best spots in this sandy country, and the grass it produces is particularly good for the feed of sheep and horses. In the shade of high trees these parts are wholly deficient, and those which are to be seen in Le Vaillant's engravings are probably introduced there only with the idea of embellishing the landscape. The water is good and well-flavoured, but not in great abundance: its yellowish hue, from which the spring derives its name, is doubtless owing to particles of iron. We were here regaled with a genuine African dish, the *anis* root,\* which has a strong spicy taste, and when cooked seems extremely nourishing. It is in perfection at this time of the year, and is sometimes brought to the Cape Town as a delicacy.

---

\* Probably the *sium filifolium* of Thunberg.

We returned at night to the dwelling of our host, when I made use of the space afforded by my tent for arranging and putting in order the insects and plants which I had thus far collected. I now perceived that the booty I had acquired far exceeded my expectations, since I had not hoped to find much in this most unfruitful part of the colony. I remarked, extremely to my satisfaction, that these sandy downs were inhabited by insects and plants wholly appropriate to the spot, and varying extremely from those more immediately in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town. Most of them, upon a closer examination, appeared so entirely new, that I must suspect the naturalists who have gone before me of having neglected these parts exceedingly; if not, they must have travelled through them at a very unfavourable season of the year.\* I should conceive that a man could scarcely explore this country without almost involuntarily becoming a naturalist. My spirit of collecting these objects seemed to be caught by many of our party; and what we acquired in a day, which we considered as tolerably productive, was always well worthy our attention. With how much trouble soever the collecting them was accompanied, how great soever were our losses through the want of foresight among the slaves, by the overturning of the waggons, or by the injury received from wet in passing through deep rivers;—or how much soever was suffered from the want of sufficient room for stowing them properly, from the necessity of sometimes gathering the plants in a high wind, or catching the insects in a heavy rain;—still with all these allays to our collections being so good as we could wish, the pleasure we derived from them was greater than can be comprehended by any who do not take delight in similar pursuits.

---

+ The riches of Southern Africa, in objects of natural history hitherto unknown, has been confirmed by the collection of insects which I brought with me. Among between six and seven hundred sorts there were three hundred and forty which Professor Illiger found entirely new. A small collection sent over a short time before by the Lutheran minister, Hesse, to my friend, Mr. Hausmann (an account of which has been given in Professor Illiger's *Entomological Magazine*), was no less rich in rare objects. This collection was chiefly made in the neighbourhood of the Teefontein, and at our visit there we found the daughter of Mr. Van Rencen occupied in completing it.

## CHAP. III.

*Saldanha Bay—Frugal Meal at Geelbek—History and Description of Saldanha Bay.—Upon its Advantages and Disadvantages, and upon the different Plans which have been proposed for obviating the latter.—Flock of Flamingos.—The Islands of Saldanha Bay.—Interesting Old Soldier.*

EARLY in the morning of the following day preparations for our departure were made; when the tents being struck, and with the rest of our field equipage repacked, we set forward at seven in the morning. We came again to the Teefontein which we had visited the day before; and notwithstanding our haste to get on, that we might lie by in the great heat of the day, the friendly owners insisted upon our stopping to take a breakfast with them. We then proceeded on our way through a country very much resembling what we had traversed the day before, passing a stream, called here the Long Fountain, which proved a great comfort to our horses, as it gave them an opportunity of quenching for awhile the thirst by which they suffered so much. From hence the country grows more and more sandy, and it was really grievous to see the exertions which it cost our poor oxen to draw the waggons along. The waggoners had the good sense to propose their going along the eastern shore of the bay, while we ourselves explored the peninsula which lies between the bay and the open sea.

After three hours very fatiguing travelling, both to ourselves and our cattle, in an almost insupportable heat, we at length espied the southern end of the bay: the sight of this smooth expanse of water, surrounded by a circuit of high hills, was quite reviving to us. A house which we saw at a little distance seemed to offer us all that was wanting to the full enjoyment of the scene—protection from the heat of the sun; but, alas! when we arrived we found it entirely shut up, nor was any sign of another human habitation to be discovered within the reach of our eyes. We had therefore half resolved to set up a tent for our honoured chief and the ladies, under the shelter of a

half-ruined shed, when we were addressed by an old man, who appeared of Mozambique, in a language composed of Portuguese, Dutch, and Malay. He gave us to understand that he belonged to the house, and took care of the oxen in a neighbouring field—that his master was absent, but he had come to offer us his services. In answer to our request to be admitted into the house, he said that his master had taken the key with him, but we were exceedingly welcome to the use of his own little apartment. Here we found a clean table, a couple of stools, and a couch with an ox hide spread over it, but in our situation even such accommodations were most acceptable. In addition to what cold provisions we had with us, he brought us his whole little stock of bread; we enquired for eggs, as we saw poultry about the place; but this demand was not easily satisfied. As there was no roost for the hens, they laid their eggs about in the fields, and it was not till after a good deal of searching that our people could collect a dozen. Refreshed, however, by this frugal meal and two hour's rest, we set forwards again in the afternoon: we learnt afterwards from the slaves that this place was called Geelbek.

Our course was now along the western shore of the bay, sometimes upon the very sand itself; sometimes over the rocks which projected almost into the water; when we had indeed a delightful view over the bay. The fishermen's huts strewed about the shore—the still water, peopled with here and there a flamingo, and various other sorts of water-fowl—the hilly tract on the other side, bounded at last by the lofty and picturesque Piket mountain, composed altogether a very fine landscape, which from its diversity was more particularly deserving of admiration. The fault of African scenery in general is that its principal characteristic is a dry and naked uniformity: the lover of the picturesque will above all things find the want of a rich foreground, and must call to his assistance either the habitations of mankind, or their employments.

In the midst of the peninsula a rugged and lofty mountain runs directly into the bay. Over it lies the road, with deep precipices on the right hand, and on the left crags, on which were growing many sorts of succulent plants, and shrubs with leaves of a greenish grey. The noise of our cavalcade frightened numbers of little antelopes, who, starting up on both sides, fled through the bushes, so that we could only now and then catch a glimpse of them as they from time to time raised their heads to look at us. All on a

sudden the van of our troop, who were armed with fowling-pieces, stopped short, alarmed with the writhings of a frightful serpent upon the ledge of a crag, which raised up its crest, swelling and puffing itself out. One of the men aimed his piece at it, and shot it dead instantly. It proved to be a *poof-adder*, as we believed, one of the most poisonous species that are found in this country; but since no branch of natural history in Southern Africa has been hitherto more neglected than the reptiles, I am not able to give the scientific name with any degree of certainty. This animal is distinguishable by a disproportionate thickness, and by a body handsomely spotted with black and white spots upon a brownish ground; it has this peculiarity, that when it is enraged it swells out its neck to a very great size. It measured in length about an ell and a half, and was about six inches round in its greatest circumference.

The sun was already going down when we reached the government-post in Saldanha Bay. The superintendent of the bay, who bears the title of postholder, lives in a very convenient well furnished house upon the shore, to the left of which is a prominent hill, bearing the signal-post on its highest point. By the side of the house is a spring of tolerably good water, but the supply is so scanty that it is secured by a wall and cover, which can be fastened down. The name of the present postholder is Stoffberg: he is by birth a German, and was formerly a subordinate officer in the garrison of the Cape. He received us with great hospitality, and took infinite pains during the two days that we remained here to make us thoroughly acquainted with every thing relating to the bay. The reader will perhaps not be displeased at my inserting an abstract of the information which I obtained relative to this interesting spot.

Saldanha Bay has hitherto had the fate, the perverse fate as it may perhaps justly be called, of being falsely laid down even in the latest maps, and of being no less erroneously described. Of this the following notice, when compared with former ones, will be a sufficient proof.

Antonio de Saldanha, commander of the third division of a Portuguese fleet, which was under the supreme command of the celebrated Albuquerque, and was destined to pursue the discoveries of Vasco de Gama, landed, as Barros\*

---

\* Joam de Barros dos factos que os Portugueses fizavam.—Lisboa 1552. A more ample account may be seen in the History of the Discoveries in Southern Africa.

relates in the year 1503, in a bay of Southern Africa, which was in the sequel called after him, *Alguada de Saldanha*.—This was no other than what is now called Table Bay, as is sufficiently proved by all the circumstances which Barros minutely details. For a whole century it retained the name of the Portuguese hero, and it was called so equally by the English, till in the year 1601 its present name of Table Bay was given it by the Dutch navigator, George Spilberg. It was then, though I have not been able to discover by what means, that the name of Saldanha Bay was transferred to that of which we are now to treat. On account of its want of good water, this has never been much used as a road for large ships, and since the commencement of the seventeenth century it has been little frequented but by whale fishers and seal catchers.

In the beginning of the eighteenth century the Dutch began to cultivate the land in the neighbourhood of the bay, when it soon appeared that particular spots were fertile beyond all expectation. The fields on the coast, above all, which were moistened by the vapours from the sea, afforded, even in the poorest years, abundance of wholesome food for the cattle. How imperfectly this bay was then known is obvious from examining the old maps, and reading the description given of it by Kolbe. In most of the maps it is represented as running a great way inland, in an almost easterly direction; Mr. Barrow's is the first in which a more accurate delineation is given, but on comparing even his with what accompanies this work, it will be found that they differ in many essential points. I leave this comparison to any reader who chooses to make it, as far as the figure of the bay is concerned, and shall only observe here that our maps vary no less as to its situation. According to Mr. Barrow the mouth of the bay is in latitude  $33^{\circ} 10'$  south;—according to my calculations it is  $32^{\circ} 54'$ . \*

Saldanha Bay is unquestionably the most secure and convenient harbour on the whole coast of Southern Africa; indeed, there are not many to be

---

\* Mr. Barrow, in the second part of his Travels, acknowledges the defectiveness of his map, though not with the manly frankness and openness which might be wished. Against the favourable testimony of General Vandeleur, to which he appeals, I must venture to set up my own, and observe that I seldom found it of any use: as, for example, Graaff Reynett and Algoa Bay are laid down a whole degree too far eastward.

found in other parts equal to it for size, security, and the goodness of the anchorage. Five little islands, three of which are at the mouth of the harbour, the other two towards the southern part, appear planted there by the hand of nature, to break the force of the west winds which blow into the bay: it is besides almost surrounded with hills, so that none but the north wind, which is here very rare, can disturb the smoothness and glassy surface of the water. The bay is large enough to contain several fleets; and the northern part of the bason, called the Hoetjes Bay, is of such a breadth, and the water so deep, that the largest ships can not only lie safely at anchor, but can even manœuvre there. Towards the south the bay assumes constantly more and more the appearance of a fresh-water lake; it grows gradually shallower and shallower, and abounds exceedingly with fish. Mr. Stoffberg assured me that as much fish had once been taken in a single afternoon as when salted filled six hogsheads. As this is a sort of food that the slaves love exceedingly, many colonists have fisheries in the bay, or fetch in cart loads from the owners of the above mentioned fishing-huts, the provision for their household. The salted fish is sent from hence over the Tulbagh, even as far as the Bokkeveld and Goudinie. In the winter months the whale, called by Linnæus *balæna glacialis*, appears in shoals in the bay, and may be taken with very little trouble.

The land hereabouts, as has been already observed, is extremely fertile, and by improving the mode of husbandry pursued, the crops of corn might probably be increased at least a third. The garden-vegetables are thought to be particularly well flavoured.

Amid so many favourable circumstances, it may perhaps seem a matter of wonder that at the establishment of the colony this spot was not rather chosen for building a town than the open and insecure shores of Table Bay; at least it may appear strange that ships do not by preference run in here in winter; but against so many advantages one disadvantage must be acknowledged, which perhaps counterbalances them all, and that is the want of good water. The quantity of this indispensable article to be obtained here is so small that it hardly deserves to be mentioned, when the question is to supply a numerous assemblage of persons, or to administer to the wants of a fleet. The well belonging to the spring at the government-post will contain thirty hogsheads, but it is seldom that above a fourth part of that quantity can be

drawn in one day. The postholder can scarcely satisfy the wants of even a very small travelling party, without endangering the not leaving a sufficiency for his own cattle and his household purposes. Another spring upon the signal-post hill is perfectly salt, and though in flowing down it loses this quality in a certain degree, which is somewhat extraordinary, still even at the bottom it is undrinkable: the water has been found equally salt and brackish in several wells that have been dug. A question may here very naturally be asked, whether no attempts have been made to remedy or at least to alleviate this evil, and if any, of what description. It is certain that the attention of many persons who understand these matters perfectly has been exercised upon it, but hitherto to very little purpose. Mr. Barrow, in his work, has offered many well sounding hints upon the subject, but they are only such as had been brought forward long before by different inhabitants of the Cape, This induces me to dwell somewhat diffusely upon them, and to examine the question more closely, and under more variety of aspects than it has been examined by him.

This gentleman, who in some respects is undoubtedly an estimable writer, has, as well as his imitators, raised a great outcry against the confined views, the inactivity, and cupidity of the former Dutch government, which they say threw a damp upon all endeavours at improvement; and this is now become so much the general voice of all the reading part of Europe, that I should be almost fearful of saying any thing in opposition to it, were it not that better information, and a consciousness of the utmost impartiality, urges me to speak, and would render a timid silence an offence against truth. *Audiatur et altera pars.*

It should always be borne in mind that the judgment to be formed of any measure must depend much upon the relation it bears to the powers of the person or persons by whom it is to be pursued, and to the degree of benefit which may eventually be derived from it.—To apply this rule to the present case, it may be asked whether while the Dutch were masters of the colony it was ever desirable that Saldanha Bay should be provided with water and all other things in which it is deficient for supplying the wants of ships: I do not hesitate a moment to answer this question in the negative, and these are my reasons.

Granted that Saldanha Bay was on a sudden amply furnished with water,

and by this means rendered the most eligible harbour upon the whole coast, what would be the advantages derived from it?—that it would be more frequented by ships, that the situation of the country round would be improved, that foreigners would perhaps reside there, that houses would be built, that in short a new colony would be established. But this it must be well understood would continue only as long as it might please the English to remain at peace, and permit neutral vessels free ingress and egress to and from the place.

And how are these advantages to be obtained, excepting at the expense of deserting the present colony at the Cape Town. Enormous costs must be incurred for erecting fortifications, magazines, barracks, and other necessary buildings, above all, a permanent administration in the mother country would be indispensable, that the sub-government here might not be liable to be changed. Another important question is, what number of troops would be requisite to defend works so much more extensive as they must necessarily be, and to garrison the posts which must then be established all along the coast from the Cape to the bay. And for whom would all these enormous expences be incurred?—only for the English, who, at the breaking out of every new war, would probably be seized with their usual longing again to possess themselves of this settlement. Let the number of troops employed by Holland in the defence of the colony be ever so great, the English will send a greater force against it. The favourable circumstances attending the bay may be urged; the little islands at its mouth, the heights by which it is surrounded, so formed by nature for the erection of batteries and works of defence; the superiority of the English naval tactics would laugh at these things, they would sail through, spite of the batteries, and effect a landing at the back of the islands.

No, in the inaccessibility and inhospitality of the African coast, in the unfruitfulness of the soil, and want of water about her bays, has consisted hitherto the principal means of her defence. The force could at any time be concentrated on one point, and being assailable only on the side of the sea, no apprehensions were to be entertained of an attack on the rear by land. The difficulties of a landing in Saldanha Bay were sufficiently experienced by England in its expedition against the colony in 1806. It was superfluous, because the matter would have been much sooner decided in the neighbourhood of the Cape; indeed, the plan must inevitably have miscarried, if the

orders issued by the governor for the inhabitants to retire into the interior of the country, carrying with them their cattle and all their moveable property, or destroying whatever they could not carry away, had been punctually obeyed; and this would have been done, if the citizens of the Cape Town, who had possessions there, had shared in any degree the zeal and enthusiasm of the distant colonists. It would have been an unpardonable fault in the Dutch government, if they had attempted to form a settlement of any consequence in any of the bays near the Cape, since their inability to defend them either by land or water would have rendered them only a certain prey to the enemy in case of a new war.

Let us now examine the plans that have been suggested for procuring a supply of water in Saldanha Bay. Before Mr. Barrow, it had been proposed by Mr. Frederic Kirsten to make a canal from the Berg river to the bay. Against this project, which has cost its supporters many quires of paper, and some drawings, several weighty considerations may be urged: I cannot pretend here to give a complete analysis of them, but the following are among the most important.

In the first place, the little fall that this canal would have. The water for four miles\* up the Berg river continues to be salt, and the canal must commence half a mile higher up, where this river joins its waters with those of the Zout, so that the canal must be carried along a course of six miles and a half. As it is then agreed that the level of the water in Saldanha Bay is the same as that in the Berg river, where it ceases to be salt, there would be no more fall for the waters of the canal through so long a course, than the Berg river has in half a mile: but it seems never to have entered into the heads of the projectors that any attention to the levels of the waters was necessary. Further, in order to conduct the canal by the nearest way, and render it of the greatest possible advantage, high hills must be cut through. Moreover, the whole work must be carried through a sandy country, which is ill suited to an open canal; and if it should be proposed to conduct the water by means of leaden pipes, it must be considered that the least injury received by them in any part would occasion an entire stoppage of the whole. Lastly, the Berg

---

\* It must here be recollected that the writer reckons by German miles, every one of which is equal to five miles English.—TRANSLATOR.

river itself is not at all times of the year well supplied with water, as Mr. Barrow himself observes: the supply is sometimes so scanty, that vessels in Saldanha Bay, depending on this canal for furnishing them with the necessary provision of water, might run the hazard of being detained for a length of time, which would not be found very pleasant. Nay, it is not impossible that through malice the water might be stopped at a moment when large fleets are lying in the bay, which would be a very sufficient reason for deterring them from ever making a second visit of the kind. I say nothing here of the expense: it is estimated by Mr. Barrow at about ten thousand pounds sterling, a sum which might indeed be sufficient in Europe, but not in a country where nothing is done but by the hands of slaves, every one of whom costs at least half a dollar per day, while after all he does not get through above a third part of the work performed by an European day-labourer.

Another plan has been to make the canal from the spring at the White-Cliff, which is not more than a mile and a half from Saldanha Bay, and from which there is a much greater fall. But this spring would never yield half sufficient for any considerable number of vessels;—and here again the advantage derived would not answer the expense incurred.

All the abortive attempts that have been made by digging to find good water still cannot convince Mr. Barrow that none is to be found; the fault has been in the poor peasants who did not understand how to search for it, for water there must be, because at the distance of ten or twelve miles lies a range of high hills, whence it must filter through the ground in subterranean channels, and this is proved by the granite to be found at a certain depth in the earth. This theory of Mr. Barrow's is pretty much of the same nature with that formed by him upon the saltness of the sea, and is one of the errors which in another place he has demonstrated more at large. The difficulty of bringing these lands into high cultivation, according to him, is not to be ascribed to their nature, it must be sought for in the character of the possessors and in the faults of the government, and he dips his pen in the bitterest gall, to represent both, as the *ne plus ultra* of rusticity, of awkwardness, of short-sightedness, and of cupidity. He cannot forgive the Dutch government that it has not expended enormous sums upon the colony

to make it a more brilliant conquest for the minister of his king ;—to render the acquisition of it a more dazzling exploit in the eyes of the people.

It is proved by the registers of the former East-India Company that the establishment at the Cape of Good Hope, during one hundred and forty-three years that it remained under the government of that society, had more than a hundred millions of guilders expended upon it, without reckoning what little the colony itself contributed towards its support. The gains derived from it were at the same time small, since during peace all other naval powers shared the advantages of the establishment, without contributing any thing more to its support than the trifling sum paid for anchorage there. In time of war, on the contrary, the defence of it was an immense expense to the possessors, and the little advantages it derived from its trade were almost entirely annihilated, because not only the ships of the enemy absented themselves, but it was almost equally deserted by neutrals. This colony would long ago have become the prey of one of the two great naval powers, had it not been that their reciprocal envy of each other preserved the possession of it to Holland. They preferred its remaining in the hands of a subordinate power to its passing into those of an enemy, and nothing was more natural than that England should become master of it, when France sunk only to a secondary rank as a naval power.

During the seven years that the colony of the Cape was in the possession of England, not less than sixteen millions of pounds sterling was expended upon it by the British government, as has been asserted by several Englishmen from the most authentic documents, and yet in what a wretched condition was it when restored to Holland in 1803. The inhabitants of the Cape Town alone, and indeed only some individuals among them, had derived any advantage from this enormous expenditure. Luxury was introduced, and from the inundation of merchandise sent thither, articles of clothing and fashion became cheap, without the real wants of the government being therefore satisfied on more moderate terms. The interior of the colony was meanwhile in the highest state of dilapidation, all public institutions neglected, all public buildings suffered to fall into decay. I suspect, not without good ground, that this arose very much from the English government never considering this as a permanent possession ; that having resolved at a peace rather

to give up the Cape than Ceylon, they were not solicitous to make improvements for the benefit of their successors. This seems proved by the little that was done notwithstanding such enormous sums were expended: time will discover whether in their second possession of it the efforts of the British government will be more happily directed. The liberal spirit shewn by this government towards some of her colonies leaves much room for hope: I must however doubt much, whether they will ever be seized with a fancy to carry Mr. Barrow's plans for the improvement of Saldanha Bay into execution.

Another thing in which this bay is deficient must not pass unnoticed, since for that, as well as the former, Mr. Barrow thinks he has found a remedy; this is the want of a good supply of firewood, an article of great importance to vessels which are numerously manned. He conceives that the various sorts of shrubby plants which grow all about these sand-hills might be used for this purpose, especially the thick woody roots of one particular sort (he probably means the *cussonia spicata*), which, as he says, grow to such a size as to form almost a subterraneous forest. But here it must be remembered that the continuance of this provision cannot be depended upon in the case of large fleets requiring to be supplied from it. These subterraneous forests are of very long growth, and would be much sooner destroyed than renewed. Against the proposal to plant the oak, the poplar, and the silver-tree, no other objection need be made than that it is impracticable, since from the saltness of the earth nothing will grow here but the proper natives of the soil; that is to say, when the question is of large trees which strike very deep roots.

To return to the continuation of our journey. It seemed a little extraordinary to us the next morning as we looked through our glasses to the opposite shore of the bay not to perceive our waggons at the appointed place. They arrived there however about eleven o'clock, having toiled all night to make their way through the deep sands. At some places they had been obliged to fasten the hinder waggons to the foremost, and even then, with the united power of four and twenty oxen, great efforts were necessary to get them on. Some idea may hence be formed of the difficulties to be encountered in taking long journeys in this country.

A boat was now prepared, in which I embarked to take a more accurate survey of the bay. It is in this part about a quarter of a mile over, and for

large vessels not navigable much farther in length. In our little boat, the tide being at the ebb, we were obliged to steer at a considerable distance from a vast bank of sand, which, running into the middle of the bay, reduces its breadth by nearly a third. A large troop of flamingos, at least, as we guessed, two hundred in number, were walking about upon this bank apparently to seek for the sand-worms which had buried themselves there. We came within a hundred and fifty paces of them, and could see very plainly their singular manner of eating, raising their food from the ground with the upper part of their bill and then twisting their long necks backwards to make it pass down. I had afterwards a couple of these animals alive in my possession, when I remarked that they never eat in any other way; and as they soon died for want of their accustomed food, I applied myself to a closer examination of their bills, when I perceived that the under part is entirely immoveable, and locked as it were fast into the jaw-bone. It is remarked by the colonists that these birds do not breed here. They disappear entirely in the very hot season of the year, but no young ones are seen among them at their return. Probably the young remain at their birth-place till they have strength enough to undertake a long journey; and that may not be the first year. These birds not being considered as of any use, since no Apicius, Caligula, Vitellius, or Heliogabalus, has yet discovered that their tongues are a particular dainty for the table, are never molested, though it would not be difficult with a well-charged piece to kill a dozen at one shot. They are therefore not shy, so that they will permit people to come very near them before they attempt to fly away.

Another day a larger party of us made a voyage to the nearest of the small islands, called Shapen-Island (*Sheep Island*) from the excellent feed that it affords for these animals. This islet is about an hour in circumference, and resembles very much the Robben-Island (*Seal Island*) at the mouth of Table Bay. The foundation is granite, and here and there appear veins of loam or argile. There is a little spring on the northern side, but the water is brackish, and the supply scanty. The vegetation is confined chiefly to some sorts of the *mesembryanthemum*, particularly the *mesembryanthemum crystallinum*, or ice-plant as it is generally called, and some little shrubby plants. The inhabitants of this as well as the other islands, are chiefly sea-fowl, serpents, and lizards: European rabbits are also to be found, the descendants

of some which were once brought here, and which have increased exceedingly.

Up to this island, or at least within half a mile of it, the bay is deep enough for small vessels; larger must lie between this and the Meeuwen Island, and ships of war will find the depth necessary for them to the north of the islands in the Hoetjes Bay. The three other islands are called the Jutten, the Malagassen, and the Marcus, islands; the last lies the nearest to Hoetjes Bay. About six or seven miles south of these, in the open sea, lies Dassen Island, which is little visited, so that seals are still to be found there, though they are almost extirpated from the other islands. On this island is a simple inscription engraven on a stone to the memory of a Danish sea captain who was buried there. A favourable south east wind and ebb-tide had carried us in an hour from the Government-post to Shapen-Island, but for this very reason our return was tedious, and lasted three hours in a burning sun. In the evening we visited the signal station, from which we had a very fine view over the whole bay with all its islands.

In the house of our host lived an old soldier, now in his eightieth year, who had served under the great Frederick in the seven years war; he had then entered into the Dutch service, and at the taking of the Cape by the English had lost a pension which had been given him as an invalid: in consequence of the distress to which he was thus reduced, the excellent Stoffberg had taken him into his house, where he maintained him entirely. The old man interested us exceedingly, particularly from his extreme vivacity and animation. He had still his faculties perfect, and gave us an account with the utmost energy and accuracy, of the battles in which he had been engaged. He played us some marches and dances upon his violin, with more than common spirit, and remains of former excellence.

Our supper was made principally upon eggs of penguins and sea-gulls,\* which we had collected at Shapen-Island; the flavour of the yolk we thought good, but not equal to that of a hen's-egg. The white acquired by cooking a sort of transparent yellow consistence, which had somewhat the appearance of opal.

---

\* The *aptenodytes demissa*, and *diomedea exulans* of Linnæus.

## CHAP. IV.

*Departure from Saldanha-Bay.—Laubscher's Farm.—Hippopotamus Hunt.—Extreme Age of a Slave.—The Mouth of the Berg-River.—Bay of St. Helena.—Tedious Passage of the Berg-River.—The Piket-Mountain.—The Widow Lieuwenberg's Farm.—District of the four and twenty Rivers.—Leiste's Farm.—Gelukwaard.—Forwardness of the European Plants here.—Cultivation of Rice and Indigo.*

ON Sunday, the sixteenth of October, we took leave of the excellent Mr. Stoffberg and his family, and having sent our horses round the day before to the other side of the bay, we now crossed over ourselves in a boat, and rejoined them: the cavalry had been entertained for the night at a small house upon the strand. Our course lay still through a sandy level country, scattered over with heath plants; but after awhile we began to ascend by slow degrees till we came to the summit of a widely extended hill, called the Mastenberg. After three hours travelling on the other side of this hill, we arrived at a place called the little Spring-fountain, where dwelt a colonist of the name of Stadler: our want of rest and his very kind and hospitable solicitations induced us to stop here for more than an hour.

The number of beautiful insects which I now saw wherever I looked invited me irresistibly to loiter behind, when our company set forwards again, and leading my horse, I indulged myself awhile in pursuing my favourite occupation. The shrubs, which were higher than what we had generally seen, united with several sorts of *protea*, *rhus*, and other small trees, confined the prospect, and brought in some sort to my remembrance the little woods of my native country. I followed, perhaps with too much eagerness, a beautiful chafer which flew before me, till I lost my way, and got into a wrong road. Very possibly I might not have rejoined the company that day, had not some of them, missing me, sent a young colonist in search of their stray companion, when, with the usual sharp-sightedness of his countrymen at tracing any one, he soon found me. By him I was conducted in safety to the house of one of

the richest colonists of the country, Mr. Jacob Laubscher, where the rest of the party had arrived some hours before. We found his house a very indifferent looking one as to the exterior, but more comfortable and better furnished within than any we had yet seen; while the number and size of the out-buildings were sufficient vouchers that our host was a man of no inconsiderable property. Indeed, he maintained a sort of patriarchal household, of which some idea may be formed by stating that the stock of the farm consisted of eighty horses, six hundred and ninety head of horned cattle, two thousand four hundred and seventy sheep, and an immense quantity of poultry of all kinds. The family itself, including masters, servants, hottentots, and slaves, consisted of a hundred and five persons, for whose subsistence the patriarch had to provide daily. The quantity of corn sown upon his estate this year, including every description, amounted to sixty-one bushels.

By what is here stated, it will be seen that an African farm may almost be called a State in miniature, in which the wants and means of supplying them are reciprocal, and where all are dependent one upon another. From the produce of the lands and flocks must the whole tribe be fed, so that the surplus is not so great as might be supposed at first sight; it perhaps hardly more than compensates the outgoings for objects which cannot be raised upon the spot. These may be classed under three heads: first, articles of manufacture, as cloth, linen, hats, arms: secondly of luxury, as tea, coffee, sugar, spices, &c.:—thirdly of raw materials, as iron, pitch, and rosin. 'Tis only through the medium of these wants that a colonist is connected with the rest of the world; and I believe I may venture to assert, that excepting articles of the above description, there is scarcely any thing necessary for the supply of his household which is not drawn from his own premises. All kinds of handicraft works, such I mean as are here wanted, are performed by the slaves, for there are few indeed among them who are not instructed in some mechanical occupation, and the dwelling is surrounded with work-shops of all kinds. It is really interesting to see so many different employments and pursuits comprehended within so small a space.

Over every branch of these works the master himself has an eye of superintendence, and amid such a variety of objects this is no light task: how little soever therefore he may work himself, it would be the grossest injustice to accuse him of sloth or idleness. The African land-owner is incessantly

occupied in some way or other, nor thinks of availing himself of his situation, or his wealth, to shun business, and seek the life of ease, for which, among us, affluence would afford so just a pretence. And though, from the heat of the climate, from his sequestered mode of life, from the absence of that kind of intercourse with his fellow-creatures which is created by living in a city, from the liberality of nature in furnishing him plentifully with all things necessary to satisfy the most pressing wants of life, and other circumstances of a similar nature, the colonists around the Cape acquire a certain phlegm, a slowness in their movements which may be easily mistaken for indolence, and which forms a striking contrast to the restless bustling manner prevalent among the same class in the north of Europe: they are in reality any thing rather than indolent.

What Göthe remarks in his *Fragments upon Italy*, with respect to the indolence of the lower classes at Naples, of which so much has been said, will apply extremely well here. The northern nations, he observes, judge the nations of the south, who live under so very different a heaven, too much according to their own feelings and their own view of things, without making a sufficient allowance for the influence of external circumstances; and he cites, as a confirmation of this remark, the judgment passed by de Pauw in his *Recherches sur les Grecs*.

When Mr. Barrow among the many accusations he brings against the African colonists (and he certainly has not been sparing of them) charges them with extreme sloth, he shows either that he has never paid due attention to their household economy, or that he has no discrimination with regard to the difference of circumstances created by difference of climate, but expects the same exertions from a peasant at the Cape as from an English day-labourer. I forbear here to enter upon a diffuse discussion of this subject, because a more appropriate occasion for it will occur in another part of my work; but I cannot omit observing that even in my first journey I was led almost daily to ask myself whether these were really the same African colonists which the celebrated Mr. Barrow represented as such barbarians, as such more than half savages—so much did I find the reality in contradiction to his descriptions.

The Rietvalley, for this was again the name given to the place where we were now resting, lies very near the Berg-river. Mr. Laubscher's dwelling-

house stands upon a considerable height at not above a quarter of an hour's distance from its bank. The country between affords excellent grass, and if ploughed would no doubt produce corn in abundance. The mouth of the river is about three miles distant from this place, taking a direct line, but double in following all the twistings and windings of the stream. When the north-west wind blows strong into the bay of St. Helena, the salt water not only comes up the river as far as the Rietvalley, but nearly an hour's distance beyond it, so that the inhabitants being deprived of fresh water for their cattle are obliged to drive them to other parts. To balance this inconvenience, the valley has the advantage of being a spot where a disease among cattle called the *lamziekte* (a sort of murrain of the most pernicious kind, since the animal infected with it becomes entirely lame) is wholly unknown. At the time when this disease prevails in any part, cattle are sent hither even from a distance to remain till the danger of infection is over, and this brings sometimes a good deal of money to the purses of the inhabitants.

The Berg-river is remarkable as being the only one within the boundaries of the colony where the hippotamos or river-horse, called here the sea-cow, is to be found. One of the governors, about the middle of the former century, Mr. Tulbagh, thinking it would be a pity to extirpate these animals, and that some ought to be preserved, set a fine of a thousand guilders upon the destruction of a river-horse. According to Laubscher's account, there was now in the river ten or twelve of these monsters, who in the day-time scarcely ever appeared above the water, but who often came on shore at night, and did great damage in the fields, not only eating the young corn, but trampling down a great deal more with their heavy unwieldy feet. On the very day of our arrival one was perceived in the valley directly opposite the house. This occasioned permission to be given by the Commissary-general for a hunt of these animals to be commenced, only one of which however was to be killed. When this was done, the skin, the skeleton, and the principal entrails, were to be carefully prepared, and dispatched to the Cape Town, since we were sufficiently near to it for this to be practicable; from the distance at which in general these unwieldy monsters are to be found, like preparations are in danger of being much damaged in the transport. But alas! our plan, however excellently arranged, was in the end wholly frustrated, and the chase was of necessity abandoned. As it can only be per-

formed by water, a boat was ordered out for the purpose, but when we came to examine it we found it was leaky, nor was there one to be procured in which we could trust ourselves upon the water without manifest danger. We were therefore obliged to be contented with examining the traces which the animal had left upon the shore: the impression of the foot was as large as an ordinary sized trencher, and in the mud close on the shore, where the creature had sunk deeper, between the marks of the feet was plainly to be discerned a furrow made by the large protuberant belly.

Another object worthy of remark which we saw in this neighbourhood was a slave who must have nearly attained the great age of a hundred and twenty. Although he could not tell his age himself, it might from many circumstances be calculated nearly to a certainty. He perfectly remembered that when he left his native country of Java, General Van Outhoorn, was governor of Batavia, and the period of his government was from 1691 to 1704. Besides, on the first of January, 1801, he came in the morning to offer his best wishes to his then master upon the commencement of a new century, when he added that it was the second time he had performed this ceremony. A hundred years before, he, with all his fellow slaves, had presented themselves before his then master at the Cape Town, to offer him the like good wishes; and it was only by his having done so that he could on the second occasion instruct his comrades in their duty, since it was a piece of courtesy which they were not aware ought to be practised. He moreover described accurately what the Cape Town was at that time, consisting only of a few small houses, without any church, and a wooden castle. He spoke with great warmth and gratitude of his master, Mr. Milde, who he said took such excellent care of him though he was not able to work any longer; praises which were echoed unanimously by all the slaves. Indeed, whoever had an opportunity of contemplating, though but for a short time, the deportment of this excellent man towards his children, his household, and dependents, the manner in which he issued his commands, administered reproofs, or inflicted punishments, must almost have fancied that he saw the days of the patriarchs revived. Nor are such instances rare. The truth is, that instead of the odious representations which have been made by some persons of the behaviour of masters in this country towards their dependents, being descriptive of their general conduct, these have rather been taken from parti-

color instances which ought to have been cited as exceptions: nor have any circumstances relating to the colony of the Cape been more misrepresented than the manner in which the colonists conduct themselves towards their slaves and Hottentots.

On the eighteenth of October we agreed to make an excursion to the mouth of the Berg-river. Mr. Frederic Kirsten, whose name I have already mentioned in speaking of Saldanha Bay, had invited us to a small estate of his called Fishwater, near the mouth of the river, whence we could take a nearer view both of that and the bay of St. Helena.

This bay both in its figure and situation resembles Table Bay very much; it is open to the same winds, and equally insecure. I must here observe that this was the first place in these parts visited by Europeans. Vasco de Gama landed here, according to Barros, in November, 1497, on the day of St. Helena, which occasioned the name of this saint to be given to the bay, and it is the only place upon the coast which has retained its original Portuguese name; the rest have been all exchanged for Dutch ones.\* Some doubt may indeed be started whether there has not equally been a change here, since Barros expressly says that Gama did not find any river in the bay where he landed, and was obliged to procure a supply of water four Portuguese leagues farther northward; this river he calls *Rio San Jago*. Unless therefore it can be allowed that the Berg-river had at that time a different course, which is by no means impossible, we must suppose the bay where Gama landed to be some other than what is now called the bay of St. Helena.

The Berg-river, which is not in general broad, is about a hundred and sixty or a hundred and eighty feet over at its mouth. It shares the general fate of rivers in Southern Africa, the mouths of which are almost all choked with banks of sand. This, as well as most others, has a considerable fall, and at some parts of the year the stream is rapid indeed, carrying with it large quantities of soil and sand. Besides, these rivers with few exceptions empty themselves into the open sea, so that the winds which blow against the shore often for many months together, drive the sands up from the sea, when uniting with those that are brought down the stream, they constantly increase

---

\* It is true that the name of Saldanha Bay is Portuguese, but it must be remembered that the bay now so called is not that to which the name was originally given.

the obstructions. According to the time of year, during one part of which the power of the waves from the sea, and during the other the force of the stream preponderates, the bank of sand spreads out in breadth, or runs in length into the sea. Most of the streams on the southern coast may be forded at the mouths at ebb-tide, some are even quite dry. As the coast runs northward, some rivers which flow to the west, running through large sandy plains, are entirely lost in the sands before they reach the sea. Nor is this confined to small streams; it is equally the case even with pretty considerable rivers. The Orange-river, which at a distance up the country has a narrow rocky channel, over which it rushes with great force, and with a violent noise, nevertheless, in its subsequent progress, when it flows through a widely extended sandy plain, becomes an easy prey to the absorbing rays of the sun: an additional instance of the impotence of broken and divided powers.

The bank at the mouth of the Berg-river is so nearly dry at ebb-tide as not to have above two foot water, so that it is difficult even for small sloops to pass in and out of the river. It was a project of Monsieur Degrandpré's to clear the bank quite away so as to make a passage for large ships; but it must be obvious at the first glance that this was the idea of a man wholly ignorant of the subject on which he pretended to treat, and one that could only be countenanced by those who understand nothing of the nature and causes of like obstructions; who are moreover wholly ignorant of the difficulties attending the opposing by works of any kind the force of the waters upon an open sea-coast.

In examining the coast northwards from the bay of St. Helena, it will appear obvious that in all the maps of the country hitherto drawn, this bay has been placed far too much to the north. Its direction from hence according to the compass is north north-west. About an hour and half south from the bay lies the Partridge Mountain, between five and six hundred feet high. From this hill Table Bay may be seen very distinctly. General Janssens, indeed, when he was here in the year 1804, remarked that he and all the company with him could plainly distinguish with their naked eyes a vessel sailing into the bay. The clearness of the air, and the glittering of the white sail in the setting sun, favoured exceedingly the distinguishing such an object, yet it

seems almost incredible, if the fact had not been vouched by several respectable witnesses, that at the distance of eighteen geographical miles, upon such a height, a ship could be discovered without the help of glasses.

I was once upon the Table Mountain with some friends, when we saw by the help of the setting sun a ship in the west, which the next day came into Table Bay. The captain on my questioning him about the situation of his vessel, for his I supposed it to be, which I had seen the preceding evening, referred to his log-book, when he found every thing answered my description so well, that it was impossible to doubt its having been the same that I had seen, though he could not at that time descry any land. This was owing to his being so low in the offing, and surrounded by the vapours of the sea: he calculated that he must then have been from twenty-eight to thirty miles distant from the Table Mountain.

The estate of Mr. Kirsten, as well as several other neighbouring possessions, abound with excellent pasture for horned cattle: they are for this reason distinguished by the appellation of *cattle places*. We were here regaled with an excellent sort of fish, the season for catching which in the river had but just commenced; and it was admirably dressed. Here, as in Saldanha Bay, such vast quantities of fish are taken, that the trade to the inland parts in salted and dried fish contributes very essentially to the support of the inhabitants of the coast.

We returned in the evening to the Rietvalley, and the next morning proceeded on our journey, after having taken an affecting leave of our hospitable kind-hearted host Laubscher and his family. We followed the course of the river for some time, till we arrived opposite the residence of Mr. Kirsten, which lay on the other side. A part of our company had got into a boat which was sent to meet them about half way, and ascending the stream, arrived here before us. As the river is here very deep, and it is not worth while to have a ferry-boat, since the road is too little frequented to answer the expense of it, and as a bridge is still less to be thought of on account of the frequent overflowings of the river in winter, so it cost us no small trouble and delay to get our whole cavalcade over. The men crossed in boats, and at each turn some of the horses were held by the bridle and made to swim over. The oxen likewise swam over, but in order to make them take the water, we were obliged to get a couple of the oxen

belonging to the house, who were accustomed to it, to lead the way. The waggons were unloaded, empty casks were fastened to them, and then they were towed over, after which the goods were brought in boats, and the waggons re-loaded. This mode of passing a river had to an European entire novelty to recommend it, and presented such a succession of pictures from the swimming cattle and floating waggons, and from the variety of objects on the bushy and already picturesque banks of the river, that it might indeed be called highly interesting.

Often was the wish entertained among us at remarkable scenes and spots like this, that we could all draw, so that the perpetual remembrance of them might be preserved to our eyes as well as to our minds; and every occasion that inspired such wishes awakened anew our regrets for the loss of one who would have been a most valuable companion to us upon our journey. This was a young man of the name of Moreauval, who, from his superior talents in drawing and engraving, was destined to accompany us from Holland to the Cape; but he was most unfortunately on board the Dutch transport, the *Vrede*, which in November, 1802, was wrecked in the Channel upon the English coast, where he, with many other persons of worth and talents, found a watery grave.

The passage of the river, with the unloading and re-loading the waggons occupied so much time that we soon found it would not be possible to proceed farther on our journey that day. I therefore availed myself of the opportunity afforded by our detention to sally forth as the evening closed in, accompanied by some of my fellow-travellers and a couple of stout African hunters, down the banks of the river in hopes of finding a river-horse, and if possible shooting him. My pains were however fruitless, and after a long and ineffectual search, we returned late in the evening disappointed to the house.

Our road from Kirstenfontein, which was the name of Mr. Kirsten's house where we had passed the night, ran eastward along the right bank of the Berg-river, through a deep tiresome sand, but scattered over with some pretty little flowers, particularly several sorts of *pelargonia*, but nothing like a bush high enough to afford the least shade to the traveller. The great sand-mole is here in such abundance that it is necessary to attend very much to horses who are not accustomed to them and aware of them: the burrows made by

these animals are so large and deep that the leg of a horse will sink into one in a moment up to the body, when both horse and rider must inevitably fall. This happened to several of our company in the course of the day, but without any serious accident.

A bend of the river every now and then somewhat diversified our route, and at intervals we found the bank grown over with a small leafy sort of grass, the fresh colour of which contrasted in a pleasing manner with the grey green of the other plants. Although the hot season was but just set in, we found parts of the river already nearly dry, with only a sort of little gutters in the slaty and loamy bank, through which very diminutive streamlets were flowing: where the bed of the river is more level, the water collects itself again, and since these parts are commonly deeper, it remains there a much longer time. Such places are called here pits, and have commonly *cattle places* upon their banks. We remarked on both sides of the river a number of small houses and huts scattered about, every one of which denoted a *cattle place*. The care of these places is commonly entrusted by the owners to a couple of old slaves or Hottentots, and at certain times of the year the cattle are sent to them for the sake of the food they afford, or to avoid the murrain.

Having performed half our day's journey about noon, we rested awhile at the habitation of a colonist, and then proceeding onwards, found ourselves approaching the Piketberg, a pretty hill, which has its course almost parallel with the great chain of mountains that runs from north to south.

These mountains are known at a great distance from their broken summits, which on both sides give them the appearance of being as it were crenated. The enormous columns of sand-stone which rise at intervals, and occasion this appearance, give reason to suppose that there was once no breaks, that the summit was one continued ridge: their whole appearance is indeed very remarkable, and it is difficult for some time to be convinced that they are productions of nature, not works by the hand of man, so much do they resemble ruined towers, or relicks of other great buildings. These natural columns extend very far northward, standing like an interminable row of isolated towers, even where the ridgy summit of the mountain flattens into a widely-extended sandy plain. My readers may, perhaps, have already seen them thus described by Mr. Barrow.

Just as the twilight began to come on we reached the southern point of the Piketberg, against which the stream of the Berg-river dashes, changing its northern for a north westerly direction. In a broad ravine, abounding with water, called the Rietkloof, we found the house where we were to rest for the night. We were regaled by the owner, who gave us a very hospitable reception, with a bountiful supply of China oranges, which at this distance from the sea, in a soil so favourable to them, and under the shelter of the mountains, are particularly fine. A small stream of clear water runs close to the house, which sometimes swells in winter, from heavy rains, to a destructive breadth. We saw still remains of the devastations which it had made the winter before in the corn-fields of our host. We heard heavy complaints of the murrain among the cattle, to which, at certain times of the year, they are here very subject, while the sea-coast is perfectly free from it.

On our walk to the house we first saw a woman of the Bosjesman race,\* and had ocular conviction of the truth of all we had previously heard respecting the uncommon ugliness of these people, particularly of the females. She sat more than half naked at the entrance of a miserable straw hut, near a fire of fresh brushwood, which exhaled a terrible smoke and vapour, and was occupied in skinning a lean hare, which her husband, a Hottentot, and herdsman to our host, had brought with him from the field. The greasy swarthiness of her skin, her cloathing of animal hides, as well as the savage wildness of her looks, and the uncouth manner in which she handled the hare, presented altogether a most disgusting spectacle. She took no farther notice of us than now and then to cast a shy leer towards us.

The following day's journey was much pleasanter, from the greater variety and novelty of the objects with which we were presented. Instead of the wearisome sandy plains by which we had been so much annoyed, we had now before us hills and mountains, which not only afforded firmer footing to our horses and oxen, but presented us with many pleasing and picturesque views. We pursued our way along the heights to the southern part of the Piketberg, where, amid the gentle slopes and intersecting vallies, the plain was soon wholly lost. At the feet of these slopes we saw scattered many

---

\* A tribe of savage Hottentots who lurk about among the shrubs and bushes, whence they sally out to plunder travellers. *Bosjes* signifies a bush, and *bosjesman* is a bush-man, or a man who lurks among the bushes.

pretty dwellings surrounded with trees and corn-fields, more than one of which would have afforded a good draughtsman an excellent opportunity of sketching genuine African scenery to the best advantage. The ravine to our left was well grown over with bushes, several of which were now in bloom, and the damp had occasioned numbers of insects to fasten upon them, so that a rich harvest was collected. By noon we had left the Piketberg wholly behind us, and began to descend into the valley on the other side of it. A large farm, with a wood of towering oaks, and dark leaved orange-trees, lay before us. How delightful was it to Europeans!—what a reviving sight to travellers who had been toiling all the long day over dry parched African wastes, to behold the cool shade of trees richly clothed with the most luxuriant foliage!

The place which we now reached we all agreed was a most enchanting abode. At the door of a very neat well built house we were received by the owner, a venerable matron already advanced in years. A double row of oaks spread their shade over the turf beneath, and a little stream of clear water ran obliquely through it. In the true spirit of that hospitality which we almost invariably found, we were soon served with a simple meal under the trees, the enjoyment of which was extremely increased by the kindness of our hostess, by the charms of the spot, and by resting from the fatigues we had endured. A mandarine tree, \* amid whose dark green leaves shone a profusion of golden fruit, afforded us an excellent dessert. In order to leave a memorial of our friendly disposition towards the good old widow Lieuwenberg, and our gratitude for the reception she had afforded us, the Commissary-general wrote some lines in her bible, in which, besides his acknowledgments to herself, he paid some compliments to the place, and to the nice order in which it was kept, with regrets that so few of the colonists embellished their habitations in like manner by planting trees about them.

In the afternoon we again proceeded on our way, and towards evening

---

\* The mandarine apple, called at the Cape *marretjes*, is a sort of sweet-orange unknown in Europe; it is distinguished from others of the species by the fruit, as well as the tree being smaller than most of them, and by the thickness of the rind. It is a native of Japan, and was brought from thence hither. The flavour is much finer than that of any other sweet-orange.

came to the foot of the great chain of mountains. The country from the Piketberg hither was more fertile, and abounding more in water than that through which we had previously travelled;—of this the much greater number of farms that we passed in our way, and saw on either side of us, was a sufficient proof. We were now in the fertile district called that of the four and twenty rivers. It has this name from the number of little streams that water the valley; the principal of these flows from an open ravine in the mountains, and in its course such multitudes of smaller ones branch out from it, that they have been fixed at the number of twenty-four. All these branches in the end re-unite, and here the stream is fordable, but not without a proper guide who understands the exact direction that ought to be taken in fording it: there are otherwise spots where the bottom is so morassy, that a horse and man might sink in an instant, without the possibility of their being saved. In heavy rains this river is very subject to overflowing its banks, when the numberless little islands formed by the winding branches are entirely lost. The whole then appears one large wide stream, and all intercourse between the neighbours is precluded for weeks together. A few hours hence its waters unite themselves with those of the Berg-river.

We had quitted the direct road, and did not arrive till dark at a place called Gelukwaard, the property of a worthy honest German, by name Leiste. Thirty years before, this man had come to the Cape as an under-trader in the service of the Dutch East-India Company, and on account of his great mathematical knowledge was, by the then Governor Van Plettenberg, taken into the service of the government. He was for a long time invested with the place of sworn land-surveyor, and at the suggestion of the Governor Van de Graaff undertook several journeys for the purpose of improving the maps of the country. He afterwards by marriage obtained this place, and through his practical knowledge, his industry, and activity, was now become one of the richest colonists of the country, and the oracle of the whole neighbourhood. Besides Gelukwaard, he had an estate in Zwartland, which facilitated his trade with the Cape Town, and several *cattle places* in the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld. His accurate knowledge of the country which we proposed to travel over induced our chief to determine on remaining here, while our waggons underwent some repairs which now began to be much wanted; and he hoped from this very intelligent man to obtain such

information as would enable us to trace out an improved plan for the continuance of our journey.

The following day afforded us an opportunity of becoming thoroughly acquainted with all the charms of the spot. Its situation directly under the lofty, steep, and craggy mountains, the bright green of the broad avenues of old oak, the excellently husbanded pastures and corn-fields, the nicely-dressed vineyards, orchards, and orangeries, the sight of numberless well-fed cattle, and the widely extended circle of neat buildings for barns, stables, wine-presses, and work-shops, formed altogether a most delightful assemblage of objects. Easy affluence, rational utility, prudent caution, and careful attention to every thing being kept in the most exact order, were every where conspicuous throughout this little domain.

Wine, lemons, sweet-oranges, and dried fruits, are the principal produce of this place, as well as of the fertile district of the four and twenty rivers. The great distance of the Cape Town, whither every thing must be transported in waggons, derogates in some sort from the advantages which might otherwise be drawn from the fertility of the spot. It is only in years when the crops of corn have been indifferent in other parts, and the price is consequently unusually high, that the profit will pay the expense of the transport. The journey backwards and forwards occupies from ten to twelve days, so that the cost of keeping for so long a time the cattle necessary to draw the waggons cannot be repaid but by selling the corn at a very high price.

The wine is here particularly good, and Mr. Leiste has for some years turned his attention exceedingly to the culture of the vine, and the best modes of improving it; though he is well aware that, to introduce the European manner of cultivating vines under the idea of improvement, would probably be committing a great mistake. The best manner of cultivating them must indeed every where be principally dictated by the nature of the climate; the most important object here is to keep them clean from weeds, and in this the cultivators seldom fail. The three principal objects for obtaining good wine, plenty of slaves, ample buildings, and store of casks, are possessed by most of the colonists. Excellent Cape Madeira, and the Cape Pontac, as it is called, are the sorts which succeed best on this side the country; the fine sweet Cape-wine is not so good here as to the east of the Table Mountain.

It may be instanced as a proof of the fertility of this climate, that we saw an oak eight feet in the girth, which was only twenty-four years old: it was one of an avenue which Mr. Leiste himself planted at that time. Yet we must not omit to observe, that the growth of all plants from the north of Europe is here injuriously rapid, because they have not the rest in winter which properly belongs to them. In a month, or a month and half after they have lost their leaves, the buds and blossoms are again coming out, for the cold never sinks to the freezing point, and a clear winter's day here is as warm as our finest days in spring. The consequence is that some trees will not succeed at all, as the lime, otherwise the Dutchman's favourite tree, the elm, the beech, the ash;—that some, as for example, many of our orchard trees, the cherry, and several sorts of plumbs, apples and pears, bear very indifferent fruit;—and that other trees, as the oak, the horse chesnut, and the fir, which yet look thrifty, are very inferior in the goodness of the wood to the same sorts in their native soil. An oak of two foot diameter in the trunk will not have a kernel of above two inches good hard wood like our oak; all the rest is mere sap; and the fir-wood is so weak and porous that it is hardly useable. This pre-maturity is the character of all products about the Cape not natives of the country: it is the same with animals as with plants, and is particularly striking in horses: it may almost be said to be the same with the human race, both as to their physical and moral nature; and this may justly be considered as one of the principal obstacles to their ever arriving at their proper size and strength.

How little any object tending to improve his property, and increase the products of the country, escapes the enterprising spirit of our host, was instanced by our seeing here plantations of rice and indigo. From two hat's full of the former sown he had gathered a crop of between sixteen and seventeen bushels. The rice was very fine and white, much better than the East India rice, and nearly as good as the Carolina. Yet, notwithstanding this abundant produce, on calculating the costs of transport he found that he could not get a price for it at the Cape Town sufficient to answer the expense. This plant is besides, as he told us, particularly troublesome in the cultivation, from the necessity of keeping it constantly well watered, and of employing a number of slaves the whole summer through to frighten away the flocks of bulfinches (*loria astrilda*) which otherwise would almost

**destroy** the plantations; and during this time the slaves are lost for all other **kinds of** work. In very dry years moreover, notwithstanding all possible **attention** being paid to watering it, the harvest sometimes fails entirely. Nor could **the** indigo, he said, be produced without equal difficulties and inconveniences, and even then what he had gathered was of a very indifferent quality. But the most important objection to both, he observed, was, that the **cultivation** of them was evidently injurious to the health of the slaves employed in it. These considerations had nearly determined him to abandon his **project**, and the rather as the price of both articles at the Cape Town had fallen **considerably** since he had first engaged in it. A strict regard to the **bodily health** of his slaves we observed indeed to be conspicuous throughout every **part** of the worthy farmer's establishment. We saw here another remarkable **instance** of longevity among this class, in the person of a Malay slave now **a hundred** and seven years old.

Through the adroitness of our friendly host's smith, and waggon-wright, our **waggon**s were soon thoroughly repaired, while the hospitable reception given to the **whole** party, even to the lowest among our slaves and Hottentots, had **entirely** recruited our strength, and given us new vigour to encounter the **further** fatigues that awaited us. A heavy rain, which had fallen during the **two days** that we rested here, having ceased, on the twenty-fourth of October **we** quitted the charming Gelukwaard, impressed with a deep sense of **gratitude** for the extreme politeness and hospitality with which we had been **received**; and proceeded onwards in a fine clear day, breathing with delight the **refreshing** air which in this country succeeds a heavy fall of rain.

## CHAP. V.

*The White-Ant Heaps.—Pikenienskloof.—Upon Mr. Barrow's Exaggerations respecting the Barbarity of the Colonists.—The Berg-Valley.—Tribes of Apes.—The Hottentokraal.—A Hottentot of the Tribe of the Great Namaaquas.—Encampment in the Long-Valley.—Picturesque Mountain Scenery.—Jakhal's Valley.—Preparation of Leather for Thongs.*

WE proceeded now directly northwards to the foot of the great chain of mountains, passing many very pretty farms; but we remarked that in proportion as our distance from the valley of the twenty-four rivers increased, the dry and dull uniformity of the country, of which we had already had so much reason to complain, increased also. Many little rivulets running from gulleys in the mountains intersected our way, and the depth of their beds evinced the height to which, though now mere streamlets, the waters rise in heavy rains, or when the snow, which in winter covers the summits of the mountains, melts and flows down their sides. It was not without considerable difficulty that we sometimes got our waggons through these deeply sunken channels.

For the first time in our journey we now saw an immense number of white-ant heaps strewn all over the fields on both sides of us.\* They were of the size and form of bee-hives, and so hard that a heavy-loaded waggon in going over them did not level them entirely. They abound particularly in what

---

\* The *termes fatale*, or white-ants, are in some countries, particularly in Guinea, a real plague, since they eat into and destroy wood-work, houses, ships, furniture, cloaths;—nay, they will even work themselves in a short time into the trunk of a very strong tree, so as entirely to spoil it. The queen of these ants lays eighty thousand eggs in four and twenty hours. These insects live together in immense numbers, and build themselves curious dwellings in the earth, where they lead an extraordinary kind of life, as may be seen from an account of them by H. Smeathman, published in the English Philosophical Transactions, Vol. LXXI. or from the German translation of the same work, by F. A. A. Meyer, of Gottingen.

are called in this country *sour-fields*,\* but are never to be found on sandy plains and low moist grounds, any more than on the true Karroo-soil. This latter soil differs from that of the *sour-fields* in the greater proportion of iron that it contains, and the ants that are found in the Karroo-country must be considered as an entirely different species from these now in question, inasmuch as they are considerably smaller, and never build above the earth.

Wherever white-ant heaps abound, traces of the *myrmecophaga*, or ant-eater, are always to be found. The colonists collect these ants to feed their poultry, and they soon render them fat: the ant-heap is laid open with a pike, when the animals come out in multitudes, and the people gather them up by handfuls, and put them in bags to carry them home. The heap when broken up is found full of little cells like a coarse sponge, which, from their colour and solidity, shew that some portion of the juices of the animal must be combined with the loam to form such a building. It is probably this addition which makes the composition good fuel; at least a fire already kindled may be made to burn considerably brighter, by adding to it a piece of an ant-heap: they are not indeed so combustible as coal, but a piece between two layers of wood makes an excellent fire. In burning they lose their dark hue and hardness, and nothing seems to remain but the mixture of sand and loam of which the soil is composed. These ants do not here get into houses and destroy the provisions as in some places; they differ in this respect from those of Java, which have sometimes actually done a great deal of mischief in the warehouses of the East-India Company; and have still more frequently

---

\* The name of *sour-fields* is given to such lands as are a mixture of sand and loam, and only produce spontaneously a coarse rushy kind of grass, though by cultivation they may be made to bear some sorts of artificial grasses. They are called *sour-fields*, because this sort of grass is very apt to turn sour in the stomachs of the cattle that feed upon it. It is nevertheless considered as a wholesome food to horned cattle, and when accustomed to it they grow lean if it be changed suddenly for milder grass. The most fertile parts where the fine grass is produced are called in contradistinction *sweet-fields*. The hillocks at the feet of large mountains, particularly on the southern sides, are commonly *sour-fields*. They are seldom to be found higher than a hundred toises above the level of the sea, and lie in about the same regions as where succulent and rocky plants generally grow. As the white-ant heaps are a certain proof of a *sour-field*, so wherever the plant *kuhnia rhinocerotis* is seen growing it is immediately known to be a *sweet-field*.

been accused of it when an account was required of the disappearance of wares which had vanished in a very different manner. A keeper of the magazines once, when some bars of iron and a quantity of bells were missed, had the impudence even to accuse the ants of having destroyed them.

We rested at noon at the house of a widow, again of the name of Lieuwenberg, but who was by no means in the same happy circumstances as the former one of that name whom we had visited. She had the terrible misfortune of having three daughters idiots: the young women were grown up, and not ill-formed, but according to the information of the neighbours, this imbecility was a family disease: traces of it were to be found in some other of the poor woman's nearest relations.

In the evening we arrived at the foot of the Pikenierskloof, a passage over the mountains leading to the districts of the Roggeveld, and the Elephants'-river.\* The house in which we were to take up our abode for the night belonged to a widow Coetzé, and was at this moment full of guests, some going to the warm bath at the Elephants'-river, some returning from it. This bath is considered as particularly salutary in gouty and rheumatic complaints, and is much frequented at this time of the year by people afflicted with them.

The guests talked to us very much of the passage over the mountain, representing it as fatiguing to ourselves, and even dangerous to our heavily-loaded waggons. Indeed, the next morning when we proceeded on our journey we found their representations in great measure verified. From the steepness of the hill it was impossible to carry the road directly over it, but it forms a zigzag turning repeatedly, though always ascending. The turnings are of necessity often pretty sharp, and this occasions the great difficulty to the waggons. At such moments the whole team of oxen cannot be made to draw at once, and the waggon is in danger either of running back, or, if it turns too sharp, of being wedged against the rock. We sent our baggage forwards very early in the morning, following ourselves an hour later, when

---

\* The annexed plate shews this passage over the mountain, and in the front is our cavalcade exactly in the order in which we arrived at its foot. The farm to the left is that where we lodged. To embellish the landscape, the person who sketched the design has been guilty of an anachronism, and made the waggons already ascending the mountain.



© Cornhill engr.

*View of the - Pilsenerboof.*

*Pub. by T. Agnew & Sons, 15, Broad Street, London.*



about half way up the kloof\* we found one of our waggons stuck fast, nor was there any other means for its release but to unload it, and set it right by the exertions of our own strength, instead of employing that of the oxen. It must indeed be considered as a matter of no small self-congratulation when a waggon reaches the top of the hill without any accident; since no help being near, a mischance of this kind may delay the journey a whole day.

To an European who has not been accustomed to the Alps, or any other of the mountainous parts of that quarter of the globe, it is really a curious spectacle to see the progress of an African caravan through such a pass as the Pikenierkloof. In contemplating this stupendous mountain one is tempted to exclaim at the boldness of him who first thought of drawing a carriage of any sort over such a height; nay, even to consider the attempt as a sort of presumption. Nothing but the necessity of passing with all his effects this mighty barrier, planted by the hand of nature, if desirous of inhabiting the fertile vallies beyond it, could have inspired courage to form the project, or fortitude to surmount all the hardships which opposed its execution, and finally to carry it through. The rugged wildness of these lofty regions, the gigantic masses of naked rock, the tremendous height from which one looks down upon the precipices below, makes it almost incomprehensible how a heavy loaded waggon should ever reach the summit; and the immoveable vastness of nature forms a striking contrast with the perpetual movement of man, who, when brought into such a comparison, appears little even in his greatest undertakings.

Here the African traveller is first fully convinced of the necessity of making the waggons so exceedingly strong, and understands why the patient hard-labouring ox is to be preferred for drawing the load, to the fiery, spirited, but comparatively, in point of strength, powerless horse. The nearer we arrive at the top the steeper the hill becomes, the turnings are more frequent, and it is still more and more fatiguing to the draught-cattle. Here it is, notwithstanding, that the greatest strength must be exerted, that not a

---

\* The reader is probably aware from other travels that the term *kloof* is not appropriated solely to the passage of which we are here speaking; it is a general name given to all mountain-roads of a similar kind.

moment's respite to exertion can be allowed, lest the waggon should run back, when that, with its whole lading, the oxen, and the men themselves, would be in the utmost danger, if not of being totally demolished, at least of receiving some frightful injury. We ought not therefore to be too severe upon the African waggoners, if at such a moment they employ powerful means to make the almost exhausted oxen put forth all their remaining strength, and this is the more necessary, as under such circumstances they not unnaturally become obstinate and unwilling to move, nor will mind the voice of the waggoner, or even his usual whip. It is really grievous to see the oxen, particularly the hindermost pair, when from a sharp turning in the road the fore ones cannot draw, lashed with a thick thong of Rhinoceros leather, or goaded with an iron spur; but there are moments when it is only by such means that they can be made to go on.

It is however wronging the Africans much, how rough soever their manners may be, to assert, as Mr. Barrow does, that they delight in such barbarity; but it is scarcely worth while here to controvert what this writer says, since his own assertions contradict themselves. Who can believe, for example, that a wound of seven inches long and two inches deep, and such he affirms are made by these barbarous peasants in goading on their cattle, could be healed in three days: it is impossible for such a wound to be healed in so short a time. But on this subject I must beg leave to contradict him, for I can safely affirm that I never saw an ox with scars of goads, which he asserts to have seen in such abundance. The colonists indeed shudder at the thoughts of misusing the poor animals in such a way, and I never met with but one who remembered having been under the necessity of using an iron goad to get the oxen on. This accusation is one of those which Mr. Barrow permits himself to bring against the colonists in general, in consequence of his personal dislike to particular ones. He does not seem to see how very wrong it is to take solitary examples, and apply them as the character of a whole class, though in so doing he transgresses no less against truth, and in a much more offensive way than Le Vaillant, when he indulges himself in the invention of extraordinary adventures. It may besides be made a question, supposing all Mr. Barrow says to be true, which shews the greater barbarity in his disposition, the uncivilised African, who in a moment of danger goads his oxen with the lash and the spur, or the polished European,

who without any use in the world docks his horses, or for mere wanton pastime, worries them to death by running races.

The height of the mountain which we had now ascended is computed to be from two thousand to two thousand five hundred feet above the country lying at its base, and that again is computed to be a thousand feet above the level of the sea. A widely extended prospect over the Piketberg, and the country beyond, amply repaid us the fatigues of the ascent, and not far from the top a little grotto, in the midst of which rose a spring of fine fresh clear water, afforded us a resting place, and shelter from the parching rays of the sun.

A less steep and rugged way carried us down the other side of the hill into the vale below, which was so inclosed with high and naked hills, that it seemed as if there was no way out of it. After another hour's journey through a narrow valley, we reached a fine grassy spot, where we found excellent water and feed for the cattle, and where we resolved to stop and rest awhile. It was an *ausspannplatze*, and called Janskraal. We perceived a very striking difference between the vegetable kingdom here, and what we had hitherto gone over, so that this day enriched the herbarium and collection of insects very much. The objects added were so much the more valuable, as they seemed to belong almost exclusively to this spot: we scarcely ever found them elsewhere.

Our farther route lay through a narrow pass among the mountains, inclosed on both sides with high hills, at the end of which we arrived at the Berg-valley: here we were to pass the night at the house of Field-Cornet Gideon Rossouw.\* The valley spreads out in this part, but towards the north contracts again, and is inclosed by high and steep cliffs. The soil seemed to us extremely fertile, and the fruits of the earth standing upon it good, but

---

\* 'Tis thus that this family now write their name, though they are descended originally from French refugees of the name of Rousseau. In like manner many other French families have accommodated the present spelling of their names to the manner in which they are pronounced in the Dutch language.—Field-cornet is the title given to a magistrate who decides in the first instance little disputes that sometimes arise among the colonists themselves, or between the Hottentots and the colonists bordering upon them. Their jurisdiction extends to from ten to twelve farms, over which they have a sort of sub-government. Their salary consists only in an exemption from the imposts upon common farming establishments.

the owner complained that a great part of his lands were scarcely cultivable, from the quantity of salt-petre they contain. He pointed out to us several places where this salt was to be seen rising from the ground, although it was early in the year, and rain had fallen but a short time before. In winter the rains carry the salt-petre with them deep into the earth, but it re-appears in summer in a thick rind upon the surface, and soon destroys all vegetation. This is a very general evil in the districts of the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld, and seems to prevail most in a fat and fertile soil.

On the hills that encompass this valley, we first saw a company of apes,\* which, as we approached them, fled hastily to the highest summits; but the whole night through we were annoyed with their tiresome yell. They do a great deal of mischief to the gardens, and even the most watchful dogs can scarcely prevent the nightly maraudings of these nimble-footed animals. Although Kolbe somewhat exaggerates the regular and concerted manner in which their robberies are carried on, yet it is very true that they go in large companies upon their marauding parties, reciprocally to support each other, and carry off their plunder in greater security.

The stream which runs through the Berg-valley, and supplies it with water, is so strong that it turns a small mill which Mr. Rossouw has erected. We even found depth sufficient in some places to permit of our bathing in it; a refreshment which we never omitted taking when an opportunity was presented, and which contributed not a little to preserving the health of the whole party. Our dragoons and Hottentots, who were not very rich in linen, availed themselves of it also to wash their shirts; and such is the drying nature of the air in this part of the world, that, after hanging a few minutes upon the bushes, they were dry enough to carry away with them. The water that flows through the valley collects itself some miles farther westward towards the coast into a pretty large lake, which has the name of the Lost-valley. In heavy rains this lake empties itself into the sea, but for the greater part of the year the evaporation of the waters is as great as the flow from the hills.

The field-cornet informed us that in another small valley, not far from his

---

\* The *simia cynocephalus* of Linnæus.

**habitation**, there was a Hottentot-kraal, where some families of pure Hottentots were **established**, who lived entirely after the manner of their ancestors. When **they** are reduced to great want, they come to him, and other inhabitants of the neighbourhood, to offer their services; but when they have earned a slender provision of sheep, fruits, or bread, they return home to **indulge** in their natural laziness, and do not come again till they are once more **pressed** by extreme want. But their wants must be very pressing before **they** do this, since they had rather suffer a certain degree of hunger, and **have** only a skin girt round their body, than work to obtain a better supply of food and clothing. For awhile they will live upon vegetables only, particularly upon onions and other roots, but no African savage can live entirely without animal food, and it is this want which drives them at last to hire **themselves** as herdsmen to the colonists. They cannot at the same time be **accused** of any actual wickedness—their characteristic vice is extreme indolence. The Dutch government has recently prohibited all such societies of free Hottentots within the boundaries of the colony, unless they can prove that **they** have some means of gaining their subsistence.

On **Wednesday**, the twenty-sixth of October, early in the morning, we pursued our journey through a deep, sandy, but always ascending road. Our **host** accompanied us for a short distance, and carried us to his garden, where we saw a very fine plantation of orange-trees. They were so full of fruit that the branches seemed ready to break with the weight, although ten **waggon** loads of oranges had already been sold to the neighbours. The trees were so high in the stem that we could ride under them upon our horses, and **gather** the overhanging fruit. There are many parts in the interior of the colony particularly favourable for the culture of sweet-oranges, lemons, and mandarine-apples, but the harvest of them is lost to the colonists, because **they** cannot be sold at a price that will pay the expence of transport to any distance. Some industrious colonists bring the pressed lemon-juice in casks to the Cape Town, and some even extract an oil from the rinds, the trade in which is very profitable. It is remarkable that though the bitter-orange will not **thrive** in any part of the colony, the large thick-coated lemon, called the *citrus decumana*,\* is tolerably abundant.

---

\* In English, the Shaddock.

At this garden was a Hottentot of whom Mr. Rossouw desired us to take particular notice. He was of the tribe called the Grosse Namaaquas, and was distinguished from the other Hottentots by his much greater size and strength. In early youth, in a war between his nation and the Dammaras, a tribe living farther northward, he was taken prisoner by the latter, and lived for some time among them. According to the custom of the country, his two middle upper front teeth were drawn as a mark that he was a prisoner, and with this token upon him (which was shown to us), the loss of his life would have been the inevitable consequence of his being made prisoner a second time. He therefore preferred living among the Christians to running this chance, and making his escape, engaged in his present service, with which he was extremely satisfied.

After pursuing our way for a considerable time over a dry sandy country we were urged by heat and thirst to seek repose in a habitation a little to the right. Although our visit here was not expected, we found every thing in readiness for our entertainment, and received such a pressing invitation from the kind mistress of the house to partake of a little repast, that we sent our escort on to an appointed place, there to wait for us, and prepare us a dinner in the open field. I mention this circumstance only as a farther illustration of the general spirit of hospitality that distinguishes the African colonists.

In a sort of hollow among the mountains, called the Long Valley, we found some tents already set up, and all our people, from the first to the last, busied every one at his post, in making the preparations we had ordered. This repast in the open field was rather determined on as an earnest of what we might expect in future, when necessity would compel us to encamp in solitary places, and to begin practising our people in setting up and striking the tents expeditiously against they should come into more frequent use. As novelty always has in it something attractive, so every body was on this first occasion ready to take their share of the necessary business. Our ladies took the cooking upon themselves, and our young men vied with each other in their eagerness to get out the tables and chairs, to lay the cloth, to unpack the knives and forks, and prepare every thing in the most exact order; while the frugal meal, which every one now considered himself as having duly earned, was sweetened by the gaiety and good humour that reigned among us.

We were already busied in re-packing our goods and chattels, when two colonists came to us who had set out upon a journey to the Cape Town; but learning by the way that the Commissary-general was to visit the country they inhabited, had sent their families on, and come themselves to seek us, and intreat that they might be favoured with our company at their house. They were two brothers of the name of Louw, inhabitants of the Lower-Bokkeveld. All our entreaties to them not to think of losing so much time, and of taking a double journey of more than a hundred hours, were in vain. They should never forgive themselves, they said, if they were to be absent from home at the moment when for the first time, since the existence of the colony, a regent had visited their country. They accompanied us two days farther on our road, and then took their leave to go home and prepare every thing for our reception.\*

From our first entrance into the Berg-valley, we had been impressed with strong admiration of the very singular nature of African mountain scenery; but we now passed through a ravine, the bold grandeur of which raised our astonishment to a much higher pitch. Enormous masses of sand-stone were towering one above another, till their gigantic forms seemed as if they touched the arch of heaven itself. They ran nearly in parallel directions from the north to the south, while here and there their regularity was interrupted by broken masses, the clefts of which were overgrown with plants, which seemed with difficulty to raise their dark green leaves out of the solid and massy stone. These almost perpendicular walls, rising to the right and left, though for thousands of years they had braved the ravages of time, yet seemed at every moment to menace the almost bewildered traveller, with falling and crushing him to atoms.

The noise of our cavalcade frightened a number of the little lively dasses †

---

\* The African colonists when they travel on horseback have always a led horse with them, which carries their packages, and which they sometimes change with the riding-horse to relieve him. The embarrassment they would be in if their horse was tired, or ill in the midst of a waste, makes this precaution very necessary. A Hottentot boy, who is half naked, and who rides behind his master without a saddle, carries the gun, with which the traveller now and then kills game, and which is destined equally for his defence in case of meeting with wild beasts or savages. In this way they will travel twenty hours distance in a day.

† The das or *hyrax capensis* of Linnæus, is a small dusky coloured animal, about the size of a rabbit, with short ears and no tail, which inhabits many of the mountains in the colony.

who were reposing in their quiet solitude, and springing up before us, they ran to seek shelter in their burrows among the rocks; while at the very edges of the overhanging crags skipped the nimble antelope, called here the *klippen-springer*,\* and high above in the air soared the hungry vulture as he was prying into the chasms below in search of his prey.

The way through this ravine was a constant ascent, and when we arrived at last at the top, a new scene awaited us, as we looked back upon the narrow pass we had just quitted. It seemed as if the ruins of a former world lay in chaotic confusion at our feet. Not the least trace of a human being was to be discerned: all was one continued wilderness of gigantic masses of rock. A single isolated pyramid, which reared its lofty form in the midst of the broadest part of the valley, was the centre point of this vast picture, and the only object on which the eye could satisfactorily rest. Not one of us had ever seen, either among the works of nature, or of art, any thing at all resembling this scene: what a world of new ideas would a painter endowed with taste and feeling imbibe from visiting it!

It was late in the evening, when, after a fatiguing course, constantly ascending and descending steep and lofty hills, we arrived at the dwelling of a Mr. Kendrik Van Zyl, in a place called the Jakhai Valley. In this solitary and mournful spot, far removed from the rest of the world, we found still the same good-will, the same readiness to serve and assist us, which is so distinguishing a feature in the character of these colonists. Notwithstanding that in this house there were evident marks of greater poverty than we had hitherto seen, and the inhabitants made a very different appearance, yet every thing was neat though humble, and the utmost diligence was exerted to accommodate us to the best of their power; equal exertions were made to do some repairs again wanted to our waggons, they having suffered much from the ruggedness of the ways we had recently passed.

These repairs were, however, not completed till noon the following day,

---

\* The griesbok or grizzled deer (the *antelope oreotragus* of Linnæus), known also in these parts by the name of the duiker or diver, from the manner in which when concealed among the bushes it will every now and then raise its head up to look at passing objects, and then immediately plunge down again, like water-fowl diving into the water.

when we again set forwards. Again we had to climb a steep sandy hill to get out of this valley, and when arrived at the top, still we saw nothing but rocks and sands, with some heathy shrubs scattered about them;—yet we began to be so accustomed to such scenery, that we found ourselves every day less wearied with its uniformity. We here found in abundance a plant which also grows nearer to the Cape Town, in the district of Tulbagh: the colonists call it *rhinosterbosjes*, because, they say, that in the time when the rhinoceros was an inhabitant of the country, it used to feed very much upon this plant. It is the same that I have mentioned before under the name of *kuhnia rhinocerotis*, as the sign, wherever it grows, of *sweet-fields*.

The place where we rested some hours at noon belonged to a widow, by name Van Wyk, whose eldest daughter, a married woman, of about eight and twenty, struck us all very much, from her extraordinary corpulence. It is, however, scarcely possible to conceive more beauty of features and complexion, more natural modesty of behaviour, and more activity in her motions, than in this woman, notwithstanding her unusual bulk. Former travellers have remarked that corpulence, particularly among the women, is by no means rare in Southern Africa. The mildness of the climate, the quantity of animal food eaten, little hard work in their household concerns, freedom from cares and sorrows, may well account for this disposition of the body.

We here learned the manner in which the leather used almost universally in this country, instead of cordage, is cured. The fresh flayed ox-hide is first cut with a knife into thongs, the breadth being regulated according to the strength and thickness wanted, which varies with the purpose for which it is to be used. The thongs are then soaked in ley for four and twenty hours, after which as many are joined together as are requisite to make the length wanted. The whole is then thrown over a sort of gallows, and a heavy weight, from eighty to a hundred pounds, fastened to it to stretch it down. Two slaves then, with a stick between the leather, keep drawing it backwards and forwards, and turning it constantly round and round, so that the weight may bear alternately alike upon every part of the leather. From thus constantly changing the place by which the leather hangs, it is soon dried, and is then used without any other preparation. The harness for the oxen that draw the waggons is made of this leather. The little trouble

necessary to prepare these thongs, and their durability, have acquired them such a decided preference over cordage, that no one has ever thought of turning their attention to several sorts of native plants which appear to partake of the nature of hemp, with a view to rendering them useful. This may, perhaps, occupy future generations, when the facility of intercourse being increased, new objects of trade will be sought, and ox-hides may become of much greater value than they are at present. At some distance from the Cape Town, the slaves, and upon the borders, even the children of the colonists are clothed in leather prepared by themselves, and there is abundance of plants which afford excellent materials for tanning. Even the savages of Southern Africa are very adroit in preparing leather, and have the art of giving it an extraordinary pliability. In the houses of the colonists, the seats of the chairs, and the frames of the bedsteads, are generally made of leather.

We found here some vines, though these mountainous regions of the northern part of the colony are not very favourable to them; and in a garden near the house was a profusion of apricots and peaches. The fruit, including the grapes, was dried in the sun, and sold to the neighbours: some was occasionally carried to the Cape Town.

I cannot here forbear, even at the hazard of being charged with dwelling unreasonably upon the subject, adverting once more to the very unjust representations made by French and English travellers of the rusticity and uncouthness of the colonists. But after having seen these things so much dwelt upon, we were not a little surprised even here, at the distance of eighty hours from the Cape Town, in a country where the inhabitants are, from their situation and local circumstances, deprived of every means of receiving what is commonly called a polished education—we were not a little surprised, even here, to find a degree of cultivation and good-breeding not always discernible where the opportunities of acquiring it have been much more favourable. There reigned an order and neatness in the house, a decency and propriety in the deportment and manner of expressing themselves among the inhabitants, with a friendship and kindness towards each other, and a mildness towards the slaves and dependents, which excited in us the highest admiration of the venerable mistress (now nearly seventy years of age) and her whole family. We had been accustomed,

wherever we went, to see the utmost politeness and respect shewn to our chief, and every attention that civility required paid to the rest of the party, but seldom saw these courtesies performed with the appearance of more unartificial sincerity, yet, at the same time, with a greater degree of refinement than here. I am ready to allow, that instances of so high a degree of polish are not common among the distant colonists, but I must at the same time affirm, that instances of such brutal roughness and coarseness of manners as Mr. Barrow describes, and which he gives as the general character of this class of people, are much more rare.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Elephants' River.—Salt Lake.—Fatiguing Passage of the Nardouw Mountain.—The Party lose their Way by Night in an almost uninhabited Country.—Night passed upon the Bank of the Doorn-river.—The Valley of Moedoverlooven —The Lower Bokkeveld.—Uye-valley.*

ON the evening of the twenty-seventh of October we reached the bank of the Elephants'-river. In a little valley, surrounded with hills which lay near it, called again the Rietvalley\*, we passed the night at the house of a nephew of the brothers Louw, whom the reader will remember to have been mentioned in the former chapter. The owner of the place was absent himself, gone up, according to the mode of expression in the country, to the Cape Town †; but his children, who were almost grown up, gave us the best entertainment in their power.

---

\* The reader must not take offence against the colonists of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, if there appears among them a want of variety in the names they gave to different spots. If the same name is found repeated in many parts, this arose from the spots to which it was given being all of them distinguished by like characteristics; since it was from the circumstances appertaining to the spot, or from the animals found in the neighbourhood, that most of the names were derived. Hence some confusion certainly arises, and it seems very expedient that such additions should be made as would point out which, among the various places of the same name, it is intended to allude to. Besides the number of Rietvalleys already mentioned, we shall find another Elephants'-river in the district of Zwellendam, as well as that of which we are now speaking; and in like manner there are more than one Hippopotamos'-rivers, Buffalo-rivers, Lion-rivers, &c. &c. A proposal was made to the Dutch government in the year 1805 to remedy this inconvenience, of which perhaps the English government, since the colony has been in their hands, have availed themselves.

† It is with the Cape Town, as formerly with the holy city of Jerusalem, that being the seat of government, the colonists always talk of going up to it, though the lands thereabouts are the lowest in the whole country, those about the other bays excepted. Although from the Cape to the borders of the colony the country is a constant ascent, still these remote parts are all called the *Lower-Fields*: thence the *Lower Bokkeveld* and the *Lower Roggeveld*, which are thus distinguished, because they are the parts of the districts the furthest removed from the capital, not because they are the lowest lands.

Not far from this place, about four hours farther to the north-west, lies a salt-lake, from which the inhabitants of those parts furnish themselves with this great necessary of life. But since the same quantity of salt cannot be collected every year; since there are even times when the salt-pans are entirely dry; in good seasons they make a very large provision, sufficient to last for three years or more.

In this valley we again found a water-mill, which is a constant proof of a fertile spot, since it evinces that there must be a very good supply of water. The wheels are none of them more than from six to eight feet in diameter. As in most parts of the colony the corn is ground by hand-mills, wherever a water-mill can be erected, it is very profitable to its owner, since their neighbours bring their corn to it to be ground, for which they pay a certain price. From five to six bushels of corn is as much as one of these mills can grind in four and twenty hours. In the garden to this house we found the largest pomegranate-tree we had yet seen in the colony: it was nearly twenty feet high in the stem, and would afford shade from the rays of the sun to several persons at once.

The next morning we crossed the Elephants'-river: it was not more than two feet deep at the ford, and about a hundred feet broad, including a little island in the middle of the stream. The sands driven so far up upon the banks, and the loosely-rooted trees near them, shewed, however, that at certain times of the year the river spread itself out very considerably, and then the property of the inhabitants must be exceedingly contracted. Directly on the other side rises a steep hill, which retains its old Hottentot name of the Nardouw. We were above an hour ascending it on horseback, and our waggons, which we overtook about half way up, here again got into great difficulties. We found one very much damaged, and most of the others, though they had a double number of oxen to draw them, too heavy laden, so that we were obliged to lighten them by nearly a half, and let the load be carried at two different times. In the lower half of the mountain, large blocks of slate, which lay in the middle of the road, so obstructed the way, that it was scarcely possible for the waggons to go on, and it sometimes required the united strength of all the people belonging to the waggons to remove them, while towards the top, both oxen and waggons sunk into so deep a sand, that it was not without extreme difficulty they could get on at all. From these specimens, some idea may be formed of the obstacles opposed

to carrying on an intercourse of trade from one part of the colony to another by means of land-carriage.

We had travelled about an hour along the flat and arid summit of the mountain, when the ground began to slope very gradually. A small streamlet of water, running from among the naked rocks, invited us to stop here, at once to rest our horses, and to wait for the waggons which were coming after us. A flat piece of rock, serving as a table, was spread with our little provision, and here we took our frugal repast. As we were seated at it, a bastard Hottentot came up to lay before the Commissary-general a complaint against his master for ill-usage. The commissary invited the lad to join us, and when some weeks after we came into the district where the master of whom he complained lived, he cited both him and the field-cornet of the district to appear before him, and redressed the aggrieved Hottentot. The latter, however, entreated permission to remain in our service, and we found him one of the most active and faithful of our whole swarthy community.

Scarcely less fatigued with our rest at noon in the burning sun, than with the ascent of the hill, as the heat somewhat abated, we proceeded onwards to encounter new and still greater difficulties. The spirit and patience of the whole party, and above all the firmness of our ladies, was at this moment to be put to the first great trial they experienced. From a very imperfect direction having been given us respecting the way to a farm-house, situated about two hours off, where we proposed passing the night, we were led to follow the fresh track of a waggon, which carried us to the left, and which promised us a much better road than what we ought to have taken. Three hours passed before we became sensible of our error, but still we pursued the same track, resting in the hope that this must carry us at length to some human habitation; but still none appeared, and in this dilemma night began to come on. To return back seemed in no case adviseable, since having taken a northerly direction, it appeared as if we could not have come entirely out of our way, and that though not exactly in the right road, yet that we must still have been advancing, consequently that we must lose ground by a retrograde movement. Fortunately, the moon, being at the first quarter, afforded us some light, so as to assure us that the way we were going was perfectly safe.

Meanwhile our horses, who had not had any regular meal since early morning, began to grow extremely weary; one of mine, which perhaps had eaten of some plant that disagreed with him, as he was feeding at the time we were

resting, soon after we got out of the right track became extremely ill. Not, however, having the least idea that we had missed our way, I ordered my slave to remain with the sick horse, and wait for the waggons coming up, when his comrades might assist in getting the animal on. The comfortless situation of this poor lad, who was only sixteen, who I now found would expect assistance in vain, and who might be attacked by lions and hyænas, traces of which we had this day for the first time discovered, gave me the utmost uneasiness: yet we had wandered on so far that it was impossible to send him assistance without danger, and the only thing I could hope was that he would be so much frightened that he would leave the horse, and try to find the waggons by himself; a hope which I afterwards found confirmed.

At every step we took, the country seemed to grow flatter, and to be spread out to a greater extent before us, and we looked around in vain, in hopes of descriing some light in the distance, which would have announced an habitation. Equally in vain did the whole party stop at short intervals to listen whether we could not hear the barking of a dog, though some fancied they could plainly distinguish such a sound. Alas! nothing was to be discovered all around by the glimmering of the moon, but a vast, and, as it appeared to us, boundless desert. The riders, not less weary than the horses, now almost all diamounted, and led their exhausted hungry animals after them, sometimes stumbling over loose stones, sometimes sinking ancle deep in the sand.

We now began to perceive plainly that we were upon a gradual descent, and were inspired with a hope that we might soon come to water, which would at least be a cordial to the thirsty animals, whom we could with difficulty drag after us. Our hopes were soon converted into a certainty, as we plainly discerned a row of trees down in the bottom. It was now ten o'clock. We came at length to the bank of a stream, along which we coasted some way, and which, according to the marks given us, we concluded to be the lesser Doorn-river. The want of rest was so general among us, that no one would have thought of crossing the stream, even if we had not conceived it unuse'e to attempt fording it at night. It was therefore agreed to wait here for day-break, and to make ourselves as comfortable as we could with empty stomachs, and not a morsel of any thing to satisfy our hunger. The horses were unaddled, and when they had drank at the stream, we tied them with halters to the trees, about the roots of which were scattered some thin tufts of grass.

This being done, we all set about searching for wood to make a large fire, which was rendered doubly necessary from the coldness and darkness of the night. A second fire was kindled upon the nearest height, as a signal to our people, in case the steward, who had remained with the waggons, should have sent any of them in search of us. The want of sleep was now another of our hardships, yet the cold was extremely adverse to the satisfying it. As none of the party had any warm cloathing with them, the only dependence for warming them was upon the fire, and even this was but a broken reed to rest on, for while on the right side we got tolerably roasted, to the left a cold south wind penetrated through the thin cloathing, quite to the skin. Fortunately some of the dragoons had with them the coverings for their horses, and their own riding-cloaks, and by the help of these, with some of the saddles for pillows, we made a sort of bed for our ladies, on which they got two hours comfortable sleep. The rest of us stretched ourselves upon the sand by the fire, outbidding each other in the price that we would at that moment have given for a piece of bread, a glass of geneva, or a pipe of tobacco; and every time we turned, cursing the coldness of the night, which, as we found afterwards, we ought rather to have blessed.

In fact, the *Ausspannplatze*, for such it was at which we had stopped, lay under a very ill-name, on account of the immense number of black scorpions by which it was infested, and which are some of the most venomous animals of the country. In warm nights there is very great danger of being stung by them, and but a few weeks before our adventure, a melancholy proof had been given of the dangerous nature of their sting. One of the best female slaves of a Mr. Van Wyk, when she was busied in collecting dry wood, had the misfortune to be stung in the hand by one, which was probably concealed under the bark of one of the oldest and dryest pieces. All the usual remedies were immediately applied, but the girl, notwithstanding, died in eighteen hours. This dangerous insect seldom comes out in the cold, and loses in some degree the power of darting its sting, so that the wound is less dangerous.

To complete our misfortunes, towards morning the heavens overcast, and it began to rain; the day, however, soon after appeared, and a dragoon, who was sent out to reconnoitre, discovered at a distance a little hut, from which came an old slave, who was stationed there to take care of a small

herd of cattle belonging to his master. From him we learnt that we were already three hours distant from the place where we should have passed the night; that we were, however, in the right way to the Lower Bokkeveld, and might very probably reach the abode of Mr. Jacob Louw in the course of the day. A couple of dollars to drink prevailed upon him to accompany two of our dragoons in search of the waggons, that our people might be made acquainted with our adventures, and follow us as soon as possible. We ourselves set forwards at sun-rise, and having passed the Doorn-river, not without some inconvenience, the bed being rather deep, and full of loose stones, pursued our way over a broad beaten road, at the foot of a chain of rocky hills.

For three hours we still kept going on, amid the constantly increasing weariness both of horses and riders; when a waggon, standing still, presented itself to our view. The appearance of a vessel in the midst of the wide-spread ocean cannot impart greater delight than we now felt at the sight of this vehicle. A family of colonists were upon their journey, and the waggon was stopping, while the oxen were feeding at a little distance. A pretty young woman lay sick in the waggon; she had been carried by her husband to the bath at the Elephants'-river, but to no purpose; and was now returning home. It was the track of this waggon which misled us the evening before. The mother of the sick woman was busied in cooking a hedgehog, which they had just taken, and with the utmost good-will, she offered our ladies some of the broth with a piece of bread, while hungry as they were, it was no less grateful to them than the most delicious soup. As we entered upon explanations on both sides, and they understood all the particulars of our situation, the good man immediately produced his flask of brandy to recruit the exhausted strength of the strangers; on this, and a piece of bread, which was portioned out to each, we made the best breakfast that we thought we had yet eaten.

I was happy in being afforded an opportunity of making some little return for this hospitality, by giving the sick woman, who was in strong hysterics, a little glass of naphtha, which I had with me by chance; and since our future routelay not far from her dwelling, I promised to visit her, and give her farther advice, as well as to furnish her with some medicines. Therron, which was the name of the colonist, now shewed us a little foot-way leading to a deep valley, where he said we should find a house, and some tolerable grass

for our horses. We then took our leave of the good people, with many acknowledgments, and turning our horses into the path, soon reached the valley.

We found, without difficulty, the spot to which we were directed. The estate belonged to a farmer named Wilders, whose present dwelling-house was at some distance, nor had he for several years lived at this place: it was now inhabited by a freed slave, and two bastard Hottentots, whom he had placed there as keepers of his herds. Corn is a commodity not produced in this rocky valley, so that we asked in vain for bread. The half-savage inhabitants live upon dried and salted flesh, which there was not sufficient time to have cooked, even if the looks of it had been more inviting. Some unripe lemons which hung upon the trees was all that they had to offer us, but our horses found tolerably good feed, and we stopped two hours to refresh them. This interval was employed on our side in lying down under the shade of the lemon-trees, where we enjoyed a sound sleep, and found ourselves on waking extremely revived by it. The freedman now informed us that we might go by a much nearer way, if we would quit the valley, and not follow the beaten road any more, which from the winding course of the valley necessarily made a circuit of several hours. He was with little difficulty prevailed upon to shew us the way, when he led us over a steep path, the fatigues of which exceeded any thing we ever experienced either before or after. The name of the valley, given by the person who first discovered it, is *Moed-verlooren*; and never was a name more highly deserved, or more appropriate. The path by which we ascended out of it was so steep and dangerous, that we soon thought the time we were to save too dearly purchased, and repented exceedingly that we had not rather been contented quietly to take the circuitous road.

It was impossible to think of remaining upon our horses, for the way was often so steep, that we were sometimes obliged to use both hands in climbing, nor could we without the aid of the whip make the horse spring up a perpendicular block of between two and three feet. We afterwards proceeded a considerable way upon the slope of the hill, on a narrow path, which to the right had an almost perpendicular wall of rock above it, and to the left below a deep precipice. We were even glad when we had to ascend again, notwithstanding the fatigue attending it, to quit a path, which, though less difficult, was much more dangerous. A full hour elapsed before we reached the top,

and were out of danger of man and horse falling, and perhaps meeting with a fate which the mind shudders to think on. Even the brothers Louw, though pretty well accustomed to steep and difficult paths, assured us that they had never but once in their lives gone that way to the Moed-verlooren, and had not the least inclination to attempt it a second time. They thought it a matter on which to congratulate us, that out of a company of twenty persons no worse accident had happened to any than a bruised knee or ankle, and blamed the freedman very much for his thoughtlessness in having recommended such a way to us.

At length, towards evening, we reached Lokenburg, the dwelling of Jacob Adrian Louw, after having been thirty-two hours out in the open air, almost without nourishment, labouring through roads the most difficult and fatiguing imaginable. I leave it to the readers to conceive to themselves the situation of the ladies who were of our party. Let them but revolve in their minds the occurrences of the preceding days, and then think of two young women, scarcely twenty years of age, accustomed not only to all the conveniences, but to the superfluities of life, going through a long day's journey on horseback, sleeping at night upon the sandy bank of a river, with only a dragoon's riding-cloak for a bed, and then travelling a second day almost without food and refreshment, not only half the way on foot, but climbing rugged rocks, in danger every moment of wounding their delicate hands with the stones and briars, and only assisted occasionally by the servants of the company. To these things must be added, the inconvenience of a woman's clothing, and the wearying manner of riding upon a woman's saddle; and when they are all duly considered, there will be no difficulty in deciding, that whatever was endured by the rest of the company, it was not to be compared with what these young women suffered: yet all was supported by them with the most undaunted patience and constancy: not a complaint escaped their lips: they only confessed afterwards how much they had suffered from hunger and over-exertion. At the time, they were emulous to display uninterrupted gaiety and good-humour, and often by some lively sally dispersed the cloud which seemed to be stealing insensibly over the mind of the father. Probably, few of my female readers will now be desirous of taking the same journey.

The valley in which Lokenburg lies is called the Uye, or Bulb-valley, because many sorts of *Iris* and *Ixia* grow here, the bulbs of which the Hot-tentots eat, and are very fond of them. The country is fruitful, and affords

excellent feed for sheep and horses. The owner of Lokenburg is the richest man in the district; the house indeed did not bear any appearance of great wealth, but that was more owing to the remoteness of the spot, and the frugal habits of the colonists living on the borders, than to a want of the means of making a greater show, or to penuriousness of disposition. The country is here thinly inhabited: in the last twenty hours we had scarcely seen a house, and our host himself said that he had not above four neighbours within reach of half a day's journey on horseback. Corn was little cultivated: the grapes, from the height and coldness of the country, were not yet ripe; and the fruits in general were not so well flavoured as in other parts of the colony. The principal wealth of the Lower Bokkeveld consists in sheep. These animals thrive particularly well here and in the Roggeveld, but the dryness of the last year had destroyed a great many. The number of sheep fed by about twenty proprietors amounted to seventeen thousand, and might be increased to thirty thousand in favourable years: the loss in the last year was computed at ten thousand. At a moderate computation, there are besides about a thousand horses, and two thousand head of horned cattle, fed in this district. The farmers have begun to introduce here, the Spanish breed of sheep for the sake of the wool; that of the African sheep is good for nothing. The government considers this experiment as one of the most probable means of promoting the interests of the colony, by the source of profit which it may be made: but of this more hereafter.

That corn is not more cultivated, is owing principally to the difficulty of transport. Every one can, without much labour, grow a sufficient quantity for the supply of his own household, although there is a general want of water. The place where we now were is an exception to this general rule: it is the only spot in the district where the fertility of the soil can be turned to the best account, by the possibility of sufficient irrigation. Louw had even speculated upon attempting the cultivation of rice, which he thought would be very practicable; in fact, in a later journey which I made into these parts, I found that he had carried his project into execution. Tobacco is also grown here. In large trees, such as would yield wood for building, the country is wholly deficient. Willows grow on the banks of the Hantam-river, and mimosa on the banks of the Doorn: on both are also to be found nut-trees. Wood for building is brought, though not without great difficulty in the transport, from the cedar hills, and the houses in this district are therefore

much more roomy, more convenient, and built in a much better taste than in the Roggeveld. In the latter district they cannot get hard wood, such as could be used in building, on account of the almost impossibility of bringing it over the steep mountain roads.

As the Lower Bokkeveld is at the utmost extremity of the colony to the north, and borders on the solitary tracts haunted by the Bosjesmans, so in former times its inhabitants suffered much from the inroads of these ungovernable savages. For some years past, however, they have rather withdrawn from these parts, and carried their incursions more eastward, to the annoyance of the inhabitants of the Roggeveld: and the little parties who remain in the neighbourhood of the Bokkeveld live on peaceable terms with the colonists, the latter purchasing their amity by paying them a yearly tribute of sheep. The field-cornet, John Gideon Louw, the cousin of our host, contributed very much to the establishment of this peace, by collecting in the year 1798, from the colonists of the Bokkeveld, four hundred and sixty sheep and goats as a present to the Bosjesmans: upon this a sort of compact was entered into between them, which, by making them like presents from time to time, has hitherto been very well observed. But since some of the colonists, particularly those at a distance from the borders, have of late failed in giving in their contributions, some new means, it is to be apprehended, must be resorted to for the maintenance of this good understanding.

We were not a little discomposed by expecting, in vain, for the greatest part of the following day, the arrival of our waggons with their attendants; at length, about evening, our minds were set at rest by their appearing, when we found that this delay was owing to their having done like ourselves, and lost their way. Our whole company were now re-assembled, excepting two dragoons, who had loitered too much behind the waggons. Our French-horn player was here of particular use: stationed on the nearest height, he blew his far-sounding horn so successfully, that, notwithstanding the darkness of the night, the wanderers were led by the sound, till they at length rejoined us, and we were all once more collected together.

Our waggons had, however, suffered so much by the badness of the roads, that they were most of them not in a state to proceed without undergoing once more considerable repairs. This circumstance, united with the want of repose among the whole party, to recover their fatigues and recruit their strength, determined our chief to stay two days here. I was particularly

pleased with this arrangement, as it gave me an opportunity of putting my various collections into some order, and of packing them more securely. The Commissary-general employed these hours of leisure in visiting some other places in the district, and went on the first of November, accompanied by some of his train, and the Field-Cornet Louw, to Oorlogskloof,\* the abode of the latter, seven hours farther northward, on the bank of the greater Doorn-river. In his way he stopped at the houses of several persons lying at a short distance from the road; and notwithstanding the poverty that reigned among them, he was received every where by the owners with expressions of the greatest pleasure, and with all the politeness which their situations would admit of.

The evenings and nights that we passed here were very cold, and the thermometer sunk to 3° by Reaumur. One night there was a strong hoar frost, a thing never experienced at the Cape, even in the middle of winter: this is owing to the height of the country in these mountainous regions. In another part of my work, when my readers are made thoroughly acquainted with the nature of the country in all its parts, I shall take an opportunity of dwelling more diffusely upon the differences of the climate in different districts.

Our host remembered with much gratitude the excellent Thunberg, who visited him in the year 1775, and to whose cares and skill he owed the life of a son then very dangerously ill: the youth recovered entirely, and is still living. As a particular curiosity, he shewed us a goblet, made of the little horn of an African rhinoceros, which, as he assured us, had the property, if a liquid poison was put into it, of changing its nature entirely by a strong fermentation, which takes off the noxious quality, so that it may be drank without any danger. It was in vain that I endeavoured to persuade the worthy man how erroneous, and even dangerous, was such a belief: it seemed to be the universal popular creed, and was not to be shaken.†

---

\* Oorlogskloof, the War-valley, so called because of a combat which once took place here with the Bosjesmans. This place is the most northern of the district. Directly beyond it begins the inhospitable country of the Namaaquas.

† In the first volume of a collection of travels published at Leipsic in 1748, it is said, that the Malays consider the rhinoceros as the female of the unicorn; and it is added that they value their horns very highly, as an antidote against all sorts of poison. It is very probable that this superstition was introduced into the colony of the Cape by the Malay slaves.

## CHAP. VII.

*The Namaqua Partridge.—The Matjes-fontein.—John Strauss.—On the Diseases of the Colonists.—The Tyger-point.—The District of Hantam.—Van Reenen's Property there.—Character of the Colonists of these Parts.—Impressions of Fish in the Slate-Stone.—The Spurting-Snake.—The Roggeveld Mountain.—Huntings of the Colonists beyond the Borders.—Cold Climate of the Roggeveld.—The Legplaats.—The Lower Roggeveld.—Account of the Murder of a Family of Colonists by Slaves and Bosjesmans.—The Kuil-river.—Natron rising out of the Ground.*

ON Wednesday, the second of November, we proceeded on our journey, and stopped at noon at the house of a certain Peter Van Zyl. We found in the person of Van Zyl's wife a poor but truly worthy and notable housewife, who was exceedingly bustling and assiduous in her endeavours to make our short stay as agreeable as her confined circumstances would permit. We had here a Namaqua partridge, which the husband had shot the day before: these birds are in such abundance in this country that as many as sixty are sometimes brought down in three shots; they are about the size of a small pigeon, and very delicate. In later journeys, by myself, when I went beyond the bounds of the colony, they often afforded me a very agreeable repast.

In the afternoon we went a little out of our way to visit the sick woman, whose family had a few days before so readily shared with us their slender provision of food and drink. I found her still very ill, and left her the medicines I had promised, with some directions for managing herself, particularly with regard to diet. On the evening of the same day we arrived at the Matjes-fontein,\* where lived a certain John Strauss; but his house was so small that there was not even a place where the Commissary-general could sleep: we were all obliged to have recourse to our tents.

This Strauss was of German origin. His father migrated to the Cape as a

---

\* *Matjesgoed* is the name given to a sort of rush, of which very pretty mats are made in this country. It grows in abundance in this place, and hence it is called *Matjes-fontein*.

soldier, but afterwards became a citizen, and was in exceeding good circumstances, when he had the melancholy fate of being murdered in a most horrid manner by his slaves. Strauss, though then but a child, was an eye-witness of this dreadful event, and gave us a very circumstantial account of it.

I found ample employment during the short time of my stay here, for there was a vast number of sick and infirm people in the neighbourhood, who came to ask my advice. I was much struck with the manner in which I was accosted by most of them, for placing the firmest confidence in the infallibility of my art, they called me *master*, seeming to have the feeling, as if I were able to perform like miracles with those recorded by the Evangelists, and of my own power alone heal their diseases.\* Most of them were afflicted with long-standing deep-rooted maladies, which would have required a protracted and careful attendance to afford any chance of curing them. Chronic diseases are much more frequent in this country than acute ones. Far the greater part of the women labour under hysterical affections, which by their strange mode of managing them, contrary to all sense and reason, often come to a formidable height, and end in hectic complaints, which prove fatal. The stone is here a much too common complaint among the men: this is perhaps to be ascribed in great measure to the bad water, and the want of spirituous liquors.† In those districts where vines are cultivated, and good wine is made, or where wine is to be had cheap, the evil does not exist. There is another disease which is not very frequent among the white people, but when they are afflicted with it, from their total ignorance of the manner in which it ought to be treated, it commonly gets to a formidable height. It is much more frequent among the Hottentots, but what is extraordinary, is not so manifestly destructive to them.

Gout and rheumatism are among the diseases to which the colonists are

\* The Dutch ship surgeons are called in the sailor's language *meester*, (master) and this term, with many others used by the sailors, has been adopted as the language in common use among the colonists. Edwards, in his excellent account of the English possessions in the West-Indies, remarks, that the case is the same in those colonies.

† Water loaded with earthy matter is generally assigned as a cause of the stone; but the want of spirituous liquors seems to be a novel and an unreasonable cause for that disease.—

TRANSLATOR.

more particularly subject. By removing to a milder part of the country, or by the use of the warm bath, these evils are, however, more easily subdued than many others. Children suffer much from quinsies, but this is the only disease prevalent among them: scrofula is seldom to be seen, and the small-pox is quite extirpated from the interior of the colony. Fevers are not frequent, and never arrive at the formidable height among the native colonists that they do among Europeans, whether in their own countries, or as emigrants in this.

Notwithstanding that our stock of medicines was very ample, yet it would soon have been exhausted, if I had administered to the wants of every body that came to consult me. I therefore found it expedient to make myself acquainted with the properties of such medicinal plants as grew in the neighbourhood, and had recourse to them in most instances, since otherwise we should have been left without resources, in case of any of our own party being sick. By the advice of a friend in the Cape Town, I carried with me a stock of Halle medicines, in which he told me the colonists placed great confidence, and that it was not easy to make them a more acceptable present than a glass of *pulvis antispasmodicus*, or *essentia dulcis*. As I did not, however, place equal confidence in these medicines, I forbore to give them as specifics in cases of real disease: I only availed myself of them occasionally when I wanted to make some little return for civilities received, or when I was for any other reason desirous of obliging. Through the medium of my medicinal knowledge, I acquired myself many friends among the colonists, and in my subsequent travels through these countries I found the readiness I had always shewn upon this occasion to give my assistance wherever it was wanted amply repaid by a thousand little courtesies, and by the universal esteem and regard with which I was received. One inconvenience I experienced from it, that many an hour was by this means lost to me, which I wished to have been able to devote to other pursuits. It occasioned me, besides, to have much less time for repose than any of my companions, since, from the number of patients I had to attend to, it often happened that no other opportunities remained for me to make my excursions in quest of the treasures I was always desirous of obtaining, except the hours which should have been devoted to rest.

The next place at which we stopped was at the foot of a little hill, the south end of which is called the Tyger-point. We met with a very friendly reception here in the house of a colonist, by name Vander Merwe: we had a great deal of conversation with him upon the diseases to which the cattle of the country are subject, and judged him, from the nature of his remarks, to be a sensible man. In the neighbourhood of the house we found a rich harvest of rare plants and insects.

A pass between two little hills which unites two plains with each other, without any difficulties or unevenness of ground in the passage, is called by the colonists a *poort* (a door). Such a *poort* is formed by the Tyger-point and the hill opposite. We passed through this *poort* in the afternoon, and learnt from our conductors that two years before, the pass was for some time infested by the Bosjesmans. They used to conceal themselves among the blocks of Sand-stone rock, which are nearly the colour of their skin, whence they shot their poisoned arrows at the travellers who were passing through, without a possibility of their being seen by them. We remarked, as we proceeded farther on, traces of a vast assemblage of ostriches, which must recently have passed that way. In summer these birds are fond of inhabiting the heights, but in winter they descend into the plains.

The foot of the Hantam mountain was the boundary of our this day's journey; and Akerendam, the house of the Field-Cornet Abraham Van Wyk, on the south side of the mountain, was our destined quarters for the night. This hill is in many respects very remarkable: it is almost isolated, and resembles the Table mountain very much, from the flatness of its top, and the steepness of its sides; but it is not so high, its summit being only about fifteen hundred feet above the valley at its base. What above all things, however, makes it remarkable, and occasions it to be celebrated throughout the colony, is the excellent quality of the grass produced in its neighbourhood; it is reckoned particularly salutary for the feed of horses. Another advantage enjoyed by the country is, that it is free from the pernicious droughts which in some parts of the colony do so much mischief almost every year. The cause of this peculiar wholesomeness of the grass is not yet fully understood, but the inhabitants are inclined to ascribe it principally to the mountain being covered with snow for three months in the winter, while

even the highest of the neighbouring hills do not remain white for more than a day at a time.

The land hereabouts would be fruitful enough, if, as in the southern parts of the colony, rains fell regularly in winter. But this is not the case; a want of water prevails every where, particularly to the south and east of the Hantam mountain; many places even, from the extreme drought, are in summer wholly uninhabitable. In the short winter days the springs sometimes begin to flow again of themselves, without any rain having fallen, in consequence of the little evaporation from above, and the melting of the snow on the tops of the hills. Even at this time of the year the salt-springs and standing waters of the Roggeveld become sweet from these circumstances.

Very little corn is gathered in the district of Hantam, though some lands are sown every year by the colonists. If heaven is pleased to grant rain, the harvest is tolerably abundant, but it too often happens that the seed is scarcely more than returned; the principal part of the corn used is therefore brought from the neighbouring districts, particularly from the Lower Bokkeveld. The consumption of corn is small in these northern parts: meat is the general food: the slaves in particular scarcely ever taste bread. This is universally the case where, as here, there is good feed for sheep, and meat is cheaper than bread. In a household of twenty people, three or four sheep, weighing from thirty-six to forty pounds each, are killed every day, and the common reckoning, as I collected from questioning a variety of persons, is a sheep a week for every herdsman. There were at this time about twenty-five thousand sheep in the district, but the dryness of the year 1804 decreased the number to about twenty thousand. Nor was this the only mischief it occasioned; for the fodder was in many places entirely destroyed, and nothing but worthless plants remained upon the spots. Very few horned cattle are kept, from the want of what is called valley-ground; by this is meant a moist soil, composed of clay and sand, since it is in such a soil that the plants good for feeding cattle thrive best.

The most considerable estate in this district is one belonging to Mr. John Van Reenen, the same whom we had seen at the Teefontein. It lies on the north-west side of the Hantam Mountain, the part which is well watered. At the next farm, called the Groote Toorn, Van Reenen has an excellent stud, consisting of more than three hundred,—breeding horses, mares, and

colts included,—all of the best English and Arabian breed. He had among others, an Arabian horse, for which he gave three thousand dollars. These animals are left day and night to run about the open field without any guard. Stables are wholly unknown here, and to steal a horse is a thing unheard of. About once in a fortnight the horses are all collected together and counted over. Now and then a colt is missed, which has probably become a prey to the hyænas, and in many of the horses are to be seen evident marks of the claws of wild beasts.

This estate of Mr. Van Reenen is an exception to the general rule respecting the unsuitableness of these parts to the growing of corn. As on his side of the Hantam Mountain several little streamlets flow from it, so that the lands can be well watered, he can grow sufficient corn for his own consumption: in a good year the corn will yield from forty to fifty fold. The garden produces excellent kitchen vegetables of many sorts; and an orchard of about six hundred peach trees, furnishes an ample supply of dried fruit for the winter.

Van Reenen's flock consisted at this time of more than sixteen hundred sheep. As he was one of the first to introduce the Spanish sheep, many of his flock, even as far as the fifth generation, were of that breed, and bore very fine wool; an article which already brought him in great profit. The government in the year 1804 established a commission to enquire into the best mode of improving agriculture and the breeding of cattle, of which Mr. Van Reenen was appointed a member. Of this commission, at the head of which was Mr. Van Ryneveld, I shall have frequent occasion to speak. Their attention has been turned very much to the improvement of the breed of sheep, in which they have succeeded so well, that for a few years past the revenues of the colony have been much benefited by the exportation of wool.

Next to Van Reenen's estate, that of the Field-Cornet Van Wyk, at which we were now taking up our quarters, is esteemed the best in the district:—it is, however, very deficient in water. To the south-west extends a wide-spread plain, about three or four hours in circumference. This plain is bounded by several isolated hills of singular forms, among which the most remarkable is the Prammeberg (the *Breast Mountain*), so called, because when seen in profile it very much resembles the bosom of a woman.

The inhabitants of this district are more active, move more briskly, and are less fat and unwieldy than those of the southern parts; probably owing to the climate being so much more temperate. They resemble in this respect the inhabitants of the country about the Snow Mountains, on the eastern side of the colony, whose activity has been celebrated by most travellers. Soon after our arrival, several families of the neighbourhood made their appearance, some in waggons, some on horseback, attracted by curiosity to see a magistrate high in office, once in their lives. Every one brought with him some little present of game, or other things for the table, which were no less thankfully received than they were courteously given. We could not help being once more surprised to see so much natural good breeding and civility, so much propriety in their modes of expressing themselves, under such simple garments, and among people living at the distance of sixty miles from the capital, in a dry and solitary country, fit only for the feeding of cattle, and half encircled by some of the wildest among the savages of the neighbouring districts.

A couple of sturdy young lads, whose eyes glistened with health and contentment, delighted us very much with the eager manner in which they related a number of hunting and travelling adventures they had met with; and the effect was exceedingly increased by the concise, yet expressive, African Dutch language, in which the relation was given. We had often the opportunity of remarking, that we never heard from the mouth of a colonist an unseemly word, an overstrained expression, a curse, or an imprecation of any kind. The more I saw of these people the more I was convinced of the truth of this remark; I even many times perceived plainly that they could not without a sort of honourable indignation hear our dragoons, and, indeed, others of our Europeans, in their impatience, permit oaths or other unbecoming expressions to escape them. The universally religious turn of the colonists, amounting almost to bigotry, is, perhaps, a principal cause to which this command of themselves is to be ascribed;—it may also be in some measure the result of their living so extremely secluded from the world; a circumstance which preserves them from temptation to many vices.

But what pleased us above all things in the good people of the Hantam district was, the amenity of disposition which appeared in them towards each

other. This was the first place where our active chief had not been called upon to decide any differences among the inhabitants. It must be acknowledged that the colonists in general are too much disposed to quarrelling among themselves, principally with respect to the boundaries of their several estates; and perhaps among ten near neighbours nine will be at variance. Yet, though they adhere to what they consider as their rights with the utmost pertinacity, no one thinks of aspersing or calumniating another, not even behind his back, much less does he ever proceed to active outrages. In this district there is, indeed, less cause than in some others for such quarrels, since the estates lie pretty remote from each other, and there are comparatively few horned cattle kept: the forage for them, where they are kept in abundance, is always a fertile source of discord.

The heat of the following day induced us to remain here till the afternoon; the rather as we were only four hours distant from the place where we were to rest the next night. I employed the morning in exploring the surrounding country, and visited two sick Hottentots belonging to our host. I found by the bed of one of them a musical instrument, a sort of guitar made of half the rind of a gourd scooped out, with a rough touch-board fastened over it, along which were drawn four strings. The wife of the sick man would play upon it, and produced accords which I afterwards heard from the *gorrah* and other instruments of these savages, and which could not without great difficulty have been produced from any of our own stringed instruments.

The place to which we went in the evening belonged to a person of the name of Gous, and was one of the poorest we had seen in our journey. It is the last in this district towards the east, and is called *De onwetende fontein aan den Daunis Kloof*. The cabin, for house it could hardly be called, of the owner, was surrounded by naked craggy rocks, nor, as far as the eye could see, was a tree, or even a shrub to be discovered. Low, thinly scattered bushy plants, among which the *mesembryanthemum spinosum* seemed the most abundant, was all that the earth produced; but, notwithstanding this, a considerable number of sheep were feeding all about. A little spring, which rose in the bed of a periodical river, afforded only a small quantity of brackish water scarcely drinkable, and the complete solitude of the place left the inhabitants not without apprehensions of visits from the Bosjesmans. In this melancholy spot, however, we found a curiosity well worthy the

utmost attention of the naturalist, and of future travellers. In the slate-stone from which the spring rose were the impressions of an innumerable multitude of fish. We perceived this extraordinary appearance first upon the surface, but the impressions were larger, more distinct, and finer, in proportion as we broke deeper and deeper into the stone. The form of the fish resembled that of the eel, and the length of the largest was about three feet. The brittleness of the slate made it impossible for us to get out a single specimen entire, and the fragments, which we preserved for the purpose of examining them at our leisure, were afterwards destroyed by the jolting of the waggon. The more I made myself acquainted with this country, by my subsequent travels, the more remarkable did the phenomenon appear to me, as being the only remains of a former world, which I found throughout the whole of Southern Africa.

We now quitted the district of Hantam, and turning to the south-east, bent our course towards the Roggeveld Mountains. Our route lay over a plain which stretched from the south-west to the north-east, between the districts of Hantam and the Lower Roggeveld, and, like the former, it was encompassed by isolated hills, rising as it were out of the plain, and presenting a variety of fantastic forms. A lofty mountain, which seemed almost as if it had been broken down perpendicularly, and which was divided in horizontal layers, towered above all the other hills; its top appearing in some points of view as if it had been a regularly shaped cone, in others, as if it was broad and flat like the Table Mountain, while over it was thrown a green carpet of well-grown plants, giving it a very picturesque appearance.

Some young colonists accompanied us as guides, who were, besides, in case of meeting with any game, to give us proofs of their dexterity in the art of shooting. But alas! such opportunities were sought in vain; the only thing that came in our way during the whole day was a vulture of the species here called the bald-head (*vultur aura*), which one of our jägers shot flying. The heat of the day brought out a great many snakes; we killed two of very venomous kinds, one the horned snake, as it is called (*coluber cerastes*), the poison of which is very much sought after by the Bosjesmans for poisoning their arrows. The other was a very rare sort of serpent, called here the *spugslang* (the *sputting* snake). It is from three to four feet long, of a black

colour, and has the singular property, according to the assertion of the colonists, that when attacked it will spurt out its venom, and that it knows how to give it such a direction as to hit the eyes of the person attacking him. This is followed by violent pain and so strong an inflammation, that it will occasion the entire loss of sight. To wash the eyes immediately with warm milk is recommended as the best remedy in such a case. The bite of this serpent is extremely dangerous. It is probably the same that is mentioned by the Capuchin Antonio Zuchelli, in the account of his mission to Congo\*, where it is said that it spurts its venom from its own eyes into the eyes of the person who attacks it; and that the milk of a woman is the only thing that can prevent total blindness ensuing. †

We arrived in the mountains of the Roggeveld about noon, and in a narrow valley found the dwelling of a widow Steenkampf, called Elandsfontein. Although, from the abundance of water, vegetation was here more flourishing than in many parts, and that there were gardens and corn-fields about the house, yet the narrowness of the valley, pressed in between high, dark, naked rocks, into which the house seemed as it were wedged, made this but a dismal abode. The cold, at night, was pretty severe; and as we were obliged to sleep in tents, we had some difficulty to keep ourselves warm.

Our day's journey, on the sixth of November, was performed by me more than half on foot, that I might be at liberty to collect plants and insects. I was obliged to carry, besides the apparatus necessary for disposing of the treasures I hoped to amass, a gun to defend myself in case of necessity, or to kill any game I might meet with; and thus loaded, a walk in the heat of the day was somewhat fatiguing. My trouble, however, was repaid by a large addition to my collection, and by a hare and a couple of very pretty birds which I shot. I quitted the road, and climbed among the rocks, now up, now down, over clefts and crags, till at length about noon I rejoined our party, whom I found in a place called the Hartebeestfontein, belonging to the son of

---

\* Published at Venice in 1711.

† See Beckmann's *Litteratur der alteren Reisebeschreibungen*. The Translator has sought in vain in Linnæus for an account of this snake: no name corresponding to the German one is to be found; nor is the animal mentioned in *Nemnich's Lexicon der Naturgeschichte*.

one of our old friends the Louws. He was not himself at home: he had been absent a fortnight, having gone with some neighbours to hunt the eland.\* They had now exceeded the time that they proposed to be absent by two days, and the wife was under no little anxiety lest some accident had befallen them. It was impossible not to share in her distress, and equally to participate in her joy, at seeing them return in the evening. The company had gone five days northwards, beyond the boundaries of the colony, and besides all the smaller game they had killed, which served as their daily food, they brought home seventeen elands. These animals weighed from seven to eight hundred pounds a-piece, so that the portion of each of the hunters was about four thousand pounds of pure, excellent flesh. This was cut to pieces upon the spot, salted and packed in the skins, and thus brought home in a waggon they had taken with them. Here it was to be smoked, and would then be a plentiful supply of cheap and wholesome food.

The great muscle of the thigh, smoked, is more particularly esteemed. These are cut out at their whole length, and from the resemblance they then bear to bullocks' tongues, are called thigh-tongues. They are often sent as presents, or for sale, to the Cape Town, and are there eaten raw, and cut into very thin slices, with bread and butter. Thus prepared, they are esteemed an excellent *gourmandise*. The taste of the eland's flesh, when eaten fresh, resembles beef, but it is less fat, and can for that reason be kept longer when dried. In this country, where bread is not always to be had, and where fatted mutton is thought not to be wholesome as a constant food, this smoked flesh comes in as a very agreeable and salutary change.

Much has been said against these hunting parties beyond the borders; and it must be confessed that Mr. Barrow does not without justice represent them as incroachments upon the savage tribe, to whom the territories properly belong. They have, indeed, been strenuously prohibited by the Dutch government, since the year 1804; a regulation which certainly has more to be said for than against it, and the best effect of which is, that it must compel

---

\* The *Antelope Oreas*. These are a large sort of Antelopes; they go together in flocks, and their flesh is much esteemed; the marrow is considered as a particular delicacy: the skin is extremely useful, and the Hottentots make tobacco-pipes of the horns.

the colonists to be more diligent in seeking resources within themselves; that they must now be under the necessity of making improvements in the rearing of cattle, to compensate the loss of the supplies derived from the chase. I cannot, however, abstain from remarking, that the ground on which Mr. Barrow condemns this practice, can never, as it appears to me, be maintained, and that he rests his corollary entirely upon false assumptions. In my later journeys, when I went beyond the boundaries of the colony, I was fully convinced that there was a super-abundance of wild game all over the country, which the Bosjesmans, from their natural indolence, and from the imperfect nature of their arms, are by no means in a situation to make use of as an object of advantage to themselves. Nay, I have myself heard them complain of the discontinuance of these hunting parties, since they were, they said, beneficial to them, as they got the refuse, that is to say, the head, the feet, and the entrails of the animals, for their portion. It is, however, I again repeat, right that the possible mischief which might arise from this practice should be prevented.

The district in which the elands had been killed was still, as Louw told us, inhabited by the rhinoceros, and he had himself, in the course of his life, dispatched several of these creatures. Their flesh is commonly given entirely to the savages, who consider it as a particular dainty; and such a present is the more acceptable, since they cannot, with their weak arrows, pierce the thick hide by which the monster is defended. The skin is the only thing valuable to the colonists, to cut into strips for making the driving whips known here by the Malay name of *Schamboks*. As these whips will always sell for two, three, or even four shillings, a rhinoceros amply repays the powder and ball necessary for killing him.

The Hartbeestfontein is a very fertile spot, and affords plenty of good feed for cattle. Louw keeps two hundred horses, three thousand sheep, four hundred goats, and a great number of horned cattle. A very neat nice young wife, and five stout, healthy children complete his domestic happiness; while his cheerful, contented spirit, and frank integrity of mind, render him worthy of all they can bestow.

We found the cold again here pretty severe at night, though the thermometer rose in the day to twenty degrees by Reaumur. In the winter months

deep snows sometimes fall, and it is so cold that the inhabitants of the Roggeveldts, in order to preserve their cattle from want and disease, remove to the neighbouring Karroo, which lies some thousand feet lower. If rain falls at that period of the year, the Karroo, though it is at other times wholly dry and unfruitful, becomes a glorious meadow. Every colonist of the Roggeveld has, therefore, besides his proper habitation, a place in the Karroo, which is called a *Legplaats*, and for which no duty, as for a regular farm, is paid to the government. Here a small house is erected, which at the beginning of spring is forsaken again, and remains empty and open. The drought begins to come on in September and October, when the family return to the hills, where they commonly remain till May or June. As the *Legplaats* is sometimes several days journey from the dwelling-house, it will be easily comprehended that these migrations twice in the year, with wife and children, bag and baggage, must occasion a good deal of trouble and expense.

The country upon these heights is more level, and less wearisome for travelling, than in many other parts we had visited. The valleys are broad and open: only here and there solitary eminences rear their heads: from the summits of many of these there is a fine view over the Karroo below. The stone is covered with a very thin coat of earth, but between the crags grow a variety of delightful aromatic plants, as for instance, different sorts of *oxalis*, *diosma*, *pelargonium*, *chrysocoma*, *pteronia*, *othonna*, and others; the *nudicaulis*, and *cotula globifera* abound more particularly. These afford a wholesome food for the sheep and horses, and enable them to subsist during the drought of summer, supposing the usual fall of snow and rain in winter not to fail; but this it unfortunately did in the years 1803 and 1804. When we were here, therefore, the stock of sheep was comparatively small to what it is at more favourable times. The flocks had not only suffered from want of food, but in consequence of the usual rains failing, they were infested with the sheep-louse to such a degree that many thousands died in consequence. The district contained at one time not less than eighty thousand sheep; but in 1805 they were reduced to half that number. The climate of the Roggeveld mountains has, in a course of years, undergone a considerable change. Old people remember very well, that half a century back the super-abundance of water in the district was such that in the middle of summer the nearest neigh-

bours could not get to each other, on account of the rivers being overflowed, and of the deep morasses in the valleys. There seldom at that period passed a week, even in the hottest months, that violent thunderstorms did not bring with them a profuse supply of rain: on the contrary, whole summers had of late years passed without the intervention of a single storm.

In the circle of the Lower Roggeveld almost every family has more than one place, some have even three or four, so that though consisting of forty-seven places, it contains no more than twenty-two householders. This arises chiefly from the circumstance that most of these places can only be rendered of use at certain times of the year, and that the want of water, the scantiness of feed for their animals, or diseases among the cattle, make it necessary to change their abode from one place to another. Many parts of the district are extremely favourable for the breeding of horses, particularly where the situation is high and cold: in such situations they are seldom attacked by the murrain, a disease from which they suffer exceedingly in low damp places. The number of cattle fed here is very insignificant, and yet less so than in the Middle Roggeveld. A sufficient quantity of corn is grown for the consumption of the inhabitants, that is to say, of wheat and barley. Rye (*roggen*, or *rocken*) is not cultivated here, though the name of the district might lead to the supposition that it was a principal object of cultivation; but the truth is, that the name is taken from a species of grass which grows very much among the clefts, resembling rye, and which the colonists call wild rye.

After remaining a whole day with the friendly and happy owners of the Hartebeestfontein, we proceeded forwards on the eighth of November, and about noon reached the house of Mr. Dirk Van Wyk, at the Matjesfontein. Among the children of this man, who was already advanced in years, and singularly corpulent, we were particularly interested by the eldest daughter, from the terrible scenes she had gone through two years before. She had married a person of the name of Coetzé, with whom she was living at the house of his father not far from hence. Their domestic happiness was already increased by the prospect of her becoming a mother, and the time of her confinement was approaching, when suddenly, in a dark night, the slaves and

Hottentots belonging to the establishment (there being, among the latter, many of the Bosjesmans) rose upon the family, and after inhumanly murdering her husband, her father and mother-in-law, and a sister of her husband's, before her face, plundered the estate of every thing worth carrying away. She herself was, wonderful to relate, spared. It could only be supposed that even these barbarians were moved with something like compassion on seeing her situation. She was, however, dragged away, gagged, till after several days travelling, they arrived at a place of concealment, whither also they carried all their plunder in cattle, in goods, or in money.

A whole week was she detained in this horrible situation, often a witness to the debates among the plunderers respecting her ultimate fate. The Bosjesmans contended for her being put to death; but the milder slaves, to whom she had done several acts of kindness, interposed to save her. At length, however, her death was determined on, as intelligence arrived that a party, which had been sent in pursuit of them by the commandant of the district, was at hand. They were accordingly leading her to a lonely chasm among the rocks, there to complete their purpose, choosing this place, as thinking that there would then be no danger of the corpse being found by their pursuers, when a party of colonists, headed by the brave Field-cornet Nel, rushed from the opposite side into the valley, and falling upon them, rescued the poor woman, and taking most of the wretches prisoners, delivered them over to the hands of justice.

It is probable that the Bosjesmans were principally incited to this horrid deed by the great wealth of the old Coetzé, as no less than twenty-five thousand dollars in paper-money was found in their hands. But it is likewise possible that ill-timed, or over-strained severity on the part of the master, accelerated the crime, as the slaves had been induced to become partakers in it, and had been restrained from disclosing the plot. The poor young woman was restored to her parents, and was not long after brought to bed of a son, whom we now saw, a fine boy of a year and a half old, the delight of his grandfather and grandmother.

In the evening we arrived at the house of the Field-cornet Nel, mentioned above. He was a very sensible, well-informed man: indeed, he and his father and brothers, had the reputation of being the most intelligent and active

cattle and sheep feeders of the country. They had among them six places, of which only four had a supply of water the whole year through. The sons had therefore recently made an agreement for another, which was watered by two never-failing springs, and thought of disposing of the unprofitable ones. The price of this new place was twelve thousand dollars, but it is not their absolute property: they only paid this sum for the house, the garden, and such improvements as were made by the late proprietor, and for his rights as lessee of the lands under the government.

The place where we now were is called *de Kuil*, and the little periodical river that runs through it the *Kuil's-river*. In this river was now a pit so full of water that we could bathe in it; and yet Nel assured us, that a few weeks before there was scarcely sufficient to satisfy the thirst of a couple of horses. The water was very brackish; and what was used for family purposes was drawn from a neighbouring spring. The whole plain before the house was whitened over with the natron rising from the earth: it looked perfectly like a thin layer of snow. I availed myself of this abundance, the like of which we had not seen before, to collect a quantity of it, and clearing it from the sand, carried it with me, thus crystallised, for further examination.

One of our waggons having again, the day before, had an axle-tree broke, the repair of it made a day's rest here necessary. We did not, therefore, proceed on our journey till the tenth of November, on which day, after making a halt at noon at the *Kruis-river*, we arrived in the evening at a delightful little valley called *Koorlandskloof*. This was the scene of the horrid murder above related: it was now in the possession of *Ocker Coetzé*, son to the old man who was murdered, and brother-in-law to the unfortunate woman we had seen. He had with him an unmarried sister, who in that fatal night fortunately escaped the hands of the robbers. She gave us a minute detail of the tragical event, led to it almost irresistibly by our being in the very room which had been the principal theatre of it. This young woman besides excited our interest very much from speaking, with fluency, the languages of the *Caffres*, of the *Hottentots*, and of the *Bosjesmans*. The purity, moreover, with which she spoke her own language (the *Dutch*), and a certain refinement in her manners, shewed a higher degree of polish than we

had found among the rest of the women in these parts. In this place the same inconvenience is experienced, as in so many others already mentioned, that though, in humid seasons, it is very fertile, and will produce corn abundantly, yet in some years the springs are entirely dried up, during the hot months, and the inhabitants, from want of water, are obliged to seek another abode.

## CHAP. VIII.

*The Middle Roggeveld.—Description of the Habitation of a Colonist.—Quarrels among the Inhabitants of the Roggeveld.—Large Flock of Ostriches.—Komberg.—An Instance of the increasing Population of the Colony.—The Little Roggeveld.—Visit from some Bosjesmans.*

AFTER having seen nothing for several weeks but a very dull and uniform country, we were this day agreeably surprised with the pleasant road we travelled, turning and winding now on this side, now on that of the little Fish-river. The road was smooth and level. The frequent fording the river, as it was no where deep, was rather pleasant than troublesome, and the banks on both sides were fringed with willows and mimosa, which, if the foliage could not be called luxuriant, at least reminded us of coolness and shade. He who smiles at the pleasure we received from only being *reminded* of shade, or thinks this observation trivial, must feel the force of an African sun to have an idea of the value of shade and water. This stream must not be confused with the great Fish-river which lies to the east of the colony, on the borders of the Caffre country: the stream, though small, yet even in the places where the water was lowest, had greater depth than any we had passed since the Berg-river.

With our spirits very much cheered, we arrived at the house of a widow named Korf, where, in compliance with the pressing invitation of the mistress, we stopped, and partook of a repast which she instantly prepared for us: we could not, in civility, decline doing so, though we should all have preferred sitting down to take our usual rest at noon by the side of the river. Early in the evening we reached the place of the Three Fountains (*Dreifontainen*), belonging to a Mr. Gerrit Vischer.

We were now in the district of the Middle Roggeveld, where there are sixty-two places belonging to thirty-six householders. Each of these has from two to four thousand sheep, and upon a moderate computation, the whole number kept by them may be estimated at a hundred thousand. The soil is an irony loam mixed with sand, resembling the Karroo soil very

much, but from its greater elevation, and the quantity of loose stones, it is much cooler and more fertile.

The Roggeveld lies from two thousand to two thousand five hundred feet above the Karroo below it. Northwards it slopes gradually towards the Riet-river, and the Nieuweveld. The course of all the little streams which have their sources among the mountains of the Roggeveld is not towards the Karroo, but towards the Agterveld, as it is called, that is the thinly inhabited northern part of the district. What has been said of the climate, and productions of the Lower Roggeveld, as well as of the objects of profit to the inhabitants, will apply equally well to the middle. It lies upon the whole higher, and therefore suits the breeding of horses better; but the people have so strong a prejudice in favour of their own race of horses, that they will not introduce English or Arabians to cross the breed. Theirs are certainly the best among the different races of African horses: they are large and strong, but they are thick at the joints, and any thing rather than handsomely formed. Formerly as much corn was grown as would serve for the consumption of the district, and the seed returned about forty fold; but for some years it has been diminished, and the consumption of flesh has increased. Fewer cattle are kept here than in the Lower Roggeveld, on account of the want of *Valley-ground*, which is every where hereabouts the principal object in breeding cattle.

In large trees, the country is wholly deficient, for which reason the dwelling-places of the inhabitants have a naked forlorn appearance. The want of trees is so striking, that some insignificant hedges of European elder attracted our attention exceedingly. We also saw some single peach-trees, and several hedges of quince. Snow falls earlier here than in the Lower Roggeveld; and as the cold and thick fogs are very injurious to the cattle, the inhabitants are driven down in winter into the Karroo. In October they return home, but they are not long at rest, for in summer they are often compelled by the drought to go northwards to the banks of the Riet-river. A long experience has taught that these removals, however inconvenient they may be to the masters, are very salutary to the animals, particularly the sheep: the oftener their place of feeding is changed, the better they thrive.

On account of the circumstance above stated, the buildings are in no part of the colony smaller, poorer, and less convenient than here. The dwelling-

houses are seldom more than from thirty to forty feet broad, and about twenty high. From the entrance by a little low door, the roof, which is composed of rough unhewn spars of the mimosa-tree, or sometimes of bamboo cane, may be seen. The room by which we enter is that where the family sits; it serves also in many places for the kitchen, and is equally the room for the servants as for the masters; but in the best houses there is a small place backwards for the kitchen. By the side of the large room is another, to which there is a little narrow door: this is the sleeping-room of the whole family, and is often used besides as a place for keeping provisions and other stores. The household furniture consists of some simple tables and stools, with leather thongs for seats: instead of shelves, drawers, or closets, open niches are made in the wall where things are stowed: in one corner of the room commonly stands a tub filled with water, into which any body who wants to drink dips a tin pot, or perhaps the shell of a gourd. A pot with tea stands upon one of the tables almost all day long, of which the women drink perpetually, and thereby lay the foundation of those hysterical disorders to which, as I have already mentioned, they become so subject. The only thing that can excuse this excessive drinking of tea is, that the flavour of the water is in many places so bad, as to be very disagreeable without something to correct it. Beer is no where to be found in the colony, excepting at the Cape Town; wine must be fetched from a great distance to the Roggeveld, and even brandy is very scarce. Milk is only to be had where there is good feed for the cattle, and then it is generally made into butter: the colonists, besides, who live so much upon animal food, do not like milk to drink; they seldom even use it with their tea, and mixed with the brackish water, it has a very vapid disagreeable taste.

The materials of which the walls of the house are built are not to be brought from any great distance. A coarse kind of slate, abounding all over the Roggeveld, serves extremely well in the place of stone for building: this laid in rows like bricks, and cemented together with clay, makes a very thick, solid, and cool wall. From the want of wood, it is impossible to adopt a better style of building here. I have heard those among the inhabitants of the country, who are in good circumstances, assert that if they had but better timbers, they would build as handsome houses as could be seen. But they are not able to afford the enormous sums that must be expended to bring timber over

the steep and rugged mountain roads by which it must be transported from the parts where it can be procured.

The exterior of the house is, however, sufficiently neat: the thatch is well laid, and the walls are plastered both inside and out, so as to make a very good appearance: it is only where there is a want of lime to make the plaster, or of money to buy it, that a surface of clay is substituted. The floors are every where of clay, and are washed every day with a mixture of water and cow-dung, which keeps them cool, and free from vermin. The utmost neatness reigns throughout the house, and the good mistress with her daughters are indefatigable in sweeping and cleaning it.

About the dwelling-house stand a number of smaller buildings, simply constructed, which are partly for the slaves and Hottentots, partly for workshops and store-houses. Near these are the folds for the different sorts of cattle called here *kraals*.\* The stalls for the horses and oxen are enclosed by a wall five or six feet high, those for the sheep are only enclosed by thorn-hedges. As the draught cattle, the cattle destined to be slaughtered, and the cows and calves, have each separate kraals; as the sheep that bear the fine wool are separated from those with the fat tails; and as the ewes and wethers are also kept separate from each other; so there are often as many as seven or eight kraals about a house. An equal number of shepherds and herdsmen are also necessary to watch each separate flock or herd: they go out early in the morning to the place where they are to feed for the day, and all return back to the kraal at sun-set. The dried dung often lies three feet high, or even more, in these kraals, wholly neglected and unused. From the number of cattle kept, and from their being always thus separated, it will appear obvious why such extensive domains are requisite to the colonists. Few estates are less than an hour long, and of equal breadth, containing thirty-six thousand acres; yet even these, on account of the scarcity of water, and the infertility of the soil, are often insufficient for maintaining so large a number of cattle, and the farmer is therefore constrained either to have more than one, or to

---

\* *Kraal* signifies in the first place a glass or coral bead, in the second place a necklace, in the third place the circle in which the Hottentots formerly constructed their assemblage of huts, so that their cattle were enclosed in the centre, and protected from the wild beasts, and in the fourth place any fold for sheep or cattle.

drive his cattle into the common fields near his estate; and since all the neighbours consider themselves as having an equal right to do this, thence arise the frequent quarrels among themselves as to their respective boundaries.

These disputes are no where more frequent than among the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. There are few of the colonists here who have not had a law-suit with their next neighbours; and this country being at so great a distance from the Cape Town, where only all law business can be decided, the difficulty of coming at the grounds of dispute, and of having the proper data on which to make a decision, occasion them often to be of very long duration. Thence comes it that the field-cornets, who give the decision in the first instance, are held in very little respect; they have no means of enforcing their authority, and their competence is often denied by both parties: they are accused, perhaps not always unjustly, of partiality, since they are themselves settled in the district, and are most likely either related to, or at variance with, most of those over whom their jurisdiction extends. The government have therefore had an idea of establishing a commission from the College of Justice at the Cape Town, which shall make an annual progress through some of the distant parts of the colony to hear and decide these disputes upon the spot. This seems a very desirable regulation, as they will then be able to enquire more circumstantially into the subject of disagreement, and having no connections themselves in the country, their decisions will not be liable to the imputation of partiality, while at the same time they may enforce submission to the inferior jurisdictions.

At the place where we now were we found numbers of these kind of dissensions, the parties concerned in which were very eager to lay their grievances before the Commissary-general. Notwithstanding that he wanted rest very much, he heard them all with the utmost mildness, patience, and attention, and took infinite pains to reconcile their differences. With many he succeeded, but others were deaf to his truly kind and paternal advice and exhortations, and were only to be subdued by his juridical decisions. Yet here we had occasion to observe, not without some degree of astonishment, that among so many rough unpolished men the outward forms of decency were never violated. Even in their utmost warmth not one unbecoming word escaped them, not one injurious expression: to such things these people seem

wholly strangers: they are things which never meet their ears. It is indeed sometimes amusing to hear the manner in which they express themselves towards each other; how, even when they mean to make use of reproaches, they employ terms which in the ears of an European would have the most inoffensive meaning. Such is the poverty of their language, and so imperfect are their ideas with regard to those defamatory terms which generally characterise the lower classes of the people in civilised countries.

As the wives of the colonists in general interest strangers very much, both from something agreeable in their persons, and from the gentleness and kindness of their manners, with which, however, is often united an evident firmness and resolution, to be ascribed perhaps to the solitary pastoral kind of life they lead, and to the necessity of watchfully maintaining their authority over such a number of servants and dependants;—much as we had often been interested by the happy union of these qualities, never did we meet with a woman by whom this kind of interest was more warmly excited than by our present hostess. She was now about forty years of age, and though the mother of fifteen children, still in the bloom of health, and with evident remains of former beauty. She had lost three of her children, and the youngest was now at the breast. When I visited her a year and a half after in my third journey, I found that she had made another addition to her family.

Among the colonists assembled here were both the field-cornets of the district, as well as the field-commandant,\* by name Krüger:—these, with several others, accompanied us part of our this day's journey. Our way lay once more by the valley of the little Fish-river, and we had again to complain of the same dull uniformity which had so often annoyed us. If there be no river in the neighbourhood where there is water, at least in winter, a person may travel for weeks together without seeing any thing but miserable low bushes. Wherever a tall bush or a tree is to be discerned, there he may be sure of finding the bed of a river; yet, unless in the cool season between May and August, he must not, therefore, flatter himself that he is sure of finding

---

\* In every district there is a field-commandant, who has the supreme command of the parties which are occasionally sent out against the Bosjesmans, or against plundering-parties of fugitive slaves and Hottentots. He is generally chosen from among the field-cornets, but has no higher judicial authority than his colleagues.

water. More than three-fourths of the rivers in Southern Africa are in summer entirely dry.

The uniformity of our route was, however, agreeably interrupted by several flocks of ostriches which appeared on both sides of us, and which we came tolerably near before they perceived us. They then fled in haste, crowding close together, and running against the wind: an eye unaccustomed to such a sight might easily mistake them at a little distance for a squadron of horsemen. To the right we remarked some single ones which had strayed too far from the main body, and were now easily cut off from joining them by our horsemen. As we had no fire-arms with us, and as it was about their breeding time, when the feathers being good for nothing, the Africans do not think of shooting them, so that it would have availed us little if we had had our guns, we resolved on taking another method of getting as near a sight as possible of one of these cavalier-like figures, and encircled him with our horses, drawing so close to him on all sides, that no way remained for him to escape, but by running directly through the midst of us. Two of our dragoons endeavoured to stop his way, presenting themselves directly before him, and even ventured to strike at him with their drawn sabres. By this manœuvre we got a complete sight of his gigantic figure, for raising his head as high as he could stretch it above the rider, he pushed forward, and evading the stroke of the sabre, ran away. This rashness was much condemned by the Africans, as they assured us, that if the bird in its flight had given them a flap with its powerful wing, and this might easily have happened, an arm or thigh would probably have been broken. The number of ostriches we saw in this place could scarcely be less than three hundred. I never on any other occasion saw so many together.

On the highest point of this wide-spread desolate mountain-plain, whence every now and then a prospect into the Karroo below opened upon us, we found under the shelter of a sort of broken ruined natural wall of rock a small hut, the herdsman's abode while tending his master's cattle at the dry season of the year, when they are sent into these cooler regions. It was open and standing empty, yet offered a welcome shelter from the wind that blew over the mountains, and from the rays of the sun. The door, which was made of reeds bound together, was soon taken off, and by the assistance of four fragments of rock converted into a table: this was immediately set

out with cold provisions, wine, and bread : blocks of stone served us as seats, and good humour united with hunger to give a high relish to our simple meal. Throughout the whole journey similar resting places presented to the party, who could not be expected in so long a course always to have an equal flow of conversation, an opportunity of joking and amusing themselves exceedingly with the contrivances to which it was necessary to have recourse in making out the apparatus for our meal ; and I really think they were, even from the very inconveniences we had to combat, some of the most mirthful and enjoyable moments we passed.

This spot was not only the highest of the surrounding country, but was, according to Colonel Gordon's calculation, the highest we visited in the course of our journey. He considered it as two thousand feet higher than the summit of the Table-mountain, consequently it must be five thousand three hundred feet above the level of the sea. The air was indeed so dry and thin, and we found ourselves so singularly heated and irritated by it, that our lips and skin broke out in blisters. In the night, which we passed at the habitation of a certain Mr. Olivier, we felt the cold very severely, and the tents in which we slept were by the morning quite frozen. This place had the singular name of Tondeldoosfontein (the *tinder-box* fountain), a striking proof again how much the first inhabitants of the colony must have been at a loss for names to give the places.

The road we took from hence was to descend at last to the Karroo, which we must cross to arrive, as according to our plan we intended to do, at the Cold Bokkeveld. This might have been performed by a shorter way, if we had descended immediately from the Roggeveld when we quitted the little Fish-river. We should then, however, have had five days journey through the uninhabited Karroo, whereas having taken the road of the Little Roggeveld, though the journey would upon the whole be longer, we should have only three nights to spend encamped in this dreary waste.

The hill we were now to descend is called the Komberg ; it takes this name from the valley below, which is called the *Kom-valley* (the *Tub-valley*), as being enclosed with hills, so that it has the appearance of a vast tub. It is impossible to give an idea by any description of the prospect which at this spot opened upon us. It is one of the most extensive that I saw in all my travels over Southern Africa. Never having appeared during the last fort-

night to ascend very much, we were exceedingly astonished to find ourselves at such a height, to see at what a depth below was the country that lay spread before us. From this point the greatest part of the Karroo is seen, with the hills that bound it to the west and south. To the right and left the margin was formed by the gently inclining circuit of the Roggeveld mountains: deep chasms broke at intervals the continuity of this ridge, forming repeated steep and lengthened declivities, which were covered with loose fragments of stones, or slate of a whitish grey. Over these was thrown a thin light clothing of plants, which, mixing their verdure with the fallow ground, threw a hue of faint green over the whole face of the monstrous landscape. Far to the south the view was bounded by the lofty hills which inclose the Hex-river, in the vallies of which live the inhabitants of the Cold Bokkeveld. The space between is the great Karroo, as it is called, a parched and arid plain, stretching out to such an extent that the vast hills by which it is terminated are almost lost in the distance. The beds of numberless little rivers cross, like veins, in a thousand directions, this enormous space; the course of them might in some places be clearly distinguished by the dark green of the mimosas which spread along their banks. Excepting these, no where, as far as the eye could reach, was a tree to be seen, no nor even a shrub—no where any signs of life, not a point upon which the eye could dwell with pleasure. The compass of human sight is too small to take in the circumference of the whole—the soul must still rest upon the horrors of the wide spread desert.

We began to descend, leading our horses in our hands, slipping over the loose rolling stones which crossed our way at every step. The first quarter of the way is steep as a staircase; all the wheels of the waggons were locked, so that they slid down over the loose slates with which the whole way was strewed. The road then begins to take a different direction, and after many turnings and windings, comes to the front of the declivity, when, looking down, a house is seen so directly below that we seem almost upon it, yet there is a full hour still to wind and turn before it can be reached. The African hills have this resemblance to Mount Sinai that they are much less difficult to ascend than to descend.

We now found ourselves in the Kom-valley. A thousand greetings of welcome resounded on all sides of us from the farm, and at the door of a

house; not wind and water tight, we were received by two hosts, who lived here with their families in a joint *domicile*. We were conducted into the grand apartments, where the perforations in the thatch were covered over with mats as well as they could be managed to keep out the weather. A large chest served as a table, and some smaller ones as seats: our dinner was a good sotip made of mutton, and a wild goat roasted; while, for a great treat, by way of dessert, our hosts set before us some white bread and milk, which had been just sent as a present to them: we found here, besides, some fresh butter, the first we had seen, which also was a present from a neighbour;—and yet amid all this manifest poverty, every thing was perfectly clean. The women took upon themselves to do the honours of the house, and were exceedingly active in their posts: they had cheerful contented countenances, and the house swarmed with children, some of whom were even handsome. The number there seemed to be, occasioned us to count them, when we found that five couple, inhabitants of the last three houses we had visited, had fifty-one living children: four out of the five mothers had each a child at the breast, and a wager might very well be laid that none of these would be the last. It is moderate in this country to reckon upon ten children to each family, allowing for what may have been carried off by death, as it is scarcely ever to be supposed that the whole number of children born will be reared. In these five families, we were informed, that if all had lived there would have been sixty-two. From this example, as well of the number born, as of the mortality among them, a general estimate of the population may be made, which will agree pretty well with what I found afterwards upon a more accurate enquiry to be the fact.

We were shewn here as a curiosity, a youth of the nation of the Briquas, who both from his slender form, and more noble physiognomy, was strikingly different from the rest of the Hottentots. The extraordinary accounts here given me of this nation was in part the occasion of the resolution which I made, and executed a year and a half after, to visit the Briquas myself. I defer what I have to say with regard to them to the time when I shall give an account of this journey.

We proceeded onwards, still descending, till we came to a very remarkable bill, which brought us in the evening to a place called the Hoop (the *Hope*), inhabited by the brother of the same Vischer who has been already mentioned.

We were now at the centre point of the Little Roggeveld.

The district which goes under this name is directly at the foot of the great Roggeveld mountains, and forms a sort of terrace directly above the Karroo. It differs from other parts of the Roggeveld, since, notwithstanding that it is rather high land, there is a constant supply of water from the springs the whole year through, so that it is always habitable. The breeding of cattle is therefore a principal branch of industry here, and the soil is, besides, very good for the cultivation of fruit-trees. Corn is sown every year, but it does not yield abundantly. In some cases, however, if any quantity of rain falls at the time of the corn coming into ear, which indeed does not often happen, the harvest is very plentiful. Six years before such an instance occurred, and Vischer told me that in that year he gathered a hundred and forty bushels of wheat from only two bushels of seed. Yet since the feed of sheep and horses is but indifferent, the inhabitants, on the whole, are poorer than in the higher parts of the Roggeveld; and this district contains only fourteen families of colonists.

Our waggons did not arrive till late at night, and had suffered so much from the bad roads, that they came in at last with broken shafts and axle-trees, so that they were with difficulty got on at all. Some of the neighbouring colonists, who were good workmen in this way, were called in to assist in repairing them, and in conjunction with our smith the work was completed the next day. The object in which their lading consisted had not suffered less: the furniture of our table was almost all broken to pieces, as were many of the bottles of wine and oil; and we considered ourselves as very fortunate that we were now approaching a more inhabited country, where we could repair our misfortunes, and make some fresh provision for our future travels. The difference of the climate was here strikingly evinced by the change in the thermometer: in the higher parts of the Roggeveld it had been at 64°, according to Fahrenheit, in the middle of the day; it was now at 86°.

As we were sitting at our dinner this day, we were surprised by the entrance of two Bosjesmans. They belonged to the troop with whom some years before the colonists had made the sort of treaty mentioned above, by which they engaged themselves to abstain from their usual maraudings, on condition of a certain tribute of cattle being paid them yearly. They had heard of one of the principal magistrates of the colony being in the neighbourhood, and were come in hopes of receiving some presents. They approached the company assembled at table not without manifest symptoms of apprehension and embar-

nessment, but a glass of wine, which was presented to them, and the looks of kindness with which they were received, soon inspired them with confidence. One of them produced a paper wrapped up in a piece of cloth: it was a sort of passport given by the Field-commandant, as a sanction to the troop for begging, from time to time, of the inhabitants of the district a few sheep, or other things of which they might stand very much in need: in return for which, they had promised, on their part, to remain quiet, and not murder or steal. Four years before, a collection had been made among the inhabitants of the northern districts of sixteen hundred sheep and thirty head of cattle, as a present to them for beginning a regular establishment, that they might be enabled to breed their own flocks and herds, and live a quiet and orderly life. The experiment did not, however, succeed. As they had no government, no secure dwelling-place, no social compact, nay, were even without individual property, the people from the remote parts had come down upon them, and spunging on their little stock, it was soon completely annihilated. Since that time the neighbourhood had been compelled to give them, from time to time, sheep, tobacco, brandy, beads, buttons, and other trifles, happy if by this means they could so far purchase their good-will as that they would abstain from stealing their cattle, and murdering the Hottentots who were guarding them.

But since the number of the whole nation is little known, and while people are at peace with one horde, another may suddenly come down upon and plunder them, a peace of this kind can avail but little. Indeed, these friends themselves are very burthensome, since they will come, by twenty or thirty in a body, to visit the estate of a colonist; that is to say, they will remain there days, and even weeks, expecting to be fed and attended upon; nor will go away at last without handsome presents of cattle. Nay, it has sometimes happened that the guests, in return for having been thus entertained, since opportunities had been afforded them of knowing thoroughly the state of things in and about the house, have, after departing in the morning as friends, returned by night as enemies, and breaking in among the herds, carried off numbers of the cattle, with which they have escaped to the neighbouring mountains, trusting to their poisoned arrows as a security against their being reclaimed by their owners. Should it, however, happen, that a sufficient number of the inhabitants could be collected together to venture upon pursuing them, and they are obliged to fly, they do not quit their plunder till all the

cattle are killed, or hamstrung, so as to render it impossible for them to be carried away alive. It cannot, therefore, be matter of surprise if the antipathy of the colonists to like plunderers is carried pretty far, and that it is scarcely considered as a crime if in the pursuit of these flying hordes some of them are, from time to time, killed. That regular parties, however, are made by the colonists to hunt them down, as some late writers have asserted, I must say is untrue.

Equally untrue is the assertion that the nation of the Bosjesmans is composed of fugitive slaves and Hottentots. They are, and ever have been, a distinct people, having their own peculiar language, and their own peculiar customs, if the terms *language* and *customs* can be applied to people upon the very lowest step in the order of civilization, as the Bosjesmans may certainly be esteemed: one might almost call this extraordinary race without customs and without language. No Hottentot understands a word of the Bosjesman language; and the nation was hated by all others on account of its habits of plunder, and disregard of the rights of property, long before the Europeans settled in Southern Africa. The Bosjesmans always lived in enmity with their nearest neighbours, over whom they had this advantage, that they had themselves nothing but their lives to lose in the strife, whereas they could gain from the Caffres and Koranas their herds and their flocks. At this moment the enmity between the Bosjesmans and the Caffres is greater than between the former and the colonists; nay, they are even more gratified by depriving a Hottentot of life than a white man. This is not, however, the place to discuss the subject more fully; these sketches are sufficient to shew how erroneous have been the descriptions hitherto given of this extraordinary race, and how little the truth with regard to them is really known.

The hordes who now live upon the borders of the colony, or within its boundaries, are become more peaceable than their distant brethren: those, in particular from whom the present embassy was sent, have, for several years together, abstained from plunder. But since the Bosjesmans have no national interest, and any compact made with them, even if it were ever so well observed, could have merely a partial effect, binding individuals only, not the whole nation, it is easy to comprehend how little such agreements can afford security to the colony at large. The experience of the following years only shewed, alas! the inefficiency of the compact made with them at this time.

More distant hordes came down, and not only made terrible devastations upon the property of the colonists, but vented their rage equally upon their own peaceable countrymen, when they found that the latter would not make a common cause with them: but more of this hereafter. The colonists ought not, therefore, to be arraigned very severely if, finding the compact burthen-some, they were unwilling to continue paying tribute to an enemy too weak to have the power of enforcing the agreement it had made. There seems, however, nothing better to be done at present, if the utter extirpation of the whole race is not desired (an idea which must be deprecated by every person of common humanity), than to endeavour, by conciliatory measures, to purchase the good-will of the numberless scattered hordes, though this may not be a thing very easy to accomplish.

I shall not enter further in this place into the modes of life of these untamed people, since at a proper place the subject will be amply treated, but shall return now to the two individuals whose arrival among us gave occasion to the present digression. They were scarcely four feet high: the colour of their skin was only discernible in particular places: a thick coat of grease and dirt covered their faces and meagre limbs like a rind. Under the eyes, where the smoke of the fires by which they delight to sit, had somewhat melted the grease, was a little spot quite clean, by which the proper yellow hue of the skin could be seen. A wild, shy, suspicious eye, and crafty expression of countenance, forms, above all things, a striking contrast in the Bosjesman with the frank, open physiognomy of the Hottentot. The universally distinguishing features of the Hottentot, the broad, flat nose, and the large, prominent cheek-bones, are, from the leanness of the Bosjesman, doubly remarkable. Their figure, though small, is not ill-proportioned, and they would not be ugly if they had more flesh; but the withered thigh, the large knee-bone, and thin leg, are very far from handsome. Yet the men may be called handsome in comparison with the women. The loose, long hanging breasts, and the disproportionate thickness of the hinder parts, where, as in the tails of the African sheep, the whole fat of the body seems collected, united with the ugliness of their features, makes a Bosjesman woman in the eyes of an European a real object of horror. The Hottentot women, though they in some respect resemble those of the Bosjesman race, yet from their greater height, and more justly proportioned limbs, may in comparison with them be called handsome.

The cloathing of our visitors consisted only of a sheep-skin worn over their shoulders as a sort of mantle, with the woolly side inwards, and tied round the neck with a leather thong. On their heads they had greasy leather caps, ornamented with glass beads of a great variety of colours: they had strings of the same beads round their necks, and round their wrists were broad bracelets of iron and copper. The middle part of their bodies were covered with the skin of a jackall, fastened round them with a thong of leather, and they had sandals of ox-leather bound round their feet. They had each a small leather bag hanging on their arms, in which they carried their provisions, with some tobacco, and a reed which served as a pipe. Such, with very little variation, was the costume which I found worn by these people when I visited them in their own wild state. They were then sometimes without their beads and bracelets, and wore the skin of an antelope instead of a sheep. Their woolly hair smeared over with grease and dust, and tied in a number of knots, hung down below their leather caps.

We found it at first very difficult to enter into conversation with our guests, since they could not make themselves understood either by the colonists who were present, or by our Hottentots, and their fright made them unable to express their wishes by signs. Some little presents, however, and the wine, at length encouraged one of them so far as that he began to be talkative. He spoke with much animation, and in a chattering, clacking kind of tone, by which he seemed to express his thanks and respect, mixing now and then with his own language some words of Dutch which he had occasionally collected, and which assisted exceedingly in explaining his meaning: in particular, he often introduced the words *Groot Baas*, (Great Master), by which he meant to signify our chief. The Hottentots commonly call the masters they serve *Baas*, and the governor of the colony had ever since its establishment been always called both by them and their wild fellow-countrymen *Groot Baas*.\* At every object which excited their astonishment or

---

\* Many mistakes have been made, I know not by what means, respecting the situation of the Hottentots in the service of the colonists. They have been supposed their property, and that they take them in their early youth to make slaves of them. This is not the case: the Hottentot is a hired servant, and there is this great distinction between them and the slaves, that the former only address their master by the title of *Baas* (Master), while the slaves address him as *Sieur* (Lord), pronounced here *Ssohr*. A Hottentot in consequence takes it extremely amiss

gave them pleasure, they exclaimed *mooi! mooi!* (fine! fine!) which words were pronounced with a slow and lengthened tone that was not displeasing. As they were by degrees inspired with more confidence, their still increasing curiosity and astonishment was expressed by gestures; if the admiration was moderate, they made a sort of whistling noise, clapping their fore-finger hastily upon their lips; but if they wanted to express it in a high degree, they threw their right arm over their head, throwing the head back so that the hand touched the neck. The objects which more particularly pleased and astonished them were the presents we made them, of tobacco, and tobacco-pipes, of looking-glasses, beads, buttons, &c. &c.---a watch which we shewed them---the white skins and long hair of our women---the whiskers of our dragoons---the sound of the bugle-horn and violin---and our tents with their furniture.

The Commissary-general carried them into his tent, offering them a seat, which they rejected, and sat down immediately upon the ground. He then wrote a sort of passport, which he gave them, requesting the good-will of the Dutch christians towards the Bosjesmans; and signified that as long as they should keep that paper, and abstain from robbery and plunder, there would be peace and friendship between them and the Dutch. As a confirmation of the treaty, a present was made them of twenty sheep, which they were to carry away, and eat with their companions.

Before they quitted us, two others of their party came, one of whom was presented by the colonists as the chief of the horde, though there was nothing by which he seemed to be distinguished as such. He could, however, speak a sort of broken Dutch, and was therefore the speaker when the peace was finally concluded. As an emblem of his dignity, and as a memorial of the compact, he hung round his neck a piece of brass, which seemed to have been formerly the lid of a tobacco-box, upon which was inscribed on one side the word *Vrede*, and on the other, *Jas*; it had been given him by one of the colonists. It is a remarkable instance of the total absence of civilization among these people that they have no names, and seem not to feel the want of such a means of distinguishing one individual from another.

---

if he is addressed by the words *Pay* or *Jonge*, as the slaves are; he expects to be called by his name if addressed by any one who knows it; and by those to whom it is not known he expects to be called Hottentot (which he pronounces *Hotnot*) or boy.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Great Karroo.—Description of it.—The Cold Bokkeveld.—Its Fertility.—Remarkable form of the Schurfdeberg.—Rocks near the House of the Cyclops-like Overseer.—Fine Prospect from the Summit of the Witsemberg.—Arduous descent of this Mountain.—Arrival in Roodezand.*

ON the fifteenth of November we again set forwards towards the Karroo, and at noon reached the last place on the terrace of the Little Roggeveld, called Standvastigheid, the house of Mr. Abraham Botman. An incredible number of flies\* made the short rest that we proposed to take here extremely disagreeable, and we found ourselves in danger, every morsel we put into our mouths, of eating some of these insects. They have an odd contrivance here for destroying them. A large wisp of straw is dipped in milk, and hung by a string to the beams of the roof, and when this is covered with flies, they come with a large bag slowly under the straw, and getting it in to a certain depth, shake it well, so that the flies are shaken to the bottom of the bag; in this way they assured us that they had sometimes taken as many as a bushel of flies in a day. In the Tulbagh the colonists employ the slaves, whose office it is to go out for wood, to bring home with them bundles of the sticky bush, *Roridula dentata*, which they lay about the room, and it is incredible how soon they are covered with flies, provided the precaution has been taken not to leave the window or door open.

As we proceeded onwards, we met a family of colonists with their waggons and herds of cattle, who had been for some time in the Karroo, but were now driven back to their own habitation in the Roggeveld, from the springs below being entirely dried up. In the evening we reached an uninhabited place in the Karroo, called the Brand-valley, where we already found our oxen unyoked from the waggons, and our people busily employed in pitching the tents. The remains of buildings which were here conspicuous on the naked

---

\* Our common chamber flies; the *Musca domestica*, and *Stomoxys irritans*.

sand, proved that formerly, at certain times of the year at least, this place was inhabited. For some generations the spring has constantly grown worse and worse, and the spot is not now even fit for an *Ausspannplatze*. In the middle of summer it is entirely dry, and at this moment there was nothing but a little puddle of muddy brackish water.

This was the first night that we passed entirely in our camp far from any human habitation. It happened to be the birth-day of one of our young ladies, so we celebrated the double solemnity with assembling the whole party in the evening in the large tent, where we had a cheering bowl of punch, the enjoyment of which was not a little heightened by the contrast it presented to the cold south-west wind that blew over the desert, and to the wretchedness of the water afforded by the place.

It had been determined that we should remain here the following day, and wait for the cool of the evening to proceed on our journey, as we might travel with the utmost safety by night over the smooth and level roads of the Karroo. As, however, contrary to our expectations, the weather had turned very cool, and as our cattle did not find here either food or water that was very relishable, the resolution of the former day was by unanimous consent rescinded, and we agreed to proceed onwards as soon as every thing could be made ready. We had now an admirable proof of the readiness our people had acquired, by five weeks practice, in striking and repacking the tents and their furniture, for the whole business was accomplished in so short a time that it was scarcely half an hour after the resolution was passed before we were ready to march.

One of our horses had slipped his halter in the night and run away. A Hottentot who was sent after him, traced him so well, that in the course of the day he caught him again and rejoined us: this readiness of the Hottentots in tracing animals is really wonderful. Let the ground be ever so hard, so that scarcely any impression of the hoof or foot remains, still their pursuit is never made in vain. A stone fresh rolled, a fresh broken or bent bush or blade of grass, is sometimes the only mark left of any thing having been there, yet it seldom happens that by pursuing these imperfect impressions a little while, they cannot tell by what animal they have been made.

We proceeded now farther and farther into the Karroo, and could not help, at every step, expressing our astonishment to each other, at finding it so very

different from the idea we had formed of it. Indeed, the descriptions hitherto given of this tract appear to me so little correct, and so imperfect, that it cannot be superfluous to describe it somewhat more amply. Under this name is comprehended a large extent of uninhabited country, towards which nature seems to have acted like a step-mother, lying between the two first great chains of mountains which stretch across the African continent from east to west, parallel to each other, and parallel to the southern coast. The length of this waste, according to the general computation, is sixty geographical miles, its breadth from fifteen to twenty; its surface is computed at one thousand square miles. It is bounded to the east by the Schneeberge (Snow-mountains), Koub and Kamdeboo; to the west by the Cederberge (Cedar mountains), and a part of the mountains of the Bokkeveld: it declines from the northern chain of mountains, and from the Nieuweveld towards the south; its medium height above the level of the sea being estimated at three thousand feet. Almost all the rivers that flow from the northern chain of mountains take the same direction, and at many points break through the southern chain, which separates the Karroo from the fertile lands on the coast; only in the western part of this tract, where a considerable passage is opened between the Cedar mountains and the mountains of the Roggeveld, some streams bend their course to the northward.

From what has been said of the Karroo by the writers who have hitherto described it, the readers have been led to expect an immense level plain like the deserts of Asia or of South America; but this is not the case. In the midst of this waste rise some pretty lofty slate hills, which are only considered as eminences scarcely worthy of remark, because they come into comparison with the lofty mountains by which it is surrounded; and for this reason alone have never been thought worthy of being noticed in maps. There are large spaces which are perfect plains, particularly towards the west, and at the very eastern extremity of the Karroo, some of which comprise from thirty to forty square miles of entirely level surface, but these are intermixed with eminences which in other parts would appear not inconsiderable. The soil throughout is a sand mixed with clay or argillaceous earth, and contains every where more or less of particles of iron, from which all yellow tinted soil throughout the colony has obtained the name of Karroo ground.

Such a kind of soil is the product only of the ruins of nature, if I may be allowed the expression, so that there is no where any thick coat of it: in digging to a foot below the surface, we come to a hard and impenetrable stone. From these and other concomitant causes, the vegetation must, of necessity, at all times be extremely poor, and in summer, when the sun has dried the soil to the hardness of brick, it ceases almost entirely. The *mesembryanthemum* and some other succulent plants: some sorts of *gorteria*, of *bergia*, and of *asters*, whose roots, like the bulbs of liliaceous plants, nature has fortified with a ten-fold net of fibres under the upper rind to protect them against the hardened clay:—such plants alone resist the destructive nature of this inhospitable soil.

As soon as in the cooler season the rains begin to fall and penetrate the hard coat of earth, these fibres imbibe the moisture, and pushing aside the clay, the germ of the plant, under their protection, begins to shoot. As by successive rains the soil gets more and more loosened, the plants at length appear above it, and in a few days the arid waste is covered with a delicate green clothing. Not long after, thousands and thousands of flowers enamel the whole surface: the mild mid-day sun expands the radiated crowns of the *mesembryanthemums* and *gorteria*, and the young green of the plants is almost hidden by the glowing colours of their full-blown flowers, while the whole air is filled with the most fragrant odour. This odour is more particularly delightful, when after a calm day the sun declines, and the warm breath of the flowers rests quietly on the plain.

At this time the whole dreary desert is transformed into one continued garden of flowers; the colonist with his herds and his flocks leaves the snowy mountains, and descending into the plain, there finds a plentiful and wholesome supply of food for the animals, while troops of the tall ostrich and the wandering antelope, driven also from the heights, share the repast, and enliven the scene. On the western side of the Karroo stand the winter habitations of the Bokkeveld colonists who come from the south, near those of the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. Long separated friends and relations see each other again, are neighbours for a time, and enjoy in each others' society a life of quiet and content. The attendance upon the flocks and herds is here light and easy: for in this plain, though the sheep may sometimes stray, they are never finally lost: no ox or cow falls down the precipice and is seen no

more; the cattle feed secure from the lion, the tyger, or the hyæna, since there is no hole or cave where these plunderers can conceal themselves: the murrain is unknown among them, and the plants upon which they feed are a remedy, if they are diseased, which speedily restores them to health. All occasions of strife between the different inhabitants are averted by the lands being common property, and spreading out to such an extent, that there is feed in plenty for the cattle of every one.

Before the inhabitants of the mountains descend into the Karroo their fields and gardens are put into winter order, but while the field-work ceases, and the seed above rests quietly under the moist covering of snow, another kind of work commences. The children and slaves are sent to collect the young shoots of the *Channa* bushes.\* The ashes of these saline plants produce a strong ley, and of this, mixed with the fat of the sheep, collected during the year, the women make an excellent soap, from the sale of which a considerable profit is derived: large quantities are sent to the Cape Town, where it is sold at a high price. In the mean time, the men prepare, from several kinds of plants, and the bark of certain trees, a sort of tan for curing the skins of the wild animals taken at their hunting parties in the summer. The quantity of leather thus prepared is more than sufficient for clothing their children and slaves, and much of it is also sent to the Cape Town, or sold to the colonists who live in the parts principally devoted to agriculture. Thus the trouble and inconvenience occasioned by these two-fold removals in the course of the year is amply repaid, and the people by whom they are performed talk with a delight, which seems extraordinary to the more indolent part of their colonist brethren, of the time spent in the Karroo.

But how soon is the country again deprived of all its glory: it scarcely continues more than a month, unless late rains, which must not often be expected, call forth the plants again into new life. As the days begin to lengthen, the revived power of the mid-day sun checks once more the lately-awakened powers of vegetation. The flowers soon fade and fall, the stems and leaves dry away, and the hard coat of earth locks up the germs till the time arrives for the return of the rains: the succulent plants alone still

---

\* *Salsola aphylla*, and *Salicornia fruticosa*.

furnish food for the herds and flocks. Soon the streams begin to dry, the *springs* scarcely flow, till at length the complete drought compels the colonists to *seek* again their more elevated homes; yet even then, they quit the plain *with* reluctance, and the flocks, accustomed to endure thirst, still linger behind, *feeding* on the succulent plants which afford at once food and drink, and are particularly salutary to those that bear the wool. Every day, however, the *Karoo* grows more and more solitary, and by the end of September it is wholly deserted. The hardened clay bursts into a thousand cracks, which evince to the traveller the vast power of the African sun. Every trace of verdure is *vanished*, and the hard red soil is covered over with a brown dust, formed from the ashes of the dried and withered plants. Yet amongst these ashes is the *seed* nourished that is to produce future generations, and the relics of one year's vegetation furnishes the manure that is to cherish the germs till the *next* year's rain again brings them forth.

In some places, particularly in the beds of the rivers, water remains a longer time by the supplies afforded from concealed reservoirs, but the power of the sun soon corrupts these standing pools, so that they are wholly unavailing to the traveller. It is better for him when the bed is quite dry, since then by *digging* he can sometimes find good water, deep below the surface, beyond the influence of those parching rays by which that above has been rendered *useless*.

It was in this desolate state that we found the *Karoo*, when we travelled through it. The road was level and easy, even over the heights that we had sometimes to ascend. The beds of the rivers, a considerable number of which we crossed, were all entirely dry: we saw not a footstep of either man or animal: the shrubs were withered and dried: scarcely did we find even a solitary beetle flitting like a shadow among the thinly scattered remnants of the shrubs: nothing could be more *ennuyant* than travelling over such a country. Towards evening we came to a rock where was a spring, and before it a rough bason formed in the stone, containing still two or three pails full of stagnant brackish water: here we resolved to pass the night. This place is called *Smitswinkel*. A few miserable clay huts pointed it out as the winter habitation of some family of colonists. The ground was so hard that we were obliged to peck holes in it with our iron tools, to drive in the poles which were to support our tents, and even then they had such indif-

ferent hold, that if a brisk wind had sprung up in the night, our houses would probably have fallen over our heads.

At noon on the following day, the sun being particularly hot, we stopped by the side of the *Great-river*. From the name, something distinguished might be expected, but this stream is only *great* in comparison with the other rivers of the Karroo, which are scarcely more than gutters: in itself it is small, and miserably destitute of water. A few places only afforded a little standing in holes in the rocky bed; and though it was cool and looked clear, it was so ill-flavoured and brackish, that our cattle, notwithstanding their thirst, could not drink it. Probably it came from some springs deep in the ground, and not discoverable, for there were mimosas growing about of a tolerable size, and beginning already to be in bloom, while in other places that we had seen them, both before and after, they were still very backward. A number of beautiful insects, especially of the *mylabris* and *buprestis*, were hovering about these trees, and I caught several sorts which I never saw either before or after. The smell of the mimosa flower is particularly agreeable: the bees are exceedingly fond of these flowers, and the flavour of them may be distinguished in the wild honey collected near them. Their foliage is always the finest at the time when they begin to blow; they then even afford a tolerable shelter from the sun. Under their shade, and by the side of the river, we found a little grass, which afforded no small delight to our horses and oxen. The *Great-river* divides the Karroo of the Roggeveld from that of the Bokkeveld.

Through the same level, but dully uniform road, we arrived about sun-set at the place where we intended to rest for the night; it was called the *Platfontein*, from a little spring of very bad water. We found here, in consequence of having sent a courier forwards, relays of oxen from the cold Bokkeveld, with the Field-cornet and some inhabitants of the district. They proposed to us to continue our journey through the night, since there was here neither grass for our cattle, nor water enough for them to drink; the horses they said would besides be less tired with going on now in the cool of the night than if they were to wait till morning, when they must travel in the heat and with empty stomachs. As we all thought there was much reason in what they urged, the proposal was assented to unanimously, so we took a little repast in haste, and then, under the guidance of some of the party,

proceeded on our way. The Field-cornet rode on before to prepare every thing at his house for our reception.

At break of day we came to a narrow pass, called the Bokkeveldspoort, at the first entrance of the mountains which separate the Karroo from the Bokkeveld. We arrived there just at the moment when the rising sun began to gild the lofty summits of the mountains, while the twilight was still glimmering in the depth of the ravine. The return of the morning light threw magic shadows upon the naked rugged rocks, and on the green bushes that bordered a deep torrent. Our minds were particularly attuned to feeling the whole effect of the scene: the night had been spent in watching and travelling over a dreary desert, and now, as if by enchantment, we found ourselves in the mild twilight of this contracted valley, the living vegetation of which formed so fine a contrast with the dry, barren, and almost, as it appeared, boundless plain which we had quitted; while the contrast was no less striking between the sharp points presented by the profiles of the mountains before us, and the curvated heads of the slate hills, over which we had so recently passed.

Narrow as was the pass at its entrance, we soon found a wider valley spread out before us, from which the road gradually ascended. The ridges of lofty towering hills rose to the right and left, while looking upwards the eye was carried into dark and broken chasms. High above, enjoying the first warm rays of the morning sun, was a little red antelope feeding at the very edge of a prominent piece of rock, but frightened at the sound of the African whip, re-echoed from every part, it quickly fled into the valley on the other side.

We soon arrived at the Field-cornet's house.—He was of French descent, and his name properly Bruyere, though he was now called Martin Bruel. His farm was kept in excellent order, and was surrounded with very fine orchards and corn-fields: but what charmed us more than any thing, unaccustomed as we had now been for some time to the sight of forest trees, was a little wood of old oaks and lofty poplars, near which ran a fine clear stream of excellent water: when to these things is added the situation of the house, between high and steep mountains, the reader will easily conceive how truly romantic must have been the scene. Not above a thousand paces from the house was another, belonging to a neighbour, resembling it in every respect,

both as to the natural charms by which it was more distantly surrounded, and in the cultivation that appeared in its immediate vicinity; but, sad to say, these neighbours had long been at enmity on the subject of feed for the cattle and the boundaries of their corn-fields. A father had some time since unadvisedly divided this fine inheritance between his two sons, when one selling his share of the property, estranged himself from the family, and thereby sowed the seeds of an irreconcilable enmity between his brother and the new neighbour whom he had given him. It is much to be lamented that the peace of this lovely little valley should be interrupted by strife and discord. I have seldom seen a spot more silent and sequestered, without being confined and gloomy—it was the very place of all others for one who was altogether weary of the world, and of living among mankind, to retire to. The soil is fruitful, and it is richly watered with plentiful springs, while it bears excellent corn and fruit of every sort, even some fruits that will not usually thrive in an African climate. Sheep, cattle, and horses, are abundantly supplied with wholesome food; and the murrain, so destructive in many parts, never has intruded itself into this delightful retreat.

As to this valley, so to the whole circuit to which it belongs, has nature been superlatively kind. Two and thirty estates are comprehended within it: the name of the Cold Bokkeveld has been given to it from its high mountainous situation, in opposition to the Warm Bokkeveld, which lies towards the south in a much lower plain. The northern part of the district is particularly cold, whence it has the name of Friesland. The snow sometimes lies there in winter ankle deep, which compels the inhabitants to descend into the Karroo. In the southern part, where the houses are in lower valleys, the flocks and herds only are sent into the Karroo, the families remain at their own houses.

Every one grows as much corn as will serve for his own consumption, where the springs are abundant, and will permit of channels to be made from them, so that the lands may be supplied with water all the year. Much more land might be cultivated if the transport were easier, and the mountains between the district and the Cape Town were not so steep and difficult of ascent. A little traffic in tobacco, wine, and brandy, is carried on between the Cold Bokkeveld, and some of the northern parts through which we had travelled; but the wine here is not very good. The fruits and pulse, con-

siderable quantities of which are sent to the Cape Town, are much more advantageous objects of trade. Yet here a great drawback is experienced, for the merchandize must all be carried over the mountains either by men or horses; the waggons can only pass empty. Oranges, lemons, peaches, apricots, figs, melons, and grapes, are the fruits principally cultivated, and they are finer flavoured here than in any part of the colony: both fresh and dried are sent to the Cape. Apples and pears, from the coolness of some parts of the district, are likewise to be had very good; and it is almost the only spot in the whole colony where cherries are produced: but as these cannot be transported in any considerable quantity, they are seldom sent to the town except as presents to some of the principal people. The greatest part of the pulse for ship stores is furnished by the Cold-Bokkeveld.

All sorts of European woods are here tougher and harder than in other parts, since they have more rest in winter, and do not come into leaf again so immediately. Whether any experiment has ever been made to plant limes and beeches, which have so often failed near the Cape Town, I do not know; but they are as little to be found here as in other parts of the colony. Poplars grow particularly well, and are planted generally in preference to oaks, because the wood is more useful for many little purposes, and wood for building is not so much wanted. Firs are not planted at all.

Another proof of the great advantage derived from the coolness of this climate is the superiority of the poultry bred here, both as to the numbers and quality. This forms a principal object of food to the colonists of the Cold-Bokkeveld. In most parts of the colony it is extremely difficult to rear turkeys, but here they are reared without any trouble, and without any particular attention being paid to the chicks.

The district has generally been considered as very much resembling that of the Roggeveld, both as to the coolness of the climate, its high situation, and as to the time requisite in each for fattening the different sorts of cattle: but on a nearer examination, many striking differences may be observed. The Roggeveld is a flat hill, or it might with greater propriety be called a very elevated plain, consisting almost entirely of masses of slate; whereas the Cold Bokkeveld is composed of granite-hills, mixed with layers of sand-stone, intersected by deep vallies; some amply furnished with springs; some very deficient in water. The soil of the latter is found extremely favourable for the cultivation

of fat grass and fruit-trees, neither of which grow well in the Roggeveld; while this latter district abounds with the aromatic herbs, so excellent for feeding sheep, in which the Bokkeveld falls entirely.

In our day's journey yesterday over the Karroo we had seen the melancholy sight of more than seventy sheep lying dead in the road. They belonged to a drove which was going to a butcher at the Cape Town, and probably had been permitted, inadvertently, while they were heated with travelling, to drink of the bad water in the Great-river. On our mentioning this, the people of the neighbourhood immediately dispatched some waggons to collect the skins and tails, the fat of the tails being extremely useful both for making soap and candles, and for waggon-grease. They employed the utmost dispatch in doing this, and not without reason, since the large vultures, who assemble very soon about carrion, had they been some hours later, would probably have left them nothing but bones. These birds followed us through our whole journey, particularly in uninhabited places; and scarcely had we quitted a spot where we had made a meal or encamped for the night, before they were upon it to gather up whatever we had left. It is owing to them, and to the number of carnivorous quadrupeds haunting these regions, that even in the wildest parts we never met with a dead animal, nor even a complete skeleton of one.

The place where we now were is called *de Uitkomst*, as being the entrance to, or rather exit from the Karroo. The day which we rested here was passed in business of various sorts, and in receiving visits from many of the neighbours. We found in them a higher degree of polish than in the inhabitants of the Roggeveld, accompanied with a great deal of kindness and frankness of manner. I must here be permitted to mention more particularly the Field-cornet, Pienaar, as one of the most worthy, honest, active men in the whole colony.

Lieutenant Gilmer set off immediately from hence for Roodezand, that he might attend himself to all the requisite preparations for our reception being duly made. We followed him the next morning under the guidance of the Field-cornet, having sent our waggons forwards in the night. As the valley is enclosed on all sides with high hills, we commenced our journey by labouring up a very steep ascent, which obliged us to stop several times for our horses to take breath. When we had reached the top, we could not help pausing awhile to contemplate the delightful valley we had left behind us,

and to look over the wide spread plain of the Karroo, beyond the door of the Bokkeveld. In the sand-stone of which these mountains are composed, we found abundance of crystals of calcareous spar; a considerable space was covered with them, but they were very small.

The other side of the hill descended gradually to a long valley, in which we saw before us many farms at a moderate distance from each other. We made our way up to the nearest, where we found a man far advanced in years, by name Erasmus Rasmus, who, with his wife, not less aged than himself, lived here childless. We stopped for a few minutes, and were regaled in the true patriarchal style with new milk. We took our dinner about noon at the next farm, which belonged to a widow of the name of Janssens; and, according to our usual custom, stopped till the heat of the day was over. We had here the satisfaction of meeting Mr. Michgorius, the first clerk in the Commissary-general's office, who at our departure from the Cape Town had been detained by illness, but was now come to join the party. Our hostess had the misfortune to have a son and a daughter deaf and dumb, both near thirty years of age; the son was very active in husbandry, and the daughter equally so in every thing within the female department in the house: both were exceedingly ready in the use of signs, and by the assistance of them made themselves perfectly understood by their relations, and all who were accustomed to them.

The way out of the Long-valley was again over a considerable ascent; on the other side of it was a farm, at which the Commissary-general, true to his principle of shewing his good-will towards all the subjects of the States, stopped, intending to have a few minutes conversation with the owner. He was not at home, but one of his relations stepped forwards in his place, and gave us the first specimen we had found all over the colony of true boorish coarseness and roughness of manners:—he scolded the slaves who were to hold our horses, using the most gross and abusive language; at the same time as an intimation how little agreeable our visit was, he did not attempt to enter into conversation with us, or shew the smallest particle of that attention, which even a traveller of the lowest rank makes himself sure of receiving in this country, wherever he goes. He looked at the same time so exceedingly ill-humoured, that Pienaar jocosely observed, with the naïveté

common to an African colonist, that he made up such a face it was enough to frighten the flies from settling upon his nose.

Farther on, we came to a gentle declivity, over which were scattered great numbers of large rough blocks of sandstone, some as much as forty feet high, and which must have been of many hundred weight : they seemed to have rolled from the heights above, and in several instances held to the ground by a single point, threatening at every moment to fall and crush to atoms whatever might be near. Directly after followed a valley of a very different character. It was at the foot of the Schurfdeberge, one of the great chain of mountains which runs from the north parallel with the western coast, and which we had traversed in part in our way from the Pikenierskloof to the Elephants'-river. This mountain has a very remarkable form ; it presents the appearance of a high sunken overshelving wall, and continues to run thus, unbroken, from the north towards the south for three miles and a half, forming the western boundary of three districts, those of Friesland, and the warm and cold Bokkeveld. The inclination of this wall is every where the same, and may make an angle with the eastern horizon of a hundred and ten, or a hundred and twenty degrees. In figuring to the imagination an immense long table-mountain, which by some tremendous revolution has been overthrown, and its flat surface turned so as to be wedged into the earth, not perpendicularly, but inclining over, a tolerable idea will be formed of this enormous shelving wall. Over the whole length of its flat surface there is not the least appearance of vegetation : it looks like the roof of a house washed clean by the rain ; it is equally broken every where, without any considerable rent, and is of a dismal dark grey hue. It is in no place perfectly flat, but has every where a kind of appearance as if full of blotches, though they are stronger and more abundant towards the top ; and from these the name of Schurfdeberge (*Scabby Mountain*) has been given to it.\* The top of the wall is about three hundred feet above

---

\* The first Europeans who settled in Southern Africa, when they were obliged to teach their language to the savages, might probably by way of facilitating the task to their scholars as much as possible, convey their instruction through the medium of sensible objects. Thus they called every hill a *back*, every point of a mountain a *head*, a Hottentot village, from its resemblance to a necklace, a *kraal*,\* all sorts of fire-arms *reeds*, horned cattle *beasts*, the whole family of the ante-

\* See the explanation of this word in a note to page 107.

the valley at its foot, but from the Warm Bokkeveld, which lies so much lower, it must rise at least between seven and eight hundred feet.

From this extraordinary production of nature, the valley at its foot has a gloomy and melancholy appearance. A small stream, the Leeuwen-river, runs through it, parallel with the mountain, down to the Warm Bokkeveld, and there uniting itself with the waters of the Breede-river, rushes with them through the pass of the Mostershoek into the sea. The valley is rich in grass and liliaceous plants, and resembles an European meadow more than any thing we had yet seen. About the middle of the valley, at the foot of the mountain, stands the house of the field-cornet Hugo, where we stopped for the night. The buildings here are more roomy, and executed in a better style than in the Roggeveld: the beams, as well as the walls and thatch, are of much neater workmanship. The sitting-room is decorated with neat shelves, on which the household utensils in glass and earthenware are arranged with a sort of taste, which evinces affluence of circumstances; and the manners of the inhabitants have more of the citizen-like polish to be seen among the burghers of the Cape Town, than the blunt but kind-hearted simplicity of their countrymen in the more northern parts of the colony. They talked much of the severe cold felt here in winter, and said that they commonly removed at that season to the Warm Bokkeveld, where also they had an estate. At present it was so warm that the whole family made up beds for themselves in the outer room, in order to leave the inner one entirely for our party. They assured us that they often did this in summer, to be more out of the way of the heat, and of the flies.

The fatiguing road which we were to travel the next morning was one of the principal subjects of our conversation, when for our consolation they assured us, that there were few passages over mountains throughout the colony more troublesome and fatiguing than this. As a proof, however, of the facility with

---

*lopes boks, &c. &c.* It is to this cause probably that we must ascribe the poverty and corruption in the expression of abstract ideas which is now universal among the colonists, and that conciseness and naïveté which borders on the figurative language of oriental poetry. All bodies with a rough uneven surface are from the same cause called *schurfde* (*scabby* or *blotchy*). When we visited the Caffres, it was curious to observe that if among the presents we made them any of the metal buttons had an impression, they always returned them as being *schurfde*, and desired to have such as were quite smooth and shining.

which it was possible for both human beings and animals to surmount these hardships, the good woman of the house assured us, that after every lying-in, and this had been hitherto an annual ceremony with her, she went on the second or third Sunday herself with her child, to have it baptized at the church at Roodezand. She had a very safe horse, she said, which carried her so well over both the mountains between her house and Roodezand, that she could go and return in the same day; he would go the whole way in a trot without ever stumbling, and she was never afraid of suckling her child even in the most dangerous parts.\*

One of our waggons having again been damaged by being overturned in a morass at the entrance of the valley, was repaired in the night, and we set out early in the morning, desirous if possible of reaching the top of the Witseberg before the great heat of the day. We travelled along the foot of the Schurfdeberge a full half hour, before we reached the passage by which it was to be ascended. A power far beyond all mortal comprehension has here made a vast rent in this enormous mass of stone, and opened a way from five to six hundred feet wide, through which the road is made. It was, however, a very arduous undertaking, and attended with great difficulties, particularly in the lower and narrow part of the cleft. Vast immoveable blocks of stone, which lay in the way at every step, must be pulverised before it could be possible for a waggon to pass. It was among these awe-inspiring ruins that we were to ascend, but to our great surprise, considering the details of hardships which had been given us the evening before, and which brought naturally to our imaginations the idea of the Nardouw, and the valley of Moed-verlooren, we found the road perfectly level, and the ascent easy; after what we had previously passed, the present adventure seemed quite a joke. In half an

---

\* A very remarkable effect of the climate of Africa, and of the modes of living among the women there, is the facility with which they bear their children. A woman dying in child-bed is a thing almost unheard of; on the contrary, by the fourth day they generally begin to return to their household affairs, and by the seventh or eighth leave the house, and are perfectly recovered: and this not only among the hard-working women in the country, but among the ladies in the town, though in many respects they are delicate enough. Perhaps, however, this facility may be a principal cause of their propensity to growing so extremely corpulent, and of that disposition to hysterical affections which has been mentioned, and may therefore be balanced by its concomitant evils.

hour we reached the top of the mountain. Here a sandy plain presented itself, the opposite side of which we reached in another half hour, when descending again, amidst these massy blocks, we reached a pleasanter little plain, richly carpeted with green.

And now, looking back, we were presented with the western side of the Schurfdeberge. From the top to the bottom it was one continued succession of broken masses of rocks, heaped one upon another. Their deep shadows, the dull grey of the stones, and the dark leaves of the bushes, which raise their heads as if coming forth not without the most painful exertion, impress the traveller involuntarily with a sort of feeling of pensiveness. Except along the beaten road, the mountain is almost as inaccessible on this side, from its extreme ruggedness, as on the other from its steep, flat, and unbroken surface. Large troops of apes were climbing about these masses, and their horrid yell was rendered a thousand times more horrid from being echoed every way by the surrounding clefts; while little wanton goats, resembling the *Klippenspringer*, were bounding about on the very top, seeming to mock their persecutors, from whose weapons they were now perfectly secure.

More abundant traces of the crafty panther were to be found here than in any other part of the colony, while his harmless fellow-inhabitants of the rocks above-mentioned, often become his prey. Often, too, do the flocks of the industrious farmer suffer severely from his ravages. But the enemy most to be feared here is man. A thousand places of concealment offer the wished-for asylums to slaves deserting their service, and bands of these robbers not unfrequently take advantage of the favourable nature of the spot to harbour in it for a long time together, living upon the plunder of the neighbouring flocks and herds, gardens and fields. From time immemorial this mountain has never been free from such marauders, notwithstanding that parties have frequently been sent out against them, and numbers have been brought to justice. Some half-instructed travellers have confounded these people with the Bosjesmans; but they have no relation whatever with them. They are much less addicted to murder; but are not so easily taken, on account of the fire-arms which they have for defending themselves.

A plain of more than an hour in breadth now carried us to the foot of the other high mountain, which we were this day to cross. This plain has for its eastern boundary the Schurfdeberge, and runs from north to south between

that and the Witsemberg. Directly on coming out of the cleft through which we had crossed the Schurfdeberge we found a solitary house standing under a projecting piece of rock: it was inhabited by a person of the name of Scholz, who was overseer of the road, and stationed there to collect a dollar and a half from every waggon passing the mountain, to be applied to keeping up the road in a proper state. The money thus collected, and the free use of the circumjacent lands, was farmed by him at a stipulated sum, to be paid into the chest of the district; and he was besides to attend to the proper repairs of the road. Some repairs are perpetually wanted, on account of the damage done by the heavy rains of winter upon a pretty rapid ascent.

A few oaks by which the house was shaded seemed to offer us a desirable place of rest, and bringing out our tables and benches, we sat down upon the turf beneath to take our refreshment. The overseer, called in the country the *padmaker*, was one of the largest and most corpulent men I ever saw, and throughout the whole colony a man with less intelligence of any useful kind, or one less fit for his post, could hardly have been found. He assured us that it was only within a few years he had become so corpulent: he was before rather lean than fat. He had a little waggon in which he was drawn about to inspect the roads; but the overlooking of the workmen employed upon them was deputed to one of his slaves. The neighbours complained much of his duty being very ill performed, and asserted that the road had been mended in a hurry against our arrival, but that for two years before it had been scarcely passable.

An object which here particularly attracted our attention was a gigantic assemblage of blocks of stone, piled together in such a manner, that spaces were left sufficient to walk in and out between them, and thus a sort of labyrinth was formed; here the owner of the place kept his flocks and herds, each different species having their distinct apartments. In exploring this singular place, I was struck with the resemblance it bore to the cave of the Cyclops, according to the description given of it by the sublime author of the *Odyssey*, while the gigantic figure of the host, who had been long afflicted with a disorder in his eyes, and had one bound down with a handkerchief, seemed a not unappropriate representative of the monstrous master of this cave.

When to the nearest verge of land we drew,  
 Fast by the sea a lonely cave we view,  
 High, and with dark'ning laurels cover'd o'er,  
 Where sheep and goats lay slumb'ring round the shore.  
 Near this, a fence of marble from the rock,  
 Brown with o'er-arching pine and spreading oak.  
 A giant shepherd here his flock maintains  
 Far from the rest, and solitary reigns,  
 In shelter thick of horrid shade reclin'd,  
 And gloomy mischiefs labour in his mind.  
 A form enormous, far unlike the race  
 Of human birth, in stature, or in face;  
 As some lone mountain's monstrous growth he stood,  
 Crown'd with rough thickets, and a nodding wood.

ODYSSEY, BOOK IX. LINE 211.

*Pope's Translation.*

**A** rumour was abroad in the neighbourhood, that Scholz had many more of these sort of caves than were known to any person, his slaves excepted, where he concealed the sheep which by the help of the same slaves he stole from the butchers as they passed with their droves that way. In fact, about a year after, upon the complaint of some butchers, Scholz and all his crew were apprehended, and more than half convicted of the robberies alleged against them. The slaves confessed that the master was guilty of asserting most abominable falsehoods; but before the process was concluded he died in prison. I myself visited him there several times in my medical capacity. In his gigantic form, his one-eyed face, his craft and deceit, his disposition to solitude, and in having abjured vegetable food, it would perhaps have been difficult to find a stronger resemblance to the monster Polypheme, than in the owner of these caverns at the foot of the Schurfdeberg.

In the afternoon arrived some deputies from Roodezand, to welcome the Commissary-general, and they accompanied us across the plain between the mountains. This plain is morassy, and abounds with rushes and liliaceous plants: it is even so morassy as to be dangerous passing over in very wet weather. Here and there a little stream flows through it. We now ascended, in about half an hour, the inner side of the Witsemberg, and the whole party

agreed that a more striking view than was presented from its summit could hardly be seen. There is here no level ground: the descent begins almost as soon as the ascent is finished, and a valley is spread out three times as deep below the summit as that on the other side, the little space that there is at the top placing them both, as it were at the same moment, before the eyes of the almost awe-stricken traveller. Forty rich farms lay spread before us as upon a map, each with neat-looking houses, shaded by oaks, and surrounded by green meadows and corn-fields. Smooth roads crossing each other in various directions, going from one farm to another, seemed like a sort of net-work thrown over the green carpet, while numbers of bluish streams that wound prettily from the sides of the valley, and met at last in the centre, formed there a wide stream, which sought a way out of this confined spot through a vast chasm in the opposite row of hills. Over this row, which in the parts about the chasm is lower than the place where we now were, we could see the well-known hills that rise above Saldanha bay, and farther still, in the south-west, was to be discerned the Table Mountain, with its summit now lost in a white cloud. Those who had friends on the shores of Table Bay could not help greeting with delight, though at the distance of three days journey, the flat eminence towering above the place of their abode.

As the traveller begins to descend, he can scarcely contemplate without a sort of shuddering the danger which appears manifestly to be attached to the task he is undertaking; and he feels disposed to rail in secret at the person who planned the road, that he could require of any one to descend this steep wall, by so madly bold a path. Nothing is to be seen here of the bottom of the hill. The road has to the eye, as it looks down, the appearance of terminating, after a short descent, at the edge of a precipice; and when arrived at this edge, it is not much less frightful to see a perpetual zigzag all down the side of the steep descent; while at the same time it is curious to observe how carefully the most convenient places for making the turns have been selected. Farther down, the road comes to the edge of a wide-spread chasm, along which it descends more rapidly, but more safely, to the bottom. By the side of the road, in several places upon the declivity, little springs trickle from the slate-stone, which, to travellers exposed as they are on this almost perpendicular hill, in the midst of a burning sun, afford a most wel-

come cordial. One half of the hill is well clothed with bushes: the naked stone changes gradually into fertile soil, and there are even spots that furnish grass sufficient for cattle to feed on them. These reminded me strongly of the meadows upon the Swiss mountains.

Wearied with descending for an hour and a half, we arrived at last at the first farm in the valley, directly at the foot of the mountain, where we were received with the most friendly welcome by a large family of worthy inhabitants, and all sorts of refreshments were immediately set before us.

Twenty-five years before, there was no passage over this mountain, and the only way of coming from the Cold Bokkeveld hither was by a wide circuit of almost double the distance, through the Mostershoek, and by the bed of the Breede-river. At that time a man of an enterprising spirit, Mr. Pienaar, the father of the Field-cornet, formed the bold plan of constructing a road over the Schurfdeberg and Witseberg, and under the favour of the government, happily accomplished it, so that now the passage of the Witseberg, when kept in good order, is preferred by all the neighbourhood to the road of the Mostershoek. This Pienaar was a friend of Colonel Gordon's, and accompanied him in all his travels. He was a man whom no danger could deter from any undertaking: the more arduous the task, the more was he determined upon accomplishing it. To this undaunted courage he fell a sacrifice. As a band of the slave-robbers once attacked his domains, he went out among them alone and unarmed, in hopes by his presence, his remonstrances, and exhortations, to induce them to quit the course they were pursuing, and return to a life of honest industry; but the men misapprehending his purpose, fell upon him and murdered him.

Lieutenant Gilmer had occupied himself exceedingly in providing good accommodations for the whole party at Roodezand, since it was resolved that we should make some little stay there, partly to wait for intelligence from the Cape Town respecting the political affairs of Europe, on which the determination whether or not we should proceed on our journey principally depended; partly to put our whole equipage in good repair, in case we were to proceed. The Commissary-general, with the ladies, were lodged in the house of the clergyman, which was near the church, almost in the centre of the valley; the

rest were dispersed in the farms that lay nearest, none of which were more than a little half hour distant. I myself, with my pupil, and my friend Winters, took up my quarters at the house of a widow by name Du Plessis, where I employed the time of our stay in putting in order and packing my different collections, and sent them off to the care of my friends at the Cape Town, to make room for the accommodation of new treasures.

END OF PART THE FIRST.

## PART II.

JOURNEY FROM ROODEZAND TO ZWELLEN DAM, AND ALONG THE  
SOUTHERN COAST TO ALGOA BAY.

## CHAP. X.

*Description of the Valley of Rodezand.—Character of its Inhabitants.—Prevailing Bigotry.—The surrounding Country.—The Water-fall Mountain.—Mostershoek.—Breede-river.—Goudinie.—Hot Spring in the Brand Valley.*

THE highest part of the great chain of mountains, which runs from north to south through the colony, is in latitude  $32^{\circ} 50'$  south: here is formed an assemblage of heads or knobs, the most lofty of which is covered with snow in winter, and thence has the name of the Winterhoek (Winter point). On the northern side of this mountain is the source of the Elephants'-river: towards the west its foot borders the district of the twenty-four rivers, and on the east it is met by the mountains of the Cold Bokkeveld. To the south the chain divides into two branches, one of which, turning to the south-east, terminates in the Witsemberg, Mostershoek, the Hex-river mountain, and at length at the ridge which forms the boundary of Zwellendam. The other branch runs directly south, and joining the chain which has its course from east to west, spreads into the Franschehoek, Drakenstein, Stellenbosch, Hot-tentotsholland, to the False-Cape, where it is lost in the sea.

In the circle formed by these two chains as they branch off, lies the valley of Rodezand, formerly called Van-Waveren's Land, though, at the first planting of the colony, when it was the principal place in its northern parts, and the seat of a Landdrost, it was distinguished as the Tulbagh. The breadth of this valley is about a geographical mile; its length, as far as the district of Rodezand extends, is from two miles to three and a half. On three sides

it is enclosed by high hills, but it is open to the south, and bounded by the Breede-river and Goudinie. This circuit is inhabited by forty families, so that each domain is small, but fertile in corn and fruit. The wheat here is considered as the best in the whole colony, and is in great request at the Cape Town. Very few cattle are kept, as there is a great want of pasture, yet every one breeds as many as will furnish him with the oxen necessary for his own use: he only keeps sheep sufficient for his household consumption.

The church was built in the year 1743: it is a very humble, simple edifice. Service is performed there every Sunday: the congregation being collected from many miles round: most people attend who are at the distance of no more than half a day's journey on horseback. The inhabitants of the Roggeveltdts, of the Bokkeveltdts, and of the district of Hantam, may be considered as parishioners here, since they bring their children to this church to be baptized. They do not, however, make a point of coming for this purpose immediately after the child's birth; they wait till some opportunity presents itself, perhaps till they take a journey to the Cape Town. Both Sundays that we were here, there were as many as four and twenty children baptized, a proof of the flourishing state of population in the colony. Marriages are also solemnised here,\* children are confirmed, and once in the year at least, even the most distant of the colonists come to partake of the sacrament of the Lord's Supper. How assiduous the African farmer is in praying and singing in his own house shall be hereafter shewn.

Near the church is a row of ten or twelve small houses, inhabited chiefly by handicraft workers and little traders, who, from the neighbourhood being so much more inhabited than many other parts, and from the road being much more frequented, gain a very good livelihood. Every house has a little garden, on the other side of the road, opposite his door, and many of the inhabitants have a small quantity of land in the open field, from which they gather their provision of bread-corn for their families. At the end of this row stands the house of the clergyman, the neatest and best house in the valley.

---

\* Formerly marriages could only be solemnised in the Cape Town, and for this purpose the parties to be united were sometimes obliged to take a journey of more than a hundred miles. The government has now altered this regulation, and marriages may be solemnised before the landdrost of each district.

Before it is a court, enclosed with a palisade, and near it is the garden and the corn-fields. The clergyman is by birth a German, and his name is Ballot. He was educated at the German Universities, and afterwards went as Dutch preacher to Malacca and Batavia, whence he came hither. His wife, a very mild, amiable woman, is of one of the best families at the Cape Town: from the kindness and hospitality of both these people their house is one of the most agreeable at which a traveller can be entertained.

The inhabitants of Roodezand, owing to their frequent intercourse with the Cape Town, have more of civilization than the distant colonists, are more active and industrious, and more attentive to their own interests. There is more taste about their houses, more luxury at their tables, the wives and daughters are better clothed, and they make some pretensions, not wholly without reason, to polish and education. Unfortunately, through the mistaken zeal of a swarm of missionaries, who within a few years have established themselves here, a degree of bigotry has been introduced, which has very much changed the frankness of character and good-will towards each other, which was once so prevalent here, and made them devotees and scandal-mongers. Music and dancing are entirely banished; and they can scarcely forgive their regular clergyman, that he is more tolerant and would encourage cheerfulness among the young people. The youths do indeed still occupy themselves with agriculture, hunting, and travelling, but the women sit at home in pious inactivity; or if they do move, it is with an affected solemnity, stiffness, and starchedness of manner, that even the youngest seem as if they had taken their grandmothers as the model for their air and carriage. Every lively feeling of youth is suppressed in prayers and psalm-singing, and they often go to the arms of the husbands whom their fathers have chosen for them with pale countenances and half-ruined health.

The first disposition to this vexatious bigotry, for so it is to a true christian, was created by the predecessor of the present clergyman, an ignorant, illiterate man, without any of the true dignity of the clerical character, who, with a canting affected humility, preached the doctrine of every one devoting himself entirely to the salvation of his own soul; a doctrine not only utterly destructive of all social affection, but even of all attention to the necessary occupations of life. Such a doctrine, the offspring of sloth and ignorance,

could only find *complete* admission into the minds of silly, ignorant people: but unfortunately it gained a *partial* admission with many, otherwise sensible men, while it was highly commended by the elderly women, and soon became that in which the young women were to be educated. This influence over the minds of the female part of his flock was employed by the pious preacher for the base purpose of seducing a young woman, who soon, by giving birth to a child, brought both him and herself to public shame. Notwithstanding this event, there were but too many who still wanted their favourite to remain among them; but he went, if I am not mistaken, with the English to Ceylon. There are still, however, many persons who very much lament the loss of him, and wish ardently for his return: in fact, the doctrine he taught was a very convenient one; it was, that if a man is only with a true, humble, broken, and contrite heart, convinced of his sinfulness, it is no matter how great may have been the sins he has committed, he is certain of being saved.

Among the mountains that encompass the valley of Roodezand,\* the Witsemberg and the Winterhoeksberg are particularly distinguished: the summit of the former is two thousand nine hundred feet above the spot on which the church stands, the latter, which is at the northern corner of the valley, is one hundred and fifty feet higher. The mountains become lower as they advance towards the west, till the Roodezandkloof, a long narrow pass leading to the Cape Town, and continue decreasing to the Water-fall mountain, the last in the chain towards the south. In one of the clefts of this mountain, a large stream of water falls from a high rock above, which in winter, when swollen by the rains, presents a glorious spectacle. We spent one of the days of our stay at Roodezand in a visit to this spot. A ride of an hour and half brought us to the foot of the hill, having in our way crossed the Little Berg-river. Here we left our horses, and climbed to a considerable height over the steep and broken rocks which form one side of the mountain, and when we arrived at the top, we saw the fall on the other side. Its height may be between eighty and ninety feet, its breadth between thirty and forty. The sublimity of this scene was however lost to us, since there not having been any rain

---

\* The valley has the name of Roodezand (Red-sand) from the colour given to the soil by the particles of iron with which it is every where impregnated.

for a long time, a very scanty portion of water trickled down the deepest part of the chasm. It was in a very different state when I saw it a year and a half after, in the winter of 1805; there had been abundant rains, and it was in full beauty.

I cannot omit recommending this water-fall to travellers as one of the objects which they will find the most worthy their attention of any in the country. To a painter it would afford excellent matter for a picture, the principal object of which, with the surrounding ones, would give a very good idea of the scenery of Southern Africa. It is not often that really picturesque views are to be found here. The country makes a strong impression upon the mind from the extensive horizons which it so often presents, and from the vastness of the objects comprehended within the space over which the eye is wandering; but it is seldom that near objects, that single points are interesting when separated from the grand whole of which they form a part. African landscapes therefore fail entirely of the suavity, the mildness, the animation which are to be found in so many spots under the European heavens: they may be given as descriptions by which the nature of the country will be more clearly understood, but they will scarcely be studied for their innate and abstract beauty.

In the valley beneath, the water is collected in a vast bason excavated in the stone, granite if I am not mistaken, the bottom of which I could not reach with a pole ten feet long: by the side of the stream is a grotto, which runs within the rock to the depth of between thirty and forty feet: the arched entrance to this grotto is close to the falling water when the stream is full. The rocks round about are thickly grown over with shrubs, which are then sprinkled by the spray. As often as I visited Rodezand in my subsequent travels, I never omitted a pilgrimage to this enchanting spot.

Our excellent and respected chief was confined almost entirely to the house during the whole of our stay here, by the variety of business which claimed his attention. Dispatches from Europe and India occupied him not less than the affairs of the Cape Town, or the many regulations he made for improving the situation of the countries through which we had travelled, and of the place we now inhabited. Happily nothing had occurred to interrupt the prosecution of our journey, or to render the Commissary-general's presence in the Cape Town necessary. The damages, therefore, which our waggons

had at various times received, being now very completely repaired, we ourselves and our whole suite being thoroughly recruited, and a new supply having been laid in, partly by purchase, and partly through the kindness of the inhabitants, we quitted Rodezand on Thursday, the first of December, after a stay of eleven days.

We had experienced very considerable heats during our stay here, and at three different times the thermometer had risen above the heat of blood. We did not set out therefore till the afternoon, when commonly a cool breeze rises from the south-east; sometimes indeed it brings a storm with it, but never attains the degree of heat here that it does at the Cape. Some of the most considerable people of the place accompanied us a part of the way as an escort of honour, and at every farm we passed we received the customary salutes of honour from the old German muskets. We crossed several arms of the Little Berg-river, and went up and down several pretty little hills, from the tops of which we had interesting views of the richly cultivated country around. To the right we had the Water-fall mountain, to the left Mostertshoek,\* which projecting some way into the plain, contracts the breadth of the valley half a geographical mile. We crossed the Breede-river several times: this stream issues from the steep ravine that leads from the Warm Bokkeveld, and spreads into many branches which wind about the valley, and form a number of pretty little islands.

About sun-set we reached the house of the Field-cornet Hugo, which has the name of *Liebe* (Love). In this house we found every appearance of the owners being in affluence. The farms hereabouts are altogether as fertile as those in Rodezand, and have the advantage of a more extensive circulation for their commodities. The wine is much better; the Cape Madeira in particular which grows here, is very much like that in the district of the Four and Twenty Rivers. But in this place also we found a great degree of bigotry, the offspring of a swarm of idle missionaries, who find it more agreeable to be fed by the devout colonists, than to pursue the proper object for which they were sent out—the endeavouring to instruct and civilize the neighbouring savages. When we were seated at table, six children of the Field-cornet placed them-

---

\* Mostert was the name of the man, long since dead, who first inhabited this place: thence the name of Mostertshoek, (Mostert's Point.)

selves in a row, according to their ages, behind the seats of their parents, and there gabbled over a long grace, all from the eldest to the youngest speaking together. It was not, however, one learned from the prayer-book, which they might have understood, but it was composed of a parcel of high-sounding words devoid of meaning, to which it was plain neither they or their teachers could annex any distinct ideas; and from the tone in which it was spoken, and the jangle of so many discordant voices speaking together, one might have thought oneself in Bedlam.

On the following day we arrived in the district of Goudinie, having passed in our way a pretty deep ford of the Breede-river. Our nearest road to Zwelendani would have been by following the left bank of the river directly out of the valley: we should then have reached it in four or five days. But the dulness and uniformity of the country, and the want of places where we could stop to rest, besides the wish to visit many interesting objects which lay out of this course, determined the Commissary-general upon taking a more circuitous route.

Goudinie is a low flat district, in a recess formed by the western chain of mountains, where it runs parallel with the mountains of the Hex-river, and encloses the valley of the Breede-River. A number of little streams flow from the clefts of the mountains through this plain into the latter river, by which the district is not unfrequently overflowed in winter. From this low situation grass is produced in profusion, and oxen and horses may soon become fat here, but there is no place in which they are more liable to the murrain. Little corn is grown, and that of a very moderate quality; but the fruits are fine, above all, the grapes: the raisins of this district are considered as the finest flavoured in the whole colony.

We rested for the night at the house of a certain Daniel du Toit, whose family was of French origin: they are now spread so numerously over the country, that there is scarcely a family in the neighbourhood who is not related in some degree to the Du Toits. In our journey to day we had passed several houses inhabited by persons of this name. Our host was seventy-one years of age, but still healthy and active. He was married for the third time to a woman not now more than thirty, who had borne him several children, the youngest being only three years old. His eldest son was already a grand-father, and the whole number of his descendants, children, grand-

children, and great-grand-children included, amounted to eighty-three. The house was neat; the family were kind and hospitable, having the appearance of being in very comfortable circumstances, and they seemed anxious to make every thing agreeable to us. Some tall oaks shaded the house, and the meadows around with cattle feeding in them brought strongly to my imagination the idea of the Netherlands.

This place was formerly called the island, from being surrounded by several little mountain streams: these are sometimes so swollen in winter that there is no stirring out. We here, for the first time, saw a cow afflicted with the *lamziekte*. She had for a whole month lain entirely on the ground, excepting when sometimes by the assistance of the men she was raised up for a short time, but she could neither rise or stand without assistance. It appears to be a disease of the nerves, particularly of those of the buttocks and hinder legs; but neither the cause of, or remedies for it, are yet well understood. When, as in the present case, the disease continues a long time, and the animal is always able to eat, great hopes may be entertained of an entire recovery.

The next day we proceeded to the hot-spring in the Brand-valley, traveling for two hours through a low, flat, morassy country, intersected with many little streams. This spring has been hitherto little visited by travellers, yet it is an object well worthy their curiosity. It rises at the foot of a high hill, from a bason which contains forty square feet. The bubbling up of the water, the vapour rising from it, and the spray blown about with any considerable breeze, gives this bason a strong resemblance to an immense boiling kettle. By the side it flows into a canal, which it furnishes with more than four hogsheads of water in a minute: the supply of water, even at the very source, is sufficient to turn a mill: the heat is 180° by Fahrenheit. The water is clear, tasteless, and has no colour: it flows in an equal quantity the whole year. The bottom of the bason is covered with sand: it is enclosed round with granite-stone, and directly above the water, begins a strong layer of argile. The vegetation is here particularly luxuriant: the margin of the bason is fringed round with thick bushes of the freshest green, and but a few paces from it, some poplars that were planted became in a very short time large trees. Faded plants and leaves, held in the water for a few moments are perfectly revived: eggs will not harden in it, though from the degree of

heat in the water this might be expected. None of the mineral acids that I had with me occasioned the least trouble or fermentation in it, and the vapour that rose from the bason seemed like the gas of pure coal. A flask of the water well closed up, which I carried away with me for farther examination, had purified itself entirely in four days.

This bath is said to be extremely salutary in cutaneous diseases, or for healing long-standing sores. It is not, however, of equal efficacy with the warm springs at the Elephants'-river, and at the Zwarteberg, and is of no use in arthritic complaints. It is sometimes imprudently used for hysterical affections, but from its great degree of heat, it has generally proved pernicious in these cases. Little provision is made for the accommodation of guests who come to bathe. A small house, about four hundred paces from the spring, contains six very small and poor apartments; four of these were now inhabited, but none of the patients could boast of much amendment. The first necessaries of life are scarcely to be procured from the inhabitants of the adjacent farm at the foot of the mountain, notwithstanding that the owners of it draw a revenue from the bath, and are paid for the hire of the rooms. The invalids must bring every thing with them, or have things brought to them, for the little that they can get in the neighbourhood is charged immoderately dear. Opposite the house, on the other side of the canal, is the bath-house, a wretched little building, with two of the walls tumbling down. Notwithstanding the distance mentioned above of the bath from the spring, four hundred paces, the water when it arrives there is as hot as at the spring, and must remain some time to cool, before it be possible to bathe in it. Near the principal spring are several smaller ones, one of which is perfectly cold. At an hour's distance the stream from this spring joins the Breede-river.

## CHAP. XI.

*Bosjesveld.—The River Zonder-end.—Bavianskloof.—Description of the Society of United Brethren there.—Zoetemelks-valley.—Essaquaskloof.—Breede-river.—Arrival in Zwollendum.*

WE now quitted the valley of the Breede-river, taking a southerly direction. The country through which we travelled is a part of the district called the Bosjesveld, extending to the right bank of the Breede-river. Our road lay through a broad ravine of easy ascent, inclosed between two rows of hills running almost parallel; here are several very pretty looking places. After having passed a considerable eminence, from which we could see to a great distance southwards, we arrived at our quarters for the night.

Here we were received by a venerable aged couple with four unmarried daughters; none of the latter were now young, and both parents and children were of almost-colossal size and stature. The name of this veteran was Van der Merwe: he had twelve children now living, all of the same gigantic figure as the four *young ladies* whom we first saw. Indeed, as far as I could learn, the whole family of the Van der Merwes, in all its branches, are equally colossal. The good man prides himself not a little upon his family being one of the oldest in the colony. Schalk Willem Van der Merwe, the founder of it, was sent hither from Holland soon after the establishment of the colony as an able agriculturist, and in 1675 married Anne Prevot, one of a number of orphan girls also sent by the then government to promote the population of the colony. They had ten sons and six daughters, who were all married, and all had large families. Our host was grandson to Schalk. The father of our host, one of Schalk's ten sons, had been dead only twelve years; he died at the Cape Town, being then a hundred and eight years old. Not very long before we were here, one of the Van der Merwe family had celebrated his golden wedding-day (the fiftieth), to which the nearest of kin, with their children and grand-children, were invited, and the number of guests amounted to a hundred and seventy.

At noon on the following day we reached the end of the valley, and stopped till the heat was over at the house of one of the Du Toit family, where we were very kindly received. We did not find the houses here either so good or so well furnished as those at Roodezand; the lands are less fertile, and could not be made much more profitable, even if the difficulty of transport offered no impediment to the industry of the inhabitants. A person on horseback can go in two days from hence to the Cape Town, passing through Hottentots-holland, but with a loaded waggon the road by Roodezand is preferred, as being much better, though more circuitous. Du Toit gave us an excellent sort of wine, called here Pontac, a sweet deep-red wine, which is sold at the Cape at thirty dollars the hogshead.

The road from hence to Bavianskloof runs along the declivity of a hill, and is not passable for loaded waggons. Ours' were therefore sent round by another road through the Zoetemelks-valley, while Du Toit put his horses to a small waggon of his own, in which he himself drove our ladies the hilly road. From the heights we saw the stream which goes by the name of the River-Zonder-end (the River without end); a name given by the persons who first discovered it, because they found it a very great labour to trace it to its source. We likewise saw to the south the country through which lies the most frequented road from the Cape Town to Zwellendam. Towards evening we descended the hill, and coasted for some way the bank of the River-Zonder-end. Here we met two of the respectable members of the Society of United-Brethren at Bavianskloof, dressed according to the custom of the place in short jackets. Having heard of the Commissary-general's arrival in the country, they had come hither to receive and welcome him.

Those who have read Mr. Barrow's Travels know already something of the institution formed in this district by the Herrenhutens, or Society of United Brethren:\* it has now been established for a considerable number of years, and deserves every thing that can be said in its commendation. Sparrmann mentions a pious German of the name of George Schmidt, as the first of the

---

\* The Herrenhutens, or United Brethren, better known in this country by the appellation of Moravians, are a religious society, whose principles approach nearly to those of the Quakers. The sect was founded early in the eighteenth century by a Count Zinzendorf, of Herrenhut, or Herrnhut, a town in Upper Lusatia, whence they had the name of Herrenhutens.—TRANSLATOR.

Society who undertook to come out in quality of missionary to Southern Africa. He settled there about the year 1737, and soon collected some Hottentots together for the purpose of converting them to Christianity. After his departure\* a small number of his disciples remained together in a society, and the reports concerning them, which reached Europe, induced three of the United Brethren in Holland and Germany, of the names of Marsveld, Kuhnel, and Schwin, to remove hither in the year 1791; the first was from Zeist, in the province of Utrecht, the other two were Germans. By order of the East-India Company in Holland this spot was granted them for the establishment of a little colony, and the boundaries between the lands awarded to them, and those of the neighbouring colonists, were accurately defined. In a short time they collected together a tolerable number of Bastards and Hottentots, whom they instructed in their religion, at the same time endeavouring to inspire them with habits of industry.

In the mean time, that is in the year 1794, those unfortunate dissensions broke out among the colonists, the destructive consequences of which were fortunately superseded by the English invasion; but the sad effects of their discords spread even to this peaceful vale. The whole institution was a subject of offence to the surrounding colonists, partly because they did not see their own strong calvinistic doctrines taught in it, but still more, because they found themselves restrained in extending their lands, and were in some measure deprived of the services of the Hottentots, for the latter preferred leading a quiet life among the Herrenhutens, to attending the sheep and oxen of the farmers. It was to these causes that the enmity of the colonists

---

\* It does not appear how long this missionary remained among the Hottentots; Sparmann says he was informed "that he was banished the country for having illegally made himself a chief among the Hottentots, that he might enrich himself by their labour, and the presents of cattle which they made him; and the acquisition, by any means, of the cattle belonging to the Hottentots was strictly prohibited." It is to be supposed that this prohibition, as well as the banishment of the missionary, were acts of the Dutch government, though this is not particularly specified: he certainly remained five years in the country, but whether *only* that time is not clear. In the original of the present work, Schmidt is stated to have settled in Africa, in 1750; but on referring to Sparrman a mistake seems to have been made in this date, since a letter of Schmidt's, cited by Sparmann, wherein he mentions having been there five years, is dated in 1742.—TRANSLATOR.

towards the Brethren mentioned by Mr. Barrow is to be ascribed; but this gentleman suffers his zeal against the colonists to get too great an ascendancy over him, when he represents their enmity as having been carried to such lengths that a conspiracy was formed among them to murder the missionaries. I have myself been assured by the missionaries themselves that they never heard of such a thing; they only, by way of precaution, petitioned Sir James Craig, in the year 1796, to grant them a confirmation of their rights, and security against the encroachments with which they were menaced. Since that time, excepting some trifling disputes about the boundaries of their lands, they have lived upon very good terms with the colonists. They are universally esteemed, and I have myself more than once seen a considerable number of colonists attending at the religious assemblies of the Brethren.

In the year 1799, at the request of the three original missionaries, two others, of the names of Rose and Korhammer, were sent from Germany to join them: the former has now in Marsveld's place the direction of the whole institution. Both brought their wives with them, and brought over also wives for the Brethren already established, women of their own persuasion, who made no hesitation in crossing the seas to unite themselves in wedlock with persons wholly unknown to them. Since that time, the society has increased exceedingly both in numbers and importance. The same year the Brethren built a very neat church, from remittances sent them by the society in Europe, and the number of their disciples now amounts to nearly eleven hundred. Two hundred houses and huts, with gardens annexed to them, and built in regular rows, give this place the appearance of an European village; a sight which surprised me exceedingly, and for the first time brought in a lively manner to my mind the idea of my native country. Excepting this place, I never saw any thing in the whole colony bearing the least resemblance to a German village.

The five Brethren, with their wives, received us at the door of a house where they live all together. One of them made a short speech to welcome us, after which, a chorus of perhaps a hundred Hottentots, men and women, ranged in two rows before the door, the women on the right hand, the men on the left, sung a hymn, which was truly affecting and elevating to the heart. At first the whole number of voices sang the simple melody in slow time, then the verses were sung three voices together, by the men and the

women alternately, and the melody was sung by two voices only till the last verse, when again they all joined in chorus. I could not help remarking, that among all the mens' voices there was not a counter-bass, much less a bass. The natural tone of voice of the Hottentots has a roughness, which makes it little adapted to singing, yet it was by the low tones of their not overstrained tenor, that the principal effect of the chorus was produced. In the full chorus the voices of the women were not to be distinguished above those of the men so much by their fullness as by their clearness and shrillness, but the strongest effect was produced when the mens' voices predominated.

The Hottentots have a strong feeling of music, and are soon impressed with the harmony of our Intervals; \* yet hitherto I had never supposed that with these thin, and often sharp female voices, and these hoarse mens' voices, so much effect could be produced.

After we had rested a short time in the house, we were carried to a table extremely well set out, and all prepared by the good wives themselves, every one in her different department. Instead of a prayer before the meal, the five couple sang a verse of a hymn, and then with the utmost cheerfulness, and in a style equally removed from studied seriousness and from frivolity, entered into conversation with us. This was carried on in a manner which shewed so much correctness of thinking, and soundness of understanding, that our good opinion of them was increased at every moment: we were so well entertained that we did not break up the party till near midnight.

The next morning every different part of the institution was shewn to us; the church in the first place. It is a simple, neat quadrangular edifice, but the roof is too steep, and carried up to too sharp a ridge: this was done to give height to the building, and render it more conspicuous. Within are two rows of benches, and a simple pulpit; the utmost simplicity is, indeed, observable in every part of the building, but at the same time the due proportions are exceedingly well observed, and the workmanship is extremely neat. The timbers are all of sumach wood, the yellow tint and polish of which gives a sort of simple elegance to the appearance of the whole.

---

\* In what respects the Intervals proper to the Hottentots differ from our's will be shown in another place.

The English government gave the Brethren permission to cut down as much timber as they wanted from the woods belonging to the company, free of expense.

By the side of the church is the garden of the pastors, in the midst of which stands the large old pear-tree, planted by Schmidt himself, the original founder of the institution: benches are standing under its shade, and this is a favourite place of resort among the Brethren. The garden is two hundred paces long, and about a hundred and fifty broad; it is well stored with all kinds of kitchen vegetables and pulse, and intersected all over with little channels, by which it is constantly well watered. Brother Schwin, who is an excellent gardener, has the management of it. The church-yard is directly behind it, and is laid out exactly in the manner of the *Herrenhutens* in Germany: a walk divides it in two, on the right hand of which lie the men, on the left the women. The graves follow each other in regular rows, and the utmost care is taken of them: each has over it a little wooden cross, on which is inscribed the name of the deceased, his age, and the day of his death. The graves of two children of the Brethren have tomb-stones, and those of the Hottentots that had been baptized are distinguished from the rest.

The house inhabited by the Brethren has, besides the hall in which they assemble, and where they take their meals, two chambers for two of the couples, and various household conveniences; the other three couple lodge in small houses close by. Another house is appropriated to the manufacture of knives, of which Kuhnel is the director, and which begins already to be very profitable. Four Hottentots were employed in it, who, when first they began learning had no pay; they are now paid wages by the day, and when they are perfect in their work are to be paid by the piece. The knives are strong and well made, and are much sought after at the Cape Town though they are dear: pocket knives sell from a dollar to a dollar and a half. Kuhnel complained much of the want of tools, and the difficulty of getting them from Europe, so that he is obliged to make them almost all himself. Marsveld is the miller, and has built a water-mill after the European manner, in which he grinds not only all the corn for the household and the Hottentots, but a great deal for the neighbouring colonists.

The church, with the nearest houses, lie in the deepest recess of the valley, at the foot of the Bavianskloof, from which, in winter, the water sometimes rushes with great force, so that it has more than once overflowed the whole valley. The channel has, therefore, been lately enclosed between two strong walls, and several bridges have been made over it; a work of no small labour, and affording an additional proof of the industry and activity of these people. The Brethren proposed carrying this canal on as a benefit to the lands lying without the valley, and when two years after I visited this spot, for the last time, it was already extended six hundred paces farther.

But in order to form a just estimate of the worth of these excellent men, their manner of conducting themselves towards the Hottentots must be seen; the mildness, yet dignity with which they instruct them, and the effect which has already been produced in improving the condition of their uncivilized brethren is truly admirable. It is the more astonishing, since all has been accomplished by persuasion and exhortation, no violence, or even harshness, has ever been employed. No other punishment is known but being prohibited from attending divine service, or being banished the society; but it is very rarely that they are obliged to have recourse to these things, only when repeated exhortations and remonstrances have failed, and a determined perverseness of disposition appears, which cannot otherwise be subdued. The highest reward of industry, and good behaviour, is to be baptised and received into the society. Of this, however, they are so sparing, that the whole number of the baptised scarcely yet amounts to fifty. To the most distinguished among these, the still higher honours are granted of being appointed to little offices in the church, such as elders and deacons. The latter are also, very naturally, from their diligence and industry, in the best circumstances of any of the community, and have houses built by themselves, not at all inferior to those of the colonists on the borders. The men are clothed like the peasants, in linen jackets, and leather small-clothes, and wear hats; the women have woollen petticoats, cotton jackets, with long sleeves, and caps: the lower class are still clothed in skins, but they are made to keep themselves and their clothing clean, and no nakedness is permitted.

**E**very family of Hottentots has a garden behind the house, planted with vegetables, pulse, and fruit-trees, with a portion of land, according to the number of persons to be fed from it; this they cultivate themselves, under the direction of the father, as he is called, and they have the implements of agriculture and the seed-corn given them. Industry is rewarded by an occasional addition to the portion of land, negligence by being deprived of a part: but the Brethren still find a disposition to indolence, the greatest subject of complaint they have against their disciples: many of them will only gain their slender sustenance by the same occasional labours to which they have been accustomed in the service of the colonists, by assisting in the harvest for example, by attending upon their cattle, or by working at their buildings. The women and children are left behind when they go out to work in this way, a burden upon the community, and are not without difficulty incited to gain a trifle, by working in the gardens of the Brethren, or of their more substantial fellow-countrymen. Those who are baptised are all Bastards, since among the pure Hottentots exhortation alone cannot produce a sufficient effect to induce them to throw aside their careless and indolent ways.

**H**ow much superior is such an institution to those that have been established in other parts of Southern Africa, by English and Dutch missionaries. While the Herrenhutens, wherever they have gone, have excited universal respect, and have endeavoured to inspire a spirit of industry, with a sense of true religion, while they have sought to make the savages men before they thought of making them christians, the missionaries above-mentioned, with few exceptions, have shewn themselves idle vagabonds, or senseless fanatics, beginning their task of conversion by teaching the doctrine of the Trinity, and baptising their disciples, and have concerned themselves little with seeking to give them habits of industry, to inspire them with the feelings of men: they have commenced with the superstructure, without thinking of laying the proper foundation by which it was to be supported. As all the communities of Brethren over the whole earth, at the same hour, morning and evening, are united in singing the hymn appointed for that day, so are they all inspired with an equal ardour in seeking to arrive at the same goal, It is not among them single men that labour; it is the united strength

of many thousands working together, and the fruits of their diligence and savings goes all into the common stock ; the remotest branch is supported and nourished from the trunk. According to the testimony of the Brethren here, the little branch of which they have the care, notwithstanding the favours shewn it on the part of the government, has received in the eleven years that have elapsed since its establishment no less than twenty-five thousand dollars from Europe, and the yearly expences seem rather to increase than diminish.

Assurances of countenance and support on the part of the government were reiterated by the Commissary-general; he gave them besides much friendly advice, and presented the establishment with a handsome sum of money from the government treasury. We stayed to take our dinner here, and then departed amid the blessings of these worthy people, and their prayers for our happiness: two of the Brethren even accompanied us a part of the way.

Our road now lay through the wide-spread valley of the River-Zonder-end: to the left was the high hill which stretches from hence in an easterly direction, to the bay of the Kromme-river. The country is fertile and pleasant: there were many neat farms, and the lands were well cultivated. In the evening we reached the Government-post in the valley of Zoetemelk (Sweet-milk), where we recognised the grand style of buildings erected here at the cost of the company, during the time when they could boast a full purse. The postholder was not at home, but we were politely received by his wife, and learnt from her that several couriers had passed not far from the place, charged with dispatches from the Cape Town to the Commissary-general. As these letters might render his return to the Cape necessary, it was resolved not to proceed any farther, but to wait here the arrival of the messengers. The dispatches arrived the next morning, but it appeared that they were not of very great importance, and the preparations for a hasty return, which had already been in some sort begun, were laid aside. The necessary answers to these papers, however, detained the Commissary-general a day and a half.

The valley of Zoetemelk is a place, which in the earliest times, on account of its excellent grass, had been used by the government for resting and recruiting the cattle bought of the distant Hottentot tribes, and destined for slaugh-

ter at the town.\* As the colony was at first very scantily peopled, it could not furnish a sufficient supply of provisions for the ships and the garrison, so that from the year 1658, a commission was sent annually to the Essaquas and Outeniquas to purchase oxen from them. These travellers, whose station is distinctly pointed out by Ten-Rhyne,† passed through this place, the valley being then called Ragensboom, and one of the farms, which has a small grotto in a rock close by it, to this day retains the name of the Ziekenhuis (the Infirmary), because the travellers used to leave their sick in the grotto to be nursed there till their return. As the population of the country in a course of years increased very much, the company took the Zoetemelk's valley into their own hands, built several handsome houses, and kept there a quantity of cattle for the supply of the public wants, particularly for the garrison and ships' stores. While the English were in possession of the settlement, a detachment of dragoons was cantoned in this valley, on account of the excellent grass it furnished for the horses.

The spot is plentifully watered by a number of rivulets that flow from the gulleys in the rocks, nor is there any reason ever to apprehend the failure of this supply, since large trees which strike deep roots grow in these gulleys; a plain proof that the moisture cannot have failed for a long course of years. Some miles farther towards the east, the gulleys are much larger, and grown up with woods, which have furnished, and may furnish again, very good timber for building: at present all the best trees have been cut down, a few excepted, which grow in situations where it is not easy to get at them; but African trees grow so slowly, that it must be some time before timber can be cut down here again. The postholder at Zoetemelk's-valley is also overseer of these woods, and without express permission of the government, no more can in future be cut down. Among the many healthy and aromatic plants which renders this place so excellent for feeding cattle, I found the *Euphorbia genistoides* in great abundance.

The nearest heights were ornamented with a variety of beautiful heath-

---

\* Since it appears here that cattle were purchased of the Hottentots by the Dutch government, the prohibition alluded to by Sparmann, see note to page 152, it is to be presumed extended only to the purchase of them by individuals. TRANSLATOR.

† Wilhelm Ten-Rhyne's *Schediasma de Promontorio Bonæ-spei*. Scafusii 1686. Cap. xviii.

plants, but most of them were already out of bloom. This circumstance, as well as the rich vegetation of the spot, induced me to wish very much for an opportunity of visiting it again at a more propitious season, and in the following year, such an opportunity was afforded me. One of our people, in a visit to a farm-house, killed a serpent, which he brought to me. It had, in their sight, climbed up the wall of the house, to take the swallows that had their nests under the roof, and it was in this enterprise that they killed it. The colonists called it the tree-snake (*Boa canina*), a species which is very adroit at climbing, and is therefore a terrible enemy to small birds. It was six feet long, with a black back, and greyish belly; the bite is extremely venomous, and is considered as mortal. We found in the belly six half-digested young swallows.

On the seventh of December, in the afternoon, we quitted Zoetemelk's-valley, and crossing the River-Zonder-end about half an hour after, continued our course along its right bank. We were now in the great cattle road from Zwelldam, which, notwithstanding its being exceedingly frequented, was so smooth and even, that it might be compared with the finest chaussee; and yet we were assured, that no pains were ever taken to keep it in order. But from the drought that prevails here, and from the natural hardness and evenness of the soil, the roads are not easily injured. We stopped at the house of a Mr. Holzhausen, a man of good address, and pleasing manners; he was by birth of Lower Saxony. The house was very neatly built, but lay, as most of those which we passed this afternoon, too open and exposed, upon the high bank of the river, so that one was even in a perspiration with only thinking of the hot sun glaring upon it. Such is the dryness of the soil on this side of the river, that there are no trees, but on the other, where the ground is watered by a number of little streams, they grow extremely well. It will, therefore, be perhaps thought strange, that the good people of the district have not rather placed their houses on the other side of the river, but the truth is, that the neighbourhood of the great cattle road is of so much advantage to them, notwithstanding guests being entertained in this country free of cost, that it supersedes the lesser consideration with regard to coolness and shade.

Besides, from the overflowing of the river, the inhabitants of the other side are frequently cut off from all intercourse with Zwelldam and the country

on this side; nay, from the number of little mountain streams by which it is intersected, they are sometimes unable to get even to their nearest neighbours. Another forcible reason for having placed their houses in such a situation is, that corn grows best on this side of the river; and on that account the buildings for their stores must be here. There are no springs: all the water used is from the river, but the district is not liable to the same droughts in summer as some of the more northern ones, or even as the Cape. Fertilising rains seldom fail of falling here at intervals. The country may, perhaps, be in some measure indebted for this to the high hills which border it to the north, as by the prevailing south winds the clouds are blown this way, and break over the mountains. The country from hence southwards, towards Cape Agulhas, is again very deficient in water, and scantily inhabited, but affords at the moist times of the year the means of feeding a few cattle. This is called a plain, because there are no high hills, but there are perpetual risings and unevenness of ground.

On the following day we suffered much from heat and thirst. In the early part of it we came to a farm where the people were busied in the corn harvest, but from thence the country became gradually more and more parched and solitary. The River-Zonder-end turns here somewhat in a northerly direction, and winds round the foot of a pretty high hill, over which, from the earliest times of the colony, there has been a passage much frequented in carrying on the trade for cattle with the Hottentot tribes: it has the name of *Essaquaskloof*, from the tribe which then inhabited the neighbourhood. These were the first heights on which we found the *aloe perfoliata*: the tall upright stems of these plants, growing to the height of a man, gave them when seen in the distance the appearance of men. We perceived, as we proceeded, very striking proofs of the dry season being already considerably advanced; vegetation seemed every where entirely at a stand, and large spaces were wholly covered with natron. Some little puddles of water which we passed were become so perfectly salt, that our horses, thirsty as they were, would not drink of them.

After a fatiguing ride of five hours we came to the Breede-river, which here first begins to deserve its name; the water was, however, so low, that we forded it without the least difficulty. In winter it is very deep, and

the current is so strong that it is impassable. A good hour's distance below, where the river has less fall, and the current is consequently less rapid, a ford has been made, by which the whole intercourse between the Cape Town and the eastern districts of the colony is carried on. An hour above where we crossed, the River-Zonder-end unites its waters with this river. After travelling another hour, over a somewhat better country, we reached a farm where we dined, and rested some hours. In the afternoon we again set forwards, and in the evening arrived at Zwelendam, where we were received by the inhabitants with the usual salutes of honour, and with the flags of the place displayed.

## CHAP. XII.

*Description of Swellendam.—The Devil's-bush.—The Klip-river.—Rotterdam.—Buffeljagd-river.—Dupré's Farm.—The Krombek-river.—Preparation of the Aloegum.—False-river.—Extraordinary appearance in the air, like the distant sea.—The Gaurits-river.—The party again lose their way in the night.—Arrival at Mosselbay.*

ZWELLENDAM is the principal place of the district which bears the same name, and the seat of a landdrost. The first establishment here was commenced in the year 1740, and five years after, the then governor of the colony, Swellengrebel, raised it to its present distinction, calling it at the same time from his own name, and that of his wife, who was of the family of Damme, *Swellendam*; for so it ought to be written, though it has long been called, and spelt, *Zwellendam*. The little church built at that time fell down towards the end of the last century, and in its place a larger and handsomer was erected in the years eighteen hundred and eighteen hundred and one, at the expense of the congregation, the government making them a present of the timber. It stands at the end of the street, almost opposite the bridge, and in its form resembles the reformed churches at the Cape Town, which are built in a regular cross. The expense of the building having very much exceeded the previous estimate, a considerable debt remained upon it, for the discharge of which the Commissary-general now made a particular provision.

The landdrost, by name Faure, a most worthy and respectable man, has a very pretty house, with a good garden annexed to it, and excellent outbuildings. The houses which belong to this place lie in part like those at Roodezand, scattered over an extensive circuit of some hours; the rest are in a row at one end of the valley, at measured distances from each other. The inhabitants of the distant parts are farmers, gaining their livelihood by growing corn, and feeding cattle; those of the row of houses may be called citizens, being handicraft-workers, and traders. The street runs between

two tolerably high ridges, that project from the mountains into the valley, and is enclosed by them as if between walls. A stream which flows from the mountain runs down the length of this street, separating it from the Drosty on the opposite side. A wooden foot-bridge crosses the stream, forming a means of communication between the inhabitants of the two banks, but waggons and horses must ford the stream; and it is sometimes so swollen that they are obliged to wait a whole day before they can cross it. From the bridge there is a very pretty avenue of oaks, three hundred paces long, to the Drosty.

As the only cattle road from the Cape Town to the eastern parts of the colony lies through Zwellendam, and the colonists in their journeys generally stop and rest here for a day, a sort of opulence reigns in the place. The waggon-wrights and smiths in particular, get an exceedingly good livelihood. We were very politely and handsomely received by the landdrost and his family : they all took particular pains to make our five days stay with them as agreeable as possible.

I availed myself of this long residence to explore the neighbouring mountains very diligently, my researches being particularly directed to a woody ravine, called the Duivelsbosch (Devil's-bush). But, alas ! I found few plants in flower : the favourable time of year for collecting them was past. I was therefore the more assiduous in collecting seeds for the benefit of the government botanical-garden at the Cape Town, and of my friends in Europe. The stream which flows from the Devil's-bush, called the Klip-river, and which runs through the valley of Zwellendam, has a dark brown colour, probably from the roots of the trees amidst which the spring rises, but neither the taste or wholesomeness of the water is affected by it. From this circumstance it should seem clear that the country called by the first settlers *Paradise*, was no other than the valley of Zwellendam, since Ten-Rhyme makes use of this remarkable expression in speaking of *Paradise*, that it was so named on account of the beauty of the spot, although the water was not good, it being exceedingly discoloured by the argillaceous soil over which it flows.\* That it is an error, however, to impute this effect to the soil seems clear, since the water is discoloured as it flows from the rock itself, before it has come at

---

\* Locus propter amœnitatem ita appellatus, ubi ex argillaceæ terræ aquas inquinantis copia magna, boni laticis inopia est. WILHELM TEN-RHYME. *Schediasma de Promontorio Bonæ-spei*. Cap. xviii.

all in contact with the argile. I have rather ascribed it to the roots of the trees, because I have generally remarked that all water flowing from these wooded clefts has the same tint.

On the morning of the thirteenth of December we left Zwelldam, accompanied by the landdrost, who carried us to an estate of his own at about an hour's distance, called Rotterdam. He breeds a number of horses here, the country being particularly favourable for the purpose. Many persons of property at the Cape Town have considerable estates in the same spot, principally for the sake of the great advantage which this circumstance offers. Mr. Daniel Van Reenen, a brother of the three others already mentioned, has the best estate in the whole district. It lies between the left bank of the Breederiver and the sea-coast, and the horses bred there are so fine, that they are very much sought for at the Cape Town as riding horses. The vicinity of the sea may perhaps have considerable influence upon the vegetation, the soil being not so sandy as on the western coast. The climate of Zwelldam is, besides, very different from that of the Cape Town. The parching south-east winds are scarcely known here; and if they do blow, they are almost always succeeded by rain. This must be understood to apply principally to the hilly part of the country, for along the south coast this wind is very strong in summer, and the bays of that part, therefore, which are almost all open to the south-east, are scarcely of any use.

Soon after we had taken leave of the landdrost, we came to the Buffelsjagd-river, (the Buffalo's hunt), which was almost dry. A dull, parched country succeeded, and after going up and down a number of small hills, about noon we arrived at a very poor farm. Here we found two colonists, who had come to meet us, and shew us the way to the best place for passing the ensuing night. They were two of the most considerable people of the district, the Field-commandant Lombard, and a certain Mr. Peter Dupré. We had seen a great deal of game this morning, amongst others a red-deer (*Cervus elaphus*), and ten harnessed antelopes \* (*Antilope scripta*). These parts seem to abound with different kinds of antelopes, hares, and wild birds. We even sometimes saw zebras; but the beautiful blue antelope (*Antilope bucophaea*) is, as Mr. Barrow justly observes, almost entirely destroyed.

---

\* These animals generally go in large bodies: in Senegal they may be seen sometimes in flocks of two thousand. They derive their name from being of a chesnut-brown colour, with white lines about the body, crossed in such directions as to have the appearance of harness.

Some were shot so lately as the year 1800, and their skins were brought to Leyden; but since that time they have not been seen. In the afternoon we passed through a country where we found the *Mimosa nilotica*, standing in the open field, spreading wide around the delightful fragrance of its full-blown flowers. Hitherto we had only seen this tree on the banks of the Karroo-rivers. These were besides much finer trees than any we had seen before: they were tall in the stem, and threw out large branches: the foliage was more luxuriant, and the thorns were neither so large nor so thick about the tree; yet it did not appear a different species from the other. Every where on the heights hereabouts we met also with the *Aloe perfoliata*. After passing many little streams, flowing from the mountains, we came, just before dark, to the widest and deepest of them, the Duivenhok-river, which having crossed, we found ourselves at the house of our companion, Mr. Dupré, where we were to rest for the night. From the heat of the day and the length of our journey, seven long miles, the whole party were so fatigued, that most of them preferred their host's good beds to the excellent supper he had prepared for them.

In this part of the colony there is a much greater difference between the higher and the lower class of the inhabitants, between the masters and the servants, both in their dress and in their habits, than in many other parts, particularly in the Roggeveld. The great trade in cattle, which places the farmers in affluence, and the much more frequent intercourse with the Cape Town, which gives them more idea of polished life, has introduced a sort of luxury and refinement among the higher classes, to which the lower classes, who gain their livelihood chiefly by cutting wood, cannot aspire. Most of them are dressed in fine linen or cotton, and their houses are neat and spacious. No part of the colony, indeed, is better supplied with building materials than this. Timber in plenty grows in the neighbourhood; the shells which abound on the coast make excellent lime, and there is scarcely any district of Southern Africa where stone and clay are not to be found. Even neat stalls the cattle are made here, a thing no where else to be seen; but by being shut up at night, they are preserved exceedingly from the murrain, since this disease is often produced by the noxious effects of the early morning dews.

Indeed, the whole of the place furnishes a very pleasing spectacle. The spacious house, the excellent out-buildings, the workshops for the slaves, the stalls for the cattle, a large garden, in the midst of which is a fish-pond,

supplied with water from the neighbouring Krombek-river, the neat lawn before the house, the sleek, fat cattle, all evinced an affluence and spirit of order which make a pleasing impression upon the mind wherever they are to be seen. The people here are far less bigotted than in some other places where we had recently been. They repeat their morning and evening orisons without suffering their devotion to interfere with the innocent amusements and occupations of life. In their conversation they are lively, even sometimes witty, especially at table, and that without being in the least elevated with wine. Indeed, the African colonists are a remarkably sober race. Out of ten colonists we may be pretty well assured that three at least will not drink either wine or spirits, and the rest will drink very moderately. One of them intoxicated is a very rare sight. Whatever Mr. Barrow may say of the *Soopje* as the favourite drink of the colonists, I can very safely affirm, that I never, during the whole time of my residence in the colony, saw three Africans born, in liquor. The Europeans who live among them as schoolmasters or servants, and who were probably formerly matrosses or soldiers, may be very probably often guilty of excess in this way; for it is an incontrovertible fact, that the lower class of people in our quarter of the globe are far below the African peasants, in a true sense of decorum as to their moral conduct. I challenge every impartial observer who may travel through this country after me, to pronounce a different judgment. It must be remembered that I speak here as to the general habits of the people. I will not deny that there may be single exceptions; for these must be expected in all cases.

We stopped here a part of the following day, and found in the inspection of the premises, and in the conversation of the very intelligent people who were collected together, a high entertainment. The Field-commandant, Lombard, was one of those who in the year 1790, in conjunction with Mr. Jacob Van Reenen and others, undertook a journey to the very farthest extremity of the Caffre country, in search of the persons who were saved from the wreck of the Grosvenor East Indiaman. He related to us many anecdotes of this journey; and among other things, the conversation turned upon the unicorn, and the various opinions entertained as to the existence or non-existence of such an animal. Lombard declared he was not disinclined to believe in its existence, though he had never seen one himself, or knew of any body by whom it was reported to have been seen. What Mr. Barrow has said upon this subject seemed the

principal ground on which he rested his opinion ; we shall in the sequel examine into the portion of weight which may be allowed to his reasoning. The Commissary-general repeated here the engagement made by the governor both at this and many other places in his journey, to give a strong new waggon with a team of oxen and all its appurtenances \* as a reward to any one who should bring a complete skin of this animal, with the horn and skull-bone, to the Cape Town.

Our host, Dupré, notwithstanding his distance from Zwellendam, is overseer of the church there, and is obliged to attend service every Sunday. The journey takes from six to seven hours, so that he is obliged to set out in the middle of the night ; yet, although near sixty years of age, he returns the same day. Among his slaves was a Malay more than a hundred years old, and perfectly blind : for the last thirty years he had been unable to work, but was not the less entirely maintained by his worthy master.

On the fourteenth of December we crossed the Krombek-and-Vet rivers, and stopped for the night at the house of Cobus Dupré, the son of our former host. We found here also a great number of the neighbours assembled, among others Dupré's father-in-law, Hilgard Müller, a very worthy old man, and another of the party who went with Van Reenen to the Caffre country in search of the Grosvenor's crew. This place had formerly belonged to him, and was no way inferior in the excellence of the buildings, and in the good order and regularity of every thing about it, to what we had seen at the senior Dupré's. The cows were here, as there, brought into covered stalls to be milked, a very unusual sight, since they are generally milked in the fields, and left loose in the kraal at night. He had near two hundred, all very handsome animals.

There was an apartment in the house appropriated solely to the performance of divine service ; in it was an organ, on which one of Müller's daughters played very well. It was built in the place itself by a person of the name of Hoddersum, who was still living at the Cape Town when I quitted the country, continuing his trade, and gaining a very good livelihood by making harpsichords.

---

\* Worth all together about five hundred dollars.

The country is here so fertile, that in a year when there is a tolerable supply of rain, wheat will yield seventy or eighty fold, and barley ninety or a hundred: in very dry years however the seed is scarcely more than returned. By more than one of these people it was remarked that the Lamziekte is not so frequent when there have been several rainy years in succession as after long continued droughts.

On the following day we rested some hours at the Zoetemelks-river, having previously crossed the Caffrekuils-river. At the house of a certain Fori, or Fauri, we first saw the manner of preparing the aloe-gum, which is very simple. The thick fresh leaves are gathered in August, September, and October; the sap is left to run out slowly, after which it is somewhat thickened over the fire, and then put into an ox-hide made into a sort of trough in a wooden frame, and put out in the sun, where the gum hardens by degrees. As this is an article however not much called for, and the low price at which it must be sold scarcely pays the trouble and expense of procuring it, the quantity prepared is now very inconsiderable. The soil is here throughout very dry, and destitute of trees; but to compensate these disadvantages, the road is excellent, almost as smooth and even as over the Karroo. The night was passed at the house of a certain Hannes Rensburg, upon the False-river.

The next day we were presented with a very interesting spectacle, which I cannot refrain from describing somewhat minutely. As we reached the summit of one of the numerous hills that lay in our route, we saw at a great distance southwards in the horizon the sea as we all thought, exactly as it appears seen under such circumstances. Delighted at a sight of which for two months that we had been travelling inland we had been wholly deprived, we exclaimed unanimously in a tone at once of pleasure and surprise—*the sea! the sea!*—A moment's reflection was however sufficient to convince us that since we were now only some hundred feet above the level of the sea, and at least at six miles distance from the coast, it was impossible that the sea could in fact be visible to us. Yet the more we looked, the more our eyes seemed assured that they were not mistaken; the impression was indeed so strong, that, almost in spite of myself, I remained for a while halting between belief and doubt; nay, I was at last only convinced that it could not be the sea from the unevenness of the horizon. The idea then struck me

that this appearance originated in a reflection of the sea and coast in the air above: many circumstances strengthened this opinion, and our guide, who was not unacquainted with it, asserted that I was perfectly right; but he said he never recollected seeing it so distinctly. I can scarcely express how much I was delighted at being presented with a phenomenon of which I had heard so much, yet never could form any distinct idea of it.

I now turned my attention to examining it more particularly, when I made the following observations. It was between nine and ten o'clock in the morning: the sun was to our left, about fifty degrees above the horizon; it was not itself visible, but its situation was plainly to be distinguished glistening through the thin vapour with which the air was entirely filled. The heat was  $66^{\circ}$  by Fahrenheit, and the peasants foretold rain, which, in fact, fell abundantly in the evening. Not a morsel of sky was to be seen, or any thing which in the least broke the mass of vapour: it was nearly a dead calm, a very trifling breeze only came occasionally from the quarter on which the coast lay. The appearance in the air still continued the same, and was exactly like the sea as seen from the Table-mountain at an immense distance. From a longer observation I was convinced that the unevenness we had observed in the horizon, that jagged margin which divided the dark blue of the supposed sea from the light grey of the heavens, was, in fact, the reflection of the coast, with its projections and creeks; and when I imparted this idea to my companions, they unanimously concurred in it, with applauses of my ingenuity. It seemed then as if the effect we saw was produced by our point of vision falling exactly on the spot, where the sea, which was mildly illumined by the rays of the sun, was reflected back, as in a concave mirror, upon the heavens above, and it was only visible to us from the circumstance of our being enveloped in a thick vapour, which concealed the sun entirely from us. The phenomenon will not then be difficult to explain: it must arise solely from the relative height of the object with that of the reflecting medium, and upon there being such a degree of density in the latter, that it is capable of refracting the rays, so as to leave only the degree of light necessary for the object to be distinctly represented in the picture; something too must depend upon the relative situation of the sun and that of the spectator. A more difficult question to answer is, how it happens that this phenomenon is so seldom to be seen on land; that it almost always appears over

the sea.\* It seems to me that a sufficient reason for this may be assigned in the equal degree of denseness that the vapour retains over the level surface of the sea, whereas upon land, from the unevenness of the surface, there must be different degrees of heat and dryness; and these, though not perceptible, yet create an inequality which annihilates the reflecting powers: perhaps also the reflection is affected by the mixture of different sorts of gas proceeding from the same cause. Another cause may certainly be found in the chemical nature of the sea vapour. May not the luminous nature of the sea itself, the luminous properties of so many of its inhabitants, and the wonderful play of light at the rising and setting of the sun under the line, be by some unknown means connected with this very extraordinary phenomenon?

The *mirage*, as this appearance is called, has been described by various writers, as for instance by Gruber, Büsch, Woltmann, Wollaston, and others, but more particularly by Zöllner: he relates that in 1797, he saw from the mouth of the Elbe the Island of Heligoland, then at ten miles distance, reflected in the air. It seems probable that the stories which have been told of men seeing things at a very extraordinary distance (such a distance that it was impossible they should be included within the horizon), may be traced to this cause. Ælian mentions a Sicilian who had such wonderful acuteness of sight as to be able occasionally, when he stood upon the promontory of Lilybæum, to see every vessel that went into Carthage; he could even distinguish them plain enough to count the number of sail. Now the promontory of Lilybæum is thirty-two sea-miles from Carthage, and does not stand so high as that more than a thrd of this distance could be included in the horizon. The most recent instance of this sort is related by a certain Botineau in a periodical publication called *Le Spectateur du Nord*, the number for the month of October 1802. He says that a man in the Isle of France had seen ships at the distance of fifty sea-miles off, and could even tell the size of them, and the

---

\* What made this instance differ from any other occasion on which I had an opportunity of observing the *mirage*, is, that the place in which the reflection of the sea appeared was over the land, and even at some distance from the coast. This may however be accounted for, from the level nature of the country upon the coast, and from the faint sea-breeze by which the vapour was driven very much upon the land, without its level with the horizon being lost.

course they were going. This account is accompanied with testimonies which almost remove the very natural doubts that must arise upon the fact, yet a satisfactory explanation of it is wanted, and perhaps none so satisfactory can be found, as resolving it into a phenomenon of the kind above described.

We soon after arrived at a house, the owner of which, one Rensburg, was very recently dead at the age of seventy: he had indeed been buried only two days before. The widow, a woman of fifty-six, had produced seventeen children, of whom fourteen were living, and all married: her descendants now exceeded a hundred souls: a new proof of the almost unexampled increase of population in the colony. The dead are here interred at the very spot itself. To most houses there is a small cemetery adjoining to the garden: the relations and neighbours attend the funeral, and the corpse is laid in the ground with great solemnity; the whole company singing a psalm over the grave.

Somewhat farther we came to the Tigerfontein, a place belonging to a colonist by name Snyman. He was occupied in building himself a new house, the old one being very much out of repair, and admitting the rain. As the houses here are commonly built with clay only, a trifling neglect in keeping up the roof will occasion the fall of the whole edifice. For the rest, if proper care is taken in constructing them, they are exceedingly durable: the Drosty at Zwellendam was built of like materials, though stone in plenty is to be had there. The walls were constructed exactly after the manner called building in Piseé, to which the dry climate here is particularly favourable. I have seen houses of this kind which have stood a century, and which were so burnt by the sun that they looked like tile. In this state no rain can injure them, even the ruins might almost defy the influence of weather. We were received in a small room in the old house, which was still left standing: an old man was seated there, the elder brother of the Rensburg whose widow we had visited in the morning. This unfortunate veteran had formerly lived near Algoa-bay, and in the last dreadful war with the Caffres was plundered by them, and his house burnt down: he saved himself by flight, but two of his nearest relations fell into the hands of the enemy. Although through the endeavours of General Janssens peace was now fully re-established, yet the devastated country recovered but slowly, and was as yet thinly re-peopled: most of the places were so destroyed that they could not easily be rendered habitable.

The good old man doubted much whether he should ever live to return to his former dwelling. He related to us many instances of the horrors committed by these savages, and the farther we now went, the more were similar complaints a principal subject of our conversations with the colonists.

On the banks of the Gaurits-river, where we arrived a short time after our departure from hence, we were presented with the view of a very picturesque country. We had ascended a road sloping almost imperceptibly, and found ourselves on a sudden upon the declivity of a steep hill, below which, at a great depth, ran the broad bed of the stream. To the left very near us were lofty heights, between which through a narrow opening the river rushed with a great noise. Very near the entrance of the ravine, midway up the heights, was a small house delightfully shaded by oaks and fruit trees; above all, the dark-leaved orange: while to the right, upon the high sandy bank of the river, stood a large farm. We turned our horses sideways, and descending the steep road, crossed the river, which was now very low, though it is at some times a powerful stream: it is here a hundred and twenty foot broad, which is wider than any river we had yet seen. Its deep bed, the high sandy banks, and the trunks of trees floating down, shewed plainly the height and force which it sometimes attains. It rises so rapidly that travellers who venture to encamp for the night upon its banks, may pay their improvidence with the loss of all their property; happy if they can escape with their life; if not wakened out of their sleep in terror too great to have the power to fly.

A glance over the map will show my readers very plainly the reason of its rising thus hastily. All the rivers of the middle Karroo, the Chamka, the Dwyka, even many streams from the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld, break through at some point or other the vast chain of mountains which from Zwellendam to Sitzikamma bear the name of the Black-mountains, and uniting beyond them with the Kamnasie, and Elephants'-river, compose the formidable stream called the Gaurits-river.\* The house where we stopped was at a considerable height above the stream, the former, which was built lower down, having some time before become its prey.

---

\* This is a Hottentot name. The manner in which it is pronounced by these savages has misled many travellers, so that they have written it the Gouds-river (Gold-river).

According to what we were told by the colonists, it was now impossible, even without a guide, to miss the road; but whether it was owing to the cloudy weather, so that the darkness came on unexpectedly, or that we had not paid sufficient attention to their directions, we once more lost our way. We had been told that we were to reach our night quarters in two hours; three and a half had elapsed, and we yet saw no signs of a human habitation. A very heavy rain that fell, the first during our journey, which had surprised us in such a way upon the road, brought on the darkness suddenly, and wetted us completely through. Our ladies had set out in the waggon, and we had, as we conceived, reason to congratulate ourselves exceedingly that it had so happened. A stop was made, and I went with Lieutenant Gilmer to explore the country, while our corporal of dragoons was dispatched to see whether the waggons were following, or whether he could discover any traces of the way we had lost. After the lieutenant and myself had rode up and down nearly half an hour, without seeing any appearance of a light upon the heights, or discovering any thing like a dwelling-house, we returned back dispirited to rejoin our party. It was then determined that we should return to the farm on the Gaurits-river, and there stop for the night: though from the darkness, and from having to descend a steep hill, this enterprise was not without its perils.

We had not gone far before we met our dragoon on his return to tell us that he had not been able to discover any traces either of the waggons or the road. He, however, rode on again, as he was now sure that we were following him, but soon once more returned with the extraordinary intelligence that he had met the ladies, and young De Mist, who had gone in the waggon with them, on foot, and they were now, he said, waiting for us a very little way off. It was not long before we came up with them, when we learnt that they had been overturned in the waggon, but happily without receiving any injury. In hopes of reaching the place where it was designed we should stop for the night, they had got out and walked on while the people were busied in getting the waggon up, so as to proceed on their way. The night and the rain had in the mean time overtaken them, as it had us, and they had missed their way, which, perhaps, but that we had fortunately done the same, they might not very easily have found again. They now mounted some of our led horses, and we rode on together, making many observations upon our

adventure, half joking, half serious, and commenting upon the extraordinary circumstance, that we should meet with each other so fortunately in a night almost pitchy dark, in the midst of a desolate inhospitable region, unknown to either of us, and both having lost our way.

At the same time we agreed to fire pistols at certain intervals, as signals to direct any people who might be in search of us, and soon some young men who had been working at the waggon came up, anxious, on account of the heavy rain that had fallen, about the fate of those who had gone forwards on foot, and bringing with them a little car which they had made ready in haste. The ladies very thankfully accepted the offered kindness of these good people, and getting into it, soon reached their proper quarters. We ourselves arrived in safety not long after, notwithstanding the frequent sliding and stumbling of our horses, it being now eleven o'clock, and we ought to have arrived at eight. Lanterns were sent out to meet the waggons, with the female servants who had remained with them, by the assistance of which they too rejoined us in the course of the night.

We were now in the house of a widow by name Botha, which, although tolerably spacious, had not sufficient room to accommodate such a number of guests. Besides ourselves, the good woman had for some time lodged several near relations of her own, whose habitations had been destroyed by the Caffres. It would be difficult to give any idea of the confusion made in the house by our late arrival. It swarmed with grown people, children, Hottentots, and slaves; all ran one against other, and against the guests, whom the bad weather drove all at once into the house to dry their wet clothes. The children being waked out of their sleep by the bustle, began crying most piteously, and the nurses to silence them made ten times more noise: the women scolded our slaves for being helpless, and not getting things ready for their masters half as fast as they ought; a number of gay young people sat at the corner of a table laughing at our party, and at the colouists with us, not concerning themselves with stirring a step to make way for the table being set out for us: our young women servants were scarcely less in the way than the slaves and Hottentots, for they must needs busy themselves with unpacking the things which had got wetted by the waggon being overturned. At length, however, not without some trouble, order was established, our supper was set out, and places were allotted where every one of the travellers could set up his field-bed for the night. On this, as on several occasions, we

had to regret the want of straw, which prevails over the whole colony ; but the corn being trodden out by horses so spoils the straw that it was impossible for our people to sleep upon it, otherwise they would often gladly have done so, when the field-beds were wet with the rain, or the waggons did not arrive in time for the beds to be of any use.

From this place it was necessary that most of our waggons should take a different road from ourselves, as they could not all follow us over the hills which we were to pass, if we wished to visit the coast, and examine the bays upon it. We therefore each put up as much linen as would last a fortnight, and with this, and some other things which could not be dispensed with, loaded our strongest waggon, while the rest were sent round by the Longkloof.

The nearer we approached to the coast the more level the country became, and the greater abundance of grass did we find, notwithstanding that the soil grew evidently much more sandy. It failed in proportion in springs, and the farms lay at a greater distance from each other. We stopped about noon at the house of a family, by name Marx, where we found a great number of youths and damsels : the youngest daughter particularly struck us all, from her really dazzling beauty. If the African young women had as much politeness and education as they have native charms, they would be perfectly irresistible. At the same time, their cheerful good-humour, their innocence and simplicity, has not unfrequently subdued the high polish of the proud European, nor have the instances been few, of the colonists' daughters being brought home by such, as wives, at their return from their travels.

We now saw almost daily a great deal of game, but the creatures were so shy that it would have required well trained dogs, and spirited untired horses, to be able to come up with them. In the remainder of the way to Mossel-bay (Muscle-bay), which was over a wide plain, we saw a great many antelopes, ostriches, and smaller wild birds. At length the glorious prospect of the sea opened upon us. The whole extent of Mossel-bay lay spread before our view. We hailed with transport the long desired object, and descended by a narrow sandy path to the shore of the bay.

## CHAP. XIII.

*The Government Magazines at Mosselbay.—The Dane Abuc.—The Muscle Caves described.—Murray, the Englishman's, Coasting Trade.—Farther Description of the Country.—Brakke-river.—Outeniqualand.—Woody Clefts in the Mountains.*

**T**HE house of the postholder at Mosselbay, who is at the same time overseer of the bay and keeper of the magazines, lies directly at the upper end, where the bay runs to its deepest recess from the sea. The government twenty years before had formed a project to make this bay a repository for corn and timber, that the colonists might be provided with a more ready market for both these articles, while at the same time the supplying the Cape Town with them might be facilitated by the establishment of a coasting trade. In 1786, a large magazine was therefore built, a hundred and fifty foot long, and thirty broad, which will contain from three to four thousand bushels of corn; this was suffered to fall into a very dilapidated state under the English government, but since the governor's visit it has been repaired, and is now in exceedingly good condition. But unfortunately from the difficulties of the coasting passage, occasioned principally by the dangerous reefs of the Agulhas bank, and the storms that blow from the south-east, these patriotic views are much disappointed.

General Janssens, in the last year of his government, again endeavoured to resume the project, but the loss of the colony put an end to his numerous plans for improving its situation. It is to be hoped, however, that the plan may be promoted by the English, since they have no want of coasting vessels, and their superiority at sea obviates in great measure the objections which lie against collecting magazines in open defenceless bays, and which have been adverted to in speaking of Saldanha-bay. The magazine was now entirely empty, and served a great part of our company as a habitation. The postholder's house is small, having been built originally only for a watch-house, so that there were but two chambers for guests, which were occupied by the Commissary-general and the ladies. The postholder is a sensible

active man, but lives here secluded from the world, and unwedded; he is a Dane by birth, and his name, Abue. In his youth he was recommended to the government at Copenhagen, and under the protection of the celebrated and unfortunate Count Struensee, who made him his private secretary, a brilliant path to fortune seemed to open itself before him. The fall of his patron ruined all his prospects, and occasioned him to take refuge in this remote corner of the globe.

We stopped a day here to examine whatever was worthy of observation. With eager curiosity I hastened to explore the cavern known by the name of the Schulpegat (Muscle-cave), which, from Mr. Barrow's description, seemed already familiar to me. It lies about half an hour's ride from the postholder's house. The way to it is by the shore of the bay, winding along, the path still growing more and more contracted, till it terminates at last directly beneath the high rock at the entrance of the bay, which the sailors call Cape St. Blaise. Ascending then a steep and narrow path, with the high towering cliff on one side, and a deep precipice on the other, we arrive on a sudden at the arched entrance of a cavern, the bottom of which is entirely overspread with a very thick layer of muscle-shells. The breadth of the cavern is about twenty paces, its depth about half as much, and its height at the centre of the arch may be fifty feet. The sea is four hundred feet below, but comes so directly up to the foot of the perpendicular or almost overhanging rock, that the foam cannot be seen in looking down from the cave. At the ebb long parallel rows of sunken rocks appear, with the foam dashing over them: it is this reef which breaks the force of the sea, and renders the anchorage within secure. The mouth of the cavern is to the south-south-east; to the right stretches the boundless ocean; directly at the foot spreads the whole Mosselbay; and in the dark offing the hills above Plettenberg's-bay may just be discerned.

Fifty feet higher, directly above this cavern, is another, resembling it in every way, only that it is scarcely more than half as large: the ascent to it is not unattended with danger. It disappointed me very much, since not a shell was to be seen in it. This circumstance proves incontrovertibly that the quantity of shells found in the grotto beneath cannot be brought thither by birds as Mr. Barrow conjectures, for why should they not as well make a storehouse of the upper as of the lower cave. Besides, we did not find here

the least traces of any sea-fowl; a few swallows, which had made their quiet nests in the crevices of the grot, were the only animals that seemed to inhabit it. As far as I have had opportunities of examining the habits of the sea-fowl on this coast, particularly the albatross (*diomedea exulans*), they do not frequent high places, but rather devour their prey in the low recesses of the cliffs upon the beach. Not one of the shells besides appeared the least fresh; all were in a state of decay, and half buried in sand and dirt. I acknowledge, with Mr. Barrow, that it were contrary to common sense to suppose there ever had been a time when the sea came up to this cave, and the muscles are certainly the only trace remaining which could afford any ground for such a supposition. But I cannot assent to another ground on which he supports his opinion. I must, on the contrary, from my own researches contradict what he affirms, that in the Lowenberg, near the Cape Town, and wherever like caves have been discovered, abundance of live shell-fish are always to be found. I never found any such, though in consequence of having read his work, I examined all places of the kind very particularly. He has, besides, been rather guilty of exaggeration, when he says, the quantity of empty shells in the Muscle-cave is so great, that several thousand waggons would be necessary to carry them all away.\* Ten or twelve would be quite sufficient for the purpose. The common opinion among the sensible inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and of the postholder himself, is, that this cave was formerly a common resort of the Hottentots, and that they lived very much upon the shell-fish, which are taken here in abundance. As the bottom of the cave is wet from the water that trickles down the sides, they very probably left the shells as a sort of pavement, which abated in some degree its humidity. This opinion, though not given as incontrovertible, has at least more probability in it than Mr. Barrow's.

On the walls of these caves, particularly of the upper one, I found a vast

---

\* The German author in citing Mr. Barrow's work always refers to a German translation of it. It must here be remarked, that either the translator of Mr. Barrow's work, or Mr. Lichtenstein, has fallen into an error with regard to what Mr. Barrow says of the quantity of shells in this cave. He does not say that in this alone there are many thousand waggon loads of shells; he says: "Many thousand waggon-loads of shells may be met with in various places along the eastern coast, in situations that are several hundred feet above the level of the sea."—TRANSLATOR

number of lichens, hitherto unknown to me: some people assert, that from these, as well as from many other sorts of this species, excellent materials may be drawn for dying. They appear to me, from some trifling resemblances, to be between the *lichen parellus*, and the *lichen roccella*. The postholder, at my request, promised to send me a quantity to the Cape Town, my friend Polemann, an able chemist there, having long wished to make experiments upon them; but as he has probably forgotten his promise, for none have ever been received, I can say nothing more of their properties.

The influence of the sea air, united with the low situation of the country, upon vegetation, is here very striking. It is particularly luxuriant in the parts that lie from a hundred to a hundred and fifty feet above the level of the sea: these parts are thickly grown over with bushes and shrubs. The *arduina bispinosa*, several beautiful sorts of *zygophyllum*, *pelargonium*, *royena*, *rhus*, and others, grow wild promiscuously among each other: some of a considerable size, and the leaves quite a fresh bright green. Not less rich was the collection of insects I amassed here; I had, besides, the good fortune to shoot a number of pretty small birds which make their nests among the bushes, and which furnished me abundance of work in preserving and stuffing them.

Our host regaled us among other things with many sorts of fish, above all with oysters, which abound in the bay, and which, not having tasted any for so long a time, were now most welcome to us. Few of the fish were different from what are caught about the Cape Town, but the oysters were much finer flavoured; some were, however, we agreed, too large and too fat: we were even obliged to divide them, they were so large that they could not be swallowed at once. They cannot be had so fresh at the Cape, as they are not to be gathered on the neighbouring parts of the coast; they are chiefly brought thither from Hottentots-holland. Even here they are not always to be procured; only when at very low ebbs, the fisher slaves can go a great way into the sea to the oyster beds. In the afternoon, at low water, when we were bathing in the sea among the rocks, we found a little parcel of oysters in a cleft, but they adhered so firmly to the stone, that we could not break them off. The bay has its name from the superabundance of muscles found in it; though extremely good, they are seldom eaten but by the slaves, the oysters and other fish being very much preferred to them.

Mosselbay was formerly called the bay of St. Blaise, so named by Vasco de Gama, who landed here in December, 1497. He is commonly considered as the first discoverer of it; but it may, perhaps, be doubted, whether this was not the *Angra dos Vaqueiros* (Cow-herd Bay), which Bartolomeo Diaz discovered in December, 1486, or January, 1487. The true situation of that bay is very problematic, and it might not improbably be Mosselbay. In the first years of the Portuguese voyages to the East Indies, this bay was used as the general resort of the ships, and the place of re-assembly for fleets that were separated. Afterwards, however, when in 1503, Antonio de Saldanha discovered the present Table-bay (which, as has been already mentioned, was for a century called after him Saldanha-bay), he gave the preference to that, and the bay of St. Blaise was wholly neglected. The first English navigators to the East Indies, Raymond and Lancaster, following the accounts given by their early precursors in the undertaking, entered this bay in 1591, but accident afterwards carrying the English to Table-bay, they have ever since gone thither from preference. Ten years later, Jovis Spilberg, a Dutch admiral, gave Table-bay its present name, and not long after Paul Van Caerden, who first took an accurate survey of the southern coast of Africa, with its numerous bays, changed at the same time the names by which they had been distinguished for Dutch ones: this was then named Mosselbay, instead of the Bay of St. Blaise. The angle which forms one entrance into the bay has, however, retained among sailors the name of Cape St. Blaise.

The figure of the bay, its geographical situation, the goodness of the anchorage, and other things interesting to pilots, are known in great measure from former writers; I shall therefore not enter upon the subject at this place, but reserve such observations as appear to me of importance to a future opportunity.

Before our departure, the Commissary-general received a visit from the secretary of the Drosty at Zwellendam, Mr. Stockeström, a Swede by birth. On account of his well-known probity, and accurate knowledge of the country, he had been appointed landdrost of the district of Graaf Reynett. For some years no one had been found who would undertake this arduous post, and it was therefore the more necessary that it should now be filled by a person of so much firmness, united with so much mildness of character. In his company was a young physician, who was established at Zwellendam,

but who occasionally travelled about the country to sell medicines to the farmers, carrying them in a little chest. They consisted chiefly of doses of emetics and cathartics, and above all, of the Halle medicines so much in repute here, and which are made up in abundance by the apothecaries at the Cape Town. He confessed that his principal trade consisted in the sale of these, and asserted that nobody could subsist in this country by the ordinary course of practice, since there was not a colonist who had not rather be his own physician, and would only in cases of extreme necessity send for assistance.

When we left the postholder's house, we pursued our way eastwards along the beach. A steep and rocky coast rises above the beach, and it is only at low water that the way we now went is practicable. In several places water trickles down the cliffs, which forms a sort of morass upon the beach, dangerous to those who attempt to pass it without a proper guide. In one of the clefts an Englishman of the name of Murray has established a little magazine, where he sells a great variety of objects of manufacture. He has a small brig, in which he brings things from the Cape Town, and carries back a loading of wood. His trade is chiefly in cloth, hats, silks, glass, and iron-wares; and although from the renewal of the war, so that he was likely to find difficulty in procuring his wares, he had been obliged to raise the price of them very much, and they were certainly extremely dear, yet we were glad to supply ourselves with many little things which we wanted, and which we found of great use in the remainder of our journey. The merchant had afterwards the misfortune of losing two vessels, within a very short time, upon the Agulhas reef, so dangerous is this place even to the most experienced pilots. The difficulties attending the coasting trade will always operate powerfully against the farther cultivation of the country.

Our guide having at length conducted us safely over the last and most dangerous of the morasses, formed by a little stream called the Geelbek's-valley river, we quitted the shore, and came to a number of neat smiling farms. As in many other places we had found one particular family predominating in a district, its branches being spread all around, so here the family of Meier was the prevailing one. Wherever this is the case, more placability and good humour commonly reigns among them; they are more sociable, and less is heard of quarrels and contentions about the boundaries of their respective

properties. By one of the Meier family, whose christian name was Klaas, we were regaled with an excellent breakfast of cold provisions, admirable fruit, and wines which might justly be called costly. Even though I should excite a smile in my readers, I must once more observe how much we were struck with the attractions observable among the female part of this family. We all agreed that we scarcely ever recollected to have seen more personal beauty than in the eldest daughter, a young woman about eighteen. Her whole manner and air had in it much more appearance of refinement than is usually to be found among the African damsels, and we really separated ourselves with reluctance from so lovely a creature.

Crossing the little Brakke-river, we came now to the house of a widow, called in the country *Ter-Blans*, but who we found was of French descent, and her name properly *Terre-Blanche*. Here we dined, and the number of dishes set before us was greater than is almost ever to be seen at the tables even of the most distinguished *bon-vivans* at the Cape Town. We found that our hostess was celebrated in the country for her excellent table, and that she prided herself particularly upon it. She gave us almost every thing that the chase or the fisheries could furnish, with several sorts of vegetables, dressed in an immense variety of ways, nor would suffer such a thing to be mentioned as paying her. As a great rarity, we had in the dessert cream cheese, made upon the spot, and which the Dutch guests, who are extremely good judges of the matter, pronounced to be excellent. The attempts hitherto to make good cheese in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town have all proved unsuccessful, but this may perhaps be owing to the poorness of the feed, so that the milk is not sufficiently rich. Another curiosity which we remarked here, was a guitar, made in the country, of African ash-wood. This is a favourite instrument among the colonists, and is almost always to be seen in the houses of substantial people. It must be obvious from hence, that it is a great error to deny to these people any taste or relish for the polished enjoyments of life.

Behind this place, which is called the Reebok's-fontein, we ascended a considerable height, from which we had a very fine view behind us of Mossel-bay. Cape St. Blaise has a very picturesque appearance from hence, while the large magazine looks like a stripe, and the fishing huts like spots in the dark rocky ground. The course of the coast, with its hills, clefts, and tufts of

wood, unite very beautifully with the back ground. We were too early to cross the great Brakke-river, which lies at the foot of the hill where we now were, as it can only be crossed quite at low water, and the tide was not more than half down; we were therefore obliged to wait a considerable time upon the bank, and even then the ford had in some places more than four feet water, in others it had not above three. The mouth of the river is about a mile from this place, and, like all other streams of Southern Africa, is closed by a sand-bank, which in a strong south-east wind chokes it so entirely, that at the ebb the water does not run out. If heavy rains fall, then the current of the river gains such additional force, that it carries the sand out into the sea. An eternal strife is thus maintained between the two bodies of water, which differs in this respect from the strifes among mankind, that the gain of land is here on the side of the vanquished.

The great Brakke-river divides the district of Mosselbay from Outeniqua-land.\* On the eastern bank there is again a considerable height to ascend, at the summit of which is a wide-spread plain, intersected with a number of small streams; this is one of the most fertile spots in the colony. The river is now seen winding for a considerable length of way, till it is lost among rocks overgrown with bushes and heath-plants.

The whole tract of land between the southern chain of hills and the coast may be considered as a foreland, which from its low situation, from the neighbourhood of the sea, and the peculiar character of the hills by which it is bounded, may be rendered particularly fertile and profitable. Many circumstances concur to give the southern chain of mountains advantages not enjoyed by the others, and which distinguish them entirely from the rest of the mountains in Southern Africa. First, its course from east to west, so that presenting an entire front to the south, the heat of the sun has less effect in drying the springs above, consequently more water flows down from them, which nourishes the vegetation exceedingly. Secondly, the great height of these mountains, which are upon an average from four to five thousand feet above

---

\* The Outeniquas were a numerous tribe of Hottentots, who at the first planting of the colony had their kraal at this place. The *ou* is here to be pronounced open *ow* after the Dutch manner. It is written by some Auteniqua, which in the mouth of a German would be pronounced exactly the same.

the sea, and therefore attract the clouds, which help to supply the country below with moisture. Thirdly, their vicinity to the sea, and the prevalence of the south winds, which gives a more humid atmosphere to the hills. Fourthly, as a consequence from these things, more profuse vegetation, and the nourishing abundance of wood in the clefts, which again produces a vapour that prevents the moisture ever being totally exhaled from the ground, or the flow of water from ever ceasing entirely. The places where this foreland is the most contracted, where there is the smallest space between the mountains and the sea, are always those whence there is the greatest supply of water, and which abound most in the wooded clefts. And again, where the creeks of the sea, projecting inland, come within a mile of the foot of the mountains, even the plain abounds with wood; in Sitzikamma particularly, the underwood stands so thick from the hills to the coast, as to preclude the road being continued along the latter.

In this way the particular nature of the country in Outeniqualand is sufficiently explained, since in no part of this district are the mountains more than three miles and a half from the coast. Numberless rivulets cross it in all directions; even in summer there is always abundance of rain, and the whole year through, the ground is covered with fresh plants; but the soil is poor, and is of that description that belongs to *sour-fields*: the different sorts of rushes and liliaceous plants exhaust all the nourishment, and prevent the growth of wholesome grass: the corn-fields require a great quantity of manure, and an evil, equal to any other, is the murrain, which all these causes combine to produce: this renders the feeding of cattle, which would otherwise be very profitable, extremely difficult: yet there must be some peculiarity of climate in the spot, which promotes the last evil, and to which it ought perhaps rather to be ascribed than to the nature of the feed, since there are in other parts sour-fields where the cattle thrive and prosper exceedingly. In this, as well as in some other districts that partake of the same soil, it is common to burn the lands every year, by which means they are manured, and the foundation laid for a wholesome vegetation. But this must be done with great caution, lest the fire should spread too far and catch the bushes, by which means it might be communicated to the forests, when incalculable mischief would ensue.

The principal object by which the inhabitants of this country gain a livelihood is felling timber in the forests for building, and transporting it to other parts. Permissions for this purpose are given by the government at the recommendation of the landdrosts and postholders, and on paying a trifling consideration. The woods here are much more extensive than in the district of Zwelendam, and the Grootvadersbosch; the latter, on account of their much shorter distance from the Cape Town, have been so much cut down, that it is now difficult to find any trees which will furnish sound and strong beams for building. Even here, the timber begins so far to fail, that whereas formerly they did not cut any for beams less than thirty feet high in the stem, none of this size are now to be found, except by going so deep into the clefts that they cannot be felled without extreme difficulty and some hazard.

Among many small streams which we crossed this day, the Quayang was the most distinguished, which, though it runs almost unnoticed over the plain, when it wanders among the rifted rocks, presents many interesting and romantic pictures. It is the same case with another, which in the midst of its quiet course, suddenly comes to the brow of a rock, whence it rushes down, through a self-formed channel, with a considerable noise and foam. The rocks below these falls, from the force of the waters, are hollowed into basons, which seem almost as if formed by the hand of art. Another stream is called here the Black-river, the water being strongly tinted with vegetable particles which it collects in running through the woods. It is yet a matter of doubt, whether this effect is produced by the roots of certain trees, or whether, as some suppose, the tint is received from fallen leaves.

The government possesses a very considerable domain in Outeniqualand, which includes almost half the district; it is under the superintendence of a postholder. The same person has also the superintendence of several families of colonists, who, since the last war with the Caffres, have settled upon the territories of the government, and under certain restrictions have permission to make use of the forage around them, till the complete restoration of peace and quietude shall permit of their returning to their former dwellings. This mode of living upon the territory of the government, cultivating the land, and enjoying its produce without any property in it, or even being regularly tenanted to it, is called here an *Erbe*, in contradistinction to the tenure by

lease, when the domain is called a *Lehnplatze*. In these cases a small house is commonly built, with a little garden, for which a trifling ground-rent is paid. Most of the handicraft workers and little traders in Stellenbosch, Roodezand, Zwellendam, and Graaff Reyhett, have habitations of this kind. They are often to be found between the *Lehnplatzes*; their number of course depends principally upon the population of the district, and it is much to be wished that they should in all parts become numerous. It cannot be denied that in many places the want of water must be an insuperable obstacle to a great increase of population, but on the other hand, there are tracts in which certainly too much land is granted to a single farmer; and in many places, where a single family only dwells at present, it is to be hoped that a century hence a whole village may have been raised. The government, from a more accurate knowledge of the borders, has turned its attention much to the approximation of the colonists, as a means of promoting the cultivation of the country; and certainly no country is more capable of cultivation. The abolition of the slave-trade will be a means of promoting industry, since the employment of slaves being necessarily circumscribed, the free colonists will in the end be constrained to learn the handicraft works now generally performed by them.

We passed the night at the government-post: the house is a very poor one in comparison with most of those belonging to the officers of the government, and, since the colony was in the hands of the English, has been very much neglected. The postholder was a German, Sebastian Fent by name, and formerly a sergeant in the Dutch garrison: the company very commonly conferred the office of postholder on meritorious subaltern officers. He had put his garden into exceedingly good order, and its flourishing state shewed plainly how much may be done with this indifferent soil by the aid of a sufficient quantity of manure: yet the neighbouring colonists all assert that the African soil does not want much manure, and will not even bear it.

As we were about to set out the next morning, a courier arrived with dispatches from the Cape Town, which required an immediate answer. I therefore employed the morning of this day, which was very rainy, in writing to some of my friends at the Cape, and in the afternoon, as the rain had ceased, went to explore the neighbouring forest. I took an old and sensible Hottentot with me as a guide, and arrived at it in about an hour. The number of bushes, brambles, and other climbing plants, which opposed our way, did not deter me

from proceeding. Among these the *Cynanchum obtusifolium* (a species of scamouny) was particularly abundant. This plant is here called *Pavia-ventau* (monkey's cord), and was running about in every direction all over the forest. Many sorts of asparagus were also among the plants which we had to break through; these are called by the colonists *Wagt een beetje*, (wait a little). I followed the path made by the wood-cutters, and as I contemplated the number there appeared of large oaks, sumachs, and a tree that is called here *Stinkholz*,\* I could not help expressing to my companion my surprise at the complaints made in the country of the want of wood. He told me, however, that among the trees I saw, the greatest part were either not of the proper length in the stem for making beams, or else decayed by the water, and perhaps hollow. Besides, when the expense of carriage was set against the price at which the wood could be sold, it did not answer to transport any but the best, since the price of the middling sorts could not pay their costs.

The young trees are too much overshadowed by the old ones to thrive well, yet at the same time it would be a work of such immense labour and expense to cut the old ones down and carry them away that it cannot be thought of. Thence comes it that the large trees are of exceeding slow growth. My guide's manner of expressing himself upon this subject was, that there was not a man old enough to remember them less tall and strong than they are at present: but to make amends, they are exceedingly hard and strong. A terrible enemy to the forests here is a moss, a sort of *lichen* or *usnea*, which covers whole boughs, particularly the lower ones, and in a course of years injures them so much that they no longer bear leaves, but decay and die. A forest in this state, on which the grey moss hung from the trees almost like withered boughs, was a sight which, alas! in the sequel of our journey we but too often saw.

---

\* Called by Thunberg *Ilex crocea*, but it seems not yet systematically classed. Thunberg did not find it in flower, and I was myself equally unfortunate.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Kaiman's-river, and troublesome Passage of the Kaiman's Cleft.—Krakadakow.—The Silver-river.—Zwart-river.—Daukamma.—Ruinated Farm.—The Lake of Neisna and the circumjacent Country.—Arrival at Plettenberg's-bay.*

WE left Outeniqualand on the twenty-second of December, and soon reached its eastern boundary, the Kaiman's-river,\* having previously passed through the Pampoenkraal,† where Le Vaillant encamped for some time till a way was made through the Kaiman's-cleft, by which he could proceed on his journey. I must by the way remark that the French traveller could not have much occasion to give himself that trouble, since some years before the colonists had made a road through this dangerous cleft. In Sparrmann's time there were indeed no means of passing it, and the river then bore the name of Keerom's-river, as appears from this writer: it is probable that Kaiman may be a corruption of the original name. In another respect Pampoenkraal is now become celebrated, since the Caffres in the late war penetrated even to this spot; they had also over-run and ravaged half the country along the coast, before the united power of the colonists and the English military could drive them back again. As a memorial of this invasion, as *trophies*, in

---

\* This river is so called, because a large species of the *Leguan* is found in it, called here, though erroneously, the Kaiman. The latter name belongs properly to the American crocodile, a much smaller species than the crocodile of the Nile; but the *Leguan* is not a crocodile at all. It is, indeed, an animal of the *Lucerta* class, and amphibious, but perfectly harmless, living upon vegetables, earth-worms, and other insects. It is from three to six feet long, and has a jagged back, which gives it a very hideous appearance. It lives partly in rivers, partly upon trees, is mild in its nature, but so stupid, that it is said to be easily caught, yet it is very swift in running. Its flesh and eggs are reckoned delicate food.

† *Pampoens* is the name given by the colonists to a species of gourd, which is very commonly to be found here, and which appears to be only the common European pumpkin, *Cucurbita Pepo*.

an inverted sense of the word, the ruins of several buildings burnt by them are still standing.

On account of the really tiresome and difficult passage of the Kaiman's cleft, in later times a way has been cut through the wood, directly at the foot of the mountain, where the cleft is naturally less deep and broader. Yet on account of the number of loose blocks of stone, this new way has not yet been made passable for a waggon; and while most of our party followed it on horseback, we were obliged to send the waggons by the old road, which prolonged their journey an hour and a half. As I had, however, heard this passage described as extremely interesting, the cadet Le Sueur, the steward, and myself, agreed to accompany the baggage.

This cleft or ravine is one of the narrowest and deepest in the whole colony. It stretches southward from the foot of the hill towards the coast, collecting in its progress many mountain streams. It seems like a gulph formed by the hand of nature itself to preclude for ever all intercourse between two countries. On each side is a plain rising to a vast height above the sea, and looking on either hill over to the other, from any opening in the woods by which they are overgrown, it would be impossible at the distance only of a few paces to conceive them separated by such a tremendous chasm. Yet the industry of man has even subdued this vast barrier of nature, and notwithstanding all the obstacles presented, opened a path through the very barrier itself, and that not only such as may serve for the foot of the wanderer, but will even admit of its being passed by objects of the bulk of a loaded waggon.

At first the road goes very much up and down; and when arrived at a certain point, the guide recommends as a measure of prudence to dismount, and continue the way on foot. A steep height is then ascended, rising in the midst of the cleft, which had hitherto closed the view, and when arrived at the top, the way turns suddenly to the right, at a point where a prospect is presented of so extraordinary a nature, that perhaps the traveller will meet with nothing similar to it in any part of the world. The monstrous gulph is now directly beneath, and at the depth of a thousand feet below him the mountain torrent roars over its stony bed;—the walls by which it is enclosed are thickly overgrown with dark-leaved trees, which cast around singular and confused shadows, their branches almost closing over the stream, and scarcely leaving any spaces, through which the dark waters with their white foam

can be seen. The road now descends, and after having crossed the stream, ascends again a height, which, as we saw it from this point, I will not say appeared *exceedingly steep*, it actually appeared *perpendicular*; and it was not easy to comprehend by what force an empty waggon, which we saw coming down, was held back, so that it was not precipitated at once into the deep. In looking onwards to the right the eye was at last carried to the vast door through which the river rushes into the sea. Two overhanging rocks, the tops of which seemed to join far above the point on which we were standing, form this door, and through it was seen the wide-spread ocean, the farthest boundary of which that the eye could reach was on this fine serene day beautifully blended with the clear blue of the heavens. Below, at the bottom of the door, rushes in the foaming sea, mingling its green waves with the dark brown waters of the torrent.

The descent from the point where we now were could only be carried along the front of the height. The broken pieces of rock rising above the road, with the boughs of the trees entwined among them, have been formed into a sort of rough parapet, which guards the road on the side of the torrent. But the frequent use of the road, combined with the heavy rains, has in many places made large breaks in the parapet, so that the head almost turns giddy at seeing the depth below, without any guard to prevent the traveller falling down. The hind wheels of the waggons were locked all the way, at other times all the wheels were locked, and the waggons were partially unloaded, the men dragging after them the packages which had been taken out. Stout thongs of leather were fastened to the waggons on the sides towards the torrent, which were held behind by the men with all their strength, at once to keep them back as much as possible, and to prevent them from swerving to that side.

When the height is descended in this way, the torrent may be passed at ebb-tide without inconvenience. It just began to flow as we crossed, and it was a wonderfully grand sight to see the billows rushing in, and driving back the waters that flowed from the torrent. The road here goes for a very short distance along a narrow piece of foreland, just broad enough for two waggons to pass when the water is down. Here the oxen are allowed to rest a short time, and then begins the most difficult part of the whole passage to ascend the opposite height. This does not rise so high above the deep as that we had

just descended, but is much more steep: its inclination above the level of the river does not make an angle of more than forty or forty-five degrees. The task is the most difficult at the very beginning of the ascent, for here the road goes almost as it were in steps: that is to say, first comes an immoderately steep place of three or four feet, and then for a short interval it becomes nearly a flat. The greatest difficulty is when the waggon is to be drawn up one of these steps, for in proportion as the leading yokes of oxen get up the steep part upon the level, they no longer share in the draught, so that at length almost the whole of the draught rests upon the hindermost pair. Here then the strength of a number of men must be united to support the waggon behind from rolling back, while the oxen must be compelled to exert their utmost powers to draw it forwards.

Indeed, as I sat upon the stump of a tree above, contemplating this scene, I could not help being deeply affected by it. The narrowness of the gulph, the deep shadows resting in it, the tossing of the stream, the rushing in of the waves from the sea, the screaming of the waggoners, the lashes of the long whips with which they were urging on the poor labouring animals, and which were re-echoed on all sides from the surrounding rocks, combined with the anxiety lest any accident should happen either to the men or the oxen, created in me altogether sensations which I cannot describe, and which were heightened not a little by the entire novelty of the scene. I experienced nearly the same kind of feeling that I remembered to have done as a boy when reading of the punishments of Tartarus; and indeed many analogies were to be found between the labours to which the guilty souls there were condemned, and those which I now saw passing before my eyes.

The three waggons, for among that number the lading of our single one had been divided upon this occasion, at length got over the most difficult part of their task, but the strength of the oxen was so much exhausted by the exertions they had been obliged to make in the midst of a hot sun, that they could not get on the rest of the way without a double *Spann*. The only resource, therefore, was for one waggon at a time to proceed up the remainder of the ascent, so that it was drawn by eight and twenty oxen, and thus singly the task was at length completed, three hours being however employed in it. I devoted this time to wandering among the bushes with which the rocks were overgrown. In one part I found a very good path, nearly at the top of

the rock, which led directly to the sea: I followed it, and at the end was presented with a truly glorious prospect. I stood upon a steep rock, at the bottom of which the waves were foaming, and around me were heights overgrown with trees and bushes, in a variety of forms, and making a most picturesque appearance. The height of this path, the beauty of the surrounding objects, and the shadowy coolness of the trees above, made it one of the most enchanting walks I ever took, and I earnestly recommend it to the notice of all future travellers in these parts. He who, besides, is anxious to collect plants and insects, by visiting the spot at a more favourable time of the year than I did, would doubtless find his wishes abundantly gratified.

Proceeding on our journey, we had two other ravines to pass, not unattended with fatigues and difficulties, though trifling in comparison with those of the Kaiman's cleft. One of these is called Krakadakouw.\* We passed this with the same good fortune as the former, and were delighted with the view at the end of it, over a broad and deep bason formed here by the Silver-river, and beautifully shaded by high trees. The bed of this river is a shining stone composed of particles of quartz and mica, and the water being remarkably smooth and clear, when the sun is full upon it the surface glitters like silver, and thence the river has its name. A very considerable layer of this beautiful stone stretches with an evident declension towards the east, along the coast in this part; it is higher about the Kaiman's cleft, but at Krakadakouw, and some of the other clefts, it is nearly level with the surface of the sea. Directly beneath this layer are to be found large lumps of shining slate, sprinkled in a half transparent quartz, in crystallised laminæ placed upon each other.

A short time before sun-set we arrived at the house of a certain Herz Grünstadt, a German baptized Jew, who entertained us in a wooden hut, his house having been plundered and burnt by the Caffres. The rest of our party, who went the nearest way, had arrived there about noon, and proceeded on their journey in the afternoon. They had not been without their fatigues and difficulties, and had crossed three branches of the Kaiman's-river, before they quitted the woods, and got into an open country. The place at which

---

\* A Hottentot name, signifying Maiden's-ford.

they then arrived was called Barbier's-kraal, because the colonist who undertook to cut this footpath through the woods, made a vow not to be shaved till the work was accomplished; and although he had many slaves to assist him in his task, his beard enjoyed a four weeks' respite. In climbing some of these heights, the horse of a colonist distinguished himself exceedingly by the dexterity he displayed. He was, therefore, not to be purchased of the owner, but the latter very willingly lent him to the Commissary-general for the remainder of his journey. The Commissary found the loan a very valuable one, from the steadiness and safety of his going, and from the long time he could hold out without being fatigued: he was after the conclusion of the journey duly returned to his proper master.

From our oxen being so uncommonly fatigued, it was late at night before we reached the Zwart-river (Black-river), on the other side of which stood the house of Janssen Weyers, where the first division of our party had arrived in the evening. We crossed in a little boat, and our waggons were unloaded, and floated over in the manner which has been already described. We stopped here a part of the following day, and saw among other things the three large lakes which lie southwards from hence towards the coast, and which are laid down with tolerable accuracy in Mr. Barrow's map.

The fields hereabouts afford abundance of grass, but not wholesome for the cattle. Weyers had, when he purchased this place fifteen years before, five hundred head of horned cattle, eight hundred sheep, and a hundred and forty horses, but the murrain, and the inroads of the Caffres, had so wasted his stock, that he had now no more horned cattle than were absolutely necessary for the use of his household; all the sheep were destroyed, and he had only one horse remaining. The inhabitants of this district live principally by felling wood, and sawing it out into planks, which are sent by the Long-kloof to Boventanden, or even to Plettenberg's-bay, whence they are forwarded by sea to the Cape Town. The fruit here is very indifferent, and the wine scarcely drinkable. A principal object of food is derived from the fisheries. Large animals, such as buffalos, wood-deer (*antilope sylvatica*), and spotted-deer (*antilope corinna*), which formerly abounded, are now rarely to be caught, and elephants are never seen at all. We found, however, many little household utensils made by these people from the horns of buffalos.

Soon after our departure from this place we had to cross a stream running through the Ruigte-valley,\* as it is called. This stream is very much dreaded on account of the sharp stones with which the bottom is covered, over which the horses often stumble, or else their feet stick between them. Instances of mischance in this way occur particularly in the rainy season of the year, when the stream is swollen; and even now our guide congratulated us very much upon such a number of horses having passed without injury. The farther route varied very much, and very agreeably, being sometimes through pleasant woods, sometimes over open heights, whence we had often fine views towards the sea. From one of these we saw a part of the Green-lake, thus called, from the tint of its waters. The colonists believe the tint proceeds from its having a subterraneous communication with the sea, though it is separated from it by a pretty considerable tract of land, and the water is perfectly sweet and free from salt. The principal ground on which the opinion is defended is, that it has a periodical rising and falling, resembling in some sort the ebb and flow of the sea. But the lake lies considerably higher than the sea, and this appearance, if it be not deception, proceeds probably from some secret cause which may be discovered by future naturalists who have leisure to remain longer in the country than I could do.

Towards evening we reached the beautiful river Daukamma, which issues from a deep and wide-spread forest. At the place where we first saw it, and where, upon the heights directly overagainst us, stood the house at which we were to pass the night, raising its head above the trees that shaded the declivity of the hill;—at this place the river is so broad and deep that it cannot be forded. We were obliged to travel half an hour farther upwards to come at a ford. The road lay along the morassy bank of the river, among high trees: an immense quantity of the *cynanchum obtusifolium* (Monkey's cord) was twining about in all directions. The beautiful touraco †

---

\* *Ruigte* is the name given among the African colonists to a low wild shrub, but the proper meaning of the word is roughness, unevenness.

† The *cuculis persa*, a beautiful bird, called by the colonists *loeri*, or *luri*. It has brilliant green feathers, with scarlet wings, a green crown tipped with red, and a red bill. Numbers are to be found in the woody parts of the colony; and in rainy weather, as the wet impedes

sported among the highest tops of the trees, unfolding its scarlet wings to the last rays of the sun. After we had crossed the river, we again went through a similar wood, and afterwards ascended the hill to the house of Peter Terre-blanche, called Buffelsmark. As we were obliged to set off again very early on account of crossing the Neisna-river at the ebb, we only laid down upon the ground in our clothes, with a saddle for a pillow, and there took a short rest. The waggon had the misfortune to be overturned in the morassy road by the river side, and notwithstanding assistance being sent, it was very late before it arrived;—the waiting-maids only were in the waggon. The daughter of our host, a girl of thirteen, was once more an extraordinary instance of corpulence: she was so fat and so overgrown, that she might well have been supposed double the age, and she weighed already a hundred and forty pounds.

We set out again by moonlight. It was now three hours to low water, and we arrived just in the right time, as the morning twilight came on at the bank of this formidable river. It flows into a large lake called the Neisna, which is separated from the sea by a chain of rocks along the strand, the rocks having an opening in one place about two hundred feet wide, and deep enough to admit of the entrance of vessels, which here find a safe harbour. At the flow of the tide the water is five or six feet deep, and ascends quite to the river. As there is never more than from two to three feet water in this river at the ebb, its depth is less to be feared than the nature of its bed; this being a mixture of mud and quicksand, there is considerable danger of a horse sinking into it. We passed through without any accident, and pursued our way along the high sandy shore of the lake.

We now soon reached the ruins of a large farm on the eastern shore of the lake, known by the name of Melkhout-kraal.\* This place was first made in the middle of the last century by a very active, clever, and industrious man, and, from its fertility, soon became one of the most celebrated in the colony. It belongs now to an Englishman, by name Holiday, who suffered terribly in

---

their flying very much, they are sometimes taken by the hand. They are often kept by rich people in the Cape Town, and become extremely tame. The river is also called from these birds the Loeri-river.

\* Milk-wood, a species of *euphorbia*.

his property at the invasion of the Caffres. These savages had a particular spite against the English, and let loose their wrath, without any bounds, upon this farm. They not only destroyed and burned all the household goods of the inhabitants, who had early saved themselves by flight, but razed the buildings to the ground, a trouble which they did not often take. We scarcely found a place among the ruined walls where we could make a fire, but the vast heaps of rubbish, and the extent of ground over which the ruins were spread, shewed at the first glance the dimensions of the buildings. Four years had now passed since the place fell into the hands of these plunderers, and from that time no human hand had touched the orchards or the vineyards, or gathered in the fruit. The vegetables grew wild in the beds, and the paths were overgrown with grass and weeds. In the vineyard I found a red-deer feasting upon the ripe grapes : I followed his example, and found the flavour of them even in this degenerate state such as shewed the excellent stock from which they were descended. The hedges of roses and jessamine were now in full blow ; the orange trees bent under the weight of their fruit ; and an endless number of peaches, apricots, almonds, and bananas, hung there, either to fall of themselves, or to regale the few travellers whom chance might lead to the spot.

Not the hand of art alone, and the industry of man, but nature seems, imitating them, to have formed this singular abode in one of her most fantastic humours. I could not help indulging myself in the vision that it was inhabited by some benevolent super-human being, such as is created by the fancies of poets or romance-writers. The free unconstrained forms and luxuriant growth of the plants and trees destined for the nourishment of man, the wild overgrown walks between the rose-hedges, which seemed to be trodden by no human foot, filled me with a sort of secret awe, as I stretched out my hand to gather some of the neglected fruit. I conceived that I had just the feeling which any one might be supposed to have, wandering in the pleasure-gardens of some enchanted prince.

While my companions were enjoying the sweets of repose, I employed my time in hastening along the margin of the lake to the door which nature has formed, as mentioned above, to admit of its communication with the sea. In somewhat more than half an hour I reached the point of the eastern pillar, which may rise about a hundred and fifty feet above the sea ; the wall on the other side

being nearly of the same height. The breadth of the opening may be about two hundred feet, but from the sunken rocks on each side, a great part of this space is lost to vessels going in or out. The water, as it rushes into the lake, comes with prodigious force, and for this reason the mouth of the Neisna, unlike those of most African rivers near the Cape, is not choaked with sand, but is always navigable. Another cause that contributes to this is, that the bed at the mouth of the river is keel-formed, so that the water is not pressed together, and its force is by that means increased. These circumstances prove clearly how much Mr. Barrow must be mistaken, when he ascribes this opening to a different origin; the Neisna Lake, he says, by the repeated swelling of the waters, has forced a way out into the sea, and it is therefore probable that in time the Green lake will do the same, and be in like manner united with the sea. This he calls probable, but it seems far more probable that the aperture made in the ridge of rocks which separates the lake and the sea, was effected by a much earlier and universal revolution of the whole globe. In the first place, the rocks rising above the water at this opening, do not bear the least appearance of being worn away by the washing of the sea, which must necessarily be, supposing the effects to have been produced by the gradual friction of the inland waters. Besides, by only paying a little attention to the walls of this vast portal, and observing their equal height, and equal declension, the observer must be convinced that they were formerly united, and that the mighty rent which has brought them to their present state could only be effected by the same general convulsion which broke through so many mountains, and opened so many vallies and chasms in this country. In the third place, how can we explain on Mr. Barrow's system, the depth to which this opening runs below the level of the sea at its very lowest ebb, for the power of the waters must have ceased at the mark beyond which they never descended. I am convinced that Mr. Barrow never could have given the opinion he has done if he had examined the spot accurately. As little can I concur in his idea, that the lake may in the end become an excellent harbour, how much soever I may be disposed to assent to his wishes on this point. But the narrowness of the entrance, the insufficient draught of water to admit of large vessels coming in, and above all things, the short duration of the point when the depth of water is sufficient for any vessels, are circumstances which must always render the ingress to this harbour very preca-

rious, and a ship may be obliged to tack about, or lie to for some hours, before it be possible to enter. The egress from it, particularly to loaded vessels, must be still more difficult, on account of the very prevailing south-east wind which blows directly against the entrance, and increases the danger of the vessels not being able to keep the exact channel by which alone it can be safely passed.

If the colony of the Cape should ever arrive at such a point of riches, of industry, and of population, as that the cost of the work would answer the object to be attained,—or should a more than liberal government be willing to take upon itself the enormous expense of such a work, the entrance might be widened by machines, which would raise from below the probably loose blocks of stone by which it is obstructed, and this would be the only means of making the lake of Neisna an eligible harbour. The anchorage in the eastern creek of this lake is tolerably good, particularly for small vessels. What it wants now in depth, there not being at the ebb more than from two to three fathoms water, would perhaps be in great measure corrected by clearing the entrance, which would improve the current, and perhaps in time increase the depth. The project of Mr. Calendar, the present possessor of Melkhout-kraal, for erecting dock-yards here, has many things to be said in its favour, and it is very much to be wished that it could be carried into execution. The first attempts must not however be expected to be successful, and their failure must not too much discourage the undertakers, since the experience hitherto of the efficiency of the wood about the Cape for ship-building has not been greatly in its favour.

What has been said by other travellers of the fertility of this neighbourhood, and of the many sources of industry offered here by nature, is very just; no part of the country is more calculated to nourish and support an extensive population. At present there is scarcely any land cultivated hereabouts but what belongs to the proprietor of Melkhout-kraal, but every branch of African husbandry may be carried on with the fairest prospect of success. From the height on which the former buildings stood, the view over the whole lake, with its half woody, half rocky shores, is very picturesque. The lake is from an hour and a half to two hours in circumference.

About a mile eastward from hence we came to another little wood, which, clothing two hills divided by a valley, has thence the appellation of de Poort.

This was the spot on which was acted in November, 1799, the first unfortunate scene of blood in the terrible war with the Caffres. It was the general signal of enmity on both sides, and may be properly considered as the beginning of the war. Three colonist families, of the names of Wolfard, Heins, and Botha, who, having learnt what had passed upon the borders, determined on quitting the country and taking refuge in the Cape Town, were here overtaken in their flight by a troop of Caffres, when some were killed, others severely wounded, and some taken prisoners and carried away. The consequences of this murder, and the revenge to which, without any great crime, it might here and there have given occasion, (although we have no authentic proof that such was the case, and the whole transaction remains very much in obscurity), occasioned the inroad of a numerous body of these savages, and ended in the destruction of one of the finest parts of the colony. It will be seen from these circumstances how incorrect Mr. Barrow is, when he asserts that the savages were excited against the English government by the colonists. It was unfortunate that their invasion happened at the same time with the tumultuary movements among the inhabitants of Graaff Reynett, and the history of these occurrences becomes extremely involved, from the circumstance of there being three different powers in contention at the same time. All that I have been able to accomplish in elucidating the matter shall be given hereafter.

In the afternoon of this day, after a fatiguing ride in extreme heat, over a flat dry country, we arrived at Plettenberg's bay.

## CHAP. XV.

*Description of Plettenberg's Bay, and stay there.—The Postholder Meding.—Journey over the Black-mountains to the Long-kloof.—The Pisang-river.—Diana's Bath.—Augusta's Rest.—Matthias Zondag.—Description of the Long-kloof.—Conrad Buys.—The deaf and dumb Man, Gildenhuis.—Celebration of the New Year.—The Field-cornet Rademeier.*

**T**HE form of Plettenberg's bay has a striking resemblance with that of Mosselbay: indeed, almost all the inlets on the southern coast have in figure the same resemblance to each other. They have generally on the western side of the entrance a projecting rock, a branch from the mountains, which is a great shelter from the force of the sea, but which ends commonly in reefs underneath the water. All these capes are the termination of rows of hills running in parallel directions, and cutting the southern coast into many pointed angles. A glance upon the map will explain my meaning more clearly. Cape St. Blaise is the outer point of the row of hills which stretches from the Krombek-river east-south-east, and the Robbenberg (Seal Cape) is the terminating point of another chain, a part of which forms the separation between the lake of Neisna and the sea. The great chain which lies behind this, and through which runs the Long-kloof, is lost in the Bay of Content, or Kromme-river's bay, and with its two principal arms forms this inlet, the northern one of which spreads farther along the coast, and at length, as the Cape des Recifs, separates Algoa bay from the ocean.

In this way the whole southern coast of Africa has a regular declension from west to east towards the horizon, so that the eastern part sinks into the sea. In surveying the coast from the Table-mountain, at the height of about fifteen hundred feet above the sea, the place where the granite ceases, which is about the Kaiman's-river, will be found not more than fifty feet above the sea at its lowest ebb, and between Plettenberg's bay and Algoa bay, the sand-stone layer, which at the Cape rises to the height of two thousand five hundred

feet above the sea, is upon a level with it. It is, perhaps, from this very cause that the eastern part of the coast is so much better watered and more fertile than the other side of the colony. Hence too is clearly explained the reason why the Caffre coast is so dangerous to ships coming from Asia, since all the parallel chains of mountains in Southern Africa end in reefs below the surface of the sea, running in an oblique direction against the current of the water (for the current comes in a north-easterly direction towards the coast); thus the unwary sailor is driven directly upon the reefs, from which he supposes himself yet many miles distant. The very incorrect manner in which the Caffre country is laid down in most of the charts of this coast, being placed far too much westwards and northwards, is indeed a principal cause of the many shipwrecks which have happened upon it.

A similar, yet less high chain of rocks than that which separates the lake of Neisna from the sea, runs along the northern shore of Plettenberg's bay, and encloses a lake, through which the Keureboom-river flows, and, as at Neisna, empties itself by a narrow channel into the bay. But this lake, on account of its shallowness at the entrance, is unnavigable even for the smallest vessels, and is only valuable from its abundance of fish. At the western end of it stands the house of the postholder. The person who at present enjoys this office is by birth of Swedish Pomerania, and his name is Meding. He lives here with a very amiable family in a very good house, built by himself in the European taste. Besides being postholder, he is overseer of the adjacent woods, and in this office has made himself extremely useful to the government; indeed, from his strict integrity and extensive knowledge, he is universally esteemed. Like the Dane Abue, in his early years he received a scientific education; he studied at Griesswald, and after many remarkable turns of fortune, at length in this remote spot found a scene on which his genius and activity could be displayed. A German traveller, who under favourable circumstances should travel over the European colonies in the other quarters of the globe, and who does not fear a certain degree of indiscretion, might compose a very thick and very interesting volume, in detailing the history of his fellow-countrymen dispersed over the colonies of the naval powers. The number of Germans in the colony of the Cape alone is pretty considerable, and my intercourse with several of them in the course of my travels afforded me many very pleasant and interesting hours.

The woods begin at not more than a quarter of an hour's distance from the postholder's house. They run northwards towards the mountains, and are so rich in natural rarities, that I earnestly recommend future naturalists visiting the southern coast of Africa to devote a longer time to this country than it was in my power to do. Although during the three days that we remained here I was indefatigable in collecting the treasures it afforded, and brought home many beautiful specimens, yet was the number that escaped me much greater. I wished earnestly that it had been possible for me to remain here several months, or even a whole year, thoroughly to study a country which travellers hitherto have visited so hastily, or even totally neglected. In particular, I saw and pursued some butterflies that equalled those of the West Indies in size and beauty, and which I can safely affirm are not included in the system. What an endless treasure of observations might be made upon the vegetable kingdom, particularly upon the now almost unknown sorts of large trees with which this country is richly stored, as well as upon the natural history of sea animals, whether fish, insects, or reptiles, assisted by the experience of a man of Meding's knowledge and activity.

On the bay, not far from the sandy landing-place, is the government magazine of wood, a not very old, but an almost fallen and useless building. The builder, who was then employed by the East-India Company, very absurdly placed this building directly against a rock, down which the water is constantly running, without any provision being made for its going off; all the beams are therefore decayed, and the greatest part of the thatch fallen in. People were at this time employed in building a new magazine in a better style, orders for which had been given by General Janssens in his journey. The landing-place is a poor one, and only to be distinguished by two very small rocks which rise on each side of it. The sea runs very high almost all the year, directly into the bay, so that the surf, even in calm weather, is sufficient to render the landing difficult. The anchorage is very good, but on account of the force of the waves the vessels must be anchored with exceedingly strong cables, else they are in danger of slipping the cable, and being driven on shore. Water is not here very abundant; the stream at the landing-place will not supply more than from seventy to eighty barrels of water daily. The timber and planks with which ships are to be freighted are

floated into the water, and then towed by boats to the side of the vessel to be taken on board. It has often been proposed to erect saw-mills at Plettenberg's bay, but no convenient spot for the purpose has yet been found in the rivers about; most of them are too dry in summer, and they are often too much swollen in winter: it is the same case with the wind; there is commonly either too much or too little of it.

In returning from an excursion we had made to some distance from the postholder's house, we crossed a stream called the Pisang-river: it has this name from the profusion of wild Pisang, as it is here called, *strelitzia alba*, that grows upon its banks. It should appear, therefore, as if this was the native country of the beautiful plant so much admired in Europe, under the name of *strelitzia reginae*. I was not so fortunate as to find any of the latter wild; I only saw it in blow in some gardens at the Cape Town.

The soil is not less fertile about Plettenberg's bay than in Outeniqualand, though the fields are almost all sour. The difficulty of finding a sale for the fruits of their industry is a great damp upon that of the colonists, both in this district and in Outeniqualand: they almost all gain their livelihood by felling and sawing out timber, and cultivate no more corn and fruit than they can consume themselves. On the high hills, sweet grass grows in tolerable plenty, and some of the farmers there feed a considerable number of cattle. From Mosselbay hither we saw no more aloes; they cease where the woods and sour-fields begin; they are again, however, to be found on the high naked hills to the north of Plettenberg's bay, but of a sort scarcely good for any thing as to the sap they yield. The *aloe perfoliata* is exclusively an inhabitant of Zwellendam, and some spots in other remote districts.

The impenetrable forests which occupy the space here eastward, between the mountains and the coast, precluded our following the course of the latter any longer. We turned therefore northwards, as we proceeded upon our journey on the twenty-eighth of December, to pass over the high hills which lay between us and the Long-kloof, where we were to meet our waggons: we had been separated from them ever since the seventeenth. Although the distance was not more than between seven and eight miles, the road was of such a nature, that we could not hope to perform the journey in one day, but thought it prudent to provide for its continuing two days. Before we

reached the foot of the mountains, we crossed many little nameless rivers, and went through several outskirts of the forests; we also passed two farms, where we first saw a specimen of the precautions which had been taken against the inroads of the Caffres. They consisted in high earth walls, run up all round the house at the distance of five or six feet from it: at the four corners were a sort of towers, with port-holes for guns, resembling bastions, which gave the whole the appearance of a fortification: the opening opposite the house door could in time of danger be barricadoed. Many farmers by this kind of fortification saved their houses. In the way from hence to Algoa bay we found almost all the houses put into a like state of defence; but we learnt that when the Kaffers did get possession of one of these defended houses, their rage was vented upon it much more furiously than upon the free-standing ones.

Under the conduct of Meding we began the ascent of the mountains. At first they consist of a number of ridges, running parallel with each other from west to east, with considerable vallies between; but each ridge is higher than the former, and the vallies between are constantly more and more contracted. The roads wind carefully just below the brows of the hills on narrow projections, in many places looking down a steep precipice, with a foaming mountain torrent at the bottom, almost turning the head giddy. For nearly half the way we were obliged to dismount, as the least false step in the wearied horse might plunge both him and his rider into the depth below. The horses themselves, unaccustomed to the scene, and seeing the danger, go with a timid insecure step, leaning always to the side of the ridge: if the weather be wet, this way is impassable from the great danger of slipping. In descending into the vallies, sometimes a leap is to be made down a ledge of the rock like a step, and it is then necessary to leave the horse entirely to himself, and in ascending, it is scarcely possible to get on more than twenty steps without stopping to take breath. We lightened the ascent to ourselves somewhat, by letting our horses go loose, and driving them before us, when taking fast hold of the tails, we made them drag us forwards. The streams which flow through these vallies have their course eastward, joining at last the Keureboom-river. The principal arm of the latter, which we crossed in the third valley, is tolerably deep and broad, and when it is much swollen

by rains, overflows the whole country between Plettenberg's bay and the Long-kloof.

On the heights we found again different sorts of *protea*, particularly the *grandiflora*, which is here deformed in a very extraordinary manner by the sting of an insect, to as bad a degree as where gall-nuts are formed: the branches break out into knots, from which twigs and leaves come out without number, but exceedingly small. At a distance these trees appear as if they were covered with the mistletoe, or some other parasitical plant; but when examined nearer, it proves to be a ball of little plants, exactly of the same nature as the large bough. Several sorts of *brunia* and *phylica* were now in flower, and their delicious odour had attracted many beautiful insects about them. A sort of bee peculiar to these parts makes the most excellent honey from these flowers, which it stores in the hollows of trees, or in rents in the rocks. It is entirely white, and the wax cells are so thin, that in taking the honey, they melt with it, and may be poured easily into a flask. It is so mild and delicious, that I thought the honey of Hymettus could scarcely be more so. It is eagerly collected by the colonists in the Long-kloof, and used by them very much instead of sugar.

When we had ascended the fifth height, and cast a look back to the coast, from that, as we had from every former one, bidding farewell to the sea for that day, we stopped in a romantic wooded valley, in which we were to pass the night. Our waggon had been sent on the day before by a very circuitous road, but we had met it in the last valley through which we passed; however, on account of the ruggedness of the way, it was now very far behind, and we were overtaken by a heavy rain, so that we were all completely wet through. We sought shelter under the thickest of the trees, and soon came to a clear mountain stream, which falling over blocks of slate from one to another, in the manner of a cascade, and sunk beneath the dark shade of trees richly clothed with leaves, presented a most beautiful picture. The place is called Cloetes-kraal, from a Hottentot family of that name who once resided here, but it pleased the party to give it a poetical name, since we all agreed that the spot itself was highly poetical, and we called it Diana's bath. The few tents we had were very insufficient to shelter us entirely from the heavy rain, and we ate our supper not without some anxiety about our next day's

Journey. The rain, however, ceased soon after sun-set, and before we laid ourselves down to rest, our clothes were well dried by the slaves at a large fire which they made.

Our horses and oxen being extremely refreshed by the excellent grass which the spot afforded, they and we set off the next morning with renewed powers, to encounter a route of even greater fatigue than the preceding day. The nearer we approached to the highest elevation of the mountains, so much the more gigantic did the whole mass appear, so much the more rugged were the sides, so much deeper and wilder were the valleys. The paths along which we rode, and which are seldom trodden by any human being, except now and then a solitary herdsman, driving his cattle to graze, were like those of yesterday, narrow and winding, as from the brows of the hills they descended to the vast depths below. Both far and near we saw woods which had probably stood for centuries, defying the axe, from the difficulty attending their removal. After many almost indescribable difficulties, and much fatigue, yet sweetened by the sight of nature in her most gigantic and most ancient forms, we saw the last valley at length before us, and began descending into it by a steep path enclosed on both sides with shelving rocks, sliding at every moment over loose stones. On the side, projecting from another mountain far into the valley, rose a high and remarkable rock, which, on account of its resemblance to a pulpit, is called by the herdsmen the *Predikstoel*.

By a less steep path, we arrived about noon at the lowest depth of the valley, where a shady grove and a crystal stream invited us to take the repose we all very much wanted. The inhabitants of the Long-kloof fetch their timber for building from this valley, and from their vexation at the labour with which it is attended, they have given it the name of *Moorde-narskuil* (the murderers' hole). Our chief, in gratitude for the refreshment it afforded us, and particularly our almost-exhausted ladies, named it in honour of his daughter, *Augusta's rest*. The remainder of the provisions with which we had been supplied by our kind host at Plettenberg's bay afforded us an excellent meal, which we took lying at the foot of an African oak, at least a century old, surrounded by some of the most wonderful among the wonders of nature, and enjoying much cheerful and instructive conversation. Almost close to this spot we found the fresh traces of an African buffalo, and farther on, the bushes trodden down, pointed out the way by

which he had penetrated into the thicket. Elephants are known also to inhabit these vallies, and are sometimes seen five or six together.

Steeper, and from its length much more fatiguing, was the last hill which we had now to ascend. We were two hours reaching the top, but from thence we had a fine view over the mountains we had passed, with Plettenberg's bay stretching beyond them. We descended now almost imperceptibly, and soon arrived at the house of Matthias Zondag, where our waggons had been already arrived some days. This place is called Avontuur (Adventure), and lies about the middle of the Long-kloof, at its highest point. The Long-kloof is a valley formed by two parallel rows of hills: it is in few places more than half a mile broad, but is nearly thirty miles in length; and if the valley of the Kromme-river be included, which is indeed a continuation of it, the entire length will be forty geographical miles. The whole chain of mountains, of which the Long-kloof forms a part, runs without interruption from Roodezand to Algoa bay, a length of more than eighty miles, and bears the general name of the Black Mountains. Particular parts have names by which they are otherwise distinguished, but many parts of these mountains deserving of distinction remain still unoccupied and nameless, and will still be so, till the period shall arrive when the colony will be universally cultivated.

The Long-kloof, notwithstanding its elevated situation, is well supplied with water, and in many places the way is rendered fatiguing by the morassy nature of the ground. Through the whole length of it, houses are to be met with in regular distances of about an hour from each other, which is a certain proof of fertility, although the people complain that they are situated too near to each other. Corn and fruit will grow exceedingly well here, but from circumstances already often mentioned, they are little cultivated. The wine is very indifferent, but the dried fruits are excellent: the raisins are particularly celebrated. Horned cattle, butter, soap, and hides, are the products principally brought to market from hence. The colonists of the place are a good-natured, friendly race, without any overstrained piety, and with a tolerable degree of education. From the houses, the clothes, the tables, it is evident that they are in affluence, and procure with facility the wants, and even some of the luxuries of life.

As the waggon, which we again quitted at Diana's bath, on account of the great circuit it was obliged to take, did not rejoin us till the second evening,

when **much** was to be done to put it in order for setting forwards again, and as many **o**ther provisions were to be made for our future journey, we were obliged to remain here two days. During this time, the neighbouring colonists **came** in great numbers to visit the Commissary-general, when, according to **custom**, they had many petitions, representations, and complaints to make to **him**. What inclined him principally to lend a very attentive ear to these **things**, which often belonged more properly to the inferior jurisdictions, was the **opportunity** it gave him of explaining more clearly to many persons the **principles** of the new Dutch government; to recommend patience, **mildness**, and forbearance towards the people under them; and above all, to **excite** them to a higher degree of industry than had been hitherto in general exerted among the colonists, particularly among those of the more remote districts.

The sequel has shewn that these endeavours, in which he had been preceded by Governor Janssens in his journey, were not without the desired effect: indeed, the influence which they had in the principal points upon these, somewhat rough it is true, yet, according to my opinion, not wholly uncivilised men, was among the happiest consequences of this journey. The English government failed indisputably in nothing so much as, that despising the gentler means of persuasion and mildness, they had recourse at once to harsh measures;—to the inconsiderate rigour of those who were employed by them is perhaps principally to be ascribed the refractoriness shewn by the colonists. They were in a sort of state of insurrection when the colony was taken by the English, and being still more irritated and incensed by the harsh behaviour of those who were sent among them by the conquerors, it is not surprising that they appeared to Mr. Barrow in the **unamiable** colours under which he has represented them in his writings. That he should involve all in one general censure was however not quite consistent with **candour**, and he has thereby laid himself open to the censure of having sought an almost unmanly retribution, for the slights shewn to him personally by individuals.

If the peasants, who might perhaps be injudicious, and ill-informed as to their true interests, and who were besides over-heated by worthless people, had been treated with mildness, and had not seen foreigners and persons whom they hated put over them, but had seen their magistrates chosen from among

the impartial and well-instructed inhabitants of the colony, and enough of this description were to be found, it is probable that much mischief might have been spared. All the disturbances in Graaff-Reynett, the war with the Caffres, and the arming of the Hottentots against the colonists, might have been averted; or, if lenient means at length proved fruitless, the proceedings of the English government, at least in the punishment of the leaders, would have been defensible, not only on the grounds of necessity, but on those of justice.

Among the discontented was then a man, whom his fate, hitherto, and the part he took in the Caffre war, has rendered celebrated. Conrad Buys, an African born, who had a small farm in the district of Zwellendam, was in the year 1795 one of the warmest patriots, as they called themselves, and opposers of the Orange principles. When the colony was taken by the English, he fled to the Caffres; whether it was, as his defenders assert, entirely from dislike of the new government, or, as others will contend, from fear of punishment, I will not pretend to determine. The same powers which had raised him to so much distinction in the assemblies of the insurgents, his great strength of body, a countenance full of courage and ardour, a daring and active mind, with superior eloquence of speech, soon acquired him equal distinction among the savages. He above all things so entirely gained the confidence of the mother of their King Geika, then a minor, that a sort of marriage was concluded between them, after the manner of the Caffres, and in a short time he shared with this woman the almost unbounded influence which from her rank as well as her prudence she had obtained over the whole nation. The brother of her deceased husband was then endeavouring to deprive his nephew of the sovereignty, or at least to separate himself, with a numerous body of adherents, from the principal tribe; but with the assistance of Buys the prudent mother contrived to satisfy her brother-in-law, and make him preserve at least an external friendship.

A year after the flight of Buys the Caffre war began, but what part he had either in its origin or continuance it is not easy to decide. That he stirred up the Caffres against the English is very probable, but it is not at all likely that the desolation of the country, and the destruction of the dwellings of the colonists, was promoted by him, or that he encouraged the horrors of which the Caffres were guilty towards his former friends and companions. It is very

certain, that during the whole war he remained quietly at home with his queen; and it is certain also, that her's and the young king's party took no share whatever in the disturbances. It was the tribes of which Sambeh, Conga, and Jajuba, adherents of the Pretender, were the chiefs, who fell with so much fury upon the colony, marking their footsteps with blood and murder. It is even much to be presumed, that if Buys had any share in the instigation of the war, his purpose was to occupy the uncle of his ward, to remove him and his adherents to a distance, thereby to weaken his influence, and in his absence to strengthen and confirm the power of the young king.

Many other circumstances concurred to bring on the evil, and without his interference there is no doubt that it would have taken place. Among these may be reckoned first, the desire of plunder common to all the Caffres, created perhaps principally by an increasing population, with too little means of supporting it: secondly, individual acts of power, and arbitrary instances of vengeance from the colonists: and thirdly, the unstable measures of the new, half-formed, ill-instructed, English government.

As long as the English retained possession of the Cape, Buys remained among the Caffres, and continued to be held in great respect and esteem by them. General Janssens found him still there in the year 1803, when he concluded a peace with Geika. His whole behaviour hitherto appeared however too ambiguous, and the influence of a person of his talents and powers over a numerous and warlike nation appeared too dangerous to see with indifference the continuation of his connection with these savages. General Janssens therefore stipulated for his return to the colony, in which he acquiesced willingly. A residence was awarded him near the place where we now were, and our chief availed himself of his being in the neighbourhood to acquire from him much interesting and useful information respecting the Caffres, and the history of the late disturbances.

He was invited to meet us, and came on the thirty-first of December. The representations which rumour, too much addicted to exaggeration, had given us beforehand of this extraordinary man, were corrected from the moment of his entrance. His uncommon height, for he measured nearly seven feet; the strength, yet admirable proportion of his limbs, his excellent carriage, his firm countenance, his high forehead, his whole mien, and a certain dignity in his movements, made altogether a most pleasing impression.

Such, one might conceive, to have been the heroes of ancient times; he seemed the living figure of a Hercules, the terror of his enemies, the hope and support of his friends. We found in him, and it was what according to the descriptions given we had little reason to expect, a certain modesty, a certain retiredness in his manner and conversation, a mildness and kindness in his looks and mien, which left no room to suspect that he had lived several years among savages, and which still more even contributed to remove than his conversation the prejudice we had conceived against him. He willingly gave information concerning the objects upon which he was questioned, but carefully avoided speaking of himself and his connection with the Caffres. This restraint, which was often accompanied with a sort of significant smile, that spoke the inward consciousness of his own powers, and in which was plainly to be read that his forbearance was not the result of fear, but that he scorned to satisfy the curiosity of any one at the expense of truth, or of his own personal reputation, made him much more interesting to us, and excited our sympathy much more than it would perhaps have been excited by the relation of his story.

Another very interesting acquaintance which we made here, though of a totally different kind, was a deaf and dumb man, by name Gildenhuis. He was uncommonly clever in handicraft employments, and was exceedingly useful to the inhabitants of the country, in making gun-locks, tools for all kinds of work, and in general in all the finer kinds of smith's work. He had learned all this of himself, and many things he shewed us of his own carving and engraving in wood and metal, evinced no less patience and perseverance, than taste and genius. As very few patterns had fallen in his way, most of the forms and ornaments were entirely his own fancy, which rendered the taste they displayed much more extraordinary. This man is mentioned by Mr. Barrow as a remarkable instance of genius. His manners were no less striking than his works. All his actions, all his movements, his very countenance displayed a kind of humour peculiar to himself, an innate disposition to comic representations. In nothing was this shewn more conspicuously than in the signs which he had himself invented to express his meanings, and through the medium of which he could even relate long histories to those who were acquainted with the signs. He took a particular pleasure in giving us, by the aid of his sister, an idea of this sort of speech, which entertained

to exceedingly. He described a Hottentot by pressing the ends of his two thumb-nails hard together, as these people do when they want to kill the vermin, by which they are commonly so much plagued; a horse was described by making a movement with his two fore fingers like galloping. These specimens are sufficient to give an idea of their nature, and they were all equally appropriate and humorous. His external appearance shewed a happy and contented mind, with an uncommon vivacity of disposition; and his relations assured us that he seemed a perfect stranger to listlessness and ennui.

The entrance of the new year was solemnised here according to the custom of the country, with the firing of guns from the farms all round, so that the whole neighbourhood resounded with them. Our dragoons were not behind hand, but emulated the colonists in the salutes they fired from their carabines.

The next morning we proceeded onwards in the Long-kloof, visited several excellent farms, and in the evening arrived at the house of a rich colonist, by name Stephen Ferrara, with whose cousin of the same name we had taken our rest at noon. This place is well supplied with water; the whole valley indeed is so, and appears fertile enough to nourish in future generations a considerable population. The farms which we visited the next day by degrees assumed a poorer appearance, and most of them were fortified, in the manner before described, with earth walls and bastions. The valley here widens gradually, the mountains on each side have a less wild and rugged aspect, their summits are more rounded, but the vegetation is weaker, and the number of springs is diminished, as well as the quantity of water supplied by each. At the house of the Field-cornet Rademeier we again met with an old Prussian soldier, whom a singular fate had driven to this spot. He had served in the seven years war, was afterwards in garrison at Wesel, and there had the misfortune to kill the son of a general in a duel. He fled into Holland, where he engaged in the service of the East-India Company, and was sent hither as a common soldier. Already an invalid when the Cape was taken by the English, he would have died helpless and forsaken, had not the compassionate Rademeier, without any previous knowledge of him, taken him to his peaceable and hospitable habitation, there to maintain him for the remainder of his life. His name was Winnekes, which I mention in case the remembrance of him should still live in the hearts of any of his fellow-countrymen. How many unfortunate persons may equally here, south of the

line, have closed a career of sorrow and repentance, far from their homes and their native land, without any knowledge of their fate ever having reached those to whom they once were dear, without even the cause of their flight being known!

At noon we stopped at the house of a certain Strydom, where the shade of some old oaks, and an avenue of loaded fruit-trees, the roots of which were watered by a pretty little rivulet flowing over a pebbly bed, made us forget the poverty which appeared in the house and its inhabitants. Our host and his brothers maintained their families chiefly by the chase. They roved about the mountains to the south of their habitations, in pursuit of the elephants, buffalos, and wild boars, which still inhabit in considerable numbers the vast forests of Sitzikamma. A few months before, they had taken a male elephant fourteen feet high, the tusks of which weighed nearly a hundred and a half. They were sold at the Cape Town for two hundred dollars. He asserted, that some years before, elephants had been taken here that were eighteen feet high; and experienced hunters, who had travelled through the solitary countries on the other side of Caffraria, assured me afterwards that this was no exaggeration. Strydom celebrated highly the affection of this animal to its young, and insisted that he had himself seen a female elephant take her wounded calf up in her teeth, and run away with it.

Rademeier, who undertook himself to be our guide for a part of the way, shewed us at some distance from his house, near the road, the grave of a Hottentot, who, according to the universal testimony of the neighbourhood, came into these parts long ago, being a Christian, and lived here as a Physician and Sage. His memory is now honoured by the Hottentots, according to their custom, by any one as he passes throwing a fresh flower upon it. We found indeed several which seemed to be almost fresh strewn there. The grave consisted of a number of rough massy stones heaped together, which might be between twenty and thirty paces in circumference. This circumstance is interesting, as a proof of the truth of what is asserted by early travellers respecting the superior degree of civilization at which the Gonaquas had arrived above the other tribes of Hottentots. We often found in subsequent parts of our journey similar graves towards the borders of the Caffre country, but never in any other part of Southern Africa did I see any thing

resembling it. It is common among all the tribes of Hottentots to bury their dead very deep, and with great care; most of them indeed are not content merely with the precaution of burying the body deep to preserve it from wild beasts, but as a farther defence, dig to a considerable extent round the immediate spot where the corpse is to be laid, and fill up the space with bushes and brambles, putting over the whole a thick layer of stones: but this done, the memory of the deceased is soon lost, and he is thought of no more. It is therefore but just to distinguish the grateful Gonaaquas, who, after the lapse of half a century, still honour the remains of merit.

Towards evening we passed the Wageboom-river,\* a small rapid stream, near which we found the family of a colonist, by name Kretzinger, busied in rebuilding their house, which had been burnt by the Caffres. The same fate had attended the farm where we stopped for the night. The owner, a certain Olivier, had returned a few months before, but so impoverished, that he had scarcely even bread and mutton to sell us. Very little more of the house was left standing than the walls, and our whole party slept at night under tents.

---

\* *Wageboom* is the name given by the colonists to several sorts of *Protea*, which, on account of the hardness and toughness of the wood, afford excellent materials for making waggons.

## CHAP. XVI.

*First Rencontre with travelling Caffres, and many Particulars concerning the Interview.—Leeuwenbosch.—Magic Power of Snakes.—Kabeljau-river.—Chamtoo-river, and difficult Passage of it.—Beautiful country on the other Side.—Elephant Hunt.—Riet-river.—Embarrassment of the Travellers from the Delay of the Waggon.—Lead-mine at Van Stade's-river.*

NOT far from the place where we now were the Long-kloof loses its name. The road ascends a considerable height, whence is seen the valley of the Kromme-river (Crooked-river): this stream is enclosed by the same parallel rows of hills which had hitherto formed the Long-kloof. On the sides of these heights are many chasms; from these flow the sources of the Kromme-river.\* This name is very appropriate, for the stream winds so much in the narrow valley to which it is confined, that the road crosses it seven or eight times. The fords are deep and dangerous, sometimes from the loose broken stones, sometimes from the morassy nature of the ground. In places of the latter description, are here and there what are called by the colonists Palm-bridges, which however soon decay, and are then more dangerous than the fords themselves. Rademeier carried us for some way along a path upon the declivity of the northern heights, by which we avoided some of these windings, with their fords. We were so much the more anxious about our waggon, which could not take this road, as two of them had already, early in the day, sunk deep in the mud, whence they were not drawn out without difficulty. At noon, we rested near the river under the shade of some small trees of Kruppelholz (*Protea Conocarpa*), and made a very pleasant meal of our cold provisions, while our horses found excellent feed

---

\* All the rivers and streams of the Long-kloof which ran westward of Matthias Zondag's house flow into the Kamnasie, which afterwards joins the Gaurits-river. Those eastward of Zondag's collect themselves together into the Kuga-river, which runs for a while parallel with the Kromme-river, both at length joining the Chamtoo.

in the meadow ground that bordered the river. In the afternoon we again crossed the river three times, and arrived in the evening at the house of P. Ferreira, called Jagersbosch (Hunter's-bush), which had been taken by the Caffres, but not totally destroyed. The thatch was not so much damaged but that it sheltered us entirely from a heavy rain. Our waggons, however, as we had very much feared, did not arrive till the morning, so that we passed a not very agreeable night, with empty stomachs, and upon the cold damp ground, without our beds.

Here we first saw some Caffres: they were five men and three women, belonging to the herds of the Caffre Prince Conga, and came on a party of pleasure; or, as they termed it, had taken a walk to be entertained by the colonists, and receive presents from them. What makes the neighbourhood of these savages extremely irksome is, that in peace they expect as a sort of tribute what in war they seize by force. They often come in large bodies, and will stay several days or even weeks, scarcely thinking themselves obliged, even though they are entertained all the time without cost; and this the inhabitants do, to obviate, if possible, any cause of quarrel with them. Many times, in making peace, endeavours have been made to establish a fixed boundary which neither side shall pass without express permission from the chiefs of the country, but to this they never would consent, urging that there was no use in being at peace, if people could not make visits to their friends to enquire after their welfare. Under this pretence, they rove in little troops all over the colony, coming sometimes even to the Cape Town, to the no little injury of the colonists, over whose properties they travel. Their importunity, their number, and the fear of quarrelling with them, since they are very ready to catch at any pretence for a quarrel, commonly secure them good entertainment; or if in hopes of getting rid of them, their host does not feed them sufficiently, they take one of his sheep, without any ceremony, and kill it. As they have no idea themselves but of living from day to day, without any regard to the future, they consider the breeding cattle kept by the colonists as wholly superfluous, which ought to be, and shall be shared with them. The insolence of these roving groups was a principal occasion of the late disturbances, and the not having been able to put a stop to their visits at the establishment of peace, occasions much anxiety with regard to the future.

The Caffres who were now upon a *visit* here were some of the poorest part of the nation, very dirty, and very ill-clothed: three of them were not of genuine Caffre origin, but were bastards of the Gonaaquas and Caffres. Two of these latter spoke broken Dutch, and in the name of the rest begged some brandy of us. A glass was given to each of them; the men were besides presented each with a knife, and the women with some beads and buttons. As we wished much for some specimens of their dexterity in throwing the Hassagai, a board was set up as the mark at which they were to throw: they were to stand at the distance of sixty paces from it, and whoever first hit the mark was to receive a red cotton handkerchief as a prize. It was a long time before the prize was gained, and as they continued the sport voluntarily, we observed that not above one out of thirty throws hit the mark. Yet, when it did hit, the force of the weapon was so great, that the iron point pierced through a board an inch thick.

They now gave us, unasked for, a pantomimic representation of their mode of fighting, ranging themselves in two rows, and showing how, by the most rapid and powerful movements of the body, they throw the weapon at the enemy. They also imitated their manner of avoiding the weapons of the opponent, which consisted in changing their place at every moment, springing hither and thither with loud cries, throwing themselves at one instant on the ground, and then rising with astonishing velocity to take their aim anew. The activity and readiness of their motions, the variety and rapid changes of attitude in these fine, athletic, naked warriors, made this sight as pleasing as it was interesting, on account of its novelty. Another change was now produced by the use of their weapons of defence. These weapons consisted first of a large shield, rounded out of a hardened ox-hide and stretched by a wood cross within, which served also for a handle, and secondly of a short stick of Hassagai wood,\* so cut, that a knob is made at the end by a part of the thick root of this stem. With the latter weapon, which the Hottentots call a *Kirri*, they turn aside the Hassagai by a strong side blow. They use the *Kirri* equally as a weapon of defence, in the way of a bludgeon, when they come to close fighting.

As it began to rain hard, we invited our visitors into the house, where they

---

\* *Curtisia fuginca*, a wood something of the nature of mahogany.

entertained themselves till late in the evening with a dance after their fashion ; this was as stiff and disagreeable as their activity and dexterity in the use of their arms had been otherwise. The men first come forwards in a row, with folded arms, stamping with a number of strange disagreeable motions of the head, shoulders, and body, while the women with the most hideous grimaces move slowly round the men, one after the other. Then they sing, or rather howl a strange melody, which cannot be pleasing throughout to an European ear, and which could not be performed upon any of our instruments, because their Intervals stand in a very different relation one to another from our's. Yet they imitate these Intervals and the melody of their songs upon their imperfect instruments very true. One of the women employed herself in making baskets of rushes, such as are mentioned by Sparmann, thick enough to hold milk. The work is uncommonly neat, and does great honour to the inventor ; but the mode in which it is done could not be described without great prolixity.

When our waggons were at length all collected together, we left this place, and proceeded farther on along the right bank of the Kromme-river. About noon we reached a very agreeable resting place in the Hassagai-bosch, as it is called, by the side of a clear rivulet running through the wood. We soon after passed the Kromme-river for the last time, and then ascended on the other side a very striking height, which brought us to a wide plain ; here we saw the bound of our this day's journey, in a solitary farm that lay directly before us. We had seen a great many wild animals the whole day, particularly antelopes of almost every sort, among others some of the rare pigmy-antelope (*antilope pygmæa*), called here the *Oribi*. These animals live entirely in woody countries, and are therefore only to be taken in this part of the colony. Duivers, red-deer, and wood-deer, were in troops of five or six together, but neither was the land favourable for the chase, or could we venture with our horses, tired by a long day's journey, to follow the game with any eagerness.

At the place where we were to take up our quarters for the night we found again several families who had fled, and their property had been plundered by the Caffres ; by the consent of the owners, who lived at the Cape Town, they had here found an asylum till their own dwelling-houses could be restored, and rendered habitable. Among them was a woman scarcely

now thirty years old, who was of such an extraordinary size, that her weight was estimated at not less than three hundred and fifty pounds. She had suffered for a long time with such a terrible oppression upon her breath, and beating at the heart, that she had all the appearance of an incurable dropsy in the chest.

The Commissary-general found here again many differences to decide. Among others, a Hottentot woman brought a complaint against a colonist, whose servant she had formerly been, that he withheld from her a cow and calf which she had earned. The Commissary took occasion upon this earnestly to exhort the colonists to be particularly careful in their conduct towards such of the former inhabitants of the country as behaved well in their service. He, as General Janssens had done, made it a rule in all cases between a Hottentot and his Christian master, which appeared in any way doubtful, to presume in favour of the former, and decide accordingly. This had a good effect upon the behaviour of the colonists towards the Hottentots, and was of this use, among others, that it compelled them to fulfil exactly the agreements made with their servants when they hired them. On the other side, as it remedied one evil, it in some sort created another, for upon subsequent occasions I had opportunities of observing that the favour here shewn the Hottentots encouraged them to make idle and futile complaints against their masters, so that the inferior magistrates were at last constrained to punish here and there one of these people, who had, without any ground, brought these complaints, and occasioned their masters a great deal of trouble.

On the fifth of January, about noon, we came to the dwelling of a certain Michael Ferreira, called Leeuwenbosch (Lion's bush). The house had suffered exceedingly from the Caffres, but the household was the best ordered that we had seen for a long time. The man and wife were quiet-pious people, and seemed to lead a most happy life in their solitude, surrounded by a number of fine children, and by a company of faithful slaves and Hottentots: both the latter appeared really and warmly attached to them. They received us with a pleasure and friendship of manner, which evinced indisputably the utmost purity and simplicity of heart, and which made the frugal meal they set before us doubly agreeable.

As, according to my custom, I took a ramble into the fields in the afternoon, I saw at the brink of a ditch a large snake in pursuit of a field-

mouse. The poor animal was just at its hole, when it seemed in a moment to stop, as if unable to proceed, and without being touched by the snake, to be palsied with terror. The snake had raised its head over him, opened its mouth, and seemed to fix its eyes stedfastly upon him. Both remained still awhile, but as soon as the mouse made a motion, as if he would fly, the head of the snake followed the movement immediately, as if he would stop his way. This sport lasted four or five minutes, till my approach put an end to it: the snake then snapped up his prey hastily, and glided away with it into a neighbouring bush, where I endeavoured in vain to get at him and kill him. As I had heard a great deal of this magic power in the snake over smaller animals, it was very interesting to me to see a specimen of it. I think it may be made a question, however, whether the poisonous breath of the reptile might not really have had the effect of paralysing the limbs of the mouse, rather than that its inability to move proceeded either from the fixed eye of the snake, or the apprehension of inevitable death. It is remarkable, and very certain, that serpents will sport with their prey, as cats do, before they kill it.

Ferreira gave us two muskets, which some deserters from the ninth battalion of Jägers had sold to one of the neighbours, or had left behind them in their flight. It was in February, 1803, as the Dutch army was encamped upon the Weinberg, that a whole piquet from this battalion, almost all Poles, forsook the camp by night. They were part of a number of Poles, who, having been in the French service, were in 1801 taken into the pay of the Batavian republic, and sent hither among the colonial troops. These unfortunate men conceived that in flying northwards they could reach their own country in a few weeks. They were, however, for the most part, retaken by the colonists, and carried back to the camp, where they suffered the utmost rigour of the law, and paid with their lives their want of geographical knowledge. Five of them, however, escaped out of the colony by the road we were now travelling, and perhaps met their fate from the hands of the Caffres or Bosjesmans. In my principal journey, two years after, I found traces of them in a very distant part, as will be related in the proper place.

The excessive heat of this day prevented our setting off again till towards evening. I proceeded on foot with the wagons, and rejoined the company

late at the farm of the widow Kretzinger, on the Kabeljau-river. On the way we were overtaken by the most violent storm that I think I ever witnessed. The whole heavens were covered over with the thickest black, and night seemed to come on before the sun was gone down. The dark mountains seen in this mournful twilight appeared doubly gigantic, and their frightful masses, illumined suddenly by the blaze of the lightning, seemed awfully near. From four or five different parts the lightning flashed through the heavens, while tremendous claps of thunder followed quick on each other, every clap becoming still louder and louder, and being prolonged by the echoes from the mountains, there scarcely seemed any interval, no pause which could distinguish between the cessation of one clap and the commencement of another: the noise grew fainter for a moment, only to be renewed with a more tremendous roll than before.

Amid a pouring and continued rain we pursued our way till we arrived at the above-mentioned farm, where we met the Field-cornet Ignatius Müller, with a new *vorspann*. Here again were several families sufferers from the Caffres, many of whose houses, almost entirely destroyed, we had passed in our day's journey. We also met here with another group of travelling Caffres, who begged of us some little presents of tobacco, beads, and brandy. They were chiefly women, and among them was a sister of the chief Conga, who was distinguished as well by the greater splendour of her dress, as by her handsome countenance.

The country was now again much more level, and somewhat farther to the south the great chain of the Black Mountains, which runs from Roodezand and Zwellendam, forming the boundary of the Long-kloof, and the valley of the Kromme-river, down to the coast, loses itself in the sea. Some miles northwards from hence, runs a branch of this chain, which stretches farther to the east, and after having formed the bank of Van Stade's-river, runs down to the sea in the neighbourhood of Algoa bay. From these hills flows the Zeekoe-river, which we had crossed this day, and which unites itself with the sea a mile eastward of the Kromme-river. All these rivers are choked at the mouths with sand-banks, and the Kromme-river's bay is from the surf almost entirely useless for shipping: there is scarcely a place along its whole margin where even a boat can land without danger of being wrecked.

After resting a few hours at night, we were obliged to set out again before day-break, to reach the Chamtoo-river, three hours from hence, while the tide was sufficiently down to permit of our crossing it. This was one of the most dangerous of all the rivers we passed, from the depth and breadth of the stream, and from the necessity of attending to the exact point of time when only it is fordable. Many a one who has not paid due attention to this point has here found a watery grave: directly at the entrance of the ford on this side, the tomb-stone of an English dragoon, who had not very long before shared this fate, stands as a warning to others to be more cautious in encountering the danger. We found it, as our guide assured us would be the case, at this time unusually low; for though a heavy rain had fallen the day before, the west wind which accompanied the storm occasioned the ebb to descend to its very lowest level, so that in the deepest places the water scarcely reached our horses' bellies. After going a little way through the water we come to a sand-bank, which runs down the length of the stream rather in an oblique direction towards the opposite shore: along this bank, which has in no part more than a foot and half depth of water, we pursued our course till arrived at the point where the stream is the shallowest between that and the bank: here the remainder is to be crossed, but this is the most dangerous part of the passage. We had but just passed before the water began to rise again.

Our waggons, which only then arrived on the other side, had more difficulty in crossing than ourselves, and the last of them, which, to increase the evil, had stuck fast at the beginning of the ford, was not without great exertions brought safely to the other side. It was really a curious sight to see the train of waggons going along the sand-bank in the middle of the stream. The Field-cornet Müller, and some other of the colonists who had accompanied us, were exceedingly assiduous in giving directions for bringing the waggons through, going sometimes up to their breasts in the water to point out the right track, and even to give their assistance when any thing went wrong. A delay of only a quarter of an hour might have occasioned the loss of a whole lading, and nothing was more likely than that the oxen in the water might entangle themselves with the harness, or make some false step, when only those who are accustomed to the passage, and have sufficient

resolution and presence of mind, can set them right again. This readiness to assist, and extreme activity in assisting, deserves to be mentioned as a new proof that the African colonists are not inattentive and slothful to the degree that they have often been represented.

While we were resting, after having surmounted the toils and dangers of the passage, we were again visited by a company of Caffres, with whom we entertained ourselves agreeably for some time. At the same moment, some of the women whom we had seen at the Kabeljau-river, appeared on the other bank of the Chamtoo, and held a conversation with their fellow-countrymen who were on this side. Our guides made us remark how easily these people heard each other at a considerable distance, without either party speaking particularly loud. The slow and singing manner of their pronounciation, whence a prolonged tone dwells on the last syllable, may very well account for such an effect.

About nine o'clock we proceeded onwards, sending our waggons by a circuitous route along the sea-shore to meet us in the evening at the house of the Field-cornet Müller, while we took the nearest way through the forest and over the hills. The Chamtoo-river was formerly the boundary between the colony and the Caffre-country, and indeed it seems to separate two very different countries. That through which we were now travelling is among some of the most beautiful parts of Southern Africa, and shewed in the clearest manner the difference between the climate of this district and that which prevails about the Cape Town, with the influence produced by the abundant storms, and the heavy rains that accompany them, upon the vegetation and the whole appearance of the country. Large tracts are here covered with the most wholesome nourishing grass; the hills are surrounded with woods, and in the valleys are large lakes: the water of them is, however, not wholly free from saline particles. We continued our course for some time through woods and level green valleys, with ponds in them, in which were large flocks of moor-birds; in short, among such beautiful changes and varieties, that we could almost have conceived ourselves in a lovely English garden. At the feet of the high trees grew a number of succulent plants, in particular of aloes, which were still in high bloom, many of them with large branches, which seemed scarcely able to sustain the weight of the heavy

**fleshy leaves.** On the ground crept a number of smaller plants, among which, the *Schotia speciosa* was particularly distinguished by its clusters of reddish purple flowers.

Numbers of elephants inhabit the thickest parts of this forest. Not above a week before, our guide, whose name was Nieuwkerk, had shot a large male elephant, but could not follow him quick enough to secure him. He thought it very probable that his body might still be found, since he was sure that he could not have run very far, and he knew the direction he had taken. I had no great difficulty to persuade him to accompany me, and endeavour to find the animal; we therefore left the party, and penetrated into the forest, but by no beaten path. My hopes that I should have to occupy myself during our stay at Algoa bay with preparing the skeleton of an elephant were disappointed. We found many footsteps of elephants, some of which seemed almost fresh made, but could not find the dead body we sought. The excursion proved exceedingly fatiguing, as we were obliged to go the greatest part of the way on foot, leading our horses; for this, however, I would have compounded, if it had answered my purpose, but what made it particularly mortifying to me was, that in a spot where an opening in the wood afforded us a prospect to the heights westward of us, we saw a little troop of elephants, seeming not to be at more than a quarter of an hour's distance from us. Between them and us was, however, a deep valley, which encloses a branch of Van Stade's-river, and it was too late in the day to think of undertaking a serious chase of them; the weather was besides cloudy, threatening a heavy rain, and our horses were tired. We returned therefore by a different and more commodious way to the party, whom we found at a very pretty spot in the midst of the forest, called Galgenbosch (Gallows-bush). They had been resting here some hours, and had thought of going on, as the weather grew every minute more and more threatening.

The account of our unsuccessful search was the occasion of bringing the histories of many hunting parties upon the tapis, one of which was so remarkable, that I cannot resist giving it a place here. The Field-cornet Ignatius Müller was among the colonists who accompanied Mr. Jacob Van Reenen in his journey into the Caffre country, which has so often been alluded to, and for the knowledge of which the public is indebted to the English Captain Riou. The travellers found that the farther they went the

more elephants they found, so that they killed them almost daily; indeed, the hope of gain from the elephants' teeth that they should collect had allured most of the party who joined in the undertaking. It is known from Mr. Barrow's travels, that one of the company, William Prince by name, lost his life in an elephant hunt. Müller was an eye-witness of this accident, and gave us the following circumstantial account of it.

He and Prince only were out together, when they discovered the footsteps of a very large elephant, and soon espied the animal itself upon the declivity of a naked and widely outstretched hill. It is a rule when an elephant is found thus, to endeavour to get above him upon the hill, that in case of necessity, the hunter may fly to the summit, whither the animal, on account of the unwieldiness of its body, cannot follow him fast. This precaution was neglected by Prince; he shot too soon, while they were yet at too great a distance, and the elephant was upon higher ground than himself and his companion. The wounded monster rushed down towards them, while they endeavoured to push their horses on, and gain the brow of the hill. But the elephant, who upon favourable ground will run as fast as a horse, soon came up with them, and struck with his tusk at Müller's thigh, he being the nearest of the two fugitives. Müller now considered his fate as inevitable, as he endeavoured in vain to set his almost exhausted horse into a gallop, and saw the monster, after giving a violent snort, raise his powerful trunk above his head; but it was not on himself, it was upon his companion that the stroke fell, and in an instant he saw him snatched from his horse and thrown up into the air. Scarcely in his senses, he continued his flight, and only in some degree recovered himself by finding Prince's horse running by his side without a rider; then looking back, he saw his unfortunate friend on the ground, and the elephant stamping upon him with the utmost fury. He was now convinced, not without the utmost astonishment, that the sagacious animal had distinguished which of the two it was wounded him, and wreaked his whole vengeance upon him alone. Müller on this went in search of the rest of the party, that they might collect the mangled remains of their companion and bury them; but they were soon put to flight by the elephant rushing again from a neighbouring thicket, to vent his wrath once more upon the corpse, already so dreadfully mangled. While he was busied in doing this, however, he was attacked by the dispersed hunters, and sacrificed to the manes of his unfortunate victim.

Amid the entertainment we received from this and other relations of a similar kind, we arrived in the narrow valley of Van Stade's-river. After crossing the river, we continued our way for some time along its bank; the road then turned eastward, and in less than an hour we arrived, having been first well soaked with the rain, under the hospitable roof of our guide the Field-cornet Müller. The place is called the Rietfontein; it is situated in a pleasant valley, bounded to the south by naked rocks, but every way else by finely wooded heights, which form a sort of amphitheatral semicircle round the fine meadow land of which the valley is composed. At the foot of these heights, and taking the same sweep with them, runs the Riet-river. Among the trees which contribute so much to the beauty of the spot, the *Euphorbia Officinarum* is particularly to be distinguished; the angular boughs which issue from the stem with a striking regularity, and symmetry of form, while the smaller branches, and even the twigs, follow the same measured equality of distance, gives the whole tree, with each particular member, the appearance of regular chandeliers. This wonderfully beautiful tree, some of which were here as much as thirty feet high, has a sharp thorn at the extremities of the twigs, from which it is called by the colonists the Noortsche Doornboom.

Müller and his wife received us with the utmost hospitality, but their house was so exceedingly confined, the weather was so indifferent, and our waggons were so long before they arrived, that our stay here was rendered not very agreeable, and the party found themselves in a situation which might truly be called meeting with an adventure. The greatest part of the house had been destroyed by the Caffres; a very small part was left standing, which Müller had with some difficulty put into such a state as to be habitable. It was composed of the room at which we entered, and a side chamber; the first was kitchen as well as parlour, but it was no more than twenty feet long, and fourteen broad, and in the chamber was a young woman, a relation of our hostess, then in the pains of child-birth. Our whole party, therefore, were to be stowed in the first room, for the rain grew every instant more and more violent, nor ceased till noon on the following day. Our presence was somewhat embarrassing to the busy hostess, who undertook the cooking herself, in which she was assisted by some half-naked female slaves. Two fresh-slain sheep hung near the fire-place, while other parts of the room were filled up with several vessels, a large chopping-block, and a quantity of dry

fire-wood. The whole household furniture consisted of two small tables, four or five chests, and half a dozen field-stools. In one corner was a sitting-ben; in another a duck with her young ones, which had been brought in to be sheltered from the chilling rain; then there were some half dozen of dogs, who every now and then began barking terribly, and ran out, returning all wet and dirty, and sprinkling the dirt all about. The family of our hostess consisted of six children, the youngest of whom cried almost incessantly, and the eldest crept about, eagerly examining the strangers. The good mother, who seemed almost ready to lie-in herself, exerted all her powers to entertain us, but as she had only been returned hither a few weeks, she had scarcely even common necessaries about her, and it was not without some trouble that she could even procure bread sufficient for us of a distant neighbour.

We expected the arrival of our waggons with the utmost anxiety, but expected in vain, and indeed it appeared obvious that they must be so much delayed by the heavy rain, that scarcely any hope could be entertained of their arriving before morning. As it grew dark, and all were crowded together in the house, our Chief remarked that even Ostade would have been much embarrassed, if he had wished to represent in a picture the interior of the house at this moment, with the group of guests at supper. Behind the house was a small stable for five or six horses, and here the dragoons and servants were forced to take shelter; over it was a little loft, scarcely larger than a pigeon-hole, up to which the young people climbed, and there eight of us passed the night. A bed was made in the front room for the Commissary-general and the ladies, but they had not much more rest than we had, for they were kept awake the greatest part of the night, first by the groans of the poor woman in the inner apartment, and then by the crying of the new-born infant.

At break of day the field-cornet sent the relay of oxen, which had already arrived, to meet the tardy waggons. We soon received the intelligence that they had been detained by the rapid flow of the sea, which prevented their continuing their route along the shore, and constrained them to pass the night on the sand-hills. The dreadful weather, and the want of a supply of provisions, even of good water, had made this a not very pleasant situation for the people who were with the waggons. As we learned moreover that it

was impossible they should arrive till towards the afternoon, and as the weather was now fair, the Commissary-general determined, notwithstanding the fatigues we had suffered, to set forwards for Algoa bay, without waiting for them: about noon the greatest part of the company set out, and arrived happily in the evening at Fort Frederic.

Young de Mist, however, my friend Winters, and myself, determined to stay behind, and make an excursion to the celebrated lead mine, two hour's distance from this place on Van Stade's-river. We followed the course of the river upwards, and came to the farm of a certain Christian Vogel, which had been destroyed by the Caffres, and was now uninhabited: near this place lay the object which had occasioned our journey. An old slave who lived in the ruins, taking care of the owner's cattle, said, that we had only to go towards the hill, and we should soon see the shining earth. We had some trouble, however, to discover it, since the rain had brought down such a quantity of sand, that the spaces were all filled up. After having searched some time in vain, we succeeded at last, and in turning up a stone, found some fine pieces of lead-ore, which we charged the old man to keep for us carefully, as we intended to carry them away with us. The whole side of this hill, up to a considerable height, consists entirely of the same shining stone that forms the bed of the Silver-river, and in this the lead-ore is enclosed. The vein seems almost perpendicular, stretching from the north-west to the south-east. According to the researches of Major Von Dehn, in the year 1792, a hundred weight of earth contains between fifty and sixty pounds of pure lead, and about fifteen pounds of base-silver. Some which I brought home with me was examined by the chief physician Klapproth, at Berlin, when he found in a hundred parts fifty three of lead, thirteen of sulphur, and a small quantity of silver, scarcely worth mentioning. My friend, Baron Dankelmann, who visited the country a few months after me, by command of General Janssens, and examined the earth very accurately, found nearly the same result as Major Von Dehn. Farther information from him upon the subject may be expected by mineralogists. In his official report to the government, he submitted to their consideration proposals for working this mine, as it promises, particularly in the first years, to yield abundantly; but, after an accurate calculation of the cost, it was found, that notwithstanding every

thing was placed in the most favourable point of view, yet from the high price of labour, from the difficulty of land-carriage, and from the dangers of the coasting trade, the lead could scarcely be sold at so low a price in the Cape Town as that brought from Europe. The mine then must rest till a new day dawns upon the cultivation of this quarter of the globe—till the time arrives when an increasing population shall, with their necessities, increase their industry.

We returned in the evening to the Riet-river, to the house of our friend Müller, where we found a numerous group of Caffre visitors. This group had, to the great annoyance of the neighbourhood, been living for some weeks past at a few hours distance from hence, and daily troubling some one or other of the neighbours with requests for brandy and tobacco. What made their abode in the country still more troublesome was their hunting parties, in which they destroy large quantities of game. Their mode of hunting is, that some hundreds of them surround a wood, and drive all the game up to one point. A more convenient spot is then chosen, to which they chase the animals singly, and one of the party who is among the most skilful in the use of their weapons is stationed here, who attacks them with the hassagai, or the kirri, so that scarcely one escapes alive. In this way they will sometimes, as Müller assured us, kill in one afternoon some hundreds of animals—antelopes, hares, wild-cats, monkeys, &c. &c. but as they can never make use of them all, so they are left to decay without being even skinned; yet they want the animals, as they say themselves, less as food, than for the sake of the skins, which are necessary to them as clothing. How injurious these hunting parties are to the colonists may be judged, when it is stated that they support their families chiefly upon the flesh of wild animals, in order to reserve their cattle for sale to the travelling butchers from the Cape Town. So much the more was it a subject of joy to see an officer arrive this very day from the Caffre chief, Conga, with orders to the troop who were now here, to return immediately over the Great Fish-river. A reconciliation had taken place between Geika and the party who had opposed him, and Conga had consented, according to the promise he made the governor, to submit to Geika as Jaluhsa had done already. This ambassador was distinguished in his dress from the rest of the people. His mantle was the skin of a panther;

he had bracelets of ivory upon the upper part of his arms, a jackal's tail at the knee, and a large bush of the quagga's hair\* in his cap. He was exceedingly pitted with the small-pox, as were many others, and uglier than any we had yet seen; but as to understanding, judgment, and knowledge, very much upon an equality with the rest. His name was Umluhngo.

---

\* The *Quagga* (*Equus quagga* of Linnæus) has a resemblance to the Zebra, and is therefore mistaken by Edwards for the female of that animal: but it is a species of itself, going in herds wholly apart from the true Zebra. The Quagga is larger and stronger than the Zebra, and much more easily tamed, so that it may be made to draw a waggon.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Algoa Bay.—Fort Frederic.—Baaker-river.—Industry of the German Garrison.—Description of the Bay.—The Missionary Van der Kemp.—His Hottentot School at Bethelsdorp.*

EARLY in the following morning we set off to join our party at Algoa bay. The nearer we got to the coast, the more the country resumed its former waste and dreary appearance: the road lay over a flat plain, as destitute of woods as it was of hills. In the latter part of the way are some sand-hills, and the deep road down them is extremely fatiguing. On the last hill, which goes down to the shore, stands Fort Frederic, built by the English in 1799. It consists of a quadrangular wooden block-house, surrounded by a wall of the same figure: beneath the wall is a strong row of palisades, and a tolerably broad dry ditch.\* Eight guns, twelve pounders, command the shore, as far as it serves for landing, and protect the buildings lying near, viz. the barracks, magazines, guard-houses, &c. Westward of the hill on which the fort stands, comes from a deep gulley a little stream called the Baaker-river.† At the ford of the river, which is concealed between the hills that rise on each side of it, is another wooden block-house, which under the English govern-

---

\* The annexed plate is a view of the settlement at Algoa bay, seen from the other side of the Baaker-river, which flows into the bay. On the height to the left lies Fort Frederic, and below, near the river, the Block-house. The houses of the commandant and the officers are seen in a row in the distance. The person by whom the sketch was taken, Lieutenant Colonel Von Howen of Amsterdam, has introduced our travelling party in the fore-ground, though their way did not lie over this river, but eastward, in a contrary direction. This seems necessary to be noticed, that the reader may not be perplexed on comparing the plate with the text. I have another view of the country taken from the bay, but it has not been inserted, because Alberti has given the same view in his account of the Caffres.

† *Baaker* signifies a mark, a stone set up as a boundary, a sea-mark, a buoy, &c. &c. The river serves the sailors as a mark to point out the landing-place, and from thence has its name. It is a mistake to suppose it, as some persons have done, the Bakker-river (Baker-river).

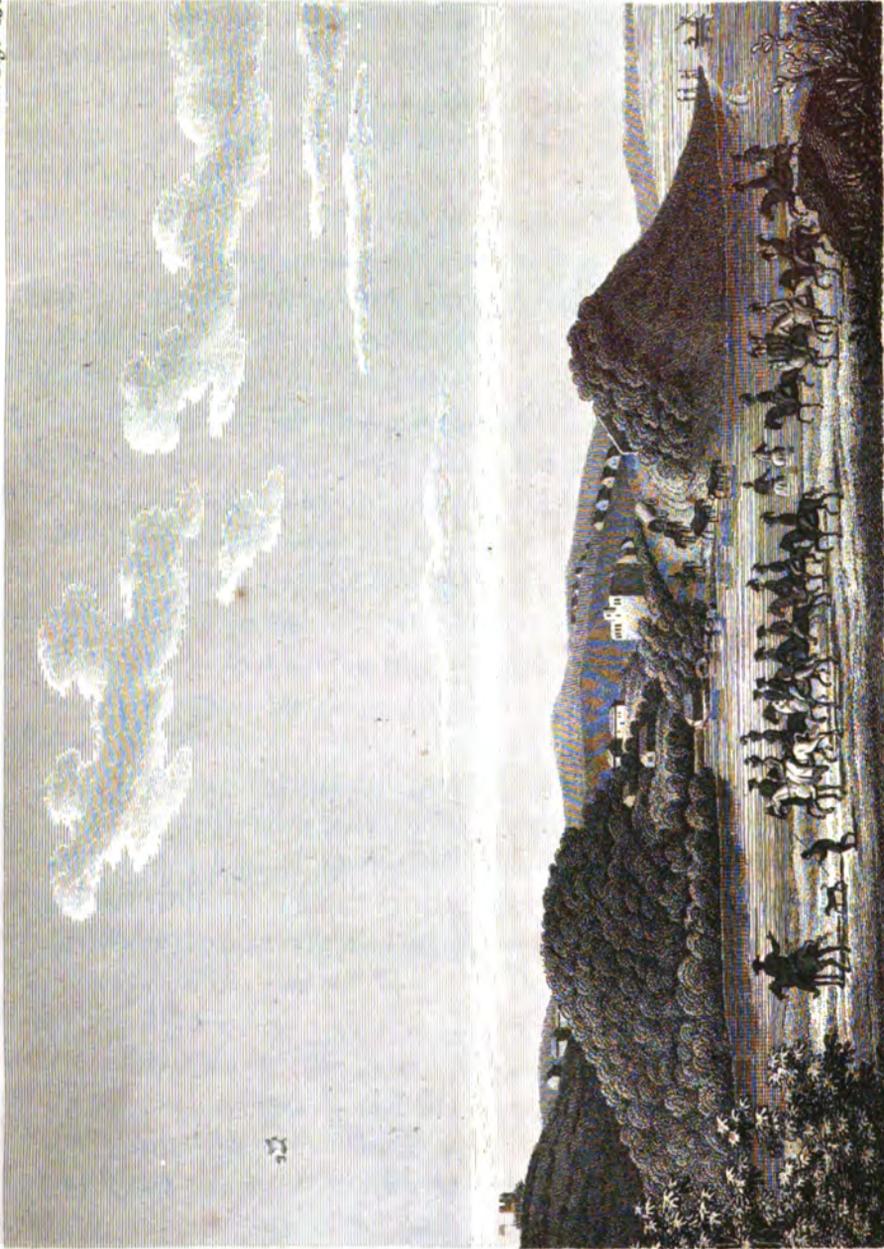


Plate 31

View of the Settlement at Algiers Bay.



ment was prepared at the Cape Town, and sent in parts by sea to the bay. It serves at once as a prison and guard-house. Between the block-houses lie, strewed on the heights, extensive barracks for soldiers, a magazine for provisions, and another for military stores and field equipages, a smith's shop, a bakehouse, a carpenter's work-shop, and other small buildings: a strong powder magazine, which will contain about two thousand pounds of powder, is within the fort itself.

Some small houses have been run up in the neighbourhood for the officers, among which the house of the commandant is the most distinguished. It contains four convenient rooms, and stands in the midst of a pretty garden, which the garrison had put into exceedingly good order, though they had been there only eight months. The garrison consists at present of eighty men from the Jäger company of the fifth battalion of Waldeck, most of them experienced Jägers. These people have, under the auspices of their excellent commandant, the worthy Lieutenant-Colonel Alberti, availed themselves of the favourable nature of the country, and cultivated the land about the establishment; even this year they have raised their own bread-corn, their potatoes, and some sorts of pulse. At the hours of leisure from their service, they each take a spade, and by the active manner in which it is employed, procure themselves a considerable degree of abundance, and many enjoyments which could not be otherwise obtained. Besides, the employing themselves in this way prevents the dulness and languor to which they must otherwise be subject from the uniformity necessarily attendant on their situation in so remote and solitary a post. These industrious people had already got a tolerable number of sheep and cattle, by which they hoped in time to enrich themselves exceedingly, as well as to get draught oxen for tilling their lands.

The bay in size, form, and situation, exceedingly resembles both Plettenberg's-bay and Mosselbay. As it is open to the south-east wind, which blows here a great part of the year, it offers no secure anchorage to shipping; indeed, the entrance is difficult even when the wind blows from other quarters, particularly the south-west. The landing-place is a little sandy spot near the mouth of the Baaker-river; excepting this, the whole strand is dangerous on account of the reefs. The surf is from the nature of the coast every where so strong, that it costs immense labour to bring the goods on shore from the vessels. Notwithstanding these impediments, this

place is now completely erected into a military establishment; it has even been selected for the purpose, because, on account of the impediments, it can be so easily defended against the landing of an enemy. Going along the strand, a short mile eastward of the Baaker-river, we come directly opposite the little island of Santa Cruz, which lies about a quarter of a mile from the shore, but is only inhabited by seals and penguins. Bartolomeu Diaz erected the Holy Cross here in January, 1487, and gave the island the name which it retains to this day.

The country about Algoa bay is by nature so fertile, that even if uninhabited it would produce wood, game, salt, and grass for feeding cattle in abundance. Now, since it has been cultivated by Europeans in quiet times, it produces corn and fruits of all kinds, and even wine. The breeding of cattle prospers so much, that meat, milk, butter, soap, and other articles dependent upon this part of husbandry, are to be had at very low prices. The bay itself, from the plenty of fish that it produces, offers an abundant supply of food to the inhabitants of its shores.

What renders this establishment, however, of particular importance, is, its situation so near the borders of the Caffre country, and the facility with which, in consequence, any disagreements between these savages and the colonists may be stifled in their birth. It has therefore been made a particular subject of attention by the Dutch government, and a great deal of money has been spent both upon the buildings and every other part of it. A mile from hence, at the place of the Widow Schepers, ground has been laid out for a Drosty, and a village adjoining to it, which is to be the centre point of a new district: it is to be called after the family name of the Commissary-general, Uitenhage.\* The commandant Alberti administered the office of landdrost of this new district as long as the colony remained in the hands of the Dutch. The esteem in which he was held by the colonists, his influence over the chiefs of the Caffre tribes, his extensive knowledge, and the many excellent features in his character, united to render his administration of so much advantage to the country, that in two years it became one of the most quiet and peaceable parts of the colony. On this subject I shall dwell more largely in another place.

---

\* It must be observed that *De Mist* is the Commissary-general's title, not his name.

We remained five days at Algoa bay. Messengers were sent from hence to the chiefs of the Caffres, inviting them to an interview with the Commissary-general. The views with which this was solicited were to confirm and strengthen the peace concluded by General Janssens, and, if possible, to reconcile the chiefs with each other, that, united under one head, their own internal quiet, as well as the peace of the colonists, might be farther secured. By this means too would be removed the great inconvenience which had been so often experienced, from the weaker party, in their own internal quarrels, often seeking a refuge in the Dutch territories, whither they knew their adversaries would not venture to pursue them. But before I enter upon an account of the situation of this extraordinary nation, and give my readers a sketch of some former occurrences necessary to be known, in order fully to understand the sequel of our journey, I must close this second part of my work with an account of another mission establishment, situated in this part of the colony.

About a mile and half eastwards from the bay, a man, now near seventy years of age, by name Vander Kemp, has collected together between two and three hundred Hottentots, to whom he preaches the gospel. If ardour in religion, amounting almost to bigotry, if self-denial, and a renunciation of social comforts, even of all earthly enjoyments, supported by a high degree of enthusiasm, and by very extensive learning; if these properties can render a missionary worthy of respect and esteem, then is Vander Kemp most truly so. Even the history of his early life, before he was known here, must create a high degree of interest for him.

In his youth he was an officer in the army, but contracting a marriage beneath him, he was obliged to quit the service, and, as a married man, applied himself to the study of physic with so much diligence, that notwithstanding his total want of all previous knowledge in this science, he attained the degree of Doctor in three years, and was appointed an army physician. Some years after, in crossing the river Maese with his wife and children, the boat unfortunately overset, and all his family was lost; he alone escaped, almost by a miracle. From this moment his whole soul was absorbed in religious ideas, and he soon exchanged the science of medicine for that of theology. He studied particularly the ancient and the oriental languages, and soon commenced a writer in his new profession: but his works, on account of their

mystical tone and terrifying prolixity, did not obtain him many votaries in Holland, so that in the year 1780 he went over to England, where he succeeded better. When the Cape was taken by the English, he resolved, though then sixty years of age, to go out as a missionary to the Caffres, and being ordained at Oxford, he came hither in 1797. After two years spent among these people, in which he says himself he had not accomplished much towards the spreading of christianity, the war broke out. He went for a while to the Cape Town, but at his return to the Caffres was not favourably received, and was obliged again to quit their territories.

At this very time there were hovering about the borders a number of vagrant Hottentots, who, during the war, had gained their living as partisans of either side; one while among the Caffres, plundering the dwellings of the colonists, then assisting the colonists in seizing the cattle of the Caffres: in this way they had, in more than one instance, been secretly the occasion of the struggle being carried on with still increasing animosity. These people were collected together by Vander Kemp for the purpose of instructing them in the christian religion, in which he was assisted by an Englishman of the name of Read. But, however plausible and meritorious appeared the plan of the undertaking, the utility which might have been, and ought to have been, derived from it, was lost by the over-pious spirit and proud humility of its head. It is true that these Hottentots were now nominally quiet, and kept in some order; yet, often under pretence of the chase, they wandered about armed, the government (then English) having allowed them, not merely a small quantity of powder and shot to kill game for the purposes of food, but having supplied them with it very abundantly; a favour, if favour it is to be called, which was too often misused. They were certainly daily instructed for some hours in the christian religion, but these instructions made much more impression upon their memory than upon their understanding. They could sing and pray, and be heartily penitent for their sins, and talk of the Lamb of atonement, but none were really the better for all this specious appearance. No attention was paid to giving them proper occupations, and, excepting in the hours of prayer, they might be as indolent as they chose. This convenient mode of getting themselves fed attracted many of the most worthless and idle among these people, and all who applied were indiscriminately received into the establishment: the con-

sequence was that the colonists soon made heavy complaints of the want of servants, since the Hottentots were much better pleased with leading an indolent life in Vander Kemp's school, than with gaining their bread by labour.

When General Janssens in his journey visited this institution, he confirmed the principal part of the favours shewn to its head by the English, and permitted him to call the institution by the name of Bethelsdorp. At the same time he signified his wish that the Hottentots should be more excited to industry, particularly that they should be made to contribute towards their own maintenance by cultivating the lands around. This recommendation was accompanied with a large present of implements of husbandry, and seed corn, that there might be no pretence for evading it.

On the day of our arrival at Algoa bay the Commissary-general received a visit from Vander Kemp. In the very hottest part of the morning we saw a waggon, such as is used in husbandry, drawn by four meagre oxen, coming slowly along the sandy downs. Vander Kemp sat upon a plank laid across it, without a hat, his venerable bald head exposed to the burning rays of the sun. He was dressed in a threadbare black coat, waistcoat, and breeches, without shirt, neckcloth, or stockings, and leather sandals bound upon his feet, the same as are worn by the Hottentots. The Commissary-general hastened to meet and receive him with the utmost kindness; he descended from his car, and approached with slow and measured steps, presenting to our view a tall meagre, yet venerable, figure. In his serene countenance might be traced remains of former beauty, and in his eye, still full of fire, was plainly to be discerned the powers of mind which had distinguished his early years. Instead of the usual salutations, he uttered a short prayer, in which he begged a blessing upon our Chief and his company, and the protection of heaven during the remainder of our journey. He then accompanied us into the house, when he entered into conversation freely upon many subjects, without any superciliousness or affected solemnity.

The Commissary-general reminded him that they had known each other thirty-six years before at Leyden; he was then himself studying the law, and Vander Kemp was in garrison as a lieutenant of dragoons. He named to him the coffee-house where they had often met, and talked over many occurrences

that had happened jointly to them. The missionary remembered these things very distinctly, observing that he led then a very dissolute life, but he hoped it was expiated by his subsequent conversion, and present course. He related many things worthy of remark during the time that he lived among the Caffres, and elucidated several circumstances that happened in the late unfortunate war with them. Before we sat down to table he again ejaculated a long prayer: he ate very little, drank no wine, had after dinner a private conference with the Commissary-general, and returned in the evening to Bethelsdorp. His colleague Read, who accompanied him, seemed a good-hearted man, but, like most of the missionaries, extremely ignorant. This man, in order to give a striking proof of his lowliness and humility, had married a young Hottentot woman belonging to the establishment. The girl was baptised a few days before her marriage; but neglected as she was by him, both personally, and with regard to the formation of her mind, nobody could be made to believe that he married her at all from inclination.\*

Two days after we returned Vander Kemp's visit. It is scarcely possible to describe the wretched situation in which this establishment appeared to us, especially after having seen that at Bavianskloof. On a wide plain, without a tree, almost without water fit to drink, are scattered forty or fifty little huts in the form of hemispheres, but so low that a man cannot stand upright in them. In the midst is a small clay-hut thatched with straw, which goes by the name of a church, and close by, some smaller huts of the same materials for the missionaries. All are so wretchedly built, and are kept with so little care and attention, that they have a perfectly ruinous appearance. For a great way round, not a bush is to be seen, for what there might have been originally, have long ago been used for firewood: the ground all about is perfectly naked, and hard trodden down, no where the least trace of human industry: wherever the eye is cast, nothing is presented but lean, ragged, or naked figures, with indolent sleepy countenances. The support of the missionary institutions in

---

\* Since I began printing this book I have been informed that in the year 1807, the old Vander Kemp, following his colleague's example, had married a young Hottentot girl about thirteen, whose freedom, with that of her mother, he had purchased; not, however, living with her formally as his wife.

England and Holland, the favour of the government, the chace, and the keeping a few cattle, the produce of which is scarcely worth mentioning—these are the means to which two hundred and fifty men have to look for their support.

It cannot be matter of astonishment to any body that they are found wholly insufficient, and Vander Kemp complained bitterly that he had already been forced to sacrifice the greatest part of his own property. So much the more extraordinary does it appear, that he had never turned his thoughts seriously to instilling habits of industry into his disciples; but all idea of their temporary welfare appears with him to be wholly lost in his anxiety for their eternal salvation. His own hut is totally destitute of all comfort, even of any approach to neatness, and is perfectly consistent with the negligence of earthly cares which he preaches. He remarked, not without great self-satisfaction, how little was necessary to the support of life; but he would surely have done much better when he drew these Hottentots around him, to have inspired them with some sort of taste for the refinements of civilization, rather than to have levelled himself with them, and adopted their habits of negligence and filth. It appears to me that Vander Kemp is of little value as a missionary, partly because he is a mere enthusiast, and too much absorbed in the idea of conversion, partly because he is too learned, that is to say, too little acquainted with the common concerns of life, to turn the attention even of a raw Hottentot to them. Thence comes his total neglect of husbandry and all mechanical employments, though these are the arts in which his disciples must be instructed if he would make them really happy; thence also the perverted view he takes of the conduct which the colonists ought to observe with regard to his institution, since he considers them as bound to assist in its support.\*

Even in this seclusion from the world, Vander Kemp has written two large works, which have been printed in Europe. Towards the end of the year 1805, he was summoned to the Cape Town on account of some disturb-

---

\* On account of the poverty and wretched situation of the institution, it was called in the neighbourhood, by way of ridicule, *Bedelaarsdorp*, (Beggars' village) instead of *Bethelsdorp*. The Commissary-general gave five hundred Dutch guilders from the government chest towards its support.

ances which had arisen in his institution, and it is probable that the consequences would not have been very pleasant to him, if the arrival of the English had not put an end to the process. It was, however, the occasion of the institution being removed from the neighbourhood of the Caffre borders into the interior of the colony. During his stay at the Cape upon this business I saw him frequently, and am obliged to him for much of the information which I now proceed to lay before my readers.

**END OF PART THE SECOND.**

## PART III.

DESCRIPTION OF THE CAFFRE TRIBE OF KOSSAS.—FRAGMENT FROM THE  
 JOURNAL OF GENERAL JANSSENS.—OUR OWN JOURNEY ALONG  
 THE BORDERS OF THE CAFFRE-COUNTRY, TO  
 GRAAFF REYNETT.

---

 CHAP. XVIII.

*The Caffres — Name, Extent of Country, and Universal Characteristic of this People. — Opinions with Regard to their Origin. — Caffreland. — The Tribe of Koossas. — Their Personal Figure, their Diseases, their Religious Opinions, with various other Particulars.*

WHEN the Portuguese, at the beginning of the sixteenth century, first visited the eastern coast of Africa, the farther they went northwards among the nations who had maintained some kind of commercial intercourse with Europe, the more appearance of something inclining towards civilization was to be found among the people. At the time when they first appeared in these seas, vessels were in the habit of passing and repassing between the Malabar coast and the Red-sea. The trade to India was in the hands of the Arabs and Moors of the north-eastern parts of Africa. It was people of these nations who were employed as pilots and negociators, and all knowledge of the countries was derived from them. Being Mohammedans themselves, they gave the general name of *Cafer*\* (Liar, Infidel) to all the inhabitants of the coasts of Southern Africa,

---

\* From the Arabic word *Cafara*, to lie. Persons skilled in languages, assert, not without reason, that the word should be written *Cafer* not *Kaffer*, for the letters *Kaf* and *Kef* in the Arabic are very different. It is the more important to attend to this difference, since the word *Kafir* or *Kjafir* signifies a level waste. This resemblance of the two words afforded the Arabs an

signifying, by such appellations, the light in which they regarded all persons who were not Mohammedans. They could not, however, have any accurate knowledge of the people whom they thus stigmatised, since Melinda and Quiloa were the farthest points to which they ever traded; and, as the doctrines of Mohammed had found their way to the people on that part of the coast, they could not be included in the stigma, consequently it must be south of them that we are to look for the people who were so.

Ramusio and Barros the Portuguese, as well as Castañeda and Faria y Sousa, who first published accounts of the discoveries of their countrymen, gave very imperfect information respecting the northern part of these countries of infidels. They only imparted to the public what the Portuguese who established themselves between Sofala and Mozambique learnt of their nearest neighbours, and thus people began early to separate the kingdoms of Monomotapa, Toroa, and Butua, from the country of the Caffres; yet they undoubtedly ought to be included among them, not only according to the original meaning of the Moorish name, but from the very decided resemblance to be found in the principal characteristics of these people with the Caffres of the present day. Scarcely any thing more was ever heard of a nation bearing this name, till the Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope began to extend itself towards the borders of the Caffre country, when the almost-forgotten appellation was again brought forwards. That these people had been entirely lost sight of for three entire centuries, was owing to the Caffre coast being so extremely inaccessible to ships, and to the consequently little political or commercial interest the nation had to offer to Europe. It was owing to these circumstances that the acquaintance of the Europeans with a country which Vasco de Gama, and his immediate successors, represented as one affording so many circumstances of interest and promise, was not renewed till towards the end of the seventeenth century.

What has been related by later travellers in Southern Africa, with respect to these tribes, has increased the former interest to so high a degree, that it ap-

---

portunity for a play upon them, that by *Caser*, or *Kaser*, they intended it to be understood that an infidel was no better than a *waste*.

The Translator has adhered to the orthography generally adopted by English writers, and called these people, throughout the work, *Caffres*, not choosing to introduce, arbitrarily, a new mode of spelling the word.

pears very desirable to give a more ample description of them. My precursors confine the name of Caffres to a small tribe eastward of the colony, that being the only part they visited, without knowing any thing of the remaining inhabitants of Southern Africa, not included among the Hottentots. They consider the Caffres as distinct from the Tambuckis, the Imbos, the Briquas, &c. and place the people of Mozambique directly in opposition to them. I on the contrary, partly from my own travels (and I visited the Caffre country at two different times in parts very remote from each other), partly from studying the above-mentioned Portuguese works, and no less from information derived from some works of a more modern date\*, am of a very different opinion. I consider all the tribes of savages southward from Quiloa, and eastward from the colony of the Cape, very decidedly as a great nation equally distinct from the Negroes and Mohammedans on one side, and from the Hottentots on the other; and would include them all under the general name of Caffres. I venture to place the western boundary of their territory at the meridian of Cape Agulhas; for in the interior of the country Caffre tribes extend to this longitude. From thence the line which divides them from the Korana Hottentots, the Bosjesmans, and the colony of the Cape, must take an oblique direction to the south-east, till it comes to the sources of the Orange-river, whence it descends directly south.

The universal characteristics of all the tribes of this great nation consist in an external form and figure, varying exceedingly from the other nations of Africa. They are much taller, stronger, and their limbs much better proportioned. Their colour is brown—their hair black and woolly. Their countenances have a character peculiar to themselves, and which do not permit their being included in any of the races of mankind above enumerated. They have the high forehead and prominent nose of the Europeans, the thick lips of the Negroes, and the high cheek-bones of the Hottentots. Their beards are black, and much fuller than those of the Hottentots.

---

\* Particularly from the *Life and Travels of Maurice Thomas, Augsburg, 1788*, a Jesuit, who lived many years in Mozambique and the neighbouring countries; and the *Journal of a Voyage performed in the Lion extra Indiaman, from Madras to Columbo and da Lagoa Bay, in 1798, with some Account of the Manners and Customs of the Inhabitants of da Lagoa Bay*, by Captain William White, London. 1800.

Their language is full-toned, soft, and harmonious, and spoken without clattering; their root-words are of one and two syllables, their sound simple, without diphthongs. Their pronunciation is slow and distinct, resting upon the last syllable. The dialects differ in the different tribes; but the most distant ones understand each other.

They live chiefly upon flesh, and grow very little corn: a sort of millet, the *Holcus Caffrorum*, is their only sort. Milk is a principal article of food with them.

They are a sort of semi-nomades: they do not change their dwelling-places frequently, and when they are changed it is unwillingly; but they settle themselves easily in a new place. They differ among each other in the degree of cultivation at which they are arrived: those most advanced in civilization are distinguished by their huts being stronger built, and by their less frequent change of place.

There are fewer men than women, on account of the numbers of the former that fall in their frequent wars. Thence comes polygamy, and the women being principally employed in all menial occupations.

Their clothing is skins tanned with some skill. Their arms are the hassagai, the kirri, and a shield. Poisoning their weapons is abhorred by them all.

As to their religion, they believe in an invisible God; but he is not worshipped, neither is he represented by any kind of image, or sought in any thing terrestrial. They believe in magic, and in prognostics: they consecrate cattle; and the youths are circumcised when they are from twelve to fourteen years old.

They have no kinds of alphabetical characters; but appear to have some ideas of drawing. Metals are worked and engraved by them.

The Caffre is warlike and barbarous towards his enemies; disposed to be true to his friends, but distrustful even towards his own countrymen. In peace addicted to indolence; frugal and temperate, loving cleanliness and ornament, and respecting wedded faith. They have, in general, good natural understandings; but the most sensible are, notwithstanding, addicted to the grossest superstition.

A great number of tribes are included among these people, every one of which is governed by its own particular chief, which dignity is hereditary.

**Examples** of usurpers are, however, not rare. Their internal wars, not only of **one** tribe against another, but of rebellious captains against their princes, disturb their quiet continually, and prevent their making much progress in civilization. The population would otherwise, from the excellence of the climate, from the bodily strength of the people, and from the custom of polygamy, increase incalculably: indeed, this propensity to an increasing population is very often a cause of their wars: it creates a want of increase of territory, and that leads to encroachments upon their neighbours, which the latter must resist.

These may be called the characteristic features of the nation at large. While in them will be recognised a more than half-uncivilized race, the Caffres must be acknowledged a very distinct people from their next neighbours the Hottentots, inhabiting the inhospitable south-west corner of the great peninsula of Africa; the latter are much lower in stature, poor in understanding and in speech, without government or laws—without any distinction of property: such a race are as distinct from the Caffres, as a Mussulman from a Briton. This difference would be wholly inexplicable, upon the supposition that these nations had, from the remotest times, lived in the neighbourhood of each other; and it is more than probable that both came originally from a very great distance. Perhaps Mr. Barrow, the person who first suggested this idea, goes too far when he supposes the Caffres to have wandered hither directly from Arabia, and to be descendants of the Bedouin tribes. They appear to me of much more ancient descent. A people do not, in a few centuries, go so far back in civilization. We should still find traces of alphabetical signs—more decided remains of their former language and customs would be discernible.

It is true that the practice of circumcision, some slight knowledge of astronomy, their superstition, and the faint traces to be found in their words and names, of being derived from Arabic roots, may seem nearly to remove all doubt; but these monuments only prove that the Caffres are descended from a regularly formed people, as they are now themselves, and as the ancestors of the Hottentots may have been. It is very probable that some great emigration first peopled the whole of the eastern coast of Africa; for it is not probable that the Caffres alone came hither from Arabia and Egypt. Many generations might have passed before this emigration took place, and nothing is adverse to the

supposition that the people of the northern coasts of Africa, who were of Asiatic origin, may have been the immediate ancestors of the Caffres.\* This idea receives considerable weight, from their physiognomy having so much less relation with that of the Negroes than with the Hottentots.

Mr. Barrow remarks very rightly that the Caffres have, in many respects, a great resemblance to Europeans; and indeed they have more resemblance to them than either to Negroes or Hottentots: this resemblance is to be remarked particularly in the form of the bones of the face, and in the form of the skull. Their countenance has, however, something in it wholly appropriate to themselves, which, no less than their colour, and the woolly nature of their hair, distinguishes them at the first glance from Europeans. From both the latter characteristics the Translators of Mr. Barrow's travels † derive the principal foundation of their doubts concerning the accuracy of his opinion with respect to their origin, giving particular weight to the circumstance, that he calls the colour of some of the tribes black. This is, however, not the case with any: here is to be found one of the strongest distinctions between the Caffre and the Negro; the skin of a pure Caffre, when free from all foreign connexion, is rather a clear than a dark brown. The curly hair, indeed, suits but ill with a people of Asiatic origin; but it should not be forgotten, that if of Asiatic descent, we must go back to very remote antiquity for the time when they first wandered from those parts. In a lapse of many centuries, even perhaps of thousands of years, the transforming power of the African climate may have produced an effect upon the hair and the skin; but the firmer parts of the body, the bones, would remain the same under the new climate as under the old, provided the new inhabitants avoided all mixture of breed with the old ones.

Would it be altogether contrary to sense, to seek for the ancestors of the Caffres among the Æthiopian nations, whose caravans travelled northwards even to Meroë and Arabia Felix? Might they not, also, spread themselves to

---

\* Heeren, in his ideas relative to the political state and commerce of the most celebrated nations of antiquity, considers it as highly probable, that in extremely remote times there were considerable emigrations from Arabia, across the Red-sea, to the opposite coast of Africa. Circumcision prevailed among the Troglodytes, one of the most northern of the Æthiopian nations.

† First part of the Leipsick translation; second part of Ehrmann's translation.

the remotest parts of Southern Africa? \* The enquirers into antiquity must decide how far such a supposition is admissible. I recollect, however, among the great ruins of Butua, mentioned by Barros, that the people described there answered very much to what the Caffres are now, as well as to the Agasymbæ of Ptolemæus. The similarity of some few Caffre words with the Arabic affords another presumption that they have a common origin; or perhaps it were to express myself more properly to say, that it is probable in the former intercourse of commerce these words were adopted by both nations.

But not to weary my readers with a more diffuse examination into this subject, I will venture to submit the following conjectures, as the results probable to be established by a more extensive and accurate knowledge of the African nations.

First: That the southern parts of Africa were originally peopled from the northern.

Secondly: That the uninhabitable nature of large tracts of country in the interior prevented the equal progress of this population.

Thirdly: That they followed first the direction of the coast, the Caffres remaining in the eastern parts of it; but the Hottentots spreading towards the west, and even to the southern point.

Fourthly: The hilly country on the eastern coast afforded these pastoral tribes an easy and happy means of subsistence, this side of Africa being habitable much farther inland than the western parts: here we find a much stronger race of men than among those who spread themselves along the southern and western coasts.

Fifthly: On the flat, sandy plains along the western coast, south of the equator, the soil offers but poor resources for the support of life, which naturally leads the inhabitants of those parts rather to the hunter's than to the shepherd's life. The people then who wandered hither would consequently lose that degree of cultivation which was preserved among the inhabitants of the eastern coast, and from the instability of their lives, destitute of property, would spread themselves continually, till reaching the southern extremity, they could go no farther.

---

\* I must again cite Heeren, who reconciles the pastoral lives of these people with their journeys in caravans, in a very satisfactory manner.

Sixthly: It was in this way that the Hottentots reached the southern coast some centuries earlier than the Caffres. They were then in a situation to return somewhat to their pastoral life, and while the Gonaaquas, situated on the fertile banks of the Chamtoo river, became a peaceable and somewhat more civilised people, the Saabs,\* who remained on the dry and desert plains of the northern parts, sunk gradually to the very lowest step of physical and moral degradation.

Seventhly: At every step they made towards the east, the Hottentots found the country more fertile; they inhabited it therefore far beyond the present boundary between the colony and the Caffre country. For to this day many of the rivers and hills have Hottentot names.

Eighthly: But they were driven back by the Caffres, who in the mean time had come down from the north, and now met with them here. This rencounter had taken place long before these parts were visited by the Portuguese, since Vasco de Gama found Caffres at that time settled at *Terra do Natal*, and *Terra da bou paz*.

Ninthly: Nothing that we know respecting the inhabitants of the eastern coast of Africa contradicts their being directly descended from the Troglodytes and Macrobian. The people of the higher parts of this coast vary indeed very much in their colour and features from those of the more southern districts, but a relationship to the Caffres is very discernible in them, and at the same time they are perfectly distinguished from the Negroes of Western Africa.

Tenthly: A striking agreement is to be observed between the Caffres and the people of Mozambique, of Madagascar, of Zanguebar, and of Abyssinia, both in their figure, customs, and modes of life.

As to what more immediately concerns the extent of the Caffre country, according to the comprehensive sense above taken, all the heathen nations, even to Quiloa, perhaps to Mombaze, must be included within it. But our knowledge of the northern part of this tract is at present too imperfect to say decidedly whether it ought or ought not to be considered in this light, nor must we, in speaking of the Caffres, be regarded as meaning our observations to extend to the inhabitants of it. As much of this tract then as descends

---

\* *Saabs* is the name given by the Korana Hottentots to the Bosjesmans.

to the twenty-fifth degree of southern latitude must be passed over as the unknown part of the Caffre country, and we must wait for more accurate information before any thing farther can be said with regard to it: till that is obtained we must rest contented with the scanty particulars afforded by Father Thomans. The Caffres in the neighbourhood of da Lagoa bay are somewhat better known since the publication of Captain White's valuable observations upon the inhabitants of those parts, and in the sequel it will be seen that some interesting features of resemblance may be traced in support of our hypothesis. A third region of the Caffre country, in which it begins to be more known, is Beetjuan, in the interior of Southern Africa, between the sixteenth and twenty-fifth degrees of southern latitude: of this part more will be said in the sequel, since it was one which I myself visited. But the tribes of which we have the most perfect knowledge are those lying on the southernmost part of the eastern coast, between the twenty-ninth and thirty-third degree of southern latitude. It is of them that I propose to give a more accurate and ample description than has been given hitherto.\* This will occasion for awhile an interruption to the narrative of our journey, but will render the remainder, I hope, more intelligible.

The country in which Sparmann, Le Vaillant, and Mr. Barrow became acquainted with the Caffres, was one never inhabited by them. It is probable, as above hinted, that it was once inhabited by the Hottentots, and it is also probable, from many circumstances, that these Caffres themselves in earlier times inhabited a happier country; though, since they had been neighbours to the Hottentots, they had gone backwards in civilization. They are a step lower in cultivation than the Caffres of Beetjuan, in the interior of the country.

Before I proceed to the description of their customs and modes of life, I

---

\* These sheets were printed thus far, when I received from Holland the work lately published by my friend Alberti, upon the Caffres, entitled: *De Kaffers aan de Zuidkust van Africa, natuur-en geschiedkundig beschreven*. This description is much more ample than mine, and I propose therefore to incorporate some of the most important parts with the remainder of my own description. I must also mention that Vander Kemp's observations upon the Caffres, imparted nine years before to the Mission Institute at London, was by them printed in the *Evangelical Magazine* for February, 1802. A German translation of them was published in the July and September following, in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides*.

must acknowledge the obligations we are under to Mr. Barrow, for the manner in which he has introduced these people to our acquaintance. His remarks upon them are in the principal points perfectly accurate; they are put together with a particular spirit of observation, and seem to have been collected with particular industry. I consider myself as the rather bound to make this acknowledgment, since I have in so many other instances combated the views he took of things; I might therefore be suspected of having wished to decry his work, in order to exalt my own. I must, however, intreat those who are disposed to make such a remark to consider that praise is comprehended in a few words, but on the contrary, faults must necessarily be dwelt upon; they require proof before they can be demonstrated to be faults, and every opinion in which one writer differs from another must be supported by argument, in order to make it appear that his opinion is the right. He would, however, be highly deserving of censure who should suppress what appears to him the truth, from a desire of avoiding difference of opinion; who should abstain from noticing what appear to him faults and errors, because they are to be found in an author held in very general esteem; it is even the more necessary for that very reason to notice them, because the error spreads the more widely, in proportion to the reputation of the writer by whom it has been circulated. I do not claim any particular merit to myself that I saw many things much more fully and clearly than he did, since his information and researches had in a great degree smoothed the way for me. He who is desirous of obtaining an accurate knowledge of the Caffre tribes, of which I mean particularly to treat, will not find Mr. Barrow's observations superfluous by the side of mine, since I have diligently avoided a repetition of whatever he has fully and accurately described. Where my testimony is in contradiction to his, I only desire that credit may be given me for differing, upon the fullest conviction that I am in the right, and from a consciousness that I had more opportunity of knowing the real fact than he had.

The tribe of which I mean more particularly to speak call themselves Koossas, or Kaussas, but to their country they give the name of Ammakosina. These people are exceedingly offended at being called Caffres,\* and have

---

\* How much the name of Caffre is held in contempt over the whole colony may be understood from the circumstance that the executioner's servant in the Cape Town, who is taken from among the blacks condemned to work at the fortifications, is called the Caffre.

the more reason to object to it, since in their language *f* is a sound that occurs but seldom, *ff* and *r* never. As to the outward form of the Koossas, the same may be said of them as has been said of the nation in general; the men are handsome, strong made, and their limbs exquisitely proportioned. They are in general from five feet six to five feet nine inches high; some are even considerably taller, as for instance, their King Geika; but few indeed are less. Alberti once saw a man not more than five feet high, but he was an universal object of ridicule among them. The skull of the Caffre is highly arched and well formed, his eye is lively, his nose not flat, but sufficiently prominent, and his teeth of the most brilliant whiteness. They hold themselves exceedingly upright; their step is quick and dignified; their whole exterior denotes strength and spirit.

The women are not less handsome, but much smaller, seldom exceeding five feet in height. A very sleek soft skin, beautiful teeth, pleasing features, expressive of great cheerfulness and content, and a slender form, make them even in the eyes of an European exceedingly attractive. The dark colour of the skin, and the short black hair drawn together in little locks, somewhat detract from this agreeable impression, before the eye is accustomed to them.

Both men and women have the custom of colouring their bodies red with a sort of earth, or with iron rust. They mix this with water, and then rub themselves well till it is dried on, after which they smear it over with fat. This is not renewed every day, only once in three or four days. Very few of the Koossas are to be found tattooed, but among the more distant Caffre tribes this custom is not at all unfrequent.

Diseases are but little known among them; and their temperate modes of life, interrupted by few cares, or by violent corporal exertions, will sufficiently account for this. The most dangerous complaint to which they are subject is a violent fever, attended with eruption. For this they make use of both external and internal remedies, the utility of which they have learned from experience, but the effect of them is considered as magic, or rather the recovery of the patient is considered as his being disenchanted: their *materia medica* is rich in those nonsensical kind of remedies which we should call sympathetic. At times these fevers are epidemic, when they have recourse to local bleeding: rheumatic pains in the limbs are among the symptoms of this disease, and they are generally relieved by the loss of blood. The

diseased limb is pierced in several places with a sharp pointed iron, when the end of a cow's horn is applied to the wounded part, in the manner of a cupping-glass, by which the blood is drawn out. This manner of bleeding was observed by Kolbe among the Hottentots, and is described by him in his work. Intermittent fevers are unknown to the Caffres: their soil is dry, they have no lakes or morasses, and their huts are commonly built about three or four hundred paces from the river, at which their cattle are to drink.

The small-pox has at various times raged exceedingly in the country, and from the effects it is plain that it has done so in no very remote times: numbers of men not more than thirty years of age are now to be seen exceedingly marked with it. It was particularly prevalent in the years 1753 and 1754: some believe that the infection was brought by some beads which they had purchased of a distant tribe, others are of opinion that it was taken from the crew of a vessel stranded upon their coast. I could not find, upon the most accurate enquiries, the least traces of any prevailing chronic diseases among them, and the answers they made, when I questioned them upon the subject of infectious ones, lead me to suppose that they are not liable to any except the small-pox. Another disease is here wholly unknown. A man who had resided for some time in the colony, in the district of Graaff Reynett, returning with it, was banished as soon as the dangerous nature of his complaint was discovered, nor was he suffered to re-enter the country till he was entirely cured.

A very extraordinary circumstance which I had to remark among these people is, that I never knew one of them sneeze, yawn, cough, or hawk. I do not rest this entirely upon my own observation; the very same thing was remarked by our whole party. They never have colds or catarrhs, and it may be presumed, according to appearances, that they are equally free from the spleen and ennui.

It is very remarkable how nicely attentive they are in many respects to the little decorums of life: no one ever rubs or scratches himself in the presence of another, though they are in general very much troubled with vermin: indecorums of a grosser kind are still less admissible. They are particular in training their children to a nice observance of these things; and a little boy, who once in Vander Kemp's presence transgressed in some way, was immediately sent out of the door.

Among the Koossas there is no appearance of any religious worship whatever. They believe in the existence of a great Being who created the world, but in their own language, as Vander Kemp assured me, they have **no** name by which he is called: they have therefore adopted one from the Gonaaquas, who call him Thiko. The Caffres, however, pronounce the word Theuke, which word Vander Kemp says signifies *exciter of smart*. I have heard some Caffres pronounce the word Thauqua.

Their superstition, their belief in magic or enchantment, and in omens and prognostics, is in proportion to their want of religious feelings: they even draw omens from their own hands. There are among them persons who occupy themselves solely with divinations and magic, and who hold in a certain degree the rank of priests.\* The missionaries who have hitherto come into the country have been universally considered as magicians or diviners, and it was this which drove Vander Kemp finally out of the country. Once when a great drought prevailed, the queen-mother sent to him to say, that if he did not bring them rain in three days, he should be considered as an enemy and betrayer, and treated accordingly; for they have great faith in the power of magicians over the weather. He had besides talked much to them about imploring God, and his inclining his ear to them, so that they could not be persuaded but that he could procure rain if he would. It happened, however, fortunately for him, that rain fell within the three days, so that for that time he was safe; but they were the more urgent with him afterwards, as it seemed clear that the thing was entirely in his power; and since, upon future occasions, several times in succession, his prayers had not the desired effect, he was obliged at last to secure his personal safety by flight. The king, whose ideas were somewhat more rational, protected him awhile, but at length advised his departure. In many other instances Geika also shewed more understanding than his subjects, but his confidence in the prayers of the christians was not less than their's, and Buys assured us that

---

\* One of my learned friends reminded me, on reading this part, of the gypsies, between whom and the Caffres there are certainly many points of resemblance. It would, however, be very difficult to account in any probable way for this fact, without giving what might, perhaps, be thought too much weight to the presumption, that the origin of both is to be sought among the people of Northern Africa.

he was often obliged to pray for him, particularly once in a dangerous illness; and as he recovered from it, he was only obliged on that account to be more assiduous in his prayers. The Koossas, when they want to affirm any thing very solemnly, or to utter any malediction, make use of the name of their king, or of some of his ancestors, as *Non Geika! Non Chachábe! Non Kham-buhsje!*

There are places which nobody passes over without throwing a stone, a twig, or a bunch of grass upon them, though I could not find that they had any reason to give for it: probably they are the graves of some persons of particular merit, whose bodies, from pious superstition, they would guard against being scratched up by wild beasts: they always intreat all passers-by to encrease the mounds upon the graves, by throwing a stone or bush upon them.

At the mouth of the river Keissi, or Keiskamma, as it is called by the Hottentots, lies the anchor of a stranded ship. Chachábe, the grandfather of the present king, had a piece of it broken off, and it so happened that the person by whom this was done died soon after. The anchor was immediately considered as an enchanter, who had power over the sea, and was angry at the offence which had been given him; a name was in consequence conferred upon him, and he is saluted by it whenever any one passes the spot.

If an elephant is killed after a very long and wearisome chase, as is commonly the case, they seek to exculpate themselves towards the dead animal, by declaring to him solemnly, that the thing happened entirely by accident, not by design. To atone for the offence more completely, or to make his power of no avail, the trunk is cut off and solemnly interred, they pronouncing repeatedly: "The elephant is a great lord, and the trunk is his hand."\*

Their songs are chiefly learned from the tribe of Mathimba,† who say that they received them from a number of birds, with the heads of men, who came into their country, and used to sing them by night. The sense of the songs is not to be unravelled, and the greater part does not consist of words, but of single syllables, which are not comprehensible to themselves.

It is a current belief among them, that far to the north of their country, there is a vast subterraneous cavern, from which their horned cattle originally

---

\* This circumstance is taken from Alberti's work. † The Tambuckis of Mr. Barrow.

came, and that cows and oxen might still be procured from it in great abundance, if the entrance of the cavern could again be found, and a proper bait silently laid there. The cattle would then come forth, when they might be taken, and they would bring a blessing upon the possessor.

Sometimes, as Buys informed me, they will burn a whole ox alive. The smoke which ascends from it is an object of their very particular, even almost devotional observation, but no one has yet been so fortunate as to learn what is understood by it.

Their diseases are all ascribed to three causes, either to being enchanted by an enemy, to the anger of certain beings, whose abode appears to be in the rivers, or to the power of evil spirits. The cures consist in the first place of medicines, which have probably a good effect, but recourse is also had to some means of appeasing the wrath of the being in the river, by throwing him in a four-footed beast—a dog, a hare, or something of the kind. If the question be of an evil spirit, and of these they have a great variety, called by the general appellation of Thokilohse and Umsjuluhgu, he must be driven away. This task must be performed by a magician, and the people, who are easily deceived, are taught to see the evil spirit under the form of some animal, a serpent perhaps, or a wasp, or a spider, and all that remains is to catch him, and put him to death.

The following particulars are related by Alberti: The Koossas have no priests or religious ceremonies; thence, according to his opinion, their want of traditions. They know of nothing but enchanters, and these are of two sorts, well-disposed and evil-disposed. It is only by the assistance of the former that the evil influence of the latter can be combated. For the most part it is old women who occupy themselves with magic, in the good sense, and gain their livelihood by it. If a disease be considered as owing to enchantment, one of these enchantresses is sent for. She forms a number of little pellets of cow-dung, which she lays upon the belly, this being considered as the seat of all inward complaints, making many mysterious gestures and grimaces, and pronouncing certain mysterious words, bringing forth at last a snake, a tortoise, a lizard, by which she affirms the patient to be enchanted, and that this is the cause of his illness. If the sick man dies, the excuse is that the appointed term of his life was expired, and he would have died without the effect of the enchantment; or else the wizard honestly confesses that the power of the evil spirit was greater than her own. Before the

beginning of the cure she stipulates for her reward, which is commonly a cow or an ox, but this must be returned if the remedies prove unsuccessful.

Not content, however, with the restoration of the patient, it is necessary that he by whom he was enchanted shall be exposed. For this purpose the whole horde must be collected together: the enchantress then shuts herself up alone in a hut, where she says she must sleep, in order to see the malefactor in a dream. The people without, in the mean time, dance and sing for awhile, till at length the men go into the hut, and beg the enchantress to come forward. At first she hesitates, then they carry her a number of hassagais as a present, when she comes forth with the weapons in her hand; her eyelid, her arm, and thigh, on the left side whitened, but on the right died black: she is half naked, being only covered about the middle, but is soon clothed with mantles from all sides. She is then required to name the enchanter: she still hesitates, but soon throws the mantles aside, and rushes amidst the people with her hassagais, striking with one of them the person whom she means to point out as the aggressor. He is then seized, but before any punishment is inflicted, the enchantress must declare where he has concealed the instrument by which the enchantment was performed. She names a place; it is searched, and a skull, or some other part of the human body, is found, when the accused is fully convicted of the crime. The punishment to which, according to her counsel, he is commonly sentenced, is either to be buried under an ant heap, there to be stung by these animals, or else to be laid on the ground and covered with hot stones. Should he survive these tortures, instances of which have happened, he is banished the horde, his hut reduced to ashes, and all his property confiscated to the chief, the enchantress being still the person who dictates all these things. It therefore not uncommonly happens, that a man who possesses a more than usual number of cattle, is accused by the old lady and brought to punishment. Sometimes the weight of offence falls upon her own head, and she is seized by the people, when her fate is sealed by repeated blows from the kirri. Sometimes the accused person exculpates himself by affirming that the true enchanter has laid the fault upon him to keep himself concealed: if the enchantress admits the legality of this excuse, he is then declared innocent.

In long continued droughts they have recourse to magic to procure rain. A Hottentot commonly, very seldom one of their own people, is made use of for this purpose. A certain number of cattle are brought to him, of which he

chooses one, when it is slain, and he dips a rod in the blood, with which he sprinkles the ground all about: he afterwards walks round in a circle for some time with a thoughtful air, and then goes into a hut by himself. They wait patiently for a month, but if no rain falls by the end of that time, and the poor exorciser has not removed himself out of the way, he is seized without any farther accusation, and put to death.

They have many opinions with regard to uncleanness strongly resembling those of the Jews. A husband who has lost his wife is considered unclean for a fortnight, a widow is so for a month, and a mother who has lost a child for two days: all persons attending at the death of another are so, as well as all men returning from a battle; and during the time it continues, no one must have any intercourse with them; they must then be purified by their bodies being washed and new dyed, and their mouths being rinsed with milk. This must not be done till the full time is expired, and during the interval they must forego all washing and dyeing their bodies, or the use of milk. An enchanter is considered as unclean, but may be purified by renouncing his art, and undergoing a solemn washing in the river.

If any one kills a man he is considered as unclean. He must then roast his meat upon a fire made of a particular sort of wood, which gives it a bitter taste, and having eaten it, must rub his face over with the cooled embers till it is quite black. After a certain time he may wash himself, rinse his mouth with milk, and dye himself brown anew. From that time he is clean.

Does a lion come into the neighbourhood of a kraal, the people go out in a considerable number, armed with hassagais, kirris, and shields. The lion is surrounded, and enclosed in a narrow circle. They then tease him with their lances till he springs out from the bush, and attacks one of the hunters; the latter falls upon the ground, covering himself with his shield, when the rest attack the animal with their spears, and dispatch him: sometimes, however, some of them are wounded, or even lose their lives in the conflict. The first who receives a wound is considered as a hero, though he is made unclean by it for a time. When the hunting-party return to the kraal, the hero is raised by his companions upon their shields, and held up to the view of the people. One of them steps forward with strange gestures, and makes a speech in praise of the warrior; the rest continue somewhat behind, singing a sort of hymn, and striking with their kirris upon their shields. Some others, in the mean time,

hastily build up a small mean hut at a little distance from the general dwelling-place, and here the hero is shut up apart from all the rest for four complete days; he is then purified, and brought in solemn form by a life-guard of the Chief, back to the kraal. In conclusion, a calf is slain, which all his companions partake with him, as a proof that he is again clean.

When the Koossas wish to do honour to anybody, they give him a new name, the meaning of which nobody knows but the person who gives it. This is particularly done by any white people, who come among them, and remain with them for any time. Vander Kemp had in this way three names given him, *Jinkhanna*, *Gobuhso*, and *Tabeka-Kelehre*. It is incomprehensible how soon a stranger is known throughout the country by his new appellation.

If a storm falls upon a kraal, it must be immediately forsaken by its inhabitants, or at least the hut or huts that have been struck must be pulled down, and the place purified by the slaughter of a certain number of oxen. Till this is done nobody can come into the kraal, or have any intercourse with its inhabitants. Should this misfortune happen to the king's kraal, or to one which had been his habitation, a hundred oxen must be slain, and all left there. Any one who pleases may come and carry away the flesh; the rest becomes the portion of the hyænas.

As soon as they perceive a sick man near his end, he is carried from his hut to some solitary spot under the shade of a tree: a fire is then made, and a vessel with water set near him. Only the husband or wife, and the nearest relations, remain with him. If he appear dying, the water is thrown over his head in hopes of its reviving him; but should this fail, and it is evident that he must die, he is left by every body, except the husband, if it be a woman, or the wife if it be a man: the relations stand at a distance, and the person staying calls to them from time to time to let them know how the sick person goes on, and at length to announce his death. When that is over, the relations purify themselves, and then return to their habitations.\* The wife,

---

\* According to Vander Kemp's information, a dying person is sometimes forsaken by every body, and if it should happen that he comes to himself, he is set out again for the second time. The motive of so horrible a proceeding seems to be a superstition, that an illness, or a misfortune of any kind, may fall four-fold upon others if the sufferer be not driven away. From the same motive, if they see a person drowning, or in danger of his life in any way, particularly

however, who must pay the last duties to her husband, cannot do this. She leaves the body, about which no one is any longer solicitous, to become a prey to some hyæna, and goes with a firebrand taken from the fire that had been kindled near the dying man, to some other solitary place, where she again makes a fire, and though it should rain ever so hard, she must not suffer it to be extinguished. In the night, she comes secretly to the hut where she had lived with her husband, and burns it, then returns back to her solitude, where she must remain a month, entirely secluded from the world, and living the whole time upon roots and berries. When this time is expired, she throws away her clothes, washes her whole body, scratches her breast, arms, and thighs, with sharp stones, girds her body round with rushes twisted together, and at sun-set returns to the kraal. At her desire a firebrand is brought her by a youth to the place where her hut stood, and there she makes a fire. At the same time she is served with fresh milk to rince her mouth, and from that moment she becomes clean. The cow from which the milk was drawn, on the contrary, is rendered impure, and though not killed, is no more milked, but neglected entirely, and left to die a natural death. The next day an ox is killed by the relations; they eat its flesh with her, and give her the skin to make a new mantle. By the help of her sisters and sisters-in-law she then builds herself a new hut, and re-enters into social life.

A widower has nearly the same mourning ceremonies to observe, only with the difference that his seclusion lasts but half a month. He then throws his garments away, and prepares himself a new cloak from the skin of an ox. He takes besides the hair from the tail of the ox, with which he makes a necklace, and wears it as long as it will last. The ox becomes impure, but is not killed. If a grown person dies suddenly in his hut, the whole kraal becomes impure, and must be abandoned by its inhabitants. The corpse remains undisturbed in the hut. If a child dies in the same manner, the hut alone becomes impure, and must be closed up and forsaken.

---

if he should utter a scream of terror, they always run away from him, nay, will even turn and throw stones at him. Even women in child-birth dare not cry out, lest every body should forsake them, and they should be left helpless and alone. It is probably these customs which have given rise to what has been related by former travellers, that the Caffres throw their superannuated old men alive to the hyænas.

It is only the Chiefs and their wives who are buried. They are left to die in their huts; the corpse is then wrapped in the mantle, and the grave is made in the fold for the cattle. After the earth is thrown in, some of the oxen are driven into the fold, and remain there till the earth is entirely trodden down so as not to be distinguishable from the rest. The oxen are then driven out, but they must not be killed. The widows of the deceased burn all the household utensils which they and their husband had used together, and after remaining three days in solitude, purify themselves according to the usual manner; they then each kill an ox, and each makes herself a new mantle of the skin: the place is after this forsaken by all its inhabitants, and never built upon any more, not even by another horde. Sometimes in the spots where Chiefs have been buried bones are seen, but it is regarded as a very ill omen when their bones are disturbed from any cause whatever. A Chief whose wife dies has the same ceremonies to observe as another man, excepting that with him the time of mourning is only three days. The place in which the wife of a Chief is buried is forsaken in the same manner as in the case of the Chief himself.

The physical treatment of children among the Koossas is the most simple possible. If the mother has not sufficient milk to nourish her child it is fed with cow's milk, but no woman ever suckles the child of another: this their superstitions will not permit: healthy mothers commonly suckle their children till they are two years old. Diseases among infants are rare; some few die in cutting their teeth, from cramps and bowel complaints; for these they give them the slimy sap pressed from the leaves of a particular species of *mesembryanthemum*. It is very rare indeed to hear a child cry; all my companions agreed with me in this point; we never knew an infant scream, or an older child weep. Till the children are about seven or eight years old, they remain entirely under the mother's care, who keeps them obedient by restraint, without the father's concerning himself with them. As soon as the boys are old enough to be employed in any kind of service, perhaps to look after the calves, they are taken entirely under the father's tuition; the girls remain with the mother, and are trained up to little household occupations, fetching wood and water, or the like. All children above ten or eleven years old are publicly instructed under the inspection of the Chief; the boys in the use of arms, and other things

wherein strength of body is required; the girls in works by the hand, and household services.

The boys are early taken to join the occupation of their fathers in tending the cattle, and, as pay, have some of the young ones awarded to them. When grown up, the little herd is increased by a present from the father, and then the youth begins to think of employing a part of it in the purchase of a wife. He enters into a commercial negotiation with the father of the maiden whom he has chosen, and the price is in proportion to the situation of the respective parties, or the wealth of the bridegroom. Some other circumstances, however, enter into the contract; for example, if a girl be particularly handsome, it will procure her admission sometimes into a more wealthy family than her own, and her father will get a higher price for her.

Most of the Koossas have but one wife; the kings and chiefs of the kraals only have four or five. The nuptials are celebrated with the slaughter of oxen, and with banquetings, which last until the flesh of the animals is entirely eaten: the father has then no more concern with the bride; she belongs entirely to her husband.

Orphan children are educated by the brothers of their father, and the marriage price to be given for the maiden then becomes the uncle's. If, however, she has brothers come to manhood, the eldest of them has the advantage of the purchase, but he must give something out of it to the younger ones.

Alberti gives us the following information relative to the marriage ceremonies among these people. To the feeling of a chaste tender passion, founded on reciprocal esteem, and an union of heart and sentiment, they seem entire strangers. The necessity of mutual assistance in household concerns, and the propensities of nature, are the motives which unite the youth and maiden to each other. That this union, according to the ordinances of these people, or at least according to their uninterrupted custom, is for their whole lives, and perfectly indissoluble, is a proof that they have attained, or retained, a not contemptible station in the scale of moral and social civilization.

The young man commonly endeavours, in the first place, to gain the goodwill and consent of the maiden; yet that is not always the case. Sometimes, nor is this very unfrequent, he waves the consideration of her consent, and occupies himself in the first instance with seeking to obtain her from her father on the best possible terms. The price is generally a certain number of cows; a portion of these is brought by the suitor, and if the parents are not satisfied,

he brings another and another cow till they are so. The number seldom exceeds ten, except in the case of the bridegroom being extraordinarily rich, or the bride being extraordinarily handsome. The bartering for the price often continues several days, both parties examining carefully into the advantages they may derive from the transaction, before the bargain is brought to a close. As soon as it is arranged, the bride, with her parents, relations, and companions, goes to the habitation of the bridegroom, where the chief of the kraal and almost all the inhabitants are assembled. A number of oxen are then slain, with the flesh of which the whole assembly are feasted for four days. On the fourth, the bride, after having been ornamented by her companions, in particular having been new dyed, is led by two of them before the Chief, who, with his train, has taken his place in the general cattle-fold belonging to the kraal. He now declares his formal consent to the marriage, the bride giving at the same time her solemn assurance that she will be a faithful and industrious wife, and that her husband shall never have any cause of complaint against her. When she retires, the bridegroom in like manner appears before the chief, and gives equal assurances, that he will be hospitable and careful in the entertainment of his guests, and will duly pay the tributes he owes to the king, and to his representative, the Chief of the kraal. The bridegroom then returns to the company, and his relations hand a basket of milk to the bride, reminding her that it is from the cows which belonged to the bridegroom or some of his family. Of this milk she must not drink as long as the bridegroom is only her suitor, but now she is to drink it, and from this moment the union is indissolubly concluded. All the people present shout unanimously, and begin dancing, crying, "*She drinks the milk! She hath drank the milk!*"\*

---

\* It is curious to observe, how much among these pastoral people, milk, which is one of their principal articles of food, has, when taken under particular circumstances, a highly symbolical signification affixed to it. The drinking of milk is the last act by which a maiden is consecrated as a wife: no person while in a state of impurity must drink of it, and the being permitted to drink it again is the conclusion of the purification. The cow, of whose milk the widow drinks after her days of mourning are completed, becomes impure, while she is purified. What a coincidence with the ideas of many celebrated nations, both of antiquity and of the middle ages! Yet this coincidence is less to be regarded as conclusive of the customs being transmitted from ancient times, than as proving how closely the idea of moral impurity is connected among people arrived at a certain degree of moral and political civilization, with the sacred signification and purifying medium of a principal article of food, taken under particular circumstances, as milk, blood, bread, &c.

If a youth have made an agreement with the parents of a maiden for an union with her, the bargain once closed the latter cannot refuse to surrender herself; if she makes any attempts at resisting the union, corporal punishment is even resorted to, in order to compel her submission: if still she wishes to show her dislike to the marriage, she drives the cattle, which the bridegroom brought as a present to her parents, out of the fold.

Sometimes it happens that parents are desirous of offering their daughter as wife to a man of particular distinction, and then the following ceremonies are observed. The maiden goes by night, attended by a number of her young companions, to the habitation of the bridegroom, who is already apprised of her intentions. When there, the party by coughing, hemming, or some other kinds of noises, contrive to make their arrival known: somebody then comes from the hut, and asks, *Who is there?* One of the women mentions the name of the bride, and some distant place whence she comes. Although it be not always true that she does come from a distance, yet immemorial custom prescribes that she should be represented as an entire stranger. The travellers are then introduced into an empty hut, and presented with wood and fire; food they bring with them, that they may not be considered as needy. The next day the bridegroom assembles the bride's relations to enquire of them into the state of her health. The young man is then asked by her parents whether he is disposed to take the young woman as his wife. He commonly replies that he wishes first to be better acquainted with her, in which case she is left alone with him the following night: If, after that, he declares himself in her favour, the negociation for the price commences, and she returns home till it is concluded; then the ceremonies above described are all observed. If a widow is about to marry again, the parents are again to receive a certain number of cows from the bridegroom, but not so many as in the instance of the first marriage.

Till the birth of the first child the parents must not make use of the milk from the cows they have received as the price of the wife. After her delivery they present the son-in-law with a cow. The husband must also make the sisters of his wife some little present; they take it exceedingly ill if he does not. If a wife dies without children, the cows that her parents received for her must be returned.

Marriages between an uncle and niece, and between the children of brothers and sisters, are not permitted. The father-in-law must not see his daughter-in-law but in the presence of other persons: if by chance he should find her alone, she must not stay with him: neither must she ever appear before him with her head uncovered. The same rules must be observed between a mother-in-law and her son-in-law.

Where there is more than one wife, the domestic peace is seldom disturbed by it, since for the most part each wife has her separate habitation. There are many instances, however, where a man has not more than two wives, that they live all together, and in the utmost harmony. The children are brought up in common; the wives share equally the household work, and in case of sickness attend upon each other like sisters. If any misunderstanding should happen, the youngest must leave the house, and build a separate hut for herself. The husband does not concern himself with the quarrel, but lives in peace with both, sometimes taking his meals and lodging with one, sometimes with the other, according to his pleasure. The Caffre women are very prolific, having upon an average from eight to ten children.

Separations between a man and wife rarely occur: a woman who runs away from her husband is by command of the Chief of the horde brought back to her duty by force. A violation of the marriage vow is only a crime with the wife; a husband may live without disgrace upon the most intimate footing either with an unmarried woman or a widow. If a man detects his wife in the act of violating her vow, he has a right to put the seducer to death upon the spot; this however he seldom does, finding it more advantageous to complain to the Chief, and share with him the fine to which the culprit is sentenced. If a man detects the infidelity of his wife by her unexpected pregnancy, the seducer must be named to the Chief; she is even constrained to it by blows: the offender is then fined a number of cattle, which are shared between the Chief and the husband. This done, the wife has no farther reproach to fear, the child then belongs to her husband, and is brought up by him. A young woman who violates her chastity has not much more shame to apprehend. If she cannot be married to her seducer, he pays a fine of cattle to her parents, and it is no obstacle to her future marriage. A traveller remaining some time with a horde, easily finds an unmarried young

woman, with whom he contracts the closest intimacy; nay, it is not uncommon, as a mark of hospitality, to offer him one as a companion.

Notwithstanding this, the Koossa women have a great deal of decency and modesty in their behaviour. Their clothing covers their whole body; only their face, arms, and feet are uncovered. They avoid carefully every unnecessary exposure of their persons in suckling their children, or in wading through a river, and never appear before strangers with their heads uncovered. No woman thinks of mixing in public business; the women are entirely excluded from the deliberations which the Chief sometimes holds with the principal people of the horde. In extraordinary instances only are exceptions made, as where a woman has from her age obtained a particular degree of experience, and from her situation commands respect; this is the case with the present king's mother. But the woman's influence in household affairs is proportionably great; they are directed almost entirely by her. Even in the manner of disposing of the common property, the wife has the principal direction, and the husband submits to her opinion so unconditionally, that even after closing a bargain in the way of trade, he not unfrequently recedes, because his wife refuses her consent to it. A man never mingles in his wife's quarrels as long as they are confined to words, but if blows ensue, he then steps forward immediately as her protector and defender.

The Koossas have a very laudable respect for their parents, and their relations, who are advanced in years. A father, when unable, on account of his age, to attend any longer to his affairs himself, gives up his whole property indiscriminately to his sons, and is sure of receiving the utmost care and kindness from them for the remainder of his life. Any one who should fail in respect for his father, or shew any neglect of him, would draw on himself the contempt of the whole horde; there have been even instances in which want of filial duty has been punished with infamy and banishment. During his whole life a father must be consulted in all his son's undertakings, and after his death the uncle or elder brother, as his representative, must be the counsellor. All persons advanced in years have particular respect shewn them, their advice is always listened to, and if they become sick and helpless, every one is eager to afford them assistance. Poor relations are not less kindly treated, and if any one is sick, and has not cattle sufficient to pay for

being disenchanted, his nearest relations do not hesitate a moment to furnish whatever is necessary for his restoration.

The business of the wife consists not only in the whole care of the domestic management, and the education of the children, but many works are done by women which in other countries are chiefly performed by men. Not only all the household utensils, pottery, baskets, and cloaths are made by them, but they also build the houses, cultivate the land, gather in the fruits, and collect the fire-wood. The men in time of peace employ themselves only in the chase, and in tending the cattle.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Description of the Koossa Caffres continued.—Their Habitations and Cattle-folds.—Their Manner of keeping their Cattle.—Their Food.—The Chase.—Agriculture.—Cloathing and Ornaments.—Their Arms.—Manner of fighting.—Works of Art.*

THE huts of the Koossas are in the form of a hemisphere, from eight to nine feet in diameter, and are seldom sufficiently lofty for a man to stand upright in them. The entrance is about four feet high, and is closed by a door of lattice-work. The skeleton of the hut is composed of slender poles stuck into the ground in a circle, at the distance of about a foot from each other, and united together in the centre. The spaces between the poles are filled up with twigs, or rather faggots, and then the whole is covered over to a certain height with a mixture of clay and cow-dung, the remainder being thatched with rushes. The hordes inhabiting the interior of the country, who live more quietly, and do not change their habitations so often, build their huts stronger, and for the most part double, that is to say, two together, which are united by a low *anti-chamber*, if that name may be given to it. The floor of the hut is a kind of plaster made of the white-ant heaps, beat very smooth and hard: it is kept exceedingly clean, and is often renewed. They sleep upon rush mats, six feet long, and from three to four broad, covering themselves with the mantle which they wear in the day. To express a married man, they often say that he lies under two mantles. The Caffres always sleep with their bodies stretched out at full length; the Hottentots, on the contrary, draw themselves up almost round.

Near the huts are places hedged round, in which the cattle are enclosed at night to guard them from the wild beasts. To some kraals there is a common fold for all the cattle, which, in the day when the animals are out grazing, serves the inhabitants for holding their public assemblies. As the Koossas live almost entirely upon the produce of their cattle, the attending upon them is the principal business of every householder, and from the extreme care taken of them, the cows of this tribe give more milk upon an average than

those of any other part of the country, supposing always that the year be tolerably favourable, and affords a sufficient quantity of grass to feed them properly. The cattle are so well trained, that they are perfectly obedient, and stop or go on at the call of their masters, or at the sound of a little pipe, which he sometimes blows. The Koossas love their cattle exceedingly, and know every single animal perfectly, its disposition, qualities, &c.; it is not without reluctance that they part from them, either to kill them or give them away.

They are only killed for the purpose of some festivity, or upon other solemn occasions, or against going to war. The manner of killing them is horrible. The animal is thrown upon the earth, and bound. A long cut is then made in the skin of the throat with the *bassagai*, the hand is thrust into the wound, and the aorta is torn away, so that the animal bleeds to death. This is performed within the cattle-fold, and the dung from the entrails of the animal is carefully strewn about, in the superstitious hope that the loss of the animal will then be much sooner repaired. When the supply of grass fails, either from drought or from long continuance in the place, the whole kraal is broken up, and the inhabitants remove to another spot, perhaps less pleasant, but this they do not concern themselves about, provided it affords good feed for the cattle. The oxen are trained both for drawing and for being rode, and even while calves they know how to distinguish which will be best for either purpose. The riding oxen are guided by a pin of wood run through the nose to which a bridle is fastened, and they are for the most part excellently trained. The chiefs of the kraals have several riding oxen, but they are kept only for pomp, and as a proof of their wealth. They are sometimes used to afford a favourite recreation. At a certain cry made to them, they are taught to run loose at the people, and the delight is, as they seem ready to run against and trample upon any one, for the person, by a dexterous stroke, to turn them aside.

These people are likewise very assiduous in ornamenting their cattle, as they consider it. This is done in two ways; either by giving the horns strange and fantastic directions, or by cutting, soon after their birth, pieces of skin from the neck to the knee, and letting them hang down. In order to change the manner of the horns growing, they are, from the moment when they begin to appear, pushed into the direction intended to be given them. By these

means they sometimes drive them back like the horns of the antelope, or turn them in a variety of strange and absurd ways. Mr. Barrow is ill-informed, when he says that they bend the horns by softening them with hot irons: he seems to have conceived this idea from the method used by turners to prepare the horn for being worked. The attachment of the Koossas to their cattle leads them to admire particular ones for particular qualities, about which we should never concern ourselves. They know the voice of each separate animal perfectly well, and are sometimes in such raptures at the tones of a cow which they consider as having an unusually fine voice, that they will try all means of getting her into their possession. They eat their milk sometimes fresh, sometimes sour, and are very fond of whey and cheese. They make butter by shaking the milk about in leather pouches, in the manner that Kolbe describes its being made by the Hottentots; but they only use it for smearing themselves; they never eat it.

Before a party goes out hunting, a very odd ceremony or sport takes place, which they consider as absolutely necessary to ensure success to the undertaking. One of them takes a handful of grass into his mouth, and crawls about upon all-fours to represent some sort of game. The rest advance as if they would run him through with their spears, raising the hunting cry, till at length he falls upon the ground as if dead. If this man afterwards kills a head of game, he hangs a claw upon his arm as a trophy, but the animal must be shared with the rest. They generally, after a hunt is over, burn up the field where it has taken place, that they may find the blades of the *hassagais* again. They take game also very much in slings. In bushy countries they make a low hedge, sometimes of a mile long. At intervals openings are formed in it, through which the animals seek their way, and here the slings are concealed with so much ingenuity, that they entangle their legs in them in such a manner as to render their escape impossible.

The larger game, such as buffalos, elands, and others, are taken in deep pits, at the bottom of which are pointed stakes; they are made in the route that the animals usually take to go to the water. Like pits, but with stronger stakes, are made near the banks of the rivers between the bushes, where the hippopotamos comes by night. The animals are watched, and a loud cry is made, by which they are frightened, when attempting to hasten

back to the river, they fall with all their weight upon the sharp stakes, and never can rise again. Panthers are taken by hanging a piece of raw flesh at a certain height upon a bush, in the midst of which a hassagai is ingeniously fastened, the sharp point being upwards: when the panther springs at the meat, he falls upon the iron, and is stuck by it in the breast.

The elephant hunt occasions them much more trouble, and seldom answers. They only take single elephants which have strayed from the herd. When they find one in a favourable situation, they set on fire the grass and low bushes round, knowing that he will not quit such a circle at least by day. They then get as near him as possible, and throw at him an innumerable quantity of hassagais, which, however, on account of the thickness and hardness of his skin, do him very little injury. In the night he commonly escapes, or perhaps does not run away till the fire is burnt out, but by moving he generally drives the hassagais deeper into his body. The hunters follow him now with more circumspection, and endeavour to drive him into chasms among the rocks, where they can, with greater security, throw more hassagais at him. If the country is still flat, they continue to encircle him with fire, till at length he is wearied, or falls sick from the number of little wounds he has received, and thus sometimes they continue to torment him for days or even weeks, till he is fairly persecuted to death. Their perseverance in this pursuit is the more extraordinary, since they do not eat the flesh of the elephant, but only take away his tusks; even these they must not keep, but must give them to the king. All this toil is incurred without any view of profit, merely from their general activity and the pleasure they have in the pursuit. Their love of action is indeed such, that they will occasionally take long journeys, in which they have all sorts of hardships and difficulties to encounter, merely to visit some distant acquaintance, and not to be idle at home.

Besides their cattle, they have no other tame animals on which they set any value, except their dogs. The latter, notwithstanding that they seem to have a love for them, are very ill-fed, and are as miserably lean and mangy as Mr. Barrow describes. They are rather kept as guards against wild-beasts at night, than that they know how to use them in the chase. Although they like the flesh of sheep very much, yet these animals are not to be seen among the Koossas. This is principally owing to the nature of their country. In the first place it does not afford the aromatic plants on which the sheep feed

so much in the colony, and in the next place it is so woody, that there would be great difficulty in keeping the flocks together. Here we saw no poultry, but among the more northern Caffre tribes, there are hens of a small size, and without combs, though in other respects much resembling ours. . Vasco de Gama found hens among the Caffres on the coast of *Terra do Natal*.

Besides the millet, already mentioned (*Holcus Sorghum*), Alberti says that the Koossas cultivate in some parts buck-wheat: they also cultivate water-melons. No one possesses landed property: he sows his corn wherever he finds a convenient spot, without any other preparation of the land than digging it with a little spade made of very hard wood: the weeds soon shoot up again, but they help to preserve the ground from getting too dry. When the young corn begins to appear, it is weeded very carefully, and kept perfectly clean; when ripe, it is cut with the hassagai, then threshed with a stick, and thrown up to the wind to separate it from the chaff. The millet is stored up in pits in the cattle-fold: these pits are dried by fire, and after the corn is deposited in them, they are covered over with straw, stones, and dried ox dung. When one of these storehouses is opened, the owner must give his neighbours and friends a little basket of the corn, and a larger portion to the chief of the kraal. The wild plant which they use for smoaking instead of tobacco is kept dried in bunches hanging upon the walls of the hut. Neither the sort of millet or of water-melon which they cultivate will grow in the colony. The latter differs from what is cultivated by the colonists, in having a somewhat bitter taste: it is both eaten fresh, and cut into slices and dried.

As the Koossas are so exceedingly sparing of killing their cattle, it is very desirable that they should pay more attention to procuring themselves a supply of vegetable food. Their millet is an excellent resource; they eat it cooked with milk, and make a sort of bread of it, which they bake upon the hot embers. They also make from it a fermented liquor, which tastes almost like beer, but of a much more intoxicating quality, and much sooner spoiled: they call it *tjaloa*. A better sort is even made called *inguhja*, which is not unlike wine, and they make vinegar of it, which they call *tjula*. Mr. Barrow has been therefore, as it appears from hence, misinformed in saying that the Koossas do not make use of any intoxicating liquor. These different liquors are obtained according to the different degrees of fermentation which the millet undergoes by being put for a certain time, mixed with water, into milk

baskets, which have had old fermented matter in them. In the place of sieves for straining it they use the nests which many sorts of the African *loria* build with the woolly parts of particular plants.

It has been mentioned already by other writers, that the Caffres do not eat any kind of fish or sea-animal. Some kraals, however, which are near the coast, and have a scarcity of other food, eat muscles and several kinds of fish, but they are held in contempt for it by the rest of the nation.<sup>1</sup>

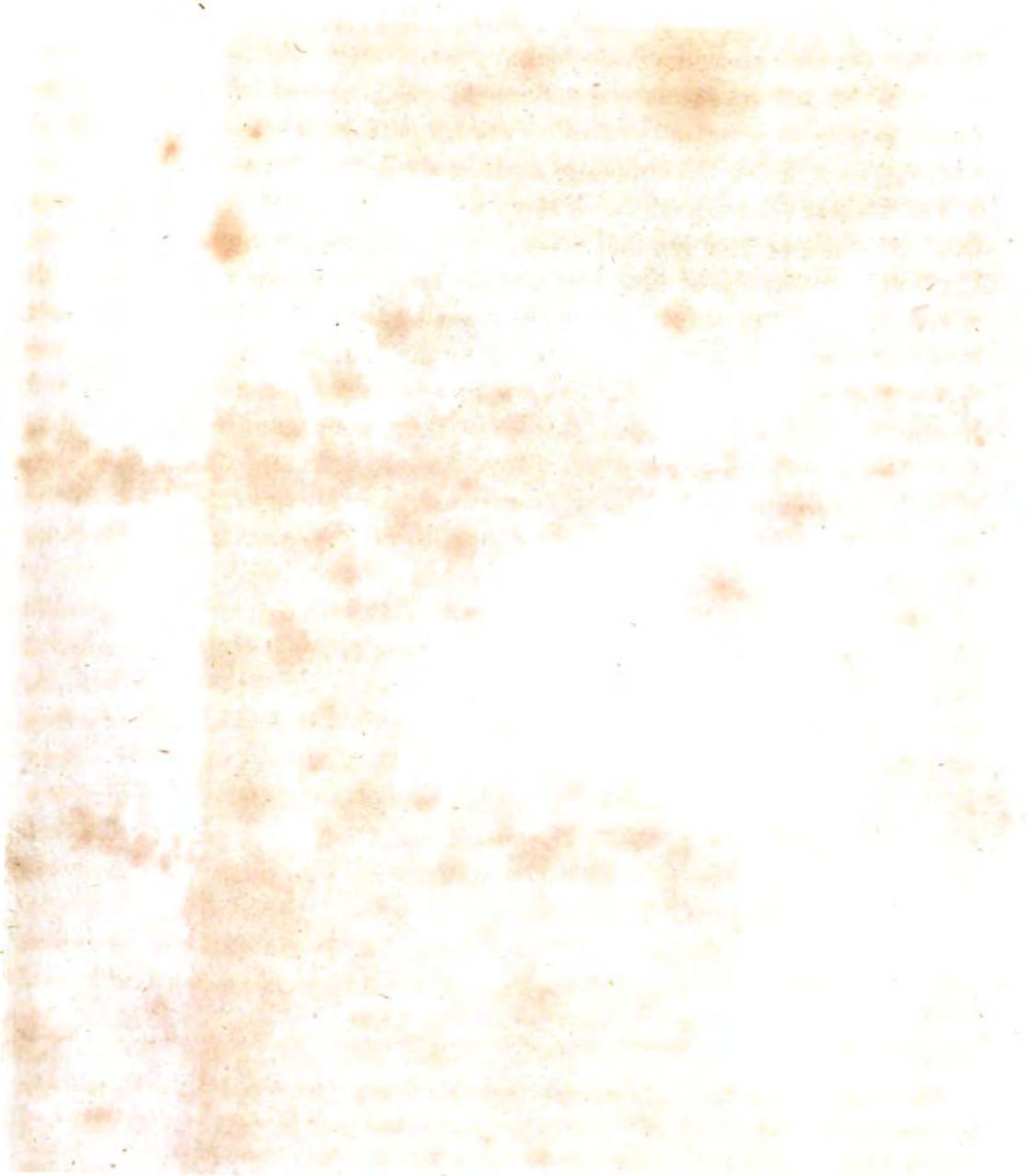
The Caffres are hospitable. Vander Kemp, who has travelled the country over and over, assured me that whenever he passed the night at a strange kraal they always gave him a hut to himself, which was furnished with a bed of mats and skins, and with a fire in the middle; he had besides an ample provision of milk and cooked millet. Before his principles were thoroughly understood, an old woman generally used to come to him and inquire whether he would not like one of the young women of the kraal to keep him company for the night. This, as has been mentioned before, is considered as a duty of hospitality, but it would be taken extremely ill if the stranger were to think of chusing for himself, or if he should ask for a married woman.

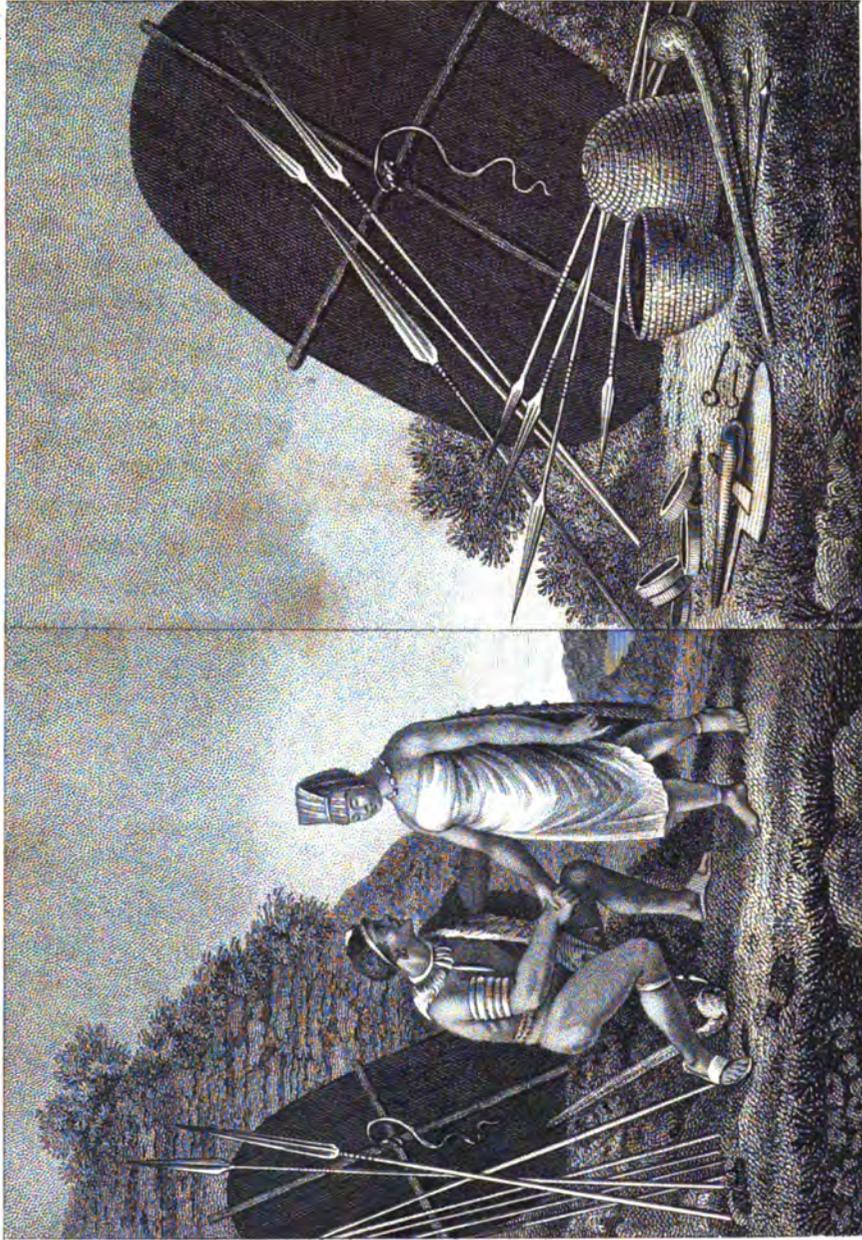
Whenever any one kills an ox he must invite all his neighbours to partake of it, and they remain his guests till the whole is eaten: even the king is not exempt from this custom, and must be contented to share his meals with his neighbouring subjects.\* In return, it is the custom that the breast of every ox killed is sent to the king; even the most distant kraal must not fail in doing so, although it be obvious from the distance that it cannot reach him before it becomes putrid. The breast, the head, the heart, and the feet of the oxen, are eaten only by the men, the women never partake in them, not even the wives of the king.

The skin cloak, or mantle, which they wear, if made of an ox-hide, is called *gubo*, or *ingubo*, but if made of the skin of a wild animal, it is called *unebe*.

---

\* It is also a custom that if any European travelling among them receives a present of food, he must share it with all around him, even though the piece he gives to each should be ever so small. Alberti says he has heard people when they have not been invited to participate in the food upon such an occasion, at going away, imitate the yell of the hyena, as a reproach upon the unsociability of the visitor.





Red Copper Print

*A Caffre Man and Woman  
 of the Tribe of the Xosha,  
 Weapons, Ornaments, and Household  
 Implements of the Xosha.*

Published by Henry Colburn, Golden Square London.

Even the Chief seldom wears any thing but the hide of an ox or an eland. All panther skins must be brought to him, but he does not so much wear them himself, as keep them for presents occasionally, when he wants to shew particular favour to any one. The skins are prepared with considerable ingenuity: the process of preparing them is extremely well described by Mr. Barrow. The mantles are seldom made out of many pieces; they are commonly only one skin. Those of the women are ornamented with parallel rows of copper buttons, the greater or lesser number of which distinguishes the rank and wealth of the wearer. The Caffres are exceedingly fond of these buttons, and whoever has them on his clothes when he visits their country is very likely to be importuned for them in a manner that it is scarcely possible to resist; but they must be quite flat and smooth, for if they have any kind of embossed figure upon them they are stigmatized as blotchy. The women besides ornament their mantles with the tails of wild-cats, which are put on near the shoulder, and hang down on each side. Much more pains are bestowed upon preparing the skins for the womens' clothes than upon those for the mens'. They sew the skins with thread made of the sinews of the oxen, piercing the holes to put it through with an iron punch, something like a bodkin, in the place of a needle. A girl to earn her first mantle must go out once with a hunting party, when she receives from her brothers an antelope's skin as her share of the booty.

Here and there women as well as men are to be seen tattooed, but not in the face, only upon the breast, the back, and the arms. The smearing themselves with grease mixed with some mineral substance, as iron-ochre, iron-rust, mica, or something of the kind, gives their bodies a not unpleasant tint, but nobody can touch them without bringing away very visible marks of it upon his hands and his clothes. The men wear their heads naked, or with a sort of diadem round them made of a strip of leather about an inch broad: sometimes this is ornamented with thin plates of copper, sometimes with beads of a variety of colours. The men also ornament their heads with a large knot of zebra's or jackall's hair, about five inches long, and which must stand upright.\*

---

\* For the dresses of the Caffres see the annexed plate.

The head-dress of the women consists in a sort of turban. A long piece of fine thin leather, commonly the skin of the red deer, is wound round the head in many folds; the two ends, which run to points, are concealed under the folds, and so fastened. This leather is at least two ells long, and in the middle half an ell wide; the middle is sometimes sewed to a cap, from which the points hang down on each side. Directly in the centre is always a tuft or tassel of beads, or of strips of leather, with little bits of copper. The true coquette wears her turban a little on one side; indeed, the utmost care is shewn in putting it on, and is perpetually pushed it this way or that, to give it if possible a better effect.

Necklaces of different kinds are worn both by men and women. They consist of small metal chains, little red stones, muscle-shells, glass-beads, or even pieces of wood, and are so long that they hang quite down to the breast. Glass-beads are prized particularly for necklaces; but the Koossas have their fashions in these things as well as other nations, and the same sorts, or the same colours, are not always in equal favour. The great rage at present is for a small sort of beads which are procured from the tribe of Imbo, and which are considered of such value that a cow and calf is given for two small strings. They have an idea that these beads creep out of the earth like worms, and are caught by the Imbos; but, according to Vander Kemp's account, they seem to be common glass beads, or perhaps chaplets, which have been brought by the Portuguese into the northern parts of the country, and thence found their way among the Koossas. They wear in their ears strings of beads of five or six inches long, as also buttons or rings of copper.

Bracelets of ivory are worn by the men on the upper part of the left arm, sometimes even to the number of ten; the broadest may be an inch, or between that and an inch and half in breadth. The number of these bracelets depends upon the rank of the wearer. As all the elephant's teeth are the king's property, the bracelets made from them are given by him as tokens of friendship or favour, and no one can wear them without his permission. On the right arm, just above the elbow, a leather strap is often worn, set with five or six tyger's teeth, all with the points standing out. Copper and iron bracelets are also worn between the elbow and the wrist. Round the waist is fastened a leather girdle stuck so thick with plates of iron or copper that the

leather cannot be seen. The females, from their birth, wear a leather apron, which is called *inkyo*. Several of these aprons of different sizes are sometimes worn, one over the other, the outermost of which is richly ornamented with buttons and beads. The fingers, particularly the thumb, and even the great toe, are often decorated with rings of iron and copper wire; and the men generally wear fastened to one knee a large bunch of hair from a lion's mane, or tail, or of quagga's hair, which hangs down nearly to the ankle.

Their weapons of war are, as we have already mentioned, the hassagai, the kirri, and a shield. The first is a spear from five to six feet in length, with an iron spike at the end from half a foot to a foot and half long, and from one to two inches broad. This is two-edged, and is sometimes the whole length like a blade, sometimes it is half way rounded, and only towards the end flat, and sharpened at the edges. The shaft is made of the slender stem of the hassagai-tree (*Curtisia faginea*), and near the spike is about as thick as a finger, but at the other end is not thicker than a quill. The spike is fixed very ingeniously into the shaft, and the shaft itself is in this part bound very fast round with the sinews of beasts that it may not split. The manner of using it, as well as the shield and the kirri, has been explained in a former chapter, when describing their mock fight. It requires particular strength as well as great dexterity to throw the hassagai upwards into the air; the principal art in lancing it, is to give the shaft a sort of tremulous motion, which accelerates its flight exceedingly. They are obliged to give it the direction of a bow, and this is the principal reason why it is so difficult to hit a particular mark. The farthest distance at which a hassagai can be expected to hit is a hundred paces, but the aim is commonly taken at about seventy or eighty. These weapons stand very much in the place of money among the Koossas; they are the most common medium by which all articles of barter are valued, and by which the worth of every thing is estimated. They throw the kirri as well as strike with it, and can hit at a tolerable distance; it is used in the chase as well as the hassagai: both are used besides as implements of husbandry in breaking the ground.

The Koossas are brave and resolute, like all the other tribes of the Caffres, and often involved in wars with their neighbours; yet they cannot be called quarrelsome in their dispositions: they seem much more disposed to lead a

quiet and pastoral life. When engaged in war, no man capable of bearing arms shrinks from the fight; and to fly in battle is considered as a disgrace never to be expiated. The neighbours with whom they are the most frequently at war are the Bosjesmans, on account of the depredations which the latter are perpetually committing on their cattle. As the Bosjesmans, however, never meet an enemy in the open field, but endeavour to shoot their poisoned arrows from some secure place of concealment, so the Caffres cannot come to fair and equal fighting with them: the warfare on both sides rather consists of petty conflicts between hordes. The enmity of the Koossas, and all the other Caffre tribes, against the Bosjesmans, knows no bounds. The latter are considered by the former in the light of beasts of prey, who ought to be extirpated from the earth; and on this system they pursue them in the same way as they would wild beasts, putting to death every one that falls into their hands, of either sex, or of any age. If the robberies have been very frequent, they will seek out their hiding-places, nor cease the pursuit till they have found the horde, and destroyed every one of them.

I myself once saw a striking instance of this hatred of the Caffres towards the Bosjesmans. In the year 1804, a Caffre, who came to the Cape Town as ambassador from a little horde which was then roving about the northern parts of the colony, was received with great hospitality at the house of Governor Janssens. The governor had at this time among the servants in his house a Bosjesman lad about eleven years old. The Caffre, notwithstanding that the boy was in no way distinguished from the rest of the Hottentots, immediately recognised one of the race of his mortal enemies, and made a push at him with his hassagai, intending to run him through. The boy escaped, and fled to the kitchen, where he found shelter; and as the people pressed about the Caffre, and enquired of him what their young comrade had done that he should endeavour to take away his life, he replied in broken Dutch, glowing with rage, "that what he was doing was out of gratitude to the governor for the kind reception he had given him. He would have freed him from that little rascal, who was indeed then too weak to do him any mischief, but who, he might be sure, if he was permitted to live, would at length deprive him both of his property and life. It was impossible that a Bosjesman could ever abandon his villainous ways; and it was necessary to destroy such vermin wherever they were found."

The wars of the Caffres among each other are of much more consequence. They are commonly occasioned either by the rebellion of the Chiefs against their common king, or by the desire of the latter to bring some separate tribe under his subjection, and make it tributary to him, or in contentions with regard to the extent of their territories, and about feed for the cattle. But no one ever falls upon the enemy while he is unprepared for the fight, or without making a public declaration of war. For this purpose ambassadors are sent, who require submission, or, in failure of it, threaten an immediate attack: as a token of their inimical embassy, they carry in their hands the tail either of a lion or a panther.

This declaration made, all the vassal chiefs, with their dependents, are summoned to assemble. Every one must implicitly obey this mandate, and follow his leader: whoever does not, is in danger of having his whole property confiscated. As soon as the army is collected at the habitation of the king, a number of oxen are killed, that the warriors may be strengthened for the fight by eating abundantly of their flesh: at the same time they dance, and deliver themselves up entirely to rejoicing. The king presents the most distinguished and the most valiant among the Chiefs with plumes of feathers, from the wings of a sort of crane: these they wear upon their heads as marks of honour. They are then obeyed as commanders; but it is their duty, during the fight, to be seen at the head of their respective divisions: any one who fails forfeits his life irredeemably: among the followers, too, whoever forsakes his leader, is punished with death.

The army is now put into motion, taking with it as many oxen for slaughter as are deemed necessary for its support. When it approaches the habitation of the enemy, ambassadors are again sent to give notice of the intended attack, and repeat the declaration of the motives which have given occasion to the war. If the enemy declares that he has not yet collected all his people together, and is not prepared to fight, the attacking army waits with patience till he notifies that he is ready. A wide, open place, without bushes and without rocks, is chosen as the field of battle, to avoid all possibility of an ambush, which is considered as wholly degrading. The two armies then raising a loud war-cry, approach in two lines till they are within about seventy or eighty paces of each other. They now begin throwing their hassagais, endeavouring, at the same time, to turn aside those of the enemy. The king,

or commander-in-chief, whoever he may be, remains always in the centre of his line, and takes an active part in the fight. Some of the inferior commanders remain near him, the rest remain some at the heads of their divisions, some behind, to prevent the troops giving way. By degrees the two bands approach nearer and nearer to each other, till at length they come hand to hand, when the hassagais are no more used, but the kirri alone decides the combat. Sometimes, however, they do not come to these close quarters, but remain at a distance, till they are obliged to give over, either by the coming on of night, or by the flight of one of the parties.

In the former case both sides retire to a certain distance, where a line of demarcation is agreed upon, and during the night negotiations for peace are carried on: if these are fruitless, the combat must then be renewed till finally decided. If one of the armies has taken to flight, the commander alone is to blame: every thing depends upon his personal bravery, and his falling back is the signal for the whole body to do the same. A flying enemy is immediately pursued, and, above all things, the conquerors seek to possess themselves of their women and children, and cattle: of the latter a great part are immediately killed and eaten. If the vanquished party agrees to submit, his submission is accepted, on condition that he acknowledges his conqueror from that time forward as his sovereign, and solemnly promises obedience to him. When this is done, the women and children are sent back: the victors also return some of the cattle taken, though perhaps but a very small part, dividing the rest among themselves. This claim of the conquered to the return of some part of the booty rests upon a principle which is a common saying among the Koossas, "*that we must not let even our enemies die with hunger.*" When both parties are returned to their respective habitations, the vanquished, as a token of submission, send a present to their new king out of the little that remains to them. The conqueror treats his followers again before they separate, in the same manner as when they first assembled.

In these fights among the Caffies the number of lives lost is not so great as might be supposed; for the hassagais do not very often hit, or if they do, the wound is seldom mortal. Any one who falls unarmed into the hands of the enemy is never put to death: the women and children, equally, have never any thing to fear for their lives; they are universally, and without exception, spared. For this reason women are sometimes employed as ambassadors;

that **is if** there is danger of the enemy considering matters as having gone so far that **he** is at liberty to put the ambassador to death, supposing a man to be sent: **and** this may be the case under certain circumstances, though in general it is **wholly** unallowable by the customs of war to touch the person of an ambassador. Allies, who are sometimes sought from very remote tribes, if the **parties** feel themselves weak, are entitled, in case of victory, to half the booty.

It remains to say a few words concerning the works of art among the Koossas, and passing over those which have already been occasionally mentioned, I shall first notice their working of metals. They have no copper or iron in **their** own country, but receive it, in the way of barter, from some of the tribes in **the** interior, as will be more fully shewn hereafter. Most of it comes to them **ready** worked; but they have sufficient acquaintance with the smith's art to **improve** their hassagais, or to make of them other implements which they want, as for example, the punches they use in making their baskets: they **employ** stones as hammers to bring the hot iron or copper into the form desired. **In** order to quicken the fire, and give it the necessary degree of heat, they **make** use of a sort of bellows consisting of two leather bags, which communicate with the same pipe, and by being pressed against each other, they are alternately filled with air and emptied again. This discovery was imparted to the Koossas from a distant tribe. The fuel used for their smith's work is dried ox-dung, which makes a very glowing fire: the tribes in the interior burn charcoal.

To **strike** fire they take two pieces of wood of different hardness, one of which is a thin round stick, the other is flat, with little volutes at certain distances. Into one of these the round stick is passed, and then drawn backwards and forwards exceedingly quick, till by this friction the stick at length catches fire, and being applied to a wisp of dried grass, a flame is kindled.

For **keeping** liquors, and even for cooking, they make pots of fine clay, which are **hardened** in the sun, without being glazed. Some of these pots will hold six buckets, or perhaps more: they keep the liquor very cool. In their form they resemble large bottles with wide necks.

Their works with rushes are exceedingly ingenious: the baskets, which are so exceedingly solid as to hold milk, are very well described by Kolbe,

Le Vaillant, and Barrow. Le Vaillant, however, is misinformed with regard to the manner in which he says they are quenched before they are capable of holding liquid.

The Koossas are much behind hand with some of their neighbours with regard to music. Instruments proper to themselves they do not appear to have, for only those of the Hottentots are to be seen among them, and not so well constructed. Their melodies are insufferable to a musical ear, and their song is little better than a deadened howl. Their dances have been already described. They amuse themselves with them very much in moonlight nights, and are never weary with the exercise.

Although they have numerals, they have but little idea of counting: very few can reckon beyond ten; many, even, cannot name the numerals. Notwithstanding this, they know perfectly well of how many head a herd of cattle consists, nor could a single one be missing without its being discovered immediately. If a herd of four or five hundred be driven home, the owner knows, almost at a glance, whether they are all right or not. Possibly these people have a manner of counting within themselves, without using words, yet by which they can calculate accurately; or perhaps the more probable thing is, that they know every individual cow or ox, and from this recollection can tell immediately whether they are all there.

Their memories are, indeed, particularly strong, as far as the recollection of objects of sense is concerned. For example, they instantly remember a man whom they have once seen, though they should see him again at ever so remote a period, and will immediately cite, with the utmost accuracy, a number of occurrences which happened at their previous meeting. In the same manner the countenances of animals, or some other distinguishing mark about them, is impressed upon their minds so firmly, that they can instantly recollect them. Some of them recognised immediately among our draught oxen particular ones which had been once in their possession; taken by them during their war with the colony, and restored, by agreement, when peace was made.

They are very little capable of calculating time: a period more remote than a few months they know not how to describe, though all the events that have passed in it are distinctly and circumstantially present to their memories: still less can they at all tell their own ages. The age of an

absent child is given by shewing its height; and if a woman would describe how many children she has borne, she does it by pointing out their different heights. According to their external appearance, it seems as if their oldest men were not more than between fifty and sixty years of age. Such is Alberti's opinion, and it agrees extremely well with the estimation of the Christians who have lived for any time among them, or who have been in the habit of visiting them from time to time, for a considerable period.

## CHAP. XX.

*Description of the Country of Ammakosina, or of the Koossas.—Its Political Relations and Institutions.—Power of the King.—Judiciary Proceedings, and Punishments.*

IN considering the Great Fish-river as the western boundary of the territory inhabited by the Koossas, and taking the extent of coast eastward from this river, along which people of this tribe are still to be found, a parallelogram will be given of between forty and fifty geographical miles in length, and about half that breadth. From a calculation made upon conjecture only, this vast surface does not seem to be inhabited by more than thirty thousand souls. It even appears to me, that in making this calculation, Vander Kemp has included the Mathimbos or Tambuckis, who were not at first distinguished from the Koossas. It is to be regretted that of this latter tribe, which in many respects is the most accurately known to us, we know so little in other respects, and can therefore give but an imperfect account of its political relations. Future travellers will here find a wide field for their researches, and may throw much light upon the subject. To me it appears probable that the number of the Koossas, properly so called, that is, the subjects of King Geika, does not exceed twenty thousand. This presumption is grounded upon Geika's not having been able, of his own power, to reduce his rebel chiefs, with their followers, to obedience, and the whole body of these did not consist of above two thousand five hundred persons. He expected troops from the Tambuckis, but either they never arrived, or, even with their assistance, he thought himself not sufficiently strong, since in 1806 the matter remained entirely upon its old footing.

As to what concerns the topographical description of the Caffre country, our notices must necessarily be exceedingly scanty. No particular parts of the country have names, since there are no permanent places of residence among the inhabitants; nothing but wandering villages, and these commonly bear the name

of the chief then presiding over them as the king's vicegerent. The rivers only **have** fixed names. Of these the principal are, the Great Fish-river, from which, on the side of the Caffres, branch out three considerable streams, the Konab, the Kacha, and the Gwenge: from the former of these again branch two smaller ones, the Tkaussi, and the Tkui. The Keissi, which flows into the sea at  $33^{\circ} 12'$  southern latitude, and  $44^{\circ} 56'$  eastern longitude, receiving in its course the rivers Sjommi and Debe. Northwards are the Guakubi and Sileni, which join the Kouga, and flow with that into the sea. Farther in the interior, towards the north-west, are the rivers Gobuhssi and Karoonga, which both flow into the Black-Tey; and this river uniting itself afterwards with the White-Tey, they form the Amera, the most considerable stream in the country of the Koossas. About thirty smaller streams flow into these rivers, but none of sufficient consequence to be particularized here. The river Basseh is the boundary between the Koossas country and Mathimba: this is a considerable stream, and flows into the sea.

High mountains, some of which are covered with snow even till late in the spring, bound Ammakosina towards the north-west, and most of the rivers above-mentioned flow from them. At the foot of the mountains are large forests; but towards the coast the country is level, and affords plenty of wholesome grass. Karroo plains are not to be found here, and the mountains consist of granite and sand-stone, not of schistus. The tract between the Great Fish-river and the Keissi abounds in large trees, particularly the mimosa. On the other side of the Keissi but few tall stemmed trees are to be found, but there are more large succulent plants; a sort of euphorbia, probably the *euphorbia officinarum*, grows here to the height of from thirty-six to forty feet.

The different sides of the Keissi are equally distinct with regard to the animals by which they are inhabited. Westward of this river the country abounds with numerous flocks of small antelopes and quaggas, as well as with beasts of prey. On the eastern side they have only the larger kinds of antelopes, particularly the *antilope oreas*, with abundance of elephants, and in the rivers vast numbers of hippopotami. Alberti says that he saw here a flock of elephants, which his companions thought could not consist of less than five hundred; he himself estimated it at least at three hundred. Of the hippo-

potami, in one of his journeys he saw two and twenty killed in a single river. This difference in the animal world between the two sides of the Keissi, Alberti explains from the difference of the vegetable products, as on one side sweet fine grass is every where to be found, on the other nothing but sour grass, which only affords good food to animals of a grosser organization. These lands, however, when cultivated, yield very plentifully. The Koossas, to amend the quality of the grass, sometimes burn them, when a new and better vegetation springs up.

For this fertility the country has to thank its happy climate, strikingly different from that at the Cape Town, as will be seen by the following observations, for which I am indebted to Vander Kemp. The time which may here be called winter, and which in many other hot countries, even in the colony of the Cape, is distinguished by torrents of rain, is here the driest part of the year. From May to August, when the length of the nights and the northern inclination of the sun considerably diminishes the heat, it rains very seldom. These winter days are throughout serene and cool; but the nights are often foggy and hazy. On the contrary, in summer the air no sooner becomes sultry, than thunder-clouds come on, which commonly break about three hours after mid-day, and by the abundant rains they bring, the air is cooled and refreshed. Seldom a week passes in summer without at least two thunderstorms: it even rains sometimes in this season without thunder. In the year 1800, when Vander Kemp lived near the Guakubi-river, he made the following observations:

In January it rained 13 days, 8 accompanied with storms.	
February	5.....4.
March	9.....8.
April	8.....8.
May	1.....
June	3.....
July	3.....
August	2.....
September	6.....1.
October	3.....1.
November	16.....10.
December	14.....8.

} without storms.

All these storms came from the same quarter, the north-west, that where lie the principal mountains, and in sixteen months that Vander Kemp lived in the country, he but once knew a storm come before noon. The lightning is extremely sharp, is little extended, as in our climate; but the rays may be plainly distinguished descending from the clouds, and springing from one cloud to another. Vander Kemp, indeed, calls them streams of fire, continuing from two seconds to three and a half. The claps of thunder are tremendous, and the rain falls sometimes in such torrents, that the houses at a distance from the river are almost beaten down.

In the coldest days in winter, upon the plains, the thermometer seldom sinks lower than  $50^{\circ}$  by Fahrenheit, nor at this season ever exceeds  $70^{\circ}$ . In summer it is seldom lower than between  $70^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$ ; and just before a thunder-storm the heat is almost insupportable. The air is particularly hot with a north wind, so that when under the wind one seems as if by a large fire: the thermometer is then little above  $100^{\circ}$ . At this hot time of the year, thick fogs often arise at night, which sometimes continue even till noon the next day, and contribute much to keeping the soil moist. These fogs are very rare indeed in the colony, and even in the Koossas country they are confined pretty much to the eastern side of the Keissi.

The fertility of this country; and the abundance of grass it produces, will sufficiently account for the pastoral, or semi-nomade life led by the inhabitants. There is no question but that if it were cultivated according to the European manner, it would be productive beyond any that has yet been known. At the same time very weighty objections lie against the projects that have been formed for colonizing it by several persons, particularly by Captain Benjamin Stout, of the American ship Hercules: but it would be carrying us too much out of our way to enter into an investigation of them\*.

The trees here continue their leaves nearly the whole year, retaining almost

---

\* The Hercules was stranded, in the year 1796, upon the Caffre coast, near the mouth of the river Amara. Those of the crew who escaped met with a very kind reception from the Caffres, and most of them got at last happily to the Cape Town. Captain Stout afterwards gave an account of the whole affair to Congress, and endeavoured to impress them strongly with the expediency of planting an American colony upon this coast.

always the same vivid green, and the birds never forbear their songs : parrots and turtle-doves alone are heard in greater force in summer than in winter, and the swallows disappear in autumn ; in Mathimba they are, however, seen the whole winter.

There are years in which the thunder showers in summer are less frequent, and this was the case in 1804 and 1805. The drought of these years in the colony, which, if it did not produce an absolute dearth, at least occasioned a great defalcation in the usual quantity of corn, extended even to this favoured country, and the Koossas lost a great number of cattle from want of feed for them. Whole societies strolled into the colony, in hopes of finding places which had been exempted from the general calamity, and the country was much indebted to the zeal and prudence of Alberti that this inroad was not attended with renewed dissensions between them and the colonists.

The number of families who live in one place are generally from about forty to fifty ; these form a little state like a village. One of the householders is chief of the kraal. At the death of a chief his subjects choose a successor, commonly from the family of the deceased, but the king has the power of confirming or of setting aside the choice. Sometimes the people of one kraal will choose the chief of another to be their chief, and thence it happens that there are chiefs who have the command of two, three, four, or more kraals. They are all vassals of the king, chiefs, as well as those under them ; but the subjects are generally so blindly attached to their chiefs, that they will follow them against the king, as has been particularly the case in these latter times. The power of the chiefs did extend even over life and death, but King Geika has set this aside, and declared it to be his will that henceforward no sentence of death shall be carried into execution without his consent. Every chief chooses from among his most wealthy subjects five or six, who act as counsellors to him, without whose advice he seldom undertakes any thing of importance. Commonly it is old and experienced persons who are selected for this purpose. The great council of the king is composed of the chiefs of particular kraals.

The government is entirely monarchic ; the king is absolute sovereign. He makes laws, and executes them entirely according to his sole will. Yet

there is a power to balance his in the people; he governs only as long as they choose to obey. If he pursues any measure which displeases universally, he is warned by one of the oldest and most esteemed chiefs of the displeasure of his subjects. If this warning be not attended to, every kraal, from the first to the last, breaks up, and retires to the borders; a hint which seldom fails to produce an alteration in his conduct. But should he still resist their will, at the first symptom of resistance one kraal really passes the borders, and the rest immediately follow. Vander Kemp twice saw this method pursued, one time when Geika had made a law against private revenge, forbidding a man, who had detected his wife in infidelity to the marriage bed, taking away the life of the seducer; and the second, when he would have made the king heir to all his subjects who died without heirs in a direct line. He was required to retract both; that however relating to private revenge was established, the other was set aside.

Yet, unless in instances when this spirit of resistance is particularly awakened, his will is implicitly obeyed, and when he pronounces a sentence of death, it is executed without a murmur. Though the Koossas have no mode of saluting each other when they meet, yet there is a courtesy practised towards the king wherever he is seen, by pronouncing his name with the syllable *Ann* before it, thus, Ann-Geika. His title is Inkoossi, which signifies *ruler*. On journeys the king is accompanied by his counsellors, and a train selected from his poorer subjects: wherever he comes, an ox is immediately killed for his entertainment. His wives, especially those who are of a distinguished family themselves, are also treated with particular distinction, and are followed by a train of women from the lower ranks. But neither the king or his wives drink any milk upon their journeys, excepting from their own cows, which always follow in their train.

The revenue of the king consists in a certain annual contribution of cattle, each subject contributing in proportion to his own riches. A certain proportion of the fruits of the earth also belongs to the king, and he has besides, the breast of every ox killed, and of every eland taken in hunting, with all elephants' teeth,\* panthers' skins, and cranes' feathers. A father who esta-

---

\* Alberti mentions, in speaking of the ivory bracclets presented by the king as tokens of favour, that they are considered as marks of so much honour, that they must never be laid

blishes his daughter by marriage must give one of the cows he has received for her to the king, for this express reason, that the girl was educated under the eye of the king and his wives.

The habitation of the king is no otherwise distinguished than by the tail of a lion or a panther hanging from the top of the roof. His messengers, or those who are sent to summon before him any one against whom a complaint has been made, carry a lion's or panther's tail in their hands, to shew that they come on the part of the king.

All sons of the king are born captains; one of them always succeeds to the government at the death of their father, but not always the eldest; it is commonly him whose mother was of the richest and oldest family of any of the king's wives. The rest are only chiefs of small kraals, which they generally form themselves, with the young men and their wives who have been their attendants, in some spot selected according to their own fancy. The king may, however, pass over all his sons if he chooses it, and appoint a successor from any other family. If the king dies while his successor is a minor, his preceptor is regent till he attains his eighteenth or twentieth year, and his mother, with the assistance of her relations, watches over the preservation of his rights.

When a criminal has been brought before the king, and has upon clear evidence been found guilty, the king pronounces, "*Let this man be no more,*" some of the attendants immediately lead him away, and he is executed. Sometimes he is purposely permitted to escape, and by flying out of the territories, he is no longer liable to punishment. Geika, who from the mildness of his disposition appears extremely amiable and interesting, seldom makes use of this right. Instead of this, for most offences which were punished with death, he has substituted a fine of a certain number of oxen, proportioned to the nature of the offence, which oxen are killed immediately. This mode of punishment has been established some time; death is now only

---

aside. He himself saw a Koossa, whose bracelet, from his growing extremely fat, had become much too small for him, and occasioned a violent swelling of his arm; but notwithstanding this it was not to be taken off; even the king himself had not power to give permission for it. It is a custom of war that the ivory bracelets found upon the bodies of enemies killed in battle are kept with great care by the conquerors, and restored to the vanquished party on peace being made.

inflicted for the most heinous offences. Robbery is punished by paying an equivalent, and by a fine of cattle to the king, the number of which he himself determines. Any one who has partaken in eating an ox that was stolen must also pay a fine to the king.

A short time since, a rich man sent a boy into the field to take care of his cattle, without the knowledge and consent of the lad's parents. A lion tore him to pieces, and Geika sentenced the person by whom he was sent, to pay a fine of seven cows and two oxen to the unfortunate parents. It is considered as a capital crime to ease nature in a cattle-fold, or in a river, as it pollutes the water: in both cases the offender is subject to the punishment of death. The apparent hardship of this is diminished, when it is considered in the one instance how sacred the Koossas hold their cattle, and that the fold is, besides, the place where the public assemblies are held; and in the other, that water is an article of indispensable necessity, and that no one would think of using any again from a stream which had been thus polluted.\*

There are certain persons appointed for the purpose by the king, who, on occasions of peculiar difficulty in the government, must at his requisition assist him with their counsels: they are called *pagati*, and may be denominated his privy-counsellors. Vander Kemp was once secretly accused of having attempted the life of the king, by giving him poisoned wine. Two *pagati* came to him, and questioned him very minutely, but with so much circumspection, that he had no suspicion himself of the accusation which had been preferred, till after judgment was passed upon him. Geika came himself to him, and asked him very unconcernedly for a glass of wine. It appeared, however, that Vander Kemp had not a drop of wine in his possession: this was conclusive, and the king then told him in the most friendly manner of what he had been accused, adding that the *pagati* would fain have had him condemned to death.

---

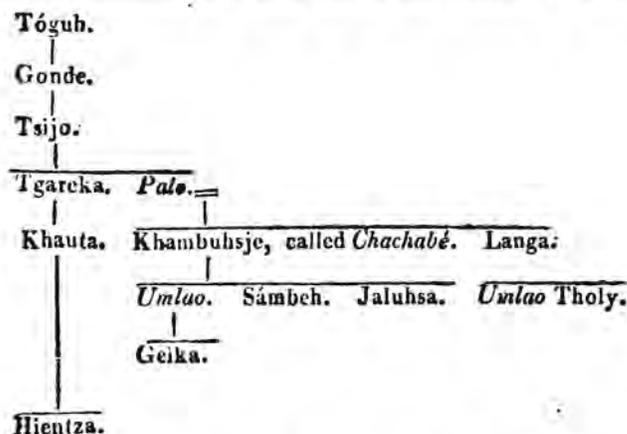
\* Alberti does not mention this custom; but according to the testimony of Mr. Barrow and Vander Kemp, as well as from my own inquiries, the fact is fully established.

## CHAP. XXI.

*History of the Koossa Tribe, and of its Wars with the Colony and with the English.—  
The Caffre Tribes of the Interior.*

THE Koossas have some traditions among them, but they cannot go farther back than a few generations, and indeed in these the information to be obtained from them is very obscure: they are not even agreed among themselves in the manner of relating occurrences; the same circumstance will be very differently related by one and by another. There are people among them who are considered as more knowing than the rest, and they form together a sort of college, whose verdict on all doubtful points is decisive beyond contradiction: what they believe with regard to the history of the country is considered by all the rest as indisputably true. How imperfect the knowledge of these historians is, will, however, be manifest from the following notices, which contain all the information upon the subject that we were able to collect.

Tóguh is the oldest among their kings, respecting whom they have any tradition. The descendants from him are in the following order:



Palo was brother to Tgareka, but never was king himself, although Le Vaillant follows the general error in describing him as having been so, under the name of Farao. He was only regent under Tgareka, as Chachabé and

Umlao were under Khauta. Palo was a powerful chief, very much beloved by the people, and revolted against his brother the king. The latter had made an unjust demand of an extraordinary number of cattle from his subjects, and the whole nation murmured against it. It was on this occasion that Palo first opposed his brother, but it did not come immediately to a regular contest, because Tgareka, by compliance, won over a part of the nation to his side. Palo's adherents in the mean time increased very much, and upon the next provocation, matters came to a decision by force, when Tgareka was conquered, and made prisoner; yet Palo, though a heathen, had so strong a sense of right, that he did not place himself upon the throne, but restored his brother.

The latter, however, no sooner felt himself again in power, than he thought only of revenge, and in the end, Palo, with his adherents, were attacked, beaten, and himself taken prisoner; yet Tgareka, now on his side, shewed himself not destitute of generosity, and his haughty brother's power was only circumscribed and rendered harmless for the future; but this done, he was restored to liberty and to his former dignity.

In the next generation, the descendants of Palo were stronger than he had been himself. His son Chachabé stands recorded in the history of the country as a real hero. He did not undertake any thing against his cousin Khauta, although the whole nation would have been on his side; on the contrary, he was the king's most faithful subject and counsellor: but his merits are universally acknowledged, and this period, which seems to have been between 1780 and 1790, is rather called the period when Chachabé lived, than when Khauta reigned. The latter was, however, in this respect deserving of esteem, that convinced of the superiority of Palo's line above his own, and desirous to obviate to the country a cause of destructive wars, he named Chachabé's son Umlao as his successor, to the exclusion of his own children. Umlao died young of a wound given him in anger by his own father, and left an only child, Geika, the present king, he being upon the death of his father named by Khauta as his successor. He was a boy when Khauta died, and was left under the guardianship of his uncle Sámbeh, who, as his guardian, administered the government in his name. Geika's mother, who was daughter to the King of Mathimba, was sent back to her own country during the minority of her son; but when he attained the age of eighteen, and succeeded to the throne, she

returned. Sámbeh, however, was not disposed to give up the reins of government which he had held so long, and he drew over the children of King Khauta and his brother Jaluhsa to his party, while Geika, supported by his mother, prepared to defend his rights by force of arms. Besides the ancient and steady adherents of Palo and his descendants, he was supported by his brother-in-law Tlibi, and another chief, by name Umguhji. It was about this time that Buys sought an asylum in the country, and proved a great support to the young king's party.

The plan of the rebels was to attack the king at the same time from two different quarters, but by a misunderstanding, Jaluhsa's party commenced the attack a day too soon, and was vanquished. The next day Geika fell upon his uncle Sámbeh, whom he also conquered, and took him prisoner. This was in the year 1796, and for two years the usurper was detained in a sort of custody, in which Mr. Barrow saw him in 1797. This writer celebrates with justice the noble behaviour of the young king towards his prisoner. He left him all his cattle, his wives, and his servants, and often asked his advice, only he was compelled to remain constantly in the place where Geika himself was. As the latter thought at length that he had entirely won him back to his interest, he restored him to full liberty, saying, in Vander Kemp's presence, at the time of granting it, "Uncle, I thank you for the education you have given me, which has taught me to acquit myself with honour as a sovereign. For this I will forget that you ever acted unkindly towards me, and deal with you as you yourself have taught me to do. In like manner do you learn of me to behave as becomes a true and faithful subject."

He now redoubled his proofs of esteem and regard, yet never could wholly divest himself of suspicion, and endeavoured in many ways to prevent Sámbeh's acquiring any increase of property. The latter, in consequence, came at length to the resolution of leaving Geika's territories, taking with him all his family and treasures. His brother Jaluhsa, the Chiefs Conga and Tsjatsjo, together with Umlao and Tholy,\* the sons of Langa, who was Palo's

---

\* The readers of Mr. Barrow's Travels are already acquainted with these two young men, whom he calls by the names of Malloo and Tooley. Umlao afterwards returned to Geika. Langa had also another son, Luhsjabba, but being born after his father's death, he was considered as a bastard.—AUTHOR.

It seems proper here to observe, that any difference to be found in the orthography of Caffre names, and indeed of Caffre words in general, between Mr. Barrow and our German author,

youngest son, fled to him with all their kraals, and settled in the country upon the coast on the other side the Great Fish-river.\*

Geika was so much weakened by this desertion, that it was impossible to reduce the rebels to obedience by force. They remained therefore unmolested by him, but they were too much in the neighbourhood of the colonists for a good understanding to be long maintained with them. Their numerous herds grazed upon the territories of the colonists: the solitary farmers, too weak to withstand them, fled inwards with their own cattle, sometimes, however, returning to revenge and remunerate themselves, by secretly driving away

---

may most probably be resolved into the different ideas with regard to the orthography of the word which the same sound would convey to an English and to a German ear. A German, for example, though spelling this name *Tholy*, would, in pronouncing it, drop the *h* and call it *Toly*, which will not vary essentially from the pronunciation *Tooley*, given by Mr. Barrow. It is not so easy to account for the very great difference in the case of the other name, called by the one writer *Umlao*, by the other *Malloo*. This subject will be treated more amply in occasional notes upon the Vocabulary of the Koossa language given in the Appendix.—TRANSLATOR.

\* In this relation I have followed Vander Kemp, because his account is more ample than Alberti's, and because he understood the Koossas' language much better: he had lived longer among them, and had therefore more opportunity of making himself acquainted with their traditions. In all other respects their testimonies concur exceedingly, but in this they differ so much, that I think it better to give Alberti's also, and then leave the reader to judge between them for himself.

According to him, Palo was lawful regent, and the contest first began between Tgareka\* and Chachabé, his two sons. After a long war carried on with various success, Chachabé was overcome, and fled with all his adherents to the western side of the Keissi river, into the territory of the Gonaaquas, which is on the borders of the colony. A great contest arose in consequence, between the colonists and these emigrant hordes, in which the Caffres, after having destroyed a number of farms, were driven back, and compelled to make peace. In this peace, which was concluded in 1793, the Great Fish-river was fixed as the boundary of the Caffre country, and all contentions might from that time have been easily averted, if the existing government had been sufficiently powerful to prevent the agreement being infringed. But the too justly apprehended attack of the English, united with the revolutionary movements of the colonists in Graaff-Reynett, rendered this impossible. In 1795, the attack by the English was really made, and at the same time Sámbeh revolted against Geika, and encamped with his people upon the territory of the colonists, already embarrassed with their own contentions: thence, according to Alberti, arose all the mischief of which we proceed to treat.

\* Alberti always writes this name Kaleka, but Vander Kemp, who understands the language extremely well, expressly mentioned the name to me as the only Caffre one in which the *r* occurs, and from this, as well as the clang in the first syllable, he considers the name as entirely of Hottentot origin.

some of the stray cattle of the Caffres. The latter had then naturally recourse to reprisals, so that the parties even came to little skirmishes, in which the colonists, from the superiority their fire-arms gave them, easily had the advantage. The Caffres, however, soon gained a most welcome reinforcement. A large body of Hottentots were induced to fly from their masters, on account, as they complained, of their too great severity with them, and joining with the Caffres, they hoped to find an opportunity at once of revenging their alleged ill-treatment, and of enriching themselves by plunder. These people knew accurately the ways about the colony; they could almost point out the situation of every individual farm; they besides brought fire-arms with them, and some powder and shot, which they secured at their flight. They were therefore formidable, and it is much to be presumed, that had it not been for their assistance, the Caffres would never have ventured to make the attack.

Thus reinforced, the united body soon spread terror over the whole district of Graaff-Reynett, and in a few weeks almost all the country between the Bosjesmans'-river and the Fish-river was in their hands. A great number of cattle became their prey: all the houses of the colonists were burnt, and many fell in the unequal struggle to preserve their property. In this exigence the Commandant Vander Walt, after having in vain sought to bring about an amicable accommodation, assembled a number of colonists, in order if possible to drive the invaders back to their own borders by force of arms: but even in the first conflict this brave man fell by the ball of a Hottentot, who concealed himself in an ambush for the purpose.

Vander Walt enjoyed the universal esteem of all his fellow-countrymen; he was beloved by the Hottentots on account of the mildness of his disposition, and had formerly maintained a good deal of intercourse in the most amicable manner with the Caffres. Even the English respected his memory, and I have been witness myself to the praises bestowed upon him by General Dundas, in a conversation between him and General Janssens. With him the colonists lost all their hope, as well as their courage, and instead of resistance, thought no longer of any thing but flight. His successor, Henry Janssens Van Rensburg, equally endeavoured to re-establish tranquillity in Graaff-Reynett; but in vain, for it was at this very time that the peasants rose against the English government. When Rensburg, therefore, with his troop, would have

marched against the Caffres, General Vandeleur, with his detachment of soldiers, appeared to quell the insurrection: this was in March, 1799. Rensburg, and sixty families with him, fled to the district of Tarka, and to the Bamboo mountains; those that remained submitted, as we learn from the second part of Mr. Barrow's Travels, and the ringleaders were for the most part carried prisoners to the Cape Town.

In the mean time the Caffres continually pressed forwards, nor was General Vandeleur, even in his march to Algoa bay, free from their attacks. He succeeded, however, in driving them back to the Bosjesmans'-river, and there took a strong position; but as they were very superior in numbers they contrived to enclose him round and cut off his supplies, so that his situation became exceedingly precarious. Rensburg then, informed of these events, and convinced that the oppressions of the Caffres would be much more intolerable than the sovereignty of the English, advanced with his corps, and having delivered the general, the latter continued his march to Algoa bay, where he embarked his troops, and left the colony to its fate. The arrogance of the Caffres now knew no bounds; they pressed rashly forwards, along the coast, through the Long-kloof, and by Plettenberg's bay, as we have seen, half way to the Cape Town, marking their progress with fire and massacre. It was not till they arrived at the farther bank of the Kaiman's-river that the united power of the English troops and the peasants succeeded in stopping them; and at length, in the beginning of the year 1800, they were forced back to the Zwartkops-river. Lieutenant General Dundas, governor of the colony, had in the mean time established the settlement at Algoa bay, and taken all possible precautions to prevent like misfortunes in future. It was not at first in his power to prevail upon the rebel chiefs of the Caffres to return over the Great Fish-river, and it did not appear adviseable to attempt driving them over. This part of the colony therefore remained for some time in their hands; the lands consequently were uncultivated, and the reciprocal distrust was unabated.

Geika in the mean time continued quiet, nor would suffer his subjects to take any part in these disturbances and quarrels, yet perfect peace could not be preserved between him and the colonists. The latter never lost the idea of taking advantage of the first opportunity presented them for regaining from the Caffres a part of the booty they had taken, but went from time to time

in little parties over the borders, and once fell upon a troop of Geika's adherents, whom they either could not, or would not, distinguish from the other party, and drove away their cattle. Reprisals were naturally resorted to, and thus, after the revolted chiefs had been chased from the colony, and compelled to remain quiet, a petty warfare was carried on between the party among the Caffres who had not taken any share in the great contest, and the inhabitants of Brintjeshoogte, Zwagershoek, and a part of the Snow Mountains. That the evil was not productive of more important consequences was owing, as many affirm, entirely to Conrad Buys, against whom so much has been said, and of whom Mr. Barrow relates that he was the author of all the mischief. He was indeed living with King Geika before the troubles broke out; but having supported him in his defence against Sámbeh, he was in the sequel either constantly with him, or else travelling in the northern parts of the Caffre country, far from the theatre of war. Besides, it is scarcely credible that he would promote the devastation of his native country, and the misery of his friends: it was not from any quarrel with them that he fled and sought an asylum elsewhere; it was because he saw the colony passing under a foreign yoke. That an irreconcilable aversion to the English induced him rather to take up his abode among heathens than in a country of which they were the masters, he himself avowed. Even had he been disposed to excite his friend and protector Geika against the English, yet he never had any concern whatever with the rebel chiefs, the enemies of Geika, nor could be in any way involved in an attack made by them.

Vander Kemp himself, who was no friend to the colonists, and a zealous adherent of the English, exculpates Buys from such accusations. Both lived for a considerable time with Geika, but Buys possessed his confidence in a much higher degree than the missionary: the latter indeed assures us that the confidence placed by the king in his mother, and in his fugitive friend, was so great, that no measure of importance was taken by him without consulting them. A sort of marriage, as has been already mentioned, had taken place between the mother of Geika and Buys. She was a princess of Mathimba, and had procured for her son the sovereignty of that kingdom in addition to his former dominions. A vicegerent had been appointed by Geika, to administer the government, and the senior among his wives was taken from that nation.

Geika always treated his mother with the most profound respect, and even now she exercised a sort of guardianship over him. This was exemplified on a particular occasion, when he was sitting in judgment, earnestly endeavouring to discover among a number of persons who had been cited into his presence which among them was the perpetrator of a crime that had been committed. The question was that some injury had been done to a woman of distinction without her being able to say who was the offender. As soon as the queen-mother heard the nature of the complaint, she commanded her son to stand forth in the midst of the circle, as he was with the rest on the spot where the affair happened, and seating herself in his place, made him take an oath that he himself was innocent: afterwards resigning his place to him again, she permitted him to proceed in the investigation. Geika commended exceedingly the wisdom shewn by her.

When Sámbeh was conquered, the children of the former King Khauta fell into the hands of Geika. Some of them were put to death, and one, who was somewhat deformed, he killed with his own hands. The life of the youngest, however, by name Hiéntza, was not only spared, but the king took him under his especial protection, and educated him with the utmost care and kindness. Now that he was twelve years old he had at the youth's earnest request restored him to his mother. Geika has many times to persons in his confidence expressed his wish that Hiéntza might prove a man of worth and talents, for he had resolved in that case to name him his successor, and restore the succession to its former line, hoping by that means to put an end to the unhappy discords which had so long reigned in consequence of the original contest between Palo and Tgareka. Besides Hiéntza, there are two other sons of Khauta living, the name of one of whom is Khaudi.

It remains now to say something of the more distant tribes of Caffres, as far at least as they are concerned with these notices respecting the Koossas, or became known to us from the travels subsequently undertaken into the northern parts of the country. What I have learnt upon this subject is confined principally to the names of the several tribes, and to having established the important fact, that their language, though diverging into different dialects, is essentially the same throughout this vast tract, and that the most distant tribes understand each other, though not always without difficulty. Buys, who has travelled over the country, even to the Maduanas, is my principal

authority for the fact, though in the sequel a confirmation of his assertions was not wanting from the mouths of the Caffres themselves.

The first tribe after crossing the river Basseh is the Tambuckis, or Mathimbas; they are somewhat lower in stature than the Koossas, but their language is exactly the same; a strict alliance has been preserved between these two tribes from time immemorial. Proceeding along the coast, the next tribe to the Koossas is one which is called by many different names; that by which it is most generally known is the Gonaaquas, but by the colonists they are usually called Mambuckis; the Koossas call them the Imbos, and in Van Reenen's Journey they are called the people of Hambona. I will not pretend to decide whether all these names belong to the same tribe, or whether they are only different divisions of it. They were brought into notice from the shipwreck of the Grosvenor, which happened upon their coast, and from the journey, which, at the instigation of the Dutch government, was undertaken in 1791, to seek out such of the unfortunate crew as had been saved.

In pursuing the course of the Basseh into the interior of the country, south of this stream lies the tribe of the Abbatoanas, and still farther up the river are the Maduanas. The latter are a numerous and peaceable race: Buys lived for a considerable time among them, and assured me that there was scarcely any difference between their language and that of the Koossas.

Far to the north-west,\* in the interior of the country, the Koossas speak of a tribe which they call the Macquinas, and say that it is from them all the other tribes receive their copper and iron. This information appears to me the less to be doubted, inasmuch as I found the same name afterwards among

---

\* There seems some confusion here, since the country of the Macquinas is represented by the author as to the north-west, and in the interior; yet if it were so, it could not lie between the eastern coast and Beetjuan, as it appears to do from what follows. The Beetjuans spoke of them as the most easterly tribe they knew, and the author supposes them to have had intercourse with the Portuguese on the eastern-coast. Perhaps a very unfortunate instance of misprinting has here occurred, and we ought to read "*far to the north-east.*" Still there is a difficulty, as to its being called in the interior of the country, since from all that is said, it appears rather to be towards the eastern-coast. I have, however, given the passage exactly as it stands in the original, but have thought proper to notice it in this way in order to exonerate myself from having created the confusion. TRANSLATOR.

the people of Beetjuan. They spoke of them as the most easterly tribe they knew, as the Koossas had called them the most northerly, and said that their very extensive territory was crossed by a great mountain, from one side of which copper was dug, from the other iron. The number of these people is not to be calculated, and no traveller has ever yet reached the extent of their territories. Through them, many generations before, the Beetjuans were assured of the existence of such beings as white men. Probably therefore this tribe had already had some intercourse of trade with the Portuguese on the eastern coast of Africa, at least they had heard of them. The Macquinas belong to the great nation of the Beetjuans, but they are superior in numbers and knowledge to all the other tribes.\*

The Koossas besides talk of an extraordinary people, far to the north, that have no resemblance to the Caffres, who do not speak their language, or follow their customs. They call the country Mathola. Hitherto no one has visited or seen these people, but according to report, the colour of their skin is yellow, and they have long strait hair, which they do up in locks, and wind round the head. Such an account does not seem deserving of much attention, and appears at first wholly fabulous. But probably Europeans may here be meant, who have from time to time landed upon various parts of the coast; for it is to be observed that similar things have been repeatedly said from the first researches made by the discoverers of Africa. Even from the time of Prester John, long hair has been among the Africans a principal characteristic of every unknown and remarkable people. The company whom Governor Tulbagh sent out upon discovery in 1761 returned with like information, which they had obtained from the Briquas; and it is well known for what a length of time rumours had been spread of a people dwelling on the eastern coast distinguished by their long hair, till Van Reenen in his journey found among the Hambonas some old Europeans, who in early youth had been cast by shipwreck upon the coast, and had given occasion to such reports.

The trade which the Koossas keep up with the other Caffre tribes is very

---

\* I cannot refrain from remarking on the affinity between the name Macquina, and the Arabic word *Makini*, which signifies a *worker of iron*. This similarity to the Arabic with others which I have particularized in the notices annexed to this work respecting the language of the Caffre tribes, are exceedingly striking, and sufficiently enigmatical.

insignificant; the tribes of Beetjuan are in this respect much before them, since they carry on a far brisker trade, and draw from it many objects contributing to the comforts of life. This may perhaps be principally ascribed to the remoteness of the Koóssas, who live entirely at one corner of the Caffre country. There is not therefore much reason to hope that our knowledge of this singular nation, and of its inhabitants, will be increased through them. Among people who live a kind of nomade life, and are often engaged in civil contentions with each other, the habitations being so often changed, the customs are changed also, nay even the names, so that it is difficult to distinguish one tribe very decidedly from another. Each separate tribe is in a certain degree only a passing phantom, which is afterwards overpowered by a mightier neighbour, or is spread out into many little hordes, one of which wanders hither, another thither, so that in the course of a few generations they become wholly unknown to each other. Such divisions have often taken place among the Koossas. In the time of the struggles with Palo, a considerable number, headed by a person of the name of Madjoagga, went north-westwards; and later, in Chachabé's time, another party, under the conduct of a Chief named Bakka, wandered from the country; nor was it known where either of these had settled. I afterwards found some traces of them when I travelled from the Cape north-eastwards over the Orange-river.

A like emigration recently took place, when a Caffre Chief, by name Baaï, who lived on the southern bank of the river Basseh, was compelled from a long and fierce war with the Abbatoanas to quit the country of the Koossas, and make his way with his horde to the sources of the river. Here his successors, if circumstances are favourable, may perhaps found a new kingdom.

As to what concerns the language of the Koossas, I refer the reader to the Appendix. I have there endeavoured, both from the best information I could myself obtain, and also from the additional information procured by subsequent travellers, to give as accurate an idea as lies in my power of the language of this nation, considering this as affording very important grounds on which to found a judgment of the degree of cultivation that subsists among them.

I must now flatter myself that I have put the reader in possession of data which will enable him to form a tolerably accurate idea of the situation of the Caffre tribes; and I cannot help entertaining a hope that this will give a

**double** interest to my account of the continuation of our journey, when we **not only** passed the borders, but even penetrated into the midst of the Caffre country.

**I** have been permitted to make use of the journal kept by General Janssens in **his** travels among the Caffres; and as it affords many interesting circumstances, which will contribute towards a better knowledge of these people, **and of** the relations between them and the colony, and will equally elucidate **the situation** of the eastern districts at that time, I have thought that I could **scarcely** make a more acceptable present to my readers than by giving at full **length** the following extract from it.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Fragment from the Journal of General Janssens.—His Stay in Algoa Bay, and Conference with the Rebel Caffre Chiefs.—Journey into the Caffre Country, and Interviews with the King Geika.—Intercourse with him.—Transactions of the Commandant Alberti in the Caffre Country.*

THE situation of the eastern part of the colony, at the return of the Dutch, was in the highest degree disturbed and lamentable, and no part of the territory required the particular attention of the new government more urgently. The war with the Caffres had continued four years, without the English government having been able to re-establish a good understanding between them and the colonists. The great obstacle to this was not so much want of good-will in them, as the general distrust and suspicion that reigned on all sides, first between the government and its subjects in these parts, and secondly, between the rebel chiefs of the Caffres and their lawful sovereign. As long as this fourfold distrust existed, so long no union among the parties could be restored, so long was it hopeless to think of peace being maintained. This was necessarily more doubtful from one party being a savage nation, whose ideas upon the sacred nature of a contract, and upon the rights of nations, were but very imperfect; who were more likely to act upon a conviction of the superiority of their antagonists, and of the unity that reigned among them, than from any adherence to their word given not to pass the borders.

It is true that for the last three years the Caffres had discontinued to rob and plunder; but it was only because there was scarcely any thing left for them to seize, and because the new settlement in Algoa bay was formidable to them. But as little had the colonists ventured to return to their habitations, and to think of raising them again out of their ashes. Hundreds of families wandered about without a home, living scantily upon the small remains of cattle which they had been able to save from the hands of their invaders, sometimes seeking a shelter among the friends who had been spared, sometimes living under tents in a distant, solitary, but fertile country. The

cessation of acts of enmity, however, the Caffres having not for some time ventured to drive away the cattle which the colonists had imprudently suffered to stray into their neighbourhood, and the latter having abstained from seeking to remunerate themselves upon the treasures of the Caffres, had greatly diminished the spirit of revenge which once subsisted between them. The murderous warfare which had been carried on was by degrees thought of with less bitterness, the sense of suffering was partially abated, many deeds of horror were forgotten, and the longing for a firm peace was become universal. The time seemed now particularly favourable for its restoration, the return of the colony under its former rulers having removed the principal obstacle to it.

Immediately after the arrival of the Dutch commission, a deputation of the colonists appeared in the Cape Town, who made the new government acquainted with the state of things, and earnestly pressed the Governor to visit this part of the country in his own person. As soon, therefore, as the English had actually quitted the colony, the Governor hastened to comply with their request, and after a journey of thirty-six days, arrived on the eighth of May, 1803, at Algoa bay. A detachment of one hundred and fifty men of the Waldeck Jägers, under the command of Major Von Gilten, were in the meantime sent thither by sea, a part of whom had arrived before the Governor. From the time that the English garrison quitted the post, a colonist, by name Thomas Ferreira, had taken possession of it as steward, a man of so harsh a disposition, and of such arbitrary principles, that it seemed as if Mr. Barrow had taken his picture of the colonists from him. This Ferreira was looked upon by his countrymen as one of the principal instigators of the Caffre war; at least it is certain that during its continuance some prisoners taken by him were scandalously ill-treated, and that he was mortally hated by the incensed savages. Major Von Gilten, upon his arrival, put Ferreira and some other turbulent spirits under arrest, that they might be punished by the Governor, and prevented from doing mischief in future.

Messengers were now sent to the Caffre Chiefs to propose peace, and to invite them to an interview with General Janssens. A like embassy was sent by the General to two hordes of Hottentots who were hovering about the country, under the conduct of Klaas Stuurmann, and Boewezak, the first of whom is known to the readers of Mr. Barrow's Travels. He had at the time of that gentleman's mission collected together a number of Hottentots, who

were discontented, and greedy of plunder, and was with difficulty persuaded by Mr. Barrow to follow him to Algoa bay; nor, when this was accomplished, would he remain there long, but soon with his followers joined the Caffres, and assisted them very much in the inroad they made upon the colony soon after. He seemed at first afraid to venture to the bay himself, notwithstanding the Governor's invitation, and wanted the latter to meet him at an appointed place. Hearing however that the Governor had summoned all Hottentots who had any complaints to make to appear before him, that their grievances, where any really existed, might be redressed, he assumed confidence, and went himself to Fort Frederic.

The General immediately ordered him into his presence, and put many questions to him, which he answered freely, though warily. When he was asked what the number of his followers might be, he did not appear willing to give a decisive answer; he also carefully evaded the inquiry into the complaints he had to make against the colonists, which occasioned his first secession from their service. Perhaps he thought that by what had since happened his grievances had been more than atoned, and that it was not prudent to come to a reckoning. Some of his followers, however, and other Hottentots from Vander Kemp's Institution, brought forwards their grievances, which were afterwards inquired into by jurisdictions appointed for the purpose. Stuurmann farther declared that his most earnest wish was to return to the colony, and enjoy, as formerly, peace and good-fellowship with the Christians. He proposed to the Governor to award him a little domain in the fertile country on the left bank of the Chamtoo river; but when the Governor endeavoured to persuade him that it would be more for the interest of both sides that he should have his habitation nearer the Cape Town, where he could be better protected by the government, he would not hear of it. All his followers, he said, earnestly wished to return, and live under the Christians, since among their present connections they had often scarcely sufficient to live upon, and had much to suffer from the Caffres. They would be very willing, upon good conditions, and under the Governor's pledge that the colonists should behave well to them, to hire themselves again as their herdsmen and house servants.

The General upon this informed him that a new code of laws was to be made for the Hottentots, by which the enjoyment of perfect freedom would

be secured to them, together with good treatment in the service of the **Christians**: all that had passed should be forgiven and forgotten, and himself and **his party** should be included under the protection of these laws, if they would **return** back into the colony. On the other side, it could never be permitted that they should continue to live as a company of vagabonds, and they must **impose** it as a duty upon themselves, if they wished for security, to gain their **livelihood** by diligence and industry. Robberies would be severely resented, and he should know how, especially since there was now a prospect of peace with the Caffres, to punish them with the utmost rigour. The General sent him away at last with some presents, and this interview had the good consequence that after some time most of his people returned quietly into the **service** of the colonists, or enlisted in the Hottentot corps, raised by the **Dutch**; and this corps, as long as they continued in possession of the colony, behaved in the most regular and orderly manner, nor ever gave any cause of **complaint** against them. Stuurmann himself remained with some of his **associates** in the neighbourhood of the Caffres, and supported himself, like **them**, in keeping cattle, and in the chase. In November, 1803, in hunting the **buffalo**, his gun unfortunately burst, and shattered his right arm, of **which** he died in a few days.

Two days after this conference with Stuurmann, two Caffres appeared before the Governor, one of whom was an envoy from Jaluhsa, the other from Sámbeh. They had another Hottentot family with them, who had lived for a long time in the Caffre country: they now however wished, under the protection of the new government, to return into the service of the **Christians**. They were clothed after the Caffre fashion, and assigned as the **reason** of their wishing for this new emigration, the want of sufficient means of support.

The ambassador from Jaluhsa had a timid appearance, but spoke quick, and with much facility; a Hottentot served him as interpreter. He said that he had come a week before to Algoa bay to seek the General, and in the name of his Chief to give him an assurance of his friendship. He came then in vain, and was returning, but before he arrived at Jaluhsa's habitation learnt that the Governor was actually arrived, and had therefore immediately turned back once more, in order to see him, without having spoken to his Chief again; he the rather considered it as unnecessary to continue his

journey home, before he thought of seeking the Governor, as he found that ambassadors from the latter were on their way to his master. On his solemn assurance that it was now the earnest wish of the Chiefs to live in peace and friendship with the Dutch, the Governor asked whether they themselves would come to confer with him upon the subject. To this the envoy answered that it could hardly be supposed they would venture upon such a thing, although he did not doubt but that they would be perfectly safe, that no harm would be done to them. He was then asked how he had ventured by himself. He replied that he had been commanded by his Chief, and fear could not then come into consideration; but no man could command his master, therefore the case was quite otherwise with him. The envoy was now handsomely entertained, and requested to remain till the return of the messengers sent to the Chiefs.

General Janssens in the mean time appointed a commission from among his followers, who were in his name to draw up articles of peace between the Dutch and the Caffres. He sketched also a plan of regulations for his own conduct, which he submitted to the most respectable among the colonists, they being better acquainted with the Caffres than himself; and it was upon some hints furnished by them that the plan was completed.

On the eighteenth of May, the envoys sent by the Governor to the Caffre Chiefs returned. They met with a very amicable reception from Conga, Sámbeh, Jaluhsa, and Tholy: each of these princes had a fat ox killed for their entertainment. They promised to be all at the Zondag's river in five days, and requested the Governor to meet them there, as they were afraid to come on to Algoa bay. They were still at enmity with King Geika, who not only sometimes attacked them, and took away their cattle, but had lately commissioned the Commandant Rensburg, who was returning into the country, to make a treaty for him with the Christians, and to endeavour to procure him their assistance, in reducing his rebel subjects to obedience. Since they had learnt this they were become distrustful, and wished first to speak to the Governor alone, that he might endeavour to reconcile them with the king.

Very soon after arrived an envoy from Conga, who confirmed all that the Dutch ambassadors had reported. This envoy called himself first minister to Conga; he had been before employed upon a similar errand, and wore upon his breast a copper-plate engraved with the arms of General Dundas,

which before the breaking out of the war he had received from the then Landdrost of Graaff Reynett. His name was Nacabaneh; he appeared about middle aged, was tall in stature, had a martial air, and a very keen eye. He said that he had four wives, but the purchase of them had cost him so much that he had scarcely any cattle remaining. He wore a mantle of tiger's skin, the point of which was fastened to the right shoulder, so that the arm remained at liberty. As he stood in presence of the Governor, he took care to throw back his mantle over the left shoulder, when on the left arm, above the elbow, eight beautiful bracelets were displayed, each cut out of a single piece of ivory. On both wrists he had copper bracelets, and round his waist he had a girdle ornamented with a double row of plates of copper. His head was decorated with a sort of diadem, consisting of a strip of leather about an inch wide, on which were sewed beads of all colours in symmetrical figures, and on the top of his head was a large bunch of quagga's hair, standing upright, intermixed also with beads and pieces of copper.

He contemplated with curiosity and admiration the number of new objects which now met his observation—the little fortress, the barracks, and the travelling apparatus of the Governor. As he went over the barracks the soldiers were at dinner, and he expressed his admiration very strongly at the order that reigned among them. He said that the Caffres had indeed a great many warriors who were not suffered to want; but that *he* must be a great man indeed who had so many rich people under him: if every one of the soldiers did but give him a button, what a rich man he should be, and yet they would still have enough left for themselves. It was incomprehensible to him how, amidst such a variety of business, every one should know his own. The large vessel which lay in the bay, *De Verwachting*, and which had brought the last part of the troops, above all things excited his astonishment: it was very much tossed by the swelling of the waves in the impetuous bay, and he stood for a long time upon the shore watching with eager curiosity the unloading of its cargo into boats. When he was invited to go on board, he repelled the idea with manifest terror at the thoughts of it, and declared that nothing could ever induce him to go upon the water. A dread of the water is common to all the Caffre tribes, even more particularly to the inhabitants of the coast. They have no sort of vessel for the purpose, and notwithstanding their want of resources for food, despise the easy one offered

them by the means of fisheries. The Caffres in the interior of the country equally reject the fish which their numerous streams might afford, and will only drink water from great thirst, and a total want of milk and whey. It is solely on account of their cattle that they fix their dwellings in the neighbourhood of springs and rivers.

But to return to our envoy. On his inquiring with great curiosity into the use of a cannon, the General, after explaining the effect, ordered one to be loaded and fired. At the going off of the piece, he gave tokens of great terror, but it was even exceeded by his astonishment. He sprang forwards with his eyes staring, and holding both his ears, and after drawing his breath very deep, whistled out a long protracted tone. He then inquired very eagerly how far such a shot would hit, and how many men it would kill at once. When it was proposed to him that the experiment should be repeated, he declined it anxiously, with a number of singular motions and gestures. The gold epaulets of the officers, the naked swords, the muskets, and many other objects, attracted his attention exceedingly, and when he was permitted to feel them, or to take them into his hands, his astonishment was expressed by repeated whistling. A watch interested him at first very much, but when he was informed that this instrument kept pace with the sun, he gave it back again without saying a word, almost as if offended that he should be told any thing so utterly incredible.

On the twentieth of May the Governor set out with his train for the Zondag's river, the appointed place of his interview with the Caffre Chiefs. As the train halted at the Kuga-river, the General was surprised by the arrival of five colonists, who came to inform him that at a short distance more than a hundred inhabitants of the neighbouring districts were assembled to testify their joy at the return of the old government, and to renew their oaths of allegiance to it. It was with no small pleasure the General heard that Rensburg was at the head of this assembly; he had for a long time expected his arrival, and the delay of it rather perplexed him. A little farther on, the train met eight more elderly colonists on horseback, who were sent by Rensburg to welcome the Governor, and ask his permission to receive him, according to the custom of the country, with a salute of fire-arms. As the road lay along the plain of the Zondag's river, the assembled colonists were soon discovered drawn up in a long row on their horses, with a great

number of waggons and tents behind them. After the Governor had been complimented with the proposed salute, Rensburg stepped forwards, and testified in a plain and concise speech how exceedingly overjoyed they all were at seeing the return of the Dutch government. They were come, he said, to assure him of their faith and obedience, of their desire to participate in the restoration of peace with the Caffres, and to receive the commands of the General from his own mouth.

The General availed himself of this opportunity, while he gave them many assurances of his paternal care, to remark upon the causes of the misfortunes they had experienced. The greater part of them he said were to be ascribed to their own misconduct,—to disunion among themselves, and to the intrigues of some evil spirits by whom they had been led astray. He however now hoped and expected to see an end of these things, to see them remain in peace and amity among themselves, and that he should receive their assistance in the restoration of tranquillity without doors as well as within: such were the objects he assured them most dear to his heart. His emotions in delivering these expressions of good-will towards them on the one side, and on the other the many assurances repeated by the colonists of their repentance, gratitude, and fidelity, rendered this scene extremely affecting and interesting to the by-standers. A quiet composure appeared among them all, and many of the party remarked upon the countenances of these rough unpolished men evident traces of inward emotion. The General, happy to observe this disposition, endeavoured, by conferring with several in a confidential manner, to procure his exhortations a more favourable reception, and to insure their making a more lasting impression.

In the mean time a common camp was formed on the bank of the river, which, from its extent, and the great number of men, horses, waggons, and tents, in this otherwise pleasing spot, made altogether a truly interesting scene. The train of the Governor consisted of a detachment of fifty-six jägers, nine dragoons, and thirty other persons, so that with the hundred and eight colonists and their Hottentots, there were altogether not less than two hundred and fifty men. Klaas Stuurmann was encamped on the other side of the river, and here and there appeared Caffres attracted by a particular share of curiosity. Stuurmann sent a basket of fresh milk over to the Governor as present, and several of the Caffres joined the messenger, to beg meat,

tobacco, and a little drop of what they prized above all things, brandy. Nothing that they asked for was refused them, and they returned over the river at night extremely delighted.

Nacabaneh remained all this time with the Governor, not however without evident signs of fear and distrust, on account of his numerous train. It was very difficult to quiet his apprehensions, and although he frequently assured the people about, even with loud laughter, that he was not afraid of any thing, he could not so far conceal his suspicions but that they were visible in his eyes. The whole of the following day the arrival of the Caffre Chiefs was expected in vain. In the interval, the General had many conferences with the colonists, particularly with Rensburg and Jaarsveld. From the first he learned that Geika had sent a messenger to him, to request that he would support him against his enemies, and constrain them finally to submit to him. To this Rensburg replied, that no step could be taken by the colonists without the consent of the government. Jaarsveld, whom the General had already sent from Zwelendam, informed him that he executed his commission to Geika, and that this king wished anxiously to see the Governor, and conclude a peace with him: he was ready for this purpose to meet him at any place he would appoint. Jaarsveld had also, he said, talked with Conrad Buys, and found him ready to submit in every way to the commands of the government.

Two days more elapsed before the eagerly expected chiefs made their appearance. In the mean time, messengers came from Conga to announce that he was approaching, and only waited for the arrival of the rest to make his appearance personally. People on the part of the Governor were again sent to him, whom he received in a very friendly manner, and repeated to them his assurances that he desired peace most ardently. He begged of them, as a token of friendship, a little flask of brandy, which, with some other presents, was immediately sent to him. The camp was never free from Caffres, whom curiosity brought thither: they were sometimes very importunate, and rather troublesome: they would amuse themselves with dancing and singing, in their way, for hours together. At length, on the twenty-third of May, the Chief Tholy, accompanied by another Chief named Tsjatsjo, and about twenty Caffres, came to the camp. They told the General that when all the others were collected, they would confer with him upon matters of business; that their present visit was meant only as a token of friendship and confidence.

They were conducted into a tent, and a cow was killed to do them honour: some of the flesh was given to them, which they roasted themselves, and they were besides, to their infinite delight, treated with plenty of tobacco and brandy.

Tholy hinted a wish for presents, and on being informed that there were some destined for all the Caffre Chiefs, which would be given them after the conferences, he begged to be permitted to see at least those intended for him. Tholy is tall in stature, somewhat plump, and has a more flat negro-like countenance than the Caffres in general. He had no other distinction in his dress than that his mantle was of a tiger's skin. In the afternoon the party returned over the river to Conga.

In the interval during which he was waiting for the arrival of the Chiefs, the General visited the Hottentot leader Klaas Stuurmann in his kraal, and endeavoured to obtain from him some farther insight into the occasion of the unfortunate disturbances. Stuurmann talked of the gross ill-treatment which he and his people had suffered. He named several colonists in particular, of whom he complained bitterly: they were all among those who had been for ten years considered as turbulent spirits. In the times of the English they had been the most eager in resisting the ordinances of the government; they had ardently wished for the contest with the Caffres, and by their harsh unruly behaviour had essentially promoted it. Indeed, it clearly appeared that the colonists of these parts were much more rough and rugged in their manners than any others; while the events of the last ten years, in which they had been engaged in rebellion, and in a war with savages, and subsequently lived a roving life, wandering hither and thither without any settled habitation, were well calculated to increase such unamiable propensities in their dispositions.

Early on the twenty-fourth, the Chiefs sent to announce their approach, and the General dispatched the Field-Commandant Botha, with some others, to receive them with due solemnity. When they arrived on the other side of the river, the Chiefs gave them to understand that they should not trust themselves to go over to the Governor's camp. A second embassy, consisting of the Adjutant-General and Captain Alberti, was equally fruitless: how much soever they endeavoured to inspire them with confidence, and prove to them that they had nothing to fear, they adhered to their point, and insisted that the Governor should come over to them. Even when he had yielded in this respect, still they found new difficulties, and were not without much per-

suasion induced to come out from among the bushes upon the plain. The General went with a very small train of his officers, and the Commandant of the colonists: still they kept him waiting a considerable time, till at length the interpreter and Stuurmann persuaded them to come forwards.

They approached with slow and trembling steps, one after the other, often stopping and looking back; at length Jaluhsa came forwards, and held out his hand to the Governor, after which Sámbeh, Conga, Tholy, Amaassi, and Tsjatsjo, did the same. They then seated themselves upon the ground in a semicircle: the Governor spoke to them in the kindest and most friendly manner, and before he entered upon the negotiation, asked them, through the interpreter, what made them so extremely fearful. They would not say positively, but intimated that they understood the Governor to have come to an understanding with Geika, and that he had promised to seize them and compel them to obedience. When satisfied that they were in an error upon this point, they assumed more confidence, but had no patience to wait the process of a regular negotiation: they said that the Governor had only to send them the presents he had mentioned, and peace would be concluded. It was impossible to make them comprehend that there were many points upon which the parties must come to a right understanding before peace could be concluded; they insisted that it was easily made, and began to return. Nothing then remained but for the officers appointed to draw up the conditions of peace to follow them to their own camp among the bushes, and here some farther conversation took place, in which the following points were discussed:

**Q.** What was the motive of the war?

**A.** The past should be forgotten, and indeed the true motives which first occasioned it were unknown to them.

**Q.** Whether they had been offended by any individuals among the colonists, and whether they had any particular ill-usage from them to complain of?

**A.** Yes. Very lately one of their people had been grossly ill-treated by Thomas Ferreira, without any provocation having been given. Former grievances had been already avenged by themselves.

**Q.** What was their present situation with regard to King Geika?

**A.** They were at open war with him. He had plundered them of a great many cattle, and they had it in contemplation to attack him with all their might.

**Q.** What was the origin of their differences?

*A.* They are accustomed to make war whenever they have a mind to it; but they were once followers of Geika.

*Q.* Were they not disposed to make peace with him?

To this most of them answered in the affirmative, but upon certain conditions; particularly that the Governor should protect them from Geika's arrogance and revenge. They could besides never make peace with him, unless he would consent to send away Conrad Buys, who had always incensed the king against them. Sámbeh alone declared that he never would be reconciled to Geika: he knew him well, as he had educated him from his youth, and no man could be so well aware as himself how little Geika was to be trusted.

It was now further signified to them, that if they would live at peace with the Christians, they must agree to the following conditions, and bind themselves to the punctual observance of them.

*First.* They should not prevent any of the Hottentots who were with them returning into the colony, if they were themselves inclined to it, and would enter into the service of the farmers, or join the mission-institute. The Governor promising the Hottentots sacredly on his part, that not only all former offences should be forgiven, but that they should be protected in the most powerful manner against any ill-treatment from the colonists.

*A.* There are scarcely any Hottentots among us, excepting those that were with Stuurmann, Boewesak, or Trompetter. The few that there are shall not be prevented returning.

*Secondly.* Whatever slaves of either sex, or of any age, shall have gone over to the Caffres during the war, or shall have fallen into their hands in any other way, shall be returned to their masters. None of them shall be punished for what has past, provided they behave well in future: this the Governor solemnly promises.

*A.* They are very ready to do this, but hope in return, that all Caffre children which have fallen into the hands of the colonists shall be given up.—Unconditionally agreed to.

*Thirdly.* All Dutch or other deserters who have taken refuge among them shall be given up, without promise of pardon.

*A.* Agreed unconditionally.

*Fourthly.* All fire-arms which they have plundered shall be restored.

*A.* As they did not know how to use fire-arms, all that they took were given to the Hottentots, who could use them, they had not therefore any in their possession.

*Fifthly.* The Great Fish-river shall be considered, as formerly, the boundary of the colony, and the Caffres shall return over it into their own country.

*A.* They acknowledge the Fish-river as their boundary, but they cannot return over it as long as they continue at war with Geika. They are at present about to offer him battle, and they petition the Governor that their cattle may remain under his protection till the battle is over. If they are conquerors, they will quit the colony entirely: but they must repeat the request, that the Governor will compel Buys to quit the Caffre country.

*Sixthly.* No Caffre shall come into the colony without the permission of his Chief, nor shall any colonist, without permission of the Governor, or of the landdrost of his district, pass over to the other side of the Fish-river.

Against this latter article they objected very much, and said that there could be no true peace, if people might not have intercourse with each other: besides, the colonists were such rich people, that they should be glad to come among them and gain a day's wages now and then.

Neither of the two last articles were of much avail, notwithstanding that the Governor in the sequel prohibited the colonists from taking any Caffre into their service. He recommended to the Caffres besides, to abstain from all commerce with the colonists, and promised them if they would do so, to send them from the Cape Town whatever they should want of European manufactures, at very moderate prices. They adhered to the proposition that it was better to trade with the colonists, although it was proved, and is easily to be conceived, that they were almost always overreached by them.

*Seventhly.* If a colonist offend a Caffre, the latter shall not revenge himself, but he shall give information either to the nearest magistrate, or to the commandant at Algoa bay, who shall take care that the offended party has entire satisfaction.

*A.* This request shall be punctually complied with.

*Eighthly.* On the other hand, a colonist shall be as little at liberty to revenge himself, but if he be plundered or injured by a Caffre, he shall complain to the Chief, and it is expected that in such a case the plunder shall be restored, and the offender punished.

*A.* Such offences shall be punished with death, nay, even the whole family of the offender shall be extirpated.

This compact was not brought to a conclusion without a great deal of trouble. The commissioners charged with the negociation were for three days together backwards and forwards with the chiefs, who soon grew weary of the conversation: whenever one side attempted therefore to renew the subject, the other shewed evident signs of listlessness and impatience. Several times the Chiefs seemed disposed to break off the negociation entirely, partly on the ground that they had no more provisions, partly pretending that they were afraid of an attack from Geika in their absence, when he might get possession of their cattle. At length, however, it was brought to a close, the Governor, in order to retain them, having sent them provisions for the last day. They were now invited to come to the Governor's camp to receive their presents, but only two of them, Tholy and Amaassi, ventured to accept the invitation: to them were consigned the presents both for themselves and the others. These peace-offerings consisted of knives, looking-glasses, buttons, beads, and tobacco; as presents in return, the Chiefs brought two oxen, and said they were their letters of compact. Klaas Stuurmann, who had been very assiduous in forwarding the peace, had also presents made him; and a number of the lower Caffres, who swam over to the camp on the last day, after having been well feasted, had some trifles given them at taking leave.

The General renewed several times to the Chiefs the offer of his mediation to bring about, if possible, a peace between them and Geika; he even invited them to send ambassadors to the king under his protection. They did not appear very desirous of peace, and were not without some difficulty persuaded to send a man with the Governor, who, after the interview of the latter with Geika, should return to inform them of the result, as far as they were concerned in it.

On the twenty-seventh of May, the Governor returned back to Algoa bay. There he instituted inquiries among the Hottentot disciples of Vander Kemp and others, respecting the complaints they had to make against the colonists. In this examination it appeared that some of the latter had indeed been guilty of the most atrocious conduct towards their dependents; there was but too much reason even to believe that they had deeds of murder to answer for. However, as positive proof of these things was not to be obtained,

and it was to be feared that without them the College of Justice at the Cape Town would suffer the offenders to go unpunished, the Governor thought it better to take the whole matter upon himself.

Thomas Ignatius Ferreira was banished for ever from the country, and admonished to transport himself and all his moveable property to Zwellendam, there to live under the immediate inspection of the landdrost of that district. A like fate was decreed to his two sons Stephen and Henry, with his last wife Martha, and another colonist, by name John Arend Rens. By the rest of the colonists, who were most of them well-disposed, well-judging men, this sentence of the Governor was highly commended, while upon many who were a little too conscious that they might have been justly involved in some censure, though perhaps not quite so severe, the example made a deep impression, convincing them clearly of the injustice of their proceedings, and determining them to alter their conduct in future.

The General now published an ordinance, that from the first of June no colonist should take a Caffre into his service, and whoever had any then as servants should discharge them immediately, and see that they were safely restored to their native country. Such only were to be permitted to remain who had been a full-year in their service, and desired themselves to continue in it. At the same time he ordered that all children of Caffres who had been taken in the late wars, and were now in the hands of the colonists, should be restored by the safest means to their parents: no exception to be made here, not even in the case of their expressing a wish to stay.

On the second of June the Governor sent two colonists as messengers to Geika, to invite him to an interview at the Great Fish-river, and he immediately set out himself upon his journey thither. On their way through the fertile regions bordering the Zondag's and the Bosjesmans'-rivers, and the country formerly called Quammedakka, the company had daily visits from a great number of Caffres who now inhabited the district. On the dry plain between the two rivers they found vast numbers of antelopes, both great and small, and several quaggas. In one day, the Jägers in the Governor's train killed fifty-four head of mountain antelopes, with a great deal of other game. The red deer were in such abundance, that large spaces were covered with them; they seemed to be in flocks of several thousands, and it was really a beautiful sight to see them flying before the hunters, bounding

along with such springs, that they went almost as much through the air as along the ground. On another day, among a troop of mountain deer, which seemed not to consist of less than three thousand, one was seen perfectly white. The General no sooner expressed a wish to have this rarity, than some of the young people pursued the animal in such a way, that they soon separated it from the rest, and surrounded it, so that it was taken after some hours chase without being shot, by fairly wearying it out. The General, in the sequel, gave the skin of this rare animal to Monsieur Perron, who stopped at the Cape in his return from the South-sea, and it is now in the Museum of the National Institute at Paris, where it is considered as a particular curiosity.\*

The camp at night was commonly visited by a great many jackalls and hyænas, which were so daring, that they even came between the tents and among the waggons, so as to terrify the oxen exceedingly. The cries of anguish uttered by these creatures, and their struggles to break loose from the waggons, to which they were tied, commonly frightened the marauders away again. During the first encampment, on the Zondag's river, one of the colonists killed a spotted hyæna in a very extraordinary manner. The man was lying sleeping at night upon a waggon, at the end of which hung a fresh killed sheep. The scent of it had probably attracted the hyæna, and while he was beginning to regale himself with the feast, the colonist, taking his gun, crept slowly forwards, and pushing it almost to the creature's mouth, shot him through the head. Among the bushes, through which the road lay at intervals, the party found an immense number of monkeys, chiefly the long-tailed green sort, which is peculiar to this part of Southern Africa.† Some of the colonists were singularly dexterous in climbing up the trees after these animals and taking them.

On the tenth of June, General Janssens with his train reached the Great Fish-river, but the messengers who had been sent to Geika did not return till the fourteenth. They had been received in a very friendly manner, but the King declared, that menaced as he was by his enemies, he was afraid to go so far from his residence, and must intreat the General to come some days

---

\* Humboldt mentions some sorts of the *Cervus mexicanus*, which are to be met with in the Caraccas, entirely white.

† *Cercopithecus glaucus*, mentioned by Le Vaillant.

journey nearer to him. Directly after them came Conrad Buys to the camp. He brought with him three deserters from the ninth battalion of Jägers, who had taken refuge with the Caffres,\* but Geika, in delivering them up, earnestly solicited that they might be pardoned. There was also an Englishman in his party, who had given himself out as a traveller from London, but who was afterwards found to be a deserter. In the course of his journey the General met in different places with six other English deserters. Some were concealed among the savages, some among the colonists: many such had wandered as vagabonds about the colony, and their influence upon the character of the colonists had been extremely pernicious. Even the most uneducated European surpasses the African colonist, bred up in perfect solitude, in a certain readiness of wit; and these men, not being troubled with very strict principles, seldom made use of their superiority for any other purpose than to preach their convenient doctrines to the rough borderers, which was often the occasion of seducing them into crimes, and into disobedience to the government. The General therefore awarded the English deserters an abode near the Cape Town, where, being in an inhabited country, they might be under the constant eye of the magistrate, and gain their living in a more creditable manner. The Dutch deserters were carried prisoners to the Cape, and there punished according to the military law.

Buys repeated Geika's invitation, and expressed great doubts whether the compact with the rebel Caffre Chiefs would ever be executed. Geika had many complaints to make of their robberies and petty attacks, and he was every moment in expectation of their falling upon him with their united power. The General exhorted Buys to use all his endeavours to dispose Geika to peace, as the colony suffered exceedingly from these dissensions among the Caffre Chiefs. He further required of him, that he should himself return into the colony, as his abode with the king was a great cause of discontent to the rebels. Buys declared his willingness to comply with the Governor's wishes in both instances. He had twelve Caffres with him, four of whom were amongst Geika's most distinguished officers; these were

---

\* These belonged to the piquet of Poles which were mentioned some way back as having deserted from the Weinberg in February, 1803.

Enno, Cassa, Spondo, and Umláo: the last is the brother of Tholy. When they were introduced to the Governor, they said pretty much the same as Buys had done: some presents were made to Enno, who was brother-in-law to the king, and he was dispatched to inform the latter and the Queen-mother that the General was on his way, and would meet them in five days at the Kat-river.

On the following day therefore the journey was recommenced. The route lay through a wild country, every where entirely uncultivated, and abounding in game to an almost inconceivable degree. There were many sorts of antelopes, quaggas, and wild-boars, and in one day the hunters killed so large a number of animals of different kinds that their united weight amounted to some thousands of pounds. This was an excellent supply, as in making provision for the journey, it was not calculated that the company were to go so far from any habitations of Christians. The country was not mountainous, but there was no tracked road, and a number of little streams to cross without a beaten way through, so that they were very inconvenient for the loaded waggons: sometimes it was even necessary to cut a way through the bushes, or the waggons could not have got on. On the twenty-first of June the General and the party at length reached the appointed place, having travelled six days constantly in a south-easterly direction. In the interval the perplexed state of public affairs was increased by some colonists of Bruintjeshoogte, whose cattle had been stolen by the wandering Caffres, having followed the robbers; and as the latter would not give back their prey, two of them had been shot. This affair had, however, no farther consequences, and in the end Geika said that the colonists had done right.

On the twenty-second, some couriers who had been sent forwards announced the approach of King Geika. They were commissioned to request that the Governor would on the morrow dispatch some of his officers and dragoons to meet him, and that a waggon or car might be sent for his mother, as, on account of her corpulence, travelling was fatiguing to her. These requests were complied with, and the waggon with the guard of honour set off in the morning. They met the Caffre king seated on a horse without a saddle, and as the detachment drew near he stopped. After contemplating them for a few moments

with a pleased and curious eye, he seemed to consult the principal people

with him, then rode a few steps forward, then halted again, and seemed for some minutes doubtful whether in his confidence he was not running himself into danger. At last he appeared to come to a hasty resolution: he made a long whistle with his mouth, and at this signal his whole train, which consisted of about a hundred and fifty persons, women included, put themselves in motion. His mother got into the car, the king remained on horseback, and all the rest were on foot: thus they proceeded in a brisk trot to the Dutch Camp. When arrived there the king dismounted, and being conducted to the General's tent, he with the most perfect ease, and not without dignity, held out his hand to him.

Geika is one of the handsomest men that can be seen, even among the Caffres uncommonly tall, with strong limbs and very fine features. His countenance is expressive of the utmost benevolence and self-confidence, united with great animation; there is in his whole appearance something that at once speaks the king, although there was nothing in his dress to distinguish him, except some rows of white beads which he wore round his neck. It is not hazarding too much to say that among the savages all over the globe a handsomer man could scarcely be found. Nay, one might go farther, and say that among the sovereigns of the cultivated nations it would perhaps be difficult to find so many qualities united, worthy of their dignity. His fine tall well-proportioned form, at the perfect age of six and twenty, his open, benevolent, confiding countenance, the simplicity yet dignity of his deportment, the striking readiness of his judgment and of his answers, his frankness, and the rational views he took of things;—all these properties combined are not often to be found among those, who, according to our commonly received opinions, have had infinitely greater advantages in the forming their persons and minds.

Besides his mother, two of his wives accompanied him, whose names were Nonihbe, and Solohgöü. These three came with him into the General's tent, where, after the first courtesies had passed, and while they were partaking of a little entertainment, a conversation was begun, which from the unembarrassed manner, and liberal assurances of the King, so far beyond all expectation, was interesting in the highest degree. On account of the warmth of the day, the side coverings of the tent were thrown half open, and the military officers and

colonists stood round. Near Geika, at the entrance, were his principal people, and behind them, in a semicircle, the whole train of the Caffres, with their hassagais at their feet.

At dinner, the king, with his family, were invited to the Governor's table, and although he was a perfect stranger to most of the dishes, as well as to the manner of eating, he immediately caught the use of the knife and fork, and instructed his wives in it, who were not so ready as himself. He several times declared that he liked the European manner of dressing meat exceedingly; and when any thing particularly pleased his palate, he immediately handed a piece over his shoulder to his attendants, who were standing without. He seemed to drink wine with pleasure, but drank little; his wives liked it still better; indeed, as it appeared in the end, they rather liked it too well. The European dress pleased him particularly; and as there was a suit of clothes among the presents destined for him, it was presented upon the spot. He was exceedingly anxious to put it on immediately, and some of our officers, who in the interim had entirely won his confidence, assisted him. He then shewed himself with evident delight to his subjects, who on their side uttered many exclamations of astonishment and admiration. The clothes were much too short and too small for him; but he, notwithstanding, looked extremely well in them, and they made him indeed appear of gigantic stature. Nothing seemed to please him more highly than the military hat with the feather and cockade. Yet feeling himself rather confined, he afterwards expressed a wish to have, instead of them, the General's large cloth cloak; this, however, was so indispensable to the latter on the journey, that it could not be spared, and instead of it the king was promised that one should be sent to him.\*

---

\* This promise was punctually fulfilled, and with the cloak several other things were sent, among which was a complete Hussar uniform, richly trimmed with gold lace, and a horse with a handsome saddle and bridle, and embroidered housings. Alberti gives the following account of the satisfaction which the whole present seemed to afford the king. "When I had conversed with him for some time," says he, "upon various subjects, I retired from my tent, all his train following me, that he might dress himself in the uniform which had been sent him from the Cape Town. It fitted him extremely well, and was very becoming to him. He then came out from the tent, where a richly caparisoned horse, sent also by the Governor, was waiting for him. He mounted it with his usual address, and his pleasure seemed to reach its highest possible point,

On the following morning a solemn interview was again held, in which many proposals made to the king as the foundation of a lasting peace underwent a long discussion between him and the Governor. He appeared in his usual Caffre dress, and was accompanied by his mother and his most confidential followers. The trains on both sides were, as the day before, without the tent. Buys served as interpreter on the side of Geika; on our's we had a Gonaqua from Bethelsdorp. The conference lasted a long time, as Geika upon any difficult point consulted his mother and his friends. The following is the substance of the most important matters that came under discussion.

After the Governor had explained the object of his journey, Geika assured him that it gave him very great pleasure to see the regent of the colony, and that this interview was more gratifying to him than all the presents that had been made him. He always was a friend to the Christians, and that was

when a looking-glass about six feet high was produced and set before him. He was so astonished, that it was even some minutes before he could recover himself. His vanity was now fully displayed, by galloping to a certain distance backwards and forwards before the people for a considerable time, while they contemplated him with the utmost admiration, uttering all the time loud shouts of applause. I observed that he was more particularly delighted with the applauses he received from the women."

According to Alberti's account, the Caffres infinitely prefer the European fashion of clothing to their own, and acknowledge it to be more convenient, and a better protection against the weather. They find besides something in the dress which distinguishes them, and gives them consequence. The Queen-mother was very happy in wearing a man's night-gown, which she had received as a present from an European, and seemed to be very much admired in it.

This love of European clothing is common to almost all savages. The blacks on the coast of Guinea are so particularly desirous of it, that the traders thither formerly used to buy large bundles of frippery at the market at Amsterdam upon speculation to carry to this coast. An acquaintance of mine among the Dutch navy officers, who in his early years had been at the Gold-coast, gave us a very humorous description of the purchases which he once saw made by the blacks from one of these speculators. The choice of a negro captain, among a variety of clothing laid before him, fell upon a small three-cornered hat with gold lace, a scarlet frock of the old French make, and a pair of velvet shoes with pinchbeck buckles. He immediately put them all on, and took into his hand a long metal-headed stick, which he had also purchased, and exhibited himself this grotesque figure with his black body beneath his red coat (for a shirt, waistcoat, small clothes, and stockings, which had been proposed to him, he rejected as useless and troublesome) before his fellow-countrymen with the utmost self-satisfaction, and was contemplated by them with no slight degree of envy.

imputed to him as a crime by those rebel subjects, who were now making war upon him on all sides.

*The Governor.* The disunion among the Caffres has been the cause of great misfortunes to the colony, since numerous bodies of them have penetrated into the heart of it, and are even now established very far beyond the bounds which had been agreed upon as the limits of the two countries.

*Geika.* That was not his fault. He could not restrain the intruders, and had never taken the remotest share in the plunders and devastations that had been committed.

*The Governor.* From the concord now established between the present Dutch government and its subjects, the power of the Christians is, beyond all comparison, greater than it was in the time of the English, and they should now be able to repel immediately any attack that might be made.

*Geika.* This is a thing at which he sincerely rejoices. The dissensions among the Christians had been as unfortunate to him as to themselves, since, had it not been for them, his rebel Chiefs would not have succeeded in finding an asylum in the colony.—He took this opportunity of inquiring what was become of the rebellious colonists whom the English had at that time carried prisoners to the Cape Town, and seemed very much to rejoice that they had been leniently dealt with. He seemed not less rejoiced to learn that by the colony being given up again to the Dutch a general amnesty was established.

*The Governor.* In what relation does the King stand with the Caffres who are now in the colony?

*Geika.* He is totally at variance with them; in a state of the most destructive war.

*The Governor.* It appears of the utmost importance to the King himself, that the rebels should submit, and that a reconciliation should take place upon equal terms. What then stands in the way of such a reconciliation? and why should not the King send messengers with proposals of peace?

Here Geika broke out into bitter complaints against the rebels, and with manifest grief of heart assured the Governor that since his accession there was nothing he had endeavoured with more zeal than to preserve peace among his subjects; but his uncle was a man ambitious of rule, and who could never support the idea of being a subject to his pupil. It was he who had estranged the hearts of some of the people from him, and taught them to

despise the principle that they owed to him their faith and allegiance. He would say nothing of his personal flight out of the country, but his having seduced away so many kraals, and having subsequently waged such a destructive war against his king, and those of his subjects who adhered to their allegiance, was wholly unpardonable. Nor had they only made war against their king; they had even attempted his life—a crime till then without example.

His mother here took up the subject, and related with appearances of the highest indignation that they had even gone so far as to throw a hassagai at the King, by which he was wounded. The recollection of this circumstance excited equal indignation in all the Chiefs who were present; they began to speak eagerly, and all together, and their whole demeanour clearly evinced what an exalted idea these savages entertain of the inviolability of majesty.\*

The king interrupted them, and proceeded, observing that it was scarcely possible to live in peace with such men. The Governor himself, he added, must recollect the horrors of which they had been guilty, in their attack upon his countrymen: the malignity of their dispositions was throughout that affair sufficiently manifested. He had hoped that the Christians would not have forgotten such atrocities, but would have been ready to unite themselves with him against them: their whole behaviour, since their first entering the colony, he was sure had merited the severest chastisement. But, he remarked, since the Governor thought otherwise, and had condescended to make peace with them, he was ready to do the same, upon their unconditional submission; he would even promise to forget all past offences, and take them again under his protection. He would not, however, send messengers to them; it was their part to send and solicit peace from him. He had several times sent them proposals of accommodation, but the messengers had been exceedingly ill received, and sent back with contumely, and no more overtures should be made on his part. In promising if the Governor could persuade

---

\* This feature in the character of the nation throws, as it appears to me, a particular light upon the degree of their political cultivation. It will be recollected in the conflicts between Palo and his brother, above related, that when the former had the king in his power, he not only did not put him to death, but restored him to his dignity, as he should otherwise have drawn upon himself the indignation of the whole country.

them to submission, to receive them with kindness, and forget all that had passed, he considered himself as making no slight concessions.

The Governor then proposed if peace should be made, and the revolted tribes should be reduced to obedience, that in order to bind the union closer, implements of husbandry, and tools for mechanical works, should from time to time be sent from the colony to the Caffres, that the latter might have the means afforded them of acquiring greater wealth, and a more abundant portion of the comforts and enjoyments of life. A Commissary should also be sent annually into the country to see that the articles of peace were punctually observed by the colonists and the Caffres, and to settle any differences that might have arisen with regard to their respective rights.

These proposals were received by Geika with particular delight; and when he expressed his earnest wish to live in the closest friendship with the colonists, he remarked that the distance of the Cape Town was a great obstacle to the maintenance of such a friendship. He inquired therefore whether it would not be possible to appoint some person, not too far from the Caffre borders, to whom he might apply in any case when he wished to be informed respecting the Governor's pleasure. The latter answered that his wishes for a close union between the two nations were no less eager and sincere, and that the Commandant at Algoa bay might always be applied to, whenever the King wished for any communication with the government.

*The Governor.* The boundaries of the colony shall then remain the same as they were settled by Governor Plettenberg.

*Geika.* Agreed.

*The Governor.* No Christian shall travel in the Caffre country without permission from the government, nor shall any Caffre come into the colony but under the sanction of his king. In order to ascertain whether travellers have such a permission, some token shall be agreed upon to serve them as a passport.

*Geika.* This the King entirely approves, and will immediately send information to the Commandant at Algoa bay, when any Christian is found travelling in the Caffre country without such a token; and he intreats that like information may immediately be dispatched to him, if a Caffre should appear in the colony without being duly authorised.

*The Governor.* The Caffres shall deliver up to the Christians whatever has been taken from them during the war, whether Hottentots, slaves, fire-arms, horses, or cattle.

*Geika.* These are things not in his power. If the Christians shall succeed in reducing the rebel Caffres to obedience, this must be made a condition before their return home shall be permitted. But if they should be driven out of the colony, and thus placed again in his power, he promises that every thing shall be duly restored.

*The Governor.* All white people who are now in the Caffre country shall be compelled to return to the colony, or they shall be considered as enemies to their country, and Geika as their protector.

*Geika.* He is perfectly satisfied that all the white people shall quit the country; he only desires to retain Buys, for he knows him well, and cannot dispense with his counsels.

The Governor, however, adhered to the condition, of Buys, as well as all other white people, being compelled to return as indispensable, and assured the King that the colonist would not the less remain his firm friend. If he should want counsel, he might apply to the Commandant at Algoa bay, who would be equally his friend.

*The Governor.* In case ships of any nation shall be stranded upon the Caffre coast, the crew shall be kindly treated, the property, if any can be saved, shall be carefully guarded, and information of the matter shall be immediately conveyed to the nearest landdrost, or to the Commandant of Algoa bay.

*Geika.* This is faithfully promised; and moreover, the crew shall be furnished with food, till assistance can be sent them. But he hopes that the General will assure to every Caffre who is active in assisting the sufferers a suitable reward, exceeding any presents that he might previously have received.

*The Governor.* Lastly, the King is requested to afford all the elucidation in his power with regard to an accusation brought against certain persons, that they had endeavoured to excite him against some colonists, and persuade him to seize them and put them to death.

To this Geika answered clearly and distinctly, that four or five years before, Meinier, then landdrost of Graaff-Reynett, had sent presents to him, and

promised him others, if he would consent to put Buys and Rensburg out of the way. With regard to their property, all their cattle should be his (Geika's); the sheep should be given up to the landdrost, and the horses divided between them. This proposal he had indignantly rejected, as he was incapable of betraying his friends.

After the several articles of this agreement, according to what is stated above, were drawn out upon paper, and signed by the proper persons, the King's presents were laid before him, which consisted, besides the suit of clothes already mentioned, of provisions of various kinds, tobacco, many different ornaments, and other trifles. The latter he immediately divided among his followers,\* and of the other things he also gave parts among his Chiefs and principal officers, although they, as well as the women, had separate presents made to them.

Soon after the Governor received from the King four fine beautiful oxen, as a counter-present, and as a ratification of the peace concluded. In the afternoon he made his farewell visit to the General, without his train, and in his Caffre dress, but wore on his head the three-cornered hat, with the white feather.

He now requested to know expressly how long the rebel Caffres would be allowed to remain in the colony if they did not accept the offered peace; and as he received no decisive answer to this question, he broke out anew into complaints against Sámbeh, and said he must relate the following circumstance to the Governor.

A colonist of the name of John Botha had been living with him (Geika) for a considerable time, having fled when the colony fell into the hands of the English; but when he heard that it was restored to the Dutch, he resolved upon returning. Botha, at his departure, in gratitude for the protection he had received, made him a present of four oxen, four cows, and a gun. In

---

\* The same was done by him with regard to the presents made him by Mr. Barrow, which consisted only in tobacco, beads, pieces of copper, and knives. On this occasion he observed to Vander Kemp, that they must consider the King of the Caffres in a very pitiful light, if they could suppose his friendship was to be obtained by such trifles. The presents which he received in the sequel from the government, and which were delivered to him by Alberti, consisted of European cloth, mantles, a horse, with a handsome saddle and bridle, a two-wheeled carriage, and other things of a similar nature.

his way home he was attacked and murdered by Sámbeh's people, and all his property was seized by them, which Sámbeh afterwards declared to be lawful plunder. Geika, however, required the restoration of the property for the support of the widow, but only received from him two sick horses, which soon after died, two female slaves, and a gun; these he had honourably sent to the poor widow.

In this last conversation it appeared very clearly that Geika did not by any means accurately understand the relationship subsisting between the English and Dutch. When first the colony was taken by the former, and they sent ambassadors to him, he could not comprehend what they wanted with him: he knew of no other white people but his neighbours, and the Company they represented. Afterwards, when Buys and other colonists fled to him, who were not very well disposed towards the English, Buys endeavoured to explain the situation of things by a simile. The old Company he said were inhabitants of a large country, and what they possessed in that neighbourhood was only of the size in comparison to it that a cattle-fold is compared with a whole farm. But the English were the Bosjesmans of the sea, and had taken this cattle-fold from its rightful owners. Nothing could more completely disparage the name of Englishman in the conceptions of the Caffres: the idea of traitors and robbers was indissolubly associated with it, and the whole nation became the objects of their hatred.\* It was therefore extremely difficult to make Geika comprehend how the colony could be peaceably restored to its former possessors.

When the king at length departed, he held out his right hand again to the Governor, and separated himself with repeated assurances of the utmost personal friendship for him. The next morning Buys had permission to follow the King, in order to settle, as soon as possible, all things necessary, prior to his return into the colony. On the same day, General Janssens with his train set out from the Kat-river, on their return to Graaff-Reynett.

A few weeks after, Captain Alberti, in the name of the Governor, resumed the negotiations with the Caffres. Sámbeh, Jaluhsa, and Conga, had separated from each other, each taking his kraal to a particular circle of his own, but all between the Bosjesmans' and the Zondag's rivers. The captain

---

\* Vander Kemp is again my authority for this circumstance.

visited each singly in his camp, and found them disposed to be much more friendly, and to shew greater confidence in the Dutch, than at the former interview with the Governor. They all complained that no abatement appeared in Geika's hostile dispositions towards them; that he continued to plunder their cattle, and would not abstain from it. But the greatest subject of complaint was, that Buys was still with him, and that he did not send messengers to propose peace: never, they said, could friendship be restored between them till his conduct was altered on these points.

On the other side, in a letter recently received by Alberti from Buys, he said that Geika complained exceedingly of the still continued enmity of these Chiefs; that they had not only recently murdered some of his people, but had again attempted his life. A rumour was indeed abroad among the Hottentots that the separation among the Chiefs was occasioned by two of them having urged the attacking Geika's kraal while he was negotiating with General Janssens at the Kat-river, to which the rest would not consent, on account of their promise given to the General. Nor was such an intention positively denied by the Chiefs; they only when questioned upon the subject broke out into fresh complaints and accusations against Geika. Sámbeh even declared that the murder of John Botha had been perpetrated in compliance with Geika's commands, and whatever had been taken from the murdered man had been immediately conveyed to him.

From all this it appeared evident that the hatred and distrust which had so long reigned between the parties would not be very easily removed, and during its continuance there seemed no hopes that the rebel Caffres would either by exhortations or menaces be prevailed with to quit the Dutch territory, or even to move nearer the borders: this was a great injury to the farmers, who were desirous to return to their habitations. The Caffres declared that they could only consider themselves as safe on this side the Fish-river, since Geika would not dare to attack them directly in the neighbourhood of the Christians; they were ready to fulfil all the conditions of peace if they might only be permitted awhile to continue in the place which had so long afforded them an asylum. It was indeed true that all their engagements had been punctually fulfilled: they had given up the slaves, the Hottentots, and some muskets, and their deportment in every respect indicated that they had no thoughts of disturbing the colonists; that an attack from them was not in the least to be

apprehended. On the contrary, their confidence in Captain Alberti seemed to increase with every visit made by him, and they repeatedly assured him that they were convinced peace was earnestly wished on our side. Yet notwithstanding these things, our intercourse with them was exceedingly embarrassing and disagreeable, since there was no reliance to be placed upon them; scarcely any thing that they said was wholly true, and in order to keep on good terms with them, it was necessary to put the most advantageous construction upon their representations that they would admit of. They besides closed their ears with a painful pertinacity against every proposal which was made tending to persuade them to pursue conciliatory measures, answering either that it did not please them, or that it was not a thing to be heard of.

It was moreover clearer and clearer every day that Geika's conduct towards them neither accorded so well as could be wished with the promises and assurances he had made to the Governor, or with what was required by justice and humanity. It was proved incontrovertibly that his people indulged themselves in acts of power and malignity towards their revolted countrymen which were wholly unjustifiable. From whatever cause these things might really originate, it became more and more urgent, that Buys, who, by the opposers of the King, was universally considered as the exciter of them, should quit his situation. He excused himself to Alberti, who sent requisitions to him upon the subject, on the ground that he had not the waggons necessary for the transport of his effects, and that he should run a great hazard in travelling through the country occupied by the King's enemies. In order to obviate this pretence for further delay, an escort was sent to him from Graaff-Reynett, and under its protection he returned into the colony about the beginning of November. He brought back also two Europeans, who had lived in the closest intimacy with him in the Caffre country, one a German, by name Faber, the other John Madder, an English deserter.

The latter informed Captain Alberti, that seven Christians, who, besides themselves, had been living in the Caffre country, intended to travel northwards, and if possible reach Da Lagoa bay. This party consisted of four colonists, who had for a long time not enjoyed a very high reputation, that is two brothers by name Bezuidenhout, and two other brothers named Lochenhout. The remainder of the party were Thomas Bentley, Coves Bork, and Harry

Obry, three English deserters. Their plan, which they had imparted to Madder, wanting to persuade him to join the party, was first to procure powder and shot, and some other necessaries, from the Cape Town, and then set off on their journey. The project was never entirely completed, since Alberti, in consequence of this information, watched them too narrowly. They set out therefore without being properly equipped, and instead of going directly northwards, followed the boundaries of the colony: they were in the sequel heard of about the Orange-river, where, in the Sixth Part of this work, there will be occasion again to mention them.

Although Buys assured us that Geika was very much disposed to peace, and thought earnestly of reconciling himself, if possible, with his revolted subjects, excepting only Sámbeh, no advances had hitherto been made towards it. Two women from Geika's kraal had visited some of their relations who were with Jaluhsa; they were on that account considered as a sort of precursors of messengers to propose peace, yet no symptoms of the visit leading to such consequences appeared. The good understanding between the colonists and the Caffre Chiefs however continued, although among the dependents of the latter there were still instances of individual robbery; whenever such occurred, whether from fear, or from a spirit of revenge, a great outcry was raised, and every means possible employed to discover the plunderer.

Among other instances of this kind, fourteen young oxen were stolen from a colonist by name Prinsloo. One of his Hottentots, a most excellent hunter and herdsman, followed their traces, and tracked them straight to Sámbeh's kraal, where he found them. The man had the good sense immediately to apply to the Chief himself to reclaim his master's property. A search for the oxen was instituted; the perpetrator of the theft was detected, and was instantly put to death by Sámbeh himself with his own hand. The animals were restored, all but two, which had been already killed, and instead of these the Chief gave two young oxen of his own, sending a third as a present to the field-cornet of the district. The latter sent all the three back, which Sámbeh took very much amiss, and declared that if they were not accepted he should doubt very much the sincerity of the wishes for peace which had been so often professed. Notwithstanding this, he denied the whole transaction, when some time after Alberti had a conference with him: he was

afraid that the Governor might reproach him with his people committing such crimes, and conceive a contemptible opinion of his authority that he could not keep them better under control.

Nor were the rest of the Caffre Chiefs less eager to prove how sincerely they wished to live on terms of friendship and good understanding with the Christians. Many cows and oxen that were stolen by the people were by them sent back to the rightful owners, after the robbers had been severely punished; their return was, besides, commonly accompanied with some presents, and an earnest request that no complaints upon the subject should be made to the Governor. Once, when Alberti encamped for the night near Jaluhsa's kraal, the Chief recommended to him to have his oxen tied up for the night, and well guarded, for there was no security that some of the vagrant Caffres might not be roving about in the night, and steal the cattle, if they found them straying; and then, the Chief observed, the robbery would be imputed to his people. Another time Sámbeh punished a herdsman in Alberti's presence, giving him many severe blows, because he had left the herd; and he said, if in consequence any of the animals had strayed away, ill-intentioned people might have said that they had been taken by the Christians, and it would grieve him exceedingly that they should get an ill name, since he was well convinced that they had no desire to break the peace.

Towards the end of November, Alberti, already informed of the Commissary-general's intended journey, had again interviews with each of the Caffre Chiefs. He found them in much the same disposition, pertinaciously refusing to return and submit to Geika, because he had neither sent ambassadors to them, nor discarded Buys from his counsels; for they had not yet learned the arrival of the latter in the colony. The captain, however, found it adviseable now to insist more urgently upon their endeavouring to reconcile themselves with the king, since they prevented the return of the rightful owners of the country to their respective properties, and even threatened them with being at last driven away, if they would not go peaceably. He warned them that a person no less high in authority than the Governor was on his journey into the country, who would see that the conditions of peace were in every respect properly fulfilled.

For the rest, all the Caffre children who had been found in the colony were delivered up, and this greatly strengthened their confidence in the sincerity

of the peace. It seemed indeed now so firmly assured, that the people ventured to rove about in small parties, visiting the colonists at their habitations, to their great annoyance. Parties of this kind, as has been mentioned, were met by us in our journey from the Kromme-river to Algoa bay, almost at every farm where we stopped; and my readers will recollect how very far these guests were from being welcome. Captain Alberti was not wanting in admonitions to them to remain quiet at their proper dwellings; he even warned them that he could not be answerable for the consequences, if they would persist in roving about; but nothing could restrain them: they said that they were so happy among the Christians, and that there was no better country for hunting after their manner than that about the Chamtoo-river. When they were asked whether it was their intention to renew the war, they answered that peace had been made, that the Governor himself had signed the agreement, and that they knew very well they had nothing to fear.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Continuation of our Journey.—Departure from Algoa bay.—Zwartkop's-river.—Remarkable Salt-lake.—The Koega-river.—The Order established in pitching our Camp.—Zondag's-river.—Visits from a great Number of Caffres.—Large Flocks of Antelopes and Quaggas.—The Springbok.—The Bosjesmans'-river.—The Arrival of the Caffre Chiefs expected in vain.—Hofmangat.—Deformity of the Mimosas.—Nieuwejaarsdrift.—The Little Fish-river.*

SUCH was the situation of affairs between the Dutch government and the Caffres, when the Commissary-general arrived at Algoa bay. After he had been thoroughly instructed by Captain Alberti upon the subject, he judged that it would be highly expedient for him to obtain personal interviews with the rebel Chiefs who were within the colony, as well as with King Geika, that the quarrels among these savages, by which the colonists were such severe sufferers, might be accommodated as soon as possible.

Messengers then having been sent to the Chiefs, as was related in the latter end of the second part of this work, we ourselves departed from Algoa bay on the thirteenth of January: we were accompanied the whole way by Captain Alberti, at the head of a detachment of fifteen Waldeck Jägers. We pursued our way first along the shore of the bay, and soon passed the Little Zwartkop's-river, which was entirely dry. Farther on we came to the house of the widow Van Royen, whose husband was killed in the Caffre war, in an attack which they made upon him by night, while he was resting quietly in his house. The ruins of the buildings which had been burned spoke it to have been in its prosperity a very large farm; the mill only was left standing, and served now as a dwelling-house. Though the family had been returned but a few months, the great orchard was already in perfectly good order. We were entertained with delicious grapes and melons. This spot is particularly favourable for breeding cattle, and, before the disturbances, furnished food for a thousand head of cattle and three thousand sheep; and yet from so large a stock but small profit was derived. The dealers in cattle would seldom come so far as to this remote spot to make their purchases, or would give no

more than from six to eight dollars for a fat ox, and half a dollar for a sheep. The inhabitants could not consume any thing like what they could produce, and the rather because the stock is never diminished here by the murrain. On account of this superfluity of the means of supporting life, and want of a market for the products, the country about the Zwartkop's-river truly deserved the attention of the government, and it was wisely allotted as the seat of the Drosty and village which are to form the centre point of the new district of Uitenhage. The proposal, that instead of extensive farms, it should be divided into small parcels of land, or *erbes*, appears in every respect a desirable one to be adopted, and will contribute very much to increasing both the population and civilization of the country.

At this house we found a number of people assembled, hoping, under the protection of the Commissary-general, to return to their old habitations upon the Caffre borders. Some of them joined our party, which gave us quite the appearance of a caravan: we occupied a length of several thousand paces. Among these new companions was the Field-commandant Rensburg, who had provided with the utmost care and attention for supplying the wants of such a number of men, and for our being furnished with the necessary relays of cattle.

The Great Zwartkop's-river runs very near the widow Royen's farm: in heavy rains this stream is very dangerous, but the water was now scarcely a foot deep. Soon after having passed it, we quitted the great cattle road, and took a sort of track to the left through a little wood of mimosas in full blow. In a little hour we were surprised with the sight of the celebrated salt-pan, the largest which has hitherto been found in Southern Africa. It is a long oval lake, which may be travelled round in about an hour. The water is perfectly clear, but so strongly impregnated with the common salt used for cookery, that a drop falling upon the clothes, as it dries away, leaves behind a very distinct crystallization. In heavy rains the salt is amalgamated entirely with the water; but in the summer, when the water evaporates, the surface, particularly at the sides, is covered with a thick rind of snow-white crystals, which gives the whole bason the appearance of being frozen, and the ice scattered over with a thin layer of snow.

As the water evaporates still farther, the little crystal needles are loosened, and carried about in flakes by the wind, forming *monticules* of salt

upon the bank. The colonists for a great way round supply themselves with their salt from this lake; it is the purest in the whole colony, and is sent occasionally by sea to the Cape Town. The name of salt-pan is very appropriate, since the sun and the wind do here what in salt-works is done by art in flat copper pans over the fire. The rind was in some places so thick, that it would bear a man without breaking, and some little rocks by the side of it were crusted over several inches thick with large crystals. The vegetation about was luxuriant, and the succulent plants were beautifully in bloom, which, contrasted with the wintry appearance of the lake, produced a very singular and enchanting effect. The *portulacaria ofra* was distinguished above all the rest, and seemed to be in its true home: it reaches here from twelve to fifteen feet in height, and was full of beautiful lilac-coloured flowers. We found also an incredible number of the beautiful large *buprestis*, and other insects humming about the lovely blossoms. The whole surface of the lake was strewed over with dead insects, and we loosened many rare species of them from the salt, in which they were fast encrusted. I must wholly reject Mr. Barrow's first idea upon the origin of these salt-lakes, but am disposed to assent to the opinion which he seems at last inclined to adopt. How little the evaporations of the sea can contribute to the engendering of the salts in these places scarcely deserves to be dwelt upon. Similar salt-lakes are to be found in the south-western parts of Asia; and, according to Pallas, even near Asoph.

After having eaten a very slender dinner under a tent upon the banks of this lake, we proceeded on our journey, and towards evening reached the Koega-river, where our people had already prepared us a camp upon a small plain on the river side. It was here, and in the sequel the same rule was always followed, composed of six tents arranged in a line, the largest of which served as a general place of assembly for the whole party, the others were sleeping apartments. At a little distance were the tents for the jägers, placed in front as guard houses, and on the sides were stationed the colonists, who usually slept in the waggons, though some of them had also tents. Behind the front was the kitchen, with the tents for the steward and servants, and behind them those for the dragoons. All the waggons, the number of which now amounted to fourteen, though they were afterwards, from new supplies of forage, or from the colonist families who joined us, increased to twenty, were

drawn together in a row, and between each were fastened the cribs for the horses. The oxen were always tied at night by the horns to the shafts or wheels of the waggons. Even if there had been no danger of wild beasts, or of wild Caffres, this precaution would have been necessary, since these animals have a great propensity, if they are left loose at night, to straying away towards their homes. A portion of the Hottentots and slaves alternately were always stationed as guards to the cattle, while the rest slept in the waggons. The dragoons and jägers in rotation also mounted a general guard at night.

In this way our camp resembled a little wandering village, in which every one soon knew his place with the utmost exactness, and easily learned the business, which, as a citizen of the little state, was allotted him for the good of the whole. As the country in which from this time we generally encamped was very much the same, a small plain near the bed of a river, and under the shade of mimosas, being selected for the purpose wherever it was possible; and as we always sent our waggons forwards that every thing might be in order against our arrival, so it often appeared as if we had only been out for the day, and returned to our home again at night. Our people were so accustomed to pitching and striking the tents, that we found them in the evening just as we had quitted them in the morning.

We were indeed become perfect nomades, sharing the lot of most of the inhabitants of Southern Africa, whom nature disposes, or compels, to stated changes of habitation. The colonists are driven by the snow from the mountains down to the Karroo; the Caffre hordes forsake their vallies when food for their cattle begins to fail, and seek others where grass is more abundant; the Bosjesman is fixed to no single spot of his barren soil, but every night reposes his weary head in a different place from the former; the numerous flocks of light-footed deer, the clouds of locusts, the immeasurable trains of wandering caterpillars, these, all instructed by nature, press forward from spot to spot, searching the necessary means by which that nature is to be supported.

A great number of Caffres from a neighbouring kraal thronged about our camp this day, and wearied us not a little with their importunities for tobacco, brandy, and beads. Among the colonists who followed us were some sick, who came in the full expectation that the physician to the Commissary-

general could not fail to cure them. As I was busied in preparing medicines for them, I was surrounded by a whole troop of Caffres, who had almost plundered my medicine chest before I was aware of them: the little phials, the scales, and the various weights, appeared to them invaluable treasures. It was not without much difficulty, and with a good deal of scolding and threatening, that I could at last get rid of the women. They inquired about every thing, they wanted to taste every thing, and when they liked the taste, were importunate to have the whole as a present. They were got rid of at last by having recourse to our chest of frippery; and in exchange for the treasures it contained, we procured several curiosities from them, as baskets, bracelets, hassagais, and kirris. Late in the evening a woman brought a basket of fresh milk as a present, and many of them, both men and women, stayed all night in the camp.

The Koega, on which we were now encamped, is a very insignificant little river, in which there was scarcely sufficient water for our cattle to drink. To procure water for ourselves, we were obliged to dig, and did not then obtain very good. Here we took leave of the excellent Field-cornet Müller, who in the last week had been unwearied in making preparations, and fitting us out in such a way as to render our journey in the Caffre country as little inconvenient as possible. As this country is very thinly peopled, and many things absolutely necessary to travellers in it must be procured from a great distance, a vast deal of attention and foresight was necessary to think of every thing that would be wanted. It would be difficult to say too much of the Field-cornet's attention, or to express our thanks to him too warmly.

From the Koega we travelled eastwards, over a high plain, here and there overgrown with bushes, and which produced grass and hedge plants in abundance: owing to the rains which had lately fallen, it looked now extremely pleasant. To the left were two high mountains, one of which was called the Winterberg, the other the Elandsberg. About noon we arrived at the Zondag's-river, which, on account of the rains, was swollen to an unusual height for the time of year. Although the water was three feet deep, and the ford was filled with loose stones, we all passed happily through, and rested on the other side under the shade of the blooming mimosas. While we here took a little repast, and saw our waggons pass the river, not without some apprehensions upon their account, a number of Caffres again assembled round us.

On the other side of the river also appeared a whole society, and all the men with very little hesitation waded through the water to us; but the women were too modest to come over in sight of our people. They went some way up the river to a place which was indeed deeper, but where they could cross without being seen. Among these latter were several young girls, apparently from fourteen to eighteen years of age; some of them were really handsome. Their pleasing appearance, and the cheerful demeanour of the whole party, made the intercourse, on this occasion, more lively and animated than any we had yet had with the Caffres. Our interpreter had great difficulty in following the conversation with the same spirit and animation that it was carried on. The girls seemed to assume confidence at every moment, and amused us exceedingly with their vivacity and *naïveté*, in which nothing was more striking than that, notwithstanding their almost unrestrained mirth, they never transgressed the bounds of the strictest decorum. They particularly admired our ladies, and were never weary with examining, and expressing their astonishment at, their fair complexions and fine long hair.

In the evening we found our camp ready prepared at about an hour's distance, still upon the bank of the river, which, having taken a remarkable bend, was here running almost due east. We had again a number of Caffre visitors at the camp, followers of Jaluhsa, and not more scrupulous of begging than our guests of the day before. They were more than a hundred, who all wanted to barter their ornaments and other trifles for tobacco, pieces of copper, and buttons. We could get any thing of theirs in exchange for these articles, but the buttons in particular served as a sort of money by which the price of every thing was regulated. A cow was valued at thirty coat buttons.

Our farther route was very pleasant, over a broad gently sloping hill, over-spread from top to bottom with a number of shrubs and trees beautifully in blow, particularly mimosas. The road had been cut through these shrubs, but was again half overgrown. Our guide assured us that before the invasion of the Caffres this place swarmed with elephants, rhinoceroses, and buffalos: traces of these animals were indeed still every where to be discovered. We stopped about half way in our day's journey to take some refreshment, and soon after, as we proceeded onwards, found the Hottentot who had been sent

as envoy to the Caffre Chiefs sleeping in the field. He had fastened his necklace to a stick, and stuck up this ensign in a bush near him, as a token that he was there, lest, otherwise, we might pass him unobserved. He informed us that the Caffre Chiefs were out upon a hunting party, but that messengers had been sent after them, to desire them to come the next day to the Bosjesmans'-river.

On a plain which we now crossed, called the Quaggas'-plain, we saw a great number of these animals, in divisions of from eighty to a hundred head each. They were very shy, and fled in the utmost haste at our approach. There were also an immense number of Springboks, or mountain Antelopes (*antilope pygarga*), who in like manner would not suffer us to come very near them. The sight of a number of Springboks flying from any object is, even to a man who is not a hunter, highly interesting; they run for some time extremely quick, and then, if a bush or piece of rock comes in their way, spring to the height of four or five feet above the earth, clearing at one leap ten or twelve feet of ground; they then stand still a few minutes till the rest are passed, after which they all set off again, running with astonishing fleetness. The beautiful form of this animal, its pretty marks, and the incredible lightness and grace of its motions, render this sight extremely pleasing.

The Springbok is of a snowy whiteness, only from the shoulders to the haunch on each side of the back runs a chesnut coloured stripe, and from these towards the belly are others more of the Isabella colour; on the shank, the ears, and the cheeks, are similar chesnut-brown stripes. The back is covered with long white hair, which generally lies flat, but stands up when the animal raises its back to take a leap. The horns are somewhat ringed, and at the points bend towards each other, in the manner of a lyre. A full grown Springbok weighs from sixty to eighty pounds. The flesh is extremely delicious, tenderer and whiter than that of any other antelope. Our Jägers had shot six of these animals, three of which were given to the Caffres; the rest were a very acceptable supply to our own table, as in making provision for our journey we had calculated upon the game to be killed in our route for a part of our kitchen stores. In the evening our camp was pitched about two hundred paces from the Bosjesmans'-river: a short time before we arrived at it, we descended the hill upon which, four years before, General Vandeleur had been enclosed by the Caffres, when Rensburg came to his assistance

and released him. The country is here tolerably level; high mountains are only seen quite in the distance.

As it had been agreed that we should wait in this spot for the arrival of the Caffre Chiefs, another messenger was dispatched to inform them that the Commissary-general would remain here two days, in hopes of seeing them, but must then positively proceed on his journey. Our camp was constantly visited, during our stay, by the Caffres who were roving about: they were always begging for something, or brought their cloaths, weapons, and baskets, to barter. We also saw here a whole kraal pass, who were removing to another dwelling-place. A vast number of cattle led the van, then followed the pack-oxen loaded with the household goods, and the mats which serve them for beds. On the top of these were here and there little children tied fast, who sat very quiet, and suffered themselves patiently to be shook about among the mats and baskets. The larger children, and the grown people, carried upon their heads either some of their household furniture, or baskets full of milk. All the men, even those whose business it was to take care of the cattle, stopped half the day with us, but the women, how much soever they wished to stay, were ordered by them authoritatively to go on with the cattle, and did not dare to disobey.

The heat was on this day almost insupportable; and such an incredible number of flies swarmed about our tents, that towards evening, when they began to settle, the linen was quite black with them. A number of other sorts of insects, some very beautiful indeed, which we found in this country, was a much more agreeable circumstance to us. We particularly found a very large sort of scarabæus, the *Copris Hamadryas*, the chirping of which at night was a noise at first wholly enigmatical to us; nor could we imagine whence it proceeded, till in the morning we found a vast number of these animals under the ox-dung, where they had dug to two or three feet deep into the sand, and in these holes stored up magazines apparently for the first nourishment of the young larvæ.

Our hunters, and lovers of hunting, were very active in scouring the neighbouring country, and seldom returned without a rich booty: one portion was devoted to the use of our kitchen, another was reserved to add to our collection of skulls, skins, and other distinguishing parts of the animals hereabouts.

The sixteenth of January was the hundredth day of our journey, and on a calculation it appeared that we had travelled five hundred hours. Of these hundred days, however, we had rested forty, so that upon an average, on the days when we were in motion, we had travelled eight hours and a half, and might be supposed to have gone over five miles and a half of ground.

In the night of the seventeenth of January, the messenger who had been sent to the Caffre Chiefs returned with as evasive an answer as the former. They were still absent on their hunting party, but they had been sent for; they might not, however, return for some days. The messenger declared that he had good reason to believe this a mere pretence to evade the interview; that the Chiefs were really at home, but were afraid to come, apprehending that they should be again required to quit the country, and should be menaced with being compelled to it by force, if they would not go peaceably. Perhaps the positive declaration to this effect, recently made by Captain Alberti, and the arrival of a person so high in office as the Commissary-general, with a numerous train, almost immediately after, contributed very much to increase this fear; there appeared, therefore, not much reason to hope that they would be induced to hazard a personal interview. It seemed also probable that it was only by late events they had been fully convinced that the government did not contemplate their stay in the colony with indifference, and had seriously determined to insist upon the former relations being re-established; and though far from wishing that this should be done at the expense of dissolving the good-understanding so lately restored, were yet determined not to be trifled with, but that their purposes should by some means or other be effected.

As it was evident, however, that no good was to be expected by continuing here any longer, orders were given for breaking up the camp, and at eight in the morning of the eighteenth of January the whole caravan crossed the Bosjesmans'-river. Somewhat farther we came to the ruins of a very large farm, where almost at the same instant arrived eight waggons with fresh relays of oxen from Graaff-Reynett. On this, four waggons with the teams of oxen which had accompanied us from Algoa bay, were sent back. Many of the colonists who had been summoned for the purpose, had a journey of more than twenty miles to take with their waggons and oxen, and it proved alike the precision of the orders given by the Field-commandant Rensburg, and the

good-will and punctuality with which they had been observed, that notwithstanding the distance they had to come, there was not one who failed in being to the spot exactly at the appointed time.

Farther on, we came to the Hassagai-wood, an insignificant thicket, on the declivity of a small hill, scarcely deserving to have been marked on the map, if Mr. Barrow had not passed a night there. We hoped to have found a pretty considerable wood, that would have afforded us shade and water, but it failed in both. We were obliged, therefore, notwithstanding the burning-noon-tide heat, to proceed to the next spring, where we proposed stopping for the night. This lay in a small narrow valley called Hofmanggat, where the water rose at the foot of a perpendicular rock, under the shade of a pleasing wood. I could not forbear remarking that the mimosas here grow in a very different kind of way from those in the interior of the colony, particularly in the Karroo; this arises apparently from the great difference in the soil. In the Karroo these trees have the form only of large shrubs, branches coming up from the very roots, which are fast enclosed in the earth: here they have stems eight or ten feet high before any branches are thrown out. Another thing remarkable in the mimosas we saw here was a diseased swelling very frequently to be found upon them. The thorns and young twigs were in many places six or eight times as large as their natural size, and entirely black. Instead of the pods, which commonly consist of two thin membranes, here and there were long cylindrical excrescences equally black, three times as long as the pods usually are, of a woody appearance, and entirely hollow. These anomalies on the mimosas are occasioned apparently by some kind of insects, and in that respect are similar to the gall-nuts. The gum which flows from these trees is in like manner often diseased, dark-coloured, opaque, and smelling very disagreeable.

Our tents, fourteen in number, scattered about the little wood, and as the darkness came on, lighted within, with the fires burning between them, made at a little distance a most enchanting appearance; it was one, however, not easy to be described by words, and scarcely less difficult to be represented by the pencil. Hyænas and jackalls interrupted us the whole night with an almost unceasing howl; our dogs barked at them, and the oxen and horses were so much frightened that it was not without very great difficulty the Hottentots could keep them from breaking loose.

The next morning, as we were about to depart, a Caffre came to us to search for two boys who had stolen to the camp, attracted by eager curiosity. After he had received from us some meat and bread, he took them away with him. The lads, however, escaped again, and in the evening came once more to our camp, because, as they said, they liked better being with the Christians than at home. As there was no means of sending them back, we kept them with us, expecting that the father would come for them a second time; it was not, however, till the third day that he did so: he had been seeking for his children all that time without having any thing to eat.

We passed to-day the Nieuwejaarsdrift and the Blackwater-river, and stopped for the night at a place called Dirkskraal. Some of our hunters brought home with them most excellent wild honey. This night the hyænas came absolutely into our camp, and scattered our sheep all about: most of them were retrieved in the morning: three only had become a prey to the marauders: a fourth we were obliged to drive on with his tail bitten and still bleeding.

We saw here fresh traces of rhinoceroses in abundance, and found on the road a tolerably perfect skull of one of these creatures. The country was here again arid and uniform; it is the same to which Sparrmann gives the now forgotten name of Quammedakka. We found through the whole day only one little wood of porticularias, cactuses, and guiacums; it afforded us but a trifling shade from the heat of the mid-day sun, yet it was the best spot we could find to stop and take our usual rest.

In the evening we arrived upon the bank of the little Fish-river, where our camp was pitched. This river is commonly dry in the summer, but was now tolerably full of water, in consequence of the heavy thunder-showers which had lately fallen in Agterbruintjeshoogte. Rensburg had here the melancholy intelligence, that at his farm there, the harvest, which was standing in sheaves in the field, and which he expected to yield him, at least, three hundred and fifty bushels of corn, had been entirely scattered by the bursting of one of these clouds. One of his neighbours, by name Van Aart, had three thousand three hundred sheep drowned at the same time; and in another house a child in a cradle was floated away by the torrent, while the elder children with difficulty saved themselves by climbing up to the rafters of the house. All these catastrophes happened on the same day that we had the terrible storm

which I have mentioned above, when we were in the neighbourhood of the Kabeljau-river.

The chase to-day produced us a great many springboks, also a steinbok, or wild goat (*capra ibex*) and some Pintado hens (*numida meleagris*); the latter abound near the rivers in these parts. Their flesh is very tough, dry, and tasteless, unless when they are extremely young. A tolerably brisk wind which rose towards evening abated in some degree the excessive heat, but it had this disagreeable effect, that the soil here being all schistus, the poles of the tents could not be driven in very fast, and we were somewhat apprehensive of their tumbling about our heads.

To our left we had now the mountains of Agtebruintjeshoogte, and before us the Caffre country. A wide plain, which we were to cross, separated us from both. The springboks swarmed here, and the hunting of these lovely creatures shortened the otherwise very wearisome way. We surrounded large flocks of them, and were delighted with seeing them very near, running and leaping away from us. Only two were killed, since we had not at the time occasion for more. A good hunter who understands how to lay in ambush for the flock, at a convenient place, seldom kills less than six or eight at a shot, so closely do they keep together, and so powerful is the calibre of the guns used here. As a huntsman in these parts must be equally armed against an elephant or a rhinoceros as against smaller game, he seldom shoots with balls of less than two ounces. A true elephant gun (an *olifantsroer* as it is here called) carries balls of only five or six to the pound, and which are made a third part of tin.

The springbok generally keeps on large open plains, and from an instinctive fear, never runs into a wood to seek shelter from his quadruped pursuers. This circumstance is occasionally made use of in hunting, for the hunters drive the flock towards a wood, where they seldom find it difficult to take some of the young ones alive. All attempts, however, to tame them have been hitherto unsuccessful, and they commonly die in confinement. I have seen some half-tamed young springboks here and there among the flocks of the colonists, but there is no security that they will remain; that they may not as they increase in age and strength seek the more perfect freedom which their species seems so much to prize.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Arrival at the Modderfontein in Agtebruintjeshoogte.—Journey along the Bank of the Great Fish-river to meet King Geika.—Camp at Hermannuskraal.—The King does not arrive.—Conference with his Ambassadors.—Return to the Modderfontein.—Reconciliation between Geika and some of the Rebel Chiefs.*

EARLY in the morning we arrived at the Modderfontein, which is the most southern place in the circle of Agtebruintjeshoogte. The proprietor of the place had not yet ventured to return, and it was now inhabited by a certain widow Bauer, who had been driven from her own habitation by the Caffres: she entertained us as well as her state of poverty would permit. We found fresh milk and butter, and some sorts of pulse, which to travellers who had been a whole week with nothing to live upon but meat and biscuit afforded a delicious regale.

In the evening the ambassadors sent to King Geika returned; they had seen him on the seventeenth at his then habitation at the Buffalos'-river. Geika immediately recollected one of them who had accompanied the Governor, and held out his hand to him in the most friendly manner, inquiring at the same time into the occasion of their visit. When they informed him of their errand, and that they came on the part of the Commissary-general to invite him to an interview at the Great Fish-river, he answered that it would afford him the sincerest pleasure to meet him; but he must intreat that the Christians would come some days' journey farther into the country, since he was afraid to remove to any distance from his own habitation. He was besides busied in preparing for an attack upon his rebel subjects, which he was resolved to make with his whole power, in hopes of reducing them to obedience by force. This disloyal body, he said, continued to plunder, and endeavour to seduce his subjects away from him; they were still roving about the Christians' country, although the Governor had only allowed them three months, in which they were engaged to return. Instead of fulfilling this engagement, six months were now elapsed without any hope being afforded of the calamities attendant upon such a state of things being likely to come to an end, and if it should

continue much longer, there was some danger of his being at length forsaken by all his people, and completely impoverished. He, therefore, only waited the arrival of a body of men from the Tambuckis, to make the attack, and, as he hoped, put an end to troubles which had been but too long endured. He would pursue the rebels to the utmost extremity, nor ever relax till they either submitted or were wholly extirpated.

His route, he said, would lead him to a place three days journey from his own habitation towards the Great Fish-river, called by the Christians *Hermannuskraal*; he would be there in three days, and would wait three more for the arrival of the Commissary-general. Messengers should be sent to announce his arrival, and he would leave people there who could come after him and recall him, if we should happen not to arrive till after he was gone. He begged that we would, in like manner, wait for him, in case we should arrive first at the appointed place. He acknowledged the Commissary-general as regent of the colony, for his friend and father, and said he would be at all times ready to assist him with his whole power; even to come to the Cape Town, if it was required of him. He would put himself at the head of all his warriors to assist him against his enemies the English, and he, therefore, wished and hoped that the Dutch would, in like manner, assist him against his rebel subjects.

He entertained the ambassadors very hospitably, accompanied them himself a part of the way on their return, recommending to them again earnestly, at parting, to deliver his answer faithfully to the Commissary-general. On their way back they had overtaken a part of the army, consisting of about two hundred men, and learnt from them that three other similar parties were already on their way towards the Fish-river, where they were all to be united; and farther, that Geika had even imparted to them the place where he intended that the battle should be fought, which was to be at some hours distance from *Hermannuskraal*, southwards towards the sea.

Whatever objections might appear against undertaking the proposed journey, and that there were many could not be denied, yet they were overbalanced by the arguments in its favour. The Commissary-general wished very much to gain the friendship of Geika, and to fix his confidence in the Dutch government, nor could he abandon the hope of being able to effect an amicable accommodation between the contending parties. The removal of Buys, whose

abode with the King was one of the great alleged objects of discontent on the part of the rebels, he hoped, might render them more inclined to submission; and he thought that the Christians, appearing as mediators, might have a powerful influence upon the minds of all the Caffres. In any case, it was necessary to employ his whole authority to make the boundaries of the colony respected, and not to permit the contests of savages to be carried on within its territory. The presence of the Commissary-general in the neighbourhood of the theatre of war, with a considerable number of armed men, might, if things must come to extremities, influence the event, and procure to the conquered party a peaceable subjection. It was, besides, his duty, as regent, to animate the courage and confidence of the colonists, by not withdrawing, at so critical a moment, from farther negociations, and so run the hazard of their being reduced anew to fly their habitations and their country.

The necessary orders for the journey were, therefore, immediately given. Between thirty and forty armed colonists were added to the escort, and fresh horses were procured for some of the party, with some oxen for slaughter. A quantity of bread for ourselves, and forage for our cattle, was provided; and four waggons were packed with these, with our tents, and with other things indispensably necessary to us. The remainder of our packages were left behind, as well as our ladies; the former, because the Commissary-general wished that we should be as little encumbered as possible upon the journey, and the latter, because he could by no means think of their running the possible risk of being upon the spot in a contest such as we might be compelled to witness. They, therefore, remained under Rensburg's protection, and removed to one of the best farms in the circle of Agtebruinjeshoogte.

We pursued our course, at first, over the plain which we had crossed two days before, then turned to the left towards the bank of the Little Fish-river, and encamped at night opposite a place where it may be forded. The bed of this little stream is richly grown over with trees of various sorts, among which were to be particularly distinguished the African willow, and a rare species of mimosa, with perfectly white flowers. The leaves of the latter seemed to have a higher degree of sensibility than is shewn even by the rest of its species; we found them in the morning entirely folded together, and it was

only as the warmth of the day increased that they gradually unfolded themselves again.

With this river constantly on our left, we continued travelling the next day in a southerly direction. The heat was excessive, and a scorching south-wind, a true sirocco, blew directly in our faces. Some of the party felt the effect of it so sensibly, that they were obliged to tie handkerchiefs over their mouths.\* Notwithstanding this inconvenience, we continued our route for ten hours, and encamped at night upon the bank of the Great Fish-river, about half a mile below the spot where the Little Fish-river branches off. We had the heights of the fertile Zuure-Velden the whole day to our right, but the plain over which we travelled was very dry and barren, so that we were obliged to send our draught-oxen over the river, into the Caffre territories, that night, that they might get tolerable feed.

Close by the place where we were encamped, were the ruins of a very large farm, which had formerly belonged to a colonist by name Dupré. Among the rubbish we found a great many scorpions and a species of large poisonous spider, and made a rich booty of both for our collection. In the evening of this day, I had the misfortune to break down my field-bedstead, so that I was obliged at night to have my bed upon the ground. I perceived, afterwards, that this accident had put me into no small danger, for, in the morning, I found under my coverlid a number of these dangerous insects, probably some which we had chased the evening before from their hiding places, and who here sought a refuge, attracted by the warmth. An accidental involuntary movement had nearly occasioned my being stung by one of the scorpions. According to the universal testimony, the consequence is sometimes loss of life; and even, if in the end the accident is recovered, the progress of the recovery is very slow, and the suffering great. The spiders, when their legs were stretched out, were most of them four inches, or more, in length.

Early in the morning a messenger was sent forwards to King Geika to inform him of our approach. We had not seen a Caffre since we quitted the Bos-jeamans'-river, nor, indeed, any other human being. Here and there walls

---

\* My thermometer had been unfortunately broke some days before, by an overturn of the waggon, but I afterwards experienced in the Cape-Town a degree of heat much more intolerable, when the thermometer was at 113°.

blackened with smoke, or houses lying entirely in ruins, announced the former habitations of men, and near the river were still standing some skeletons of Caffre huts. But in proportion as the country was depopulated of human beings, was it superabundantly inhabited by wild animals. We saw the following day, at a little distance, the largest flock of springboks that we had yet seen, and which at a moderate computation could not, I think, be estimated at less than two thousand head. There were besides no small number of red deer, wild goats, hartebeests, hares, quaggas, and ostriches. We met in one place a large troop of quaggas, which were chased by us, all together. I was mounted on a very spirited horse which I had bought at Zwelendani, and rode into the midst of the troop, nor did my horse cease to keep pace with them for a long time. No one has ever yet succeeded in taming these animals, so as to make them useful as draught cattle, notwithstanding all the endeavours that have been made. They are besides very malicious in their nature, and so given to bite, whenever they find an opportunity, that there would be some danger in using them. Little besides would be gained by taming them, since the trouble and expense would be equal to the purchase of a good horse. A great number of these animals, as well as of eatable game, were killed by the party; more than we could put to any use.

The heat was little less this day than the day before; the road was untracked and fatiguing by the side of the Great Fish-river, but the bank was so steep, and so thick set with trees, that it was impossible to get at the water to quench our thirst. At length, after eight hours riding in a burning sun, we came to a place where the bank was so low that the water became accessible: such was the eagerness of our party to get at it, that we absolutely laid ourselves down at the edge, and drank like the cattle. We then most of us undressed, and threw ourselves into the water, without any one suffering by an act, which on reflection did not appear very prudent; but the water had attained no inconsiderable degree of warmth. While the oxen and horses were refreshing themselves, we sought in vain a shady place where we could enjoy a few hours rest. But the foliage of the mimosas is too delicate to permit of their affording much shade, and the willows stood entirely upon the bank on such a steep declivity that there was no sitting down among them. Nothing then remained but to fasten our saddle-cloths

and cloaks to the branches of the mimosas, so as to form an awning, which shaded us tolerably well from the burning rays of the sun. The prospect of the broad and tolerably well-filled river, shaded by willows, which we could see to a considerable distance each way, from the high bank where we had placed ourselves, was the only sight which could make us forget for a moment the aridity and inhospitality of the country through which we were travelling.

In order to reach Hermannuskraal that day, we could only allow ourselves a short rest at this place, and still had eight hours more to travel, the latter part of the way by moonlight, before our task was accomplished. It was half past ten when we arrived there. Before it was dark we had come through a little mountain pass, which is here called the Israelitish-kloof. In this pass there are several graves of Hottentots heaped over with large stones. These the first colonists who inhabited this part of the country, in pious simplicity, determined to be monuments made by the children of Israel, who had journeyed through the country during their wanderings in the desert; and thence they gave the place the name which it bears.

It was evident here, from the more luxurious vegetation, that we were drawing nearer to the sea-coast. The country was grown over with bushes and succulent plants, between which were many footpaths winding about, and crossing in every direction, made by the wild animals in going to and from the river. The rhinoceros is very frequently to be seen in these parts, and is often hunted by the colonists of Camdeboo and Agtebruintjeshoogte. This animal is one of the most dangerous to travellers by night, since he rushes forwards impetuously with blind rage at every noise of which he is informed by his acute hearing, or at every object betrayed to him by his more acute smell. Examples have been known of these monsters running by night against a waggon, and overturning it, trampling down and destroying both that and all the oxen attached to it. As there were in many places fresh traces of them to be seen in our route this day, it was judged prudent in the evening to put the strongest of our young Africans in front, since, from being more experienced, they would be better able, if necessary, to encounter such a danger.

Our waggons did not arrive at their destination till some hours later than ourselves. But notwithstanding its being so late, we were all glad to get a

hot supper, having lived for two days upon nothing but ship biscuit and dried beef. We therefore took our dinner and supper together at two o'clock in the morning.

We now learnt that neither Geika nor any of the people belonging to him had been seen by our messengers, although they had gone on to a considerable distance towards his habitation, in hopes of meeting him. They were therefore immediately sent to his usual residence, which was a long day's journey on horseback from our then station, with a commission to inform him that the Commissary-general was exceedingly mortified by not finding him at the appointed place; that relying entirely upon his word, he had undertaken a journey of thirty hours, which at this time of the year, and at his age, was very fatiguing, and delayed him very much in fulfilling the other purposes of his expedition. He could not therefore wait longer than two days, and if the King was not arrived by that time, he must have the mortification of returning into the colony without having seen him.

On the very evening of our arrival we had the consoling prospect of a storm coming on, by which the air was very much cooled and refreshed. In the following days a reviving rain fell from time to time, which soon made a surprising alteration in the appearance of the country. As it is naturally fertile, our wearied oxen soon recovered their strength against the renewal of their labours. Our young people amused themselves with hunting very eagerly, and brought many a nice piece of flesh and many a beautiful skin home with them. The large game had been recently very much frightened away, since one of our companions, by name Philip Botha, had but a few weeks before held a great hunt here. He, with two friends, and some Hottentots, had coasted the Great Fish-river almost to its mouth, and had in twenty days that their journey lasted, between going and returning, killed five hippopotami, eight rhinoceroses, nine hartebeests, two wild boars, and five wild goats; smaller game and birds, and indeed springboks, they thought hardly worth shooting. The whole booty, in the fat of the hippopotami, in rhinoceros' leather, in skins, and flesh, was sufficient to fill three large waggons, and when carried home and divided, supplied the three families with food and clothing for several months; it was even expected that a pretty sum of money would be made of some objects which they proposed selling at their next journey to the Cape Town.

The insects and plants we collected here were most of them entirely new to us, nor did I find them again in any part of our travels. Among other things, we killed a very large snake, with a perfect lemon-coloured skin, regularly spotted with black; it measured about five feet in length. We were never more molested by birds of prey, particularly on the second day, when we had killed a young ox, some portion of which having been given to our Hottentots, they, according to their custom, had cut the flesh into small pieces, and hung it about upon the bushes to dry. A vast number of eagles and vultures collected about our camp, and took away piece after piece, if the people were not constantly there to watch them, and drive them away. These birds even accompanied us in our return quite to Agtebruintjeshoogte.

On Saturday morning our messengers arrived for the last time from Geika, bringing with them an ambassador from him who spoke broken Dutch. The King through him eagerly excused himself for not having come to meet the Commissary-general, but his auxiliaries from the Tambuckis were not arrived, nor were even his own followers all assembled. He earnestly wished that it might please the *Grootbaas* \* of the Christians to proceed a little day's journey farther into the country, of which, if notice was sent him, he would not fail immediately to come and meet him.

Our ambassador confirmed what was said by Geika's, and added that the King was apparently exceedingly mortified and ashamed. He had, however, discovered that the aspect of things had changed within a few days, and that Jaluhsa was on his march to submit to his sovereign, and unite with him against Sámbeh. Conga was not at first disposed to side with either party, but had rather gone upon a hunting match to keep clear of both; a messenger was however sent after him by Jaluhsa, earnestly to press his return, to which at length he yielded. Both of them had accordingly sent orders to all their adherents who were dispersed about the colony to follow them over the Great Fish-river. We had before had intelligence of a misunderstanding among the rebels, and probably this was the reason why the interview which had been desired by the Commissary-general with them had been evaded. We recollected besides the messenger from Conga, whom we had seen at the Rietfontein's-river, and who brought orders to the Caffre hordes there to

---

\* *Great Master*, for which see page 118.

return. It seemed therefore probable that intrigues for separating themselves from Sámbeh were then going forwards, and that the making their intentions known was only deferred till the arrival of our Chief.

Geika's ambassador assured us that his master, notwithstanding these things, had no intention of relaxing in his preparations. He did not yet know how to have perfect confidence in the Chiefs, and he was firmly resolved that all who did not submit to him freely should be compelled to submission by force. He hoped in this to be supported by the commander of the Christians, who was visiting his country, and did not doubt that he would either come still farther to meet him, or wait three or four days, beyond which the King felt assured that his coming would not be delayed. At the question how strong Geika's party might be, the Hottentot interpreter held up the two fore-fingers of his right hand, then bent the first down at the second joint, and said that the whole finger was Geika's force, and that the proportion of that of his enemies to it was only as the half finger.

How much soever the Commissary-general and the whole company wished to be personally acquainted with the interesting King of the Caffres, yet there were many reasons which influenced our Chief to decline either waiting longer, or going farther into the country. It was due to the views of the Dutch government not to suffer himself to be longer enticed forwards; indeed it seemed very clear that the courtesy hitherto shewn to the King had excited in him a confident hope that the Christians would take a part in the contest in his favour. A refusal of this support would probably not be very well relished by the King, and might make the interview disagreeable. By returning, all solicitations from him on the subject would be avoided, and with respect to the other party, who, on account of their situation, were always to be feared, every thing would be obviated which might give them cause of suspicion that there was any idea on the part of the Christians of breaking the peace. Besides, as the rebels seemed now willing to submit peaceably, it was better to leave things to be settled among themselves, especially as by our journey into the country both would be pretty well convinced that we could turn the balance in favour of either, whenever we had a mind. Another thing to be considered was, that we really were not provisioned for so long a stay. Our bread began to fail, and we had not more than two days forage for our horses remaining. Even if we could have resolved

ourselves to live for some days entirely upon animal food, and to suffer our cattle to run the hazard of being reduced to want, still it seemed by no means certain that the irresolution and hesitation of the Caffres might not require a farther and farther delay, which would place us in a very awkward predicament.

The Commissary-general, therefore, sent back the King's messenger, charged to say to him that to the Dutch nation, and to the government of the colony, nothing was so sacred as their promise; that he had himself punctually complied with all that had been desired of him, and it was not without concern that he found the King not adhering to his word. He had expected him to have shewn more respect for the Dutch nation, and for the Regent of the colony, a man double his own age. He should certainly at present return into his own domains, but he should not the less be always the sincere friend of all peaceable well-disposed Caffres. He was extremely concerned not to have seen and talked with Geika, and have given him the presents which he had intended for him. He expected the King would act mildly towards his conquered enemies, and would take all possible precautions to prevent the peace of the colony being disturbed.

The messenger seemed altogether astonished and embarrassed at being the bearer of such a message, and summoned all his little eloquence to his aid to exculpate his master to the Commissary-general, and to prevail upon him to delay his departure yet a few days: but as he saw that a beginning was already made in breaking up the camp, and that the resolution to depart was therefore irrevocable, he forbore to say any thing more than that this answer would afflict the King beyond measure, and he should not know how to deliver it to him.

He was then hospitably regaled, and some provisions were given him for his journey back, after which he departed, having first seen the vanguard of our caravan set off. We, ourselves, commenced our journey immediately after him, and arrived at night at the spot on the side of the Great Fish-river, where, some days before, we had taken a short rest at noon. In our route we met a large rhinoceros, but frightened at the sight of our cavalcade, and at the cracking of our waggoners' long whips, he hastened away, and was in vain followed by some of our jägers. His back rose

above the bushes, and we could see him for a considerable time running with almost inconceivable swiftness. It is scarcely possible to overtake one of these animals when he flies, or even to pursue him, for he treads down all the shrubs and bushes that oppose him with the utmost facility, while they are sufficient entirely to stop a man and horse. He is, therefore, seldom pursued in the open field, but the hunter steals into a thicket, where he lurks against the wind, and seeks out the animal, who sees as ill, as he hears and smells well, and gets so near that a shot may be reasonably expected to hit him. The distance at which the aim is taken is about thirty paces, and the part aimed at is the eye, the only one where the skin and the bones are thin enough for the ball to force its way through to the brain.

If the aim is missed, the animal commonly rushes raging forwards, searching for the offender, and if he sees or smells him, he bends his head to the ground, closes his eyes, and pushes on with his horn upon the ground. It is then easy to escape from him, by stepping nimbly aside, and sliding by the animal, who still pushes with rage onwards; but attention must always be had to keep on the side against the wind, so that the animal may not catch the scent. I have seen rhinoceros hunters who have assured me that they have contended in this way with one of the monsters for four hours together, till his rage was at last quite spent, and he was easily killed. The most common manner of hunting these creatures, and all large animals from whom resistance is to be apprehended, is to watch them on a moonlight night to the places where they go down to the rivers to drink, and there lurk among rocks or bushes, where they must come so near that the shot cannot miss.

We followed entirely the same route in our return as that by which we had gone, and on the thirtieth of January arrived late in the evening at the Modderfontein, after having gone through a very fatiguing journey of sixty-eight hours. In the latter part of our way, however, we had the pleasure of witnessing some farther good effects arising from the train of negotiation which had been so long carrying on, and this, combined with what we previously knew, gave good reason to hope that the end proposed would at length be completely obtained. As we encamped, for the last night, not far from the Zuure Velden, we remarked, on the heights around, abundance of fires, such as are customary to be made by night among the Caffres when

they are on their wandering parties, and the next morning we saw numerous herds of cattle, with some hundreds of men descending into the plain below. As we met with them, and questioned them, they told us that they had been followers of Sámbeh, but had now separated themselves from him, and were on their way towards Geika's dominions. They were tired of the unceasing warfare in which they had been so long involved, and sincerely desired to submit to their lawful King, especially as they knew that the Grootbaas of the Christians was with him at that moment, and had promised him his support. They would willingly have crossed the Fish-river immediately, and not remained any longer in the colony, but that they had here and there cattle dispersed, which they must first collect together, and then all they wished was to stay till they knew that Geika and Sámbeh were entirely reconciled. They were, however, informed that this could not be permitted, and if they did not leave the colony immediately, their cattle would be all taken from them, and not restored till they had crossed the river. They did not seem discomposed with these menaces, but said, that as peace was made they were sure they should not be driven away. That the colonists should think their remaining in the country was a reason for renewing the war with them was a thing which they could not by any means comprehend; the Christians were their friends, they repeated continually, and they wished to remain quietly among them, till their own land was restored entirely to peace.

It seemed, however, in any case, that much had been gained by the minds of the revolted people being far more disposed to peace and submission; and the presence of the Commissary-general had undeniably, as it appeared, had a considerable influence in producing this good effect. In fact, very soon after, an entire reconciliation took place between Geika, Conga, and Jaluhsa; the preparations against Sámbeh were, however, continued, and he remained, as before, within the boundaries of the colony. Some single hordes belonging to the other Chiefs still, also, continued to annoy the colonists of the borders. All the endeavours of Captain Alberti, by repeated menaces and exhortations, to induce them to quit the colony were in vain, and to drive them away by force seemed not adviseable, even if there had been a disposable force sufficient for the purpose. The Dutch government was, therefore, obliged to content itself

with being upon a half friendly footing with them ; to rest satisfied with seeing that they had sufficient respect for it not to make farther encroachments, and to consider their being suffered to remain in the colony, on any terms, as a particular favour. In this situation did our relation with the Caffres remain, till the time when the colony was again taken by the English. As to any thing farther relating to the subject we are yet to be informed.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Bruintjeshoogte.—Uniformity and Poverty of the Lives led by the Colonists there.—Camdeboo.—The African Horses, and the Manner of refreshing them upon a Journey.—The Melk-river.—The Spandau Mountain.—Arrival at Graaff-Reynett.*

ON the thirty-first of January we rejoined our ladies at the farm of Berend Greiling, and here we ourselves rested for a day, previous to our departure for Graaff-Reynett. We were now in the midst of the district of Agtebruintjeshoogte. To the east this district is bounded by a considerable mountain overgrown with wood, which on that account is called the Boschberg. In the midst of this mountain a high ridge rises towards the west, which is properly the *Bruintjes-hoogte*, so named, because, at the time when this country was first colonized, a Hottentot Chief was established here, who called the new settlers in mockery *Bruintjes*, the proper meaning of which is *Brownkins* or *little Browns*. That part of the district which lies south of this hill is called the Agtebruintjeshoogte, while the farms lying on the other side, towards Graaff-Reynett, are called Voorbruintjeshoogte.

This whole country is exceedingly propitious to the feeding of cattle, although it has as arid an appearance as most other parts of the colony. Probably a number of wholesome and nourishing plants grow here, which are scarcely visible as the eye is transiently cast over the surface of the ground, yet which are easily found by the cattle. This part of African husbandry, I mean a knowledge of the native plants proper for the feed of animals, is exceedingly neglected; it may even be presumed that by more accurate researches into their properties, the origin of many diseases to which the cattle are subject, and which are now considered as wholly enigmatical, might be traced. It appears to me extremely probable that they may arise from the animals being suffered to feed on plants pernicious to them. At present the proprietors of the lands are satisfied with knowing that such a tract of land is unhealthy, and such another healthy, without investigating the cause of either quality. The inhabitants of Bruintjeshoogte qualify the neighbourhood of

the Boschberg as good, because a number of plentiful springs rise about the foot of the mountain, considering this as the only requisite to render any spot in Southern Africa fertile.

Before the invasion of the Caffres, this district, notwithstanding its distance from the Cape-Town, was one of the richest in the colony; and the abundance of cattle, sheep, and horses, bred in it was almost incredible. But in no part have the colonists suffered more severely; and four or five families are now to be seen living close to each other in miserable huts, because they have not yet the means of rebuilding their houses. At some single farms alone has any attempt been made to resume the culture of their lands, and of their gardens; and it was not without the utmost difficulty that we could procure a scanty supply of bread-corn, and of forage for our horses. Corn was, indeed, never a great object of cultivation among the farmers here, although the country is very propitious for the purpose, but a great obstacle has been presented in the difficulty of finding a market for it.

Mr. Barrow asserts that the inhabitants of this district first gave occasion to the war with the Caffres, and if the colonists were really the aggressors, the fault may very naturally be imputed to them, as they were the immediate neighbours of the savages. It is, indeed, very probable that if this district had been inhabited by men of cultivated minds and sound judgment, who had understood, according to Mr. Barrow's sense of the words, how to *manage* the Caffres, the war might never have taken place. But he says, that these people were only descendants of uncouth adventurers, who, when any differences arose with the savages, had no other idea than of doing themselves justice by the law of force. The colonists here are, however, of no other descent than their fellow-countrymen spread all over the territory, nay, of most colonists in all parts of the world, for it is seldom the most polished part of the population of any country that seek their fortunes by establishing themselves in newly-founded colonies, and it may very well be made a question whether any persons under similar circumstances (among such at least as were likely to be found in them) would have acted otherwise.

But the English author misleads his readers very much when he represents the inhabitants of Bruintjeshoogte as a band of European adventurers,

of soldiers who had deserted, of discarded sailors, and the like. They are African colonists like the rest, many of them descendants from old established families at the Cape Town. Here and there it is very probable that some may be found who were servants or schoolmasters from Europe, and came hither as adventurers to seek their fortunes. Among the colonists of Africa, as all the world over, are some individuals of extremely light principles and character, but there also are many thoroughly upright, honest, worthy men, and those even among the most zealous opponents of the English government. But in the present stormy times, it has become the fashion to decide upon a person's moral worth almost entirely according to his political principles; a traveller ought, however, to be so much of a cosmopolite as to divest himself of all national prejudices, before he thinks of giving his travels to the world, and not to condemn every one whose modes of thinking and acting do not entirely correspond with his own.

The place where we were now resting is one of the most considerable in the country, and, in comparison with many others, suffered very little from the Caffres. Eleven families were now collected here, five of whom were living entirely with the owner till their own places could be re-established; a part of the rest had come with us from Algoa bay; the others had only come upon a visit to the Commissary-general. The number of the latter kept continually increasing, since all the neighbouring colonists who had any complaints to urge against each other, and against their Hottentots, or any reclamations to make of cattle, which had been stolen by the Caffres, now thronged hither. I found my patient here again, she having in my absence consulted an old woman who practised in the country with much reputation. The latter, in hopes of receiving some presents of medicines to recruit her almost exhausted stock, now came and did me the honour of putting forth to me all her doctorial science. She seemed to value herself not a little upon her knowledge, and had a confidence in the infallibility of her art which is seldom to be found in those regularly bred to it. She had some very curious and amusing notions with respect to the causes of certain diseases, and no less extraordinary cures for them. For the rest, she had a very competent degree of skill in midwifery, and seemed well acquainted with the properties of many of the native plants.

Here we were again assailed with complaints of the Bosjesmans, of whom we had not now heard for a long time. They inhabit very much the solitary and mountainous country north-east of these parts, and annoy the district very much by killing and stealing their cattle, and often murdering their herdsmen. These crimes are the more grievous since they are frequently perpetrated through mere wantonness, not for the purpose of plunder. A short time before, one of the farmers who were now assembled here, when he went out in the morning, found near his house his whole herd, consisting of forty oxen, together with two hundred sheep, several dogs and horses, and some Hottentots who were employed to guard them, all murdered, not a single one having escaped.

On the second of February we proceeded on our journey, going northwards. We passed the Bruintjeshoogte about noon, and rested till the heat of the day was over, at a poor little spring on the other side. We crossed two small beds of rivers in the afternoon, the Vetkuil and Blyde, but there was not a drop of water in either. They flow sideways from the Boschberg, not the Sneeuweberg as Mr. Barrow says, and empty themselves into the Zondag's-river. In the evening we arrived at the farm of Charles Rasmus, upon the Vogel-river, near which our camp was pitched. Here again the Bosjesmans had been recently marauding, and taken away a considerable number of cattle from the colonists. They lurk by day about the clefts of the Boschberg, and in the evening their residence there was announced to us by fires on the declivity of the hill. It was a good mile from us, and the light of the fires appearing among the trees with which the hill is covered had an uncommonly beautiful appearance. We were assured that in the dry time of the year this spectacle was by no means uncommon, and occasioned sometimes a great deal of damage among the trees; yet this appeared rather the effect of carelessness and thoughtlessness among them than done from premeditated purposes of destruction.

When the perpetual dangers in which the solitary inhabitants of this district live are duly considered; when we reflect that they are continually in apprehension of the inroads of these most uncouth of all savages, of the Caffres, who swarm in the neighbourhood, and of bands of christian deserters and fugitive Hottentots who are roving about, it is scarcely to be

comprehended how they can have any pleasure in existence. In making an estimate besides of the portion of happiness dispensed to them, many other things are to be taken into the account. The frightful drought of the country, in which often not a drop of rain falls for three months together, where only here and there a little muddy spring, or a stagnated pool in the otherwise dried up bed of a river offers drink either for mankind or for the cattle; where, except the thinly scattered mimosas, whose delicate leaves scarcely afford any shade, not a bush is to be seen; where a continued contest is to be maintained with wild beasts as well as wild men;—these must all be taken into the estimate, and in order to have their due weight allowed them must have been seen. An eye witness alone can properly judge of the joyless state of existence to which these people seem doomed. He cannot, without a great degree of astonishment, contemplate the force of habit, and witness what privations men are capable of, to whom, from their earliest youth, every thing beyond what will satisfy the mere wants of life has been totally unknown.

Yet it is much easier to comprehend how the present generation can be satisfied here, than how the first settlers could ever think of establishing themselves in so inhospitable a waste. That character must have been peculiarly framed, which could abandon all those enjoyments the mind receives from social intercourse, all the delights and advantages of friendship for a situation where really nothing was to be found but what is requisite to satisfy our first physical necessities. One should be almost tempted to consider complete indolence as the prevailing feature of such a character, and to pronounce that all other considerations must have been sacrificed to the indulgence of it; for this country would be wholly uninhabitable, were it not for the nourishment it affords in such abundance to the sheep; but these yield such extraordinary produce, that with a tolerable flock a whole family may be entirely supported without the owner being obliged to contribute the least exertion of his own. From two thousand sheep a thousand lambs may be calculated upon annually, after allowing all deductions for what may die or be stolen. Six hundred wethers are requisite for feeding a family the year through, including the slaves and Hottentots, and in many a colonist's family no other food but mutton is ever tasted: four hundred will then remain for sale to the travelling butchers, which are worth about six hundred dollars.

and that money supplies the remaining wants of the family. All the trouble that the colonist has is to see that his Hottentots go out with the flocks in the morning, and that the sheep are brought home safe at night. Some, indeed most of them, visit their flocks in the course of the day, and in the time of lambing they sometimes stay with them the whole day. The remainder of the time passes in trivial household employments, or in frequently repeated devotional exercises, only a little variety is sometimes sought in the chase.

In parts favourable to the feeding of cattle the lot of the inhabitant is somewhat happier, for such countries are also favourable to agriculture, and sufficient corn may be raised to supply the family abundantly with bread. Milk besides affords a very pleasant and wholesome article of food, and from the butter which is annually carried to the Cape Town a handsome capital is in time amassed. In most places the litter is left useless to dry away in the kraal, but an active farmer will collect it, and by the liberal use of it procure excellent garden products, and perhaps so large a quantity of corn, that besides what is necessary for his own use he will have some left for sale. Yet again it must be observed that these fair appearances may be at any moment destroyed by the robberies of the Bosjesmans, the inroads of the Caffres, a sudden storm, or the murrain among the cattle; and the latter seems produced equally from want of water during the great heats in some places, and from the cold and damp of winter in others. It is only the extreme facility of produce that can in any degree counterbalance these contrarieties.

Is it surprising that men, who not only have no excitement to activity, but who would, if disposed to exertion, often find that it had been exercised wholly in vain with regard to themselves, by degrees learn to think of nothing but indulging the natural propensity of their nature to indolence; that they grow constantly more and more indifferent to the higher enjoyments of the mind and heart, and sink gradually into a sort of demi-savages, seeming to live only to satisfy the wants which they have in common with the whole animal creation, of sleep and food? One medium for supplying the latter want is here offered so bountifully by nature, that her other gifts are so much the more inexorably withheld. Man holds out his hand to receive her bounty without admiring it; he suffers the other privations to which he is doomed without feeling them as privations; therein consists his principal source of

happiness, that he does not know the value of those things of which he is deprived. In an almost unconscious inactivity of mind, without any attractions towards the great circle of mankind, knowing nothing beyond the little circle which his own family forms around him, the colonist of these parts passes his solitary days, and by this mode of life is made such as we see him. We may compassionate, but we ought not to be angry with him, for the character of a man is not formed by himself; it arises from the circumstances under which he is placed; it is derived in great measure from the nature of the country which he inhabits. It is with these things always in mind, that I wish my readers to form their judgments of the character of the African colonists, and if they will comply with this stipulation, I trust that in the sequel I shall render it more justly appreciated than it has been hitherto.

We now crossed the arid and widely-stretched plain of Camdeboo, which towards the west is lost in the Great Karroo, and has all the characteristics of that country, such as they were described in the ninth chapter of this work. It is only in the neighbourhood of the mountains, particularly the Snow Mountains to the north, from which flow some considerable rivers, that the climate is milder; the heats are never so violent, and the district is consequently much more habitable. Our road led us soon again over the Vogel-river, and here we were obliged to supply ourselves with water for the whole day, since not a drop was to be met with again till the Melk-river, a distance of ten hours. When we had filled our yessels, and our cattle had drank plentifully, we proceeded on our way.

It is difficult for an European to form an idea of the hardships that are to be encountered in a journey over such a dry plain at the hottest season of the year. All vegetation seems utterly destroyed; not a blade of grass, not a green leaf is any where to be seen; and the soil, a stiff loam, reflects back the heat of the sun with redoubled force: a man may congratulate himself that being on horseback he is raised some feet above it. Nor is any rest from these fatigues to be thought of, since to stop where there is neither shade, water, or grass, would be only to increase the evil rather than to diminish it.

Yet the African horses are so well accustomed to hardships, although they have in fact much less innate strength than the European, that it is incredible what a length of way they will go, in the most intense heat, without either

food or drink. It is, however, customary for the riders to dismount at intervals, when the saddles are taken off and the animals are suffered to roll upon the ground and stretch out their limbs for a short time; this they do with evident delight, and after they have well rolled, stretched, and shaken themselves, they rise up and go on as much refreshed as if they had had food and drink given them. On arriving at a farm, the invitation of the host, who comes immediately to the door, is, "*Get off, Sir, and let him roll.*" A slave then appears, takes the horse and leads him backwards and forwards for a few minutes to recover his breath, and he is then unsaddled and left to roll.

These rollings were then the only refreshment we could offer our horses, and both they and their riders were, when towards evening they arrived at the Melk-river, exceedingly exhausted. In the midst of the parched bed of the river is a pool of water, which never dries even in the greatest heat, probably from being supplied by subterraneous springs. Near it is a farm now inhabited by an old man, Curt Grobbelaar by name, with his equally aged wife.

The fatigue we had experienced this day from the excessive heat determined the Commissary-general to travel the remaining ten hours to Graaff-Reynett by night. We stopped, therefore, the whole day at the Melk-river, and when the moon rose proceeded on our journey. We set out soon after midnight, and next morning it was so exceedingly cold that we were very glad to put on our cloaks, thinking it fortunate that we had them with us. The country through which we travelled appeared, as far as could be judged by the light in which we saw it, less dry and barren than the former part. Both to the right and left were farms scattered at intervals, and about half way we passed through a considerable thicket of mimosas. Our guide, who did not seem particularly courageous, although he filled the office of a Field-commandant, told us that this wood was full of lions: in the preceding week seven had been seen together, only one of which was killed. People avoid as much as possible, he said, travelling the road by night, since if the draught oxen smell the lions they are terrified, and run away with the waggons. We, however, escaped their attacks, and at break of day saw the Spandau mountain in Graaff-Reynett before us.

This mountain, like many others in the country, till within a few years had no name. An old Prussian soldier, by name Werner, who lived at Graaff-





Reynett, gave it that which it now bears, as a remembrance of his native country: its summit is very remarkable from being surrounded by two circles of rugged broken pieces of rock, forming almost inaccessible natural barriers like those of a fortification.\* At its foot, an hour from Graaff-Reynett, we were received by the Field-commandant Gerotz, who besides exercised the temporary office of Landdrost, with his suite: they were according to the usual custom of the country all dressed in short jackets with pantaloons, but had each a sword or sabre by his side. On entering the village we saw the Batavian flag flying, and the Commissary-general, as representative of the States, was complimented with a salute of one and twenty guns, fired from three small pieces.

---

\* The annexed plate gives a view of this mountain, and presents a very accurate idea of the peculiar character of the African landscape scenery. These parallel layers, these naked mountain ridges, these dry beds of rivers with the thinly leaved mimosas on their banks, are scenes which are, alas! but too often repeated in this country. In the distance is seen the village of Graaff-Reynett, which indeed does not here assume the cheerful appearance that really belongs to it, and farther in the back ground is the inhospitable plain of Camdeboo. The river through whose dry bed a colonist with his Hottentot servant is riding, is one of the numerous and nameless branches of the Zondag's-river, which never has water in it but after the impetuous rains that accompany the thunder storms, and then but for a very short time.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Description of Graaff-Reynett.—The Character of the Colonists of these Parts, and the Circumstances which occasioned the Dissensions that prevailed there, both before and after it came under the English Government.—Regulations made by the Commissary-general for the Restoration of Order and Tranquillity.—Losses sustained by the district in the Caffre War.*

THE village of Graaff-Reynett was founded in the year 1796, by Governor Van de Graaff, and was called from the examples of Stellenbosch and Zwelendamb, after the names of himself and his wife, the latter being of the family of Reynett. About twenty houses, with the gardens between, built in a straight line, form a tolerably broad street. The inhabitants of these houses are a smith, a waggon-wright, a sadler, a carpenter, and other handicraft workers, who gain a very good livelihood; there are also some little traders, but their stock of wares appeared very scanty. The drosty, or habitation of the Landdrost, was the oldest and worst house in the village; and the church, although rebuilt only eight years before, at the expense of the congregation, was in very indifferent repair. At the end of the street were the remains of the English barracks, which formerly served as a sort of fortress. At the unfortunate period of the last contest between the villagers and the Hottentots in the English service, they were set on fire, and two of the houses reduced to ashes. Melancholy traces of the calamities by which these parts were so long distracted were no where more evidently discernible than here. They not only appeared in the destruction of the public buildings, but were still more manifest in the unexampled disorder that had been introduced into every part of the administration of the district, and the change wrought in the manners and modes of thinking of the inhabitants. It appears, therefore, not irrelevant to my purpose to investigate somewhat more amply than has yet been done the occasion of these dissensions.

Even before the drosty of Graaff-Reynett was established, the inhabitants of the country were some of the most factious and turbulent of the whole

colony. They lived in so remote a part that it was almost impossible for the government to provide effectually for the laws being properly enforced, and they were besides almost all foreigners of perturbed minds, who here sought a home. If a soldier who had served out his time, or an European who had not talents sufficient to get his bread in the Cape Town, wished to establish himself as a colonist, this was the part to which all such were sent. During the rapidly increasing population which took place between the years 1760 and 1780, several colonists' sons sought in this country, so propitious to the feeding of cattle, to establish themselves with herds of their own; and the success they met with attracted others to do the same. The then government was certainly guilty of an error in being too careless and easy in granting lands to almost any one who applied for them, without regard to the views or principles of the applicant.

The assembling together of so many uncultivated men in so remote a country, where every one, without any attention to the laws, acted only according to his own pleasure, could not fail of producing bad effects upon the general character. To the many failings which, no doubt, might previously be imputed to them, the emigrant Europeans, who were commonly from among the lowest ranks in the mother country, brought a new list of vices till then unknown among the Africans, or from which they had been withheld by their bigotry, often overstrained, though useful in this point of view. The contentious spirit, always too prevalent among the colonists, and which commonly has for its object some difference regarding the boundaries of their respective properties, broke out here into lamentable family divisions, which were attended with the most degrading consequences. Without the restoration of some severe civil regulations, and the introduction of some intermediate authority, which could constantly watch over the people, it seemed inevitable that every generation would go backwards in civilization, and that they would, at last, sink nearly as low in the scale of human nature as the former savage inhabitants of the country. The foundation of the drostie at Graaff-Reynett became, therefore, a measure of indispensable necessity; indeed, in order to have had all the effect that was to be wished, it ought to have been established ten or twenty years sooner. Perhaps, however, that was scarcely possible, as this part of the colony was not then

B b b

sufficiently populous to support the keeping up a magistrate of its own with all the appendages necessary to it.

For want of one, the evil had now taken an unfortunately deep root, and circumstances occurred which increased it still farther. In the first place the mechanics who were sent as inhabitants of the newly-established village were almost all Europeans, since no free Africans ever apply themselves to mechanical arts; and among these strangers were not many, who were likely to improve their new associates by their example. The government were besides particularly unfortunate in the first persons they fixed upon to fill the new magistracy. They were either weak men, who from indolence suffered things to go on in their usual course, or men who acted with an ill-judging zeal, not knowing how properly to regulate the firmness and uprightness necessary to be united in the judge and regent of such a district. They were in fact people to whom the government, for some reason or other, thought it necessary to give appointments, and as none could be found for them in the Cape Town they were sent hither; or they were persons whom they wished to send to a distance in hopes of keeping them quiet. They ought rather to have been rising persons of merit, who should have been taught to consider the station as a step to a better appointment, if they conducted themselves properly in this. Every fresh person was terrified with the toils to be gone through in the new and as yet but imperfectly organized government, and seeing how much ought to be done, shrunk from all attention to business; besides, the melancholy life led in this solitary region, the nature of the climate which disposes to inactivity, and the distance from the superintending power, all contributed more and more to confirm the propensity to negligence and inattention.

The dissatisfaction of the colonists was soon by these means strongly excited, and every new instance of neglect of their interests incensed them more and more against the government, and its servants, the landdrosts. From the very imperfect instructions given to the latter, a certain degree of arbitrary proceedings was on their side almost unavoidable, while restless spirits did not fail on every such occasion to represent them as acts of tyranny and despotism. In minds so prepared, a spirit of tumult was without difficulty excited. The separation of the American colonies from the Mother Country had already

awakened many wild projects among certain ill-organised heads in the colony, which, to those acquainted with the helpless situation of the country in itself, could not appear otherwise than wholly laughable; and the subsequent revolutions in France and Holland occasioned an universal ferment all over the colony. Parties of Loyalists and Patriots were formed, which were rendered formidable from the then weakness of the government. The speeches made by the demagogues in Holland, in their popular assemblies, coincided entirely with the sentiments of most of the citizens of the Cape Town, where the old system was not very popular; but as long as they saw those in authority continue to cherish opposite sentiments, they had not courage to shew themselves openly.

Nothing then remained but to blow the spirit of discontent and resistance which they saw rising among the rough colonists into an open flame; while the latter, from their ignorance and credulity, were easily won over to opinions so perfectly accordant with their principles. Many European adventurers in the district of Graaff-Reynett, among whom the names of Pisani and Delpont stand recorded in the history of the colony of the Cape, with particular horror, suffered themselves to be made in some measure the tools of those who wished to disturb the public peace; but they were, besides, themselves ambitious of being popular leaders, and were ready to do any thing which by exciting general confusion might afford a hope of their own private ends being more effectually attained. In the year 1794 the commotions in Graaff-Reynett fairly broke out. The then Landdrost Meinier, who had not been a very mild regent towards his subjects, was constrained to depart, and a popular government was immediately organised, which, though the seat of it was at Graaff-Reynett, extended over other parts of the colony. A commission of some members of the government, who went into the country endeavouring to restore peace in a mild and reasonable way, returned to the Cape Town, after the first interview with the ringleaders, wholly discouraged; at the same time, if they had been disposed to do that by force which they had sought in vain to obtain by gentleness and persuasion, the means were wanting, since an attack from the English was to be apprehended at any moment.

The peasants therefore were, of necessity, left to pursue their mad career unmolested; they held primary assemblies; they wore the national cockade; they chose from among themselves a president and secretary who could

scarcely read or write, and deliberated with a like important air upon affairs of state as upon the affairs of their own private families. The protocol of these assemblies, which still exists in the archives of the drosty, exhibits a very curious picture of their proceedings, to which, how much soever they endeavoured to ape those of the French popular assemblies, nothing similar can any where be found. Yet it must be mentioned, to their credit, that during the whole time this state of anarchy continued, no real horrors were perpetrated, no cruel sentences were inflicted either of death or of corporal punishment. The phrenzy, however, continually spread wider and wider. In the districts of Bruintjeshoogte, of the Zwartkops-river, the Zwarteberge, and the Sneeuweberge, societies were formed, nay, even some individuals from Koub, and the Roggeveltdts, associated themselves together under the Shiboleth of liberty and equality. Some of the peasants, in their journeys to the Cape Town, went so far as publicly to insult certain members of the government, and others, who were considered as of the Orange party, while the weakness of the higher powers was such that it was necessary even to permit like instances of audacity to pass unnoticed.

Matters were in this situation when the colony was taken by the English, as many of the best intentioned people at first believed, to preserve it as a possession for the Prince of Orange. This only created in the distant parts a more determined spirit of resistance against the new government, nor was that spirit diminished when the real views of the new possessors more clearly appeared. Lord Macartney required an oath of the collected inhabitants of the colony to remain true and faithful subjects to his Britannic Majesty; a requisition, which in a military possession, a country still not united to the dominions of its conquerors, was esteemed hard, and must even appear impolitic. For, even supposing it to have been taken, those inhabitants of the colony who really preserved an attachment to their Mother Country could scarcely have considered it as binding, if the expedition of the Schout-by-Nagt had succeeded, and some thousands of Dutch had been landed upon the coast; from those of the inhabitants who were retained in places of public trust, such an oath must naturally be required, but that it should be exacted from private persons not only in the Cape Town, but all over the country, and that in case of refusal they should be commanded to quit it, was a thing wholly unprecedented. It besides proved at once to the new

subjects that no confidence was placed in them, and this embittered beyond measure those who were previously too well disposed to tumult and disorder.

Emboldened by the little opposition they had hitherto found from the weakness of the Dutch government, the people of Graaff-Reynett had the courage formally to refuse taking this oath. The tone however of the leaders was wholly changed. Instead of the revolutionary propositions they had hitherto held, they now only talked of attachment to their Mother Country. What drove them to opposition was no longer the Orange principles; it was to the English that they declared themselves decided opponents;—instead of enemies to the old order of things, they were now determined foes to the new. A detachment of English soldiers sufficed however to overthrow all their plans: scarcely did they shew themselves, before their determined opposition was no longer thought of; they submitted quietly, and promised obedience. This was the propitious moment when the peace and happiness of the district might have been assured. The race of human kind there might even have been improved if a person of understanding and judgment had been placed at the head of them; one who knew how to gain the respect and affection of men unaccustomed to restraint, and to rule them with paternal decision. Instead of that, the unfortunate idea was adopted that they must be governed with energy, and the same Meinier was sent there anew as Landdrost, who from his ill-timed severity had occasioned the breaking out of the discontents. Mr. Barrow, Lord Macartney's secretary and counsellor, accompanied him, to instal him into his resumed office, and this journey gave occasion to those valuable remarks with which the literary world of Europe is so well acquainted.

The newly reinstated Landdrost had a terrible score of offences received from the peasants to forget, if he would rule them mildly, while they must equally lose the recollection of his former proceedings, if they were to obey him willingly. It was not difficult to foresee that this was a degree of moderation at which neither side was very likely to arrive; while to increase the evil, it was before the Landdrost that the detested oath was to be taken. It would have been much less insupportable if this ceremony had been to take place before an Englishman born. It became then very soon evident that the authority of the Landdrost could not be maintained without a military force.

Sir James Craig had organized a body of Hottentots, and these were the troops selected to humble the colonists—to watch over and control them. It is impossible not to censure the imprudence of such a measure. How great soever might be the faults of the colonists towards their Hottentots, this was not the way to promote better behaviour in future. At the same time that an opportunity was given to the Hottentots to gratify a spirit of revenge, which ought rather to have been discouraged than promoted, the colonists were inflamed to a positive hatred of their former servants, and had too much pretence given for greater severity in their future conduct towards them. Besides, there were many among the Hottentots who had received much kindness from their former masters, and they were now placed in such a situation as to subject them to the reproach of repaying their kindness with ingratitude. The colonists were, moreover, from this measure constrained to forego the hired services of the Hottentots, and to purchase slaves at a very high price, or let their establishments fall entirely to the ground.

Spacious barracks were built at Graaff-Reynett for the Hottentots, the erection of which plainly shewed that the possibility of a revolt was a thing speculated upon, and in case of a powerful attack, they would be secure in these buildings. The Hottentots were well fed and well paid; they were even treated abundantly with their favourite brandy, and revelled in a sort of affluence, while the situation of the colonists sunk every day lower and lower. The government of the Landdrost was carried on in conformity with the principles he laid down when he had been in office before; it was with a firmness bordering on ferocity, at least so it must appear to the subjects, and it failed not to alienate their minds from the new government more and more every day. Several of the colonists, rather than take the oath, fled, part of them to the Caffres, part to some distant solitary region: these were out-lawed, a traffic with the Caffres for their lives was even attempted, and others were banished from the colony. It might be considered as one of the fortunate consequences of these events that Pisani and Delpont were among the number of the latter. They were transported to Holland, and represented themselves there as martyrs to their patriotic principles. The first however became in a short time discontented, and fled to France, where he attempted to come forwards as a writer upon the Cape.

For two years the people of Graaff-Reynett were kept down by means of the garrison, but about the end of the year 1798 an occurrence happened which gave the signal for an open revolt. A certain Zacharias Van Jaarsveld was put into prison by the Landdrost on account of some money which as a trustee he had misapplied, and was to be transported to the Cape-Town, and delivered over to the College of Justice there. Though he had himself always avoided taking any part in the disturbances, some of his friends were among the most discontented, and fourteen of them entered into a solemn agreement to free him from the hands of justice. The project succeeded so far, that they overpowered the escort which was to carry him to the Cape, and brought him back to Graaff-Reynett. There a number of the other colonists joined them, and the question was no longer confined to freeing the prisoner—the Landdrost was required to redress other grievances, over some of which he had not of himself any power. As their force was too considerable for the Landdrost to act in open opposition to them, he retreated into the barracks as his only asylum. The number of the discontented in the mean time kept constantly increasing; they went round the whole country exciting it to tumult, and in Graaff-Reynett itself, made use of a house directly opposite to the barracks as a place of assembly for the ring-leaders.

Whether it was apprehension of these tumultuary movements ending in a real attack, or hope to impress the insurgents with terror, the Landdrost was pleased to fire upon the house: many of those assembled there were wounded, and soon after the house broke out into flames. The colonists indeed fired again upon the barracks, but no important consequences occurred, and they soon returned into the village without undertaking any thing farther. Their natural phlegm, the fear of inevitable punishment, if they engaged in any decisive act of force against the Landdrost, want of necessaries to provide for so large a number of men, perhaps also want of union among themselves, compelled them to peaceable behaviour; while a stronger detachment of English which soon arrived dispersed them entirely. Nine of the most turbulent were seized and carried prisoners to Algoa bay, whence they were sent by sea to the Cape Town. The College of Justice there, in the sequel, condemned them to death, but the sentence was not yet executed when information of the peace of Amiens arrived. The English commander then judged,

honourably enough, that in consideration of the good understanding restored between the two powers, the pretence of adherence to the Mother Country, which had been assigned as the principal motive of their delinquency, ought to be suffered to have its weight, and left the final decision of the process to the Dutch themselves. By them a four years imprisonment was determined to be sufficient punishment, and the delinquents were in the end set at liberty, at the same time that a general amnesty was proclaimed. But in order that the Dutch government might not be supposed to consider them as entirely innocent, their restoration to freedom was accompanied with solemnities which demonstrated that it was regarded as an act of favour shewn them, not as an acquittal to which they had an indisputable claim.

Soon after the above occurrences in Graaff-Reynett, that is in the year 1799, the English government judged it proper to name a new Landdrost in the place of Meinier. But the distrust and discontent of the colonists had risen to so great a height that it was become impossible to restore tranquillity. More than sixty families under the conduct of Rensburg had emigrated; the Caffres had established themselves in the whole southern part of the district; more than half the farms were forsaken and destroyed; dearth and murrain succeeded, and carried the misery to its acme. Those among the colonists who had remained did not cease upon every possible occasion to show a spirit of disobedience to the government; and notwithstanding their unfortunate circumstances, to thwart and do little acts of enmity towards it in various ways. The Landdrost in the end was wearied out, and returned back to the Cape, and in his place the Field-commandant Gerotz, a worthy old Swabian, from mere good-will, but without any great capacity, took upon himself the administration of the public business. The government seemed scarcely any longer to think it worth while to concern itself about these people, especially after intelligence was received that the colony was to be restored to the Dutch, and quietly abandoned them to their fate.

Under circumstances so unfavourable, the restoration of order in this district was one of the first and most anxious cares of the new Dutch commander. After having concluded peace with the Caffres, General Janssens next repaired to Graaff-Reynett. He found the country in the most melancholy condition, half the inhabitants reduced to extremities by the Caffres, others in perpetual

strife with the *Bosjesmans*, few in a situation to pay the most trifling impost. The chest of the district was empty, the books of accounts were in the most lamentable disorder, the public buildings were destroyed, and presented nothing but a sad monument of crimes; the most important posts were filled by people wholly ignorant and devoid of capacity. Nothing but the unbounded confidence of the colonists in the benevolent views of the government towards them could afford a prospect of rescuing them from so forlorn a condition, and reinstating them in any thing like comfort and prosperity. Yet their rude and perverted ways of thinking abated in some measure the hope that it would be possible, at least immediately, to inspire them with a love of order, and a sense of submission and subservience to the laws. It seemed as if they had been too much accustomed to live without respect for any earthly power to be easily brought back to a due respect for that under which they were now to live. Their reciprocal irreconcilable spirit of discord and enmity towards each other, their wholly perverted ideas of right and wrong, their extravagant notions with regard to liberty, their total want of true religious principles, though making much external profession of piety; their perfect ignorance in short of all social duties, of all social virtues, had placed them in a most unfortunate situation both for themselves and for the government.

The total seclusion of the colonists from general intercourse with the world, and with civilised life, their confinement to the little circle of their own families, the easy manner in which the first necessities of our nature are satisfied, are very disadvantageous to them under many points of view; and notwithstanding their simplicity of manners, their general purity of morals, and their ignorance of many of the greater crimes to which the European nations are subject, they appear, taken in the aggregate, even to impartial observers, much rather under an unfavourable than under a favourable point of view. Selfishness, lawlessness, hardness, intolerance, and a thirst of revenge, are the reigning vices in their character, which will perhaps hardly be thought atoned by a disposition to be easily satisfied, by a spirit of economy yet united with unbounded hospitality, a firm adherence to truth, and a great respect for religion. But what is most to be deprecated in the character of some among them, is the harshness with which they treat their slaves and *Hottentots*, and in others, the bitterness and irreconcilable animosity with which they carry on their differences among each other.

c c c

An unfortunate practice among them is that every personal calumny, every derogatory assertion, every reputed incroachment, is taken down in writing, and established by witnesses, that the offender may perhaps, years after, be judicially pursued for it. Every colonist has by him a large packet of such kind of papers ready at any moment to be produced and brought forwards against an enemy. Such private differences become the concern of the whole society, since every one who can write subscribes these papers, *Verklaarings*, as they are called, on one side or the other. The whole matter sometimes of one of them is that such a one, at such a time, called such another a graceless fellow, or spoke evil of him behind his back. Many of these testimonies were laid before both the Governor and the Commissary-general upon their journeys, but no where in greater abundance than in Graaff-Reynett. Every one had here his enemy, and brought against him the bitterest complaints, whether he was a member of the government or a private person; no one would acknowledge himself in the wrong, and it was always those who stood the most in need of forgiveness themselves that cried the loudest for prosecution and punishment. Although a general amnesty was proclaimed by the government, and the remembrance of all offences which arose only from political opinions was exploded, daily complaints were made that such or such had been guilty of factious measures, or had sought to place the conduct of former landdrosts in the most odious lights.

Such complicated and deep-rooted evils could not be remedied in a moment. The Governor, however, rejoiced that by his journey he had acquired a more accurate knowledge of the district of Graaff-Reynett, and of its actual situation. He exhorted the inhabitants in the most energetic manner to live in peace and concord among each other; he endeavoured to introduce some order in the government, and at his return to the Cape Town, consulted earnestly with the Commissary-general upon the means of repairing the present, and obviating future evils. The carrying into execution the resolutions taken for this purpose was one of the primary objects of the Commissary-general's journey. The hitherto secretary of the district of Zwellendam, Stockeström, a man who had all the qualities and all the knowledge requisite for occupying so arduous a post, had been prevailed upon to accept the office of landdrost, and his arrival was expected at the same time with ourselves.

The Commissary-general was particularly anxious to provide during his stay efficient assistance to the new landdrost in all the other offices of the administration. He paid great attention to the state of the finances, and allotted a portion of the imposts which had been usually paid into the general treasury of the colony to be now paid into the chest of the district. He himself arranged the account books, and made many excellent regulations for the future-administration of the finances. Instead of the miserable habitation which now served as the drosty, a handsome dwelling was ordered to be built, as well for the habitation of the landdrost, as for holding the courts of justice. The plan for the building was laid out, and the funds necessary for its completion were to be furnished by the government partly as a loan, partly as a present. The whole was completed the same year.

The church had during the troubles been used as a magazine, and as barracks and stables for the cavalry, and was therefore in a very dilapidated state; it was now repaired, and a sum of three hundred dollars was given to the congregation to put it into proper order for the performance of divine service. It was also determined that till a regular preacher should be appointed solely for Graaff-Reynett, the minister from Zwelendam should come twice in the year to stay there for a certain time. It was the intention to send for some liberal-minded well-informed pastor from Europe, in hopes of leading future generations from their errors, and teaching them more salutary ways. In order farther to promote tranquillity and good order, a decree was issued on the twelfth of February, that since the district of Graaff-Reynett was too extensive for one jurisdiction only, it was in future to be divided into two, and a new drosty was to be founded in the neighbourhood of Algoa bay.

The ruins of the barracks and other disastrous monuments of discord were cleared away, and in their place the ground for a street was laid out, intended to accommodate the new settlers. The most important differences among the inhabitants were adjusted, and the parties solemnly reconciled with each other, while no warnings and exhortations were spared to induce them to change their conduct in future, to make them understand that they owed their misfortunes to their own perverted views of things, and must act in a very different manner towards the government and towards each other if they would wish to avoid a renewal of them. The sequel has shewed that

all these pains were not taken wholly in vain, and if as yet no striking change appears in the principles and manners of the inhabitants, at least the outward manifestations of the inward sentiments are restrained, and they have been taught to respect the civil authorities.

The village of Graaff-Reynett lies in a desert, naked, and arid country, almost entirely enclosed by mountains, for which reason in the summer months the heat is almost insupportable. The Zondag's-river flows directly behind the village with a considerable fall from a declivity, so that the water might easily be conducted, by means of small channels, into the fields and gardens, which would give the whole spot a much more cheering and lively aspect, besides increasing to an invaluable degree the produce of the soil. It would, indeed, have been extremely ill-judged to place a village here, had it not been for this facility of supplying it with water. Farther upwards, upon the Zondag's-river, are many much more fertile plains, but the trifling fall of the river, and the depth of its bed, would have rendered it impossible in the dry season to supply the neighbouring fields with water. As the sources of the river are in the Great Snow Mountains, it never entirely dries, yet there are many examples of the supply of water being too small to permit of all the fields being benefited by it.

The cultivable part of the valley is, however, but of inconsiderable extent, and on this ground it may well be made a question whether the village can ever be made to support an extensive population. The climate is, on account of the heat and the drying north-wind, which blows here for a great part of the year, neither agreeable, nor particularly healthy; at least in no place did I find so many sick. Dysenteries, agues, inflammations in the eyes, and eruptive disorders, were in almost every house, and I never found hysterical complaints more prevalent. A *çi-devant* ship surgeon had established himself in the village, but he complained to me that although he was the only professional man in the district, and there were a great many people ill, he had scarcely any practice. Six little boxes covered with dust, and three little phials, contained his whole stock of drugs, and by a present of jalap, I had the happiness of supplying all his wants for some time to come.

The only place of any consequence is the garden of Werner, the old Silesian mentioned above, in which are a great variety of fruits, particularly most delicious grapes: they were now just ripe, and we found them, as well

as the other fruits, exceedingly grateful after having been so long without tasting any. The wine made here is of a middling quality, but may, if the grapes are carefully picked before they are pressed, as Werner does, be very much improved. This cheerful old man has lived here ever since the drosty was founded, and has gained a very good livelihood by his profession of a tanner. His style of living, measuring it according to the general fashion of the country, may be called brilliant; indeed I have observed that the spirit of hospitality so general among the colonists is no where more conspicuous than among those who are Germans born. I have often remarked that my fellow-countrymen in Africa do not reconcile themselves very easily to the solitude in which they must necessarily live. The love of society seems to cling more closely to them than to the colonists of any other nation, and in none is it so evident how dear to them is the sight of an European traveller. I must however condemn them in this respect, that none seem more easily to forget their native country and its manners and customs. Even in the Cape Town, except one little circle in particular, of very amiable German families, the Germans associate little together: they speak Dutch among each other, and do not receive a fellow-countryman with more delight and cordiality than any other stranger.

It is indeed true that most of them owe their being here to unpropitious circumstances attendant upon their youth, which do not leave upon their minds pleasing associations connected with their latest recollections of their native country. With every succeeding year any recollections grow fainter and fainter; the intelligence from home is less and less frequent, and the ties which connected him with his native soil are proportionately weakened, as he forms others under the new sun to which he is transported. Indeed, those are far happier who become wholly Africans, than others who retain a too fond remembrance of the climes they have quitted: to the former the privations of early joys are felt the less deeply in proportion as the manifold advantages to be found in their new abode are preferred. It speaks very much in favour of this country, that examples of being home-sick rarely occur. We may generally observe that Europeans of the lower ranks and with little pretensions are soon satisfied here, and easily forget their native country, while persons of polished educations and refined feelings experience a painful void,

and a longing after their home, which prevents their ever finding themselves wholly satisfied elsewhere.

During our stay at Graaff-Reynett we had intelligence from Algoa bay, and from the Caffre borders. The latter confirmed the news we heard on our journey, that a reconciliation had taken place between King Geika and the rebel chiefs, Jaluhsa and Conga, the latter having voluntarily submitted to the former. It was added that Sámbeh's adherents constantly diminished, and it was hoped that he also would submit, or at least that he would be obliged to quit the colony.

The Field-cornet Rasmus of Agtebruintjeshoogte came hither himself to inform us that the Caffre horde which we had met on the thirtieth of January, on the repeated threats that their cattle would be taken away from them, and not restored till they had crossed the Fish-river, had now actually quitted the domains of the colony; another horde following their example had also returned. The importance of this intelligence, and of keeping upon a friendly footing with the Caffres, was never more evident than in the spot where we now were. For if the sight of so many houses in ruins, of so many fields desolated, of so many families wholly impoverished, had shewn us in very striking colours the lamentable consequences attending a Caffre war, the conviction was inconceivably increased by seeing the catalogue of the losses sustained by the inhabitants of this district, which was hung up in the drosty, taken according to the oaths of the sufferers. Not more than two-thirds of them had given in their account, and yet the list amounted to eight hundred and fifty-eight horses, four thousand four hundred and seventy-five oxen, thirty-five thousand four hundred and seventy-four cows and calves, thirty-four thousand and twenty-three sheep, and two thousand four hundred and eighty g ats.

When it is considered that the great wealth of the colonists in this country consists in their cattle, and that the subsistence of the whole colony, even of the Cape Town itself, depends very much upon the supplies derived from hence, it will be apparent of what importance such a loss must have been. In fact, in the year 1800 there was so great a scarcity of cattle, that the English government was obliged to send commissioners to the Briquas to purchase a supply. This end was however in great measure unattained,

and the principal advantage derived from the experiment was the gaining a considerable knowledge of the Beetjuans, a remarkable tribe, till then very little known. Even now the price of horned cattle is beyond all comparison higher than before the war, and from the rapidly increasing population, it will be essentially necessary for the general welfare that the districts where cattle are reared should remain for many years in undisturbed peace.

**END OF PART THE THIRD.**



## APPENDIX.

---

### *Remarks upon the Language of the Koossas, accompanied by a Vocabulary of their Words.*

**T**HERE is no doubt but that the situation of a savage nation, the degree of civilization which exists in it, and above all, the relationship which it bears with other nations, can never be accurately understood, and properly estimated, without a competent knowledge of its language;—without understanding equally the mode of pronouncing it, its structure, and its compass. The number of wants and ideas existing among a people, whether that number be great or small, as well as their relative situation with the countries by which they are surrounded, can never be so efficiently determined as by procuring a collection of their words, the mediums whereby those wants and ideas are expressed, and those relations are defined. But in order to render such a collection truly valuable, it must always be examined with a reference to the innate purposes for which language was given us, considering well the combinations and inflexions of words through which people arrive at a reciprocal exchange of ideas. The more arbitrary a language is, in the use and combination of words, the less it is reduced to fixed rules, so much the more vain appears the attempt to give a just idea of the manner of being, or of the minds of those by whom it is employed.

Among a people where no such things exist as the palpable signs of language, who lead beside a nomade life, and are divided into numerous tribes, at whose rise and fall new dialects arise and old ones are lost—among such a people the language has in it nothing permanent, it shares the fate of those by whom it is spoken, it changes without being improved. He, therefore, who would catch and describe the spirit of it has no easy task, especially if that man be a traveller who has only had an opportunity of knowing one or two of the tribes. The language of savages is never any thing more than a medium of communication among them; it cannot have any higher aim; it can hardly be said to have attained what is properly called spirit, and is therefore incapable of proving all that may be proved by the polished languages of Europe.

Nay, farther: let any one be ever so well acquainted with the language of a single Caffro tribe, he still cannot form an accurate judgment of the manners and modes of thinking among the people in general. This is not to be effected unless he has attained a competent knowledge of the neighbouring dialects, and found a medium whereby to compare what is permanent in each, with what

## APPENDIX.

is fluctuating. By these means only can the universal characteristic of the Caffre language be determined, and the end proposed in the investigation be accomplished. As it is, however, scarcely to be expected that this comprehensive knowledge will speedily be obtained by any one who has at the same time the powers and opportunity to impart it clearly and scientifically, I will venture to hope that this Essay may not be wholly useless. I must flatter myself that it may smooth the way for the future happier Inquirer, who has the same desire to investigate the Caffre language upon the spot; that what I am able to bring forward may, to a certain extent, lighten his task.

I must premise that it is now three years since I published, in the first volume of the *Archives for Ethnography and Languages*, a comparison of the most important languages of Southern Africa. In it I expressed myself fully upon the difficulties there appeared to me in investigating them, and explained the manner in which I thought those difficulties were the most effectually to be overcome; endeavouring, at the same time, to point out in the clearest manner possible the greater or less affinity which they bear to each other. In that work the remarks upon the language of each separate people followed the description of their customs and manners; and, as I hope, I thus made them subservient to ascertaining perfectly the degree of cultivation at which each is arrived. I shall, notwithstanding, here bring forward my whole collection of words, since I only there produced some of the leading ones.

I have described, above, the language of the Caffres as full-toned, smooth, and pleasing to the ear, formed chiefly of simple sounds, the words for the most part not exceeding two syllables. It is from the slow, distinct manner of speaking, from the frequent recurrence of open vowels, and from the clear intonation of the last syllable, that the pleasing sound of the language seems to arise. It has almost the sound of Italian, and is not difficult to be pronounced by Europeans of any nation, at the very first hearing it: a German finds no difficulty in writing it down with the characters of his own language, so as to preserve exactly in his memory the right pronunciation. These general properties of all the Caffre dialects will apply equally to that of the Koossas, although in one respect they differ from the other tribes, that they have a certain degree of clatter in their manner of speaking to which the other tribes are entire strangers: this they have probably acquired from their frequent intercourse with the tribes of Hottentots in their neighbourhood, particularly with the Gonaaquas, for such a mode of speaking has already been mentioned as universal among the Hottentots.

This clatter arises, as in the Hottentots, in the lowest degree, from moving the tongue very quick behind the upper fore teeth, in a greater degree by the same movement behind the upper back teeth, in the greatest degree by turning the tongue so that the back of it touches the gums. The principal difficulty in imitating this sound is, that a letter must be pronounced at the same moment with the movement of the tongue. The still stronger stroke of the tongue which occurs in the Hottentots' language, does not prevail among the Koossas; at least it is very rarely heard, and only in words which have been transferred from the Gonaaqua language into theirs. I distinguish these sounds by the numbers 1, 2, 3, over the syllable which is so pronounced, 1 denoting the lowest degree of it, 3 the highest.

The generality of the Caffre dialects differ again from that of the Koossas in the total absence of the rattling *r*, which makes them particularly soft and smooth. In some few words decidedly

## APPENDIX.

Hottentotish the *r* is found, but in pronouncing them they generally substitute an *l*. The Koossas also use the *f* with its sister sounds *v* and *w*, which are never to be found in the dialect of Beetjuan. There is a certain lisp in all the Caffre dialects which I have endeavoured to distinguish by the Greek circumflex " over the syllable where it occurs. It is produced by thrusting the point of the tongue against the gums, sometimes more slightly, sometimes harder, and takes place principally in speaking an *s*, or *sj*, or *tj*. With an *l*, *sl*, *kl*, or *tl*, there is a positive stammering, as is the case sometimes in a failure of the organs of speech: this sound, therefore, particularly at first hearing it, exceedingly displeases an European ear.

The full, proper, hissing sound of the German *sch*, as well as the softer tone of the French *gé*, do not occur at all in the Caffre dialect; nor is there any thing like an *x*. After *k*, *p*, and *t*, in many words a sharp aspiration follows, a distinct *h*, which therefore, where it is found in the words particularly distinguished, must not be dropped. The diphthongs *au*, *ou*, *eu*, and *ai*, which abound so much in the Hottentot dialects, and occur under so many different modes of extension, are wholly foreign to the Caffre language. On the contrary, in every syllable is a simple vowel, clearly pronounced, and not encumbered with many consonants. In the Koossa dialect *u* is the vowel that occurs the most frequently; *o* the least so.

The Koossas speak slowly and distinctly, in short sentences, between every one of which they make a longer or a shorter pause. Their enunciation is singing and rhythmical, the accent resting on the last syllable of every word, and particularly upon the last word of the sentence. In expressions of sorrow their body remains quite still, their arms and hands without motion; but the head, in pronouncing the last word of lamentation, is stretched significantly forwards, either towards the spot or the object in question, and then the mantle is closed together with their hands over their breast. Their gesticulation is therefore not exceedingly expressive, but their eye is extremely so. Their whole meaning may often be read in their eyes, at the same time that the muscles of the face are no more moved than is necessary for pronouncing the words.

As they speak in short sentences, so is the construction of their language simple, and easier to be comprehended by literal translation than that of the Hottentots; the latter being overloaded with arbitrary interlocutory syllables. They have no proper article, no auxiliary verbs, no inflexions either of their verbs or substantives: this the annexed collection of examples will clearly prove.

The simple, abstract proposition *I am* cannot be expressed in their language. Is a circumstance to be related, it is sufficient to put the personal pronoun to the word descriptive of the circumstance, without any intermediate verb. The verb without the pronoun always signifies the third person. Their personal pronouns vary according to the time intended to be marked. From these changes in the pronouns is determined whether the question is of the past, present, or future, so that their verbs are conjugated without auxiliaries, or without any changes in their terminations. A word to which particular expression is intended to be given is repeated several times over in rapid succession. These repetitions are often truly frequentative, signifying that an action was performed repeatedly, very quick, or with great force. Among the Koossas the repetition falls principally upon the verbs; among the Beetjuans upon the adverbs.

The dialect of the Koossas has this peculiarity, that before speaking many words, particularly substantives which begin with consonants, they close the lips so that a sort of sound like an

## APPENDIX.

*m* or *n* is produced: it is in general not more than the sound of *n*. Before many words beginning with a vowel, a whole syllable will be introduced, as *am*, *om*, *um*, or *in*. The arbitrary manner of bringing in this syllable by hearing it often is clearly understood; but it has the effect of perplexing a person who is not thoroughly acquainted with it, when he hears the other Caffre dialects, where the same words are used without the previous syllable. It seems as if the deliberately-speaking Koossa would assist by this the solemnity and distinctness of his enunciation: it is as if in order to gain time he shuts his mouth, for the sole purpose of opening it afterwards. As elisions ought to be carefully avoided throughout, I have uniformly, wherever two different vowels casually fall together, introduced an *n*,—the true *n* *ἠφελωνικός*. Some other particular remarks will be better made in the way of notes to the Vocabulary.

A considerable number of the words in this Vocabulary were collected by myself in the course of my travels; but it has been much improved by the additions I have received from friends. For the best part I am indebted to the information of Vander Kemp, who, during his long stay at the Cape Town in November, 1805, was unwearied in answering all the questions I put to him, and giving me every possible satisfaction upon the subject. The Commissary-General had previously favoured me with a list of Caffre words which he had collected, whence I have in some sort enriched my Vocabulary. Alberti's work, so full of information in many respects, contains so little with regard to the Caffre language, that it is not worth mentioning. It scarcely need be observed how little earlier travellers, Sparrmann, La Vaillant, and Mr. Barrow, have noticed it. I have endeavoured to exculpate my work from being liable to the same observation.

---

## VOCABULARY

### OF WORDS FROM THE LANGUAGE OF THE KOOSSAS.

A Man.....	U h m t ḡ.*
Men .....	U m u h n t ḡ.

---

\* Where I have used the short *o* at the end of a word, it implies that the sound is half sunk, so that it seems almost doubtful whether it ought to be an *o* or a *u*.—AUTHOR.

An observation made in a note to page 292 must here again be repeated, that these words being given according to the ideas that the sounds conveyed to a German ear, it is probable the orthography would have been in many instances given differently by an English writer. As for example: the *u* in German has a very different sound from the *u* in English, it is nearer to the sound of our *oo*, though not exactly resembling it. A person accustomed to the mode of pronouncing among the lower classes, and indeed of some among the higher ones, in Yorkshire and the other northern counties, will, from their pronunciation of the *u* in the words *but*, *butter*, &c. have a very accurate idea of the manner in which it is pronounced in German. It hence appears probable, that where the *u* occurs in the following Vocabulary, an English writer would rather have spelt the words with the *oo*.—TRANSLATOR.

APPENDIX.

A People, a Tribe .....	Gabaantǝ.
The Nation, all the Tribes collectively .....	Gababaantǝ.*
A Husband .....	Indóda.
A Wife .....	Umfási.†
A Father .....	Bao.
	Mao.
	Uhma.
A Mother .....	Unina.
	Kunina.
	Njoko.‡
Paternal Grandfather .....	Injánja.§
Maternal Grandfather .....	Ithika.¶
Grandmother .....	Uhma-kulu.
A new-born Child .....	Bessána.
A Child, in general .....	Uhmtoána.‡
A young Man .....	Indodána.
A young Girl .....	Kakasána.
A Virgin .....	Toombi.
A pregnant Woman .....	Umithi.
A barren Woman .....	Usóolo.
An elder Brother .....	Umkíush.**
Younger Brother .....	Omlnáwe.††
Sister .....	Udédá, or Dadédá.
Nephew, Brother's Son .....	Umnáko.
Niece .....	Umsílawe.

\* The plurals and the collectives are formed by doubling a syllable, commonly the first, probably from analogy with the repetitions of the verbs mentioned above.

† *Ási* is universally a feminine termination. Among those Caffre tribes who have the *r*, instead of *ari* it is *ari*.

‡ These five words for *mother* were given us at different times, and by different persons; but the two first seem most in use.

§ Here again it must be observed, that the *j* in German is pronounced like the English *g*, so that an English writer would probably have written this word *Inyanya*.—TRANSLATOR.

¶ The reader is requested here to recollect the meaning of the numeral over the syllable as given above. It is also to be observed, that as the Germans drop the *h* wherever the *th* come together, this word should probably be pronounced *Itika*.—TRANSLATOR.

‡ *Ána* is the diminutive termination. *Uhmtoána* signifies really a *little man*.

\*\* By *ee* and *eh* I mean to express two different sounds of the *e*, the first of which comes nearly to the sound of the *e*: they cannot be more properly exemplified than by the German words *leeren* and *lehren*. There is the same difference as in French between *e* and *é*, as in *père, élé, beauté*; the final letter in each of the latter words having exactly the sound which I have represented by *eh*.

†† The *w* in German is pronounced like the English *v*, so that we must, according to this rule, probably substitute the *v* in pronouncing all words where we find the *w*.—TRANSLATOR.

## APPENDIX.

Cousin .....	U-éhta.
Uncle .....	Baolumi.
Aunt .....	Maolumi.*

### *Limbs and Parts of the Human Body.*

The Head.....	Um <sup>s</sup> klogo.
The Hair .....	Inuecle.
The Forehead.....	Iwuhnsi.
The Temples .....	Its̄lawúnu.
The Cheeks.....	Isibeelc.
The Jaw .....	Kandu-ihdu.
The Eye.....	Amees̄jo.
The Eye-lashes .....	Ammassi.
The Ear .....	Eelehbe, or Sinzehbe.
The Nose.....	Poomlu, or Um <sup>s</sup> poomlu. †
The Mouth .....	Mloomu, or Um <sup>s</sup> loomu. ‡
The Tongue.....	Mlume.
A Tooth.....	Ssihnju.
The Teeth .....	Ammassihnu. §
The Lips.....	Leebe.
The Chin .....	Isiléö.
The Beard .....	Indéö.
The Neck .....	Intamo.
The Windpipe.....	Um <sup>s</sup> kala.
The Breast.....	Isifuba.
The Breasts of a Woman.....	Ibeele.
The Shoulder-blade .....	Iḡalaba.
The Back.....	Um <sup>s</sup> latna.

\* These two words are derived from *Bao* and *Mao*, Father and Mother.

† Where the *oo* occurs, it is intended to represent a sound similar to the French *ou*; the *o* may be sounded like the *oa* in the English word *throat*.

‡ These words are given as a specimen of the effect of the *m*, which is often pronounced *um*, introduced before a word beginning with a consonant, as noticed above. It is to be observed that the augmentative *m* commonly precedes words beginning with a labial letter, whereas *a* precedes the dental ones. Before *g*, *k*, and *s*, both sounds are equally used.

§ The word *Amma*, as here used, always represents a collective idea: thus *Ammakoosina* is the whole nation of the *Koossas*; *Thumbe* is a gut, *Ammathumbe* the whole intestines.

|| The *ö* at the end of this word is half sunk or suppressed, and in the *Caffre* pronunciation is neither long or accented, but appears little more than a sort of modulation of the *e*.

## APPENDIX.

The Belly.....	Össiéssó.
The Arm.....	Unkono.
The Elbow.....	Kunchba.
The Hand.....	Isanga.
A Finger.....	Omnu.
The Fingers...	Iminu.*
The Thumb.....	Isithuba.
A Nail.....	Insipu.
The Hip-bone.....	Ingala.
The Thigh.....	Umlensi.
The Knee.....	Idoolo.
The Ankle-bone.....	Ukong:
A Knuckle.....	Ökweele.
The Foot.....	Jénjǎo.
The Heel.....	Istheende.
A Toe.....	Osowane.
The Toes.....	Ammasowane.
The Great-toe.....	Ubonsi, or Ithubjénjǎo: The Thumb of the Foot.

### Names of Beasts. †

Game, or wild Animals in general.....	Sammakási.
A Baboon. ( <i>Cynocephalus Ursinus</i> ).....	Imfeene.
Green Ape. ( <i>Cercopithecus Glauca</i> ).....	Imkáo.
Lion.....	Guinjáma.
Panther. ( <i>Felis Pardus</i> ).....	Ingwa.
Leopard. ( <i>Felis Jubata</i> ) ‡.....	Ilósi.
Wild Cat. ( <i>Felis</i> ).....	Boeldiá.
Hyæna. ( <i>Hyæna Crocuta</i> ).....	Unngjáka.
Jackall. ( <i>Canis mesomelas</i> ).....	Punguh tjé.

---

\* Notwithstanding all the trouble I have taken, I have not been able to discover a determined rule for the formation of the plural. As I have observed in a former note, many plurals are formed by repeating the first syllable of the singular twice over; and *Amma* expresses a collective, but in the instance before us of *the fingers*, we do not find the plural formed in either way.

† I hope to render a trifling service to naturalists who may hereafter travel over Southern Africa, in giving here a list of names of the animals that inhabit the Caffre country, according to what they are called by the natives, with those assigned them in the scientific classification.

‡ Not the leopard of the system which is comprehended under *Felis pardus*, but what the colonists call *Lulpaard*.

APPENDIX.

Dog. ( <i>Canis familiaris</i> ).....	Inzja.
Bitch .....	Iuzjakasi.
Red Weasel. ( <i>Viverra Caffra</i> ).....	Igála:
Honey Badger. ( <i>Gulo mellivorus</i> ).....	Iliéhtse.
Pole-cat. ( <i>Mustela Zorilla</i> ).....	Ikháka.
Civet-cat. ( <i>Viverra Civetta</i> )* .....	Umpúku.
Elephant.....	Ungíovo.
Rhinoceros.....	Unkhomo.
River-horse. ( <i>Hippopotamos</i> ).....	Imfuhbu.
Horned Cattle in general .....	Inkómo.
A Bull .....	Kuhnsi.
A Cow.....	Komokási, or Maas.
An Ox .....	Kábi.
Cattle without Horns .....	Unkuvá.
A Calf .....	Metóle, or Mathóla.
A young Calf .....	Kojána.
Lean Cattle.....	Inkomo-inile.
Fat Cattle .....	Inkomootje-leleejood.
	Inkomo-ammafuta. †
Buffalo. ( <i>Bos Caser</i> ).....	Ureati.
Eland. ( <i>Antilope oreas</i> ).....	Umpoof. ‡
Blue-deer. ( <i>Antilope leucophæa</i> ) .....	Iputhi. §
Wood-deer. ( <i>Antilope sylvatica</i> ).....	Babehla.
Roebuck. ( <i>Antilope cinerea</i> ) .....	Ilisa.
Reed-deer. ( <i>Antilope syrinx</i> ).....	P'huhnsi.
Red Roebuck, probably new.....	Nála.
Mountain Antelope. ( <i>Antilope pygarga</i> ) .....	Pade.
The Gazelle, the Duiker. ( <i>Antilope grimmia</i> ) ...	Puhnsi.
The small Antelope, the Oribi, ( <i>Antilope pygmæa</i> ) ..	Jula.
A Ram .....	Inguhnsi.
An Ewe.....	Immfu-ingáni.
A Wether .....	Immfu.

\* With regard to the different species of *Viverra* in Southern Africa great errors seem to exist, which, however, cannot here be set right.

† *Futa* signifies fat: also butter.

‡ Thence, probably, the name of *Empophos*, given to this animal by some writers.

§ According to the assertions of Vander Kemp, and of some other colonists, the blue-deer, which is now scarcely to be seen within the boundaries of the colony, still abounds in the Caffre country.

|| The name of this deer differs only from that of the reed-deer by the aspiration of the first syllable. In pronouncing the latter *p'huhnsi* care must be taken to give the aspirate to the *h*, not to pronounce the word as if it began with *f*.

## APPENDIX.

A Lamb .....	Itholeel-immfu.
A Goat .....	Imbuhri.
A Quagga.....	Quagga.
The Zebra.....	Dāu.*
A Horse.....	Haassi.
A Hog.....	Ihaagwu.
A Wild-boar. ( <i>Sus Æthiopicus</i> ).....	Guluhwe, Inguluhbe.
The Ant-bear. ( <i>Oruictoperus capensis</i> ) .....	Innagu.
A Hedge-hog. ( <i>Hystrix cristata</i> ) .....	Innaénda.
A Mole. ( <i>Georychus capensis</i> ) .....	Inthuko.
A Mouse .....	Impukn.
A Seal. ( <i>Phoca vitulina</i> ) .....	Inguhsa.
A Whale. ( <i>Physeter macrocephalus</i> ).....	Umneenga.

### Names of Birds.

A Bird .....	Intáka.
A Cock.....	Kukuduna.
A Hen .....	Kukukasi. †
A Pheasant. ( <i>Phasianus gallus</i> ).....	Kukukwinjane.
The Vulture. ( <i>Vultur percnopterus</i> ).....	Kalanga.
The Falcon. ( <i>Falco parasitus</i> ).....	Umswása.
The Ostrich .....	Inngiba.
Black Crow. ( <i>Corvus Afer</i> ) .....	Kwáwa.
Jackdaw. ( <i>Corvus albicollis</i> ) .....	Ithboguhlu.
Parrot.....	Koneene.
Luri. ( <i>Corythaix Persa</i> ) .....	Guluhwi.
The Honey-cuckoo. ( <i>Cuculus indicator</i> ) ‡.....	Intáka.buhs.
A Crane .....	Jéndöwe.
The yellow crested Heron .....	Heem.
The wild Peacock .....	Zeeme.
A Partridge .....	Isíangu.
A Duck .....	Dada.

\* The zebra is called by this name in almost all the Hottentot dialects.

† At the time of the first Portuguese discoveries in Southern Africa, the Caffres had tame fowls.

‡ This bird lives chiefly upon wild honey. He seeks out the bees' nests, and gives notice when he has found one, by a cry of *tcherr tcherr*, which indicates to the inhabitants that a nest is near; thence his name of *Indicator*.

APPENDIX.

*Names of Reptiles, Fish, Insects, &c.\**

A Tortoise .....	In <sup>3</sup> guhlo.
A Frog.....	Izeele.
A Toad.....	Gongóde.
The Leguan .....	Ta <sup>2</sup> am.
The Salamander .....	Ukhuchu.
Three different sorts of Lizards .....	{ Inkuhmi. Ikiliétj <sup>2</sup> e. Ichókootj <sup>3</sup> eeene.
A Serpent in general .....	Njóka.
The grey Wood Snake .....	Naamba.
The yellow striped Snake.....	Nuhssu. †
The green Water Snake .....	Khaandi.
The large Pof-adder .....	Ichamba.
The Mountain-adder.....	Inthango.
The Cobra-capella.....	P'himpi.
The four-footed Snake ‡ .....	Kabeh.
Fish in general .....	Tlaansi.
A Lobster .....	Inkála.
A Fly .....	Upukáne.
An Ant.....	Bovani.
A Worm that bites or stings.....	Isibongu.
A large green Fly into which this Worm changes ...	Sbáo.
A Worm which is probably the Larve of a Phryganea, or something of that kind .....	Tuhntsjana.
A Bee.....	Injuhssi.
A Louse .....	Jentowala.
A Flea .....	Jentowakuhmba.
A Butterfly .....	Insiaguhs.
A Scorpion .....	Daudoáni.

\* I follow here entirely the names given me by Vander Kemp; it would be very difficult to ascertain the proper scientific names.

† This is the snake mentioned in Chap. 24th, which we found while we were encamped in the Caffre country waiting for Geika.

‡ Perhaps the *coluber saurita* mentioned by Nennich in his *Lexicon der Naturgeschichte*, as a snake having much resemblance to a lizard.—TRANSLATOR.

## APPENDIX.

### *Parts of Animals.*

A Horn .....	P'hóndo.
An Elephant's Tusk .....	P'hóndonungl'ovo.
Hair .....	Pója.
The Skin of a Beast .....	Isikhumba.
Feathers .....	Insiba.
Tail-feathers .....	Itsjoba.
The Tail of a Bird or Quadruped .....	Umsila.
The Wing Feathers .....	Usiba.
Flesh.....	Jamma, or Injamma.
A Joint .....	Thaambo.
A Marrow-bone .....	Ummongo.
The Lungs .....	Ip'hunga.
The Breath.....	Upefuhmla.
The Heart .....	Ip'hápu.
The Stomach .....	Luhssu.
The Kidneys.....	Sinsó.
The Liver .....	Isbihndi.
The Intestines .....	Ammathumba.
Ox-dung .....	Pulongo.
The Bladder.....	Isihnja.
An Egg .....	Kanda.
Milk.....	Ammaassi.
Fresh Milk .....	Lubihssi.
Sour Milk.....	Khaka.
Butter, or Fat .....	Futa.
Honey .....	Obuhssi.

### *Names of Trees and Plants.*

A Tree .....	Immihtl.
The Cripple Tree. ( <i>Protea conocarpa</i> ) .....	Intsaassa.
A tall Tree, with Fruit resembling Plums, perhaps the <i>Zizyphus mucronatus</i> .....	Ingonja.
The large Thorn .....	Ummuhnga.
Another sort of Thorn, both species of <i>Acacia</i> .....	Immieenga.
The Cat-Thorn .....	Umkakoba.
A sort of Cassia. ( <i>Schotia speciosa</i> ).....	Ingaam.

APPENDIX.

Hassagai-Tree. ( <i>Curtisia faginea</i> ).....	Inslakusjáne.
Monkey's-Cord. ( <i>Cynanchum obtusifolium</i> ) .....	Luhsi.
A Gourd .....	Puhsi.
The Calabash, or Bottle-Gourd. ( <i>Cucurbita lagenaria</i> ) .....	Liseclóa.
The Caffre Water-melon .....	Ithanga.
The Caffre Millet. ( <i>Holcus Sorghum</i> ).....	Eemasomba.
The Straw of the Millet .....	Sehle.
An Aloë .....	Ikhala.
The Plant they use for Tobacco .....	Ithúba.
A large Reed .....	Ingóngólo.
A sort of Sugar-cane .....	Jeenfe.
A Plant which the Caffres use as a sort of Spoon* ..	Umphambo.
A certain Root eaten by the Caffres .....	Nongo.
Grass.....	Inghá, Tjani, Uhtjaan.
Rushes.....	Immihsi.
A Mushroom.....	Koáne.
Wood.....	Kuhni.
Small Wood for Firing.....	Tsaassa.
Ashes .....	Uthútu.
A Leaf .....	Ingabi.
The Bark.....	Kosa.
The Seed .....	Been.
Gum.....	Inslaka.
Rosin .....	Tina.

*Things relating to the Earth and the Heavens.*

Clayey Earth.....	Umdóhngé
Sand .....	Tlabati.
Copper .....	Bangála.
Brass .....	Zumbi-tslope.
Iron .....	Zumbi-linjáme.
Stone .....	Iliétjeh.

\* Alberti gives the following description of this plant, and the use made of it: It has a flat stem, about an inch broad and two lines thick, with fibres wove very hard together. The stem is cut off in the broadest part, and beat with a stone, till the fibres separate, and make a sort of brush; this is dipped in the milk, and conveys a good deal at a time to the mouth. They also use muscle-shells as spoons. The Beetjuans, who are farther advanced in civilization than the Koossas, cut spoons in the form of ours very tolerably out of acacia wood.

## APPENDIX.

Hewn Stone .....	Bongótoa.
A rounded Top of a Mountain .....	Intába.
A Mountain terminating in a Ridge at the Top ....	Mango.
Jagged Pieces of Rock .....	Iliwa,
A steep, or nearly perpendicular Rock .....	Udonga.
White Ant Heaps .....	Siduhla.
A Cleft, or Gully in a Rock .....	Umfuhla.
A Valley .....	K'heebi.
Earth, Terra Firma .....	Umsíaba.
Sea .....	Loanse.
The Foam of the Sea .....	Amása.
A River .....	Umlambo.
A Ford for passing a River .....	Swaku.
Water.....	Ammaansi.
Fire .....	Umlilo.
Flame.....	Futha.
Smoke .....	Uhmsi.
Shade .....	Umthunsi.
The Sun.....	Lelanga, or Ilanga.
The Moon .....	Jujanga.
The Stars .....	Kwinkweies.
The Evening Star .....	Ngaandi.
The Morning Star .....	Ikwees.
The Seven Stars .....	Islimeela.
Night .....	Upsuhch.
Day.....	Imine.
Morning.....	Gomso.
Evening .....	Kwakuhsu.
The Heavens .....	Isuhlu.
A Cloud.....	Ammáfu.
Thunder.....	Laduduhma.
Lightning .....	Abaneeka.
Rain .....	Infuhla.
A Rainbow .....	Umjáma.
Snow .....	Seele.
Rime, Hoar-Frost.....	Inkólosáne.
Fog .....	Inkuhugo.
Wind .....	Moja.
Drought.....	Khómehle.

## APPENDIX.

### *The Dwelling-Place, Household Furniture, &c.*

The Village, the Kraal.....	Ikhája, or Umslaante.
A House, or Hut .....	Insūh.
The Cattle Fold.....	Ut'hango.
A Door.....	Umkango.
A Window .....	Isikhóba.
The centre Post of the Hut .....	Intsehka.
The Side Poles .....	Tóngá.
The Mats for sleeping upon .....	Ukhuko.
A Mat for eating upon .....	Istheebe.
The earthen Pot for keeping their Liquor .....	Tsjala.
Any other Kind of earthen Pot.....	Imbisa.
The Cover of the Pot .....	Isikikwe.
A Bottle Gourd.....	Kokombi.
The Shell of other sort of Gourds.....	Indehbe.
A Milk Basket .....	Sihťja, or T'huhnga.
An Axe.....	Zimbi.
A Knife .....	Tsjehmi.
A Case for a Knife .....	Islitsjeetsja.
A Wooden Spade.....	Slakhulo.
A Spoon.....	Igabbehka.
A Brush Spoon .....	Umslonsa.
A Tortoise-shell Box .....	Umkeeke.
A Needle, or Bodkin.....	Silanda.
A Bag .....	Innóhu.
The Sticks for striking Fire .....	Veeſhe.
A Looking-Glass .....	Nádi. *
Money .....	Mali. †
The Hottentot Górrah, a Musical Instrument .....	Ihadi.
A small Reed Pipe.....	Umbaandi.
A Hassagai.....	Umk'hónto.
A Hassagai with a quadrangular Shaft.....	Isagga.

\* A word learnt from the Hottentots. When they first saw the Europeans read, they called the book by the same word *Nadi*, adding *ot'heeta*; that is to say, a speaking looking-glass. They have since distinguished a look-lug-glass by the addition of *ok'hangeela*, which signifies for looking into.

† This is the same as the Persic word for money. The Koossas, however, had the word from the Hottentots, by whom it is called *Mari*.

## APPENDIX.

A Handful of Hassagals.....	Siggále.
A Kirri .....	Indúku.
The Bosjesman's Bow.....	Sipeeta.
The Bowstring, made of Sinews .....	Ummuhtja.
An Arrow .....	Umtólo.
The Shaft of the Arrow .....	Udihsa.
The Point of the Arrow .....	Ingahla.
A Gun .....	Mpub. *

### *Articles of Cloathing, and Food.*

A Mantle of Ox Hide .....	Inguhbo.
A Mantle of a Wild Animal's Skin.....	Uncebe.
A Woman's under Garment.....	Inkjo.
A Woman's Head-Dress.....	Ngonse.
A Shoe, a Sandal.....	Jetangwo.
Metal Bracelets .....	Uhs <sup>3</sup> kolo.
Ivory Bracelets .....	Khaga.
Finger or Toe Rings .....	Pseesana.
Joints of Animals worn as Ornaments .....	Lubeengo.
Beads .....	Igaláka.
Victuals .....	Kuhl <sup>7</sup> ša.
Bread ... ..	Isonka.
Cooked Millet.....	Kóbi.
Salt .....	Tj <sup>3</sup> na.
Millet Wine .....	Inguhja.
The weaker Liquor from the Millet .....	Tjal <sup>3</sup> ša.
Millet Vinegar.....	Tjala.

### *Proper Names, Titles, &c.*

A Man of their own Country .....	Koossa, or Kaussa. †
A Woman of their own Country.....	Koossakási, or Kaussa- kási.

\* Pronounced so, as in some sort to imitate the report of a gun.

† It must be observed, that the *ss* in German is sounded much like the English *ow*, so that an Englishman would probably have written *Kowwa* rather than *Kaussa*.—TRANSLATOR.

## APPENDIX.

A Hottentot.....	Umlaš.
A Bosjesman .....	Umtša, or Batša.
A Namaqua .....	Damma.*
Namaqualand.....	Dammoene.
A White Man, a Colonist .....	Umluhngo.
The King, the Lord .....	Inkoossi.
The Queen .....	Inkosakasi.
A Servant.....	Igosso.
An Enchanter, a Magician.....	Geicha.
An Enchantress, a female Magician.....	Geichakasi.
A Friend .....	Umsilobo.
A Comrade .....	Vandini.
An Enemy .....	Immpi.
A Thief .....	Indefajo.
A Rascal.....	Gwiga.

### *Diseases.*

Sickness, Pain.....	Silonda.
A Fever .....	Geisakwe.
An Eruption .....	Ukweekwe.
The Small-Pox.....	Ingagáka.
Pimples.....	Int'húba.
A Cough .....	Kofeela.
Flatulence .....	Suhra.
Hunger.....	Lamba.

### *Adjectives.*

Handsome.....	Jenkíe.
Strong .....	Ammaansia.
Weak .....	Thatháka.
Sick .....	Fah.
Alive, Living.....	Lichihse.
Dead.....	Publa.
Pleased .....	Tsala.

---

\* It remains to be proved hereafter, whether by this name is to be understood the Dammaras, of whom very little is at present known; or whether it is not intended by this name to describe all the tribes of Hottentots on the western coast, that being the part where the Namaquas inhabit.

APPENDIX:

Afflicted .....	Dammile.
Obedient .....	Kováš.
Disobedient .....	Akora.
Sensible. Spirited .....	Wimba.
Slothful .....	Keena.
Drunken .....	Jangeela.
Hungry .....	Lambile.
Aged.....	Indála.
Young .....	Ikhobōka.
Rich .....	Fih.
Crooked, in action, unjust .....	Guelna.
Upright, in action, just.....	Longa.
Upright, sincere.....	Longile.
True .....	Janisa.
False .....	Khókandile.
Good .....	Kajeeke.
Bad.....	Kuhmba.
Angry .....	Kuhmbile.
Sweet .....	M'msandi.
Sour .....	Immuhnje, or Muhng .
Sharp .....	Ameera.
Corrupt. Putrid.....	Anuka.
Warm.....	Sjuh, or Suhsu.
Hot.....	Tsjibu.
Cold .....	Trabba, or Ingihle.
Cold Weather .....	Godoole.
Large .....	Kuhlu.
Small.....	Intoanna.
Full .....	Iseele.
Much .....	Siniénzi.
Little .....	Tuani.
Dark, with relation to Colour.....	Kuhssāma.
Light, with relation to Colour .....	Khoanja.
White.....	Tslope.
Black .....	Iinjāme.
Red.....	Pongwu.
Yellow .....	Libiklu.
Green .....	Luhssa-essa.
Blue .....	Ingwiwu.
Grey .....	Ichoana.

## APPENDIX.

### Verbs. \*

To give .....	Pah, Nika, or Eetha. †
To take .....	T'habáta.
To buy, to exchange .....	T'heenga.
To pay .....	Sáula.
To keep .....	Beeka.
To conceal .....	Fakka.
To seek to obtain any thing, to beg .....	Fuhna.
To find .....	Fumána.
To will .....	Wuhma.
To think .....	Buhla.
To believe .....	Sanga, or K'hoola.
To trust, to have confidence in .....	Dsehla.
To love .....	T'handá:
To hate .....	Sondóa.
To hope .....	Ingana.
To praise .....	Koota.
To lie. To speak untruth .....	K'hókiéssa. ‡.
To swear .....	Fuhnga.
To deal justly .....	Longiéssa.
To learn .....	Funda.
To be taught .....	Fundiéssa.
To see .....	Póna.
To point to .....	K'hangeela.
To hear .....	Kova.

---

\* All verbs end in a; most of them, particularly the purely active, are radical, and commonly of only two syllables. The derivatives have more syllables, ending in *ana*, *ela*, or *essa*. The neuters are for the most part the same as the adjectives from which they are derived, as *Lamba*, hunger, *Lamba*, to be hungry.—*Kuhmba*, bad *Kuhmba*, to be wicked,—*Tsala*, pleasing, *Tsala*, to be pleased. It is the being preceded by a pronoun which distinguishes the verb; the intermediate auxiliary verb is, however, not spoken; it is only understood.

† Among these, *Nika* has a very particular signification. It is partly used in the same sense as the other two, but sometimes, according to what accompanies it, signifies to permit a thing to be given to you. As, for example, with the first person, *Di Nika* is sometimes to be understood not *I give*, but *give me*; and with the second person future, *O Nika* is not to be understood *thou shalt give*, but *thou shalt be given*, that is, something shall be given to thee.

‡ These examples, as well as some others, shew the manner of forming the derivatives. *Khoka* is at the same time a *lie*, an untruth; and *to lie*, to tell untruths. *Khokandie* signifies *false*. *Khokiéssa* is properly, according to Vander Kemp, *to be habituated to framing lies*. *Longa* is upright; relating to action, just. *Longile* is sincere; *Longiéssa*, to deal justly, to be just in our dealings.

APPENDIX.

To understand .....	Deewa.
To speak .....	T'heeta.
To call .....	P'hisa.
To count, to reckon .....	Bala.
To sigh .....	P'huhmla.
To blow .....	Wutheela.
To be hot .....	Igála.
To sweat .....	Pila.
To dream .....	T'honga.
To weep .....	Lila.
To sleep .....	Lala.
To cut .....	Siga.
To shiver, to break to shivers .....	Tjanda.
To bind .....	Eeba.
To hack with an axe .....	Gaula.
To dig .....	Limma.
To plant .....	Bina.
To sow Seeds in the Ground .....	T'jala:
To cook .....	Peeka.
To sew with a Needle .....	Thuhnga.
To milk .....	Singa.
To make, applied to Substances .....	Eensa.
To loosen any thing that is tight bound .....	Geima.
To cover, applied to sensible Objects .....	Winga.
To close up .....	Fala:
To unclose, to loosen, to set at Liberty .....	Fula.
To open, to unfold .....	Kila.
To fold together .....	Songa.
To break any thing to pieces .....	P'hula.
To smear over any thiug .....	T'hambiéssa.
To work Iron .....	K'handa.
To go hunting .....	Singeela.
To snare .....	Amba.
To hold fast .....	P'hamba.
To strike .....	Peeta.
To thrust .....	K'baba.
To kill .....	Pulába.
To die .....	Fila.
To fight .....	Ilsa.
To throw the Hassagai .....	Bieensa.
To run .....	Dsjidima.
To swim .....	Slamba, or Dada.

## APPENDIX.

To dance .....	Duda.
To go .....	Hamba.
To sit .....	Tsāla.
To rise up .....	Vuka.
To come.....	Isa.
To stay, to remain with .....	Ima.
To go on a Journey .....	Kudúka.
To carry any thing away .....	Mukiéssa.
To bring in .....	Ginniéssa.
To empty.....	Suhssa.
To hear.....	Peesa.
To eat .....	Jesīa.
To drink, or to be drunk .....	Tseela.
To suck up .....	Olaanja.
To entertain any one as his Host .....	P'huka.
To smoak with a Pipe .....	Sjaila.
To smoak, as the Fire does.....	M'muhssa.
To marry .....	Mseeka.
It rains .....	Fula.
It thunders .....	Duduhma.

### *Pronouns.*

I .....	Mina, or Muna.
Thou .....	Öenna.
He .....	Luhmtö.
We .....	T'hina.
Ye, or You .....	Nina, or Nini.
They .....	Luhmtö.*

These personal pronouns are only used when it is intended to point out the person with particular emphasis. In the common mode of speaking, the personal pronouns used with the verbs are different, and are changed according to the time intended to be expressed, instead of the verbs changing by inflexions, as the following table will shew:

---

\* This word, for the third person, comes apparently from Uhmto, a man; and the L stands, as it were, in the place of the demonstrative article, as if to say, *this man, these men.*

## APPENDIX.

	PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
I.....	Di a .....	Di, or Indi .....	Do.
Thou .....	U j a .....	U b e .....	O.
He .....	E a .....	E b e .....	Wo.
We .....	S i j a .....	S i b e .....	So.
Ye.....	N i j a .....	N i b e .....	No.
They.....	P a j a .....	E b e .....	: Bona.

The regularity and consequence in the formation of these pronouns of time is well worthy of remark. The characteristic for the distinction of the person lies in the consonant; as, for example, the first person singular in all begins with D; the first person plural in S. N distinguishes the second person, B or P the third. On the contrary, the time seems pointed out by the vowel: A for the present, E for the past, and O for the future. Certainly a very simple and happy combination. This form of personal pronouns supersedes, in the language of the Koossas, the use of auxiliary verbs, of which they have none. In the language of the Beetjuans, which differs in some respects from that of the Koossas, there are auxiliary verbs, and the only inflexions in verbs are formed by them. Here and there also, in the Koossa language, *Di ku*, I go, occurs as an auxiliary in the formation of the future. For the rest, the pronouns are sometimes placed before, sometimes after the verb: I could not, however, make out whether there was any fixed rule for doing this, or whether the application is wholly arbitrary.

Mine .....	E a a m.
Thine .....	S a a m, A k o, or L a k o.
His .....	K h a l u h m t ō. *
Ours .....	A - é t h u.
Yours and theirs, the same as .....	Thine and his.

These possessive pronouns are joined to substantives; as, for example, *Unfas' eaam*, my wife; *Inkomo lako*, thy ox; *Insiuh-aétlu*, his house; *Le, Lo, or Lento*, is a sort of article which is sometimes placed before substantives, but is also used as a demonstrative pronoun: as, for example:

What is that? .....	N i - l é ? or I n t o n i - l o ?
This, that .....	L e h s'.
Who, which.....	D a u i, K o b a n i.
What .....	N i, or I n i n a.
These, which .....	I - i.

---

\* That is to say, *to this man*, or *for this man*.

## APPENDIX.

This way which goes directly out.....	Isdeela, i longiléjo, i enkfc.
None.....	Ak'hu.
No one, nobody.....	Ak'hu-n-uhmtð.

### *Prepositions.*

For.....	K'ha.
To.....	Au.
Speak to him.....	Theta au lé.
Of, or from.....	Vel, vela.
By.....	Khan.
Above.....	Peesuhlo.
Underneath.....	Paaéntsi.
Within.....	Giina, Kuhse.
Deep in.....	Lembo.
Deep in the water.....	Lombo-n-amaassi.
Without.....	Ak-haku.
With.....	Né, na, n'.

Ne', or n', are, properly speaking, only used to join together two substantives; *aa*, *Indoda-n-Umfasi*, husband and wife; *Induda-n-Inzja-kási*, a dog and bitch; *P'huhnga-nin-amaas*, a basket with milk.

### *Adverbs.*

To-day.....	Namsia.
To-morrow.....	Gomso.
The day after to-morrow.....	Gomso-omnja.
Yesterday evening.....	Isoli.
This evening.....	Pesoli.
Daily.....	Umsia-jonke.
Now.....	Kaloko.
Never.....	Pagati.
Where.....	Epi, or opu.
There.....	Appa.
Whercin.....	P'hina.
Whither.....	Vel-A'phina.
Therein.....	Appája.
Thither.....	Vel-appája.
Here.....	Lindajo.
Hither.....	Najo.
How.....	Sin.

APPENDIX.

How large? .....	Sin-k'haka.
How much? .....	Singa.
So much .....	Sinjens-jé.
So as .....	Gansjé.
As hot as fire .....	Tsjibugansjé-n-umlilo.
A little .....	Innání, or inkháni.
Slow, low, (in speaking) still, quiet .....	Gósih.
Quick, loud, harsh .....	Koneene.
Wherefore? .....	Kkéh, or Unani.
Yes .....	Hé, ewé, or ewah.
No .....	Hasi.
Not .....	Aiko, or au.
That is far off .....	Eonaantó.
Why .....	Ma.
But.....	Uh.

*Interjections.*

Mere exclamations, as O, ah .....	Wa.
To express astonishment.....	Uh, au.
To express disapprobation .....	Ooih.
The oath commonly used .....	Non.
By Chachabé .....	Non Chachabé.*

*Numerals,*

One.....	Ihnje.
Two .....	Mabini, or Sombini.
Three.....	Mat'hatu.
Four.....	Mani.
Five .....	Maslanu.
Six .....	Sikana.
Seven .....	Sit'handatu.
Eight .....	
Nine .....	P'huomme.
Ten.....	Sjume.

\* See page 254.

- APPENDIX.

When a Koossa would express a number, he commonly, as he speaks the numeral, at the same time raises the like number of fingers. Sometimes, however, the numeral is not mentioned; the action of raising the fingers only is used. Many, as has been already mentioned, cannot even name the numerals. Vander Kemp, notwithstanding the length of time he remained among them, never could learn any term for *eight*; and among the Beetjuans I could not learn any words for the numbers *five* and *nine*: much less have they the means of expressing higher numbers, as twenty, forty, a hundred. Mr. Barrow, indeed, gives them, but he appears to have been deceived by his interpreter, for none among the Caffres, of whom we enquired how they called eleven, twelve, twenty, &c. seemed at all able to comprehend what was meant.

*Specimens of their Modes of speaking.*

Whence comest thou? .....	Vel ap'hina. <i>From where.</i>
I come from Guakubi.....	Di vela Guakubi. <i>I from Guakubi.</i>
What is your name? .....	Ni gamma lako. <i>What name thine.</i>
I am a Colonist .....	Mina Umluhngo. <i>I Colonist.</i>
Where is thy wife? .....	Epi-n-Umfasi lake. <i>Where Wife thine.</i>
I have no wife .....	Aiko-n-Umfasi. <i>No Wife.</i>
Let us sit down .....	Ma-si-tslale. <i>Why we sit.</i>
I came on horseback.....	Diséne haassi. <i>Di I, isa come, né with haassi, horse.</i>
I come from the wood ..	Di vel é slat'hina.
Give me milk to drink.....	Di nike di tsel ammaas. <i>I give I drink milk.</i>
Give me bread .....	Di pe sonka. <i>I give bread.</i>
Milk is in the basket .....	Ammaas asc.t'huhngéne.
Corn is in the bag.....	Eemasomba as innowenc.
The milk is thick .....	Ammaas avuthile.
I am going to milk .....	Dia ku singa.
Are you going to milk? .....	Uja ku singanà.
Cut me a piece of meat .....	Di segeel' injamma.

## APPENDIX.

Roast it for me .....	Do usehla. <i>Do (future) me, usehla, roast.</i>
Cook it for me.....	Do p'hekehle.
The fire does not burn .....	A-uhtsj'e umlilo.
The hut is on fire.....	Insiuh i a-ehstja.
The fire smoaks .....	Umlilo nomsi.
The fire goes out .....	Umlilo ignile.
Stir up the fire.....	Kwase la umlilo.
The food is hot.....	Ukuhlsia usjusu.
The food is cold .....	Ukuhlsia ku p'hole.
The food is salt .....	Ukuhlsia suna tjua.
I must speak to thee .....	Di sa u kutjeela.
Do you not hear? .....	Aik'hova.
I do not understand.....	An diwa.
Do you take it? .....	Uje soana.
I do not comprehend it .....	Au di kaas.
Speak loud, that I may understand .....	T'heeta k'hakulu di esueh
I understand it.....	Di sihle.
What tidings do you bring? .....	Usako t'hi nina.
The enemy comes .....	Jesa Impi.
Let us go .....	Hamba si hambe. <i>Go we go.</i>
Run quick .....	Dsjidima koneene.
Go home .....	Ku duka.
I am weary .....	Di dini we.
I will strike thee .....	Dia ku peeta oenna. <i>I go strike thee.</i>
Wait upon me.....	K'hau di liende.
Give me tobacco to smook .....	Na di fsel it'huba. <i>Give I drink tobacco.</i>
Where do you live?.....	Nini p'hina. <i>You where.</i>
We live at Sjammi .....	Thin appaja Sjommi. <i>We there Sjommi.</i>
Have you any wife? .....	Un Umfasina.
I have ten children.....	Di sjume abanto anabaam <i>I ten people children.</i>
The woman is very rich.....	L'umfaas' ufi hle hakuhla <i>Woman rich great.</i>
The day breaks .....	Kwiaassa.
It is very early .....	Kuhssa essa.
The sun rises .....	Ilanga llesa.
It breaks through .....	Lia p'huma.

APPENDIX.

It is windy to-day .....	Uko moja namsia.
The sun goes down .....	Lelanga zona.
The brother comes back.....	Buja Umklueh.
He ran quick .....	Ebe kitsimihle.
That is good .....	Tjapi'le.
You say right .....	Uja tjapa.
Bind the calf fast .....	Necb' inkenjane.
The cow has calved .....	Iseele inkomo.
The sheep is come home .....	Isimfuhsa kuduka.
The little calf is gone .....	Inkonjane s'arikile.
Shall you kill an ox? .....	Kheela o'enna Kheelani?
I will not .....	An di vuhme, or an di k'haandi.
The dog has bit me .....	In di lumihle inzja. <i>I (past) bitten dog.</i>
I will kill the dog that bites .....	Iwzja le i lumajo do kupulaba. <i>Dog that bites I (future) kill.</i>
Let us now rise .....	Ma si vuka kaloko.
I am ready .....	Di ké wile.
I have not enough.....	Andi ka sluti.
It will rain .....	Ea ku fula.
Let us go over the ford .....	Ma su eele i swuka.
The river is full .....	Umlaambo useele.
The river runs.....	Umlaambo i hamba.
No, the river is empty .....	Haa i umlaambo uhtsihle:
The river is still .....	Umlaambo i ahtsihle.
A storm is coming on .....	Lea kuse bekeele.
It thunders .....	Usuhlula duduhma. <i>Heaven there thunder.</i>
Let us go home .....	Hambane kuduka.

These little specimens will suffice to prove by accurate comparison, that in this language many affinities may be traced with the ancient ones; I must, however, confess, that here and there the combining of words is obscure to me, and particularly that I cannot wholly understand the meaning of many of the intermediate syllables. In these, the language of Southern Africa abound so much, and their sense is so little defined, being often very different in one case from what it is in another, that it cannot be attained by learning single words only, it must be sought by learning whole phrases.

But however incomplete may be this Vocabulary, and the remarks annexed to it, I yet hope that by it I may have given some insight into the degree of cultivation that exists among the Koossas, and smoothed the way to future researches; that I may, with respect to enquiries into the Caffre languages, as well as on many other points, have rendered myself useful to future travellers. No nation is so savage as not to see, with more favourable eyes, a foreigner who endeavours to express himself in their language; and this feeling, therefore, might be expected from the Caffres, even supposing them the most wild and untamed people upon the earth.

# I N D E X.

## A.

- Abue*, the Dane, his remarkable fate, 178.  
*Adder Pof*, an extraordinary species of serpent, 35.  
*African Farms*, a sort of little states within themselves, 47.  
*Alberti*, captain, his work upon the Caffres, 249, note—His account of the dissensions among the Caffres different from Vander Kemp's, 293, note—His account of an embassy to the Caffre king, and presents made to the latter, 321, note—His negotiations with the Caffres, 328—Great confidence placed in him by the Caffres, 330—He accompanies the Commissary-general into the Caffre country, 334.  
*Algoa-bay*, description of the settlement there, 232.  
*Aloe-gum*, manner of preparing it, 169.  
*Aloe-perfoliata*, numbers growing together, 161.  
*Ammakosina*, a tribe of Caffres, 250.  
*Augusta's Rest*, name given by the travellers to a romantic spot, 207.  
*Ausspannplatzen*, the meaning of the word explained, 19, note—Utility of these places to the colonists, 21.  
*Author*, the, his desire to visit Southern Africa, 2—He engages as tutor to the son of Governor Janssens, 3—His preparations for his journey, 16—His arrangement of plants and insects at the Teefontein, 32—He loses his way in pursuit of insects, 46—Disappointed of shooting a hippopotamus, 54—The reliance of the colonists on his power of curing diseases, 88, and 337—His visit to the muscle cave, 178—His interesting progress through the Kaiman's cleft, 190—His disappointment at searching in vain for the body of an elephant, 225—His visit to the Lead mine at Van Stade's-river, 229.

## B.

- Barbier's kraal*, why so called, 194.  
*Barrow*, Mr. defectiveness of his map, 36, and note—His want of liberality in the description he gives of the African colonists, 48—He accuses the colonists wrongfully of cruelty to their oxen, 66—His mistaken ideas concerning the Neisna lake, 198—In an error when he considers the colonists as the aggressors in the Caffre war, 200—His account of the Caffres, an exceedingly good one, 250—Mistaken in his representations with regard to the colonists of Bruintjeshoogte, 360.  
*Baths*, warm ones in the Brand-valley, 148.  
*Bavian's kloof*, society of the united-brethren there, 151.

- Bays*, along the Southern Coast of Africa, similarity of them, 201.  
*Beauty*, extraordinary instance of it in an African girl, 176.  
*Berg-river*, plan for making a canal from it to Saldanha-bay, 40.—Hippopotami found there, 49—Mouth of the river, 51—Mode in which it was passed by the travelling party, 53.  
*Berg-valley*, a remarkable ravine there, 71.  
*Bethelsdorp*, missionary institution there, 237.  
*Blaise St.* Bay of, the name by which Mossel-bay was formerly known, 181.  
*Bokkeveld*, the lower, number of sheep fed in it, 84—The country much infested by the Bosjesmans, 85.  
*Bosjesman* woman, her hideous and disgusting appearance, 56—Meaning of the word Bosjesman, *ib.* note—Compromise made with them by the people of the Lower Bokkeveld, 85—A visit made by two of them to the travelling party, 114—They are a distinct race from the Hottentots, 116—Description of them, 117—A remarkable instance of the hatred borne them by the Caffres, 276—Enormities committed by them in the Bruintjeshoogte, 362.  
*Brakkefontein*, a place near the Cape Town, 19.  
*Brand-valley*, a hot spring there, 148.  
*Breast mountain*, why so called, 92.  
*Briquas*, a youth of that nation, 113.  
*Bruintjeshoogte*, a remote district of the colony, why so called, 359—Fit only for feeding sheep, 360—The colonists here were not the aggressors in the Caffre war, *ib.*  
*Brush*, a sort of one used as a spoon by the Caffres. Appendix, 12, note.  
*Buys*, Conrad, a colonist, extraordinary account of him, 210—Defended against being a stimulator of the Caffre war, 296—Married to Geika's mother, *ib.*—The rebel Caffre Chiefs refuse to make peace with their king unless Buys is dismissed from his service, 313—He comes to meet General Janssens, 318—The General insists on Geika's dismissing him, 326—His aversion to the English, 328—His return into the colony, 330.

## C.

- Caffres*, the desolate state of a farm destroyed by them, 197—First rencontre of the travellers with them, 217—Their agility in throwing the bassagai, 218—A mock fight represented by them, *ib.*—Their weapons, *ib.*—Their dance, 219—Their rush baskets, *ib.*—Instance of the distance at which they can hold a conversation so as to be distinctly heard, 224—Their trou-

## INDEX.

- blesome hunting parties in the colony, 230—  
Origin of the name, 241, and note—Charac-  
teristics of these people, 243—Their probable  
origin, 245—Extent of the country, 248—  
Dissension among the Caffre Chiefs, 293—  
Their quarrels with the colonists, *ib.*—Ravages  
committed by them, 294—They surround  
General Vandeleur, 295—Driven back by a  
colonist party, *ib.*—Their dread of the water,  
307—Their dislike of the English, 328—Ne-  
gociations of Captain Alberti with them, *ib.*—  
Their eagerness to plunder the author's medi-  
cine chest, 338—An instance of modesty  
among the girls, 339—Manner of travelling  
when a horde removes, 341—A rebel horde  
returning, 357.
- Caffre Chiefs*, dissensions among them, 290—  
Several of them revolt against King Geika,  
292—The rebellious ones invited to a con-  
ference with General Janssens, 303—Their  
Interview with him, 311—Articles of agree-  
ment made with them, 313—Not very willing  
to accept his mediation for reconciling them  
with Geika, 315—Their fear of returning into  
their own country, 329—Very desirous of  
living on good terms with the Christians, 331  
—Messengers sent by the Commissary-general  
to desire a meeting with them, 334—Their  
arrival expected in vain by him, 342—Recon-  
ciliation of some of them with Geika, 382.
- Camdeboo*, a desert plain, fatigue of crossing  
it, 365.
- Cannon*, astonishment excited in a Caffre by the  
firing of one, 308.
- Cattle-places*, why so called, 55.
- Chamtoo-river*, arduous passage of it, 223—  
beautiful country on the other side, 224.
- Channa*, a plant used by the colonists in making  
soap, 124.
- Chronic diseases*, more prevalent in the colony  
than acute, 88.
- Colonists*, their journeys to the Cape Town, 20—  
Wrongfully accused by Mr. Barrow of cruelty  
to their oxen, 66—In general unjustly tra-  
duced by English and French travellers, 74—  
Kindness shewn by one to the travellers when  
they had lost their way, 81—The diseases to  
which they are principally subject, 88—  
Amenity of those in the Houtam district, 89  
—Remarkable for never swearing or using  
abusive language, *ib.*—Disputes about the  
boundaries of their property, 108—Extraor-  
dinary instance of boorishness in one, 131—  
The colonists remarkably temperate, 167—  
Solitary and inactive life led by those of  
Bruintjeshoogte, 364—Character of those in  
Graaff-Reynett, and causes why so unamiable,  
377.
- Colony of the Cape of Good Hope*, its distracted  
state when taken by the English in 1795, 4—
- Lamentable state of some parts at the arrival  
of Governor Janssens, 302.
- Colossal*, a whole family remarkably so, 150.
- Columns*, extraordinary natural colossal ones on  
the mountains, 55.
- Commissary-general De Mist* determines to  
visit the distant parts of the colony, 6—  
Persons accompanying him on his journey  
enumerated, 9—Preparations for his journey,  
11—His departure, 17—His anxiety to render  
justice to the Hottentots, 220—He sets out  
to meet the rebel Caffre Chiefs, 334—But  
expects them in vain, 342—His efforts to  
establish order and prosperity in Graaff-  
Reynett, 378.
- Commission for improving agriculture*, 92.
- Conga*, a Caffre Chief, his rebellion against King  
Geika, 292—Sends to inform General Jans-  
sens that he is coming to meet him, 310—  
Reconciled with Geika, 382.
- Corpulence*, a remarkable instance of it in a  
young woman, 73—Another extraordinary  
instance of it.
- Crooked*, or Kromme-river, account of it, 216.
- Cuculus Indicator*, or Honey Cuckoo, why so  
called, Appendix, 9, note
- Cyclops*, comparison of the premises of one of the  
colonists to their den, 136.
- ### D.
- Das*, a little animal described, 71, and note.
- Deaf and Dumb*, a young man and woman born  
so, 131—Another remarkably deaf and dumb  
man, 212.
- Delpport and Pisani*, two turbulent colonists, 371.
- De Mist*, Mr. J. A. appointed Commissary-general  
at the Cape of Good Hope, 2—His daughter  
resolves to accompany him on his voyage and  
subsequent journey, 10.
- Deserters*, several English ones, met by General  
Janssens in his journey, 318—Account of  
some others, 330.
- Diana's bath*, a romantic spot so named by the  
travellers, 206.
- Diseases* most prevalent among the colonists, 88.
- Dissensions*, origin of those that prevailed in  
Graaff-Reynett, 368.
- Doorn-river*, a night passed in the open air upon  
its banks by the travellers, 79.
- ### E.
- Elands*, or large antelopes, hunted by the colo-  
nists, 97.
- Elephants*, their great affection for their young,  
214—Ineffectual search for the body of one,  
225—Manner in which a colonist was killed  
by one, 226.
- English*, impolicy of their conduct to the dis-  
contented colonists, 209—Much disliked by  
the Caffres, 328—How described by Buys, *ib.*

## INDEX.

- Englishman*, trade carried on by one, 182.  
*Envoys*, sent by the Governor to propose peace to the rebel Caffres, 303—Hospitably received by them, 306.  
*Extraordinary instance of dexterity in killing a bird with a whip*, 31.
- F.
- Farms*, manner of fortifying them against the Caffres, 205.  
*Fascinating power of snakes*, an instance of it, 220.  
*Fatiguing route of the travellers after losing their way by night*, 82.  
*Field Commandants*, their office, 109, note.  
*Field Cornets*, their office, 87, note.  
*Firing guns*, a compliment paid by the colonists to persons of consequence, 28—New-years day celebrated by firing them, 213.  
*Fish*, remarkable impressions of them in the slate stone, 95.  
*Flamingos*, a very large troop of them in Saldanha-bay, 44.  
*Flies*, troublesome ones in the Rietvalley, 19—Curious method practised in some parts of the colony of catching flies, 120.
- G.
- Gaurits-river*, fine scenery about it, 173.  
*Gaika*, named as king of the Koossa Caffres, 291—Takes his uncle Sámbeh prisoner, 292—And releases him, *ib.*—Several chiefs rebel against him, *ib.*—His people take no part in the quarrels with the colonists, 295—His request to the colonist Rensburg to assist him against his rebel subjects, 310—His eager desire to meet the Governor, *ib.*—He sends to request of the Governor a guard to meet him, 319—His arrival at the Governor's camp, 320—His person described, *ib.*—Delighted with the European dress, 321—Conference between him and the Governor, 323—Articles agreed upon between them, 325—His answer on being solicited to put Buys and Rensburg to death, 327—He appoints a meeting with the Commissary-general, 347—But does not keep the appointment, 352—Afraid to come, and wishes the Commissary-general to come farther into the country, 353—Reconciled with Jaluhza and Conga, 392.  
*German mode of reckoning distances*, *6, note*—Number of Germans in different parts of the colony, 202—Easily reconciled to living in the colony, 381—Exceedingly rejoiced to see a stranger countryman, *ib.*—Those settled in the colony do not associate much together, *ib.*  
*Giklenhuis*, a deaf and dumb man, 212.  
*Good-Hope*, Cape of, restored to the Dutch by the peace of Amiens, 1—Its distracted state when taken by the English, 4—And when restored to the Dutch, 302.
- Gourd*, a musical instrument made of one, 94.  
*Graaff-Reynett*, why so called, 368—Description of the village, *ib.*—Origin of the dissensions that prevailed there, *ib.*—New buildings directed in the village by the Commissary-general, 379—Diseases more prevalent there than elsewhere, 380—Garden of Werner there, *ib.*—Lusses of the inhabitants in the Caffre-war, 382.  
*Griesbok*, or grizzled-deer, 72, note.  
*Groenekloof*, description of, 24.  
*Guns*, large calibre of the African ones, 345.
- H.
- Halle medicines*, very much in favour with the colonists, 89.  
*Hantam mountain*, description of it and its particular fertility, 90—Amenity of the colonists there, 93.  
*Hardness of hoof acquired by the African horses*, 27.  
*Harnessed Antelope*, or *Antilope scripta*, described, 165 and note.  
*Harpichords*, made by a man at the Cape Town, 168.  
*Hartebeestfontein*, a very fertile spot for feeding sheep and cattle, 98.  
*Hassagai*, a Caffre weapon, 218.  
*Helena St. Bay* of, 51.  
*Herrenhuters*, or united brethren, an excellent society of them, 151.  
*Hippopotami*, found in the Berg-river, 49—Decree against their being killed, *ib.*  
*Hoetjes bay*, a part of Saldanha-bay, 37.  
*Holiday*, an Englishman, desolate state of his farm from the inroads of the Caffres, 196.  
*Honey Cuckoo*, or *Indicator*, account of, appendix, 9, note.  
*Horned-snake*, the poison used by the Bosjesmans for their arrows, 95.  
*Horses of the Cape*, various kinds of them, 27—Hardness of hoof acquired by them, *ib.*—Mode of refreshing them in arid parts by letting them roll, 366.  
*Hottentots*, extremely dexterous in driving the waggons, 14—A battalion of them raised by Captain Le Sueur, 18—A horde of them living in the colony as in their own country, 69—Not slaves, or purchased by the colonists, 118, note—Their extreme address in tracing animals, 121—A philosopher Hottentot, 214—Anxiety of General Janssens, and of the Commissary-general, to render them justice, 220—Impolicy of employing them against the colonists, 374.  
*Hot-spring*, one in the Brand-valley, 148.  
*Hunting parties* of the colonists beyond the borders, objections to them, 97—Troublesome ones of the Caffres, 230.

## INDEX.

### I.

- Idiots*, three in one family, 64.  
*Indicator*, a bird so called, and why, appendix, 9, note.  
*Indigo*, a plantation of, in Southern Africa, 60.  
*Institution* of the Herrenhutlers, or united brethren at Bavianskloof, 151—That of the missionary VanderKemp, near Algoa bay, 305.  
*Islands* in Saldanha-bay, 44.  
*Ixia and Irtis*, the bulbs eaten by the Hottentots, 83.

### J.

- Jaarsveld, Van*, of Graaff-Reynett, imprisoned, and why, 375—Rescued by the disaffected colonists, *ib.*  
*Jaluhsa*, a Caffre chief, his rebellion against King Geika, 292—An ambassador comes from him to General Janssens at Algoa bay, 305—Reconciled with Geika, 382.  
*Janssens*, General J. W. appointed governor of the Cape of Good-Hope, 3—Resolves to visit the distant parts of the colony, 5—His reception by a number of colonists on his way to meet the Caffre chiefs, 308—Endeavours to restore order in Graaff-Reynett, 376.

### K.

- Kaiman's Cleft*, a very remarkable mountain pass, 190.  
*Kaiman's-river*, erroneously so called, 189, note.  
*Karoo*, the great desert so called, striking prospect from the mountain directly above it, 112—Description of it, 121.  
*Klaas Stuurmann*, leader of a band of Hottentots, comes to meet General Janssens at Algoa bay, 303—The general visits him in his kraal, 311—His assiduity in endeavouring to establish peace with the Caffres, 315—Killed by the bursting of his gun, 305.  
*Klavervalley*, the place of Van-Reenen, 24.  
*Kirri*, a Caffre weapon, 218.  
*Knives*, manufactory of them among the united brethren, 155.  
*Komberg*, a mountain, why so called, 111—Remarkable view from it, *ib.*  
*Koossas or Kaussas*, a particular tribe of the Caffres described, 251—Their diseases, *ib.*—Their proneness to superstition, 253—Education of their children, 260—Courtship and marriages, 261—Infidelity in marriage, 264—Their respect for their parents and for old people, 265—Their huts, 267—Training their cattle, 268—Modes of hunting, 269—Cultivation of millet, 271—Their hospitality, 272—Their dresses, *ib.*—Their weapons, 275—Their hatred to the Bosjesmans, 276—Their wars, 277—Their works of art, 279—Indif-

ferent calculators, 280—Their memories very strong, *ib.*—Not long lived, 281—Extent of the Koossas tribe, 282—Rivers of the country, 283—Climate, 284—Their government, 286—Administration of justice, 288.

- Kraal*, numbers of them belonging to a farm, 107—Meaning of the word, *ib.* note.  
*Kromme*, or Crooked-river, account of it, 216.  
*Kuhnia rhinocerotis*, a plant that denotes sweet-fields, 63, note.

### L.

- Lamziekte*, a species of murrain among the cattle, 49—A cow afflicted with it, 148.  
*Laubscher Conrad*, his place at Uylekraal, 30—His extraordinary dexterity in killing a bird with his whip, 31—Jacob Laubscher's farm and patriarchal household, 47.  
*Lead-veins* near Van Stade's-river, 229.  
*Leather*, mode of preparing it for cordage, 73—great quantities tanned by the colonists, 124.  
*Legplaats*, why so called, 99.  
*Leguan*, a very large species of Lizard, 189, note.  
*Lichens*, many found in the muscle caves, 180—Trees extremely overgrown with them, 188.  
*Loeri*, or Touraco, a beautiful bird, 193 and note.  
*Long-kloof*, a remarkable pass among the mountains, 208.  
*Louw*, the brothers, return from their journey to receive the Commissary-general, 71.

### M.

- Macartney*, Lord, impolitic oath enforced by him upon the colonists, 372.  
*Malay Slave*, a remarkable instance of one living to a very great age, 50—Another remarkable instance of the kind, 168.  
*Mandarine Apple*, a very fine species of sweet orange, 57 and note.  
*Matjesgoed*, a sort of rush of which mats are made, 87, note.  
*Meinier*, the laudrost of Graaff-Reynett, deposited, 371—Restored by Lord Macartney, 373—Again superseded, 376—Solicits Geika to put Buys and Rensberg to death, 327.  
*Mimosas*, deformed by insects, 343.  
*Mirage*, the, seen by the travelling party, 169—and described, *ib.*  
*Missionaries*, mischief done by them in Roode-zand, 143—More on the same subject, 146.  
*Moed-verlooren*, a desolate valley, 82.  
*Mountains*, southern chain of, their advantages 184  
*Mountain Pass*, a very fine one at the entrance of the Bokkeveld, 127—Another very remarkable one called the Kaiman's Cleft, 190.  
*Moravians*, or united brethren, a society of them, 151.

## INDEX.

- Mosselbay*, description of it, 177.  
*Muscle cave*, the, at Mosselbay, account of it, 178.  
*Museum at Paris*, a curious antelope sent to it by General Janssens, 317.  
*Music* performed by slaves among the colonists, 28—A performance of it among the Hottentot Christians, 153.  
*Musical instrument*, a remarkable one at the habitation of a Hottentot, 94.  
*Murder*, a horrible one of a colonist's family, by his slaves and Hottentots, 100.  
*Murderer's hole*, a place so called by the colonists, and why, 207.  
*Murray*, an Englishman, trade carried on by him, 182.
- N.
- Nacabaneh*, an envoy from the rebel Caffre chief, Conga, comes to meet General Janssens at Algoa bay, 306—His astonishment at hearing a cannon fired, 308.  
*Namaaquas*, a man of that tribe, 70—A Namaaquas partridge, 87.  
*Names*, the same given to many different places in the colony, and why, 76, note—Names of places in Southern Africa, changed by the Dutch in planting the colony, 181.  
*Nardouw*, a high mountain, 77.  
*Necessaries* for travelling in Southern Africa enumerated, 11.  
*Neisna-Lake*, erroneous idea of Mr. Barrow concerning it, 198.
- O.
- Organ*, one built in the colony, 168.  
*Oribi*, or pygmy antelope, 219.  
*Ostriches*, large number of them together, 110.  
*Ostenqualand*, one of the most fertile spots in the colony, 184.  
*Oxen*, numbers requisite for drawing the waggon in Southern Africa, 13—Their dreadful exertions in ascending mountains, 64 and 191.
- P.
- Paradise*, probably the original name of the valley of Zwelendam, 164.  
*Physician*, account of one settled at Zwelendam. 181—Another at Graaff-Reynett, 379.  
*Pikenienskloof*, a mountain very difficult of ascent, 64.  
*Piketberg*, remarkable natural columns on its summit, 55.  
*Pisani* and Delpport, two turbulent colonists, 371  
*Pisée*, houses built in that way, 172.  
*Place*, the meaning of the word as used in Southern Africa, 18, note.  
*Plans* for the improvement of Saldanha-bay analysed, 40.
- Plettenberg's-bay*, description of it, 201.  
*Pof-Adder*, a remarkable kind of serpent, 35.  
*Poison* of the horned-snake used by the Bosjesmans for their arrows, 95.  
*Poles*, desertion of several from the Dutch army, and their strange mistake about the situation of their country, 221.  
*Polypheme*, a colonist likened to him, 137.  
*Population*, an instance of its great increase, 113—Another, 147—Another, 172.  
*Poverty* of the houses in the Lower-Roggeveld, 105.  
*Prammeberg*, or Breast-mountain, why so called, 92.  
*Precocity* of European products in Southern Africa, 60.  
*Prince*, a colonist, the manner in which he was killed by an elephant, 226.  
*Prinsloo*, a Hottentot, his activity in recovering property stolen from his master by the Caffres, 331.  
*Prussian Soldier*, an old one named Winnekes, his hard fate, 213—Another Prussian soldier, by name Werner, 366.
- Q.
- Queen Mother* of the Koossas' tribe, her great influence in the country, 296—Proof of judgment shown by her, 297.
- R.
- Ravine*, a remarkable one in the country about the Berg-valley, 71—Another very extraordinary one, called the Kaiman's Cleft, 191.  
*Reefs*, very dangerous ones below the sea on the Southern coast of Africa, 202.  
*Rhinoceros*, the horn of, believed an antidote to poison, 86—Mischiefs done by these animals to travellers, 351—Manner of hunting them, 355.  
*Rice*, a plantation of, in Southern Africa, 60.  
*Rietvalley*, near the Cape-Town, Hottentot battalion there, 18—Another place so called, belonging to Mr. Jacob Laubscher, 48.  
*Roggeveld*, middle, great want of trees there, 105—Poverty of the houses, *ib.*—Little Roggeveld, a terrace above the Karroo, 114.  
*Roodezand*, remarkable descent of the mountain into the valley, 138—District and village described, 141.
- S.
- Saldanha-bay*, arrival of the author and his party there, 33—Description of the bay, 35—Plans for its improvement analysed, 40.  
*Salt-lake*, one near the western coast of the colony, 77—a more remarkable one on the southern coast, 335.

## INDEX.

*Salt-pans* in the Gröenekloof, 25.  
*Salt-petre*, quantity of it in the ground, 67.  
*Sámbeh*, a Caffre chief, rebels against his nephew and king, 292.  
*Scholtz*, a colonist compared to Polypheme, 137.  
*Schurfedeberge*, a remarkable mountain, so called, 132—Meaning of the word, *ib.* note  
*Scorpions*, black ones particularly venomous, 80—Great number of scorpions among some ruins, 349.  
*Shaddock*s to be found in Southern Africa, 69.  
*Shapen Island* in Saldanha-bay, 44  
*Shield*, a Caffre one described, 218.  
*Silver-river*, why so called, 193.  
*Slaber, John*, Le Vaillant's friend, 29—His aged mother, 30.  
*State*, houses in the Roggeveld built of it, 106.  
*Slave*, a remarkably old Malay, 50—Another, 168.  
*Snake*, Its pursuit of a mouse and fascination of it, 220—A curious lemon coloured one caught, 353.  
*Soldier*, an old Prussian one at Saldanha-bay, 45  
*Sour-fields*, why so called, 63, and note.  
*South-wind*, its deleterious effects, 349.  
*Spandau-mountain*, description of it, and why so named, 366.  
*Spanish sheep* introduced into the colony, 84.  
*Spoon-brush*, used by the Caffres, Appendix, 12, note.  
*Springbok*, or mountain deer, described, 340—A perfectly white one taken by General Janssens, and sent to the Museum at Paris, 317.  
*Sputting snake*, or spugslang, curious account of, 95.  
*Sweet-fields*, why so called, 63, and note.

### T.

*Table-bay*, seen at a great distance, 52.  
*Tea*, very much drank by the colonists, 106.  
*Teefontein*, the estate of Mr. John Van Reenen, 31.  
*Termes fatale*, or white-ants, curious account of them, 62, and note  
*Therron*, a colonist, his kindness to the travellers when they had lost their way, 81.  
*Thigh-tongues*, a dainty in the colony, described, 97.  
*Tholy*, a Caffre chief, comes to visit General Janssens, 310—Makes a second visit, 315.  
*Thunberg*, the traveller, grateful recollection of him by a colonist, 86.  
*Thunder-storm*, a very remarkable one, 222.  
*Torrents* of rain, instance of destruction occasioned by them, 344.

*Travellers*, the, lose their way by night, 78—Kindness shewn by a colonist on the occasion, 81—Fatiguing route the next day, 82—They lose their way by night a second time, 174—Uncomfortable night spent by them in a half-ruined farm, 227.  
*Travelling*, different in Africa from other countries, 7.  
*Tree-snake*, one caught by the party, 160.  
*Tribes*, different Caffre ones enumerated, 297.  
*Twenty-four-rivers*, fertile district of, 58.

### V.

*Vander Kemp*, the missionary, his institution near Algoa bay, 235—Extraordinary account of him, *ib.*—Wretched state of the institution, 238.  
*Vander Merwe*, a remarkably tall family of that name, 150.  
*Van Reenen*, his place at the Klavervalley, 24—Mr. Jacob Van Reenen's Travels into Caffra-ria, 25—Attention of the brothers Van Reenen to agriculture, *ib.*—A fine stud of horses at his place, 26—Mr. John Van Reenen's estate at the Teefontein, 31—Another remarkable stud belonging to the same person, 91—Daniel Van Reenen's fine breed of horses, 165.  
*Van Stade's river*, and lead mines near it, 229.  
*Verklarings*, papers of impeachment against each other kept by the colonists, 378.  
*Vultures*, the travellers often followed by them, 130.

### U.

*Uitenhage*, the family name of the Commissary-general, a new district to be called by it, 234.  
*Unicorn*, improbability of its existence, 167.  
*United Brethren*, Society of them, 151.  
*Uylekraal*, the house of Conrad Laubscher, 30.

### W.

*Waggons* used for travelling in Southern Africa described, 13—Manner of floating them over the deep rivers, 54—Curious mode of getting them through the Kaiman's Cleft, 191.  
*Water-fall*, one described and recommended to the attention of travellers, 144.  
*Werner*, an old Silesian, his garden at Graaff-Reynett, 380.  
*White Ants*, extraordinary account of them, 62.  
*Witsemberg*, a remarkable mountain, 135.

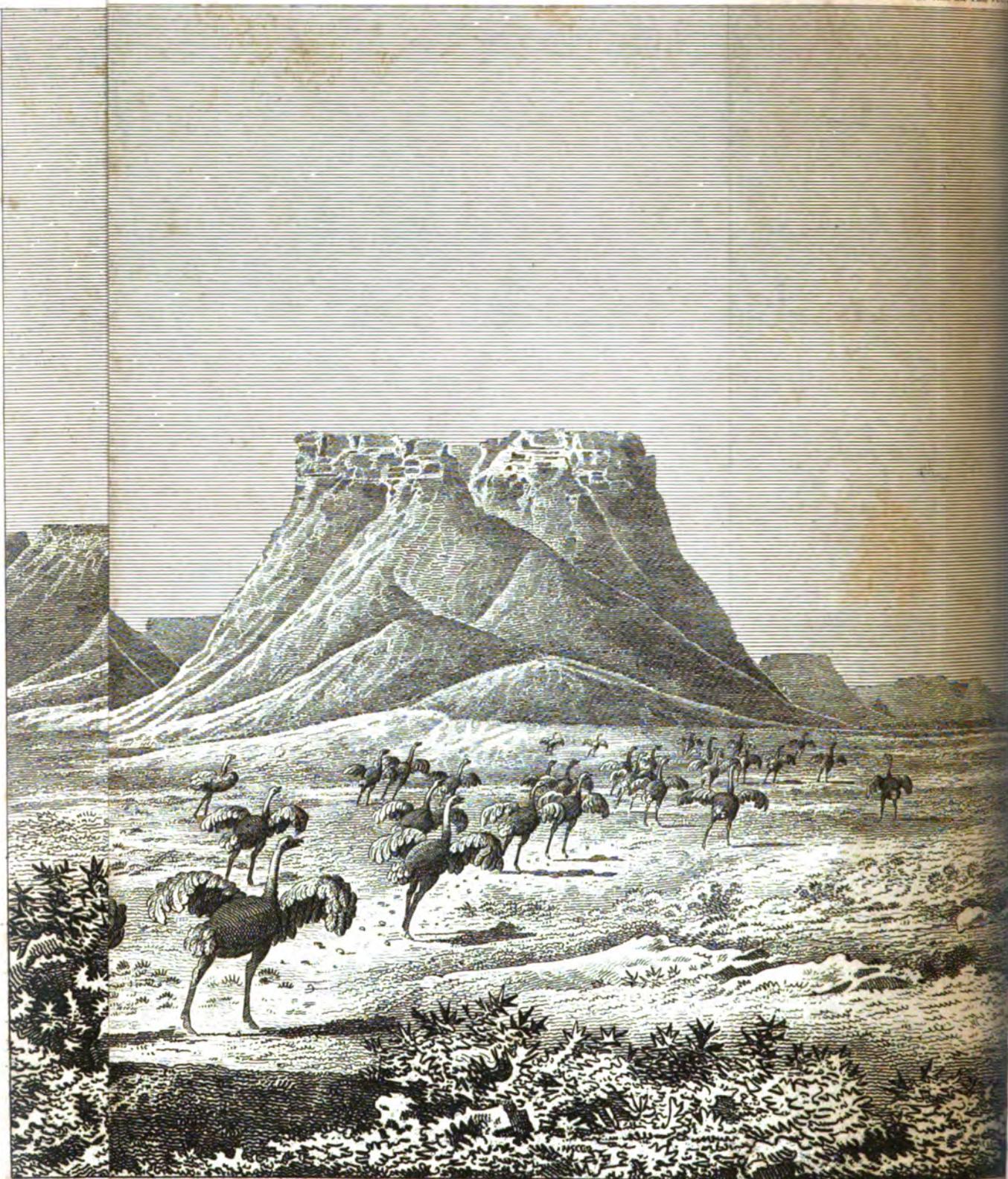
### Z.

*Zoetemelk*, fertile valley of, 158.  
*Zwellendam*, description of, 163.

THE END.

B. CLARKE, Printer, Well-Street, London.





*iches and Quaggas.* (see page 209.)

**TRAVELS**  
**IN**  
**SOUTHERN AFRICA,**

**IN THE YEARS 1803, 1804, 1805, AND 1806,**

**BY**

**HENRY LICHTENSTEIN,**

**DOCTOR IN MEDICINE AND PHILOSOPHY, AND PROFESSOR OF NATURAL HISTORY IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN; MEMBER OF SEVERAL LEARNED SOCIETIES; AND  
FORMERLY IN THE DUTCH SERVICE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.**

---

*TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN,*

**BY**

**ANNE PLUMPTRE.**

---

**VOL. II.**

---

**LONDON:**

**PRINTED FOR HENRY COLBURN,  
BRITISH AND FOREIGN PUBLIC LIBRARY, CONDUIT STREET, HANOVER SQUARE;  
AND SOLD BY BELL AND BRADFUTE, EDINBURGH; AND JOHN CUMMING, DUBLIN.**

---

**1815.**

---

**B. CLARKE, Printer, Well Street, London.**

---

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

THE volume here presented to the public concludes the Travels of PROFESSOR LICHTENSTEIN. A Supplement, consisting of a civil and political History of the Colony, from its first establishment, the natural History of the Country, and a Geographical Description of it, will complete the Author's original plan.

In the first volume an apology was made for its not being accompanied by a map. This was done under the supposition that one had appeared in Germany, but through some omission was not sent with the copy of the German work, which the publisher received. We are now informed, that though it was intended by the Author that a map should have accompanied the first volume, it was not completed when that was given to the world, and only appeared in Germany with the second volume, consequently it could not be presented sooner with the English translation. A second map, elucidating the Author's journey into the Beetjuan country, the last part of his travels, will accompany the Supplement.



# CONTENTS.

EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.....Page xi

## PART IV.

JOURNEY FROM GRAAFF-REYNETT THROUGH THE KARROO TO THE CAPE TOWN.

### CHAP. XXVII.

*Departure from Graaff-Reynett.—Salutations of the Commissary-General upon this Occasion.—The Snow Mountains.—Description of the Country.—Remarks upon the Inhabitants, and on the Account given of them by Mr. Barrow.....1*

### CHAP. XXVIII.

*Maljesfontein.—Houd-Constant.—Illness of the Commissary-General's Daughter.—Arrival of M. Péron at the Cape Town.—Farm of Cobus Van Heerden.—Great Utility of the Breed of Dogs in these Parts.—Madness unknown among them.—Description of the spotted Hyena.—Modes of snaring Wild Beasts.—Burger's excellent Farm at Rhenosterfontein.—His Son's Farm at Rietvalley.—Arrival at Towerfontein.—Four Bosjesmans killed.....11*

### CHAP. XXIX.

*Remarks upon the Eland Antelope...Various Particulars respecting the Ostrich.—Also respecting the Lion, with two Anecdotes of Lion-hunters.—Loss and Recovery of three Horses.—De Clerk's Farm at the Source of the Chamka.—Extraordinary Fertility of the Spot.—On the Nieuweveld Mountains.....23*

### CHAP. XXX.

*Extract from the Journal of General Janssens.—Journey of the General and his Party into the Country of the Bosjesmans.—Their Arrival at the Great-river, or Orange-river.—Met there by a Party of Bosjesmans.—Observations of the Author upon these People.....57*

### CHAP. XXXI.

*Extract from the Journal of General Janssens continued.—A River Horse killed, but carried away by the Stream.—Efforts of the Colonists and Bosjesmans to retrieve it.—Affecting Account of the Eagerness shewn by the Bosjesmans to save one of the Colonists from being drowned.—More Particulars respecting the Bosjesmans.....53*

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Continuation of the Commissary-General's Journey through the Karroo.—The Wandering Men.—Visit to De Beer's Farm in the Kweek Valley, among the Black Mountains.—Character of this Man.—Otto's Place upon the Cat-river.—A Hottentot's Manner of explaining the Proportions of Time.....*63

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Continuation of the journey over the Karroo.—Rugged Valley among the Black Mountains.—Wolfefontein.—The Zoute Vlakte.—Account of a Drunkard there.—The Riefontein.—An old Soldier mistakes the Author for one of Prince Lichtenstein's Family.—His unfortunate Situation.—Pinaars Ktoof.—The Klipfontein.—Drany.—The term Little Ride, as used by the Colonists, explained.—Mode of conducting Auctions.—Valley of the Hex-river.—Sumptuous Entertainments given by the rich Colonists.—Some of the Dishes described.....*73

## CHAP. XXXIV.

*Arrival of the Party at Goudinie.—Petition presented to the Commissary-General by the People of that Country respecting a Missionary.—Some Observations upon the African Missionaries in general.—Return to Roodezand.—Roodezand-Kloof.—The Country about the Berg-river. Reflections on the Tenures by Fief, and the Freehold Tenures, in the Colony.....*86

## CHAP. XXXV.

*Waggon-maker's Valley.—French Refugees settled on the Berg-river.—The Village of Paarl.—The Paarl Mountain.—Drakenstein.—Franschehoek.—Illness and Death of the Author's Friend, C. H. Leiste.—Burgersdrift on the Berg-river.—The Author near being drowned there.—Stellenbosch.—Hottentot's-Holland.—Arrival of the Party at the Cape-Town.....*95

## PART V.

## JOURNEY TO ZWELLEN DAM AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Preparations for War at the Cape.—Plan of Defence formed by the Governor.—Occasion of the Author's present Journey.—Meyburgh's Farm on the Eerste-river.—Captain Morkel's Farm.—Hottentot's-Holland Kloof.—Plants growing there.—Palmiet-river.—An Englishman, by name Partridge, drowned there.—Houhoek.—The Bot-river.....*107

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Visit at the House of M. Otto.—Mirth among the young People there.—Discussion concerning the African Women.—Bavian's Kloof.—Zoetemelk's Valley.—The Postholder, Theunissen.—Passage over the Breede-river.—Zwelledam.—Botanical researches about the Devil's-Bush.—Plants collected there.—Rotterdam.—Account of the old Blind Botanist, John Andrew Auge.....*122

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Return to the Cape Town.—Ziekenhuis.—The Black Mountain.—The Hot Springs.—Doctor Hassner's Establishment there.—Account of the Wax Tree, and Manner of preparing the Wax from it.—Military Regulations made by the Governor.—The Author appointed Surgeon-Major to the Hottentot Battalion.—Terrible Epidemic Disease among the Troops.—Explosion of the Laboratory at Zwellendam.—Departure of the Commissary-General De Mist for Europe. ....* 137

## PART VI.

JOURNEY INTO THE COUNTRY OF THE BOSJESMANS, THE CORANS, AND THE BEETJUANS.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Division of the Colony into several new Districts.—Journey of the Landdrost Van de Graaff to the Sack River, in 1804.—The Author engaged by General Janssens to accompany the Landdrost in a longer Journey.—His Departure.—The Tiger Mountain.—On African Husbandry.—The Berg River, and the Acorus-Palmita.—Roodezand's Kloof. ....* 149

## CHAP. XL.

*Stay at Tulbagh.—Mostertshoek.—The Warm Bokkeveld.—The Karroo.—The Paardeberge.—The Hanglip.—The Ongeluk River.—The Goudebloem's River.—The Geitjes, a particular Species of Lizard, held to be very noxious.—The Wind-Hill.—Unwelcome Tidings received at the Foot of the Roggeveld Mountains.—Fine View from the Summit of these Mountains. ....* 159

## CHAP. XLI.

*The Jackal's Fountain.—Disagreements among the Colonists.—Trial of the Field-Cornet Olivier.—His honourable Acquittal, and Reinstatement in his Office.—Visit from a Party of Caffres.—The Rosin Tree.—Farther Depredations of the Bosjesmans.—The Bonteberg.—The Riet River.—Extraordinary Manner in which a Lion was killed by the Colonist Van Wyk.—Seldery Fountain.—Channakraal.—Great Draught of Fish.—Quagga Fountain.—Sack River's Gate.—Kicherer's Missionary Institution.—The Missionary Christian Botma. ....* 171

## CHAP. XLII.

*More Conflicts with the Bosjesmans.—Two Men wounded by them.—The Case of one particularly described.—Conspiracy of some Bosjesman Servants to murder their Master.—Consequences of this Conspiracy.—A Scheme proposed to the Governor, for endeavouring to civilize these Savages.—Obstacles to its being carried into Execution.—Description of the Bosjesman Country.—Farther Particulars respecting the Manners, Customs, and Habits of the Bosjesmans. ....* 188

## CHAP. XLIII.

*The Travelling Party assembled.—Departure from the Sack River.—The Latitude of this River ascertained.—Kopjesfontein.—Patrysefontein.—Lion's Fountain.—The Author and a Party go in Search of Captain Goedhart.—Description of the Karree Mountains.—Large Flock of Ostriches and Quaggas.—Hunting Parties.—Unfortunate Death of Krieger, killed by an Elephant.—His Grave. ....* 201

## CHAP. XLIV.

*Great want of Water.—The Salt Lakes.—Jokes among the Travelling Party.—The Modderfontein.—Several Meetings with Bosjesmans.—The Great River's Gate.—Arrival at the Orange River.—Description of the River.—Arduous Passage over it.—Visits from Bosjesmans and Caffres on the other Side.—Bands of Hottentot and European Robbers inhabiting the Country.—The Small Pox reported to be raging among the Savages.....* 214

## CHAP. XLV.

*Departure from the Orange River.—Another Meeting with Bosjesmans.—Precocity of their Children.—A Hottentot Wedding.—Description of the 't Gorrah, a Hottentot Musical Instrument.—The Broken Red Rock.—Striking Curve of the River.—Rencounter with some Missionaries.—John Matthias Kok.—Different Climate of this Country.—The Hottentot Republic.—Laauwaterskloof.—Mode of Worship of the Missionaries... 229*

## CHAP. XLVI.

*Departure from Laauwaterskloof.—Enormous Swarm of Locusts.—Some Remarks upon these Animals.—The Rietfontein.—Account of Cornelius Kok.—Probably known to Le Vaillant.—Description of the Coran Hottentots.—Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot Villages.—Vast Quantity of Wild Animals.—Witwater.—Leeuwenkuil.—The Missionary Anderson.—Account of his Institution.....* 250

## CHAP. XLVII.

*Departure from Leeuwenkuil.—Ongeluksfontein, why so called.—Grotesque Appearance of the Travellers.—Remonstrances of the Party against the Prosecution of the Journey.—Two Hottentots murdered by the Bosjesmans.—Their Families rescued by the Travelling Party.—John Bloom's Fountain.—The Dogs of the Bosjesmans.....* 262

## CHAP. XLVIII.

*The Caves of Sibihlong.—A Buffalo shot.—Stompjesfontein.—Batavian Deserters.—Hunting the Giraffe.—Extraordinary Manner in which this Creature moves.—A young one shot.—Maputi.—Rissipien.—The Valley of Koossi.—More Hunting of Giraffes, and Dangers encountered by the Author in Consequence.—Arrival of the Party in the Country of the Beetjuans.....* 275

## PART VII.

STAY WITH THE BEETJUAN TRIBE OF MAATJAPING BY THE RIVER KURUHMAN, RETURN TO THE CAPE TOWN, AND VOYAGE TO EUROPE.

## CHAP. XLIX.

*First Interview with some Beetjuan Herdsmen.—Arrival at the Residence of the King Mulihawang.—Visit of the King to the Travellers.—Friendly Intercourse with the Savages.—Solemn Audience given by the King.—Description of the Town.—A House described.—Visit to the High-Priest.—Names of Individuals.....* 288

## CHAP. L.

*Dinner given to the King of the Beetjuans at the Camp.—Conversation with the three Princes.—Their Confidence in the Europeans.—Traffic with the Natives.—Visits from the Women.—The King's Wives.—The Traffic continued.—Slaves offered for Sale.—A Dance.—Embarrassing Proposal made by the King.—Motives for a hasty Departure from the Country.....304*

## CHAP. LI.

*Departure from the Beetjuan Country.—The Fountain of Klaborugani.—Information concerning the Beetjuan Tribes.—Their Modes of Life, Cloathing, and Ornaments.—Their Institutions, their Manner of making War, and various other Particulars.320*

## CHAP. LII.

*Return to the Colony, amidst various Hardships and Privations.—The Author obliged to abandon his favourite Horse.—The Travellers joined by two young Beetjuans.—Some of the party ill with eating Bulbs.—The Dancing and Music of the Corans.—Dangers in repassing the Orange River.—The Red Ebony Tree.—Fruitless Endeavours to shoot River-Horses, and to catch Gerboas.—Baviansbak.—Eruptive Disorder among the Cattle.—Sufferings of the Travellers from Wet and Cold.—The Leeuwensfontein.—The Silurus Anguillaris.—The African Wild-Goose, and its remarkable Nest.—Small-pox among the Bastard Hottentots.—Arrival again at the Sack River.—Extraordinary Train of Caterpillars.—The Roggeveld.—The Karroo.—Arrival at Tulbagh.....334*

## CHAP. LIII.

*A Leopard caught alive by a Colonist.—Fight between him and the Dogs.—Return of the Author to the Roggeveld, to spread Vaccination among the People.—Poorness of Living among the Colonists here.—Their Devotion.—A Hottentot killed by the Author's Side, shot by a Bosjesman with a poisoned Arrow.—Return again to Tulbagh, and afterwards to the Cape Town.—Death of Kok.—A new Journey over the Black Mountain to the Bosjesveld and the River Zonder-end.—The Colony attacked by the English in 1806.—Capitulation of the Dutch Troops.—Departure from the Cape.—Stay at the Island of St. Helena.—Return to Europe.....351*



THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

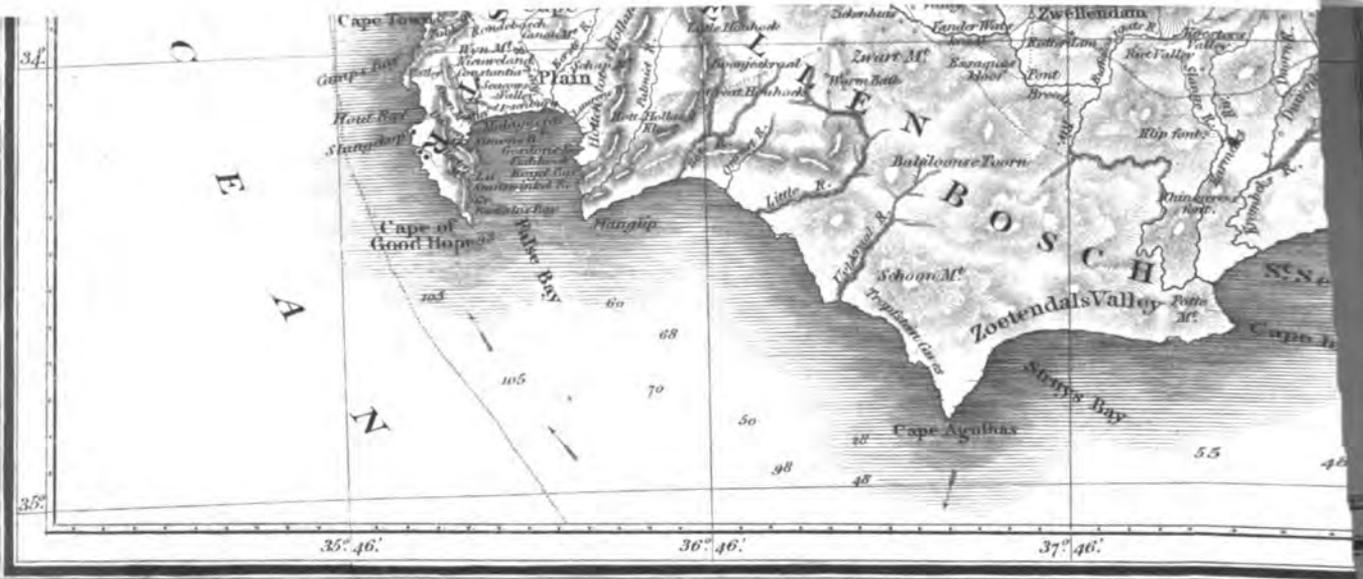
THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



## EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.

IN casting the eye over this map, it will immediately be seen that it differs very materially from that given by Mr. Barrow with his work, as well as from Mr. Arrowsmith's, although the latter, with respect to the line of the coast, is an improvement upon the former. The incorrectness of Mr. Barrow's, notwithstanding that it is infinitely to be preferred to all the older maps, must be so obvious to every traveller in the country, that it was impossible the liberal spirit of the Dutch governor should not be anxious to procure a more complete and correct map of the country. Under his patronage therefore the materials already in existence were first attentively revised, with a view to correcting the errors they contained; and in the second place, the southern coast was carefully examined by some very intelligent and experienced sea-officers, in several voyages which they made from Table Bay to Algoa Bay. The results of these researches were then thrown together on a very large scale, and laid the foundation of the present map. The journey taken by the Governor himself, in which he, as well as his de-de-camp, Captain Paravicini di Capelli, directed their attention extremely to correcting what was erroneous in Mr. Barrow's map, furnished a stock of materials, which has contributed essentially towards accomplishing the object in view, while the observations which I made in my different journeys have still farther promoted it. Neither in the journey of General Janssens, however, nor in my first with the commissary De Mist, were astronomical observations taken to ascertain the precise situation of different places; it was only done in my third journey, when I was favoured by the government with excellent instruments for this purpose, by means of which the situations have been ascertained with a precision which renders the map, as far as my journeys are concerned, on the veracity of which a safe reliance may be placed.

In a map where, like the present, a large tract of country of several thousand square miles is included within a very small space, great accuracy in the very minute details cannot reasonably be expected. With the greater justice, however, if this be allowed, the utmost accuracy be required as to the outline and form of the country, as to principal chains of mountains, and their respective connexions with each other; rather, since it should seem that the causes of many peculiarities in the climate of southern Africa, of many properties in the soil, nay, the forms of the mountains themselves, are to be sought for in the directions of these chains, and in their relative

connexions. The complete developement of these particulars is reserved for that part of my work which will treat of the geography and natural history of the country. I shall here only throw together such remarks as are necessary for a general explanation of the map.

Two great chains of hills run parallel with the western coast, having between them and the coast a sandy plain from five to ten miles in breadth. From the easternmost of these two chains branch off three others, running in a direction parallel with the equator, between which are the like number of terraces, including altogether a space of between two and three degrees of latitude. The two southernmost of these chains are united at several points with the western, and form the vast ridges which, under the name of the Black Mountains, run like a steep wall from west to east, broken only at intervals by the streams which flow through them from the Karroo. The two principal of these ridges terminate at Kromme River's Bay, and at Algoa Bay; smaller branches from them run down to Mossel Bay, and Plettenberg's Bay. The level country between the southern ridge and the coast constantly decreases in breadth from the spot where this ridge branches off from the western mountains, till it is lost at Kromme River's Bay. Towards the north, several long and spacious valleys run between the ridges of the Black Mountains, the principal of which are Kochman's kloof, Kango, the valley of the Elephant's river, and Long kloof. It is only at a few points, and even at these not without some danger and difficulty, that the Black Mountains can be crossed to the terrace north of them, and which is some thousand feet higher than the other two terraces, the mention of which occurs so often in these volumes under the name of the Great Karroo. This plain, or terrace, occupies the whole of that very large space lying between the Black Mountains and the third great branch from the western hills, called the Nieuweveld's Mountains. These latter again unite themselves after running for a long extent from west to east, with another chain of mountains running from north to south, forming at their junction that remarkable knot of hills the Snow Mountains. The Nieuweveld Mountains are called by Mr. Barrow the highest in Southern Africa. They are, however, only the highest laid down in his map and in mine. Further north, running in the same direction from west to east, lie the Karree Mountains, the situation of which will be shewn in a second map destined for this work, accompanying the more ample geographical description of the country.

As to what concerns the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, all is here given as distinctly as the small scale of the map would permit. It is my purpose with the last part of my work to give a map of the Peninsula of the Cape upon a tolerably large scale. I must with confidence lay claim to greater correctness than Mr. Barrow, yet the situation of Saldanha Bay is still not absolutely certain. In Mr. Barrow's map it is undoubtedly placed some minutes too much to the south; in my original map of the Cape it was on the contrary too much to the north, which I must impute to a mistake in the engraver. I have therefore taken the arithmetical medium between four

situations given, each differing essentially from the other, and placed the bay accordingly, so that the distance from the Cape Town and from Tulbagh agree with it very accurately.

If farther, I can speak with confidence of having given the country from the mountains of Hottentot's-Holland, Stellenbosch, and Paarl, to the sources of the Elephant's River with the utmost correctness, I will not pretend to say the same with respect to the parts beyond. The course of the Elephant's River, indeed, with our route through that district, is corrected as much as possible, but there lies to the west of it, near the coast, a considerable tract of land, which I have been obliged to take chiefly from Mr. Barrow's map, and for the correctness of which I cannot therefore be myself answerable. The case is the same from the hills eastward of the Elephant's River\* to the Lower Bokkeveld, which I never travelled through, and have only given from the best information I could obtain. The country about the Khamies Mountains, and the Koper Mountains, is still in great measure unknown land, and, with the parts north of them, must be more accurately examined before any thing determinate can be stated with regard to them. The country westward from Cape Agulhas to the Roggevelds, particularly about Tulbagh and the Hex River, is another district on which I can rely with confidence that it is very correctly given. I travelled through it three times, and for the most part ascertained the situations of the places from astronomical observations made on the spot. The Karroo and the countries bordering it I can also answer are here given with particular care. The country on the coast, south of the Black Mountains, is the part of the colony by far the most visited, and little remains therefore to be corrected and improved with respect to this part, unless by giving particular and enlarged maps of the different districts. Excepting some errors in the situation of the bays, Mr. Barrow's map may here be of much use. Much more correction is still requisite as to the borders of the Caffre country: all the merit I can here take to myself is, that my map is not so replete with errors as Mr. Barrow's; I am far however from saying that there is no room for improvement in mine. The situation of the mountains and rivers is only here corrected as far as concerns their relative distances from each other, and their courses; this may particularly be said of the course of the Great Fish-river from Agterbruintjeshoogte and Zwagershoek. The situation of Graaff-Reynett is ascertained from an astronomical observation by an English engineer, and the situation and form of the Snow Mountains, as well as of the country north of them, is laid down with no small care and trouble, from comparing the best sources of information that could be procured. The naked and barren Nieuweveld's Mountains were never visited by me, nor can I say any thing concerning

---

\* It must be observed that I speak here of the Elephant's River on the western side of the colony, not of that river of the same name to the south, which runs between the two ridges of the Black Mountains.

the interior of them. I can only say that the representation of them in the map is correct as far as concerns their southern face, bordering on the Karroo. The depths of the water from the Agulhas bank along the rest of the coast are given from Mr. Arrow-smith's map, which may be considered in this respect as very good authority.

H. LICHTENSTEIN.

## ERRATA.

- Page 16, line 21, for *though* read *so that*.  
 54 — 18, for *it*, read *he*.  
 107 — for *Chap. 37*, read *Chap 38*.  
 122 — for *Chap. 40*, read *Chap. 37*.  
 124 — 29, for *retrograde*, read *retrograde*.  
 127 — 2, between *ha* and *sen*, add an *u*.  
 161 — 10, for *schurfederge*, read *schurfedebergs*.  
 192 — at the bottom add *made*.  
 197 — 26, for *accessray*, read *accessary*.  
 229 — 13, between *and* and *were*, add *we*.  
 252 — 2, for *gryllus* read *gryllus*.  
 263 — 18, after *wash* add a comma.

## INTERESTING NEW WORKS,

PUBLISHED BY HENRY COLBURN, CONDUIT-STREET, LONDON.

### Voyages and Travels.

1. TRAVELS THROUGH NORWAY and LAPLAND, in the Years 1806, 7, and 8. By LEOPOLD VON BUCH, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Berlin. Translated from the German by JOHN BLACK. With Notes, and some Account of the Author, by PROFESSOR JAMESON. 4to. with Maps. 1l. 16s. boards.

Von Buch, like the celebrated Humboldt, is a Prussian, and a man of sense, enterprise, and observation. His Travels through Norway and Lapland contain much curious and valuable information.—*Edin. Rev.*

2. VOYAGES AND TRAVELS IN VARIOUS PARTS OF THE WORLD, during the Years 1803, 4, 5, 6, and 7. By G. VON LANGSDORFF, Aulic Counsellor to his Majesty the Emperor of Russia, Consul General at the Brazils, &c. in 2 handsome vols. 4to. with 21 Engravings and a Map. Price 4l. 10s. in bds.

Vol. 1. contains the Voyage to Brazil, the South Sea, Kamschatka, and Japan. 2. The Voyage to the Aleutian Islands and North-west Coast of America, and Return by Land over the North-east Parts of Asia, through Siberia to Petersburg.

The Second Volume is sold separately, price 1l. 17s. 6d. boards.

For an account of this valuable and interesting Voyage round the World—See the *British Critic*, &c.

3. TRAVELS IN THE MOREA, ALBANIA, and other Parts of the OTTOMAN EMPIRE. By F. C. POUQUEVILLE, M.D. Member of the Commission of Arts and Sciences, and French Resident at Janina. Translated by ANNE PLUMPTRE. With Engravings. 2l. 2s. bds.

This Volume will be found highly curious and valuable, being collected by the Author during a long residence in these interesting countries, and describing at large their productions, the manners, customs, religion, and commerce of the inhabitants, &c. &c.

4. LETTERS from the MEDITERRANEAN, containing a civil and political Ac-

count of SICILY, TRIPOLY, TUNIS, and MALTA, with Biographical Sketches, Anecdotes, and Observations, illustrative of the present State of those Countries, and their relative Situation with respect to the British Empire. By EDW. BLAQUIERE, Esq. Two large volumes 8vo. with Maps. Price 28s.

Mr. Blaquiere has produced an interesting and considerably important Work.—*Ecler. Rev.*

Mr. Blaquiere has given a more minute, full, and entertaining picture of these countries than any of his competitors.—*Edinburgh Rev.* 43.

5. TRAVELS in the CAUCASUS and GEORGIA, during the Years 1807 and 1808. Performed by Command of the Russian Government. By JULIUS VON KLAPROTH, Aulic Counsellor to his Majesty the Emperor of Russia, Member of the Imperial Academy of Sciences at St. Petersburg, &c. 4to. Price 2l. 2s. boards.

M. Klaproth is entitled to the most unqualified praise for his exertions, and for the important information which he has collected; and we promise those who may be inclined to peruse this work, that they will be rewarded by much amusement and instruction.—*North Brit. Rev.* No. 2.

6. SICILY AND ITS INHABITANTS. Observations made during a Residence in that Country in the Years 1809—10. By W. H. THOMPSON, Esq. 4to. With Engravings, 31s. 6d.

7. TRAVELS IN GREECE, PALESTINE, EGYPT, and BARBARY, during the Years 1806 and 1807. By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND. Second Edition. Two vols. 8vo. Price 28s. Ditto in French, 24s.

8. TRAVELS IN EUROPE AND AFRICA. By Col. KEATINGE. One vol. royal 4to. Illustrated with numerous Plates.

### History, Biography, &c.

1. An AUTHENTIC NARRATIVE of the INVASION of FRANCE in 1814. By M. DE BEAUCHAMP, Author of "The History of the War of La Vendée."

The political and military annals of nations have never supplied such interesting subjects for the contemplation of mankind as are united in the description of this astonishing epoch, in which are exhibited the most memorable events and the most affecting incidents that were ever produced by the sword of war, or recorded by the pen of history.

2. MEMOIRS of LADY HAMILTON, drawn from original sources, and comprising many new and authentic Anecdotes of various distinguished Personages; among whom are the King and Queen of Sicily, Sir Wm. Hamilton, the late Lord and the present Earl Nelson, the Earl of Bristol, the Duke of Queensberry, &c. &c. In one vol. small 8vo. Embellished with a fine Portrait, by Meyer, from an original Painting by Romney.

## INTERESTING NEW WORKS.

**3. SECRET MEMOIRS of NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE.** Written by one who never quitted him for fifteen years. Second Edition, 8vo. 12s.

This work has created an extraordinary sensation in Paris. It contains an infinite number of private Anecdotes—describes him in his retirement, in his fits of passion, in his artifices, and in all his various positions of the Field and the Cabinet—in society and in his Chamber. To this edition is subjoined—1. An Historical Survey of the Character of this extraordinary personage, drawn from his own words and actions. 2. The itinerary of Buonaparte from the period of his residence at Fontainebleau to his establishment on the Island of Elba. And, 3. An account of the Regency at Blois; with many curious and authentic Anecdotes.

N. B. These additions are also sold separately to complete the former edition.

**4. RECOLLECTIONS OF ITALY, ENGLAND, and AMERICA.** By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND. Editions in French and English. Two vols. 8vo.

**5. AN HISTORICAL, POLITICAL, and MORAL ESSAY on REVOLUTIONS, Ancient and Modern.** By the same distinguished Author. Editions in French and English. One vol. 8vo.

**6. THE BEAUTIES OF CHRISTIANITY.** By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND, Author of "Travels in Greece and Palestine," "Atala," &c. With a Preface and Notes by the Rev. HENRY KEIT, B. D. Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. In 3 vols. 8vo. price 31s. 6d. bds. Ditto in French.

**7. HISTORY of the WAR in SPAIN and PORTUGAL, from 1807 to 1814.** By GENERAL SARRAZIN, one of the Commanders of the Legion of Honour. Illustrated with a Map, exhibiting the Routes of the various armies. Octavo, 12s.

A more luminous view of the great scenes which occurred in Spain and Portugal will not easily be found; and it is but justice to the author to say, that while he has detailed the operations with the perspicuity of a man of science, he has treated the Commanders on both sides with great impartiality.

*New Monthly Magazine.*

**8. MEMOIRS of GEORGE FREDERICK COOKE, Esq.** late of the Theatre Royal, Covent-Garden. By W. DUNLAP, Esq. In 2 vols. 8vo. with a fine Portrait from an original Miniature, 21s. bds.

We have seldom been more amused and instructed than by the perusal of these volumes.

*Theatrical Inquirer, October.*

**9. MEMOIRS AND CORRESPONDENCE of BARON DE GRIMM and DIDEROT, from the Years 1753 to 1790.** Translated from the French. The Second Edition, in 4 large vols, 8vo. price 2*l.* 16*s.* in bds. The French Edition forms 7 vols. price 4*l.* 18*s.*

For some account of this highly curious and interesting work, see the Edinburgh & Quarterly Reviews.

**10. MUSICAL BIOGRAPHY; or, Memoirs of the Lives and Writings of the most eminent MUSICAL COMPOSERS and WRITERS who have flourished in the different Countries of Europe during the last three Centuries, including the Memoirs of many who are now living.** In 2 vols. 8vo. 2*4s.* boards.

**11. MEMOIRS of GOLDONI (the celebrated Italian Dramatist) written by himself.** Translated from the original French by JOHN BLACK. Two vols. 8vo. price 2*1s.* Ditto in French.

Gibbon, the Historian, has pronounced the Memoirs of Goldoni to be more truly dramatic than his comedies. Lord Byron has also pronounced the Life of Goldoni to be one of the best specimens of auto-biography. It is replete with Anecdotes of the most distinguished persons.

**12. MEMOIRS of SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS, Knt.** late President of the Royal Academy. By JAMES NORTHCOTE, Esq. In 4to. 3*l.* 7*s.* 6*d.*

**13. A BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY of LIVING AUTHORS, with a complete list of their Works in order of publication.** One vol. 8vo.

**14. KLOPSTOCK and HIS FRIENDS.** A Series of LETTERS written between the Years 1750 and 1803. From the German, with a Biographical Introduction. By Miss BENDER, forming a Sequel to Miss Smith's Life of Klopstock. One vol. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**15. THE NEW MONTHLY MAGAZINE, and LITERARY REGISTER.**—This interesting Miscellany, the first Number of which was published on the 1st of February, 1814, is printed in octavo, on good paper, with a clear type. Each Number contains six sheets, comprehending a quantity of matter exceeding an ordinary octavo volume of three hundred pages. Price only 2*s.* (forming a most acceptable present to friends abroad, to whom it may be regularly sent by applying to any Postmaster.)

# TRAVELS

IN

## SOUTHERN AFRICA.

---

### PART IV.

JOURNEY FROM GRAAFF REYNETT THROUGH THE KARROO TO THE  
CAPE TOWN.

---

#### CHAP. XXVII.

*Departure from Graaff Reynett.—Salutations of the Commissary-General upon this Occasion.—The Snow Mountains.—Description of the Country.—Remarks upon the Inhabitants, and on the Account given of them by Mr. Barrow.*

**A**FTER a week's stay at Graaff Reynett, the preparations for continuing our journey being concluded, we left the Drosty early in the morning on the thirteenth of December. Although the Commissary-General had desired that the customary expenditure of powder in honorary salutations might be waved, yet the people could not be prevailed on to depart from their usual practice. The three two-pounders were fired, while a salutation of musketry from all the neighbouring houses intimated to the departing travellers the good wishes of the inhabitants for a safe and prosperous journey. The Field-Commandant Gerotz, with the Counsellor of State, accompanied the Commissary-General for a short distance; and a number of the inhabitants of the town, as well as of the neighbourhood, followed him, as a manifestation, after their fashion, of their gratitude and attachment to him. To

those who recollected how little of this kind of respect these people were in general accustomed to evince towards any government, the sentiments thus manifested could not be regarded otherwise than with the greatest pleasure, and hailed as a prosperous omen. The number of our company was from this place considerably diminished, since the young men who accompanied us in the former part of the journey quitted their service even at Bruintjeshoogte, and the Waldeck Jägers departed at Graaff Reynett to return to Algoa Bay. Captain Alberti, however, who had occasion to take a journey to the Cape Town, accompanied us the remainder of the way, to our no small satisfaction.

We directed our course at first northwards towards the Snow Mountains, that by means of this little circuit we might obtain a more accurate knowledge of that country. At the commencement of our route we followed the course of the Zondag's River, but soon quitted it, and, ascending by degrees, arrived in a few hours upon the first terrace of the hills which form the district of the outer Snow Mountains.

The whole range of hills which is included under this name forms a large group, at which the two great parallel chains from the west, with another not less extensive chain from the north-east, and a smaller from the south, are all united. The name in itself indicates a pretty considerable height, and, in fact, the highest point, called the *Compass Hill*, is, according to the calculations of Colonel Gordon, about three hundred feet higher than the summit of the *Komberg*; consequently, six thousand five hundred feet above the level of the sea. This hill is distinguished more particularly from all others in Southern Africa, by being less insulated; that is to say, it is surrounded every way by hills of a constantly decreasing elevation, till they are lost at length in the plain. On all sides, the slopes are gradual from the summit, so that the traveller may be constantly ascending for several days together, by tolerably commodious paths, without encountering any dangerous steeps, any deep chasms, or rugged precipices. The heights are all rounded like domes; the valleys are spacious and open; even considerable plains stretch in some places between one ascent and the next. The aspect of the whole mountain is rather naked and uniform, than wild and majestic; from the gentleness of the acclivity, and the level nature of the valleys, the water does not rush down in torrents, or form deep channels, but rather

sinks into the earth. To this circumstance the fertility of these mountains is to be principally ascribed. Not being intersected, like most of the other mountains, with deep wooded chasms, but presenting in many parts low marshy hollows, in these the horned cattle find excellent pasture; while the ridges and heights being scattered over with small aromatic plants, like those which are found in the Roggeveld, particularly the *cotula globifera*, by these the sheep are furnished with abundance of the most salutary nourishment. The climate in the higher parts is cold in winter, and deep snows fall, which continue to lie upon the ground for many weeks together. Notwithstanding this, the greater part of the country remains habitable:—the inhabitants of the few places that are not so, descend into some of the lower parts, where they have a *legplaats*, or winter habitation, for the short time that they are obliged to quit their more elevated situation. In this respect, the Snow Mountains have a very decided preference over the Roggeveld;—the weather, besides, in winter, though cold, is clear and bright, whereas in the Roggeveld there are often thick fogs, which are very injurious to the cattle. Whence this difference arises will be easily seen by those who pay attention to what has been said of the different forms of these hills, the former consisting of rounded domes, the latter of rugged flats.

Three considerable rivers have their sources in the Snow Mountains, which are constantly supplied with water the whole year round from the melted snows and the rain water. Towards the south flows the Zondag's River; towards the east several small streams, which at last unite to form the great Fish River; and at the foot of the mountains, on the north side, rises the Sea-Cow River: this flows after a while into the Orange River; and the latter, subsequent to this union, continues its course for more than a hundred miles, when it falls into the sea on the western coast. Both the other rivers run in a southerly direction:—a description of them, near the mouth of each, has been given in a former part of this work.

The uppermost stratum of the Snow Mountains consists of a large grained sandstone, intermingled at intervals with quartz. Lower down, they consist of a schist, varying in different parts exceedingly both in thickness and colour;—granite is no where to be found. The soil is throughout a stiff argile, which, as well as the sandstone, is in many parts extremely oxydated. Almost every where the ground is strewed over with loose stones, which

#### TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

contribute essentially towards keeping it cool in summer, and assist no less in promoting the vegetation of the plants.

The advantages and disadvantages of this country almost point themselves out, from what is said above. There is no want of springs, and the country is therefore tolerably populous: it is very favourable to the breeding of cattle, and most of the inhabitants are in easy circumstances. There is very little land wholly useless, as in the plains of Camdeboo and Bruintjeshoogte, therefore, every one confines himself readily within his own allotted boundary, consequently is less in danger of being engaged in disputes with his neighbour. On the other hand, one of the disadvantages is, that, though the springs continue to flow the whole year through, they do not yield a great abundance of water, consequently the fields cannot in many parts be watered sufficiently for agricultural purposes. Where there is a supply of water, very good corn is grown, particularly wheat. But little fruit can be procured, partly from the want of water, partly from the nature of the soil. Not a tree grows on these hills; and Mr. Barrow's remark, that there are people here who never saw a wood, or even a copse, in their lives, is perfectly just and correct. In those places only, where the rivers begin to flow into the plains, are they shaded with mimosas and other little trees. In the higher parts, the beds of the rivers are often broad, and composed of an argillaceous schist; the stones in many places form a sort of steps, down which, during the rainy season, cascades rush from step to step in a very picturesque manner. In the summer time, when the streams cease to flow, the greater part of the springs are seen rising from the interstices of these steps.

The want of wood is here so great, that no supply can be had even for fuel, and the people are obliged to burn the dung of their cattle dried. The bleak wind which blows in winter is particularly adverse to the cultivation of nut or fruit trees; even the oak will not thrive. A still greater evil than any yet enumerated is the swarms of locusts which often overspread the country, devouring not only the corn but the pastures, so that not a leaf, not a morsel of green of any kind, is to be seen as far as the eye can reach. Game abounds, but for that very reason there are also a great many lions and leopards, which often do terrible mischief among the flocks and herds. But of all the enemies which the country has to dread, the Bosjesmans are

the most formidable, The smallest loss that can be expected from their maraudings must be estimated at five out of every hundred of the sheep and oxen annually. The inhabitants of the outer Snow Mountains are more particularly exposed to their incursions; and many a farmer has on a single occasion suffered such heavy losses, as to throw him several years behind hand in his circumstances.

The breeding of sheep is the most important occupation of the colonists in these parts. The sheep of this country, and of the Roggeveld, are the most weighty of any in the colony, and their flesh is reckoned the best flavoured. Some farmers have flocks to the amount of six or seven thousand, and few have less than three thousand. From the calculations already given, an estimate may easily be made of the great profits to be derived from such a stock. Lately, through the intervention of the commission for promoting the improvement of agriculture and the breeding of cattle, Spanish rams have been introduced, which have improved the breed so much, that many farmers have now excellent wool to bring to market. When the advantages to be derived from these improvements in the breed shall be more extensively known and allowed, so that it shall become a matter of general adoption, it will easily be seen what a vast source of profit must be opened to the colonists of these parts.

The cattle are an object of scarcely less profit to these people. The cows give richer milk than elsewhere, and in greater abundance; the butter made here is carried in great quantities to the Cape Town, where it is always eagerly bought up. Mr. Barrow reckons that a herd of fifty cows will produce at least a hundred pounds of butter in a week. I have been assured, however, that such a produce is only to be expected at the best time of the year, and under particularly favourable circumstances. The horses in this country are extremely subject to the prevailing murrain; none are therefore bred here; they are bought in from other parts.

The inhabitants of the Snow Mountains are a vigorous and cheerful race. The healthy coldness of the climate, affluence of circumstances, their frequent journeys to the Cape Town, and their exertions in the chace, have a decided influence upon them, as well as upon the inhabitants of the district of Hantam. It must not, however, be supposed that there is the very striking difference between them and all the other colonists that Mr. Barrow

represents: they share all the virtues and all the failings of their fellow-countrymen, only that they are, generally speaking, less indolent, and more peaceable than the rest. But among them also are individuals who are guilty of very great misbehaviour towards those who are under them, and towards the Bosjesmans—who even participated, and that with no light or sparing hand, in the fatal disturbances from which Graaff Reynett suffered so severely. The humour which the traveller himself happens to be in at the moment, as I can answer from my own experience, has often a great influence in the estimate he forms of those with whom he associates. In this country the people are seldom to be known but in their domestic capacity. The traveller enters with them immediately into the relationship of host and guest, and the more or less friendly reception he experiences, must unavoidably, unknown almost to himself, give a bias to his judgment. Not much accustomed to the visits of persons of distinction, the colonist is easily embarrassed,—he endeavours to conceal his embarrassment, under various ill-chosen deviations from his ordinary manner, or, to give himself an air of consequence in the eyes of the stranger, assumes the lordly manner which he exercises towards his slaves and Hottentots, and so presents himself under a much worse aspect than really belongs to him. On the contrary, should it happen that the traveller and his host meet in a favourable humour, the one enters with confidence, the other receives with hospitality; a pleasant conversation immediately commences; each is open and frank towards the other; and the whole visit goes off to the satisfaction of both parties. Thus the stranger forms his general judgment of the people of the country, according to the good or ill-humour in which he has happened to find the few families he has had an opportunity of seeing,—according to the auspicious or inauspicious circumstances under which he has visited them. Mr. Barrow, in his journey through the Snow Mountains, had the good fortune to be entertained by some of the most worthy and respectable people of the colony—the excellent Gerotz, the honest Van der Walt, Louis Van Wyk, Cobus Van Heerden, and others; and if he formed his opinion of the rest by these specimens, that opinion could not but be favourable. Equally respectable people are, however, to be found in every part of the colony; and Mr. Barrow, had he travelled under more propitious circumstances, would have met with them every where.

That my readers may know the dark as well as the bright side of the question, and may see how easily single experiments may lead to partial and prejudiced judgments, I cannot resist transcribing a passage from the journal of a friend of mine, which will place the inhabitants of the Snow Mountains under a very different point of view. This gentleman, an officer of rank, was travelling through the country upon government business in the winter season, when he came in the evening of a cold rainy day in July to a farm, whither he had sent to announce his intended visit, and where he consequently hoped to find things prepared in some order for his reception. To his great astonishment, however, the owner of the house was absent, he having gone that very day to his legplaats, as if purposely to avoid seeing and receiving his guest. The officer waited a long time before any one made his appearance from the house: at length a slave came forth, from whom, however, he could learn nothing, for the unfortunate creature was deaf and dumb. After awhile, he dismounted from his horse, and went into the house, half starved with cold. An old German invalid soldier, who served the farmer in the capacity of overseer of his slaves, who was lame with the gout, and crying out with pain, now crept from a corner: to him the officer addressed himself, begging some assistance in unsaddling the horses, and bringing in the effects. An old slave, with grey hair, immediately went out with the officer upon this business, the invalid calling after the latter to bid him beware of the slave, for he was a worthless wretch, and would steal whatever he could lay his hands on. Besides this grey-haired slave, and the deaf and dumb one, there was a third (who was also deaf, and had but one eye), with a fourth, who had only been there a few weeks, having been recently purchased at the Cape Town, who did not understand a word of Dutch, and was no less ignorant of every thing relating to the business in which he was to be employed: to complete the party, a little Bosjesman girl, who had wrapped herself up in a sheepskin, was crouching in a corner with the flock. With some difficulty a few chips of wood were collected together to make a fire, but they were unfortunately wet with the rain, and sent forth the most horrible exhalations. Though this was the house of one of the most substantial men in the country, not a candle was to be procured, and the guests were obliged to content themselves with the little light afforded by this smoaky fire. The host's bedchamber was locked up, and

the whole company, consisting of some officers, a small escort of dragoons, and several Hottentots, were obliged to pass the night without beds, nestling together round the fire. To complete their misfortunes, it happened to these good travellers, as sometimes happened to us in wet and bad weather, that on account of the roads being very slippery, the waggons could not keep pace with them, but were left much in the rear;—the company were obliged therefore not only to remain in this dirty, smoaky place, but to remain there destitute of every kind of accommodation, even of food. The ever-complaining invalid, however, gave them an invitation to make use of the sheep which was hanging skinned near the flock, saying that it was killed for the travellers. For want of any thing better, the party were obliged to accept of this invitation, and one of the European servants cut out some pieces, which were cooked, though in a very indifferent manner, since the house was wholly destitute of kitchen utensils: the meat was besides so lean, and so exceedingly ill-flavoured, that very little of it was eaten. To shorten in some measure this tedious night, the company entered into conversation with the little Bosjesman girl, as the only amusement attainable. She was not at all bashful, and answered with great naïvetè in broken Dutch, mixed with the Hottentot and Malay languages. She represented herself as very unhappy, and said she had once run away, and returned to her parents, but the *Baas* had sent after her, and brought her back. The people reminded her, she said, that she was much better off among the Christians than in her own kraal; but this she roundly denied, making many complaints of the treatment she experienced. The conversation was then turned to the lean sheep, on which the company had been just regaling themselves, when the girl very innocently related, that two had died of disease, and this was at the point of death when it was killed. The discovery was not very agreeable, and put the party so much the more out of humour, as they found from the lists given in to them upon their journey, that this farmer was the owner of flocks to the amount of seven thousand four hundred head. My infirm old countryman made many apologies upon the subject, saying that his master was indeed over and above stingy; the situation of the slaves, therefore, was truly lamentable, for he only brought such from the Cape Town as were to be purchased at a very cheap rate. As for him that had but one eye, that was indeed a mere accident, and

happened from his master having by mistake hit him one day somewhat too hard. It will easily be imagined that the company quitted this inhospitable retreat the moment that the waggons arrived.

It is scarcely necessary to observe how much to blame the traveller would be, even though he should by chance meet with a similar instance of inhospitality among the Snow Mountains, were he to consider the eulogium lavished upon them by Mr. Barrow as entirely unfounded; and yet this is a failing into which that gentleman himself has very frequently fallen. I have ventured above to hazard an opinion, that the case would have been different had he travelled under more favourable circumstances, but nothing could have been more impolitically conducted than his whole journey. He had been but a few months at the Cape when it was undertaken, and he entered upon it totally unacquainted with the general habits and modes of life of the colonists, exceedingly prejudiced against them in every way, and very little acquainted with the Dutch language. He regarded every colonist as turbulent, seditious, and a disturber of the public peace, who must be judged according to the utmost rigour of the law, and with whom it was scarcely worth any man's while to make a farther acquaintance; and while this was the case on his side, the colonists on theirs considered him as a rigorous judge, as the delegate of a government which they did not love, and had grievously offended. To this may be added, that he brought with him the former Landdrost Meinier, who, as we have seen above, had neither motive or inclination to think favourably of these people, and whose presence was enough to crush any confidence that might be germinating in their bosoms. As Mr. Barrow, therefore, saw with the eyes of others, heard with the ears of others, it was very easy to represent every thing to him in the most unfavourable light, and to make the quiet and submissive appear as odious as the daring and rebellious. I am the more anxious to enforce these remarks, since, of all that this meritorious writer has published concerning the colony of the Cape, nothing has been read with greater avidity, or more eagerly treasured up in the memories of the readers, than his accounts of the ignorance, the brutality, the filthiness, and the perverseness of the African farmers. While his valuable remarks upon the nature of the country, upon the political importance of the colony, upon the Caffres, and many other not less important objects, are already nearly forgotten, every one

remembers that an African colonist will have his slaves and Hottentots scourged during the whole time that his pipe is burning out, and that he will make a fire under his draught oxen, when the poor tired animals can go on no longer; assertions, the universal untruth of which I am not in a situation positively to assert, but I can truly say that no instance of the kind ever fell under my observation. No where have these horrors been retailed with greater assiduity than in Germany; the journals and almanacks have been emulous who should bring forwards with the greatest adroitness, acts which, supposing them true, are in the highest degree disgraceful to human nature. I will not endeavour to trace out the motives of such a disposition, or examine whether these relations were prompted by pure humanity and compassion for the unfortunate sufferers: I shall be satisfied if I can succeed in leading the public to form a more correct opinion of the actual situation of the African colonists—in truth, not an enviable one.

It must not be believed that it is so very easy a matter to acquire an accurate knowledge of these people; it cannot at least be obtained in a single journey, particularly if that journey be performed on government business, and in the character of a magistrate. I only learned to form a correct estimate of the domestic lives of many, from travelling several years among them, from living among them for months together upon the most sociable and confidential terms. Much of what I thought I observed in this first journey, and had noted down, I found two years after very incorrect, and was forced to recant what I had written. To make this appear more clear and comprehensible, I need only observe, that in our own country one class of people is seldom accurately known by another; that it is even considered as an art for the higher classes to keep up any intercourse with the peasantry. How much more must this necessarily be the case, when an European of education goes among a set of rough Africans, where prejudices on both sides, and an ignorance of each other's language present many additional obstacles in the way of obtaining the desired information. I hope I shall be pardoned this digression; it was necessary that it should find a place somewhere.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Matjesfontein.—Houd-Constant.—Illness of the Commissary-General's Daughter.—Arrival of M. Peron at the Cape Town.—Farm of Cobus Van Heerden.—Great Utility of the Breed of Dogs in these Parts.—Madness unknown among them.—Description of the spotted Hyena.—Modes of snaring wild Beasts.—Burger's excellent Farm at Rhenosterfontein.—His Son's Farm at Rietvalley.—Arrival at Towerfontein.—Four Bosjesmans killed.*

THE first place which we visited in the district of the outer Snow Mountains, is called Matjesfontein. Excepting in a small garden close to the spring, not the smallest trace of a tree, or even of a bush, was to be seen within the whole circuit of the horizon. Two families who inhabit this place distinguished themselves by their hospitality, by their eagerness to serve us, and by the gentleness and mildness of their manners. We were met here by Mr. Stockstroem, the new Landdrost of Graaff-Reynett, who conducted us in the afternoon to Houd-Constant, the habitation of one James Olivier. The road to it was somewhat more hilly; and we passed a deep chasm, which presented us with a very unexpected and most pleasing spectacle. The passage from one steep to another was directly at the edge of the precipice, down which, in the rainy season of the year, rushes a fine cascade. At present we saw below us a dark chasm of more than a hundred feet in depth, the moist sides of which were cloathed with a beautiful verdure: down them trickled a small stream, which was lost at the corner of the hill in an inaccessible valley.

Our waggons had not been able to leave Graaff Reynett till very late this morning, two of the oxen belonging to them having been driven away in the night by the Bosjesmans, and others to supply their place could not be immediately procured. Some of the waggons had, besides, been overturned, through the awkwardness of the drivers, which contributed to retard them so much more, that it was midnight before they joined us. The place we were now at had been once inhabited by several families, but most of them quitted it, because they were so much annoyed by the Bosjesmans. As the

buildings were not very spacious, the greater part of our company were obliged, notwithstanding a pretty considerable degree of cold, to pass the night in the open air. At break of day some tents were pitched, and in one of them the Commissary-General installed the new Landdrost of Graaff Reynett with all due form into his dignity; this done, that officer hastened back to take possession of it.

We ourselves set off at nine o'clock in the morning, under very inauspicious circumstances, to continue our journey towards the top of the Snow Mountains. The daughter of our chief, for some days before our departure from Graaff Reynett, had been attacked with a considerable degree of fever, which now began to assume a very menacing and alarming character. It was not possible to postpone our departure, and she herself was very unwilling to be separated from her father, and left in so inhospitable a place, under the care of her companions and the physician. A bed had been therefore prepared for her in one of the waggons, in the most commodious manner that the circumstances would admit; and thus was she to be conveyed from place to place. She was, however, so much fatigued with the first day's journey, that she was evidently at night much worse, and her situation was such as to occasion the most cruel apprehensions. It was besides impossible for medical aid to be administered with any considerable effect, since the requisite mediums for administering it were either entirely wanting, or were bad in their kind. For example, it was no trifling evil, that not a drop of water was to be had in the country perfectly pure, free from natron and other foreign matter. When the question was started, whether to remain where we were, or further to prosecute our journey, our poor sufferer assured us that she felt strong enough to proceed, and begged that she might be permitted to follow us. The whole company participated most sincerely in the trouble and anxiety of the afflicted father, and the following days, through the constantly increasing illness of the daughter, and the alarms on her account, added to the almost melancholy uniformity of the country, were among the most unpleasant of our whole journey.

A short time before our departure from Houd-Constant, a messenger arrived from the Cape Town, who brought dispatches for the Commissary-General, and also several letters for me from my friends there. By the same hand I further received a letter from M. Peron, who had just landed at the

Cape, in his return from a voyage to the South Sea. The sight of a literary foreigner, with whom I was then only united from a conformity of pursuits, would have been doubly delightful to me at so great a distance as I then was from all literary society ; and a letter which it enclosed from General Decaen, Governor of the Isle of France, in order to introduce me to the personal knowledge of this well-informed and worthy naturalist, made me regret very much that I happened just at that moment to be absent from the Cape.

About noon we arrived at the habitation of Cobus Van Heerden, where we were entertained with as handsome a dinner as the poverty of the country would permit. Besides several sorts of game, fresh fruit grown upon the spot was set before us as a very great rarity. On the night before our arrival, our host's dogs had killed a large spotted hyena, which hunger attracted too near to the sheepfolds. The corpse of the animal, and of two dogs, who had lost their lives in the combat, were lying together on the field of action. The rest of the dogs had retired in a body to the shady side of the house, where they were licking their wounds. It would be difficult to find more resolute and courageous dogs than the breed which are cherished by the African colonists, and for this peculiar property they are indebted to the dangerous conflicts which they have such frequent occasion to sustain with the hyenas and leopards. At those farms where sheep are bred in any numbers, it is not uncommon to find from ten to fifteen large dogs, which are commonly so fierce, that it is not safe to go very near them, either by day or by night. They are fed with the entrails of the slaughtered sheep, but are commonly so lean and wretched in their appearance, that it is quite lamentable to see them. The race most in request is a large dog, something of the kind generally known by the name of the Danish dog : three of these are a sufficient match for the largest leopard. They are early trained to this practice, and are the more useful from their sparing powder and shot, which are often articles of great scarcity among the colonists, particularly if any delay occurs in the customary supplies arriving from Europe. At many farms the dogs will go out, three or four together, to the chace, to bring home game for their master ; and in a country where game is abundant, they seldom fail to kill a hartebeest, a wood antelope, or a mountain antelope. In this case, one of them comes alone to the house, and is never quiet till some one goes with him to bring home the prey ; the others remain

to watch it, that it may not be seized and carried off by the wild beasts. I was an eye-witness to an occurrence of this kind, at the farm of M. Meiburgh, on the Eerste river, where, in my presence, a dog ran up to his master, and made him understand by his movements that something was caught. The dogs were counted over, and it was found that two more were absent: this was a sufficient indication that they had gone spontaneously upon a hunting party. We followed the dog, and in about three quarters of an hour came to the spot where the two others were lying with a slain antelope. They had bit it in the throat, and had regaled themselves with licking up the blood as it flowed from the wound. The entrails were immediately taken out, and given to the hunters as their reward.

How exceedingly useful a companion the dog is to man in all countries, can nowhere be better attested than by the solitary African colonist; nowhere do all his properties, even those that belong to him in a somewhat wild state, seem so fully called forth as here. Not only must he keep away robbers and pilferers, but he must not shrink from encountering savage animals endowed with strength far beyond his own; instinct here comes to his assistance, and teaches him not to seize the enemy by the throat, but by the ear, by which means he can hold him much faster, and wound him in the mortal part much more securely.

It is not too much to assert, that without dogs, and such dogs, this country would be absolutely uninhabitable. By them the inhabitants are not only defended from their four-footed enemies, but they are an equal defence against the Bosjesmans. Nothing can be compared to their watchfulness: the leopard, the jackal, even the lion himself, are terrified with the barking of the faithful troop, and hasten to retreat. The colonists, who undoubtedly do adhere with great pertinacity to ancient habits, should not be arraigned in this instance, if they prefer the breed of dogs in question to all others, and keep them as pure as possible: it is certain that they degenerate exceedingly in various ways by the breed being mixed with that of the shepherd's dog. Dogs kept merely for their beauty, are not to be met with all over the colony, except that occasionally, though rarely, the shaggy pudel and the pointer are to be seen in the possession of Europeans at the Cape Town. The English have brought over Newfoundland dogs, as well as some others of the large and hardy breeds; but it appears as if the climate will not agree with them,

since it is universally observed, that they are soon seized with a sort of murrain, from which very few recover. Mr. Duckett, a well-informed English agriculturist, has made many experiments to introduce other breeds of dogs, but they have uniformly failed. It is very remarkable, that no example of madness among the dogs was ever known in the colony; an additional proof that this disease does not so much originate in the temperature of the atmosphere, as in other properties belonging to the climate. Perhaps the effect here noticed may be very much ascribed to the nature of the water, which, almost throughout the colony, is strongly impregnated with natron.

The spotted hyena, *hyæna crocuta*, is here called simply the wolf. It is a very common practice to call objects purely African by the name of any European object to which they have the nearest affinity. This animal is by far the most abundant of any among the beasts of prey in the colony; even in the chasms about the Table Mountain, there are so many, that the farms nearest to the Cape Town are often extremely annoyed by them; nay, in the year 1804, it once happened that a hyena came by night absolutely into the town itself, as far as the hospital. These animals keep, in winter, about the heights of the mountains, but in summer they frequent the marshy parts of the plains, which in that season are dry. Here they lurk among the high reeds to catch hares, viverræ, and gerboas, which in the hot season resort much to such spots for coolness, and to seek nourishment. The proprietors of the lands in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town make parties almost every year to hunt the hyenas, which are called wolf-huntings: of some of these parties I have myself partaken. There are in the plains, about the town, many low spots overgrown with large reeds: one of them is surrounded, and fire is set to the reeds in many places. When the animal becomes oppressed by the heat, and attempts to quit his retreat, the dogs which are stationed about fall upon him, and the sight of this combat forms the great amusement of the party. Besides the advantage of destroying these animals, another is derived from the reeds being burnt, that the ground always produces larger and stronger reeds the following year. Indeed, if the hyenas in the neighbourhood of the town are in some respects a great annoyance, they are not without their concomitant use: they eat up the carrion, and diminish very much the thieving, mischievous apes, and the crafty genet-cats. It is seldom that we hear in this thickly inhabited country of sheep

being killed by the hyenas, for they are by nature shy, and fly from mankind. No example is known of their having ever attacked a man; and often as I have myself met them by night, particularly between Constantia and the Wynberg, I always found them take to flight immediately. A circumstance with regard to these animals, held by many to be a fable, I can from my own knowledge aver to be a fact, that they appear by night to be much larger, and of a brighter colour than they really are; they even appear wholly white. I do not by any means pretend to account for this phenomenon, but I have been myself convinced by my own eyes of its truth. The natural colour of the species is a dirty white with irregular black spots; its height is about three feet and a half, its length about four feet; its hair is stiff and bristly, but longer and thicker on the back than in any other part; the head is less pointed than that of the striped hyena, but is carried in the same way, bent down, with the neck arched; and the creature is characterised by the same evil and malignant eye. It is asserted of this species of hyena, as of that in the north of Africa, that it partakes of both sexes, or changes its sex: but this idea arises solely from the circumstance, that often when very young it is extremely difficult to determine of which sex it is. Mr. Frederick Kirsten had once the goodness to send me twin foetuses, taken out of the body of a female hyena which was killed at his estate in the Wynberg. No difference whatever was to be discerned in their exterior, though it was impossible to determine to which sex they belonged; when dissected, however, it was very evident that the one was a male, the other a female. They were both of a dark grey colour, had perfectly the form and appearance of little puppies; and I observed, that, like them, they must be born blind.

At almost every farm is to be seen, at some little distance from the dwelling-house, a *wolvehuis*, as it is called; that is, a snare for catching hyenas. It is a building from six to eight feet square, constructed of rough stones, with a trap-door, and a bait within, which closes upon the same principle as a mouse-trap, on the animal attempting to seize the carrion within. Snares of the same kind are made to catch the leopard, only that they are closed by a beam from above, whereas the wolf-traps are quite open, because this animal neither springs nor climbs. While I was staying in the neighbourhood of the Paarl, a dreadful accident happened with one of these snares to a colonist, by name Lattaignant: he had just set it, and was creeping out on

all-fours, when the door fell upon his legs and broke them both. In some places spring-guns are set for the wild beasts, which are managed with very great dexterity. A tolerably deep trench is dug in the ground, in which lies the gun, to the spring of which a string is fastened, and this communicates with the bait. The end of the trench is spread out much wider, and the bait is laid in such a manner, that the animal in seizing it must be exactly in the direction which the ball will take. The crafty jackal alone sometimes manages to draw the bait out by the side so as to avoid the bullet. In the neighbourhood of the Elephant's river, on the western coast, it is a common practice to kill the hyenas with poisoned flesh. A tree grows there, which is peculiar to that part, bearing a fruit something like a nut, and this fruit, gathered unripe and boiled with the flesh, is an infallible poison to them. The tree is known under the name of wolfsbane. I never was able to procure a sight of it, and cannot therefore say whether the leaf has any resemblance to the laurel. As time and circumstances never permitted me to make an accurate examination of a dead hyena, I was obliged to content myself with cutting off the head of one, to add to my collection of skulls.

On the evening of this day we reached one of the highest habitations among the Snow Mountains, called Rhenosterfontein, belonging to a certain Barend Burger, who had been once a principal magistrate in Graaff Reynett, and had filled his office with particular rectitude and dignity. According to the universal suffrage, he was one of the most honest and intelligent persons in the whole colony, and in support of this opinion, it is to be observed, that very few farms could be compared to his. The fertility of this country, of which I have already spoken, is here, by means of an extraordinarily abundant spring, carried to its utmost height. Every drop of water that this spring yields is collected with the utmost care, and conducted about the lands by little channels, one of which is a mile in length, and leads to the richest part of the land. Extensive orchards produce excellent peaches, apricots, pomegranates, bananas, figs, grapes, almonds, and oranges, in the greatest abundance, and of the very best quality. In the lower parts were spread out the stubbles of very extensive corn fields, and in the evening numerous flocks and herds of sheep, goats, cattle, and horses, returned home from their pastures. Burger has employed a part of his wealth in building a dwelling-

house, such as is rarely to be seen in the colony, at least in a country so destitute of wood as the Snow Mountains; the houses here are in general built in the same style as the huts in the Roggeveld. Round about the dwelling-house are a number of small neat buildings for the slaves and Hottentots, for barns, storehouses, workrooms, &c. &c. Even in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, not many farms are to be seen that have a greater appearance of comfort and affluence. The mild and pleasing manners of the inhabitants of this place, the family harmony that reigns among them, and the healthy cheerful appearance of the slaves, all prove what a beneficial influence some refinement in the enjoyments of life has upon the whole moral conduct of mankind; indeed, every thing here reminded us strongly of the patriarchal mode of life. It was not without the sincerest regret that the next day we exchanged this truly agreeable abode for the accustomed fatigues and uniformity of African travelling.

We passed, in the course of the day, a small river, known by the name of the Buffalo's river, the banks of which we afterwards followed. We now saw, towards our right, the summit of the Compass Mountain, which Governor Plettenberg, accompanied by Colonel Gordon, ascended in the course of their journey in the year 1778. The name by which it is known at present was then given, because, with the assistance of the map, the whole country round may be reconnoitred from it. By continuing a west-north-westerly direction, keeping along the dry bed of the river, we came at length to the ruins of a pretty large farm, which had belonged to the brother of Barend Burger, but was now, from the drying up of the spring, totally deserted. It is one of the evils of this country, and one which renders many an apparently eligible speculation wholly abortive, that a spring which has yielded abundantly for time immemorial, will at length suddenly fail, and become wholly dried up. From that moment all the buildings erected upon the premises, all the gardens, all plantations of trees are lost; and what had perhaps cost the owner several thousand guilders, falls below any price that could be named: happy if the burden of debts contracted in the speculation does not press him to the ground entirely. Then must he, with all his household, his stock of sheep and cattle; his whole property in short, seek another habitation, and begin, as it were, the world anew.

Towards noon we were received in a very friendly manner at the Rietvalley, by the son of Barend Burger. This young man had not been long married, and, supported by his father, was beginning to improve his farm, which had been too much neglected by the former possessor. Here our invalid, who for the last two days had been in a very alarming state, first began to afford hopes of her recovery. The refreshments we had found at our last place of rest, with some strong medicines, perhaps even the gentle motion of her mode of travelling, and breathing the fresh air, all contributed to produce so happy a change. Here, for the first time since her attack, she enjoyed two hours of quiet and refreshing sleep, and from that moment her fever gradually subsided.

After performing the remainder of this day's journey, constantly descending, we came, towards evening, to the last place within the circuit of the Snow Mountains, which was inhabited by a son-in-law of Burger's. The old man had accompanied us to this place, and when we took leave of him, we remarked that he must find it a very great pleasure to have all his children so near him. His answer was, that it had indeed cost him a great deal of money to purchase so many places, but that it was amply repaid by the invaluable pleasure of having all his children and grand-children collected round him on a Sunday, and uniting with him in the solemn worship of the Supreme Being. The remainder of the Sunday, he said, was passed in walking about, or in cheerful conversation, and on the Monday morning they all dispersed, and returned to their respective homes and occupations.

The place where we then were is called Brakfontein, and the water has indeed so disagreeable a taste that is scarcely drinkable. The greater part of our company had, however, by degrees become pretty well reconciled to drinking bad water; on our journey to Hermannuskraal, we were once driven by excessive thirst to drink the water of a stagnant pool, which was so muddy, that we were obliged to strain the little we could procure through a cloth; since that time we had never experienced any nausea against the water when assailed by the cravings of thirst.

We came now to the Koub, as it is called, or the New-field. The latter name was given the country because it was the last ground inhabited by the colonists. It forms a part of the great Karroo, and is tolerably level, but, excepting in some few places, is for the greatest part of the year arid and

uninhabitable. We had therefore here not the most pleasant prospect imaginable presented to us, that of meeting with only two houses in the next seven day's journeys, the one was to be reached in a few hours, the other in two days. On the heights of the Snow Mountains we had always found the heat moderate, but here it rose to so insupportable a degree, that, as in the plain of Camdeboo, it seemed almost to ascend glowing to the sight from the naked and hard clay.

The sight of the last farm was therefore the more delightful to us, in proportion as it was a spectacle of which we were to be so long deprived. It is called the Towerfontein, or the *Enchanted Fountain*,\* and was inhabited by a very kind and hospitable family, that of Jonathan Jacob van Aschwege. Here again it was striking to see what a paradise this country might be rendered, if every part were but well supplied with water. In the midst of the waste, one tolerably copious spring suffices to render a considerable extent of land exceedingly fertile. All sorts of fruit, pulse, and other garden products, grow in the utmost luxuriance, and those which are but of a moderate kind when first planted, in a few years improve astonishingly. The wine which the owner gave us was beyond all comparison superior to what we had drank at Graaff Reynett, and the almond trees were the largest we had seen in the colony. It is every where allowed that no ground is so fertile as the Karroo ground when it is well watered; so much the more is it to be lamented that the solitary and remote situation of this *enchanted spring* does not admit of the blessings it affords being turned to the utmost possible account. But such is its situation, that not the most distant hope appears of the profits which might be derived from the sale of many among the different

---

\* In the same manner there are in many places about the colony mountains which bear the name of Towerberg, that is *Enchanted Mountains*. Mr. Barrow confuses this word with the English word *Tower*, and quotes thereupon, not very much to the purpose, a passage from Shakespeare, in which a hill is likened to a tower.

Above the rest,  
In shape and gesture proudly eminent,  
Stood like a tower. †

† It must be observed, that the German author here seems to make a mistake in the author Mr. Barrow quotes, since Mr. Barrow himself could hardly quote this celebrated passage of Milton as Shakespeare's. It is, besides, not a *hill*, but Satan that is likened to a tower.—TRANSLATOR.

productions here cultivated, being sufficient to defray the expenses of the very long and wearisome distance they must be transported to any market. The owner, therefore, confines himself principally to the breeding of cattle and sheep : from these his income is chiefly derived : a very small portion arises from the sale of raisins and other dried fruits.

The solitary situation of this place has, besides, this disadvantage, that it is with much more difficulty defended against the Bosjesmans and the wild beasts, both of which are of course the more abundant in proportion as the country is destitute of other inhabitants. The neighbourhood of this farm is often the theatre of terrible strifes with the Bosjesmans : and Van Aschwege related to me with great simplicity, as a matter of perfect indifference, that at only a few hour's distance, lying out in the open fields, were the skeletons of some Bosjesmans, who had been shot a few years before by the owner of the place, as they were stealing some of his oxen. Long as I had been anxious to procure the skull of one of these remarkable people, I entreated our host to permit some of his slaves or Hottentots to go and fetch me one of the skulls, for which I would give them something to drink : to this he willingly consented, but neither menaces or entreaties could prevail on any of them to earn the promised recompence. They declared they would much rather carry the heaviest burden all the way from Graaff Reynett, than the head of a dead man the distance of only a quarter of an hour. So universal, indeed, was this prejudice, that even the host himself, however obliging he was in all other respects, when I begged him to send me a skull by some opportunity to the Cape Town, peremptorily refused my request. All I could obtain was that one of the slaves should accompany me to the place where the skeletons were lying ; for this service he would not, however, accept money, but begged of me some article of old cloathing. At the place indicated, I found the bones of, as I supposed, about four men, but the carcasses had been so torn, gnawed, and scattered about by the wild beasts, that I could with great difficulty find among the fragments parts of two skulls : these, for want of better specimens, I was forced to carry away with me as a great treasure. My conductor stopped at some distance, where he remained until I returned to him, nor would he offer to carry my burden for me a single step of the way.

It was already night when I rejoined our party, who had in the meantime

pitched their tents in the neighbourhood of the Buffalo's river. In one small spot in the river, we procured a supply of tolerably drinkable water: round it grew abundantly several sorts of *rhus*, which are here all comprehended under the one appellation of *Karreeboom*. From them the spot is often called *Karreebosch*. The number of traces of wild beasts, particularly of lions, which we found about the water, proved at the same time, that every thing which has life in this country must quench its thirst, and that probably farther on no water would be found. We, however, dispossessed these ancient proprietors of their right to the spot for one night; but in consequence of our usurpation, were assailed with such a howling and noise all around us, that to sleep was impossible; our cattle were rendered even more uneasy by it than ourselves. Towards evening a messenger arrived from the friendly Aschwege, bringing us a quantity of pulse and fruits, designed more particularly for the refreshment of the invalid. This messenger was the same Hottentot who had in the afternoon remonstrated the most strongly against the expedition to seek the Bosjesman's skull. I asked him whether he was not afraid to go by night among all the lions and other beasts of prey? He answered, pointing to his gun, that he knew very well how to shoot a lion through the body, but against a dead man's head there was nothing to be done. I will not venture to decide whether these superstitious fears of the natives belong naturally to them, or whether they have been instilled into them by the intruding white men. I am inclined to think, however, that the germs of them lurk in the souls of even the wildest and most uncultivated part of mankind; and 'tis not a very small degree of cultivation that must be requisite, to divest a whole people of their prejudices with regard to the mysterious power attached to the remains of the human body.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Remarks upon the Eland-Antelope.—Various Particulars respecting the Ostrich.—Also respecting the Lion, with two Anecdotes of Lion-Hunters.—Loss and Recovery of three Horses.—De Clerk's Farm at the Source of the Chamka.—Extraordinary Fertility of the Spot.—On the Nieuweveld Mountains.*

ON the following day we proceeded on our journey over a long extent of uniform dry, barren waste, stopping awhile towards noon at an ausspanplatze, called the Waayfontein. Here one of our guides had once found the skeletons of a leopard and a gemsbock together, which he adduced as a confirmation of the opinion that this sort of antelope can, with its long and pointed horns, strike at a wild beast so as to wound him mortally. The gemsbock, of which a more ample description will hereafter be given, is the most courageous of all the antelope tribe, and defends itself with a striking degree of boldness against the dogs, by which it is pursued. From the manner in which its horns grow, one may easily suppose, that by bending the neck very much, which the apprehensions of the animal itself will naturally urge, it may then drive its horns into a leopard, as the latter endeavours to spring upon its back, and wound the creature mortally.

The hardships of this hot and wearisome day's journey were, in a considerable degree, compensated by the number of wild animals, both great and small, that we saw. Among them were several troops of quaggas, hartebeests, gemsbocks, eland-antelopes, and ostriches, intermingled at times with steinbocks, hares, and partridges. Towards evening we met a jackal, a wild cat, and three wild boars. One of our guides, who had set off to hunt a troop of eland-antelopes, came back after some time, and announced that he had killed one of them. In order to see it, we were obliged to return back on our road the distance of a good hour, but we were amply repaid for our trouble by finding an ostrich's nest, in which were nineteen eggs. The eland proved to be a large male, the weight of which must have been not less than eight hundred pounds. This is the largest species of antelope, and

forms the next gradation to the ox tribe: its length is commonly from seven to eight feet,\* and its height four feet, or somewhat more. The hair is of a light grey colour, and very thin, so that the skin, which is somewhat blackish, appears through. The whole form of the body and head is like that of the ox, only that it is more slender: its most striking distinction, however, is in the upright horns, which almost form a perpendicular with the forehead and nose: in the old animals the points even bend in a slight degree forwards. This is the only antelope that has the perfect tail of an ox. The boundary of the colony is the part principally inhabited by the elands; there they are sometimes found in groups of twenty or thirty together, but more commonly of about eight or ten, of which seldom more than one or two are males. They feed upon the same plants which, in inhabited parts, serve as food for the sheep and cattle. The aromatic properties of these plants seem highly salutary to all sorts of graminivorous animals. In cutting up the entrails of such as feed upon them, the odour of the plants in the stomach absolutely perfumes the air around. It is somewhat remarkable, however, that if gathered dry, the same plants have scarcely any smell: their strength is only to be discovered by the taste. The eland runs very swiftly, nor could it be overtaken by a horse, if its powers of continuing the race were equal to its swiftness; but it is soon wearied, and the peasants assert, that it is easier for a man to run down this animal than any other, even to hunt him to death. They add, as a very remarkable circumstance, that when killed in this way, the fat about the outer case of the heart, which in many weighs as much as five or six pounds, is always found in a liquefied state; and they consider this melting of the fat as the cause of the animal's death. The flavour of the eland's flesh is essentially the same as that of the ox; but it has a sort of accessory flavour, which becomes disagreeable if a man be constrained to feed upon the fresh-killed meat for many days together: when smoked it loses this flavour entirely, and the thigh-tongues, which have been described on a former occasion,† are a true *gourmandise*.

The distance that we were from the place destined to be our night quarters prevented our turning this booty to the best possible account. We

\* Mr. Barrow calls them ten feet and a half long, but he must probably have included the tail.

† See Vol I. page 97, English translation.

however left one of our Hottentots with it, that he might cut away the best parts of the flesh; and when we arrived at our camp upon the Zont river, dispatched two more to assist him in bringing away the flesh and the skull. These new messengers, met their comrade by the way with a very trifling portion of the spoils: as soon as the evening began to close in, a lion, availing himself of the right of the strongest, had appropriated the greater part to himself.

Among the ostriches' eggs which we found, not many were eatable; the greater part had been brooded, and had already half-grown chicks in them. Our Hottentots did not consider this as any objection, and cooked them in the shells with mutton fat. Though this dish at first appeared extremely revolting, in the sequel I became perfectly reconciled to it, and was often not sorry to procure it.

The habits of the ostrich are so remarkable, and have been so imperfectly described by travellers in general, that I cannot forbear bringing together here all the knowledge I acquired upon the subject, both in this and subsequent journeys. I have noticed, on a former occasion,\* a large flock of ostriches which we met in the neighbourhood of the Komberg. In that country the drought and heat sometimes compels these gigantic birds to leave the plains, and then they pursue their course together in large flocks to the heights, where they find themselves more commodiously lodged. At the time of sitting, there are seldom more than four or five seen together, of which one only is a cock, the rest are hens. These hens lay their eggs all together in the same nest, which is nothing more than a round cavity made in the clay, of such a size as that it can be covered by one of the birds when sitting upon it. A sort of wall is scraped up round with their feet, against which the eggs in the outermost circle rest. Every egg stands upon its point in the nest, that the greatest possible number may be stowed within the space. When ten or twelve eggs are laid, they begin to sit, the hens taking their turns, and relieving each other during the day; at night the cock alone sits, to guard the eggs against the jackals and wild-cats, who will run almost any risk to procure them. Great numbers of these smaller beasts of prey have often been found crushed to death about the nests, a proof that the ostrich does

---

\* See Vol. I. page 110, English translation.

not fight with them, but knows very well how to conquer them at once by her own resistless powers: for it is certain that a stroke of her large foot trampling upon them is enough to crush any such animal.

The hens continue to lay during the time they are sitting, and that not only until the nest is full, which happens when about thirty eggs are laid, but for some time after. The eggs laid after the nest is filled, are deposited round about it, and seem designed by nature to satisfy the cravings of the above-mentioned enemies, since they very much prefer the new-laid eggs to those which have been brooded. But they seem also to have a more important designation, that is, to assist in the nourishment of the young birds. These, when first hatched, are as large as a common pullet, and since their tender stomachs cannot digest the hard food eaten by the old ones, the spare eggs serve as their first nourishment. The increase of the ostrich race would be incalculable had they not so many enemies, by whom great numbers of the young are destroyed after they quit the nest.

The ostrich is a very prudent, wary animal, who is not easily ensnared in the open field, since it sees to a very great distance, and takes to flight upon the least idea of danger. For this reason the quaggas generally attach themselves, as it were instinctively, to a troop of ostriches, and fly with them without the least idea that they are followed. Xenophon relates that the army of Cyrus met ostriches and wild asses together in the plains of Syria.

The ostriches are particularly careful to conceal if possible the places where their nests are made. They never go directly to them, but run round in a circle at a considerable distance before they attempt to approach the spot. On the contrary, they always run directly up to the springs where they drink, and the impressions they make on the ground in the desolate places they inhabit are often mistaken for the footsteps of men. The females, in sitting, when they are to relieve each other, either both remove awhile to a distance from the nest, or change so hastily, that any one who might by chance be spying about, could never see both at once. In the day-time they occasionally quit the nest entirely, and leave the care of warming the eggs to the sun alone. If at any time they find that the place of their nest is discovered, that either a man or a beast of prey has been at it, and has disturbed the arrangement of the eggs, or taken any away, they immediately destroy the nest themselves, break all the eggs to pieces, and seek out some

other spot to make a new one. When a colonist therefore finds a nest, he contents himself with taking one or two of the spare eggs that are lying near, observing carefully to smooth over any footsteps which may have been made, so that they may not be perceived by the birds. Thus, visits to the nest may be often repeated, and it may be converted into a storehouse of very pleasant food, where every two or three days as many eggs may be procured as are wanted to regale the whole household.

An ostrich's egg weighs commonly near three pounds, and is considered as equal in its square contents to twenty-four hen's eggs. The yolk has a very pleasant flavour, yet it must be owned not the delicacy of a hen's egg. It is so nourishing, and so soon satisfies, that no one can eat a great deal at once. Four very hungry persons would be requisite to eat a whole ostrich's egg; and eight Africans, who are used to so much harder living, might make a meal of it. These eggs will keep for a very long time: they are often brought to the Cape Town, where they are sold at the price of half a dollar each.

In the summer months of July, August, and September, the greatest numbers of ostriches' nests are to be found; but the feathers, which are always scattered about the nest at the time of sitting, are of very little value. I have, however, at all times of the year, found nests with eggs that have been brooded; the contrasts of the seasons being much less forcible in this part of the world than in Europe, the habits of animals are consequently much less fixed and regular. The ostriches sit from thirty-six to forty days before the young are hatched.

It is well known that the male alone furnishes the beautiful white feathers which have for so long a time been a favourite ornament in the head-dresses of our European ladies. They are purchased from the people who collect them, as high as three or four shillings each: they are, however, given at a lower price in exchange for European wares and clothing. Almost all the colonists upon the borders have a little magazine of these feathers laid by, and when they would make a friendly present to a guest, 'tis generally an ostrich's feather. Few of them are, however, prepared in such a manner as to be wholly fit for the use of the European dealers. The female ostriches are entirely black, or rather, in their youth, of a very dark grey, but have no white feathers in the tail. In every other respect, the colour excepted,

their feathers are as good as those of the males. It is very true, as Mr. Barrow says, that small stones are sometimes found in the ostriches' eggs; it is not, however, very common; and among all that I ever saw opened, I never met with one.\*

The heat of the last day was sometimes as great as we had experienced in our fruitless journey to meet the Caffre king, or in the dreary plain of Camdeboo. It was judged highly dangerous therefore for our invalid, who was still very weak, to continue her journey by day, and we determined to adjourn the remaining twelve hours to the Lion's river, till the following night. The day was consequently devoted to hunting, to catching insects, and to the continuation of our journals; and as evening came on, the tents were struck, and preparations were commenced for proceeding forwards. When our horses, who, as usual, had been sent out to graze on the neighbouring heights, were to be driven home, three of them were discovered to be missing, nor were they any where to be found, notwithstanding that the most diligent search for them was immediately commenced; it was consequently presumed that they had been driven away by the Bosjesmans, fresh traces of whom were visible all over the country. The greatest part of our company nevertheless set off, whilst myself, with some others, remained behind to wait for the return of some new messengers dispatched in search of the horses. They returned just as the twilight came on; and indeed their arrival was most fortunately timed, since it was no longer safe for us to remain where we were, a lion having suddenly made his appearance at the distance of not more than thirty paces from us. We had now been twenty-four hours in possession of the place, the only one where water was to be found, and so long a time had prevented the rightful owners from coming to quench their thirst. Our number seemed, however, to alarm the lion, for he stopped, stared at us awhile, and then laid himself down. Our African guide immediately set about preparing to receive him, but said he must come nearer before he could fire at him with perfect security. But he soon rose up, went some steps back with a half growl, then laid himself down again,

---

\* Some farther remarks of mine upon the ostrich may be found in the *Brunswick Magazine* for October, 1809, and in the thirty-second volume of H. G. Flörke's *Repertorium of the newest and most important researches in Natural History*, 1811.

looked at us for several moments, rose up once more, and began to fly in the utmost haste.

On this occasion I learnt the following particulars, which in the sequel were confirmed to me by many experienced lion-hunters, and other persons of the most perfect credibility. The lion, like all other animals of the feline tribe, seizes his prey by a spring, and does not attempt to spring upon any man, or other animal, till he has measured his ground, and is at the distance of ten or twelve paces from him, when he lies crouching on the ground, previous to lancing himself forwards. Of this circumstance the hunters avail themselves, and it is a rule among them never to fire upon the lion till he lies down, at this short distance, so that they can take aim directly at his head with the most perfect security. If any one have the misfortune to meet a lion unarmed, his only hope of safety is in courage and presence of mind: he who flies is inevitably lost, but he who stands still is never attacked: he must not even stir, though he sees the animal approach, and crouch as if going to take his spring; that spring will not be hazarded, if the man have only courage enough to remain motionless as a statue, and look the animal in the eyes with perfect steadiness and composure. The erect figure of the man inspires the lion—supposing that he does not previously know by experience how easily a man may be subdued—his erect figure inspires the creature with respect and awe, and makes him distrust his own powers, an impression which is increased at every moment, by the body being kept perfectly still; but all is over if the least movement be made which seems either to betray fear of the lion, or to dare him to his own defence. The event proves that the animal can be as easily impressed with fear as the man; for, after some time, he rises, slowly retreats some steps, looking earnestly about him, then lies down again, then again retreats, till having thus by degrees got quite out of what he seems to feel as the magic circle of the man's influence, he sets off, and flies in the utmost haste.

How unanimously soever I was assured by persons in all parts of the colony of the truth of this statement, I cannot help being of opinion that the experiment has not very often been made: not that it seems to imply any contradiction in itself: the principal thing to be urged against it is, that it would not be very easy to find many men with sufficient firmness of mind and nerve to sustain such a rencounter. It must besides be allowed, that those

who may have had the courage thus to stand against a lion, were accustomed to the looks of the animal, knew all his ways and habits accurately, and by having for a long time pursued the hunter's life, were become hardened against dangers of the kind. Nor does it seem at all improbable, that the same thing might occur with any other animal as with the lion, provided the person had prudence enough first to weigh the danger with calmness, and strength of mind to wait the attack. A panther is too malignant; his rage too fiery: as soon as he thinks there is a possibility of attacking, he rushes blindly upon the enemy, as if sure of throwing him down and conquering him. If all that has been said from such very remote times, respecting the magnanimity of the lion, be not considered as wholly unworthy of credit, what is above related seems to me much more credible than a hundred of those tales.

Formerly, when lions abounded much more in these parts, and the colonists had not so fully learnt the art of managing them, large parties used to be formed for a lion-hunt. They sought to entice the animal into the plain, when they completely encircled him, and as soon as he endeavoured to make his way out, the person on the opposite side fired at him, when he, turning angrily round, was attacked from all quarters with such a shower of balls, that he fell. At present, the people generally go singly in chase of the lion; nay, those who are extremely good marksmen, and who can depend on their weapon not missing fire, will even venture alone to follow the track of a lion, and attack him in his retreat. Such an undertaking is, however, extremely dangerous, and many accidents have occurred from it. Two examples of the kind will serve, as well as twenty, to illustrate this truth.

The Field-Commandant, Tjaard Van der Wolf, the same that lost his life in the Caffre war, and his brother John, who is still living, followed, not far from their dwelling-house, on the eastern declivity of the Snow Mountains, the track of a large lion, which had done a great deal of mischief among their cattle, and found him at last in a ravine, grown over with brushwood. They took their stations on each side the entrance of the ravine, and sent in their dogs, to hunt the lion out. The plan succeeded so far, that the animal rushed towards the last-mentioned brother, crouched to make a spring at him, and was at the same instant shot by him; the shot however unluckily did not hit a mortal part; it only grazed the ear, and one side of the breast,

so that the monster, after being stunned for some seconds, recovered and rushed forwards, foaming with rage, and the smart of the wounds, towards his enemy, who had barely time to leap upon his horse, and endeavour to fly. The lion was instantly after him, and sprung upon the back of his horse, who, overpowered with the burden, could no longer move; when the enraged animal stuck his claws into his victim's thigh, and at the same time tore his under-garment with his teeth. The man clung with all his force to the horse, that he might not be torn off; when at the same moment, hearing his brother galloping after him, he called to him, begging him for God's sake, to fire, not regarding who or what he might hit. The brave Tjaard descended instantly from his horse, and taking his aim coolly, shot the lion through the head, the ball fortunately lodging in the saddle, without injuring either horse or rider.

Less fortunate was a person of the *Zwarte-Ruggens*, by name Rensburg, who, with a cousin of the same name, set off on a lion-hunt. The adventure took exactly the same turn as the former, only that the lion, instead of springing on the back of the horse, sprang upon the side, and fastened his teeth in the left arm of the rider. Very different, however, was the conduct of his cowardly companion from that of the brave Tjaard; he chose to avoid all risk himself, and ran to call two Hottentots, who were stationed at another entrance of the coppice, to his assistance. Rensburg, in the mean time, while the creature tore and mangled his left arm, with his right drew a knife from his pocket, with which he stabbed the foe in several places; and when those who were called to his rescue came up, they found him torn from his horse, swimming in his blood, his left arm and side shockingly mangled, and the dead lion, with the knife still in his throat, fallen upon him. He was not yet absolutely dead, but expired in a few minutes, exhausted with the loss of blood. The life of the pusillanimous companion has ever since been embittered by the upbraidings of his own conscience, and the not very mild reproaches made him by the relations of the deceased.

The people of the country distinguish three different sorts of lions. First, a small dark brown lion with a thin mane, the most courageous, the fiercest, and the strongest of all. Secondly, a large tan-colored lion, with a thicker mane: and thirdly, a lion of a brightish yellow, who is very cowardly and little to be feared. How far this difference may arise from the age, from the

time of year, or from varying in their habits, I cannot take upon me to determine. The two last sorts seem only to manifest any decided difference as they advance in age. The first sort I never heard mentioned excepting here, and on the borders of the Caffre country.

Besides the lion mentioned above, whose appearance gave occasion to this dissertation, we saw not far from us a wild boar, *sus æthiopicus* who appeared, in like manner, to come in quest of water; and the roaring of other lions, which sounded in our ears, gave us warning to remove our quarters. We were therefore obliged to set off without our horses, in the melancholy conviction that they had become the prey either of the lions or the Bosjesmans: and this seemed the more probable, since, being tied by the head and knee, they could not run away very fast. Three nights after, one of the people of the country, whom we had visited at his habitation among the Snow Mountains, and who was travelling to the Cape Town, having stopped here, made a fire, when he was exceedingly alarmed by hearing three horses coming towards him. They were our poor wanderers, who had sense enough to follow the fire, in the assurance that it would lead them among men again. The colonist recognized them immediately as our's, loosed the bridles from their legs, and, tying them behind his waggons, brought them to us, to our no small joy. Although the poor animals had been several days without water, they soon recovered, and held out to do us good service till the very end of our journey.

The part of the company who had set out before us, waited our coming up at a little wood of tolerably high stemmed mimosas, having kindled a fire, which served as a mark to us at a great distance, where we were to look for them. A trifling accident occurred at kindling this fire.—A powder-horn, from which they were shaking some grains of powder upon the burning tinder, in order to produce a flame, caught fire, exploded, and slightly wounded some of the bystanders.

After resting a short time, we proceeded on our journey, and arrived by break of day at the house of the Field-Commandant, Abraham De Clerk. It is at the source of the Chamka, or Lion river, in so solitary a spot, that Aschwege, who has been already mentioned, and who lives at the distance of twelve miles\* from him, is his nearest neighbour. The disadvantages of living

---

\* Twelve German miles, or sixty miles English measure.

in a spot so far removed from any of his fellow-creatures, can only be in any degree compensated by the extraordinary fertility of the land. So great is this fertility, that the farm can maintain a flock of eight thousand sheep, affording also pasturage for nourishing a proportionate quantity of horned cattle and horses. The principal advantage of this farm is, that the owner of it can appropriate the land for many miles round entirely to his own use, and he is therefore absolute ruler over an extent of country equal to many an European principality. If the sheep have eaten one part entirely bare, their lord and master has only to drive them to another part at some distance, where a superfluity of food will be presented; and this continual change of place and food is precisely the thing of all others which contributes most to render the sheep fine and healthy. Does a murrain prevail among the horses in any place, the most effectual remedy for it is flight; commonly a change of place, though it be only to the distance of a few miles, is sufficient at the same time to restore the diseased, and to preserve those that remain untouched from taking the infection. With such resources, any great loss is easily averted or repaired. A year after our visit, I was talking with De Clerk at the Cape Town, when he told me, with perfect composure, that he had recently lost three thousand sheep at one stroke, by the bursting of a water-spout, but he hoped that the loss would be completely repaired in less than two years, without his being obliged to submit to any privations.

This De Clerk was a man of much personal bravery. He was now forty-six years of age, and had killed in the course of his life thirty-one lions and nine leopards. Hyenas and game he had slaughtered in such numbers, that he kept no account of them. The colonists held him in great esteem as a leader, and in the last Caffre war, he obtained the approbation of the English government, not less by his mildness than by his bravery. This man was, nevertheless, not master in his own house; that was governed by a mother seventy-five years of age, who was eternally scolding from morning till night. In every thing that concerned the economy of the house, he was allowed no more than humbly to offer his advice; nay, he was often obliged, for the sake of peace and quiet, to submit to her revoking orders, which he had given without her consent, even when convinced that his own were far the most adviseable. "My son," she said to us, herself, "is commander in the field, but here I am absolute ruler, and will continue so as long as I live." The

respect of children for their parents, and their submission to them, even to their latest years, is a very estimable feature in the character of the African colonists, which again has a great resemblance to the patriarchal days. Though brothers are often to be seen very much at variance with each other, yet they are always united in this one circumstance, of the respect shewn by both to their parents. It is rare, however, for the latter to employ their influence in becoming the peace-makers between their children; they commonly do not concern themselves with their quarrels, that they may not seem to favour the one more than the other.

De Clerk had long wished to build himself a new mansion, instead of the old ruinous one which we saw him inhabiting; but the mother insisted upon it, that she would live and die in the house which her dear deceased husband had built with his own hands. De Clerk had married, but losing his wife very soon, forbore to contract a second marriage, merely to please his crusty old mother. No immediate prospect appeared of his being released from this thralldom, since of all the women in the colony that I had seen, above fifty years of age, she was by far the most active and alert. She had only returned from the Cape Town a few days before our arrival; having been there, without her son to accompany and take care of her; and having transacted all her business entirely by herself. She now, not only directed every thing in the house with the most uncommon activity, but often went into the field to look after the flocks and herds; even in her seventieth year she had taken short journeys on horseback. I mentioned to her the wife of the Field-Commandant Gerotz, who once, when the Bosjesmans, in the absence of her husband, had stolen a large quantity of sheep, mounted her horse, and set off in pursuit of the robbers, accompanied only by a single Hottentot, fought with them for some time, and at length put them wholly to flight. My old lady heard me with attention, and when my story was ended, said, that she was herself, even then, capable of doing the same thing; and that she had, in the course of her life, engaged in many dangerous adventures of a similar nature. Indeed, however indolent and spiritless the African women may appear, when seen only seated at their tea-tables, they shew the utmost resolution in any time of danger, and many striking examples of female heroism, particularly in the last Caffre war, have been exhibited by them.

The other products of the earth in this place are proportionally good with the pastures. Besides the necessary corn for bread, De Clerk had this year gathered a rich harvest of barley, which he used as food for his horses. At this present time a murrain was prevalent among the horses, so that they were all at a distance from the house. Our host, however, assured us, that we need not be under any apprehensions for our cattle, since the disease was not produced by any momentary impression; it arose entirely from continuing the use of the same pasture, and the same water, too long together. It was, therefore, a thing scarcely ever known, for the horses of travellers to take the infection; for the same reason, it was generally found, that a change of place was an infallible means of stopping the progress of the disease. Near the house was a large garden, in which were cultivated fruits of various kinds. At this moment there was an incredible abundance of peaches and grapes, of the very best sorts, ripened in the best manner. The slaves of our host were employed in drying these fruits, which was done by spreading them on reed mats, raised about three or four feet from the ground. The raisins were particularly excellent; and our host assured us, that, notwithstanding the distance of the Cape Town, they answered extremely well the being transported thither. We were the more surprised to find the wine pressed from the same grapes of so very inferior a quality; this must be owing to some great fault, in the making it.

The river, at the head of which lies this solitary farm, is called the Chamka, or the great Lion river, to distinguish it from another, which takes somewhat of a westerly direction, under the name of the Little Lion river. Both cross the Karroo in its greatest breadth, uniting before they quit it, after which they flow into the Elephant's river, which itself joins the Gaurits, as we have seen above, and, with that, flows into the sea. Both arms of the Chamka are not only dry for a great part of every year; but there are years, sometimes even several years together, when they have no water the whole year through. Though rain falls about the Nieuweveld Mountains, in which both have their source, the water seldom spreads over more than half the bed before it is absorbed and exhausted by the Karroo.

The Nieuweveld Mountains are among the most considerable in Southern Africa. They run parallel with the Black Mountains, and bound the Karroo in its whole length to the north. The hills of the Roggeveld, and the Kom-

berg, may be considered as their extreme western boundary, and the Snow Mountains as their boundary to the east. They do not, however, immediately join the Snow Mountains, but are united with them by a chain of hills, which appear as nothing in comparison with their colossal neighbours. Directly to the north of the Snow Mountains, the Nieuweveld Mountains send out a branch in a direction towards the equator, on the eastern side of which runs the Sea-cow river, which flows into the Orange river, between the twenty-ninth and thirtieth degree of southern latitude. This circumstance leads Mr. Barrow into the erroneous idea, that the Nieuweveld Mountains are the highest chain in Southern Africa. Since this opinion is not supported by any measurement, I am inclined to doubt very much, whether the highest point of these mountains is really higher than the outer range of the Black Mountains; the appearance to the eye, which, however, is here deceitful, since the plain of the Karroo must be taken as the level, and that declines towards the south, supports my opinion. What more I have to say on this subject must be referred to the place when I shall speak of the Karree hills, as the third great parallel chain of this country. The part of the Nieuweveld in which we now were is called the Green-hills. The plain in which lies De Clerk's farm is called de *Hooyflakte*, the Hay-plain.

We were met here by a new messenger from the Cape Town, who brought dispatches, requiring a speedy and diffuse answer from our chief. This occasioned us to make a stay of three days, which served as a salutary rest, previous to our arduous journey over the Karroo. I shall avail myself of the interval to give another extract from the journal of General Janssens; it is on the subject of the Bosjesmans, and I trust will be found not less interesting than that already given respecting the Caffres.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Extract from the Journal of General Janssens.—Journey of the General and his Party into the Country of the Bosjesmans.—Their Arrival at the Great river, or Orange river.—Met there by a Party of Bosjesmans.—Observations of the Author upon these People.*

ON our journey from the Snow Mountains hither, we left a very remarkable tract of land to our right, which, among all the country inhabited by white men, has remained the least altered from its original state, and is inhabited by numberless flocks of wild beasts, together with several hordes of the miserable aborigines of the country, as well as the new settlers;—I mean the neighbourhood of the Sea-cow river. Although Governor Plettenberg, so long ago as the year 1778, included it within the boundaries of the colony, it was not till about the year 1790 that any of the colonists settled there. No other part of the colony stretches so near to the Orange river, consequently in no part of the colony do the Bosjesmans, whose proper home is on the banks of that river, appear so much in their genuine form as here. Mr. Barrow, therefore, in order to become better acquainted with the situation of these very remarkable people, and to fulfil the benevolent views of the English government with regard to them, extended his journey to these parts. General Janssens, not less desirous if possible to ameliorate their miserable condition, took the same journey, and the notes and observations made upon this occasion by his adjutant are well worthy of being given as a sequel to those of Mr. Barrow, in order to make the public more fully acquainted with so peculiar a race.

He who would travel into this country from Graaff Reynett, must ascend the Snow Mountains on their eastern side, and leave the Compass Mountain to the left. This was the route pursued by the Governor and his train. Although it was now the winter season, when the colonists commonly leave their habitations on the Snow Mountains, they had the attention to be there to receive their distinguished guests; several, indeed, after having entertained them in the most hospitable manner that the circumstances would admit,

resolved to accompany them in the journey. Such a party may be very numerous, without greatly increasing the cares for their nourishment and accommodation. The Africans are at all times ready for travelling, and easily satisfied. Very little more preparation is necessary, than to sling the powder-horn and bag of shot about the body, to see that the fowling-piece is in good order, and to fasten to the saddle a little bag with some bread and smoked flesh. Thus equipped, the traveller mounts his horse, taking with him on another horse a Hottentot, commonly a lad of twelve or fourteen years of age, whose destination is to look after the horses, and sometimes to carry his master's gun; commonly he besides leads a third horse, that the work may be occasionally lightened to the two others. Any change of linen or cloaths is not thought of in travelling, and when the little provision of food is consumed, the chace furnishes a fresh supply. Is he to pass the night out in the field, the saddle of his horse serves him for a pillow, and the master, with his servant, alternately keep watch to guard themselves and their horses against the lions. In this manner an almost incredible quantity of ground is gone over in a short time. If any one goes to visit a friend who lives as far off as from Frankfort to Leipsick, still it is called only taking a ride. With such a company, for the greater part uninvited, did General Janssens find himself on the top of the Snow Mountains on the twelfth of July, 1803. It was bitterly cold; a sharp north-west wind drove the rain, and a sort of small hail, like snow, through the air, so that the summits of the mountains were soon whitened over. The night was dark as pitch; presently it began to lighten very smartly, and a loud clap of thunder was heard: such a phænomenon, according to the unanimous testimony of all the colonists, was unprecedented at that time of the year among the mountains.

On the following day, the company descended the Snow Mountains, leaving the Rhinoceros Mountain and the Table Mountain\* on one side, and passed the night in a small empty house, the owner of which, with his cattle, had descended into their winter quarters, before the coming on of the severe cold. In the next day's journey they passed the Red Mountain, which belongs to the same great cluster as the Snow Mountains and the Rhinoceros Mountain,

---

\* There are many mountains of this name in the colony, the tabular form being very common among the mountains.

and whose summit rises to a very considerable height. From the south side of the Red Mountain flow the Brakke river and the Great Fish river, which empty themselves into the Indian Ocean, while the springs on the north side supply the Sea-cow river, which takes its course to the Atlantic. A farm of the Commandant John Van der Walt, near a hill called the Wolf's head, was the next night quarters of the travellers: the cold was severe, and in the morning there was ice upon the water three lines thick. The lions came in the dark within sixteen paces of the house, but without doing any mischief. In the course of the next day the travellers saw a great many gnus, hartebeests, and eland antelopes. After passing the next night at a farm called Charles's Port, they descended into the plain, where they found on all sides such an incredible number of elands, that the hunters killed no less than seventeen. By this means several thousand pounds of flesh were obtained; a much larger provision than could be carried away.

From hence the ground was constantly upon the descent towards the valley of the Sea-cow river. To the left were the hills on which Governor Plettenberg erected his boundary stone, and to the right, at a great distance, towered the lofty summit of the Zuureberg, with the summits of many other hills, to which no names have yet been given. About noon, the travellers being at no great distance from the Enchanted Mountain, came to a spring, which is called Van der Walt's fountain, in memory of the deceased Field-Commandant, by whom it was discovered. The colonists assured the Governor that a tolerably good understanding subsisted between them and the Bosjesmans of this country; indeed, wherever, as here, there are plenty of wild animals, on which they can feed, or if they inhabit the banks of a river, so that they can subsist very much by fishing, they are always more orderly and live upon a more peaceable footing with the colonists near them, than in the barren country about Camdeboo, Brintjeshoogte, and the Roggeveld. One of the colonists, as a proof of the truth of what they asserted, rode forwards, and kindled several fires upon the hills, for a signal to the savages that a christian commander had arrived among them. It was not long before four men, armed with bows and quivers, made their appearance in the camp, who displayed so much courage and confidence, that when a quantity of eland's flesh was given them, they immediately set about cutting it to pieces, and devoured it half raw. As it was the Governor's intention to proceed farther that day, time

would not permit of a longer intercourse with them; they were soon dismissed with some presents.

The company arrived in the evening at a gateway, as it is called, between two high hills, where they found a very fine spring, grown round with large reeds; here the tents were pitched for the night. From this spot to the Great river was a journey of two hours. Not far from the spring a gnu was shot, which was examined with tolerable accuracy, and a pretty exact drawing made of it. As this animal, on account of its extraordinary form, has attracted in a high degree the attention of all African travellers, and is pretty accurately described by all, I may venture to refer my readers to them. It is the same animal whose doubtful formation occasioned, for a long time, so much embarrassment to the naturalists. It has the mane and tail of the horse; the form of the head and the horns resemble the ox; and in the legs and delicate make of the body it appears of the antelope species, to which it should seem, on this account, properly to belong. I must observe, that the name by which it is called here, *net wilde beest*, is falsely interpreted, *the wild beast*; since the name *beest* designates the ox tribe, and *wilde beest*, signifies neither more nor less than the *wild ox*. One of these animals was sent by General Janssens to France, on board the vessel *The Geographer*, as a present to the Empress Josephine, by whom it was placed in the menagerie of the botanic garden at Paris. For the rest, it is now in every respect tolerably well known, and has lost the charm of rarity, which it had some years ago to the readers of travels in Southern Africa.

The next day, early, the travellers arrived at the Great river, or Orange river, as Colonel Gordon named it, in honour of the house of Orange. It is a considerable stream; and in a country where a river, tolerably full of water, is a very great rarity, appears a no less delightful than remarkable phenomenon to the traveller. It has its source in several high hills, which bound the still unknown countries of Mathimba, Maduana, and Iminbo to the west. The abundant thunder showers, which fall the whole summer through, keep it constantly supplied with water; sometimes, even at that season of the year, it swells to an incredible height; in winter it is at the lowest: its banks are high and steep. Along its whole course, run considerable hills, both on the north and south side, which in some places contract the valley so much that they almost meet; by this means the river

is so confined, that it presses through the strait, when it is at all swelled, with such amazing force as to carry rocks and trees away with it, and these forming in the end a sort of dam, obstruct the course, and make the waters rise to a height which must appear wholly inexplicable to one not acquainted with this circumstance. In proportion, however, as it approaches the coast, the banks become more flat, and the height of the surrounding hills diminishes. At length it reaches the great sandy plain, which renders the whole western coast of Africa so inhospitable, and presents an eternal invincible barrier against its ever becoming habitable to any extent, or being converted into the seat of trade and business. But this also impedes the course of the river, and after winding its way over an extent of more than a hundred and fifty geographical miles of country, reinforced by several streams, which flow from the districts of the Corans and Beetjuans, breaking itself, by the force of its stream, a way through rocky vallies,—after all this, its strength is exhausted by the opposition of the constantly moving sands. Its proud flood, humbled, spreads over the wide extended plain, and is by degrees exhausted or absorbed before it reaches the coast. This phænomenon may be explained by the peculiarities of the climate, on the African coasts; the rivers here having the greatest quantity of water at that season of the year, when the almost perpendicular sun has parched and dried the sandy plain, and having, on the contrary, least water in the cold season of the year, when abundant rains fall on the western coast, there is never, at the period when the sands are the most penetrable, force of water sufficient to break a way through them. Thus, the rivers either fail entirely in forming themselves a mouth; or, if they succeed in penetrating as far as the sea, that mouth is always obstructed by shoals and quicksands.

It was on the eighteenth of July that our travellers arrived on the banks of the Orange river, a few hours distance above the place where it is joined by the Sea-cow river. As usual, at this time of the year, the water was low; notwithstanding which it was so broad, as to be a good gun-shot over, and in no part throughout the country is the river ever fordable. The tall trunks of trees, torn up by the roots, lying on the banks, served as a mark to shew the height to which the waters had risen in former inundations, and by comparing the rapidity of the stream, in the present low state of the water, with what it must be at the height it had reached when these trees were deposited

on the shore, a very accurate idea might be formed of the terrific appearance made by the stream at those moments.

A number of sea-cows, or rather river-horses, take up their abode in this river, where they are scarcely ever disturbed by the hunters. The traces of their ponderous footsteps were to be observed every where on the shore; and as numbers were soon seen in the water, coming to the surface to inhale the air, a general chase of them was agreed upon. The huntsmen have two modes of catching these monsters; they either watch for them on the banks of the river at night, when they come on shore to feed, or, with a dexterity peculiar to themselves, seize the moment when the nose of the animal is above the water to draw in the air, and fire at it. Although the wound thus given is scarcely ever in itself mortal, yet the pain and loss of blood sustained occasions the animal to rise more frequently, and higher above the surface of the water, and thus the hunters are furnished with new opportunities to repeat the fire again and again, till the animal is at length subdued, and must submit to his fate. These hunts are, however, seldom fortunate, if the hunters be very numerous; every one then is eager to precede the other in firing, and a single shot fired prematurely will entirely frustrate the whole undertaking. So was it on the present occasion. Abundance of the animals were seen frequently rising above the water, snorting and blowing, but the very first shot was injudiciously fired, and taking fright, they hastened to the opposite shore, where they were soon at such a distance that no farther opportunity was afforded of attacking even a single one. After remaining for some time in the vain hope of better fortune, the hunters were obliged to return to the camp, with nothing for their pains but an empty powder-horn.

In the mean time, several Bosjesmans had arrived at the camp, with whom the General was engaged in an amicable intercourse, presenting them with food and other trifling presents. They were all strikingly low in stature, and seemed as if half famished. One of them, and by no means the least of the party, was measured, and found to be only four feet three inches high; he appeared between forty and fifty years of age. The women were still less, and ugly in the extreme. The colour of their skin was lighter than that of the Hottentots; some among them were even less yellow than the Spaniards at Teneriffe; at the same time it must be observed, that the genuine colour of the skin can seldom be accurately distinguished, on account of the grease

with which it is smeared over.\* The physiognomy of the Bosjesmans has the same characteristic features as that of the Hottentots, but their eyes are infinitely more wild and animated, and their whole countenance far more expressive, exhibiting stronger symptoms of suspicion and apprehension: all their actions indicate strong passion much more forcibly. This difference originates undoubtedly in the constant exertions of mind and body, occasioned by the wretched life they lead. They have no property to furnish them with food, in an easy and convenient manner, like many of the savages of Southern Africa, who feed upon the milk and flesh of their herds, but are obliged constantly, by means of fraud and artifice, to procure a supply of the most pressing necessaries. Thence have they been led to the invention of poisoned arrows, with which they can hit to a certainty those wild animals of the field, whose strength and swiftness would otherwise be an overmatch for them. The effect of the poison is so rapid, that they are sure to find the animal who has been touched with it in a quarter of an hour, if not absolutely dead, yet so stunned and powerless, that the effect is the same. To kill it entirely, to cut out the poisoned part, and to begin devouring the prey, are acts which follow each other with the utmost possible rapidity, nor is the spot quitted till the last bone is entirely cleared.

Larger animals, whose thick skins their poisoned arrows cannot penetrate, become not the less the prey of their cunning and contrivance. The banks of the Great river are full of pits made by the Bosjesmans, to catch the sea-cow in its nocturnal wanderings. These pits are large and deep, with a sharp-pointed stake planted in the midst, and are most dexterously covered over with twigs, leaves, and grass. The animal that falls in dies a death of the most horrible torture, for the stake, driven deep into the body, prevents his moving about in so confined a space, out of which he might otherwise, perhaps, be able to work his way by the exertion of his vast strength; nor is it much in the power of the Bosjesman himself, with his imperfect weapons, to release him speedily from his torments. In some places, even the prudent elephant falls, in this way, into the hands of the Bosjesmans. Nor are these

---

\* The principal part of the following remarks upon the Bosjesmans are not from the Journal of General Janssens, but are the result of my own experience; they are introduced here as serving to elucidate what is to follow.

people less subtle in ensnaring fish, for the sake of which they haunt very much the neighbourhood of the larger rivers. They make a sort of pointed baskets of the twigs of trees, which have very much the form of our eel-baskets, and are used in the same manner; or if they expect a swelling of the stream, while the water is still low, they make upon the strand a large cistern, as it were, enclosed by a wall of stones, which serves as a reservoir, where, if fortune be favourable, a quantity of fish are deposited at the subsiding of the waters.

In other parts, they spy about from the heights, to discover the nests of the cunning ostriches, and find a most wholesome and refreshing food in the eggs stolen from them. Snakes in abundance are caught by them, on account of the poison with which they tip their arrows; but after cutting, or biting off the head, and taking out the bag of poison, the animal itself serves them as food. They know very well, that the most poisonous serpents may be eaten with perfect safety; that the poison only kills by being mixed immediately with the blood. The swarms of wandering locusts, which to the civilized world are so great an annoyance, furnish to the Bosjesmans another resource for supporting life. How easy soever it may be to catch them by handfuls in a common way, so as to be furnished with a hearty meal, this is not enough; to increase the quantity taken, they make long and deep trenches, from which the locusts, if they have once fallen into them, cannot easily rise and fly away. A very favourite food of these savages is the *termes-fatale*, or white ant, and their eggs. The species of this animal formerly described,\* which makes such large heaps, or hillocks, does not belong to this part of the country; it is a species somewhat smaller, which builds below the surface of the ground, spreading over a very large space. In the midst of these nests a hole is made by the Bosjesmans, considerably deeper than the nest itself, and they are then certain, in a short time, to find a number of the animals at the bottom of the hole, they having fallen in on all sides, in running about from one part of their habitation to another. At certain times of the year, or before any great change of weather, these animals are particularly busy; they are seen in great numbers upon the surface of the ground, heaping up leaves, very small twigs, and splinters of

---

\* See Vol. I. page 62, English translation.

wood, over the entrance to their mine, as a sort of roof. This is the most favourable moment for the Bosjesmans to practise their mode of catching them.

Sparing as nature is here in the distribution of her gifts, necessity has taught the Bosjesmans the use of several plants, wholesome to appease hunger, which in more abundant countries no one would think of applying to that purpose. Many of the lily species have a mealy nutritive bulb, which, roasted in the embers, has very much the flavour of a chesnut; it is most in order to be eaten when the flower is just gone off. There are, however, several sorts very pernicious, which occasion sickness, and which, by an inexperienced person, might easily be mistaken for those which are salutary. Many sorts of the mesembryanthemum bear a pleasant acid kind of fruit, called by the colonists Hottentot-figs, which are also eaten by the Bosjesmans; and those on the other side of the Great river feed much upon the bulbous root of their kambroo, a plant yet little known to the botanists, and undefined by them.

It is not, however, to be inferred, that no tract of country is so poor but that it produces wherewithal to support the miserable lives led by these savages. In some parts, as on the banks of the Great river, they can procure easily and abundantly the means of supplying their daily wants; but in others, which are deficient in game, in ants, in locusts, and in bulbs, they are often in a deplorable situation; and, from a long privation of sufficient nourishment, waste away to the leanest, most wretched figures imaginable. Does a more favourable time of the year, however, come on, or do they change their quarters to a more fertile region, it is amazing how soon the traces of this misery disappear; in how short a time they become quite different beings. Alas! instead of chusing the latter means of alleviating their misery, they have too often recourse to another, which draws hatred and contempt on all their nation;—that is, robbery. Wholly unaccustomed as these people are to any ideas of property, or to any of the other ties that bind civilized society, possessors of no other wealth than their bow, and arrows, their whole attention turned only to satisfying their animal necessities in the quickest and most convenient manner, ought it to be considered as a matter of very great reproach to them, that they are ready to take what they want, wherever it is to be found? The situation of their neighbours, I

readily grant, is not rendered more palatable by this reflection; and even though they do not feel their attacks to be very atrocious, they are not the less justified, nor is it the less incumbent on them to defend to the utmost themselves and their property. In this very circumstance lies the principal obstacle to the Bosjesmans ever being civilized; and it is certain, that there are not, over the whole globe, any savages whom it would be more difficult to inspire with new ideas, or to form to new habits.

To say all that might be said upon this subject, without suffering myself to run into a wearisome amplification, would be almost impossible. I shall therefore restrain my pen to giving some few of the leading features in the modes of life, and character, of the savages in question; these, connected with such particulars as are already known to the public, and such as may be hereafter given, will enable them to form satisfactory results. The Bosjesman has no settled residence; his whole life is passed in wandering from place to place; it even rarely happens that he passes two nights together on the same spot. One exception may, however, be found to this general rule, and that is, when he has eaten till he is perfectly gorged; that is to say, when he has for several days together had as much as his almost incredible voracity can possibly eat. Such a revelry is followed by a sleep, or at least a fit of indolence, which will continue even for weeks, and which at last becomes so delightful to him, that he had rather buckle the girdle of emptiness round him,\* than submit to such an exertion as going to the chase, or catching insects. He is fond of taking up his abode for the night in caverns among the mountains, or clefts in the rocks; in the plain he makes himself a hole in the ground, or gets into the midst of a bush, where, bending the boughs around him, they are made to serve as a shelter against the weather, against an enemy, or against wild beasts. A bush that has served many times in this way as the retreat of a Bosjesman, and the points of whose bent boughs are beginning to grow again upwards, has perfectly the appearance of an immense bird's nest. In this state many sorts of the

---

\* In Germany it is a common practice for people of the ordinary class, who are riding journeys, if they feel themselves empty, to buckle a leathern girdle round them very tight, which prevents the empty stomach feeling so much the shaking of the horse. This girdle is called the *schmachtriemen*, the *girdle of emptiness*. TRANSLATOR.

pliant *tarconanthus*, abundance of which grow on the other side of the Great river, are often to be found; and if they have been recently inhabited, hay, leaves, and wool may be seen, forming the bottom of the nest. It is this custom which has given rise to the name by which the savages in question are now known. *Bosje* signifying in African Dutch a shrub or bush; *Bosjesman*, consequently, a *bush-man*. An additional reason for giving it being derived from their often shooting at game, or at an enemy, from this retreat. Whoever travels over this treeless country, can scarcely forbear laughing at the mistake of many translators, who have made of this word *bosje*, a wood, or perhaps, forest, and called these people *Wood-Hottentots*; or, as some of the French translators have it, *Hommes des forets*.

The holes in the ground above-mentioned, which sometimes serve these people as beds, are only a few inches deep, of a longish round form, and even when they are to serve for a whole family, not more than five or six feet wide. It is incredible how they manage to pack together in so small a space, perhaps, two grown persons and several children: each is wrapped in a single sheepskin, in which they contrive to roll themselves up in such a manner, round like a ball, that all air is entirely kept from them. In very cold nights they heap up twigs and earth on the windward side of the hole; but against rain they have no other shelter than the sheepskin. In the hot season of the year, they are fond of lying in the beds of the rivers, under the shade of the mimosas, the branches of which they draw down to screen them from the sun and wind. In this situation were they found by Patterson, who has pretended to give a sketch of what he saw, but it is defective on the side of accuracy; nor is it difficult to discern, that the sketcher has introduced a great deal of his own imagination into his picture.\* Household utensils

---

\* I cannot help inserting here, with reference to the opinion I have given in my first volume, respecting the origin of the Hottentot tribes, a passage from *Heeren's ideas relative to the political state and commerce of the most celebrated nations in the ancient world*. He is comparing the information we have received from the English traveller, Bruce, with what we know from the ancients respecting the Æthiopian tribes; and shews, very acutely, the conformity of the modern writer with the relation given by Agatharcides. "The Hylophagi," says this latter, "live under the shade of trees, the branches of which they bend down to the ground, to form themselves a sort of tents. The Dobenahs, the most powerful tribe of the Shangallas, live on the flesh of elephants and rhinoceroses; the Basi, in the plains of Siré, eat the flesh of lions,

they have none, unless that name may be given to shells of tortoises, of ostriches' eggs, and of gourds. Some of those who inhabit the neighbourhood of the more civilized Caffre tribes, of the Beetjuans, for instance, have knives, but they are not at all a necessary to them, since they generally eat their flesh raw, and chew it very little. If they dress it, they scarcely make it hot through, and bite it with their teeth the moment it is taken out of the ashes. The incisive teeth, therefore, of the old Bosjesmans are commonly half worn away, and have one general flat edge. They drink out of the rivers and streamlets, lying down flat on their bellies, even when the bank is very steep, so that they are obliged to support themselves in a fatiguing manner with their arms, to avoid falling into the water. The Caffres, on the contrary, and many of the savage Hottentot tribes, have a way of crouching down to the water, and throwing it into their mouths with the forefingers of both hands. I do not recollect ever to have seen any of the different savages of Southern Africa drinking out of the hollow of their hands. ✓

As the Bosjesman lives without a home, and without property, he must be without the great medium of moral refinement, the social union. A horde commonly consists of the different members of one family only, and no one has any power or distinction above the rest. Every difference is decided by the right of the strongest; even the family tie is not sanctioned by any law or regulation: the wife is not indissolubly united to the husband; but when he gives her permission, she may go whither she will, and associate with any other man; nay, the stronger man will sometimes take away the wife of the weaker, and compel her, whether she will or not, to follow him: I must, however, add, that such instances are not common. The almost instinctive love of the parents for their common children unites the far greater part for their whole lives, and habit makes them inseparable companions. Infidelity to the marriage compact is, however, not considered as a crime; it is scarcely regarded by the offended person. I have, on a former occasion, in my remarks upon the languages of these savages, observed, as a thing worthy of

---

“ of wild hogs, and of snakes. Farther westward, beyond these, is a tribe that in summer  
 “ feed on locusts, which they dress, and then keep in baskets dried; during the rest of the year  
 “ they live on crocodiles, river-horses, and fish. The most eastward of all are the Struthiophagi,  
 “ or ostrich-eaters.” On how many of these things do the Bosjesmans now feed?

notice, that they seem to have no idea of the distinction of girl, maiden, and wife; they are all expressed by one word alone. I leave every reader to draw from this single circumstance his own inference, with regard to the nature of love, and every kind of moral feeling among them. As little is the son considered as bound to the father, the brother to the brother; every one leaves his horde, and attaches himself to another, entirely at his own pleasure.

Very little intercourse subsists between the separate hordes; they seldom unite, unless in some extraordinary undertaking, for which the combined strength of a great many is required. For the most part, the hordes keep at a distance from each other, since the smaller the number, the easier is a supply of food procured. So trifling is the intercourse among them, that the names of even the most common objects are as various as the number of hordes. Their language is disagreeably sonorous, from the frequent clacking of the teeth, and the prevailing croaking in the throat; and it is extremely poor, no less in words than in sounds; they understand each other more by their gestures than their speaking. No one has a name peculiar to himself, though they distinguish themselves as a people by a general name.\*

---

\* Pliny says the same thing of some of the people in the North of Africa. "*Atlantes degeneres sunt humani ritus, si credimus. Nam neque nominum ullorum inter eos appellatis est. — neque insomnia visunt, qualia reliqui mortales. Troglodytæ specus excavant. Hæ illis domus, victus serpentium carmes, stridorque non vox: adeo sermonis commercio carent.*" *Garamantes matrimoniorum ex-sortes, passim cum feminis degunt, &c.*" *Hist. Nat. lib. v. sect. viii.* "The Atlantes, a people of Mount Atlas, in Africa, if it may be believed, are destitute of human rites; for they have no nominal distinction among themselves; neither is their sleep attended with dreams, as that of other mortals. The Troglodytes, a people of Ethiopia, dig caverns in the ground, which they make their habitations; they feed on the flesh of serpents; they make a croaking kind of noise, but have no voice; thus they are strangers to the intercourse of speech. The Garamantes, a people of Zaara, in Africa, having no marriages, cohabit promiscuously with women."

The same description is given by Pomponius Mela: "*Troglodytæ, nullarum opum domini, strident magis quam loquunter, &c.*" "The Troglodytes, possessing no intellectual faculties, make a shrill noise rather than speak, &c." Both give their relations after Herodotus; and how fabulous soever this account of the African nations may appear, they were probably almost founded on experience. Thus much at least they prove, that even the most extraordinary circumstances which I have related, with regard to the Bosjesmans, are not wholly new and unheard of.

When a horde has taken any thing in the chace, or by plunder, it is concealed as much as possible from all the others; since whoever learns that there is something to be eaten, comes without any ceremony, or waiting for an invitation to partake of it. As every thing is common property, the booty cannot be withheld, or a part of it at least, from any one who requires it. Thence the incredible voracity with which they immediately devour whatever they catch in the chace,—thence their avoiding the possession of living animals,—thence the inefficacy of every attempt which has been made to keep them quiet, by paying them a tribute of sheep and cattle,—thence the fruitlessness of all endeavours to accustom them to milder and more civilized habits. I cannot find any other ground than this envy and jealousy, this fear of being obliged to share what they get with others, for one of the most odious and revolting features in their character, their passion for destruction. Every thing that comes in their way, which they cannot appropriate on the spot to their own use, is destroyed, that it may not be of advantage to others. If they discover an ostrich's nest, and circumstances do not permit their continuing on the spot till all they find there is consumed, they eat as much as they can, but the rest of the eggs are destroyed. Do they meet a large flock of springbucks, they wound as many as possible, although six or eight are sufficient to last them several days: the rest are left to die, and rot on the ground. I have already related, that when they fall upon any of the herds or flocks belonging to the colonists, they will rather destroy every one, though they cannot possibly carry them away, than leave any for the owner.

I would not by any means place these unfortunate people in a more odious point of view than they deserve; I will, therefore, readily admit, that this last-mentioned proceeding may very probably be urged, by the idea of carrying away the plunder at a more convenient time; but I must, in any case, vindicate, in great measure, the anger and thirst of revenge excited among the colonists. Who among the most civilized Europeans, would not be transported beyond all bounds, at seeing his whole wealth, the fruit perhaps of many years of labour and industry, wantonly destroyed; the whole flock or herd, so long carefully watched and nurtured, among which many a particular animal is, perhaps, become very dear to him from its faithful services, left, while the ruthless destroyer himself is fled, to end their lives in the most cruel torments? It is very true, that the colonists may justly be reproached with

many and great offences against the Bosjesmans, and their harsh rough manners have led them to acts of revenge which are a disgrace to Christians, to persons who derive their origin from cultivated and civilized nations. I will not here repeat the accusations brought against them; they are sufficiently known from the writings of my precursors: such acts are certainly not to be excused; yet it is but justice to urge, what can fairly be urged in mitigation and palliation of them. The Bosjesmans did not originally inhabit the countries whence they now carry on their most injurious warfare against the colonists; it cannot therefore be urged, that the savages are but revenging themselves for being dispossessed of their own country. At the time when the Europeans settled in the Roggeveld, in the Snow Mountains, in Agtebruintjeshoogte, and other parts, there were no Bosjesmans there; it was the wealth of the colonists which first attracted them thither, from their own proper districts on the banks of the Great-river. The colonists were not the aggressors; for, in truth, these savages had nothing of which they could be deprived; and no idea was ever entertained of making slaves of them. Even supposing they had been driven from their native country, which was not the case, since those parts now inhabited by the colonists were all peopled by tribes of Hottentots; even supposing this had been the case, what had a people like the Bosjesmans to lose; they who are every where at home, who know not the value of any land, who have behind them a fertile territory of several thousand square miles? What had they to lose, but the possession of a dry and almost uninhabitable country, which could not, in any way, be of use, had not Providence sent thither the frugal sheep, as it were, to its own peculiar district?

The rude rough man, left entirely in a state of nature, is not in himself evil and wicked, still less is he so from principle: but he follows blindly the impulse of his passions, which lead him to acts, that to us, in the high point of civilization we have attained, appear as crimes; but which can only be justly considered in that light, when the perpetrators themselves are sensible and conscious that they really are so. Hunger and inclination will naturally lead the Bosjesman to robbing and plunder, nay even to murder, in the desire of procuring some better kind of food than snakes, ants, and the tallow of sea-cows, without his conscience making him any severe reproaches upon the subject, without any man being justified in therefore finding in his

skull the organization of the robber or murderer. As little does the colonist see any great ill, if, in defending his property resolutely against these savages, even at the hazard of his own life, he chances to kill some of them : neither act can fairly be judged upon those principles by which, in well-constituted states, robbery and private vengeance would be judged and punished. The rude laws of nature must inevitably, in great measure, rule here ; and the government can, alas ! only interfere if the colonist, forgetting the duties of humanity, should put his Bosjesman prisoner to death, with cruel and protracted torments ; then, indeed, the punishment of the offender becomes essential, that all superfluous unnecessary horrors may be restrained. Entirely to prevent retaliation, is a thing which cannot be thought of, unless it were in their power entirely to prevent the aggressions of the savages. Before the evil can be wholly removed, the manners of the contending parties must be softened, all their habits and ideas must be ameliorated and refined ; then, and then only, can the criminal code established in civilized Europe be made to rule here supreme. But a few simple facts prove more than the most able reasonings. The reader is therefore requested, when he has gone through the account of my travels, and not before, to form his final opinion upon the situation of the Bosjesmans, and their relations with the colonists.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Extract from the Journal of General Janssens continued.—A River-horse killed, but carried away by the stream.—Efforts of the Colonists and Bosjesmans to retrieve it.—Affecting account of the eagerness shewn by the Bosjesmans to save one of the Colonists from being drowned.—More Particulars respecting the Bosjesmans.*

THE Bosjesmans, who were now guests to the General, were, like all the other savages of this country, clothed in skins. Some of the colonists observed to the Governor, that most of them wore the skins of antelopes; that few were in sheep-skins. They said, that by this circumstance it was easy to judge, whether the horde was among the most peaceable and orderly or not. When they were dressed in sheep-skins, as these could only be obtained by robbery and plunder, they must accordingly be considered as among the disorderly; whereas, the contrary was to be inferred, when they were clad in antelope-skins, which are the fair product of the chase. To the honour of the colonists, it must be observed, that the Bosjesmans did not evince the least fear or distrust of them; on the contrary, towards some among them, who spoke their language, and served as interpreters, they shewed the utmost confidence. As these people related to the Governor, that they came not unfrequently into that country, and often in their hunting-parties had met these Bosjesmans, and had some intercourse with them, the confidence shewn by them was a pleasing proof to him, recollecting, as he did, how much difficulty Mr. Barrow had found to induce them to stop with him, that the colonists had, since that time, treated the Bosjesmans with mildness and humanity. The colonists had, indeed, for some time past, engaged the Bosjesmans so much in a sort of amicable intercourse, that they had given names to some of the oldest and most distinguished among them, by which they were now called; one had the name of Cupid, another the Curlew, another Kakkerlak, &c. &c. The men had no other clothing except the skin thrown over the shoulders, and a jackal's skin in the centre of their bodies; but the women had a number of large pieces of leather, tied

one over the other, as aprons. Their only ornaments consisted in the intestines of animals, hung round the neck, as necklaces; and instead of beads round their heads, they had a bandeau of little pieces of ostrich egg-shell, all rounded to the same size, and strung upon twine. All of them, women as well as men, seemed passionately fond of tobacco, with which, to their great delight, they were richly furnished.

In the bed of the Great-river are found many pretty little pebbles, particularly of jasper, of agate, and of chalcedony. The Governor had, in his walk along the bank, collected a number of them, when news was brought him, that a colonist, who went out that morning by himself, had, at about an hour's distance up the stream, shot a river-horse, which he begged the Governor to come and inspect. The whole company immediately repaired to the spot; but before they arrived, the stream had carried away the monster, without the possibility of its being prevented. The leather thongs with which he was fastened to the shore, notwithstanding their strength and thickness, could not resist the force of the stream, but were torn asunder. Some Bosjesmans were dispatched along the bank of the river, to discover, if possible, whither it had been carried; and these brought word the next morning, at the very moment when the company were about to strike the tents, and proceed on their journey, that the dead river-horse was hanging on a rock, a good way down, on the other side of the stream; and they thought it very possible that he might be disengaged from the rock, and become a valuable booty. When the party reached the spot, the breadth and rapidity of the stream occasioned many doubts in their minds of the practicability of such an undertaking. However, the experiment appeared worth making; it was therefore proposed to unite together all the leather straps, which serve for harness to the draught oxen, and send the Bosjesmans, who were indisputably the most dexterous swimmers, over with them, to see what was to be done. This the savages were very ready to undertake; and four of them immediately set about the task. Each took the stem of a tree, across which they laid themselves; two of them took in their hands the ends of the leather thongs; a third carried the cloaths of himself and his comrades; and the fourth a firebrand, that they might have the means of warming themselves when they reached the opposite shore; thus only one hand of each was at liberty to assist them in swimming. It was astonishing to see, notwith-

standing, the rapidity with which they proceeded, and the two latter very soon reached the opposite shore. The other two had scarcely got to the middle of the stream, when the thongs they held in their hands became an auxiliary to the current, which carried the swimmers irresistibly down with amazing force, constraining them at length to abandon their enterprize and return. A living river-horse itself would, in truth, scarcely have had strength to draw such a weight directly across the stream.

Some other means of accomplishing the proposed end were now to be devised, and many were suggested, but none found practicable. The hope of retrieving the prize, however, induced a young colonist to attempt swimming over; but on account of the vast force of the stream, he was constrained to return, ere he had reached a fourth part of the way. In the mean time, the two Bosjesmans who had attained the other side of the water, having made a large fire, cut a quantity of the fat off the monster's back, which they baked and eat most voraciously. This sight tempted five more of the Bosjesmans to make a new essay; and this was conducted much more judiciously than the former. Each took a light flat piece of wood, which was fastened to the right shoulder, and under the arm; when in the water, the point was placed directly across against the stream, so that the great force of the water must come upon that, while the swimmer, with the left arm and the feet, struggled against the stream, in the same manner as a ship with spread sails, when, according to the sailor's language, it sails before the wind. They arrived quicker than the first, and almost without any effort, directly to the opposite point, and immediately applied all their strength, though in vain, to loosening the monster from the rock on which it hung.

In the mean time, a freed slave belonging to the Governor's train, an eager, spirited young fellow, and a very expert swimmer, had the boldness to attempt following the savages, without any artificial aid, and got, though slowly, very successfully about half way over; here, however, his strength failed him; he was carried away and sunk, but appeared again above the water, struggling with his little remaining powers to reach the shore. All efforts were vain; he was forced to abandon himself to the stream; but luckily at a turn in the river, which soon presented itself, he was carried to the land half dead. The Bosjesmans, when they saw his situation, quitted their fire, and hastening to his assistance, arrived at the spot just as he

crawled on shore exhausted with fatigue, and stiffened with cold. It was a truly affecting sight to behold the exertions made by the savages to recover him. They threw their skins over him, dried him, and rubbed him with their hands, and when he began somewhat to revive, carried him to the fire and laid him down by it. They then made him a bed with their skins, and put more wood on the fire, that he might be thoroughly warmed, rubbing his benumbed limbs over with the heated fat of the river-horse. But evening was now coming on, and in order to wait for the entire restoration of the unfortunate adventurer, it was necessary for the whole party to resolve on passing the night where they were. Some of the Bosjesmans on this side exerted themselves to carry the poor man's cloaths over to him, that he might not be prevented by the cold from sleeping and recovering strength for his return.

Early the next morning the Bosjesmans were seen conducting their *protégé* along the side of the stream, to seek out some more convenient spot for attempting to recross it. They soon arrived at one where was a small island in the river, which would of course much diminish the fatigue of crossing: a quantity of wood was then fastened together, on which he was laid, and thus the voyage was commenced. The young man, grown timid with the danger from which he had escaped, could not encounter the water again without great apprehension: he with the whole party however arrived very safely and tolerably quick at the island, whence, with the assistance of his new friends, he commenced the second, and most toilsome part of the undertaking. Two of the Bosjesmans kept on each side the bundle of wood, while the young man himself exerted all his remaining powers to push on his float. When they reached a bank in the river, where they were partially aground, having water only up to the middle, he was obliged to stop and rest awhile; but by this time he was so completely chilled, and his limbs were so benumbed with the cold, that it seemed almost impossible for him to proceed. In vain did his comrades, who looked anxiously on to see the termination of the adventure, call to him to take courage, to make, without delay, yet one more effort; he, as well as an old Bosjesman, the best swimmer of the set, seemed totally to have lost all thought, or presence of mind. At this critical moment, two of the Bosjesmans, who had remained on our side of the water, were induced, after some persuasion, to undertake the rescue of these unfortunate adventurers.

A large bundle of wood was fastened together with the utmost dispatch; on the ends of this they laid themselves, and to the middle was fastened a cord; this was held by those on shore, so that it might not fall into the water, and incommode them in swimming. It was astonishing to see with what promptitude they steered directly to the right spot, and came, notwithstanding the rapidity of the stream, to the unfortunate objects they sought. The latter had so far lost all coolness and presence of mind, that they had not the sense immediately to lay hold of the cord, and their deliverers were in the utmost danger of being carried away the next moment by the stream. At this critical point, the third, who was standing on the bank, seized the only means remaining to save his two companions. He pushed them before him into the deep water, and compelled them once more, in conjunction with him, to put forth all their strength, while the other two struggled with their utmost might against the stream. In this manner he at length succeeded in making them catch hold of the rope, by means of which all five were ultimately dragged in safety to the shore.

The Governor and his whole company were to the last degree affected with this transaction, and could not enough express the feelings inspired by the courage and humanity which the Bosjesmans had evinced throughout. Care was taken immediately to make a large fire, and to revive them with warm wine; the freed slave and three of the Bosjesmans were indeed in great want of such restoratives, for they were almost deprived of their senses through cold and fatigue, and a considerable time elapsed before they were perfectly recovered. The colonists were besides emulous with each other in shewing their kindness and good will towards the Bosjesmans, repeatedly assuring us that they should never have expected so much from them. The Governor embraced this opportunity to represent very forcibly to these people the injustice of which they were guilty towards the poor savages, exhorting them earnestly to reflect well upon what had passed, and thenceforward to change their conduct towards them. Such an admonition would certainly have been infinitely more necessary, but it would also have been far less effective in the neighbourhood of Graaff-Reynett. The present company protested unanimously that they were all inspired with the most lively desire to recompense the Bosjesmans for the behaviour they had that day witnessed. In fact, the

sequel proved that they were perfectly in earnest in their declarations and promises.

When the Bosjesmans were entirely recovered, the General ordered more ample presents of cloaths, with cloth, and a large provision of tobacco, to be distributed among them. While the people were executing these orders, a woman came forwards, and pointed to the river, over which a Bosjesman was now swimming with the cloaths of the freed slave. By means of the interpreter, she explained that he was her husband, and that he deserved equally a share of the presents. A part was immediately destined to him, and as he struggled with the stream, she looked perpetually towards him, making a very odd trilling noise, by striking her tongue against the roof of her mouth; this noise, it appeared, on enquiry, she considered as of great use in assisting a person in danger.

On the same morning the Governor prepared to continue his journey. Before his departure he summoned all the Bosjesmans to appear before him, when, by means of the interpreter, he assured them that if they would observe a quiet and orderly behaviour, no pains would be spared on the part of the Christians to render their lives more easy and happy, and as opportunity might be afforded, to administer to their little wants and necessities: he would himself, he added, from time to time send some of his own people to see how things were going on, and whether the promises made them were strictly observed; nay, he assured them that the government would never cease to shelter, to protect, and to love all Bosjesmans who abstained from plunder and murder, and shewed that they wished to live in peace with their neighbours. The field-commandant, Van-der-Walt, he concluded, whose possessions were the nearest to their present abode, and in whom they had already shewn so much confidence, should be commissioned by him to promote their good in every manner consistent with justice, and to assist all their laudable undertakings. They expressed their satisfaction by a variety of gestures, and by some incomprehensible words uttered to one another in a kind of singing tone; expressions which were redoubled when the General on taking leave held out his hand to the man who stood nearest to him. Many of them continued to run by the side of the waggons, and only separated themselves by degrees from the company on the second and third days.

A year after, General Janssens had the happiness of receiving a striking proof of the interest he had acquired among these savages. In July, of the dry and unfruitful year 1804, the field-commandant, John Van der Walt, came to the Cape Town, when he informed the Governor, that he, with his neighbours, had adhered strictly to the injunctions given them, and behaved in the most lenient and amicable manner towards the Bosjesmans. This conduct was attended with such happy consequences, that no robberies had been heard of in the country during the whole year: the Bosjesmans had, on the contrary, often come to them in a peaceable and orderly way, to beg food or tobacco. On such occasions, they had either given them food from their own stock, or gone with them into the field to shoot game for their supply. From the drought of that year, however, the quantity of game was exceedingly diminished, many having died, and others having gone to seek more hospitable quarters; even of the tame cattle, numbers had been carried away by hunger or disease, so that an universal scarcity of food was felt, which fell particularly hard upon the Bosjesmans. One day, therefore, a Bosjesman came to him, the same old man who had shewn so much ardour in rescuing the freed slave, bringing with him his son, a boy about ten years of age, begging that he would carry him to the Groot-Baas, who, the year before, had, in such a friendly manner, promised them his protection. He had nothing, he said, for the child to eat; and could hope for nothing better than that he and his mother would die of the hardships and necessities they endured. He was sure that the Groot-Baas was so good that he would not suffer the lad to perish, but would provide him with plenty of food and cloaths. The General freely granted the old man's petition; and the child was received into his house by the name of Flamingo, where he was educated, and became so attached to the family, that when the colony was taken by the English, he begged to accompany his benefactor to Europe. This is the very same lad who was at Paris with the General in 1807, and who was often mentioned in the papers of that time. I shall have occasion to mention him frequently in the sequel.

The company had not travelled many hours after parting with the last of their new friends, when they discovered another horde at a little distance from the road. The whole party rode up to them, and found two men and three women, of different ages, with several children. They did not evince

the least alarm, though the visit was quite unexpected to them, and greeted some of the colonists as old acquaintance. Some presents were made them of beads, buttons, &c. but they begged for tobacco; for this, they were told, they must come to the camp, as the company had none with them. One of the dragoons, however, having a small quantity, gave it to them, when they commenced a loud and singing sort of cry, during which they plucked some old reeds up from the earth, and began to smoke. On enquiry into the meaning of the cry, they said it was an eager expression of joy, and repeatedly assured the company that nothing was so grateful to them as tobacco. The habitations of these people consisted of holes in the ground, such as have been already described: there were two large ones, and several smaller for single persons or children. They had also a sort of earthen pot, but very rough and clumsily formed; and they evidently preferred for use the half shell of a gourd. The company soon quitted them, but were followed by some into the camp, which was pitched for the night at Sea-cow river's Port. Some of the huntsmen, just before the arrival of the savages, shot several head of game, solely with a view to their entertainment.

From all that has been here said, it is evident that the colonists of these parts, have, in the latter years, lived upon much better terms than formerly with the Bosjesmans. Whoever remembers the description given of these savages by Mr. Barrow, that in order merely to get a sight of them, they must be surrounded and fallen upon suddenly; and since great alarm is excited by such a step, conflicts often ensue which cost the lives of many.—Whoever remembers this account, will learn with pleasure, that they are become much more approachable, and that hopes may be entertained, that, at least during the lives of these hordes, peace will be maintained. It must, alas! however be added, that the conduct and behaviour of the savages is not the same everywhere, and at all times; and also that there is no other part in which the colonists are well-judging and humane enough to maintain such a relation with the Bosjesmans, as a concurrence of favourable circumstances had contributed to establish here, at the moment of which we treat. Sorry am I indeed to say that I shall seldom have an opportunity of presenting such pleasing and favourable pictures of the reciprocal conduct of the colonists and Bosjesmans towards each other. What I learnt and experienced in my later travels, will, at the utmost, excite the compassion of my readers for both parties; but will

scarcely ever be of a nature to excite interest or benevolent feelings towards them.

The friendly intercourse was here carried so far, that the colonists, when they had any thing to say to the Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood, or had little presents to make them, could always collect them together only by lighting a fire upon one of the surrounding hills. Things had even gone so far, that a few years before, a large stick, ornamented with metal buttons, had been given to the most intelligent person in one particular kraal, to distinguish him as a commander among them, and the rest were strongly exhorted to obey him as such. This man soon died, leaving the stick to his son; but, unfortunately, the latter died very soon after his father, which created such an alarm among the rest, that they brought back the stick, saying that they should all die if they kept it any longer. For the rest, they are exceedingly superstitious; and there are among them, as among the Caffres, people who are considered as magicians, and who are believed to have the power of commanding rain, wind, and thunder, at their pleasure. If unluckily one of these magicians happens to have predicted falsely several times in succession, he is thrust out of the kraal, and very likely burned, or put to death in some other way. One of the Bosjesmans, who visited the General on this journey, related, that such had been the case with his wife. Although at first a very great magician, latterly her prophecies had all proved false, and she was therefore put to death by the rest. He himself, for fear she might trouble him after her death, had dashed the head of the corpse to pieces with large stones, then buried her; and, for greater security, made a large fire over the grave.

The travellers now followed the course of the Sea-cow river upwards, and the next day, the twenty-second of July, reached the boundary-stone, which Governor Plettenberg erected not far from this river, on his progress through the country, in the year 1778. Fragments of the pillar were lying about the pedestal, on some of which were remains of the arms of the East-India Company sculptured upon them. Here the Governor was met by a messenger from the Cape Town, who brought him information of the renewal of war between France and England. This occasioned him to perform the remainder of his journey by the shortest route, with the utmost possible dispatch, and with a very small part of his train. A journey of one hundred and seventy hours was performed by him in only ten days, so that he re-entered the Cape

Town on the first of August. The companions from whom he parted company continued their journey under the conduct of Captain Paravicini, proceeding, by short days' travelling, along the bank of the Sea-cow river; and on the twenty-sixth, reached the north-west angle of the Snow Mountains, called Africa's Hoogte. From thence they proceeded nearly the same way through Koub and the Nieuweveld, by which the reader has accompanied the commissary-general, and on the thirtieth reached the farm of the commandant, De Clerk. Here we will take leave of these travellers, leaving them to pursue their journey leisurely to the Cape Town, and return to our own company, whom we left resting for the day at the source of the Chamka.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Continuation of the Commissary-General's Journey through the Karroo.—The wandering Men.—Visit to De Beer's Farm in the Kweek Valley among the Black Mountains.—Character of this Man.—Otto's place upon the Cat River.—A Hottentot's Manner of explaining the Proportions of Time.*

ALL the necessary preparations for our departure were made in the course of the day, and ample information procured how our journey through the desert might be performed in the safest and most convenient manner. It was resolved, in consequence of this information, to travel only the latter half of the day, in order to avoid the insupportable heat, which is so great about noon in this low flat country, that it soon overpowers both man and beast. We therefore set off on the twenty-first of February, in the afternoon, having dispatched our waggons forward in the morning. We followed the course of the Chamka, which we crossed very often, without finding in it the least traces of water; and having continued our progress for more than an hour by the light of the full moon in very serene pleasant weather, our tents were pitched for the night by the side of the river, and supper was prepared. The same order was observed on the following days, which passed one after another without the occurrence of any event, or any change of objects worthy of notice. As soon as breakfast was over, the tents were struck, and the waggons packed and sent slowly forwards. The thickest copse of mimosas that we could find was then sought out, under the shade of which we reposed till the hottest part of the day was over, and the sun began to decline, when we proceeded forwards, and by the time that night was fully closed in, reached the place where we were to pass the night, and where the camp was already prepared for us.

Notwithstanding this well-imagined regulation, our journey through the Karroo was attended with many hardships, as any one may easily conceive who has attended to the description of this country which I gave on a former occasion. At that time, when we crossed it, between the Roggeveld

and the Bokkeveld, the hot season was not so far advanced, and water was still to be found in the rivers; our journey through it, besides, lasted only a few days, and we were provided with many necessaries, of which we were now bereft, while neither we ourselves nor our horses were so much exhausted and so weary as we had been rendered by the exertions of the last three weeks.

So great was the want of water, that we were obliged almost always to dig holes in the bed of the river to the depth of four or five feet, in order to procure this indispensable necessary; and when thus procured, it was commonly so impregnated with particles of salt, or other foreign matter, that it was extremely nauseous. Even this miserable liquor would not have been obtained without the assistance of our experienced guide; for it must not be supposed that in an African river 'tis only necessary to dig, and water, such as it is, may any where be procured; such places are, on the contrary, very rare, and are only to be found where considerable cavities in the original masses of stone have been filled up with sand, clay, and argile. These spots are recognized by cross banks of the firm stone which appear not far from them down the stream, and which serve as dams to retain the subterranean water. Commonly there is also a considerable fall in the river above one of these reservoirs, and wherever such a fall occurs, it may almost be depended upon that water will be found a little way below.

The scanty supply of water, and the bad quality of the little we could procure, were doubly felt by us, since our stock of wine and other necessaries was very sensibly diminished; some articles, indeed, among our stores, were entirely exhausted. Our food had consisted for several days of nothing but mutton and biscuit. The wine which we brought with us from Graaff-Reynett had fermented with the heat, and was become perfectly sour; and even of this, our stock was so small that none could be spared for the dragoons and Hottentots; the only thing we could afford to strengthen and support them was a small ration of bad African brandy. Game was a thing we never saw in our whole progress through the Karroo, and though we would gladly have killed a young heifer, which we had bought by the way, the want of salt precluded us from availing ourselves even of this resource.

Every day's journey now carried us farther and farther from the Nieuweveld Mountains, and the monstrous wall of the Black Mountains rose before us at every moment more and more distinctly. These mountains form the whole

southern boundary of the Karroo, and divide it almost inaccessibly from the fertile country upon the coast. In looking back towards the northern mountains, one group was particularly distinguishable, from its striking resemblance with the mountains that bound the Table Valley and the Cape Town on the south side. A high hill, flattened on the top to a considerable extent, stands in the middle, which is encompassed by several other hills not so high, with rounded heads. The former bears the name of the Table Mountain, and the two next in height are called the Devil's Mount, and the Lion's Head, exactly like those at the Cape.

For five days we followed the course of the Chamka river, but then quitted it to take a direction towards the foot of the Black Mountains, intending to pass into the fertile country beyond them through a cleft broken by the Hex river. For the use of future travellers, I shall here set down the names of the *Ausspannplatzen* at which in the first four days we found a small supply of water.

On the 21st February, *de Holdrift*,—The Hollow Ford.

22nd ——— *de Koedoeskopf*,—The Antelope's Head.

23rd ——— *de Remhoogte*,—The Blockade Height.

24th ——— *de Blaauwekranz*,—The Blue Girdle.

Late in the evening of this fourth day, before we reached the place where we were to stop for the night, we were met by a colonist on horseback, an inhabitant of the mountains that lay before us, who having heard of the Commissary-general's arrival in these parts, came with a pressing invitation that he would make a circuit of about half a day's journey, and rest himself at his farm for a day or two, where he might recruit his strength for the remainder of the way through the dreary Karroo. This man had, moreover, been so attentive to our probable wants, that he brought with him some stone flasks full of costly red wine, the produce of his own lands; this, after having been so long deprived of any good wine, and having had so many hardships to encounter, was a wonderful refreshment to us. He supported his invitation not a little by offering to replenish our nearly exhausted stores with a supply of this wine, and with many other productions of his lands. Among other things which he offered, not the least important was forage for our horses, the apprehended failure of which had already occasioned us no little uneasiness with respect to our future progress. Another strong reason for

accepting his invitation, was the still continued weakness of our poor invalid : from her continued exertions, and the want of proper nourishing food, her recovery was very much retarded. Finally, we were determined by the assurance that if this opportunity was lost, we could not in less than another week reach any place where our numerous wants might be supplied.

Our worthy host, therefore, whose name was Samuel de Beer, and who was field-cornet of his district, rode home that same night, to prepare every thing for our reception, and the next morning sent us fresh horses, that we might accomplish our day's journey with the greater ease and celerity. We set off early, and found about half way another human habitation, though only composed of reeds ; but it was inhabited by a well-looking young man, and a neatly dressed woman, who had three or four young children about them. They regaled us with fresh milk, and regretted very much that they had no bread to offer, since they lived entirely upon the flesh of their flocks. These people were of the poorest class in the colony, who call themselves *wandering men*, because they have no fixed habitation, but move about with their flocks from place to place. There are many such nomade families, particularly in these parts ; and in general they may be said to be of a description of persons very far from respectable : they often render themselves liable to punishment by atrocities towards the savages, and disobedience to the government, from whom they can often find the means of concealing their very existence. As they possess no lands, they are strangers to husbandry ; they live upon the produce of their flocks, and are no way connected in society with any of their fellow creatures, so that they are almost sunk to the situation of savages. The government, it may well be supposed, do all in their power to repress such an abuse ; to them it is a further injury, by their being deprived of the taxes which every land-owner is obliged to pay. To the rest of the colonists these people are often a great annoyance in another point of view : that they not unfrequently appropriate to their own use the places destined as *Ausspannplatzen* for travellers, and leave for the next person who comes that way nothing but the bare and naked soil. But the government has, alas ! never been able to exert its utmost energy for the suppression of this grievance, since many families, whose houses and lands were burnt and destroyed in the last Caffre war, have been compelled through necessity to adopt a wandering life ; while others, just within, or

perhaps even without the boundaries of the colony, by their plundering and marauding, bring an odium upon the name of christian, contriving at the same time to keep out of the reach of justice, and to set the laws at defiance.

The nearer we approached to the Black Mountains, the more hilly the country became. On the naked heights we found the *Geranium spinosum* growing in abundance, but at this moment it was destitute either of leaves or flowers; nothing was to be seen but tall thick woody stems, of an ash-grey colour, stuck all over with thorns of about half a finger's length. Farther on, we came to the Black river, a small stream of fine clear water, prettily overshadowed with African willows and Karree bushes. From thence, in half an hour, we reached Kweek Valley, the Field-cornet de Beer's place, and were received by him with new and very unexpected marks of honour. He had collected together the whole population of his district, consisting of about twenty persons, who were ranged in two rows on each side of the way up to his house. Every one had his musket with him, and as the Commissary-General rode through the ranks, the field-cornet, who was distinguished as the officer by a scabbard of gaily painted leather hanging by his side, and a drawn sword in his hand, made them present their arms. While the good peasants performed, to the best of their abilities, the manœuvres they had learned so hastily, two of our host's children, that the proper accompaniment of music might not be omitted, played upon a couple of miserable fifes the popular song which has for some time been so much in vogue in Africa, *Rejoice, ye of the living*. These forms gone through, the field-cornet, with a very important air, made his people form a line in front of the house, and at his command fire three salutes. The tricoloured Batavian flag was all this time waving over the house; and that the whole solemnity might conclude in a proper military manner, the people were made to continue under arms till the field-cornet had ushered our chief with all due ceremony into the house, and given the word of command to them to march off.

These ceremonials completed, the field-cornet now appeared without his sword and scabbard, as the simple host alone, to welcome our chief and all the party most heartily to his house. His wife immediately set the table out with excellent grapes, melons, water-melons, and other fruits, and various sorts of costly wine, all the produce of their own lands. The dinner con-

sisted of several excellent dishes of fresh vegetables, poultry, and veal. Whoever does not understand the nature of this country, must consider it as something very extraordinary, to find, in the midst of such a dreary waste, a place so rich in productions of the earth of various kinds; but the whole enigma is explained to those who do know the country, by the single circumstance that an abundant spring flows from a chasm in the hill behind the house, and waters the fields, the vineyards, and the gardens. So much is done in this mild climate by such a bountiful and never-ceasing spring, that even the most ungrateful soil may be made to yield abundantly all that France and Germany together number among their most costly productions. Alas! such happy spots are, however, rare to be found, and they are, for the most part, at such a distance from all commercial intercourse, that their fertility is of no farther use than for the maintenance of a single family. An increased population and improved habits of industry, may, perhaps, among future generations, make such places considered as a principal source of the national riches: whereas, in the present time, in many of them, the unconquerable indolence of the owners is confined to providing but slenderly the absolute necessities of life.

Many of the productions of this place are carried to the Cape Town—as, for instance, butter, dried fruits, and wine; the latter is of so excellent a quality, that it pays well the long transport. I carried a sample of it to Europe, which was esteemed by connoisseurs almost as highly as Constantia. Farther within the mountains there are places of equal fertility, among which may be particularly mentioned that of the widow Van der Burg, and another which belongs to a Dane, by name Nielsen. This latter, a very intelligent man, knew not how better to employ his great superfluity of oranges, than to extract the aetherial oil from the blossoms and the rinds of the fruit, in which he has succeeded so well, that he has already made it an object of great profit. He had lately begun to cultivate, with the same view, peppermint, anniseed, and fennel; and had found a ready sale for them to the apothecaries at the Cape Town, who had hitherto imported the aetherial oil of these plants from Europe. To the best of my knowledge, this is the first attempt of the kind ever made in Africa. The number of his orange-trees, of different kinds, amounted to two hundred and forty-four. He had sent this year to the Cape Town eighty-three bushels of dried peaches, and four

hundred pounds of raisins. In good years, besides gathering this quantity of grapes for drying, he makes from twelve to fifteen vessels of good wine.

As the grapes that grow in this part of the country are not all of equal goodness with those of the Kweek Valley, they are, for the most part, only used for making brandy; and the northern countries of Koubo, Nieuweveld, and the Roggevelds, are supplied from hence with that article. At De Beer's farm the people were, at this very time, employed in sorting the grapes, in order to make brandy from the worst. But the brandy here, how strong soever it be made, has always an unpleasant flavour, one which is peculiar to spirits distilled from the fruit of this colony, and which must proceed from substances that would probably render the abundant use of it very injurious to the health. My friend Polemann, whom I have elsewhere mentioned as a very able chymist, has succeeded, by distilling it anew with charcoal-powder, in taking off this disagreeable flavour entirely, and making it almost equal to the best Cognac.

Our host, De Beer, was a man of so strangely mixed a character, that I cannot forbear describing him somewhat at large, especially since people of his stamp are not very rare in this country. The principal features of his character were vanity, bigotry, and a love of domination, accompanied by a certain querulousness, and political fanaticism. He was by no means deficient in understanding, as the state of his farm sufficiently testified; but he prided himself not a little upon it, as shewing how much wiser he was than his neighbours, and looked down with a sort of contempt upon them. He was born and educated in the village of Paarl, near the Cape Town, and from living in that more populous country, had acquired a sort of courtly manners and refinement, the want of which, among his neighbours, he failed not to dilate upon amply, and regret exceedingly. He had some reading, and was very choice in the selection of his phraseology, which formed a delightful contrast with the African Malay dialect, in which he was educated. He asserted, as is very common among his countrymen, that Africa would be the most fertile and blessed country upon the globe, would produce every thing, if the peasants were less idle and stupid. As a proof of this, he cited his own experience in the fertility of his place, on which he dilated so warmly, that it was impossible not to attract the attention and admiration of his hearers at the industry which in good truth he had manifested. Although he

was evidently by no means among the most affluent that we had witnessed in the colony, he constantly endeavoured to impress us with the idea that he was a very rich man; in like manner he was emulous to pass for a genius, who could always find the best way to execute any undertaking in which he engaged, and who, on every occasion, knew how to conduct himself with propriety. For that reason he received us with the military ceremonials above described, to show that he was every where at home, and knew perfectly well the marks of distinction with which great men ought to be received. He had been made field-cornet, as being the most intelligent and best-informed man of his district, but his vanity and love of domination made him hated in the highest degree by his neighbours and dependents; such indeed is very commonly the case with all who fill the same post. Almost every body complained of his pride, for there is nothing that people find harder to digest than a man's setting himself up as superior in wisdom to every body around him. Many had gone so far as absolutely to refuse obedience to him; and, in fact, we were obliged to stay here a day longer than was intended, merely because the people would not bring the draught oxen which he had required. When they were ordered by the Commissary-General, they were ready immediately.

The field-cornet made a great display of his piety. Every morning early, all his children, his slaves, and his Hottentots, were assembled for the purpose of devotion, which consisted in singing psalms, in reading a long prayer, and a chapter from the Bible. He did not even forego this ceremony during our stay, though at most places where we had been, the bustle occasioned by so large a party of guests, was considered as reason sufficient to dispense with the customary religious exercises. In earlier times he had had a great deal of intercourse with preachers and missionaries; he recited to us verses full of mysticism which he had himself composed, and anagrams on the names of men who had been particularly celebrated for their piety, which he himself had discovered. He had not absolutely taken any part in the disturbances at Graaff-Reynett, but he was a zealous advocate for freedom and the natural rights of man. He was well acquainted with all the great public events in Europe during the last fifteen years, and had so profound a veneration for some of the leading heroes of the French revolution, that he had given the names of two of the most celebrated among them to his two youngest sons: the one was called John Bonaparte, the other Nicholas Moreau. The former

unluckily, at only three years of age, fell into the cistern where the water was collected in the court before the house, and, no one being near to rescue him, was drowned.

On the twenty-ninth of February we left the Kweek Valley, and its hospitable inhabitants, and proceeded on our journey in a westerly direction, along the outermost declivities of the Black Mountains: this part of the country we thought exceeded in uniformity and barrenness any we had yet seen. We crossed for the last time the dry bed of the Chamka, which from hence runs westward along the foot of the Black Mountains, through which, farther on, it finds a passage. After a long day's journey, we reached in the evening the equally dry Cat-river, on the banks of which a colonist, by name Otto, has built a couple of miserable huts. Here we came to the first well we had seen in the course of our journey. It was twenty feet deep, and dug immediately on the bank of the river, but so scantily supplied with very brackish water, that when four of our horses had quenched their thirst, the rest were obliged to wait for some time till a fresh supply was collected. As water in this country is principally wanted for the cattle, and for watering the lands, the sinking wells is found but a very poor resource; and 'tis owing to this circumstance that so very few wells are to be seen. This in question served only to supply the house with water: the cattle were obliged to drink as well as they could at places in the bed of the river, which could scarcely be called any thing better than puddles.

Here, as in most other places where we had been, complaints were laid before the Commissary-General. A Hottentot in particular engaged our attention, by the simplicity with which he told his story. After he had harangued for a long time in broken Dutch, we collected so much as that he had agreed with a colonist to serve him for a certain time at fixed wages, as herdsman, but before the time expired, they had parted by mutual agreement. The dispute was how much of the time remained, consequently how much wages the master had a right to deduct from the sum which was to have been paid for the whole time. To illustrate this matter, the Hottentot gave us the following account. "My Baas," said he, "will have it that I was to serve so long," and here he stretched out his left arm and hand, and laid his right, with the little finger directly under the arm; "but I say that I only agreed to serve so long," and here he laid his right hand upon the joint of the left

Apparently, he meant by this to signify, that the proportion of the time he had served, with that he had agreed to serve, was the same as the proportion of what he pointed out of the arm to the whole length of it. At the same time he shewed us a small square stick, in which at every full moon he had made a little notch, with a double one at the full moon, when he quitted the colonist's service. As the latter was present, and several of the colonists and Hottentots, who attended as auditors, could ascertain exactly the time of entering on the service, the conclusion was, as is very commonly the case, that both the master and the servant were somewhat in the wrong; that the one reckoned too much of the time expired, the other too little, and that according to the Hottentot's mode of measuring, the time expired came to about the knuckle. The Hottentots understand no other mode of measuring time but by lunar months and days; they have no idea of the division of the day into hours. If a man asks a Hottentot how far it is to such, or such a place, he either makes no answer, or points to a certain spot in the heavens, and says: "The sun will be there when you get to it."

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Continuation of the Journey over the Karroo.—Rugged Valley among the Black Mountains.—Wolfefontein.—The Zoute-Vlakte.—Account of a Drunkard there.—The Rietfontein.—An old Soldier mistakes the Author for one of Prince Lichtenstein's Family.—His unfortunate Situation.—Pinaarskloof.—The Klipfontein.—Draay.—The Term Little Ride, as used by the Colonists, explained.—Mode of conducting Auctions.—Valley of the Hex-river.—Sumptuous Entertainments given by the rich Colonists.—Some of the Dishes described.*

AT the close of the following day our camp was pitched by the river Dweika, which here forms the boundary between the districts of Stellenbosch and Graaff-Reynett, and which, not far from hence, joins the Chamka. In our route this day there was only a hill between us and the place where these united rivers break their way through the Black Mountains. This hill I ascended, accompanied by Captain Alberti, and took a bird's-eye view of the valley below, through which these rivers, when they are full, carry their waters towards the coast, assisting to increase the devastating waters of the Gaurits river. We saw here some of the boldest rocks that are perhaps to be seen all the world over; but they are to such a degree wild and rugged, so naked and bare does the deep chasm yawn before us, that it appears as if nature had sketched the plan of a fine country, but had been disturbed in the midst of her creation, and that all must be cloathed with green, one part rounded off, another filled up, to complete the design, and form a finished and spirited whole. I have enquired a hundred times, but never found any body that could even name to me the man who had followed the course of this valley, to examine whether farther in some beautiful spots might not be discovered, with perhaps waterfalls, grottoes, or the like. There is a more direct way over the hills to Zwelldam, to the left of which lie the Elephant's river and the Flat-kloof; but it is rugged and difficult beyond any other mountain passage in the whole colony, and can scarcely be traversed except on foot.

Apparently, he meant by this to signify, that the proportion of the time he had served, with that he had agreed to serve, was the same as the proportion of what he pointed out of the arm to the whole length of it. At the same time he shewed us a small square stick, in which at every full moon he had made a little notch, with a double one at the full moon, when he quitted the colonist's service. As the latter was present, and several of the colonists and Hottentots, who attended as auditors, could ascertain exactly the time of entering on the service, the conclusion was, as is very commonly the case, that both the master and the servant were somewhat in the wrong; that the one reckoned too much of the time expired, the other too little, and that according to the Hottentot's mode of measuring, the time expired came to about the knuckle. The Hottentots understand no other mode of measuring time but by lunar months and days; they have no idea of the division of the day into hours. If a man asks a Hottentot how far it is to such, or such a place, he either makes no answer, or points to a certain spot in the heavens, and says: "The sun will be there when you get to it."

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Continuation of the Journey over the Karroo.—Rugged Valley among the Black Mountains.—Wolfefontein.—The Zoute-Vlakte.—Account of a Drunkard there.—The Rietfontein.—An old Soldier mistakes the Author for one of Prince Lichtenstein's Family.—His unfortunate Situation.—Pinaarskloof.—The Klipfontein.—Draay.—The Term Little Ride, as used by the Colonists, explained.—Mode of conducting Auctions.—Valley of the Hex-river.—Sumptuous Entertainments given by the rich Colonists.—Some of the Dishes described.*

AT the close of the following day our camp was pitched by the river Dweika, which here forms the boundary between the districts of Stellenbosch and Graaff-Reynett, and which, not far from hence, joins the Chamka. In our route this day there was only a hill between us and the place where these united rivers break their way through the Black Mountains. This hill I ascended, accompanied by Captain Alberti, and took a bird's-eye view of the valley below, through which these rivers, when they are full, carry their waters towards the coast, assisting to increase the devastating waters of the Gaurits river. We saw here some of the boldest rocks that are perhaps to be seen all the world over; but they are to such a degree wild and rugged, so naked and bare does the deep chasm yawn before us, that it appears as if nature had sketched the plan of a fine country, but had been disturbed in the midst of her creation, and that all must be clothed with green, one part rounded off, another filled up, to complete the design, and form a finished and spirited whole. I have enquired a hundred times, but never found any body that could even name to me the man who had followed the course of this valley, to examine whether farther in some beautiful spots might not be discovered, with perhaps waterfalls, grottoes, or the like. There is a more direct way over the hills to Zwelendam, to the left of which lie the Elephant's river and the Flat-kloof; but it is rugged and difficult beyond any other mountain passage in the whole colony, and can scarcely be traversed except on foot.

The interior valleys are rich and wild ; they are inhabited by the zebra, which is elsewhere become very rare, and by the spotted antelope and roebuck in great abundance : the almost extirpated blue antelope (*antilope leucophaea*) is even occasionally to be found there.

The abovementioned colonist Nielsen, a man whose credibility I have no reason to doubt, told me also that in many parts of these mountains there are lions in such numbers, that he once in a hunting party saw two-and-twenty together. Most of them were young ; only eight were full grown. He had taken his oxen from his waggon, and left them to graze at an open place near a wood, but at sight of these creatures, he with his Hottentots fled to take refuge under the cover of the waggon, leaving his oxen as their prey, six of which were killed and carried away by them, without his venturing to fire a single shot.

The next day's journey was, from the accustomed heat, want of water, and wearisome uniformity of the country, passed with the usual fatigue. In the evening we came to a pretty spot, and pitched our tents in the bed of a small river called the buffalo's river, which flows into the Dweika. The place where we encamped has water almost all the year round, and is called the Wolfefontein. The mimosas for a considerable way on the river side, downwards, had fresher leaves than we had seen for a long time, and their advantageous situation was farther manifested by the growth of the thorns, some of which measured from five to six inches and a half in length ; at their roots was growing a small quantity of grass. Although the standing water which we found here and there had the accustomed flavour of natron, by making small holes of about two feet deep, very drinkable water was soon procured. That we might collect the greatest quantity possible, one of these little wells was dug by the side of every tent, from which we acquired the knowledge of an extraordinary circumstance, that while one hole yielded the best flavoured water possible, in another, not ten paces from it, the water was perfectly brackish. It should almost appear therefore as if the natron lay sometimes only in small patches below the earth. It is certain that occasionally the freshest springs will rise out of ground the surface of which is covered with natron, and by digging in the same ground, the water obtained is extremely disagreeable. There are farms, where in one part the wine that grows will be excellent, while the vines on a neighbouring land, from the quantity of natron

with which it is impregnated, will be perfectly diseased, scarcely having a branch upon them capable of bearing fruit. A striking example of this phenomenon may be seen at Constantia, where the celebrated wine which bears that name is made.

On the third of March, in the evening, we went a little out of our way, for the purpose of passing the night at an insignificant farm, which lay in a chasm in the mountains. We found a couple of miserable reed huts, but the inhabitants were hospitable, and willingly resigned to us their slender repast of fresh milk. The father-in-law of the owner had formerly lived in the Zuureveld, but was so completely plundered by the Caffres, that his children, though themselves in no very prosperous situation, were obliged to lodge and maintain him. This place was called Geelboksfontein. The narrow entrance to the valley appeared to us, as we took our leave of it the next morning at sun-rise, compared with the arid plain over which we were still travelling, a very romantic spot.

When we had crossed the Buffalo's river, the bed of which was perfectly dry, we came about noon to the *Zoute Vlakte*, or Salt Plain, as it is called, on account of the natron which every where rises out of the ground. Here lived a certain John Krieger, whose brother, the Field-Commandant of the Roggeveld, had arrived just before us, with fresh teams of oxen for our waggons. This place belongs to the district of the Cold Bokkeveld, although it is three days' journey from it; but it is nearer to that district than to any other more populous region. In winter, when the inhabitants of the Bokkeveld come down to their *legplatzen* in the Karroo, the *Zoute Vlakte* is not so entirely desolate. Besides our old acquaintance from the Roggeveld, we met here another family of colonists, who were on their way to the Cape. They excited our attention more particularly, from the circumstance that amongst them was the first person, an African born, whom we had seen drunk during our whole journey. The man wrangled with our host, disputed with all the rest of the party, was cross to his wife; but notwithstanding his being so extremely in liquor, not an oath, or even an unseemly word, escaped him.

We had now before us a course of ten hours over the dryest part of the Karroo, in which there was no house to be seen, nor any hope of finding even a drop of water. The overpowering heat had almost exhausted the strength

of our horses; it was therefore determined that we should once more proceed on our journey by night; and we continued our march from the time that the moon rose till two o'clock in the morning. The way was smooth and well tracked; round us stretched the wide spread plain, and nothing interrupted the profound silence that reigned over the spot, except the braying of a quagga, at a great distance: this appeared the more remarkable, since one single hare was the only wild animal we had now seen for ten days. We had lately, indeed, observed upon the ground some traces of the feet of ostriches, which we surveyed with satisfaction and interest, as a proof that some kind of living creature was not far off.

In the morning we were charmed with the glorious, and in this part of Africa, rare, sight of the sun rising in the horizon of the monstrous plain behind us; and at eight o'clock we arrived at the Rietfontein, our destined place of rest. The inhabitants were not then resident there; and we were received at the entrance of a small damp hut, without windows or chimney, by an old German, formerly a soldier in the service of the East India Company, now serving the owner of the place as overseer of his cattle and slaves. Not far from this wretched cabin stood a somewhat more spacious, but very ruinous straw hut, of the sort which is here called *hartebeesthuisje*. This we made our people clean out, and put in a little order, and then took up our abode in it, till the waggons with our tents arrived. In the little garden were nice young beans and ripe figs, of which we availed ourselves for our dinner and dessert; thus we soon found ourselves quite at home, in an abode which at first appeared so revolting, glad of any thing which afforded us shade, and where we could be tolerably cool. The old soldier fatigued us with his assiduity, and with the histories he related of his adventures and campaigns. He was a native of Julich, by name D. Hessler, and had served for a long time in the Austrian army, as a hussar, particularly in the regiment of Esterhazy, and under Wurmser: with the true garrulousness of old age, he was never weary of repeating the same thing over and over again. My name, which he caught by chance, awakened in him a thousand interesting recollections, with regard to the house of Lichtenstein, in Austria, which he had known very well, and one of the princes of which he had served in the quality of a body hussar. As I spoke to him in his mother tongue, and seemed to interest myself in his stories, he would insist upon it that I must

belong to this distinguished family; nor, how earnestly soever I sought to correct his error, would he be persuaded but that I was the same whom he had seen as a boy, and often carried in his arms; he even discovered in my features a strong likeness to the family. It was not without some difficulty that I could escape from his caresses. He then related to us how unhappy he was in his old age, and in how much misery he was ending a life which began under such happy auspices. His master, he said, was seldom there: for the greater part of the year he saw no other human being but his black subjects, and he lived almost entirely upon dried mutton, and biltong. Besides this, he was in constant apprehensions for his personal safety, since there were numbers of marauders swarming about these solitary regions: only a few weeks before, a party of them, in the absence of his master, had stolen some oxen and the greater part of the household goods, threatening to kill him, if he did not remain quiet. In fact, among the white people of the colony there are none who lead such wretched lives as servants of this description. This situation is the last resource of worn-out invalids, who, being destitute of every kind of knowledge, and rough in their manners, can seldom find any other means of supporting themselves. Happily, the service required of them is not hard; and the disagreeableness of their situation consists more in being deprived of their accustomed enjoyments, in being separated from the world, and in the absence of those comforts and conveniences so desirable in old age, than in sustaining any positive evil. But their pay is small, and as old soldiers, and people of low descent, they may well be pardoned if they seek a compensation for all other privations in the enjoyment of strong liquors. The propensity to this is so universal among them, that the whole class are known among the colonists by the general appellation of *the drunkards*. Such of these worn-out invalids as have talents beyond the generality of their brethren, that is to say, who can read and write, engage themselves to the peasants as domestic teachers, when they have the title of *meester*. But among them there are few indeed capable of infusing into the minds of African colonists any taste for European cultivation; and to the want of instruction among these Africans, compared with persons of the same rank among the Europeans, is to be ascribed their much less rigid ideas of moral worth, and the roughness of manners ascribed to them

by such Europeans as enter into their service. For it is easily to be imagined that this is the lot of only the very lowest among the European emigrants, since those who are better educated, and are endowed with any kind of talents, as for example, all who understand any mechanical trade, can easily find employment in the Cape Town.

At noon the following day we quitted the westerly direction which we had hitherto taken, and turned towards the mountains to the south. We left the Karroo of the Roggeveld to the right, and for some hours saw plainly in the distance the Tower Mountain, at the foot of which we had passed on the seventeenth of November, in our former journey through the Karroo. The country around us soon began to assume a very different aspect. Instead of the straight, level track we had been so long pursuing, over a smooth schist, we now by degrees ascended rugged untracked hills. Mountains of a considerable height, at whose feet vast granite blocks, which had rolled down, obstructed the way, rose menacing before us, closing from us alternately all distant view, or, at openings, presenting us with a prospect over wild and rude valleys. At the end of the Pinaarskloof, a spacious rocky valley, we came to a place which was called with the strictest justice the *Klipfontein*, rocky fountain. The house itself was built against a hill, the top of which consisted of masses of sand-stone, continuing like a wall for the space of a mile, and the ground was covered with vast blocks of granite, which had rolled down from the hills that bordered the other side of the valley. In comparison with the Karroo, vegetation might however here be called flourishing: among the rocks, especially on the south side of the sand-stone wall, grew a variety of plants, some of an aromatic kind, and many wholly new to me.

Good water, fresh milk, with strong chicken-broth, and, above all, the heartiness with which we were received by the inhabitants, in a poor house, built partly of clay, partly of straw, made the few hours that we rested here pass very pleasantly. In the cool of the evening we proceeded onwards, and in some hours arrived at Draay, the place of a person by name Bek. Our hopes of finding at this place, which was one of considerable note, the rest and refreshment we began very much to want, was cruelly damped on our arrival. Nobody was at home; every thing was locked up; no bed, no supper was to be obtained, excepting by breaking the house open. A couple

of slaves said, that their master and mistress were gone out on a *little ride*. We enquired whither?—the answer was, into the country of Zwelldam; so that this little ride was a distance of, perhaps, fifteen German miles.

It must be observed, that every journey taken for pleasure, passes here as a *little ride*; and no one must be surprized to hear of a little ride which lasts for a week together. In fact, by this expression is to be understood the friendly visits made to connections and acquaintance; and such kind of journeys form the principal amusement of the colonists. They are particularly fond of visiting, on a Sunday, any relations who live at the distance of three or four hours. For this purpose, every member of the family, the wives and daughters not excepted, has a riding-horse, upon which they go a considerable distance in a short time. When one meets such a cavalcade, one is very doubtful whether most to admire the boldness of the riders, that of the women in particular, or the sure-footedness of the horses, so swift and so safely do they go up hill and down hill, over the steepest declivities, and the most rough and rocky roads. In the more wealthy parts of the country the colonists have commonly light pleasure-waggon, on purpose for going out on these parties; they are drawn by six or eight spirited horses; but the younger part of the fair sex always prefer riding on horseback. In a country where there are, properly speaking, no places of amusement; where there are no popular festivals, no fairs; where there is not even such a thing as a tavern, and where dancing and all sports are every where, except at the Cape Town, and in its neighbourhood, regarded as inconsistent with decorum; scarcely any mode of recreation remains, but such kind of visits. People amuse each other in the best manner they are able; relate all the recent family occurrences; lament the absent neighbours, and the like; and when conversation begins to flag, the scene is relieved by having recourse to the exercises of devotion. The whole company seat themselves round a table and sing psalms; or one reads a sermon, or some chapters from the Bible; a ceremony which is performed commonly every evening when there are no visitors.

The great occasion of festivity in this country is a wedding, when all the nearest relations, and in a country where every body is a cousin, or a nephew or niece, the number of these relations is not inconsiderable—the whole tribe are invited, and feasted for several days together. The christening of a child

is rarely celebrated, because the ceremony must in most instances be necessarily performed in a church at a very considerable distance; the birth-day is still less frequently celebrated. The only things which in any sort resemble public assemblies or popular festivals, are the auctions which take place, when, in consequence of a division of inheritance, or from unfortunate circumstances, a farm is to be sold. This is done by the secretary to the drosty, as auctioneer, *Vendemeester*, and every one far and near throngs to the place, if not with any idea of purchasing, to make one among the company, and partake of the revelry going forwards; for, how great soever may be the number of guests, the purchaser must feast them all, and this, if he be a man of a generous spirit, he does very handsomely. Here, as at our popular festivals and fairs, they laugh, they joke, and throw aside all restraint. Sometimes wine also is busy among the company, and heats them till disputes grow frequent, but rarely indeed do they proceed from words to blows; even amidst all their revelry, the phlegmatic character of the African colonist still maintains itself. Thus much by way of elucidation of the *little ride*.

At the wet season of the year, the place where we were now is one of the gayest and most fertile among these hills. The house stands in a large plain, which stretches a long way towards the east, as far as a spot mentioned in other travels by the name of *Constable's plain*. Near the house, the road to the Hex river crosses that from the Cold Bokkeveld to Constable's plain, for which reason the place is called *de Kruispad*, the Cross-way. In winter the fields bear the finest grass in great abundance, but at this moment every part about the house was so bare, that it looked like a thrashing floor; nor could we, in the total absence of fresh food for our horses, procure even dry forage for them. Our party in this dilemma laid themselves down to rest awhile, some in sheds, some in the open air, and in the middle of the night set off again. The road lay over a very rugged stony path, at the corner of the mountain, which, on account of the perpendicular walls of rock rising on each side, was called *de Straat*, the Streight. At day-break we reached the summit of the hill, from which we descended for several hours through an absolute labyrinth of rocks, into the valley of the Hex-river, and arrived about nine in the morning at the very pleasant and fertile place of one of the richest colonists that we had any where seen, by name Wouter de Vos.

The Hex river, with many little branches, rises in the eastern side of these mountains, snow-clad mountains as they are in winter; the western side supplies the warm and cold Bokkeveld with springs. This river crosses these great mountains in a strait direction from north to south, and penetrates through a narrow chasm into the valley of the Breede river, with which it unites itself about an hour and a half north of the hot springs and the Brand valley. Within the mountains it runs for a distance of five hours through a deep, not very broad, and very obscure valley, to which, on that account, the first discoverer of it gave the name of the Hex valley, that is to say, the *witch's* valley. In this valley are four farms, which at the first glance speak the fertility of the spot. The first, that at which we now arrived, is called Buffelskraal: it yields abundantly all things that I have formerly mentioned as productions of the Bokkevels. Although our visit was not expected, we were entertained most profusely, and the table was spread with every thing that is to be seen at a splendid dinner in the Cape Town. One seems suddenly transported into a new country, on finding, so near the empty habitations of the Karroo, the farms of the Hex river. From choice we declined the beds offered us in the house, and pitched our tents under the thick shade of a little grove of eight chesnut and walnut trees, which our host had some years before planted by the river side. Farther above and below lay the gardens, the vine grounds, the orange gardens, and meadows, belonging to the farm, in which every thing is produced in the greatest luxuriance. The declivities of the hills and the heights furnish pasture for the horses and the flocks, but the uncommon drought of this year had so much burnt up the grass and the plants, that our host was obliged to send his herds and flocks to seek their food in other parts.

We stopped here a day and half to rest and refresh ourselves, and on the following day, in the afternoon, proceeded farther down the Hex river. In about an hour we reached the second farm, which belongs to a person of the name of Jordan. On this farm a most excellent wine is produced, of the sort which is here called Madeira. It is made and pressed with greater care than is usually bestowed, and amply repays the pains by its great superiority. Wine of this kind, ten years old, a sample of which was set before us by our host, is in spirit and flavour equal to the best produced about the Cape Town, and in Hottentots'-holland. A few days before, a large

fish-otter, of which there are numbers in the Hex river, was taken here: this animal had never before come in my way. I was presented with the skin, which was still perfect; it is about three feet and a half in length, and is covered with hair of a dark grey colour. On the very same day I found a skull of this animal by the river side.

We passed the night at the third farm, the Vendutiekraal, whose owner is called Rolof van der Merwe. This man was married to a third wife, who had had two husbands before him, so that nine children, whom we found here, belonged to five different marriages. Besides these, the good people had undertaken the care of two orphans, children of a relation. We were here entertained with a genuine African dish, which is a sort of soup made of baked gourds, with small onions sliced in, some salt fish, and Cayenne pepper: it is called *Kalebassbreedi*,\* and even to the palates of the north of Europe, which do not easily accommodate themselves to the hotly spiced dishes of the Cape, is an agreeable kind of food. Although the vegetables here are seldom dressed with butter, but almost entirely with the clarified tail-fat of the sheep, yet even, to the greatest epicure in this way, these same vegetables have in no part a higher relish than as they come from the hand of the African cooks. The persons who hold the office of cooks are commonly men slaves, or, in the poorer parts of the country, female Hottentots; but the mistress of the house overlooks the kitchen so assiduously, that very rarely indeed can any complaints be made with justice of want of cleanliness in the cookery.

Early in the morning of the next day we proceeded on our journey, and after a few moments chat at the fourth farm, the smallest of the four, bent our course along the narrow pass through which the Hex river runs into the plain of the Breede river. It is about half an hour long, enclosed by hills of a considerable height, and extremely steep, which give it a venerable

---

\* *Kalebass*, a gourd.—*Breedi* signifies in the Madagascar tongue *Spinage*; the word is brought hither by the slaves, and at present, throughout the whole colony, every sort of vegetable which, like cabbage, spinage, or sorrel, is cut to pieces and dressed with Cayenne pepper, is included under the general term *Breedi*. To a particular sort of *Rumex* in its state as a plant, this name is also given. In the Portuguese language, the *Blitum virgatum*, which is used as a vegetable for the table, bears the name of *Bredos*.

appearance. The banks are every where narrow, and the river is five times crossed in this short distance, in order to keep on the side where there is the most space. The road is difficult, from the vast numbers of rounded flints which abound both there and in the bed of the river. In quitting this strait, the hills of the Bosjesveld, the Brand valley, and Goudinie, are all seen at the distance of about a German mile and half, and the traveller arrives in the country not far from Rodezand, of which some account has been already given.

Almost all the colonists here belong to the numerous family of Du Toit. The field-cornet of the district, one of this family, who came to meet us with a team of fresh oxen, is the proprietor of a very large farm at the entrance of the Hex river's kloof: another of the family is the owner of a considerable place on the Breede river: at the former we were entertained at dinner in a more than usually hospitable manner; at the latter we passed the night, and were met there by a great number of the relations. As there are scarcely christian names enough to distinguish each particular member of such a numerous family, it is customary where this is the case, and perhaps two or three have the same christian name, to distinguish them by certain nick-names, which are sometimes taken from personal qualities, but are more frequently derived from their farms. Our present host was therefore commonly called Peter Roodewal, not Peter du Toit, because the former is the name of his farm. We were here entertained so profusely, that it almost appeared as if our host was desirous of making us amends at a single meal for all the privations to which we had been subjected in our journey through the Karroo. In the fertile regions of the colony, it is very usual to set before any stranger guests, specimens of every thing which the country produces either of animal or vegetable, either in the field or in the garden, dressed in every way that can evince the most profound knowledge in the science of cookery. For this reason it is scarcely possible to count the number of dishes brought on every time the table is fresh covered. The first dish is commonly a strong soup made of fowls, mutton, or veal, seasoned with red pepper and ginger, and flavoured with cucumbers and tamarinds. This is a favourite dish throughout all India, and is known to every traveller into that country by the name of *Kerri*; one which is applied to any kind of meat prepared with the seasoning above mentioned, but which belongs properly to the soup just described. According to the Batavian customs, which are copied by the inhabitants of

the Cape in every thing relating to the luxuries of the table, half cooked rice is often eaten with the *kerri* instead of bread. Next to this dish comes fish or beef, both cooked with a variety of sauces, and many sorts of *Atjar* \* and *Sambal*. Under the name of *Atjar* is included such a vast variety of things dressed with vinegar, and made very hot with spices, that it is scarcely possible to enumerate them all; cauliflowers, French beans, gherkins, lemons, unripe maize, and the young shoots of the bamboo, may be mentioned as among the most favourite dishes of this description. *Sambal* is a mixture of gherkins cut small, onions, anchovies, Cayenne pepper, and vinegar. The natives commonly season these dishes besides with the green pods of Cayenne pepper, some of which they have lying by them during dinner. At all times of the year abundance of fresh vegetables are to be seen at the tables of the colonists in these countries, since the cold is never so great, but that they will grow without any trouble in the open air.

The *roti* follows next, which is commonly a sucking pig, a turkey, or some kind of game: this is accompanied by six or eight sorts of preserved fruits, which are handed round in little tureens. Chicken and pigeon pasties close the list of warm dishes. In the country about the Breede river, these pasties are made in a variety of pretty forms, and the mistresses of the houses seek to establish their fame as cooks more particularly by making them at once pretty to the eye, and savory to the taste. For this reason, here, as well as at several other places, so many of these pasties were set before us, made in such a variety of ways, that our people were even satiated with them. But an European *gourmand* would scarcely envy the Africans any of their good things so much as the excellent desserts with which the table is last of all spread. The very sight of such an abundance of fruit is in itself a source of enjoyment; no one can avoid feeling a sort of delight at the many-coloured and fragrant-smelling pyramids which he beholds rising like so many pictures from the fruit-baskets. According to the season, these desserts consist of melons, water-melons, various sorts of grapes, mulberries, peaches, apricots, pomegranates, many sorts of oranges, figs, bananas, fresh almonds, and roasted chesnuts; to which may be added, several of our common sorts of

---

\* This is a Malayan word, and should be written thus, not *Asia*, as it is to be found in most of the German writers.

European, and more rare East and West India fruits, which are cultivated in the gardens here. During the meals, a number of slaves are eagerly busied in waiting, while others stand about here and there behind the guests, with bunches of ostrich feathers in their hands, which they wave to and fro to keep off the flies. Before and after the meal, water is set before the guest to wash his hands and face.

This prodigality in the substantial farmers will be easily excused, when we see how bountifully nature herself has bestowed every thing which can contribute towards nourishing the body in the most agreeable manner. Voluntary abstinence would be here, if not absolutely blameable, at least very unnatural, and would rather be looked upon with contempt than admiration. All these things are obtained with so little exertion, the value of what any one foregoes is so insignificant, that it might fairly be reckoned a fault not to enjoy what nature so liberally offers.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

*Arrival of the Party at Goudinie.—Petition presented to the Commissary-General by the People of that Country respecting a Missionary.—Some Observations upon the African Missionaries in general.—Return to Roodezand.—Roodezand-Kloof.—The Country about the Berg River.—Reflections on the Tenures by Fief, and the Freehold Tenures in the Colony.*

ON the tenth of March we continued our journey towards Roodezand, and came at noon to a farm which lay on a little height by the side of the Breede river, whence we had a very pleasant view over the valley of Goudinie, so richly cultivated, intersected by so many streets, and enclosed with hills in such an amphitheatre-like manner. We found here, very unexpectedly, a number of people assembled; and the owner, by name Du Plessis, invited the Commissary-General and the party in a very pressing manner to stop awhile, since these people had a petition to present to him. This was, that he would permit a missionary, who was one of the company, and who had been sent into the country for the purpose of instructing and converting the heathens, to establish himself in those parts, and instruct the people thereabouts. They all loved the man they said exceedingly, and his weak health would not permit him to follow the proper object of his mission: they were willing alternately to board and lodge him, provided he would explain to them twice a week some chapters of the Bible, sometimes pray with them, and occasionally, when they wished it, speak words of edification to them. Their real view was to have him established among them, as a regular preacher, so that they might by degrees erect themselves into a separate parish, and get rid of their dependence on the church of Roodezand.

In order to substantiate such an accusation, I must enter upon this subject somewhat more at large. The example of the pious George Smith, and the Herrnhuter missionaries at Bavianskloof, had, in the latter years of the last century, prompted the missionary societies in England and Holland to imitate an undertaking which was become so celebrated: several persons were in

consequence sent hither, to preach the gospel to the savages, and convert them to Christianity. These societies, particularly in Holland, were, however, very careless in their choice of the persons sent, and took, for want of more respectable practitioners, mechanics and schoolmasters, who could not continue their trades in Europe, giving them handsome salaries, and paying the expenses of the voyage. Most of these, I except only three or four really worthy men, considered the voyage to Africa only as a means of leading a more easy and agreeable life than they led at home, and no sooner arrived at the place of their destination, than, seeming to forget all their boasted zeal, and the call which they had professed to feel, they thought only of performing the duties undertaken so far as was necessary to give some colour of pretence for claiming the promised stipend. Preparations were outwardly made for transporting themselves to the boundary of the colony, but when it came to the point, they seldom got farther than three or four days' journey from the Cape Town. The propensity of the colonists to piety smoothed the way to them every where: a venerable and modest demeanour secured them the most respectful reception wherever they came; and some new prayers, enveloped in terms of obscurity and mystery, with two or three benedictions, and a chapter or two out of the Bible read in the whining tone of the Dutch pietists, soon won every heart.

Nowhere were these adventurers received with greater eagerness than in the country about Roodezand and the Breede river, where, even at that time, the person mentioned in the second part of this work, Domine V....,\* was suspended by the government in the midst of his orthodox proceedings, and where the people were but too much disposed to decry his more worthy successor, a man of a mild and tolerant disposition, as a teacher of heretical and erroneous doctrines. Many had consequently forsaken the church, and instead of going thither, assembled at each others houses to perform their exercises of devotion. Very opportune then to them was the arrival of the new travelling missionaries, since they had long ago exhausted all their former sermons, having read them over and over at their meetings, till they had almost learned them by heart; nor was it very unnatural that the preachers should find themselves so well situated among these affluent and hospitable

---

\* See Part II. page 143, of the English translation.

people, as that they should have no great inclination to exchange the life they led there, for the hardships and inconveniences to be encountered among rude savages. Marriages with the daughters of the pious citizens came afterwards in the way, and then all idea of any farther journeyings must necessarily be abandoned. But that they might have something to relate to the missionary societies, by whom they were employed, they set about preaching to the Hottentots who were in service among the neighbouring colonists, who had long known almost as much of Christianity as their masters, and then boasted loudly, in the letters they wrote to Europe, of the progress they had made in their task of conversion. Many of these letters were published with great ceremony in the *Gedenks-schriften der Zending Maatschappij te Haarlem*, in all their genuine pomp of style and language. Those who wish really to understand the value of the African missionaries, and their works, will do well to read them.

Every year, the number of missionaries who came over increased. Some of them, chiefly the English ones, did, indeed, go among the savages; but the greater part remained in the country, about Roodezand, living a fortnight with one colonist, a month with another, regularly receiving the salary, towards which many a penitent sinner in Europe had contributed his ducats, under the pious idea of assisting in leading heathens from the paths of error to those of truth. None of these holy messengers ever thought of crossing the Karroo, to instruct the distant and poorer colonists of those parts, who live at many days' journey from the nearest church, and to whom their visits might have proved a real substantial service. No, they must chuse an abode in which they could live better, and where any doubt in the orthodoxy of the preacher was easily obviated; since they had only to absolve the multitude of their disciples from the sins to which they were most inclined, to insure themselves every where a favourable reception. Hitherto the assemblies had been held sometimes at one house, sometimes at another, without any farther solemnities; and the government had very wisely never attempted to interpose, for the double reason, that the missionaries, as such, were in no way under their controul; and that the abuse had not yet gone so far, as that the ecclesiastical council at Roodezand had thought proper to make complaints against it.

But, since a pious woman, at the Cape Town, had, under the English

government, herself, built a large house of assembly, for the purposes of evening devotion, in which the missionaries gave lectures, the people in the country about Roodezand took it into their heads that they too would have such an auxiliary church, in which they could alternately either preach themselves, or retain such preachers as should happen best to please them. The place for this church was already chosen, and the Commissary-General was now solicited to give his permission for the missionary, Foster, to be received as the preacher elected by them; and thus to sanction, in a certain degree, the whole undertaking. It was impossible, however, not to be somewhat astonished at this choice; since, among all these lazy sons of piety, scarcely could one have been found less prepossessing in every respect than this Foster. He was about fifty years of age, and had formerly gained a livelihood, in Holland, as teacher of the catechisms; he resolved, therefore, notwithstanding he had children, who had a just claim on his attention, to go and teach his catechisms to the heathens, and instruct them in Christianity. It is scarcely possible to conceive a more lamentable figure, a more stupid and miserable appearance, than he made, when he presented himself before us; it would be difficult, indeed, to decide, whether his figure was most fitted to excite compassion or laughter. Dressed in a white linen waistcoat, black breeches, worsted stockings, thick-soled shoes, his head, on account of the rheumatism, wrapped round with several dirty handkerchiefs, and from weakness supporting himself with difficulty: there he stood before us without a word of salutation to offer, much less with any reasons to submit to the consideration of the person whose favour he had to solicit, why that favour should be granted. The by-standers, however, urged, as excuses for his apparent want of politeness, that he was hard of hearing, that his sight was extremely weak, and that he was little acquainted with the customs of the world.

While the Commissary-General was talking with the people in the inner-room, our missionary walked slowly up and down the entry, from corner to corner, with his arms folded, and sighing repeatedly, sometimes with his eyes raised towards Heaven, moving his lips, as if uttering a silent prayer. No one could persuade themselves, but with the utmost difficulty, that this was the man to whom these people were so anxious to commit the care of their souls; or perhaps it was his miserable aspect, his air of suffering,

that prejudiced them so much in his favour. Are not the Lazaroni of Naples venerated as saints?—It would be remarkable, if a conformity of character between the inhabitants of Southern Africa, and the Italians, who live in nearly the same climate, could be established. How many interesting conclusions might be drawn, if it could be made to appear, that similarity of climate has a similar influence upon the religious opinions and ideas of mankind! Among the colonists of the Cape, the causes that influence their opinions are not difficult to be recognized; their separation from the rest of the world, the want of higher cultivation of mind, the absence of objects on which to exercise the fancy; while at the same time, the fancy is so much the more easily excited, in proportion to the little variety presented by the surrounding realities;—added to which, that the less the body is exercised, and the better it is fed, the more powerfully these causes will operate;—all these things, while they are necessary consequences of the nature of the country, at the same time furnish reasons sufficient to account for the erroneous direction of the activity of the mind. Mankind must think, though all that they think be but a dream. The propensity of the colonists to religious mysticism, appears to me very sufficiently explained by the nature of the climate, and their modes of living. There are among them people who are even so fanatical, as to fancy they have visions and extasies,—who in good earnest believe themselves honoured with divine inspirations.

The urgent entreaties of the petitioners, particularly of the colonist women, that they might not be deprived of the treasure which they fancied they possessed in this man, constrained the Commissary-General, at length, to come to an explanation, which was made nearly in the following terms.—The government, he said, knew of no such persons as missionaries among the Christians, and could not recognize them, since that would be authorizing a private society in Europe to send persons into the colonies as popular teachers, whose principles were not ascertained, and whose pretensions to knowledge were not proved. A too ready concurrence with the petition on the part of the government might very easily give occasion for these people to consider themselves as independent of the jurisdiction of better instructed divines; at least, there seemed no means of securing their preaching the same doctrine as is generally received in the reformed church. In this

way great danger would be incurred of religious differences arising, of the confidence in the established preachers being weakened, and of the revenues of the church, and the donations to the poor, being greatly diminished. More than all, this was a purpose wholly different from that for which the missionaries were sent out: the duties they had undertaken, would not permit them to live idle among the Christians, but commanded them to go and preach the gospel to the heathens. If the abundance that reigned at the tables of the hospitable African cultivators was more agreeable to them than the locusts and wild-honey of the wilderness; or if weakness of body precluded their fulfilling the task in which they had engaged, the proper conduct for them to pursue, was wholly to relinquish the undertaking, and to renounce the salary they were to receive. In such a case, the government would not refuse its permission for them to be examined at the established college at the Cape Town; and if they were found properly qualified, would readily allow them to earn their livelihood by the instruction of youth. They would then be under the jurisdiction of the ecclesiastical council of their parish, whose duty it would be to watch over their general conduct, and over the doctrines which they taught.

It is not very easy to make a farmer, and, above all, an African one, listen to reason; or to convince him of any thing, when he has a directly contrary idea in his head. Our excellent chief was therefore obliged to talk for two hours successively, before he could succeed in convincing these people of the necessity and justice of his decision. The poor missionary, in the mean time, remained in the outer room, in a state of such anguish, that any one, by his deportment, might have supposed his life depended on the determination. His wife, who had been housekeeper to the over-pious minister of Roodezand, every now and then handed him a drop of cordial, and endeavoured, by all the means in her power, to comfort him: she observed, among other things, how much reason there was to rejoice that he had found more favour in the sight of God, than among hard-hearted men; and that a truly pious Christian might well despise the persecutions of an earthly power, when he was certain of the favour of his Heavenly Judge.

The conclusion of the matter was, that Foster remained quietly in the country, without thinking of undertaking a journey among the heathens, without renouncing his salary, and without the government, who found in

his weakness a sufficient guarantee against his doing any harm, thinking it worth while to interfere in the matter. As Roodezand became soon after the seat of a Landdrost, the latter had to maintain many struggles against the pretensions of the missionaries. The popular opinion, however, remained decidedly on their side, and it is scarcely to be conceived, what an effect their influence has ultimately had upon the character of the people, and the happiness of the country. It is not to be denied, that it would be greatly for the advantage of the Christian cause, if the missionaries sent out were men of strong and cultivated minds, and free from all low interested views. Such would be very likely to find more satisfaction in their intercourse with the wholly rude savages, and in making exertions to civilize and humanize them, than in leading a life of absolute indolence among colonists half cultivated, and full of prejudices in various ways.

We here closed the great circle which was to be made in our journey, and passed the night at the same place, *Die Liebe*, where we had stopped on the second of December. At noon, the following day, after having passed by the pretty water-fall,\* which was almost entirely dry, we arrived once more at Roodezand. The minister of the parish, and some of the principal inhabitants, came out to meet us, at half an hour's distance from the town. We stayed there some days; during which, I ascended the Witseberg again, accompanied by Captain Alberti, and some others of our party.

From hence we set off, on the fifteenth of March, on our return to the Cape Town. The road lies through the Roodezand kloof, as it is called, a narrow romantic valley, through which the little Berg river, a stream formed by the collected body of streams, which water the valley of Roodezand, runs into the plain, where it unites itself with the great Berg river. It is but very lately that a carriage road has been made through this kloof; and though it might be kept up extremely well with very little trouble, it is much neglected. The road formerly lay over the mountain by the side of this pass; and all cattle which are driven loose, must still go by the mountain road, that the new one may not be damaged by them. Whoever makes use of the kloof road, pays a certain toll for every waggon; which toll goes to

---

\* See part II. page 144. of the English translation.

the overseer appointed to keep the road in repair. 'Tis strange enough that the money thus collected is farmed out for ever to one particular family; and it is for this reason that the road is left in so indifferent a state. The kloof is a good half hour long, and is full of trees and shrubs. In leaving it, we are surprized by seeing, in the plain, a fine and wholly insulated pillar of sandstone: in the distance are to be descried the Honigberg, Riebek's Casteel, and the Paardeberg. The whole country assumes from hence a much more smiling appearance; the eye wanders over a region, which, compared with the rest of the colony, may be called highly cultivated. To the right of the entrance to the kloof, the road leads to the district of the Four-and-twenty rivers. Directly in front, towards the west, lie the Zwartland and Saldanha bay, and towards the south, at the foot of the mountains, are Stellenbosch and the Cape Town.

We passed very near a pretty large lake, now almost dried up, which bears the name of the *Vogelvalley* (bird valley), because in the rainy season such numbers of water-fowl, particularly flamingos, albatrosses, and of the sea-birds, resort thither to seek food, that the place is sometimes almost covered with them. Each separate height of the great range of hills, which we had now to our left, has its particular name. There are several footways over them to Goudinie and the Bosjesveld, the two principal of which are called the Eland's kloof, and Du Toit's kloof. A hill, which stretches from the great chain very far into the plain, is called the Green-hill, and justly so, since it is every where covered with verdure. The declivity is so gentle, that the rain-water does not run off quick, and carry away the soil with it; but rather sinks in, and nourishes it: this gives it a very striking and marked distinction from the naked heights around. The country all about is abundantly watered by springs, which flow from chasms in these mountains, so that it is extremely fertile in corn, wine, and fruit of various sorts. The neighbourhood of the Cape Town lightens the taxes very much, and excites the industry of the inhabitants. As they live by agriculture and horticulture, they keep no more cattle than are requisite for cultivating their lands, and transporting the products of them to other parts; each single domain is, therefore, by no means so extensive as on the other side of the hills: they are almost all half fiefs—that is to say, they are only half an hour in diameter, instead of being a whole hour; and only half the usual quit-rent is paid for them. There are even many freeholds here, which comprize no more than sixty rhenish acres

of land, the entire uncircumscribed possession of which has been obtained from the government either by purchase or by grant. Such freeholds bear, very naturally, a much superior aspect to the mere fiefs, since not a spot within this small space is left uncultivated. The very circumstance of their being so confined, as to the quantity of ground, is a reason why they can be much better attended to than more extensive premises. Besides, wherever such purchases have been made, the purchaser has taken care that his sixty acres shall be all land capable of cultivation; whereas, in the fiefs, particularly in the more remote ones, there may perhaps, in a great extent of country, be no more than thirty acres of real good soil: the rest is pasture, and by no means fit for use at all seasons of the year.

The proprietor of a freehold, moreover, knows well that he is working both for himself and his heirs, and that every improvement made in the property enhances its value to himself and to them: on the contrary, every time the fiefs are to be let anew, the government has a right to take advantage of any thing which may have been done, in the way of improvement, by the holders of them. At the same time it must be acknowledged, that this is a right which has never hitherto been exercised without paying the person by whom the improvements were made, an additional sum over and above the price which he had given for the farm on entering upon it. From hence it will be seen, that the case is the same with these fiefs, as with the inheritance of fiefs in Europe. An idea had been suggested to convert all the fiefs into freeholds; and it was thought that this would be a means of exciting greater industry among the cultivators. The idea was, however, rejected as inexpedient, partly on the ground of the considerations above related, and partly for other reasons, on the examination of which I shall not presume to enter. It would, perhaps, be a more desirable measure, by degrees to divide the large fiefs as they fall in, especially those in the most fertile parts of the country, into small freeholds. There would then be as many places to offer to sale as there are portions of land of sixty acres each, well supplied with water, and capable of cultivation, on a fief of perhaps thirty thousand acres; and the rest might remain as common land to the collective body of purchasers. It is almost self-evident that such an arrangement would be suited to the increasing population of the country, were it not that the unfortunate idea has been adopted of extending the boundaries of the colony by new settlements in the Caffre country, and upon the Orange river.

## CHAP. XXXV.

*Waggon-makers' Valley.—French Refugees settled on the Berg River.—The Village of Paarl.—The Paarl Mountain.—Drakenstein.—Franschehoek.—Illness and Death of the Author's Friend, C. H. Leiste.—Burgersdrift on the Berg River—the Author near being drowned there.—Stellenbosch.—Hottentots'-Holland.—Arrival of the Party at the Cape Town.*

WE passed the night at the northern foot of the Green-hill, at a place called the Green-valley. The next morning we arrived at one of the most delightful spots in the country, known by the name of the Waggon-makers' valley. Under this name is comprehended the whole circle of farms and freeholds, lying within the recess between the south side of the Green hill and the great chain from which it projects. The district is abundantly supplied with water, and is one of the most fertile and best-cultivated spots in the country; even in Stellenbosch and Hottentots'-Holland, the slopes are not so thickly scattered over with habitations as here. Very good wine is made in the valley; and several hundred cargoes of sweet oranges, lemons, bitter oranges, figs, and other fruits, are sent every year to the Cape Town. There are abundance of shrubs, particularly *protea*, among which the horses and oxen find wholesome and nourishing pasture the whole year round. From the sides of the hills, between Drakenstein and Franschhoek, issues the great Berg river, which winds at their feet, watering the valley of Jehoshaphat and the village of Paarl, before it takes a westerly direction towards that part of the coast where we crossed it at the commencement of our journey.

Both sides of the river are inhabited very much by the descendants of the French refugees, who were driven from their native country at the latter end of the seventeenth century, by the revocation of the edict of Nantes; and who sought a refuge in these waste and solitary vallies, for such they were at that time. Thus, among the names of the principal families, we hear those of Rousseau, De Villers, Joubert, Desmarests, Menard, Le Roux, Malan, Villon, Retif, Jourdan, Malherbe, &c. &c. Not a name belonging to the original

French settlers is lost, though a few of Dutch and German origin have mingled among them; but the language and customs of the mother country are wholly forgotten, and even the names are not retained in pure French: they are written and pronounced after the Dutch manner. The history of their descent, moreover, is retained only as a general tradition; but not any of the minuter circumstances attending this migration of their ancestors are now to be retraced. In their features, in their figure, in their whole deportment, nothing of the French national character is to be discerned: intermarriages among the families of Dutch, of Germans, and of Danes, have changed their nature entirely; like all other settlers here, they are become entirely Africans. By these people the country round was filled with names from the promised land, in memorial that they had sought here to find their Canaan: this is particularly the case with single mountains.

It was from hence that the religious sense diffused itself in so large a measure over the whole colony; and this sense it is which, during an entire century, has preserved these people from becoming wholly degenerate and savage. Although in many other parts it has taken the unfortunate direction, concerning which so much has been said, it has here maintained itself in nearly the true and genuine spirit of protestantism. The troubles excited in some parts by the exercise of devotion have here found no place: many complaints even were laid before the Commissary-General against the missionaries, that they had endeavoured to gain a footing in the country by exhibiting attested forms, the aim of which was to prove themselves persons of superior sanctity; and any one who presumed to doubt the genuineness of these forms, was immediately stigmatized as being ungodly and evil-minded. A person of the name of Tromp had gone so far, they complained, as to excite children to disobedience towards their parents; had even endeavoured to alienate wives from their husbands, urging, as a plea for thus poisoning their minds, that obedience was due to God much rather than to man. Whole families, in other parts of the colony, might be named, whose domestic comfort and happiness have been entirely destroyed through the intermeddling of these pretenders to piety.

At the village of Paarl, which has a very picturesque appearance as it is approached from the valley of Jehoshaphat, the Commissary-General and his train were welcomed with all proper ceremony by the Landdrost of Stellen-

bosch. The parsonage-house, being at this moment uninhabited, was immediately made ready for the illustrious guest; household furniture of all kinds was sent in, and a handsome dinner was prepared, at which all the principal persons of the place attended. The Commissary-General was then invited to see the new church: this structure was just finished, under the conduct of a very skilful architect, Major K uchler; and it is indeed one which would be an ornament to any town in Europe. The Commissary was at the same time solicited to procure an able and rational minister from Holland, as the parish had been for many years without any regular minister; and the parishioners were obliged to go even to Stellenbosch for all purposes of religion. Sometimes a preacher from Stellenbosch, or from the Cape Town, had come to perform the service there. The premises of this parsonage are among the most extensive, and the pleasantest that are to be found any where in the colony. One of the freeholds above mentioned has been appropriated to the purpose: the house is one of the best in the place, and there is an excellent orchard, extremely well kept up: a small avenue of oaks leads from the street up to the house. An institution for the education of boys is another thing well worthy of remark at this place: it is the undertaking of a German, by name Lindebaum. The pupils, among whom are the sons of some of the first families at the Cape Town, are all in a spacious house with the master, and are instructed in religion, in the living languages, in history, geography, and some of the arts. This is the only institution of the kind in the whole country.

The village of Paarl consists of one long street, containing about fifty houses: the large spaces that intervene between the houses extend the street to the length of a short half hour. It runs along the eastern side of the Paarl mountain and the numerous springs that issue from this mountain; water the gardens and vineyards of the inhabitants abundantly; while not far below runs the great Berg river. This river separates the district of Paarl from the valley of Jehoshaphat, and from great and little Drakenstem: it has too little fall, and is too much swelled by the heavy rains in winter for its waters to be of much use in the fields and gardens. Yet two years after, in my last visit to this part of the country, I saw a work, which, as the single one of its kind in Southern Africa, well deserves to be mentioned. At a place behind the village the river spreads out to a great width; and when the

waters are low, as is the case during the whole summer, an island is left in the midst, which had already been long celebrated for its fertility, but which no one had ever thought of converting to any use, on account of its being constantly overflowed in winter. A citizen of Paarl, by name Meyer, a native of the country about Frankfort on the Maine, by means of strong and well-constructed dams and sluices, placed at either end of that arm of the stream which enclosed the island on the side nearest to the village, had succeeded in gaining all the land thus drained, which he had united with his garden that ran down to the street. The river is now entirely confined to the eastern bed; and what used to be the western, is converted into a large pond in the middle of the garden. Although this man was unfortunately interrupted in the midst of his career by an unusual overflow of the river, which broke down his dykes, he was not deterred from his purpose, but rather incited to proceed, only giving greater height and solidity to the works, that they might, in future, be better able to resist the force of the stream. By means of the sluices, he is able to carry the water of the river in any direction over his fields and gardens; thus the whole spot is rendered so fertile, and is in particular so well adapted to the cultivation of cotton, that he has no doubt of all the money expended upon the undertaking being amply repaid in eight or ten years.

Paarl, it is well known, has its name from a large bare round block of granite, lying naked upon the summit of the mountain, which every where else has a clothed and fertile appearance. This block received from the colonists the appellation of *the pearl* (paarl), as another smaller and angular block which lies near it is called *the diamond*. Both are seen plainly at the distance of two or three miles. Mr. Barrow, in the second chapter of his first part, gives an ample description of them, which is very much distorted in the German translation of his work—that of Leipsick, I mean. Great confusion is there made between the pearl itself, and the mountain; so that the reader is led to suppose the former represented as four hundred feet high, whereas it is only between thirty and forty feet, and at the utmost a hundred paces in circumference. Mr. Barrow is, however, himself guilty of a little mistake when describing *the pearl* as composed of quartz, feldspar, and mica, as being consequently granite, he presumes that this, and similar stones, have been formed in their places from a small kernel. The origin of this rock is certainly the

same as that of similar round masses which are formed from layers of clay and sandstone, adhering together, and which are often to be seen on the tops of other primitive mountains, as, for instance, the Brocken.

The valley of the Berg river is bounded by the Paarl Mountain, and the village of Paarl to the west; while, on the eastern side, it is enclosed by the much higher chain of mountains running from the north, parallel with the coast, and stretching even to False Bay. Over these mountains are the passes, already so frequently mentioned, of Pikenierskloof, Rodezandkloof, and Hottentots'-Holland kloof, which lead to those parts of the colony distinguished by the appellation of the countries beyond the mountains. The naked jagged summits of these mountains consist entirely of an iron sandstone, and from them flow numerous and abundant springs, to which the Waggon-makers' valley, great and little Drakenstein, Stellenbosch, and Hottentots'-Holland, owe their fertility. Between Paarl and Stellenbosch, a branch from these mountains stretches some miles into the plain, forming two angles with the mountains themselves, the northern of which is called Franschehoek, the French corner; the latter Donkerhoek, the dark corner. Through the former flows the Berg river; in the latter the Eerste river has its source, which runs thence, through Stellenbosch and the plain of the Cape, into False Bay.

In the country, on the upper part of the Berg river, that is to say, about Franschehoek, Drakenstein, Waggon-makers' valley, and Paarl, the colonists live chiefly by the cultivation of the vine and other fruits: from them are derived their principal articles of trade: they only cultivate corn, and breed cattle, sufficient for their domestic use. Although, according to European ideas, they cannot be accounted rich, for none are great capitalists, yet they have abundance of every thing which can render the physical life pleasant and comfortable. This appearance of plenty contributes equally with the aspect of the country itself, where the slopes are ever clothed with verdure, where farms, with their clean white-washed houses, their vineyards, their orchards, and their avenues of oaks, planted by the ancestors of the present owners with their own hands, are strewn every where around:—the appearance of plenty contributes not less than these objects, so pleasing to the eye, towards rendering a journey through this valley extremely delightful.

On the road from Paarl to Stellenbosch, we soon arrive at the heights above

mentioned, and from thence pass through a large extent of open country, not thickly inhabited, but producing a great deal of corn. In descending from these heights towards Stellenbosch, a very fertile domain is left on the right, which government retains in its own hands for the use of the cavalry horses. A great quantity of the best hay is made there, and it furnishes besides a plentiful supply of barley. This place is called *Klapmuts*, because the end of the height which stretches quite to this plain, with its spiral top, has some resemblance to the high-crowned hat which bears this name. Somewhat farther to the right lies Elsenburg, a farm celebrated for its fertility. It formerly belonged to a man by name Martin Milch, a native of Memel, who, although he could neither read nor write, grew so rich that he was able to build the Lutheran chapel at the Cape Town, entirely at his own expence. Still farther, we pass near the estate called Nooitgedagt, whose former owner, J. G. Cloete, a brother of the proprietor of Constantia, is among the richest private persons in the colony. He had a hundred and eight slaves in his service here, a greater number than was ever possessed by any other individual. From this circumstance alone, some idea may be formed of the extent and quality of the property. Here the Commissary-General was received by a company of cavalry, composed of the citizens, being one of several bodies of the like description, who, during our absence, had been organized by the government throughout the country, with the view of assisting in the defence of it, if attacked by the English. Farther on, he was met by the Landdrost and other magistrates of Stellenbosch, with a detachment of dragoons, sent by the Governor. Accompanied by these, and greeted by the usual salutations of honour, he made his solemn entry into Stellenbosch.

I myself had, in this latter part of the journey, with the permission of our chief, separated from the company, in consequence of having been met in the Green valley by a messenger from my friend and fellow-countryman, Leiste, entreating me to visit him at his estate in the district of the Four-and-twenty rivers, and give him my advice for a long and painful illness, under which he was suffering. I very readily complied with his wish, and set off immediately for Gelukwaard, where I arrived at noon the next day. But, alas! it was not in the power of my art to be of any use in an evil of so long standing. I made him another visit after my return to the Cape Town, in a month from

which time I had the melancholy task to perform of sending an account of the death of this worthy man to his connexions in Germany. Seldom does any one die more universally lamented by all who knew him. He was a pattern to others for understanding, for industry, and good economy: his dependents lost in him a mild, kind-hearted father; his near neighbours, a true friend and intelligent adviser: the remembrance of his virtues will long live in every heart. Though his fortune led him to pass his life far from his native country, yet that country was ever dear to him; and his memory deserves to be cherished in it; 'tis therefore that I could not forbear erecting a slight monument to him in my book.

On my return I took a somewhat nearer road, that I might, if possible, cross the Berg river before night was closed in, taking the direction of the well-known ford, called Burgersdrift. I was mounted upon a spirited African hunter, and went on very fast, in the short uninterrupted gallop so much in use here. It was nevertheless night when I arrived at the river; and in crossing it I was very near losing my life. In the midst of the stream, where it is the deepest, and the current the strongest, are some large stones, well known to those who are in the habit of frequently crossing the stream, but not so well known to me. At these my horse stumbled, and threw me over his head into the water. I was instantly carried away by the rapidity of the stream, and might probably have been drowned, but that a slave, whom my friend Leiste had sent with me as a guide, sprung after me, and catching hold of me at the fortunate moment, set me upon my legs. My horse was so well-trained, that he waited patiently for me on the other side of the river; and a person, by name John Roux, who lived near, received me hospitably into his house, gave me dry clothes, a supper, and a night's lodging, taking care that my own things should be ready for me to put on the next morning, that I might continue my journey to Stellenbosch. I often crossed this ford afterwards, and have several times found it so empty, that the danger was to be seen very clearly, with the extreme difficulty of avoiding it to one who is not thoroughly acquainted with the spot. Notwithstanding the facility with which these stones might be removed in the dry season, nobody seems ever to have thought of such an improvement. Such negligence shewn in all trifling matters of police, which, from their locality, are without the sphere of government, manifest in the most striking manner the indolence and want of

public spirit that reigns among the colonists. After a short stay at Paarl, on the Sunday at noon, I rejoined my party at Stellenbosch; they had arrived there just twenty-four hours before me. They had been attending public worship, at which a solemn thanksgiving was offered up, for the happy conclusion of their journey.

Stellenbosch is rather a small town than a village. It consists of three long straight streets, running parallel with each other, and several cross streets intersecting them at right angles. The houses are all spacious, and substantially built, though only thatched with straw. Each street resembles an avenue, since, on both sides before the houses, are large shady oaks, which are almost as old as the place itself, and that was built at the very beginning of the former century, though it was wholly burnt down in 1710. A similar accident menaced it but a few months before our arrival. In December, 1805, a fire broke out at night in several different places, and before the flames could be extinguished, twenty houses were laid in ashes. On a strict investigation, it was discovered that this arose from a plot among five or six slaves, men and women, who confessed it to have been done in the hope of being able to escape, amid the confusion, with a rich booty. These unhappy wretches were soon after, according to the rigour of the law, some burnt to death, some consigned to the axe of the executioner. The damage done by the fire was estimated at a hundred and fifty thousand Dutch guelders. The number of houses left standing was about eighty; among them that of the Landdrost was the most distinguished: in it is a hall, in which all public meetings are held, and here also are deposited the public archives. The church was built in 1722, and though not equal in size to the churches at Roodezand and Paarl, is no way their inferior in point of architecture.

The number of inhabitants at Stellenbosch, including slaves and *Hot-tentots*, is estimated at a thousand. This place has the same evil which is common in all the little country towns in Europe, that among the middling class of citizens, and here, that is at the same time the lowest, little true innate ease of circumstances is to be found. Every one carries on, with his trade, some portion of agriculture and horticulture; and as there are none who can be called actually poor, who labour for hire, they are obliged to have slaves, who do not by any means pay the expence of keeping them. This singular situation of the townspeople in southern Africa will be better ex-

plained by what follows. In the Cape Town the evil is less urgent, since there the intercourse of foreign commerce, and the marine, open various sources of support to numbers of persons. But in the country towns, people live only by each other, and as matters stand, any one would be almost perplexed to determine whether the country about Stellenbosch is too thinly or too thickly peopled. If it were more populous, the value of every thing would be raised, and the mechanic would have more ample employment; were it less so, each one might extend his domains, and live entirely as a colonist, as was formerly the case. Its great misfortune lies in the disproportion between the products and the number of consumers. The latter are apparently too few; yet, on the other hand, there is a deficiency of working people to bring the products to perfection, and afford them at so low a price as to admit the possibility of their ever becoming objects for a foreign market. Suppose the exports to exceed the imports several hundred per cent. and the number of consumers not to be increased by the government sending a considerable garrison, were the East India traders not so ready to take off the superfluities, it would be melancholy indeed for the colony. The distance of the possession, the annihilation of the marine, would be sufficient, in a few months, to occasion an universal bankruptcy. But this is not the place to enlarge upon such a subject. The few remarks made will suffice to explain how a town, in which there is no external trade, and no garrison,—which depends on its internal trade alone, must in this country always be very poor; and thus a sufficient reason is adduced why no towns, scarcely even any villages of note, are to be found throughout the colony.

Strangers, who in the course of their longer voyages, make any stay at the Cape, seldom fail to visit Stellenbosch; and people of property at the Cape Town also, in the fine season of the year, often make parties of pleasure to this fertile spot. Some of the citizens have been induced, from these circumstances, to fit up houses for the accommodation and entertainment of strangers. People frequenting these houses are not, however, received in the same manner as at inns in Europe; they are treated rather as guests; that is to say, they do not call for things, and pay for every thing singly, but live with the family after their fashion, and pay at their departure so much by the day. The general price is three dollars a day for each person; and for this sum they are well supplied with every thing, European

wines excepted; these, if required, are paid for separately. An Englishman, by name Caldwell, a jovial, well-behaved man, and a Hessian, by name Wolfrum, keep the best houses of this description. Both are surrounded by agreeable families, with whose society the guests cannot fail to be pleased.

The Commissary-General availed himself of our stay at Stellenbosch, to make a little excursion of a few hours into the neighbouring district of Hottentots'-Holland. He visited several very large farms; which, indeed, exceeded in fertility, and in their pleasing appearance, any we had yet seen in the colony. Many of them are among those which were laid out by the Governor Simon Van der Stell, the founder of Stellenbosch, so justly celebrated in many ways;—the man who first introduced the cultivation of the vine and various sorts of fruits into the colony,—who sent fruit-trees, and seeds of various kinds, to all parts of the world: here, therefore, are still to be seen, many sorts of plants which are not to be found at all, or at least, very rarely, in any other part of the colony. Among these may be mentioned the camphor-tree: in one place there are eight or ten, which were all planted by the Governor himself, and which are equal in height and size to the largest poplars. But, alas! they seem declining with old age, and no attempts to procure successors to them by layers have yet succeeded. The cultivators, however, do not know how to turn this tree to its proper use; and it is therefore possible, that the attempts they have made to propagate it, were not accompanied with much diligence or anxiety about the matter. We were regaled at breakfast with a fruit which I had not yet seen in the colony, the delightful berries of the *arbutus unedo*, called here *arbiters*. The wine of this country is most excellent; many sorts, when eight or ten years old, are preferred by connoisseurs to Constantia. The houses are large, and conveniently distributed; some are built by no means without taste. In every thing there is an appearance of affluence; and if the estate of some may be much encumbered with debts, this would never be suspected in seeing their houses and tables. For the rest, the people collectively have all a certain degree of education and cultivation, and some may justly be considered as among the most truly estimable in the whole colony.

We now ascended Hottentots'-Holland kloof, the nearest and the most frequented way from the Cape Town to Zwellendam, and the whole eastern part of the colony. This road is, therefore, kept in better order than that

of any other mountain pass, over which we had yet travelled. In those who have not seen any other, the pass may well excite astonishment and admiration; it can excite none in those who have seen the more sublime and tremendous places of the kind which are to be found in the grand mountainous regions of the interior. But since most travellers commence their wanderings by going over this mountain road, in the accounts of their travels the description given of it is diffuse, and the dangers of crossing it are represented as great; while the same traveller passes slightly over places beyond all comparison more formidable and fatiguing, only because he has become accustomed to such scenes, till they cease to make a deep impression upon him.

The course of this road has been many times changed, and the old cattle road is not yet entirely overgrown, though it has been disused nearly thirty years. In some places of the latter the rain has made deep holes, which would be very dangerous to the traveller in descending the hill, should he happen to miss his way. The highest point of the mountain in that part where the road lies, is about two thousand feet above the level of the sea, and the view from it is wonderfully fine. Turning towards the west, we see the richly cultivated country of Hottentots'-Holland directly at our feet. These green fields separate the wide desert of the sandy isthmus from the peninsula of the Cape. The Table Mountain and the Lion's Head, as beheld from hence, have a very picturesque appearance. The Devil's Mountain, lying below the Table Mountain, its extent cannot be accurately discerned; its northern declivity borders the Table Valley. With good glasses, or in fine clear weather with the naked eye, the ships at anchor in Table Bay may be plainly distinguished. Farther towards the south, are to be seen the gradually declining mountains of the peninsula; the eye can even follow them almost to the Cape of Good Hope, properly so called; while the white houses of Simon's Town are clearly discernible. To the west, the widely spread False Bay runs up to a vast depth between the peninsula of the Cape and the mountains on this side, forming, with its islands and rocks, especially in winter, when the returning ships put in there, a very noble spectacle. Towards the east, the eye roves over the mountains, tracing in many different parts the road to Zwillingdam. The

horizon is closed on this side by the summit of the mountain at Bavians kloof and the river Zonder-end.

In the heat of the day we again lay by, and rested at an opulent farm belonging to one William Morkel. According to the custom of the country, we had here a most splendid dinner: a principal feature in it was great variety of sea-fish, drawn from the abundant stores in this way furnished by False Bay. This gave us new cause of admiration at the abundant resources for supplying the physical wants of our nature; which might, with a little industry, be derived from this truly bountiful spot. In the evening we returned to Stellenbosch, and on the twenty-third of March proceeded from thence to the Cape Town, where we arrived nearly at the close of day, after a wearisome journey over the sandy plain of the Cape.

General Janssens, accompanied by the principal officers of the place, both civil and military, received the Commissary-General at about half an hour's distance from the town. On their arrival at the castle, a salute of twenty-one guns announced the solemn entry of the chief magistrate, after a successful journey of nearly four hundred miles,\* and an absence of a hundred and sixty-seven days.

---

\* German miles, making nearly two thousand English.

END OF PART THE FOURTH.

## PART V.

## JOURNEY TO ZWELLENDAM AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Preparations for War at the Cape.—Plan of Defence formed by the Governor.—Occasion of the Author's present Journey.—Meyburgh's Farm on the Eerste River.—Captain Morkel's Farm.—Hottentots'-Holland Kloof.—Plants growing there.—Palmiet River.—An Englishman, by name Partridge, drowned there.—Houhoek.—The Bot River.*

DURING the time we were absent, which was nearly six months, every thing at the Cape Town had assumed a very warlike aspect: the Governor had with unwearied zeal used all possible exertions for defending the colony to the best of his power against an attack from the enemy. Since, by order of the Batavian government at home, the whole twenty-third battalion was to be sent, under the command of Colonel De Lega, to strengthen the garrison at Batavia, General Janssens endeavoured to supply this important loss, by organizing a battalion of Hottentots after the European manner, and by arming the citizens and colonists. Besides this, all people at the Cape Town who had come hither from Europe as soldiers, were taken again into the service; several auxiliary corps, as they were called, infantry as well as artillery, were also formed for the purpose of lightening in some degree the severe duty of the garrison: this was scarcely two thousand strong. At our return, we found these newly enrolled corps already in their uniforms, and going through their exercise every day; yet the winter months, those that are such in this country, of 1804, had begun to set in before they were all in complete activity, and in a state entirely to fulfil their respective destinations.

In the meantime, we remained wholly without information respecting the

plans of the English government with regard to the Dutch possessions in India. It almost appeared as if the menaced invasion of England by France, and the strength of the French and Dutch in the Indian seas, which was not inconsiderable, deterred them at present from thinking seriously of any expedition against these possessions. Notwithstanding this, an attack must necessarily be expected sooner or later, and it was expedient that the delay arising from these or any other causes should be used to the best advantage. It was also to be expected that the attack, when made, would be with an overwhelming force. Above all things, their excellent, well equipped, and well manned ships were to be feared, since there was nothing to oppose them but batteries very incompetent to withstand their force. The weak situation of the Cape Town was another subject of deep regret, and gave the most serious cause for apprehension; since, if a landing were once effected on the western coast of the colony, it was impossible for the most determined bravery to make an effectual resistance. It was, therefore, exceedingly desirable, in order to be prepared in the best manner possible against such an event, to seek out some point, where, in case of adverse events, a small force might be able to make a stand, and where all possibility of assistance from the fleet would be precluded. The fate of the whole colony would not then be left entirely dependent on the conquest of the Cape Town: the possession of that town might, on the contrary, be rendered an incumbrance to the enemy, if a position were taken, by means of which their communication with the interior of the colony was cut off, and they were consequently deprived of their supplies of food. By Degrandprè, and others who were experienced in all matters relating to the art of war, and who had well considered the situation of the Cape Town under this point of view, the chain of mountains about Hottentots'-Holland, and the pass over them, had been already suggested as a very favourable spot for the purpose. On a more accurate examination, General Janssens, who went himself several times to inspect the ground, thought the situation so well suited to the purpose, that he at length determined to make this pass, Hottentots'-Holland kloof, the point which should be kept open for defying the enemy's might, in case of retreat being rendered necessary.

Many objects were, however, to be attended to in the prosecution of this plan. Above all things, care must be taken that the little army, when it had

taken possession of its strong situation, should not fail in supplies of food and ammunition. The preparing of magazines, therefore, on the other side of the mountains, was a very important object, but it was one, the accomplishment of which must unavoidably be attended with great difficulty from the slender produce of the last harvest. It was not, however, absolutely hopeless, that by timely care, and a cautious perseverance, these difficulties might be lessened, while the better harvest, of which there was now a prospect, would, if time was allowed by the enemy, entirely remove them.

To fix on a proper situation for the proposed magazines, and to make all other necessary arrangements, it was expedient that some person of confidence and judgment should be sent into the country; one who should be well instructed in all the Governor's views, who would have a proper respectability in the eyes of the colonists, and who should be authorised to give the requisite directions in his name. No one was judged more proper in every respect to be deputed for the purpose, than Captain Paravicini di Capelli, who was Aid-de-Camp to the Governor, and had accompanied him in his journey into the Caffre country. He was therefore appointed to the office, and received his instructions from the Governor in the latter days of the month of August, 1804, with full powers to act in his name. Two officers of superior talents, Captains Verkouteren and De Labat, of the dragoon squadron, who, till then, had always remained at the Cape Town, were appointed to accompany him, that they might acquire some knowledge of a country, which eventually might become the theatre of war. To them was also added a very brave and skilful officer of artillery, Lieutenant Meier, as inspector of the laboratories and powder magazines.

Ever since my return to the Cape Town, during the cold and moist season, which is the time when in this country vegetable nature is in its highest glory, I had employed myself very much in collecting and drying plants; almost all my leisure hours had been devoted to this favourite occupation. Accompanied by my pupil, and my worthy friend Polemann, every Sunday I made some botanical excursion. My principal places of resort for this purpose were the sandy plain of the Cape, the chasms among the mountains, the western slope of the Table Mountain, which is particularly rich in plants, and the country about Camps Bay: from none of these spots did I ever return without a bountiful supply for my herbarium. Three times did I

ascend to the top of the Table Mountain : once I accompanied my patron, the Commissary-General, to Simon's Bay, and on other occasions visited the country of the Steenberg (Stone hills), the heights of Constantia, and the beautiful valley that leads from thence to Hout Bay. Thus, in four months, I had collected all the most beautiful specimens which vegetable nature produces in the peninsula, in plants of the lily kind, and in the rich tribes of *protea*, *erica*, *struthiola*, *oxalis*, &c. &c. : it was natural, therefore, that I should now be desirous of extending my botanical wanderings to the other side of the isthmus. The present season was, of all others, the most favourable for this purpose, since the months of September and October are precisely those in which the shrubs and plants, on the other side of the mountains, are ornamented with their beautiful flowers in the highest perfection, whereas, about the Table Mountain, they were beginning to fade away. I was consequently very easnest to accompany these officers ; and General Janssens, who was always most obligingly anxious to promote, in every possible way, my desire of becoming more intimately acquainted with the natural history of the country, who was no less desirous to embrace every occasion of binding me still more closely to him, readily gave permission for my joining the party, desiring only that his son, my pupil, might be my companion.

We set off from the Cape Town on the second of September, and crossed the sandy plain of the Cape in an easterly direction. About noon we reached the justly-celebrated farm of Philip Meyburgh on the Eerste river, where we rested for some time during the great heat of the day. This farm is much visited by people who make some stay at the Cape, in their way to or from India, as they are thus furnished with an opportunity of acquiring some idea of the mode of life led by the colonists. It is indeed well suited to the purpose. The owner, who is a very hospitable man, keeps, besides the numerous servants and slaves retained to cultivate his lands, a number of mechanics, some slaves, some free men, by whom every thing wanted for his household, whether of cloaths, furniture, implements for husbandry, or tools of any other kind, are made upon the spot ; and while the neighbourhood of the Cape Town is very convenient to him for the sale of his productions, he can dispense with purchasing any thing from thence. Nay, farther, his near neighbours, who have not all these conveniences about them, often

send things to him to be made, or hire some of his slaves to work at their own houses, as masons, as smiths, as waggon-wrights, as cabinet-makers, as tailors, &c. &c. Such an institution, wherever it is to be found, generally serves for most of the farms near it; but there are few where the works are executed in the same perfection. In the remoter regions of the colony, as I have mentioned in one of the former parts of my work, this patriarchal kind of establishment is more frequent, because there the population being composed of small societies, distant from each other, renders only a certain degree of cultivation attainable. Here it is the effect of industry rather than of necessity, and is converted into a profitable branch of economy.

Besides all this, Meyburgh has performed several essential services to the colony. Five and twenty years ago he was in possession of several cattle-places; and lived for a time at Graaff Reynett, before this place became a village, and was erected into the seat of a drosty. It was principally by his advice that Governor Van der Graaff determined on the erection of this new drosty; and the whole was laid out after a plan which he sketched. More than forty years ago, Meyburgh, as a youth, made several long journeys beyond the boundaries of the colony: among others, he examined the whole course of the Orange river. On this journey, many particulars of which he now related to us, he and his few companions lived, for several months together, on nothing but the tallow of sea-cows; and went through the greatest hardships and dangers. All he related to us respecting this country excited anew in me the utmost curiosity to visit it myself, and strengthened my resolution to spare no efforts for obtaining the fulfilment of my wishes.

Captain Paravicini had a long conversation with this very intelligent man respecting the object of his present journey; and if, in the sequel, the views of the Governor were proceeding prosperously towards their completion, it was principally to be ascribed to the hints furnished by Meyburgh. The great scarcity of corn did indeed throw powerful obstacles in the way: this was, however, thought of in sufficient time to be somewhat obviated, by sending into the remoter districts for a supply; and a year and half later, when the overpowering attack of the English was actually made, no hindrance to keeping possession of this strong position for a longer time was found in the want of stores.

From all that has been said relative to Meyburgh's farm, it will be justly

inferred, that the inhabitants of these parts, lying not very remote from the Cape Town, live much more active and agreeable lives than those led by the distant colonists beyond the mountains. The women in these families are, in many instances, and that in no slight degree, better bred than the women of the Cape Town : they are also commonly much more amiable, and that principally from not having an equally high idea with the Town ladies of their own charms. From living in the country, there reigns, besides, a much greater simplicity and modesty in their whole demeanour. At the same time, they are instructed in every branch of domestic economy necessary for forming good wives ; and have, for the most part, an adequate knowledge of African husbandry, without being like the girls of the distant parts, mere peasants ; or, as has been especially remarked of those who inhabit the countries where the prevailing occupation is the breeding of cattle, where, consequently, they are unaccustomed to any hard work, sinking into habits of sloth and indolence. Here we find them constantly busied, either with household affairs or needle-work ; and it is no uncommon sight to see all the women of the house, mother, daughters, and female slaves, collected together in the cool apartment at the back of the house, sewing, knitting, or executing several kinds of fine ornamental works. Here the daughters and nieces of our host were employed in a very neat and clean kind of occupation, weaving platted straw for making hats and bonnets, from the wheat-stalks, whitened by being laid in the water. Some of them were arrived at such dexterity in this kind of work, that they assured us they had made a great deal of money by selling their platted straw to the English, when they had possession of the colony ; and they added, that they continued, at that time, to send a great deal of it to the milliners at the Cape Town. The Cape straw is considered as peculiarly well suited to this kind of work, from its being so particularly white and pliable ; and upon the first samples of it sent to England, large orders for a supply were immediately received.

In the afternoon we proceeded on our way towards the mountains of Hot-tentots'-Holland ; and the more we ascended, the more fertile and the better cultivated did we find the country. In the sandy plains about the Cape Town, excepting various sorts of *mesembryanthemum*, few plants are to be seen, only some from the species *tetragonia*, *zygophyllum*, and *polygala*, with single plants of the *gladiolus plicatus*, and *antholyza plicata* : these, with some

sorts of the *lily tribe*, are the only plants which come forth from the sands; they commonly flower immediately after the first rains in June and July. On the hills we were now ascending, every thing, on the contrary, was at this time most beautifully in flower. A number of the shrubby sorts of *protea* were scattered in little copses over the slopes, on which the long-tailed honey-bird was every where to be seen, settled at the edges of the flowers, in order to suck, with their long and slender bills, the honey from the bottom of the cups. Between these little copses were abundance of *garteria* and *gnidia*, with heath plants, and the tenderer kinds of *lily*; to which may be added the smaller species of *ixia*, of *gladiolus*, of *hypoxis*, and *lachenalia*. I particularly observed two sorts of the *gladiolus*, known here under the names of *kalkoentje* and *bamaantje*, which are held in high esteem from the aromatic smell they afford, and which seem hitherto to have escaped the attention of botanists, although they are by no means rare in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town.\*

A mild spring evening increased, in no small degree, our enjoyment of the beauties here presented by nature, and cheered us on our way: that way lay by several pleasant and well-conditioned farms. From the heights we had at intervals fine views over the widely-extended False Bay, and the chain of mountains which terminates in the Cape of Good Hope, properly so called. Behind this chain we saw the sun sink just as we arrived, highly delighted with the varied beauties presented to us, and amid the charms of very pleasant conversation, at the house of Captain William Morkel. This title our new host derived from being the captain of a company of citizen-cavalry; and he received us as brethren in arms, and most welcome guests. Evident

---

\* Professor Wildenow, who, three years ago, undertook to examine my little collection of plants, gave to these the name of *gladiolus papillonaceus*. It is my intention hereafter to describe them, with an hundred and eighty other sorts of plants, which are in my *herbarium*, more accurately: this will be done in a little work under the title of *Spicilegium Floræ Capensis*, which is already more than half prepared for publication. To this book I refer the botanical part of my readers for a more ample explanation of these, and several other new plants, which are here only named. The greater part of my readers will readily excuse me, that, in the present work, I confine myself merely to giving a general idea of the character of vegetable nature here in the most beautiful season of the year, with the proper situations of many sorts of plants peculiar to the country.

affluence, unconstrained hospitality, and rural simplicity, placed us at our ease in a moment: we seemed as if perfectly at home, and thought ourselves, therefore, so much the more obliged to these worthy people. We were sumptuously entertained, with an ever-increasing appearance of good-will towards our whole company. My young companions, all of them pleasant, agreeable men, full of frolick and fun, sought, by all the means in their power, to prepare an entertainment for our hosts. Lieutenant Meier, the oldest of the company, was the person to whose lot it fell to afford the principal source of this entertainment. He was a man of the most perfect benevolence, and endowed with a sound understanding, if not cultivated to the highest degree, who therefore willingly gave into the harmless jokes of the rest, well assured that they meant no harm, and had the sincerest friendship for him. He happened to have been born in a town in Holland, the inhabitants of which in former times, as in Germany, the ancient citizens of *Schilda* and *Schoppenstadt*, had the reputation of not being richly gifted on the score of understanding, and respecting whose blunders people are much in the habit of telling amusing stories. These stories Meier was to put into terms suited to the African ways and modes of thinking, that they might be rendered intelligible to our hosts, who had never heard of any thing like them. Nor did the narrator fail to humour the astonishment with which he saw his auditors impressed, by throwing in occasionally, with great naïveté, some appropriate confession, which so encreased their belief in the truth of what they heard, that at last all doubt vanished.—Nay, these same auditors at length enquired for new stories of the blunders made by these people, with the same interest and eagerness as an European enquires of voyagers for all the curious particulars he has observed among the inhabitants of New Holland and Otaheite. The good Madame Morkel, especially, could not enough express her astonishment that such extraordinary kind of men ever existed in Europe; and often applied to her husband to know whether he could have thought it. The perfect good-humour with which the joke was here both given and received, took off from it all the odium that often attaches to such rodomontade. 'Tis not without feelings of the deepest regret that I recur to this, and many other pleasant evenings spent with my companions among the colonists;—I say with regret, because the greater part of these companions are already in the grave, and to many of them the plea-

sant hours which we passed on this journey were the last moments of happiness they ever experienced.

On the following morning, Captain Morkel conducted us to the foot of Hottentots'-Holland kloof, and supplied us with fresh oxen for our baggage, which had been sent hither from the Cape Town. We then began to ascend the mountain road, which goes for a while straight towards the top; but for the latter part of the way takes an oblique direction towards the rugged wall of the mountain: over this latter it is carried by a zigzag road, cut with great art. How much did I find the appearance of these mountains changed since my first visit! The bushes, at that time cloathed only with dark and dried leaves, were now arrayed in the brightest green, and spread over with the loveliest flowers. The African bushes, when thus in full bloom, have a totally different appearance from the European. In our northern climate, the large trees, and most of the shrubs, bear flowers either merely white, or of some faint and feeble colour, the beauty of which cannot be seen without they are examined very near: under the bright heaven of Southern Africa, on the contrary, the greater degree of light and heat produces flowers of much larger forms, and brighter hues. The shrubby plants are here the greatest ornaments produced by vegetable nature. Gigantic heaths, for the most part covered with red flowers of all shades, several sorts of the slender *capraria*, *thesia*, *gnidia*, *podaliria*, *borbonia*, *aspalatha*, and *phylica*, all contributed their share towards ornamenting the spot. Besides these, and more numerous than all, were *protea*, of every form and description which belongs to this numerous class, and which are always to be distinguished by the silvery, and oftentimes woolly leaves, no less than by the large bunches in which the flowers expand themselves. All these gave, at the present moment, an indescribably beautiful appearance to the rich and fertile heights we were traversing.

The *protea*, indeed, occupy a very large share of these hills, and shade over the other plants. While the broad-leaved sorts of this tree, with umbelliferous flowers, and an undivided cup, as the *protea*, *scolymus*, *mellifera*, *conifera*, *strobilina*, *imbricata*, *saligna*, *argentea*, &c. love low grounds, and abound most in the clayey soils at the foot of the mountains, the smaller-leaved sorts, with separated flowers, which belong to the *pinnateæ* and *acerosæ*, come forth in these higher regions from the clefts in the rocks, and more especially

from the heaps of loose and broken masses of stone. The *protea sceptrum*, and the *lagopus*, were the sorts of which I saw the greatest abundance: the latter were, above all, striking to the eye, from the large stems of flowers which rose among the leaves at the end of every twig. Besides the *protea racemosa*, *incurva*, *comosa*, and *prolifera*, I found several species not less beautiful, though hitherto but little known. Among these, I recommend more particularly to the notice of any one who shall come after me, the *protea helvola* of Professor Wildenow, which is to be known by the beautiful brown of the cup, the pyramidal bunches of the flowers, and the numerously feathered leaves. Such new sorts I have discovered, upon a more accurate examination of my collection, to have been found almost solely upon these hills; and it appears to me very probable, that our systematical books as yet scarcely include half the species that actually exist of this very numerous tribe. I must add, that these mountains were examined by me with very particular assiduity. For the rest, it is somewhat remarkable that the *protea*, which grow on the hills of Hottentots'-Holland are not to be found on the Table Mountain, or the other heights of the Cape Peninsula; while, on the other hand, the celebrated *silver-tree* (*protea argentea*), and some other sorts, are produced only in this small peninsula, and in no other part of the world. It is further remarkable, that the hills, which lie somewhat more northwards by Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, and which are immediately connected with those of Hottentots'-Holland, have again their own appropriate species of *protea*, which do not grow in any other part.

Between these large shrubs are many smaller plants of the highest beauty, among which I must particularize the *erica petiverii*, with its fine yellow flowers and long brown anthers, the *erica piukenetii*, and the *elichrysum proliferum*. A considerable space is also covered with several sorts of *cliffortia*, for the most part the same that grow in the Table Valley, only with this difference, that here we found both sexes, whereas there, during the whole winter, we could find none but the female plants.

We at length reached the top of the hill, and were delighted with the glorious view above-described: this was exceedingly embellished by the scenery immediately around us, having, from the mildness of spring, assumed so cheering and lovely an aspect. Even here, in these higher regions of the air, all nature seemed to enjoy this mildness, and things, which at my former

visit appeared to me insignificant and dead, had now, from the enchanting verdure of the leaves, and the beautiful hues of the flowers, acquired an indescribable charm. The *erica banksii* was in amazing profusion, covering over large heaps of stones, its runners fastening themselves among the interstices. It seemed a doubt whether the length and thickness of these runners, or the innumerable quantity of the flowers lying upon the flat stones, were the most to be admired.

We were obliged to wait some time for the arrival of our baggage at the top of the hill. I left my impatient companions to go forwards, and stopped myself for the waggons, that the treasures which I collected, and which I was afraid to trust to the shaking of the horse, might be placed in security. I soon found ample reason to rejoice that I had done so, since the very first declivity presented me with such a number of new plants, that without the assistance of my slaves, I should never have been able to collect specimens of even the most important. Ten sorts of heaths, not to be found in the Table Valley, formed a part of this new prize: four of these I have ascertained, since my return, to be wholly new. Besides them, numbers of the most beautiful *elichrysa*, some *penae*, *borbonia*, *crotalaria*, *diosmea*, *gnidia*, &c. &c. presented themselves within the first hundred paces; and at every step I went, I was rejoiced with the sight of some fresh plant till then unknown to me. This eastern side of the hill is more naked than the western, and having a trifling inclination towards the north, the sun acts upon it with the greater power, driving all the moisture contracted during winter with so much force up to the plants, that their growth is more than commonly luxuriant. Collecting insects, at one time my most favourite occupation, I was here obliged partially to forego, since a whole day would have been necessary to obtain all I wanted, and our journey could not be delayed for such purposes. How often did I wish that some of my European friends had been with me, to share in this delicious banquet; nay, how glad should I have been, if my friends from the Cape Town only, who, for several months had been the companions of my botanical wanderings, had now partaken in my pleasures.

Farther down were many single shrubs, of which this valley seems to be the most chosen abode. Among them may be mentioned the *retzia spicata*, *tenaeca formosa*, *erica gnaphaloides* and *acuminata*, *protea erosa*, with many others equally beautiful and rare. I should weary the patience of my

readers were I but to give the names of all the plants I saw, and which will make this day one never to be erased from my memory. He alone can have an idea of the pleasure I experienced who has felt a serious longing to see a large collection of foreign plants, alive in their natural situations, disposed in picturesque groups, and flourishing in all the luxuriance of their proper unsophisticated nature.

From the hills which now lay to our left, flow at this time of the year several abundant streams, which in their course intersect the coasts of the valley between this place and the *Houhoek*. The first which is to be crossed is the most dangerous, on account of the muddy bottom, in which waggons or any thing loaded may easily sink. The ford has from very old times borne the name of Grietjesgat. Although stones and trunks of trees without end have been thrown in with the view of making a firmer bottom, all has hitherto been ineffectual: the mud constantly seems to accumulate above them. On account of the low sandy shores, no attempt has ever been made at throwing a bridge over; indeed, over other streams, where the banks are higher, and seem to offer a good foundation for a bridge, it has been found that the overflowings occasioned by heavy winter rains carried the bridges away, so that the foot only was left standing. This hole however is nearly dry in summer, and excepting in one small spot, may be forded conveniently.

About noon we reached a more considerable stream, called the Palmiet river. It has this name from the abundance of Palmiet reeds, *acorus palmita*, which grow about it; they are indeed common about all the streams in these parts. In winter and spring this river is very rapid, and not safe to be crossed without an experienced guide: this not merely from the rapidity of the current, but that here also the bottom is full of muddy holes, which are very dangerous if not avoided with the greatest care. A few years before, an English physician, by name Partridge, who would not be persuaded to take a guide, but thought he was sufficiently acquainted with the ford, paid for his imprudence with his life; nor were such examples very uncommon in former times. My companions, who preceded me, had on this account crossed the stream somewhat higher up, in a boat, leaving their horses to swim after them. Before we attempted to make the waggons go through, a Hottentot was sent to examine the depth, who said that all the things must be taken out of the waggons, or they would be entirely wetted. Excepting this trouble, and it

certainly was not a trifling one, the passage was performed very happily. I now followed my companions somewhat quicker, tracking them in the true African fashion by the impressions of the horses' feet on the hard soil, and towards evening found them a little out of the road, at a farm where we stopped for the night. When the waggons arrived, I employed the remainder of the evening in a closer examination of the treasures I had collected.

The corn here appeared but poor, and we learnt, with great concern, that there was very little prospect of a good harvest. The farmers had not been able to sow so much corn as the year before, because it was very late before the ground was sufficiently moistened by the rains to permit of its being sown; and because the oxen employed in ploughing, had, from the continued drought, been so scantily fed, that they had scarcely strength to work. 'Tis for this reason that the people here always wish the winter to set in early. If the rains begin in March and April, so that the oxen are ready to work in May and June, a tolerably plentiful harvest may be expected, let the summer, from September, be ever so dry. Perhaps here also may be found the reason why rye and oats never succeed very well in the colony, whereas the wheat and barley are particularly good, and, under favourable circumstances, yield most plentifully: another cause of this may possibly be found in the nature of the soil.

From hence it will appear obvious, that it is a very difficult thing for any one to form a decided judgment with respect to the fertility of a country in which they are only transitory visitors. At least, it would scarcely occur to an inhabitant of the north of Europe, that the hardness of the soil, and the weakness of the draught cattle, could have so important an influence upon the plenty or scarcity of the year. With us, the frost, and the moisture of spring, keep the soil always in a state fit for cultivation, while we have abundant resources for furnishing our cattle with a constant and plentiful supply of food. The country on the western side of these mountains, quite to the *Four-and-twenty rivers*, is therefore much better suited to the growing of corn, as the farmers can send their oxen at the beginning of the year to the coast, where the rains, according to the usual course of things, fall earlier; and where, particularly in the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay, they may almost always be sure of finding good pasture as soon as the west winds begin to blow. Many farmers have, therefore, a *cattle place* of their own on the coast;

others only send them thither for awhile, paying a sum agreed upon, according to the time they are to stay. For the rest, the coast is sandy, and, in other respects, little capable of cultivation.

The wants of the people in these parts were, alas ! much increased in the sequel, since the harvest of 1804 fell quite as short as that of the preceding year. Happily, the attention of the government was directed to this matter time enough to counteract the scarcity in a certain degree. As soon as the circumstance was known, several cargoes of rice were purchased, and every citizen of the Cape Town was limited to a certain weekly allowance of bread, according to the number of his family ; while every baker was restrained from having more corn in his possession than was necessary to supply his customers according to the regulation. In this manner the year 1805 was passed, under a positive scarcity of bread, so that at great entertainments the bread was wholly omitted, or else each guest brought his own with him. To avert like wants, or the possibility of even greater, preparations were made in the very same year for establishing large magazines in Muscle Bay and Algoa Bay, whither farmers, who had hitherto, on account of their distance from the Cape Town, and the expense of transport thither, grown very little corn, might now send any quantity they chose to produce, with a certainty of receiving the same price for it as in the town corn-market. The utility of such an institution must be so obvious to every one who knows the country, that it is most probable the plan would be adopted and carried to perfection by the English.

On the fourth of September, very early in the morning, we proceeded on our journey, and soon reached a steep and rugged chasm, which, winding among dark and barren heights, leads to the plain of the Bot river. This pass is called the *Houdhoek*, or more commonly *Houhoek*\*—the *Halting-pass*; because from its length and ruggedness, the traveller is detained a long time in going through it ; or because, in the most difficult and dangerous parts it is necessary for the drivers of the waggons to hold them very fast. This is also called the *Great Houhoek*, to distinguish it from a smaller pass of the same name, which lies an hour more to the north, and is still more rugged and

---

\* Not *Houwhoek*, the *Hollowed Strait*, as some writers have it ; nor the *Oudehoek*, *Old Strait*, as it is called by Le Vaillant.

difficult to get through. Farther down, in rents made by the waters, the rocks were grown over with many sorts of bushes. I here saw, for the first time, the *taxus*, now called *podocarpus elongata*, the *protea pinifolia*, the *levisanus*, and many other beautiful sorts of this species, upon an average not less than from fifteen to twenty feet high. Among them grew in tolerable abundance a higher sort of tree, which, alas! was not in blow: the fruit has the same kind of angular form as the nut of the *Cupressus*, and the leaves are long, narrow, and pointed, in the form of a lancet. It may, perhaps, be hereafter examined by some of my successors at a more favourable time of the year. The *brabejum stellatum* also grows here, as it does in most chasms where the declivity runs down into a plain, and where water is standing the whole year through.

We crossed the Bot river without much trouble, leaving a pretty farm which lies upon this river to our left. The plain in which we now arrived lies considerably above the level of the sea, and is very sandy. Several sorts of *elichrysum* form its most beautiful ornament; the principal are the *sesamoides*, the *vestitum*, and the *imbricatum*. The colonists call all this species *seven-years flowers*, because, if gathered when in full bloom, they will last for a long time with their beauty unimpaired; seven years, according to the popular belief. The houses of the colonists are every where decorated with them: they are sent as presents to the Cape Town, and they are even made an article of traffick by speculating Europeans. While the English name, *everlastings*, and the French, *immortelles*, refer to the imperishable nature of their beauty, we Germans are pleased to call them *paper-flowers*, or *straw flowers*; to designate, in truly prosaic terms, the dryness which prevents their fading. This property, and the bright glow of their colours, point out very decidedly the dry nature of the soil, and the warmth of the climate in which they are natives. Next to the *erica* and *protea*, these are some of the most characteristic plants of the country, and belong almost to this alone, at least as far as concerns the species *elichrysum* and the greater part of the *gnaphalia*.

## CHAP. XL.

*Visit at the House of M. Otto.—Mirth among the young People there.—Discussion concerning the African Women.—Bavians'-Kloof.—Zoetemelks Valley.—The Postholder Theunissen.—Passage over the Breede River.—Zwellendam.—Botanical Researches about the Devil's-Bush.—Plants collected there.—Rotterdam.—Account of the old blind Botanist, John Andrew Auge.*

AFTER resting about noon for some hours at Boontjeskraal, the place of the worthy Field-cornet Conrad Greeve, towards evening we reached the outward north-westerly declivity of the Black Mountain, at a place where a stream called the Diep river flows from it.\* We stopped for the night at the house of a person by name Otto, who was not at home himself, but whose children received us very kindly, and did the honours of the house in the handsomest manner possible. We found a party of jovial young people assembled here, consisting of the future sons-in-law, suitors to the two charming daughters of the house, with many other friends and neighbours of both sexes. Many of them were already acquainted with some one or other of our party, from having seen them in former journeys, and by them the rest of the company were immediately introduced to each other, so that our intrusion did not interrupt the general gaiety. On the contrary, we were readily permitted to join in their mode of entertaining themselves: and as we were already acquainted with the habits and manners of the colonists, it was easy enough for us to fall at once into their ways so as to remove every thing like restraint.

---

\* The reader must not be surprized if he should not always find the names of these little streams noted down in the map. They are too numerous to be all inserted, particularly in a general map; there the appropriate names of certain boundaries must be most plainly distinguished if a person wishes to be clear, and to give the most exact designation of those objects which rank the highest in their importance. For the rest, the *Black Mountain* here mentioned must not be confounded with the great chain that bears the same name, and runs parallel with the southern coast.

On this occasion I was more fully convinced than before, that a journey like that which I had taken with the Commissary-General is not propitious to gaining an accurate knowledge of the people, of their manners, customs, and modes of thinking. The rank of our chief, the number of his train, the trouble and disorder every where occasioned by our visits, perhaps also the presence of our ladies, seemed always to render the women, both wives and daughters, so shy and distant, not to mention the bustle they were in to prepare every thing for us, that it was scarcely possible to observe them accurately. But on the present journey, I saw them frequently under their genuine forms: these I neither found uniformly amiable, nor, as many earlier travellers assert without truth, uniformly rough and insignificant. He who comes into the colony with all the recollections of the friends and acquaintance he has left in his highly civilized native country fresh in his mind, can scarcely be pleased at first with the Cape beauties, particularly with those of the country. The women here are commonly very pretty, and dressed in the very height of the European fashions, whence strangers are led to expect a high degree of education and polish in their manners; and when reluctantly obliged to change their opinions in this respect, they perhaps often go too far the other way. It may easily be imagined that the African ladies cannot display any knowledge in books, or in works of art, and that they do not possess very refined feelings in any way: every thing by which they are surrounded from their earliest youth is of the most simple and prosaic kind: they live entirely among themselves, and have therefore no opportunities of gaining any enlarged stock of ideas. Those who do not understand the relations in which these women are educated, and in which they constantly live; of which alone therefore they can have any clear comprehension, and upon which alone they are consequently enabled to speak,—who judge them according to the first impression made, will very probably be led to consider them as shy and simple. It is by no means impossible that they may take offence at modes of expression in fact very polite and well bred, because they do not understand them: while the rough joke of an African youth, at which our ladies would blush and cast down their eyes, will be received with laughter and applause. But it would be a great error to suppose from hence, that they have no sense of modesty and decorum of manners. If it be difficult to offend their ears by words which might carry offence to minds differently

organized, this advantage is derived from it, that their imaginations are more tranquil, they are more secure against seduction; since, according to the universally received opinion, girls of the quickest sensibility are always the most in danger in this respect.

The African women are well aware themselves, that they have the character among the Europeans of being deficient in education, and of permitting themselves too much levity in their intercourse with men; they are, therefore, very anxious to punish, by the distance of their behaviour, the error of these somewhat too squeamish foreigners. Howsoever light of character they may be supposed at first, yet when put to the proof, strangers uniformly find that nothing can be more difficult than to obtain the slightest favour from them, and no instance ever fell under my knowledge of the last favour being obtained. Mr. Barrow, who pronounced so harsh a judgment upon the women of the Cape, afterwards confuted himself in the most forcible manner, by marrying one a short time before his departure, whom he took with him to England; an example followed by no inconsiderable number of his countrymen. He who would form a more accurate judgment of the African women, who would not consider their want of higher cultivation as a reproach, but would make all proper allowances for that slight degree of ruggedness which is the inevitable effect of their education and of local circumstances, would find them for the most part amiable and worthy of respect. The modes of amusement into which we now entered, would indeed to a highly polished and cultivated European circle have appeared very dull and *ennuyeux*; yet the universal cheerfulness that every where reigned, the *naïveté* of the girls, and the strong sense of honour with which the young men seemed inspired, made the evening pass off very agreeably, or at least by no means tediously. Those who do not expect too much of mankind, may almost always be satisfied, and will often find more to please them than they expected.

On the following day we made a retrograde movement of some hours, in order to visit the institution of the Herrnhuters at Bavians'-kloof. In the way thither I again found a rich harvest for my collection of plants, particularly as we approached the banks of the river Zonder-end: these banks are richly overgrown with shrubs. The *halleria lucida* and *elliptica* were distinguished above the rest by their beautiful red flowers. The river was not crossed without difficulty, since the water was four feet and a half deep, and

the stream rapid. On the other side of it is a low fertile plain, which leads gradually to the foot of the mountains, and is about an hour in breadth. The church of Bavians'-kloof, with its high roof and the buildings around it, had a very picturesque appearance, as seen from hence, and the picture was embellished in no slight degree by the height of the mountains behind, and the depth of the chasm at the entrance of which the village lies. The brethren received us in the same friendly manner as on the former occasion, and before dinner we had an excellent chorus from the Hottentots. Looking over the institution, and a walk into the interior of the valley, occupied us for some hours in the afternoon; we then proceeded on our journey, and in the evening arrived at Zoetemelk's valley, having passed several fine farms, of which we had only time to take a very transient view.

The road from Bavians'-kloof to Zoetemelk's valley runs at the foot of the hills parallel with the river. Many little streams are crossed, which flow from the chasms, and water the corn-fields. In the beds of some of these, which consist of small loose stones, the *erica urccolaris* grows in great abundance, rising sometimes to a very extraordinary height, even from twelve to fifteen feet. I remarked some little difference between the leaves and flowers of these plants, and those of the same species which are to be found in the clefts of the Table Mountain, particularly in Kerstenbosch; but this may probably be occasioned solely by the different height of the places where they grew.

The spacious buildings in the valley, which is a rural domain, were particularly inspected by our party, with the view to their being converted into warehouses for provisions. On the following day, which was spent here entirely, Captain Paravicini gave various orders for their repair and improvement. In the Postholder of the place, by name Theunissen, he found a most able, active, and intelligent assistant, for prosecuting this business, to him was consigned the care of superintending every thing till our return from Zwellendam. This venerable old man, who was far from rustic in his manners, had come to the Cape as a soldier nearly fifty years before, where he attracted the particular notice of the excellent Governor Tulbagh, and grew so much into favour with him, that he was appointed to his present post, which he had enjoyed under that governor and his successors two-and-thirty years, conducting himself in it with the utmost activity, and giving the most perfect satisfaction to his employers. Theunissen was the father of ten

children ; his three eldest sons were already married and settled, and were considered as some of the most estimable among the colonists. He had educated his family himself, training them to be useful citizens and good domestic wives. The pleasure of having all his children, with a great number of grand-children, sometimes collected around him, conferred on the evening of his life that serenity and happiness to which his merits had so just a claim.

Besides a magazine of provisions, it was proposed to establish in Zoetemelk's valley store-houses for ammunition and other warlike necessaries. A part of these stores had been sent hither a short time before, the superintendance of which was confided to a young officer of the artillery ; but he had the misfortune not long after to receive so severe a wound in exercising, that he was rendered incapable of active service for the rest of his life. He, however, made himself useful in instructing the younger children and grand-children of the Postholder, by which means, he at the same time bound these good people to him in stronger ties, and found an interesting amusement to beguile his many hours of leisure which would otherwise have been very wearisome.

Several of the most distinguished colonists of these parts, particularly the commandant of the citizen company, came to visit Captain Paravicini, and received from him many instructions for the erection of signal-posts, for the facilitating and expediting the correspondence with the government, and for procuring a large supply of salt from the salt-pans in Zoetendal's valley.

Our waggon had met with an accident in crossing the river Zonder-end. Through the inattention of the driver, it was suffered to plunge with too much precipitation down the steep bank into the stream, so that one of the hinder oxen fell and was strangled with the harness about the neck. This occasioned so long a stop in the midst of the water, that every thing in the waggon got completely wetted, my collection of plants among the rest : it occasioned me a half-day's work to dry them and the papers, and to put them up again properly. I was not, on this account, deterred from continuing my pursuit, but in the afternoon rambled over the heights above Zoetemelk's valley, accompanied by my pupil. I found a number of beautiful plants, among others, several sorts of heaths entirely new to me.

On the seventh of September we proceeded farther down the river Zonder-end,

crossing it several times, and halted at length at the house of our friend Holzhausen, the son-in-law of the Postholder Theunissen. As we could not all be accommodated here, some were obliged to go for the night to a neighbouring farm. It happened, however, as is not often the case, that this visit was not agreeable to the master of the house, who had therefore absented himself with his wife. The two gentlemen having, however, had some intimation of the disposition of these people, made no ceremony, but quietly took possession of the house in the true military style; and ordered the slaves to prepare them a good supper from the stores that it contained. This was attended with the consequence they expected; for the master of the house now came forth from his concealment, making at least a shew of courtesy and hospitality. The wife, however, who on our former journey had refused to let her house be made a lodging-place for some of our people, notwithstanding the change in her husband's behaviour, could not be brought to any thing like civility, but continued, to the very moment of our departure, altogether rude and ungracious. A hint upon this subject, which she received from Captain Paravicini, gave occasion to a truly comic scene, since she chose to ascribe all her ill-humour to her husband, because she had wanted to prevent his talking against the government and the Governor. Not being disposed to interfere in this matter, we left the loving couple in a most warm matrimonial dispute.

The farther we went, the more dry, alas! did we find the country. In some particular spots, during the whole winter, which had now continued five months, not a drop of rain had fallen, and the cattle were sick, and dying for want of food, while the corn-lands were necessarily left uncultivated. Some of the inhabitants had been obliged to seek a refuge for their cattle in the mountainous countries. Close in the neighbourhood of the river Zonderend, where the ground was low, the vegetation was tolerably flourishing. Large streaks of land, running between the little copses, were covered with the *galenia africana*, a plant which furnishes the most wholesome food for horses, but the horned cattle do not like it.

By noon we arrived on the bank of the Breede river, which, at this season of the year, is not fordable in the place where we had crossed it in our former journey. The intercourse between Zwelendam and the Cape Town would be entirely cut off during the winter, had not a ferry been made over the

river, by means of which, travellers, with their waggons, horses, and oxen, can be set over very conveniently. This ferry is at the distance of about an hour from the direct road, since it could only be established where the fall was not too great, and the current flowed tranquilly over a broad bed. Every one who makes use of the ferry pays a dollar and half for crossing. The right of levying this money, with the use of a neighbouring fief, is farmed to a colonist, who engages to keep the ferry-boat in good repair, and to furnish all the rope necessary for working it over. This ferry-boat is a sort of flying-bridge, which is drawn over by means of a very strong rope stretched across the river from one side to the other; the same that is called in Holland a *pont*. We stopped at the house of the ferryman, or *pontman*, as he is here termed, whose name was Coen, till our waggon came up with us. By this man we were furnished with a dinner, which he seasoned so well with a number of droll stories and anecdotes, related with uncommon fluency, that he made it pass off very pleasantly.

The passage over the Breede river, which is indeed here tolerably broad, has in it this peculiar charm, that it is almost the only point in the whole colony where a considerable expanse of water, and the sight of a boat, presents to the mind a living picture of the navigable streams in our native country. The high banks overgrown with bushes, the house of the *pontman* lying at a little distance upon a naked eminence, and the more distant hills, rising in the back ground, form altogether a most picturesque scene; one which in this country is very rare.\*

Without meeting with any other incident worthy of notice, we arrived in the evening at Zwellendam, and went to the house of the Landdrost Faure. He had set out himself some days before to Algoa Bay, to arrange with Captain Alberti and the Landdrost Stockenstroem, the boundaries between the three districts of Zwellendam, Uitenhage, and Graaff Reynett: the family, however, received us with the accustomed hospitality of the country, and insisted

---

\* In my return, I endeavoured to take a sketch of this scene, in the intention of giving it a place here; but when the plate was engraved, I found that the small scale, to which the objects were necessarily reduced, derogated so much from the character of the scenery, that I withdrew the sketch entirely, unwilling to increase the price of my book by a plate which, for these reasons, would neither have been beautiful nor instructive.

that we should all take up our abode at the drosty, though we had already made arrangements for hiring lodgings in the houses of some of the citizens. The absence of the Landdrost, who did not suppose the visit of the Commission to be so near, presented a considerable obstacle to following entirely the objects of our journey; nevertheless, the activity of the secretary to the district, Frauenfelder, who filled the office of deputy till his return, was such as to give hopes, that, by his assistance, the views of the Governor, in all the most essential points, would not be disappointed.

The four days that we remained here were passed by Captain Paravicini in consulting with the secretary and the justice of the district, on the best means to be employed for the different objects that were to be attained, and in giving all necessary instructions for making the proper contracts, and dispersing the proper circular orders. Every individual of the company lent their assistance in this task, partly by drawing up the requisite papers, partly by making multiplied copies of them for circulation: so that upon the whole, the principal object of the journey, collecting large quantities of provisions, and fixing on the proper places as *depôts* for them, was tolerably well accomplished. What could not be done immediately was necessarily left to the future cares of the Landdrost; and this the rather, since it was impossible, in so short a time, to be aware of every thing that must be provided for. The event fully proved that no confidence in his zeal and cares could be misplaced.

To Lieutenant Meier was assigned the task of superintending the erection of a powder magazine and laboratory at Zwellendam. Some invalid soldiers of the artillery, whom it was the wish of the government to establish in a quiet mode of life, were appointed as his assistants, and were to work under his guidance in the laboratory. To find a proper place for the purpose was not easy, since, on account of the great danger attending such works, they must not be carried on near any dwelling-houses. At length, a sort of shed, or barn, in the church-yard, which had served as a workshop to the people employed in building the church, was fixed upon to be converted into a laboratory; and, notwithstanding the opposition made to it at first by the obstinacy of the ecclesiastical council, it was at length hired, and possession was taken of it immediately. At the same time, a pretty house was engaged by the government for Lieutenant Meier, where he established himself happily, with

his wife and a numerous family, rejoiced, after having passed through so many storms of fate, here to find a pleasant asylum, with the prospect of an easy and comfortable provision for the rest of his days. Alas ! he thought not how short-lived this joy was to be.

The more accurate examination of the wooded chasms in the mountains about Zwellendam was the principal object of my journey. Scarcely was the sun risen in the morning after our arrival, when I was on my way to the Devil's Bush. Almost on quitting the village, upon the very first height, I was greeted with some beautiful sorts of the low species of *blaeria*, which is properly at home in this country : the heaths which I had found on the Breede river, though so nearly related to them, were not to be seen here. The *erica* is, generally speaking, the property of the little south-west corner of Africa ; but some of the sorts are to be found about Tulbagh and Zwellendam. With this species may also be mentioned some *struthiola*, *passerina*, and *phylica*, which seem properly to belong only to the neighbourhood of the Cape Town. Among the *blaeria* were several new sorts ; one even, which, in the sequel, has been determined a new species, *sympieza*.

My route lay now through a low place between two considerable mountain ridges, which was watered all along by a rapid stream. Among the rushy grass growing in this hollow, many single low shrubs were strewed about, particularly *podaliria buxifolia*, *myrtillifolia*, and a new sort ; *virgata*, *polygala appositifolia*, *aspalathus thymifolia*, *nivea*, several *liparia*, *rafnia*, *cleomea*, and other species, almost all of the family of papillonaceous flowers. At length I arrived at the edge of the wood. Gladly would I give such a description of it as should be comprehensible to all my readers, if this were not very difficult, nay, almost impossible, without either confining myself to general indications, or by entering on the subject more diffusely, annoying the botanical reader with dwelling on particulars which would materially weaken the scientific part of my description. I must, however, be permitted the use of some latin names, familiar to those who have any knowledge of plants, and must be allowed to weave together a little nosegay, such as may give a tolerable idea of a Southern African wood. From the general extension of botanical knowledge, and the taste which lovers of gardening have acquired, within a few years, for the plants that grow about the Cape, it may be hoped that among my readers, some will be found who will excuse me to the rest.

I was saluted, even before I arrived at the wood, with the camphor-like smell from the flowers of the *diosmea*, which were growing upon the banks of the stream; and the first thing that met my eyes on coming to the wood, was the *barosma serratifolium*, taller than the ordinary height of a man, with its brown and slender branches covered with bright-green leaves, and thinly spread white flowers, all turned to the light of the beneficent sun. Several sorts of *cluytia*, as the *pulchella*, *alaternoides*, *tomentosa*, and *gridioides*, shared the humid spot. Among them grew (where with us grow the *mentha* and *veronica*,) *agathosma serpyllaceum*, *linifolia*, and *pubescens*, the two first of which were quite new to me. In the drier parts were *ornigothalam*, *anthericum bulbine*, *adenandra uniflora*, and *villosa*, *diosma pectinatum obtusatum*, and *graveolens*, with several *lachenalia*. Further up, in a place where the wood was less thick, and where there was consequently more light, I found abundance of *myrsine Africana*, (which is very like the *vaccinium* of our country), in company with *anthospermum aethiopicum*, and *cliffortia juniperina*, covering a considerable tract of stones, and growing at the roots of the first large trees. The next shade presented me with the dark leaves of the *laurophyllus capensis*, and farther in towered trees of various sorts, as *scleroxylon*, *ekebergia capensis*, *euclea undulata*, *podocarpus elongata*: many a space between these was occupied by low shrubs, as *royena*, *bryonia*, and *cluytia*. The higher branches of the trees were entwined with the woody wide-spreading runners of the *cynanchum obtusifolium*, which sometimes, hanging down to the very ground, obstructed the way. I was able without much trouble to draw out a young string of it, but when I had gone as far as thirteen ells,\* was obliged to cut it off. The colonists call this plant *monkey's-cord*, since the monkeys often make use of it to get from tree to tree. Of the thick stems which are wound round the branches of the trees, and which are often from two inches to three and a half in diameter, sticks are made, which, on account of their pretty twining appearance, are much bought up by the gentry at the Cape Town, where they are called Esculapian sticks. The slender bending strings are about the thickness of a little finger. It is very seldom that side-shoots are to be seen: the string constantly runs on in

---

\* We do not know whether the Author means here the Flemish ell, which is only three-quarters of our yard, or the French ell, which is five quarters.—TRANSLATOR.

length, so that the same will often twine itself round ten or twelve large trees, On the young points alone do the leaves grow in pairs: farther back the pairs become more rare, and at length cease entirely.

Woods can only flourish in Southern Africa where there is an eternal moisture; consequently only in the deepest chasms of the mountains, where water trickles unceasingly down the stony walls that rise on either side, and where the sun cannot exercise its all-drying power. As the large trees owe their growth originally only to this supply of water, they, by a reaction, shelter the ground, by the shade which their branches afford, from evaporation, and assist to retain the moisture. At the same time, they stop the stones as they roll from the sides of the mountains, and prepare a new receptacle for the water, by the soil formed from their decayed leaves. From all these wooded chasms, therefore, abundant streams flow, which, from the nature of the soil that the water passes through, is always tinted with a dark brown colour. To these woods is the whole southern coast of Africa indebted for its fertility: if cut away, the country would be rendered uninhabitable for centuries. To take a walk for pleasure in them, is, however, not possible;—they only admit of climbing. The paths are tracked between the stems of the trees; and they are inconvenient from their steepness, and the slippery nature of the ground.

Some wood-plants grow in the moist soil, the appearance of which, from that very circumstance, is wholly unlike the generality of African plants; they rather bring to mind the idea of those that grow in our German groves. Among them may be mentioned a sticky kind of plant, *galium glabrum*, which very much resembles our *galium aparine*, or goose-grass, and is no less adhering in its nature. A plant, which is now very much cherished in our conservatories, the *plectranthus fruticosus*, was here in very great abundance; and the lily-white hue of its large bunches of flowers, formed a fine contrast with the dark soil over which they were spread. These were accompanied by the *antirrhinum macrocarpum*, *pharnaceum galioides*, and *hebenstreitia dentata*; but nowhere were any genuine grasses, or any sappy kind of plant to be seen, nor any shrub with fleshy berries; no *protea*, *erica*, or *gnaphalia*,—no plants of the *syngenesia* family, nor any of the *ranunculus* tribe. Higher up in the chasm were the *silene ornata*, *ornithogalum parviflorum*, and several sorts of *oxalis*, already in blow, and the *crassula sylvatica*, rooted in the hard stone. Higher still rose a gigantic

*polypodium*, with several ferns and mosses, things very rare in this country. In the stream itself was a plant, the roots of which were fast between the interstices of the rocks, having a sort of grass-like appearance, with very small stalkless leaves, growing to the height of about two feet. This deserves a more accurate examination from those that shall come after me: perhaps it may be a sort of fresh-water *alga*, of a wholly new species. Wherever the sun penetrated in the wood, there were abundance of butterflies and beetles; and from above, at the inaccessible end of the chasm, the incessant noise of multitudes of apes was repeated by the echoes all around.

It was already far into the afternoon when I turned my steps homeward, laden with the treasures which I had collected. I did not now take the path through the bottom of the dell, but made my way along the side of the mountain, where I found some *pelargonia* the *myrrhisfolium* among others, *hermannia cuneata*, *erinus serpyllaceus*, *indigofera erecta*, *borbonia ruscifolia*, *stilbe cernua*, *gnidia polygalæfolia*, and many other beautiful plants, which furnished me ample employment for the remainder of the day. A heavy and continued rain, very desirable upon every other account, which fell on the following days, prevented my visiting the Devil's Bush again till the day before our departure. The stream was then so swelled, that I was precluded from penetrating far into the dell, and I was obliged to content myself with gleaning some few plants which had escaped me on my first visit, and collecting the seeds of a few others.

The afternoon of this last day was devoted to an excursion to Rotterdam, the Landdrost's country seat, whither the young ladies of the house accompanied us on horseback. We looked all about the premises, and particularly examined the fine stud of horses belonging to the proprietor of the place. But all these things were viewed by me with indifference. I was impatient to get to the last house in the court, where dwelt an old countryman of mine, the oldest botanist living, the blind Auge, now arrived at the great age of ninety-three.

John Andrew Auge, born at Stollberg in the year 1711, from an irresistible propensity to the study of plants, which he had acquired as a gardener's boy, went into Holland before he was twenty years of age, that country being then considered as the principal seat of science in gardening. Here, under the celebrated Boerhaave, he acquired a more than ordinary stock of knowledge in his business. Oldenland and Berg had even at that time made

voyages to the Cape, whence they had returned with large collections of plants from that country. Their example, and the encouragement he received from Boerhaave, determined Auge to make the same voyage, and he came to the Cape in the year 1747, furnished with very good recommendations. The then Governor, Swellengrebel, immediately appointed him assistant to the Company's garden, and Governor Tulbagh, with whom, from his botanical knowledge, he was a great favourite, made him afterwards principal overseer. He then exerted the utmost diligence to store the garden with every sort of rare African plant, so as to convert it into a true botanic garden. In those times alone could that praise be justly ascribed to it: all the rarities now to be found there are remains of Auge's cares and industry. With equal diligence did he collect wild plants for his *herbarium*; this in the sequel he sent to Burmann, who afterwards publicly made use of it for the extension of knowledge in the botanical science.

In the year 1761, at the suggestion of Governor Tulbagh, he accompanied the Commission, which, under the conduct of the Commandant Hope, undertook a journey along the Great river to the country of the Namaaquas. From this expedition he returned with a great many new plants, which were afterwards described by his European friends. Ten years after, he accompanied Thunberg and Masson in some of their excursions, and also made acquaintance with Sparrman. In later times, from a constantly-increasing weakness of sight, he obtained his dismissal with a small pension, with which he retired to live near an old friend in the distant country upon the Chamtoo river. This friend took care of him when he became wholly blind, he being then more than seventy years old, and in his arms he hoped to have passed the remainder of his days in peace. But he was yet to experience severe proofs of the instability of all human hopes. When the Cape was taken by the English in 1795, he lost his pension; his worthy friend, however, did not permit him to be any sufferer by this loss: he took the same care of him as before, providing for all his wants out of his own stores. Yet here again the botanist was to be farther instructed in the instability of fate:—by the inroads of the Caffres, his friend was reduced to poverty, and instead of being able to help others, was himself in need of assistance. The farm at which Auge was living was surprised in the night by the savages, and the inhabitants, too weak to resist, were glad to take advantage of the darkness, to escape with their lives, leaving their whole property a prize to the enemy. The old blind man,

however, was not forgotten : he was carried away, half led, half dragged, to the next farm, where a waggon was obtained for pursuing the flight. Bewailing the loss of all his property, particularly his books and collection of plants, he was brought to Zwellendam, where the excellent Faure took him under his protection as the friend of his father, who had been long dead, providing him with food, lodging, and cloathing, without ever expecting the least return.

The old man having been advertised of our intended visit, had placed himself before the door of his cottage, and made many excuses for his blindness and debility. He was tall, still tolerably upright, and his hair, as white as snow, hung about his shoulders. The sight of a blind person always excites compassion ; here respect was inspired by the sight of dignified old age, to which with me was added veneration for one of the most skilful of botanists ; and notwithstanding the homeliness of his dress, he stood in the midst of us the object of our highest respect and interest. He gave us a very connected and affecting detail of the hardships he had recently endured, not however dwelling upon them so eagerly as upon the kindness he had received from his present benefactor. He told us that his health did not yet seem much on the decline, so as to make him think his death very near, and he was afraid he should long be a burden upon this excellent patron. He did not, however, repine at it, as he was sure that the kindness shewn him was with the utmost good will, and he was highly grateful for it. He was grieved, however, that he had lost his pension, since that would have enabled him not to be so great an expense to the Landdrost ; it would at least have found him in cloathing. I learnt by the way that the worthy Faure had never applied to get the pension renewed, out of delicacy to the old man, lest it should appear as if he grudged any part of the money spent upon him.

A mere relation of what passed at this interview was sufficient to obtain from the Governor the restoration of the pension with a small monthly addition to it ; and if the English, as I am inclined to hope, have continued the benefaction, my visit was at least attended with this advantage, that it has contributed towards rendering the evening of so venerable an old man's life somewhat more easy and serene.

In giving me these details, it was very evident that he still retained all his love for his favourite science, and I was not a little astonished to find how well he remembered the names of the various African productions. He was rejoiced to hear that I was a collector of plants, and told me many

things relating to those which were to be found in the Devil's Bush; but he called them after the old names given by Burmann. He had almost entirely forgotten his native tongue, and spoke the corrupted Dutch of the colonists. He enquired with very particular interest about the botanic garden at the Cape Town, asking whether such and such trees that he had planted were in a flourishing condition, with the same anxiety as if they had been the friends of his youth. "Is my *heliconia alba* alive?—is my *corallodendron*\* as fine a tree as ever?"—As I answered in the affirmative to his enquiries after these and many others, he begged me to describe them to him, how tall and how thick they were, and he said he should die happier, if he could but feel them once again. He enquired about several others, concerning which I could not give him any information, either because they were no longer in existence, or that I did not understand the names by which he distinguished them. I had the pleasure of being the first to tell him that Thunberg had called a species of plant after him *Augea Capensis*, in order that future botanists might have a lasting memorial of his services. He was almost angry that I could not tell him immediately from recollection to what class it belonged, for he would gladly have known that, and whether it was a plant with which he was acquainted.

My companions had soon dispersed themselves, and I went with my old man into his room, where I found every thing very clean and in the nicest order, and where was an old slave, whom the Landdrost had given him as a servant. He lamented anew the loss of his collection of plants, and cursed the Caffres because they had deprived him of the pleasure of entertaining me with it. He said I was the first botanist he had seen for many years, and if he could have the same pleasure once every year, his life would be much less tedious to him, for the only recreation he had was walking out several times in the day, holding by the arm of his black attendant. I stayed more than an hour with him, and was really affected at taking my leave of the venerable old man. At our separation I made him repeated promises that I would speak in his behalf to the Governor, and that if I ever came again to Zwelldam, I would spend a whole day with him.

---

\* He meant *strelitzia alba* and *erythrina caffra*, which are still two of the highest ornaments to the Cape-Town garden. The first he brought, as he now informed me, from the country of the Namaaquis, the other from the Caffre country.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Return to the Cape Town.—Ziekenhuis.—The Black Mountain.—The Hot Springs.—Doctor Hassner's Establishment there.—Account of the Wax-Tree, and Manner of preparing the Wax from it.—Military Regulations made by the Governor.—The Author appointed Surgeon-Major to the Hottentot Battalion.—Terrible Epidemic Disease among the Troops.—Explosion of the Laboratory at Zwellendam.—Departure of the Commissary-General De Mist for Europe.*

IN the night before the day fixed for our departure, a heavy rain fell again; and, though it abated in the morning, the stream was so much swelled by it, that we could not set off till noon. Even then it was not without difficulty that we crossed the Klip river and the *Poespas-valley*.\* Our hospitable hosts had, indeed, in the hope of detaining us longer, dwelt in strong terms upon the dangers to be encountered; but by the assistance of a very able and experienced guide, we conquered them all happily, and came off with no worse disaster than having our legs very much wetted. Our party received at Zwellendam the addition of Lieutenant Gossling of the Waldeck Jägers, who, having been summoned from his station at Algoa-Bay, was travelling to the Cape Town. In a few hours we reached the Breede river, which was happily crossed through the intervention of our jovial *Pontman*. From thence we continued our journey to the river Zonder-end.

It is astonishing how rapidly the whole appearance of an African landscape is changed by a heavy rain. Not only were all the shrubs and plants become green in a few days, but most of them were already most beautifully in flower. Even in the drought, vegetation seems to proceed internally; no suspension seems ever to take place in their growth; no winter rest: their

---

\* *Poespas* is a term in common use in Southern Africa, and has much the same meaning as the familiar English term, *higgledy-piggledy*. The valley in question has its name from the loose fragments of broken rock, heaped together in the bed of the river: or some think it is given from the dangers the waggons and goods in them incur, from being rattled over these stones.

leaves do not fall off; and immediately upon the first rain, when the outward bark has imbibed the requisite moisture, the blossoms push forth: they do not wait for the rain to have penetrated as far as the roots. But the flowers go off again immediately, if they are not in a low situation, or if the moisture be not renewed with repeated rains. That the sappy plants and bulbous flowers of the Karroo should shoot out with such amazing rapidity, appears less surprising than the sudden bursting of the hard woody shrubs which we saw here, where neither of the above families of Karroo plants are to be found.

The Hessaqua's-kloof was, in this respect, particularly striking. In coming through it, on our way to Zwellendam, its aspect was all mournful and melancholy: now every plant and shrub seemed even more beautiful than in any other part. The shrubs consisted principally of *malva capensis*, *virgata*, and *crydactilytes*, *hermannia candicans*, and several other sorts, some quite new. *Aspalathus*, *athanasia*, *relhania*, *arecotis*, *sarcophyllum carnosum*, *ulex rigidus*, *polygala hamosa*, &c. &c. In the low parts, nearer to the river, were *diosmea*, between melancholy *lycia* of several sorts, *stavia radiata*, with three or four fine species of *zygophyllum*, and *warmben campanulata*, about which climbed the *asparagus triacanthos*. No where was an *erica* to be seen, but many plants of the lily tribe, with one of the greatest ornaments of the fields, *echium spicatum*: of this there was a very great abundance.

We passed the night again with our friend Philip Holzhausen. This man had, as a youth, accompanied Van Reenen in his great journey among the neighbouring Caffre tribes, when he lost his father from the consequences of a wound, leaving him interred in the country of the Tambuckis. He entertained us with the account of this journey, confirming many things which I had already heard from Lombard, Müller, and other of his companions.

His gruff uncivil neighbour, was now, as a punishment for his former want of complaisance, obliged to furnish oxen for a relay to our waggons. He found, however, a means peculiar to himself, of giving vent to his ill-humour, even under this punishment. In harnessing the oxen to a waggon, at two of them, who were called *Holland* and *Lieutenant*, he swore and cursed most furiously, while he did nothing but praise and caress a third, which had the name of *England*. Nobody, however, thought proper to indulge him with taking the slightest notice of this: so far, indeed, were we from being disposed to any thing like dudgeon upon the subject, that the humour of the

thing somewhat reconciled us to him. In our return, the regulations instituted at Zwellendam were made known in Zoetemelk's valley, and a consultation was held with the postholder Theunissen, and some of the principal people among the citizen militia, for carrying them into execution.

On the fifteenth of September, we took another direction in our return, from that by which we had come. We first crossed the river Zonder-end, very near Zoetemelk's valley, to examine some new buildings erected by the postholder on the other side, and a small cave, which, in former times, had been used by the colonists as a place of rest for the sick on a journey: on this account the name of *Ziekenhuis* was given to it, which it retains to the present day. Among many names inscribed here in the stone, we observed those of several persons high in rank at the Cape, about the end of the seventeenth century, whose descendants are now some of the principal citizens of the Cape Town; as, for instance, J. C. De Wet, and Olof Bergh, both of whom are particularly mentioned in Kolbe's travels. From hence we directed our course towards the eastern side of the Black Mountain, and reached the first farm in this district about noon. It stands upon a little stream which flows from the Black Mountain, called Speelman's river. In our way we saw several *duikers*, *griesboks*, and other smaller sorts of the antelope species.

Throughout the whole western part of the colony, at stated distances of three or four hours, on the most open and conspicuous points of the mountains, cannon were planted, which, in case of an attack from the enemy, were to be fired as signals to summon every citizen to his allotted post. In order to see whether they would answer their destination, and spread the alarm quick enough, an experiment was now to be made; but it was found that they were at too great distances from each other. It was also found, that the signal posts, particularly those about the coast, were too thinly scattered. Captain Paravicini, therefore, after consulting with those who could give him the best information upon the subject, issued such orders as should correct the deficiency for the future. One imperfection in this mode of communication could not, however, be remedied; and this was, that from the great distance at which some of the persons appointed to attend upon these signals lived from the tops of the hills, they could be repeated but very slowly. Thus, when the attack by the English was actually made, the news was eight hours in

reaching Zwellendam, though the distance from the Cape Town, in a direct line, is only twenty-two German miles.

A few hours farther carried us to Roodebloems-kloof, at the southern corner of the Black Mountain; and soon after we arrived at the hot springs on these hills, near which some houses are erected for the accommodation of persons who come to bathe. The man, however, who farms these springs, lives a quarter of an hour lower down the hill: notwithstanding this, he derives his chief subsistence from letting his rooms to the sick who come to the waters, and furnishing them with provisions. As he had not at this time any bathing guests to occupy his house, we found tolerably convenient accommodations, though we could not help being surprised that they were not better, considering how much the place is frequented in some parts of the year. Of household utensils, for example, there was a very great scarcity; the beds were very indifferent; yet the sick, who could not get one of the small houses close to the baths, have no resource but to establish themselves here: the eating was but middling, and extremely dear. The inhabitants of the Cape Town, who sometimes visit the baths for their health, had complained so much of the want of accommodation, that the following year the government offered a physician at Paarl a contract to settle on the spot, and build a spacious and convenient house close by the springs, with all possible conveniences for the accommodation of invalids. One of the conveniences arising from this undertaking would be the having medical advice upon the very spot. This establishment was actually begun in 1805; and it is much to be hoped that it will meet with every encouragement from the English, particularly since the warm bath is now considered as an excellent specific for the disease so often contracted in Bengal—the hardening of the liver. The physician who engaged in the undertaking is a German, a native of Breslau, by name Hassner.

We stopped here for a whole day, which was employed in examining the waters, and the accommodations for bathing, very minutely. The springs issue from the slope of a pretty steep declivity on the south-western side of the Black Mountain, about two hundred feet higher than the place where the farm stands. The way up the hill lies over a hard clay, but the level, about the springs, is a deep sand. On the summit of this declivity, large

black stones are to be seen in abundance, rising above the sand, which, at the first glance, have the appearance of decomposed lava; but which, on a closer examination, are evidently a soft brown iron-stone. Some lie in single large blocks, others in flat pieces, one over the other; these latter, for the most part, cover an invisible cavity, from whence, in walking over them, a deadened kind of sound reverberates. Between these the hot water breaks out in many places, sometimes stronger, sometimes weaker. In digging deeper, springs are to be found, but most of them are kept stopped, that no impediment may arise to the constant flowing of the principal springs. These are three in number, which are almost indiscriminately used: they all lie within fifteen or twenty paces of each other. The hill itself is only separated from the chain of mountains that runs northward, by a small chasm, overgrown with wood, and from which flows a tolerably abundant stream of cold water. The long ridge, which forms the summit of the Black Mountain, rising about a hundred feet above the hot springs, consists of a sandstone, interspersed with large grains of iron. Iron and carbonic-acid seem the principal substances with which the water is impregnated; it is slightly coloured, deposits a good deal of ochre, and has a remarkable pricking kind of flavour of tin. The temperature of the three springs is not entirely the same; the highest gives twenty-nine degrees by Reaumur's thermometer, the other two thirty.

These waters are considered as the most efficacious, in a medical point of view, of any among the mineral waters of Southern Africa: they are used alike externally and internally. Chronic rheumatisms, gout itself, weakness of the nerves, and eruptive disorders, are those in which they succeed the most universally. In siphylitic complaints, also, of a long standing, they have been resorted to with the happiest success. At the commencement, the malady has, perhaps, rather appeared increased by them; but, by perseverance, they have seldom failed of accomplishing a complete cure. It is true that there are better accommodations here for bathers, than at any of the other hot springs in the colony; but there is yet ample employment for Doctor Hassner in improving them. The water of the strongest spring is conducted into a small quadrangular house, in the lower room of which is a spacious bath, with sofas for those who wish to perspire. Above is a small chamber, which is commonly occupied by some of the principal

persons who come to bathe. Another house merely encloses the bath with a roof and sides, and the third spring is nearly open. This is only used by the slaves and Hottentots. Near the baths is a large building belonging to the government, in which are three apartments and a kitchen; this is also used as a lodging-house for the bathers. It is, however, in so ruinous a state, that most of the guests prefer living in tents during the time they are to stay; having tents also for their household. From October to December is the time of year when the waters are esteemed of the greatest efficacy, and are consequently the most frequented. The heat is not then very great, the fields are not yet dried up, and provisions of a good quality are more easily procured. Hitherto, however, the colonists near at hand have not thought of providing supplies for the bathers; nor could vegetables for the table be procured in the neighbourhood at any price; so that the sick have been obliged to send for them as far as Hottentots'-Holland,

Here are again a variety of heaths; five or six of the most beautiful sorts, with the most glowing colours, and the most splendid flowers. Near the hot springs also grows very abundantly a sort of *eucomis* without a stem; the large, almost bee-hive formed flowers of which, with the leaves lying flat on the ground, puzzled me very much. These leaves correspond very well with the description of the *eucomis nana*. It may possibly be a consequence of the very great care taken of these plants, and of the moisture in which they are kept when they come into our conservatories, that they then have a stem. This is indeed an effect very common among the plants of the Cape preserved in our botanic gardens. If the leaves and flowers be not seen together, it is scarcely possible to recognise them, so much are they drawn up, and so much have they lost their original strong and compact form. Several sorts of heaths, *protea*, and other shrubby plants, which I have seen, since my return, in conservatories, have appeared to me only like shoots drawn out in water from the old African stem. This observation applies particularly to a plant which is exceedingly abundant in the Black Mountain, the wax-tree, or *myrica cordifolia*. It is here seldom more than two feet high, has a thick woody stem, and is covered with flowers and berries. In our conservatories, on the contrary, it sometimes reaches the height of twelve feet, without having any firm stem, or producing a single flower.

The berries of this shrub, it is well known, yield a vegetable wax; these,

with those of another sort nearly allied to it, the *myrica cerifera*, are much used in North America. They are covered on the outside with a substance which has the appearance of very large powder; this melts with a certain degree of heat, and, when cold, hardens into a lump of wax. This wax is collected in considerable quantities by putting the berries into large iron vessels, and setting them over the fire till an oil is seen swimming at the top, which is then left to cool and harden. The substance thus obtained, might with as much propriety be called fat as wax. The facility with which it is melted, by only twenty degrees of Reaumur, its smooth rather than glutinous quality, the facility with which it may be converted into a palpable tallow, seem rather to identify it with fat than with wax. But, on the other hand, its dryness and powdery nature, for it may be rubbed into a sort of meal, the polish on its surface, and its specific weight, which in its most hardened and united state is exactly that of water, seems rather to assimilate it with wax.

If the berries are not collected with great care, the wax will have more or less of a greenish hue; this is much stronger if many of the stalks and leaves are boiled with them. November is the best time of the year for collecting the berries; six or seven pounds of them will then yield, on an average, a pound of wax; earlier, and later in the year, they will not yield so much; besides, earlier in the year the collecting them is attended with much more trouble; and later, it is probable that numbers of the berries have fallen off. People are very apt to be little careful in another respect in collecting them: they pluck the whole plant up by the roots, without any regard to future generations; whereas, the wise thing would be to gather the berries alone. Some excuse for this violent procedure may perhaps be found from the much shorter time in which a quantity is thus procured, and the greater facility of the transport, no sack being requisite to carry them. They may be carried home in the way of fodder. The wax is of no other use but for making candles; it is then commonly mixed with an equal quantity of tallow, since, at the same time that it burns out slower, it does not give so good a light as animal wax or grease. Used by itself, it gives a sort of bluish flame. The Hottentots consider the berries as a very wholesome and nourishing food, and many sorts of birds are extremely fond of them. The wax will dissolve entirely in oil of turpentine, not so easily in spirit of wine: it may be entirely bleached with muriatic acid.

A few hours after we quitted the hot springs we came into the road by which we had gone to Zwelldam, and going over Houhoek and Hottentots'-Holland-Kloof, without any particular occurrence, we re-entered the Cape Town on the twentieth of September.

During our absence, an American ship had imparted the news, not indeed officially, from the Batavian states, but as an article of general currency in all the European papers, and which appeared extremely credible, that a formidable expedition against the Cape was in preparation in England, so that an attack might shortly be expected. General Janssens considered it necessary, under these circumstances, to put the few troops under his command in motion as speedily as possible, that they might be accustomed, by degrees, to the hardships of a campaign. For this purpose he had a camp formed in the plain at the eastern foot of the Table-Mountain, near a stream which flows through it, called the Liesbeek river. While the soldiers of the former East India Company, which had been formed into bodies of auxiliary infantry, in conjunction with the citizen militia, performed the garrison duty in the Cape Town, and the charge of the batteries was confided to the auxiliary artillery corps, the troops of the line were daily exercised in the camp. Wherever any deficiency was discovered in provision, either of food, arms, ammunition, or other necessaries for this little army, the want was immediately supplied to the best of the General's ability.

The whole force consisted in the Waldeck battalion, in the twenty-second battalion of Batavian troops of the line, the ninth battalion of Jägers, and the Hottentot battalion; in all two thousand infantry. Of cavalry, there was only a squadron of light dragoons, and two of the new citizen companies; besides these, there was the fifth battalion of artillery, a moving battery, and a newly-formed division of Javanese artillery, which had eighteen field-pieces belonging to it. The whole army was animated by an excellent spirit; and if the English had then made their attack, instead of waiting till another year, they would probably have met with a much stronger resistance than was the case in 1806.

The citizens and colonists had willingly incorporated themselves for the service, and taken arms for the defence of the colony; but many of them thought it hard that one or more of their sons must also be brought into action. General Janssens, wishing to give a patriotic example in this respect,

made his own son, my pupil, then only fifteen years of age, take arms. He was placed at first as a cadet in the Waldeck battalion, but afterwards became a lieutenant in the light dragoons. Though my excellent patron assured me that this should not occasion any change in my connection with him, yet I thought it more honourable and laudable to share in the general zeal by which every heart seemed animated, and not remain idle, but take upon myself some public situation, in which I might be useful to the states and to the colony. The General gave me my choice among several things which he proposed to me, when I decided upon accepting the office of surgeon-major to the battalion of Hottentot light-infantry. Upon this service I entered the latter end of October, and pitched my tent in the camp among that of the other officers belonging to this body, many of whom were my acquaintance, or fellow-countrymen. I had scarcely become somewhat familiar with the new duties I had undertaken, when I had, alas! but too abundant opportunities of shewing my zeal in the discharge of them. Even before my arrival, symptoms had appeared among the troops of a very malignant epidemic disorder, a sort of dysentery, which had already nearly filled the hospitals at the Cape Town with sick. Most of the patients died in a very short time under the severest sufferings; and even those who did not die immediately, remained with diseases, which, with very few exceptions, proved incurable. Notwithstanding the very great care and attention of the General, that every thing should be furnished which might assist the recovery of the sick, that they should have good wine, good food, proper clothing, and proper covering at night to protect them against the influence of the climate; —notwithstanding all these cares, the evil daily increased. Toward the end of November, there were frequently not less than ten corpses carried out of the hospital in the course of the day. Several excellent officers shared the same lot.

At length it appeared clear that the situation of the camp was a principal cause of this heavy calamity, since during the day it afforded no shelter from the burning heat of the sun, and that it was open to the damp wind which often blows from the sea in the evening between the two rows of hills, suddenly, as with a breath, dispersing every feeling of warmth, changing the temperature of the atmosphere not unfrequently forty degrees, according to Fahrenheit's thermometer, in the course of an hour. Towards the end of

December, therefore, the camp was removed nearer to the Table-Mountain, under the shelter of the *Wine-Hills*, as they are called; where, indeed, the ground was less favourable, but the situation was beyond all comparison more salubrious. Before this cause of the calamity suggested itself, and the medical practitioners had learnt that an early and plentiful use of mercurial preparations was an infallible specific against the disease, hundreds of our brave warriors had fallen a prey to it.\* The Waldeck battalion suffered particularly; for the Germans seemed universally more liable to be seized with the malady than either the Dutch or the natives.

I was not spared myself. The absence of most of my colleagues, who were summoned to the town for the service of the hospital, made my post very laborious. As the only surgeon-major in the camp, many times I was called up three or four times in the night to the sick, and in the day I had, besides attending eighty patients in my own battalion, many half sick officers throughout the camp to visit, who naturally wanted so much the more care and attention, even in matters really trifling, in proportion to the generally alarming aspect of the disease. Cooling medicines were indispensable in this painful practice. I found their good effects:—by the constant use of them I kept myself for many weeks free from the disease, though under circumstances extremely unfavourable for it. At length, however, I was subdued, and was obliged to quit the camp, and go into the town. I had at that time a patient under my care, whose situation lay very heavy on my heart: this was the chief of the light troops, Lieutenant Colonel Von Gilten, one of the worthiest of men, in every sense of the word, and with whom I lived in the closest friendship. The importance of his post, and his confidence in my skill, had kept him hitherto in the camp, notwithstanding that he was extremely ill, and that I exhorted him very earnestly to remove into the town. Now that I was obliged, very reluctantly to quit my post, he consented to accompany me, and we took a lodging together, where I could still attend upon him, as far as my strength would permit. Alas! four days after our

---

\* If there be any among my readers who wish for more ample and accurate information respecting this very remarkable disease, which I at length ascertained to have its origin principally in inflammation of the liver, I refer them to a diffuse Essay upon the subject, which I published in the twenty-seventh volume of *Hufeland's Medical Journal*.

removal, he expired in my arms. In him the States, and our Chief, sustained an irremediable loss; and if my cares could not preserve so valuable a life, the sincere affliction I felt at losing him was no little aggravation of my own illness.

General Janssens would not now permit me to remain in the house of a stranger; he insisted upon my coming to his house. To the very great care and kindness which I experienced there, and to the skill of my friend and colleague, Von Zinkgraf, added to my own unimpaired youth, am I indebted for having at length gained the victory over my disease. I was for a week in a truly dangerous situation. Labouring under the same symptoms which had preceded the death of my never-to-be forgotten friend, I could not but look upon my own end as fast approaching. My recovery was very tedious; and perhaps the weak state to which I was reduced would have been protracted much longer, if the Commissary-General De Mist had not taken me to a country-house he inhabited in the Tyger-Mountain, where he and his children took the utmost care of me. The good air I enjoyed there had at length so happy an effect, that by February I was able to return to the camp, and resume my functions.

The destructive malady was at length subdued; but unfortunate circumstances of another kind, no less impeded our brave General in the measures he would have taken for the defence of the colony. The corn-harvest failed this year even more than the former. There was an absolute scarcity of bread; and had not the prudent precautions mentioned before been taken, the means to support the troops would absolutely have failed. The newly-established magazines, therefore, on the other side of the mountains, filled very slowly, while at the same time another object of our late journey was frustrated by a different catastrophe. The laboratory at Zwelendani, which has been mentioned as left under the care of the worthy Lieutenant Meier, blew up with a dreadful explosion, as he himself, with seven of his people, were at work there, without its ever being known how the accident happened. All who were within lost their lives, and many without were very severely hurt. The church was exceedingly injured by the shock. Meier left a widow and eight helpless orphans, the care of whom General Janssens took upon himself, without being able wholly to repair to them the loss of a father so honest and upright, and so attentive to their education.

In the same year I lost another friend, one of the dearest companions of my heart, one of our party in the late journey, while still another afterwards fell in the war in Spain. Thus, of all the companions who made that journey so pleasant to me, Captain Paravicini and the Quarter-Master Verkouteren, are the only living witnesses remaining of the truth of what I have related concerning it.

On the twenty-fifth of February, the Commissary-General De Mist, with his amiable family, took their departure from the Cape, the Commissary's mission for the organization of the colony being completed. He sailed in an American vessel, amid the hearty good wishes of several thousand persons, to promote whose welfare he had employed his most unwearied exertions for three years. He arrived happily in his own country the July following.

As the winter drew nigh, in which, on account of the strong north-west winds, the attack of the English could not safely be made, and during which the remaining encamped might have been pernicious to the health of the soldiers, General Janssens thought it right that they should return into the barracks in the Cape Town towards the end of March. Only the Hottentot battalion were left in the camp, while I continued at my post, till a new journey called me into the interior. Of this journey an account will be given in the next part of my work.

END OF PART THE FIFTH.

## PART VI.

JOURNEY INTO THE COUNTRY OF THE BOSJESMANS, THE CORANS, AND  
THE BEETJUANS.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Division of the Colony into several new Districts.—Journey of the Landdrost Van de Graaff to the Sack River, in 1804.—The Author engaged by General Janssens to accompany the Landdrost in a longer Journey.—His Departure.—The Tyger Mountain.—On African Husbandry.—The Berg River, and the Acorus-Palmite.—Rooderand's-Kloof.*

ABOUT the middle of the year 1804, the government began to carry into execution the plan sketched some time before, to make a new division of the colony into more districts or drosties. The parts bordering on the Caffre country, eastward of the Krumme river and Sitzikamma, were erected into a district, in the midst of which, not far from the Zwartkopf river, a new village was to be built, under the name of Uitenhage.\* This was to be the seat of a landdrost and of a civil magistrate. Captain Alberti, hitherto the commandant at Fort Frederic and Algoa Bay, had been some time before named as the new landdrost, and he was charged with the regulation of the whole institution. The district, which was composed of the southern half of Graaff Reynett, and a part of Zwellendam, bore, like the other districts, the name of the principal place.

In the same manner, the northern part of the district of Stellenbosch, which spread out to a considerable extent, and was thinly inhabited, was erected

---

\* The governor gave this name to the place in compliment to the Commissary-General, it being his old family name.

into a separate district. The principal seat of this district was fixed at Roodezand, which in consequence became the residence of a landdrost. The name of the place was changed, and henceforward that, with the whole district, was to bear the name of the worthy Governor Tulbagh, who, during twenty years that he was at the head of the colony, had rendered it so many important services. M. Henry Van de Graaff, nephew to the former governor, Cornelius Van de Graaff, a member of the College of Tutelage at the Cape Town, was appointed the new landdrost; while M. Blettermann, the former landdrost of Stellenbosch, was named as Commissary for the first erection of the drosty, to fix the boundaries of it, to order the new buildings that would be requisite, &c. &c.

In no part was it more necessary to divide the cares of the government under a considerable number of magistrates than here. While the distant northern parts of the colony, the situation of which I have in some measure described in the first volume of this work, belonged to the drosty of Stellenbosch, and continued to increase in population, it was impossible that they should be governed with the requisite care and attention. Fresh instances of disobedience to the government were constantly breaking out among the inhabitants:—their harshness towards their dependants, and their strifes and quarrels amongst each other, were constantly increasing. It was often necessary to send commissioners into the country to settle the differences of these people concerning the boundaries of their respective domains; and from the distance which these commissioners must necessarily be sent, this was exceedingly expensive. The great object of the new institution was to restrain and correct these evils; but it was at the same time authorized to regulate the relations between the colonists on the northern boundary, and the wandering Bosjesmans of that neighbourhood, and to watch particularly over the behaviour of each party towards the other. It was the earnest wish of the government to put an end to the robberies and plunderings of these savages by mild and kind treatment, and by this means gradually to remove the ancient hatred borne them by the colonists of the Roggeveld, and the Lower Bokkeveld.

The new landdrost of Tulbagh, therefore, very soon after his entrance upon office, had orders to visit the most remote part of his district, and to enter into negotiations with the Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood. In December,

1804, he succeeded in collecting a considerable number of these savages together upon the Sack river, and engaging them to adopt more peaceable views. One among them was selected, who seemed to be held in some consideration by the rest, to whom the name of Captain Goedhart (*Good-heart*) was given, and who was appointed speaker for the party. They farther attempted to make him considered among the rest as a real chief, and to induce them to yield him obedience as such. This at first seemed a wholly vain attempt, since the Bosjesmans were not at all disposed to acknowledge the authority of any one: they even manifested great jealousy and envy at the marks of distinction shewn to this captain. However, in the end, the negociators succeeded so far as to obtain promises, on the part of the Bosjesmans, that in consideration of a yearly tribute of cattle to be paid them, they would maintain a quiet and peaceable conduct, and would deliver up to punishment any one who was guilty of violence or plunder. On the other hand, they were solemnly promised that no colonist should take into his own hands the right of punishing injuries received by him; and that they should not be pursued for past offences. It was engaged that the government should take upon itself the arrangement of all differences, and send, every year, proper commissioners to hear any complaints they might have to make, and to see that justice was done them. This interview lasted a whole week, and was made the more agreeable to the savages, from their being entertained by the landdrost during the whole time that it continued, and from their being dismissed with a considerable present of live sheep. At parting, they were promised that within six months the landdrost would return, that the negotiation might be regularly and solemnly concluded, when he would bring them many presents.

The governor, who felt all the importance of this matter, was anxious to bring the negotiations to a conclusion as soon as possible, and establish a firm and lasting peace. The landdrost of Tulbagh was therefore appointed, in the March following, to undertake the same journey, not merely for the purpose of concluding his negotiation with the Bosjesmans, but to proceed afterwards farther to the north, beyond the boundaries of the colony, where several objects had attracted the attention of the government, and appeared to require from them a more accurate investigation. Three objects in particular came under this description, viz. in the first place, to gain information

respecting the conduct and disposition of the Hottentots of the Great river, as they are called; secondly, to enquire into the relations established by the missionaries among these equivocal and dangerous people, as, according to all accounts, they must be reckoned; and, thirdly, to examine the situation of the great nation hitherto imperfectly known under the name of the Briquas, but since the English expedition which was undertaken in 1801 to trade with them in cattle, called Butschuanas. Since over the whole country, on the other side of the Sack river, no perfectly unsuspecting information ever could be obtained, and, notwithstanding the abovementioned expedition, very contradictory reports were still in circulation, the government thought it important to endeavour to obtain more certain information; since the situation and dispositions of these more distant people might, in time, have as important an influence upon the welfare of the colony as those of the more neighbouring Bosjesmans had at that moment. Now the journey to the Sack river lay exactly in the direction of that country; and since the business of the landdrost, during a protracted absence, might be performed by the Commissary Blettermann, this journey seemed to present the most convenient opportunity possible for prosecuting the desired researches. It was only necessary somewhat to extend the preparations made, and to increase the number of persons of whom the party was to consist, that the less danger might be incurred by travelling into so remote a region.

While preparations for the excursion were going forwards, Governor Janssens was pleased to invite me to be a sharer in it, desiring me to take upon myself the examination into the nature of the country on the other side of the Orange river, and the situation of the inhabitants; while the landdrost was engaged in his negociations with the Bosjesmans, and the business with the missionaries. Long as I had wished to become more acquainted with these remote countries, nothing could be more accordant with my wishes than such a proposal. Although I had had to struggle with many little relapses in my obstinate malady, and was with difficulty able to perform my duty with my battalion, I did not hesitate a single moment to accept the offer. The earnest desire I had to see all the new and extraordinary things which I had heard related of the country on the other side of the Orange river, and of the Briqua country, absorbed every idea of the state of weakness to which I was reduced, or of the probable danger of a serious

return of my illness upon the journey. I did not, however, suffer this sentiment to gain so absolute an ascendancy over me, as to make me neglect any precaution for recruiting my strength, and supporting it by the way, or to prevent my making every proper regulation, in case I should never return.

My being extremely well known to M. Van de Graaff, with whom I had long enjoyed a very pleasant collegiate connection, rendered the thoughts of this journey so much the more agreeable to me. He came himself to the Cape Town in the month of April, where we had several conferences upon the preparations requisite to be made; and our departure was fixed for the beginning of the following month. The governor left us to choose our own guides, and gave orders that we should be furnished with every thing we desired from the magazines and workshops of the government. Our necessaries consisted of nearly the same things that I have enumerated on the setting out for our first journey, with this difference, that it was essential to take a much larger stock of provisions; since we should be for a longer time at a distance from the colony, and from all possibility of procuring supplies. On the contrary, the party being much smaller, our stock, in many other articles, was so: besides, the experience I had obtained made me omit many things as altogether useless, with which we had swelled our baggage on the former occasion. Of some other articles, with which before we had been slenderly provided, or which had been totally omitted, we now made an ample provision.

When every thing was ready, and sent off to Tulbagh, it only remained for me to follow. I accordingly departed from the Cape Town on the twenty-fourth of April, without any companion, and bent my course towards the Tyger Mountain. The sun was going down as I reached its summit, when I was presented with a glorious prospect over the sea, and the widely stretched plain of the Cape. From hence, directly in front, is seen the Table Mountain in its whole extent; to the left of this runs the Devil's Mountain, and to the right the Lion's Head. At the foot of the Table Mountain stands the town, which, with its white roofs, and its green and highly cultivated environs, form a most pleasing group of objects. Southwards from the Devil's Mountain are seen the Wine Hills, or Constantia, the Stone Hills, and Muysenburg; while beyond all these, the spacious harbour of False

Bay spreads itself out. Towards the east, the high chain of mountains behind Stellenbosch and Hottentots'-Holland, rising like an enormous wall, shut out any farther view that way; while, to the west, a most charming contrast is formed by the boundless extent of the Atlantic Ocean. The setting sun gilded over an immense surface of the tranquil sea, in the midst of which Robben Island appeared to float like a large black speck. The magnificence of the scene, the recollection of friends now far distant, with whom, a few months before, I had enjoyed the view from this very same point; and the prospect of dangers and adventures before me, altogether wrought me into a vein of most pleasing sadness. I once more greeted the Cape Town, and the roofs of my friends, whom I was perhaps never to see again, and then slowly descended the other side of the Tyger Mountain.

In the next valley lay the estate of Maastricht, belonging to the Sieur J. de Voss, of the Cape Town, where General Janssens had been residing for some time, that he might have leisure to prosecute undisturbed some important works which he had in hand. I passed the evening with him, when we had a most instructive and interesting conversation by his fire-side, in which this excellent man explained to me more fully the objects he had in view in the present expedition. The works of Kolbe were spread out before us, which gave occasion to many remarks upon the comparative state of the colony at that time and in the present moment. A century had just elapsed since this traveller was on the same spot. He visited it the twelfth of June, 1705. The General gave it as his opinion, that he had not been guilty of so many falsehoods as have been imputed to him by later travellers, who found things very different from what he represented them. At that time, he observed, the Hottentots might well be a people having their own peculiar customs and manners, though they had been subsequently lost and forgotten, by the intercourse established between them and the Europeans of the colony. A hundred years hence, he added, what is said by us may appear to the generation of that day as wide of the truth as the representations of travellers of a century back now appear to us.

The next morning, after receiving from the Governor a written paper of instructions, I took my leave, and again set forwards on my journey. At noon, being arrived in the vicinity of the Pearl Mountain, I stopped to rest at a farm, the people of which were all very busily employed in the fields.

Although the seasons here are in the direct inverse of what they are in our northern zone, yet from the very great difference of the climate, the cultivation of the lands takes place at nearly the same part of the year as with us. No sooner do the abundant rains of autumn begin to fall, and soften the dried and parched soil; that is to say, as soon after as the returning strength of the cattle, weakened by the want of sufficient food during the dry months, will permit, the plough is set to work, and the fields are manured and sown. A great deal of barley, in particular, is sown at this time; this being almost the only corn used for horses throughout the colony: besides their being fed with the grain, they eat it as grass, while it is young and green. Oats do not grow well, and they are not considered so salutary for the horses as barley. The land destined for wheat is also ploughed and manured in April or May, though it is not sown till August. The harvest falls about the end of November or beginning of December, and is particularly abundant if the spring months are not too hot, and if there be plenty of rain in the month of October. This is the great time for the trees blossoming.

The course of agriculture is not, however, the same in every part of the colony: it varies according to the situation and nature of the land, so that in almost every district different ways and opinions prevail. These are commonly considered by the Europeans as very absurd, and are condemned severely. In particular, the colonists are regarded by them as extremely behind-hand in their agricultural notions, and very deficient in many articles of knowledge which are found of the utmost advantage in Europe. This, however, ought much rather to be ascribed to the very different nature of the climate in the two quarters of the world. It is impossible that the same modes of husbandry can answer in both, and the European commonly goes much farther in his censures than the reason of the thing will justify. It is very certain that there are many experiments in husbandry which might be made in southern Africa; and while the stranger may be over-hasty in condemning, the colonist undoubtedly clings, with a great deal too much obstinacy, to his ancient prejudices, and will follow only the experience of his forefathers. But also it cannot be denied, that most of the experiments in agricultural œconomy which have been made here by the best-informed European agriculturists, have not been attended with the success that was

expected: this has only served to confirm the Africans in their ancient prejudices.

Farther on, I met some families who were journeying towards the village of Paarl, to attend the consecration of a new church, which was to take place the next Sunday. M. Serrurier, the first preacher in the Reformed Church at the Cape Town, a man who had attended to his functions for fifty-one years with the highest reputation to himself, was to perform the ceremony. A deputation of the administrators of ecclesiastical affairs of the district had gone to Paarl to receive him.

I soon arrived at the eastern foot of the Pearl Mountain, the slopes of which are so much celebrated for their fertility. The road passes several very fine farms, the whole appearance of which bespeak the affluence of their owners. That of a certain M. Ménard deserves particularly to be noticed; it stands in a most inviting situation, at the end of a double row of old oaks. The owner was busy, with his slaves, in a field not far from the roadside, and came up to me in a truly friendly manner, inviting me to his house. On my declining the invitation, he insisted that I should promise to visit him on my return: but five months after, when I would have performed my promise, I found him there no longer. He had, in the interim, come to a very deplorable end. One of his slaves, a Malay, in his rage at a punishment he had received, killed him with an axe. The lad had been a very faithful servant, and had been treated by Ménard, who was in no respect a harsh master, with distinguished favour and regard. Notwithstanding this, and though, according to his own confession, he had deserved the punishment inflicted, all idea of former kindness seemed in a moment to vanish from his mind; a blind thirst of revenge took entire possession of him, and he seized the first opportunity when he found his master alone to execute his horrid purpose. He was immediately struck with deep remorse; he gave himself up of his own accord to the other slaves, confessed his crime to the magistrate, and submitted himself resigned to the scaffold.

Towards evening I arrived at the Berg river, and, to my great astonishment, found the ford of Burgersdrift quite dry, notwithstanding that only three days before a rain of thirty-six hours continuance had fallen. Some travellers whom I met informed me, that two days before the Berg river had been

impassable at Drakenstein; and here, at the distance of only three German miles and a half, not a drop of water was to be seen. This is a phenomenon which appears scarcely credible to a stranger unacquainted with the nature of the country. The cause of it is, that almost all the mountain-streams hereabouts have this peculiarity, that they are thickly overgrown with the *acorus palmita*, an aquatic plant, that strikes its roots very deep in the bed of the river, and rises with a bare stem, about three inches thick, and hollow, at the point of which is a crown of leaves, after the manner of the palm tree. These crowns rise above the ordinary height of the water, and are so thickly crowded together, that the water is totally concealed: in many places, light bridges may be thrown over, which will be supported by them. They, at the same time, shelter the river against the all-parching heat of the sun, and keep it flowing, even in the driest seasons, till the summer is very far advanced. The stem of every plant acts as a sort of reservoir for the water, whence it oozes out by degrees; so that the river in the plain will still contain water, though no rain has fallen in the mountains, even for months. At length, however, this supply being exhausted, the bed of the river dries; and, by the end of the summer, the plants are deprived of all nourishment. They have nothing to protect them but the shade of their own crowns: yet, on the first abundant rain that falls, the stems and roots form anew a sort of dam, through which the water has so much the more difficulty to penetrate, the drier they and the bed of the river are become, and the more the body and strength of the moisture that would press on, is diminished at every moment by the suction of the plant. Thus it happens, that, after a heavy rain, some days will perhaps elapse before the water has pressed through these groves so as to arrive at the plains. Persons who passed the ford of Burgersdrift only twelve hours after me, found the water already three feet and a half deep.

After passing the night in the house of a very poor, but kind-hearted family, I arrived about noon the following day at Roodezand's Kloof. The young grass was every where springing up in the low grounds, and several sorts of *oxalis*, of *hypoxis*, and *moræa*, were already in flower. These little bulbous plants are, as among us the snow-drop and crocus, the firstlings of the flowery generation; but they do not, like our firstlings, wait for the advance of spring before they appear: they flower at the very beginning of winter. While the oaks, and other European trees, which have been transported hither, shed their

leaves at the first wet and cold that comes on, and experience a rest from vegetation of two full months, the native trees of Africa remain still green and fresh. The dry season is their proper winter, and the few among them that ever shed their leaves entirely are deprived of them towards the end of the hot weather.\* Spring begins with the first rains, when the nights are long. Even the birds moult their feathers at this time, and are clothed in their new wedding garments in July or August. In these months the European trees begin also again to resume their verdure, and by September they are in full leaf. In Roodezand's-Kloof, all the tall shrubs which shade the banks of the Berg river were in full blow, particularly *capraria lanceolata* and *undulata*, *phylica buxifolia*, *cluytia alaternoides*, *polygonoides*, and *tomentosa*, *halleria elliptica*, with several other small plants. Among the interstices of the rocks that enclose the kloof, shot forth *lachenalia*, *amaryllis*, and *mussonia*. Some of them were already in flower, and the stems of the larger liliaceous plants had already grown to some height.

---

\* It is the proper character of vegetation in all warm countries, that the native trees and shrubs are never wholly leafless. But for that very reason their leaves are always dry, stiff, and dark, and not unfrequently they have a dusty appearance, so that the eye is not at any time regaled with the beautiful sight of one general display of fresh green leaves. Southern Africa, particularly about the colony of the Cape, has, however, in this respect much the advantage over many warm climates. We are never deprived here of the sight of leaves upon the shrubs and bushes; but at the time of year abovementioned, the *lycias*, the *mimosas*, and several sorts of native willows, putting out fresh leaves, from the brightness of their green, bring to the mind the pleasing impression of an European spring.

## CHAP. XL.

*Stay at Tulbagh.—Mostertshoek.—The Warm Bokkeveld.—The Karroo.—The Paardeberge.—The Hanglip.—The Ongeluk River.—The Goudebloems River.—The Geitjes, a particular species of Lizard, held to be very noxious.—The Wind Hill.—Unwelcome Tidings received at the Foot of the Roggeveld Mountains.—Fine View from the Summit of these Mountains.*

AT Tulbagh I experienced a very friendly reception in the house of my friend the landdrost, Van de Graaff. During the ten days that I remained there, I occupied myself in part with the necessary preparations for our journey, in part with writing several letters to my friends in Europe. Some of my leisure hours were devoted to botanical walks, when I twice visited the waterfall. From the late abundant rains, this was now in high beauty. The rest of my time was passed in the most pleasant social intercourse with my friends at Tulbagh.

In the mean time, the whole travelling party assembled here. They consisted of three persons, besides the landdrost and myself: that is to say, M. Van der Byl, of Paarl; M. Winterbach, a relation of the landdrost, and private secretary to him; and the Messenger Mong, a native of Breslau. On the first of May, our three baggage-waggons set off. They were packed with tents, field-beds, and other camp appendages; a stock of biscuit, dried fruits, flour, and provisions of various kinds; kitchen utensils, plenty of wine, brandy and vinegar; some chests, containing articles necessary for carrying on our traffic with the savages; and, finally, my geometrical apparatus, and every thing necessary for prosecuting my researches in natural history. The waggons were to take the route by the Hex river, the passage over the Witsemberg, and even through Mostertshoek, being now dangerous for heavy loaded waggons. The overseer of the waggons had orders to proceed to the cold Bokkeveld, and there to wait for us.

We ourselves departed from Tulbagh on the seventh of May. In three hours and a half we reached the place of the Field-Cornet Müller, at the foot

of the Mostertshoek, where a number of horses for the whole party were in waiting. After partaking of a good breakfast, we mounted them, and proceeded on our way. Mostertshoek, properly so called, is the southern end of the steep wall of mountains which bear the name of Witseberg. Here the Schurfdeberge, which also has its course from the north, joins the Witseberg; and here, moreover, the latter is joined by the hills of the Hex river: this river, and the mountains above it, having previously taken the names of the Breede river, and the Black Mountain. Mostertshoek is only separated from the Black Mountain by a deep chasm, through which runs the Breede river. This river rises in the Bokkeveld. The whole form of this chasm shews that it must have proceeded from some very violent cause. All parts of the neighbouring hills decline in an oblique direction towards it, as if the whole mass had sunk here together. Large blocks of stone, torn from the heights, and rolled down into the gulph below, or lodged on the slope by the way, seeming to menace at every moment a farther fall, are fearful evidences of some former violent concussion. At first the pass runs in an easterly direction; but about the midst of it, near a lukewarm spring which issues from the rock, it takes a turn to the north, and terminates, after many windings, at the plain of the warm Bokkeveld. A road, made forty years ago, by a certain John Mostert, goes sometimes on one side of the river, sometimes on the other, according as the ground is most favourable for it, and consequently crosses the river several times. The fords are very inconvenient from the large and smooth stones which form the bottom of the river; horses unaccustomed to them are very liable to stumble, and fall, or remain with their feet stuck between the stones, from which it is difficult to disengage them.

With heavy rains, the kloof is sometimes rendered impassable, and that even for two or three days. Our journey, which originally had been fixed to begin on the third, was delayed on account of the waters; and even now, it was not without some difficulty and danger that we got through the pass. We were, however, in a great degree repaid for the dangers incurred, by the glorious sight which the stream afforded us, in the water tumbling and foaming over the masses of rock. Towards the end of the pass, the road quits the side of the stream, and goes above the right bank along a rocky terrace in the front of the Schurfdeberge. Here are some very steep places, which are

very fatiguing to the oxen. Ours were soon exhausted, notwithstanding that the loads were not heavy, and that an additional pair of oxen were allowed to each waggon. When the highest point is reached, the road descends for about a quarter of an hour, before it comes absolutely to the plain.

This plain is called the Warm Bokkeveld, and is one of the most fertile and finest parts of the colony. It forms nearly a parallelogram, which is enclosed every way by high hills. In length, from east to west, it is four hours, and in breadth, from north to south, three. The mountains of the Hex river form the eastern side; to the north are the heights of the Cold Bokkeveld, to the west the Schurfederge, and to the south the Black Mountain. This plain is about a hundred and fifty feet higher than that of Tulbagh, but several hundred feet lower than the lowest part of the Cold Bokkeveld. The climate is, the whole year through, tolerably temperate; and it is a common observation, that a true European air is felt here. In the most severe winters the Warm Bokkeveld is habitable, and in summer the heat is never insupportable. During my present visit, the thermometer stood, in the morning at sun-rise, at eight degrees of Reaumur, and about noon had risen to seventeen. From the climate being so temperate, several sorts of European fruit, as apples, pears, plums, and others, thrive better here than in any other part of the colony: cherries seem the chosen product of this district, and the lower parts of the Cold Bokkeveld. The pastures are excellent, and the cattle particularly fine; the sheep are also better here than in the Cold Bokkeveld.

The oaks were strikingly more green in these higher regions than below in the vallies, and the southern fruits were only now thoroughly ripe. At the house of the Civic Justice, Francis Van der Merwe, where we stayed this evening and the next day, very fine grapes were set before us; whereas at Tulbagh, and in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, the season for them had been over some time. We saw here, standing among a number of very fine orange-trees, a fig-tree, the stem of which measured more than a foot in diameter. Our host assured us, however, that there were many in the same district much thicker. One in particular he mentioned, belonging to a neighbour at no great distance, which could not measure less than three feet in diameter. Afterwards, in talking with M. Van der Riet, the landdrost of Stellenbosch, about this extraordinary tree, he said he had measured it

himself, and found it eleven Rhenish feet in circumference. The farmers here sow their barley in January, that they may have food for their horses, in case the fields should be covered with snow in the winter. Not that the barley sowed in January is ripe so soon: the horses eat it green, mixed with the ripe barley and chaff. This is considered as very strengthening and wholesome food.

The Warm Bokkeveld contains eleven farms, which are almost all, without exception, very fertile. On the best of them are tolerable plantations of oaks and poplars, which yield a competent supply of wood. The climate seems to have a very benignant influence upon the inhabitants of this district: they are, generally speaking, stronger, more active, and more peaceable in their manners than in several other parts of the colony. They would resemble the inhabitants of the Snow Mountains very much, were it not that their being so near the principal town, and the constantly increasing population, render their manners much more refined. Here again I found bigotry a very distinguishing feature of the character. One is at first pleased to discover, in all their modes of expressing themselves, a tone and manner that savours more of education than could be expected; but it soon becomes apparent that all is the effect of habit, and that nothing is to be ascribed to intentional polish. One of the neighbours endeavoured to make himself of more importance in our eyes, by repeating, before every meal, with great pathos, and in the true church tone, a long speech which he had learned by heart. It might easily be recognised as a fragment out of some old sermon.

We were shewn here, as a remarkable thing, a tame quagga: he was feeding in the meadows with the horses, and suffered himself readily to be stroked and caressed by the people about. His spirit of freedom was, however, not yet so far subdued as that he would suffer himself to be rode. He was only kept by his owner for the purpose of making experiments in improving his breed of horses.

On the morning of the tenth of May we left this place, and went directly through the Warm Bokkeveld to the north-east corner, where springs the little river Bussinka. Here this district, which had, till then, been quite level, begins to be more hilly: vast masses of rock rise one above another in an amphitheatral form, the upper ranges of which, being not so deep as the lower ones, consequently the level terraces being much oftener repeated,

the true representation is given of what the Africans call ring-mountains. Many of these mountains, the flats of which are formed by a direct angle, when viewed from below, have the perfect appearance of artificial works of fortification, and remind the German traveller strongly of the fortresses of Königstein and Ehrenbreitstein. The mountains, of which these hills are the base, form an inaccessible wall between the Warm Bokkeveld and the Hex river valley. It is impossible to go from the one to the other, without making a very great circuit by the Cold Bokkeveld.

Among these hills runs the road, leading to the heights which form the Cold Bokkeveld. This road lies in a north-easterly direction, and is, in some places, very steep. The first place here, is six hundred feet higher than the plain of the Warm Bokkeveld. It is called Lakenvalley, and belongs to a certain Peter Van der Merwe, who, by way of distinction from his numerous relations, is generally known by the name of Peter Lakenvalley, and, under this name, acknowledged to be one of the most worthy and estimable among the colonists. We were here, as persons under the employ of the government, not only entertained in the most sumptuous manner, but our visit was rendered very pleasant by the jovial good-humour of our host. He related to us a great many stories of his contentions for several years both within and without the colony; and furnished us, by this means, with various hints which proved in the sequel of great utility to us. Although this man was now sixty-six years of age, he was uncommonly healthy and active, and attended himself to all the most trifling details of his very extensive establishment. He was father to a very large family of children. His eldest son was the same Roelof whom we visited upon the Hex river, a man more than forty years of age, and already a grandfather. The youngest son of our host was a fine boy of only eight years old. We celebrated here the eve of a wedding. Lakenvalley's youngest daughter, a girl of seventeen, was to set off the next morning, accompanied by her bridegroom, and a large company of brothers, sisters, and other relations, for Tulbagh, at the same hour that we were to proceed northwards, to complete the marriage contract, according to all the proper forms, before the commissary of the place. Formerly this ceremony could only be performed in the Cape Town. From every part of the colony, hither they must come. Thus, as Mr. Barrow justly remarks, many a long and tedious journey was undertaken to do an act which had so many things

adverse to it. In consequence of the new organization of the colony, the contract could now be made at the principal place of the district, before the landdrost and the civil magistrate. This approaching marriage, and our journey together, had drawn a large concourse of the neighbours to the house, who all considered our journey to the Briquas as a very dangerous undertaking. Their parting wish was, universally, that they might see us return again alive.

After a journey of a few hours, the next morning we reached the place of the Field-Cornet Bruel, of Uitkomst, the delightful situation of which has been described in the first part of my first volume.\* We found here the waggons, which we had sent on before. They had been waiting for us two days. We set forwards in company with them immediately. From thence to the *Karrooport*, the gate to the Karroo, is a little hour. This is a narrow pass between two high rocks, which is also mentioned in the first part of my work.† In quitting this defile, a considerable part of the monstrous Karroo plain is spread out before us. Three insulated hills immediately catch the eye; the Towerberg (*Enchanted Mountain*) in the east towards the south,—the Paardeberg in the east-north-east-half-east,—and the Zoutpanskopjes (*Salt-Pans' Cups*) in the north-north-east. The latter is the smallest of the three, and is particularly distinguishable, from its summit being divided into two inverted cups. From this circumstance, and from a small salt lake in its vicinity, the name is derived. When the inhabitants of the Roggevelds and the Bokkevelds are at their *Legplatze* in the Karroo, for the winter, they are supplied with salt from this lake. The farther end of the Karroo plain to the north, at the distance of about ten hours from hence, is bounded by another hill, which is considerably lower than the summits of the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld mountains. The plain of the Karroo itself is lower than the valleys of the Cold Bokkeveld. The latter plain is calculated to be, upon an average, as high above the sea as the level of the Table Mountain.

We had hoped, that, in consequence of the abundant rain which had fallen, we should find the Karroo tolerably green; but, to our sorrow, we were disappointed in this hope. The rains had not yet extended so far, and

---

\* See p. 127 of the English Translation.

† See also p. 127 of the English Translation, where the pass is called the *Bokkeveldspoort*.

the ground was almost as much parched as when I travelled the same way in the hot season of the year. Only the succulent plants, as the *channas*, the *mesembryantheums*, the *euphorbia*, and some others, were beginning just to put forth their little buds of green. Indeed, this gave us no very pleasing earnest of what we might expect farther northwards. It filled us with considerable apprehensions, both as to the possibility of not finding a supply of water and of food for our horses and oxen.

After travelling five hours over a very good and level road along the Karroo, we reached the foot of the Paardeberge abovementioned, near which is a small spring, and an Ausspannplatze, which bears the name of Pretoriskraal. Here we pitched our tents, and stopped for the night. I found a very beautiful plant scattered about, the only one in blow in the whole field. It belonged to the lily family, of which there is such great variety in this country; but was so different in its structure from any I had yet seen, that it led me to suspect it to be wholly new, and that it had been overlooked by all botanical travellers before me, on account of the unfavourable season at which it blows. Later researches have confirmed this supposition. At our return I found both fruit and seeds upon this plant.\*

Before the moon was gone down, we set off again; and the rising sun, the next day, found us at some distance from the place where we had passed the night. About nine o'clock we reached the first height, at which commences the northern hilly part of the Karroo. This height becomes, after some time, perpendicular, and, towards the summit, even projects forwards; so that the name of the *Hanglip* has been given to it. The same name is borne by a much more considerable rock, of a similar figure, at the southeastern end of False Bay. The hill runs on from hence to the Ongeluk river, into which, in heavy rains, all the waters from its southern chasms flow. One of the principal branches of this river, which comes almost from the top of the hill, is called the Juk river. For the greatest part of the year all

---

\* Count Von Hoffmannsegg, and Professor Willdenow, of Berlin, who undertook the examination of my collection of plants, recognised in this a new species; and the latter gave a description and engraving of it in the *Berlin Society's Friend to the Enquirer into Nature for the Year 1807*, under the name of *Lichtensteinia undulata*. The generic character is *hexandria tryginia*. I found another sort of this species afterwards at the Orange river. To that was given the name of *Lichtensteinia levigata*.

these channels are dry. In winter alone here and there a very sparing spring trickles from among the stones, and wherever such an one is to be found, a winter habitation is established near it. Some of these places were already inhabited by their owners. They complained to us with tears, of the unusual drought of this year, of the murrain among the horses, and of the new roads made by the Bosjesmans, which rendered it impossible for them to remain at their usual dwelling-places on the borders, and compelled them to come down so early to the Karroo, while yet there was scarcely any food for their cattle, and still less a tolerable supply of water. They were almost afraid, they said, that, under such circumstances, they should lose the greatest part of their stock.

We soon arrived upon the height, when we found ourselves separated from another hill by a valley about an hour in breadth, through which winds a periodical stream, of the same nature as that above-described, the Goudebloems river—(*Golden-flower*.) It has this name from the abundance of *gasteria*, gold-flowers, which grow upon its banks, and gild them over in the rainy season. In order to find water for our horses, which were now somewhat wearied with travelling for nine hours, we went out of the road, to the banks of the river; and, after a short half hour, arrived at an uninhabited house near a tolerably copious spring. The house was open, and in one place were some old kitchen utensils, of which we immediately took possession, and applied them to our use. Some barrels and chests served us as chairs and tables; a sieve of parchment, with holes bored through it, was fixed into an opening, and made to supply the place of a window. Other inconveniences being got rid of by similar devices, the offspring of necessity, we found ourselves at length so well accommodated in this lonely place, that we resolved to remain there that night and the next day, especially as we here found, what we so much wanted, good provender for our horses. We also cleaned out the spring, which was very much fouled both by plants and animals; and, by this means, obtained at length a sufficient supply of very drinkable water.

In the hot season of the year, the usual road between the Roggeveld and the inhabited parts of the colony is almost closed up, from the great scarcity of water. A considerable circuit must then be made through the Little Roggeveld, and over the Koinberg. We were, on this account, instructed

by the Governor to seek out some place in the Karroo, where water might be had at any part of the year, for the establishment of an inn as a place of rest half way for travellers, at all times and seasons, in crossing this inhospitable waste, and a storehouse for furnishing them with supplies of food. As we learnt that the united springs here were never dried up the whole year through; and that, if they were properly attended to, and kept regularly cleaned out, the supply of water would be much more abundant, we did not hesitate to recommend this spot as suited to the object in view. The idea was about to be carried into execution, a plan was sketched for erecting buildings adapted to the purpose, and the intention was, that some invalid soldier, or subaltern officer, should be placed at the head of the institution, when the invasion of the English, and the conquest of the colony by them, put an end to the plan; one which would have been of very great advantage to the inhabitants of these northern boundaries. The want of such a place, where travellers through the Karroo can stop to rest, is so great, that the English government can scarcely entirely lose sight of it. The soil seems constantly more fertile, the more we descend; and the spacious *kraals* for the cattle, now empty, shewed plainly what large herds the inhabitants were accustomed to bring thither in the winter.

On going to our rest, we were warned by our guides to be upon our guard against the poisonous lizards, which, at this time of the year, abound in old walls and forsaken houses. They are known by the name of *geitjes*, and are the terror of the people all around. I was very desirous of obtaining an accurate acquaintance with these ill-famed animals, and offered a trifling recompence to any person who would furnish me with a subject for so doing. My wishes were, however, wholly disappointed. I never could succeed in procuring one. I learnt afterwards, that it is very doubtful whether the creature is as venomous as he is represented; and whether the mortal wounds, of which examples were cited to me, were really given by the *geitjes*. The colonists are exceedingly credulous as to every thing that concerns the healing or noxious nature of the animals around them, clinging to curious prejudices with regard to them, many of which are founded only in the agreeable or disagreeable exterior of the animal. They hold that there is no creature more noxious than the *sphinx atropos*, or *death's-head-moth*; though, in examining it, it is impossible to find, even supposing it to be

poisonous in its nature, that it is provided with any means of inflicting a wound. In the same manner all serpents and lizards are considered by them as venomous, although there are many sorts of both perfectly innocuous. The *geitje* is, however, too often represented as the most dangerous of the lizard tribe, not to presume that there must be some truth in the idea. It must, notwithstanding, be observed, that I never could find any well-authenticated instance of their being thus noxious; that the animal is far from common; and that the descriptions given of it are very contradictory. These contradictions appear to me a sufficient proof, that if it be ever poisonous, it is only under particular circumstances, and that the wounds given by it are never mortal.

The next day we had another hill to ascend, which lies also in the Karroo, and bears the name of the *Windheuvel*, or Wind Hill. It has a very flat and wide-spread summit, on which was an empty winter habitation, without any trace of water near it. While we were yet at some distance, we saw a thick smoke ascending from it; and, as we approached, we perceived that the dung of the cattle, in all the kraals about the house, was burning. Probably some travellers had thoughtlessly made a fire in one of them, and neglected to extinguish it at quitting the place. This dung, which is often two feet in thickness when trodden down and dry, burns like turf for months, nay, for a year together; and it is very difficult, nay, almost impossible, to extinguish it. Even after a heavy rain, a kraal, which has thus been set on fire, will only smoke the more violently; and, with every change of wind, the fire revives again more briskly than before. The damage done to the owner by such a conflagration is very considerable, since nothing remains but to make new kraals; and this cannot be effected without much trouble and great expence, from the difficulty of getting stakes and faggot-wood for enclosing them, and the distance that they must be transported when procured.

On the other side of the *Windheuvel*, the number of winter habitations was constantly increasing. We rested in one of them at noon, and farther on pursued our course along the dry bed of the *Tanqua*, the first stream of any note that we had come to in these parts. In the rainy season it receives its waters from the nearest hills, pursuing its course from the *Little Roggeveld* quite to the *Thorn river*. Its breadth is considerable in many places. It is regarded as the most dangerous river of the district; and, in its overflowings, not un-

frequently destroys the gardens, and greatly damages the houses of the inhabitants. It has, notwithstanding, never hitherto been noticed in any map of the colony.

In a winter habitation, at the foot of the Roggeveld mountains, where we arrived in the evening, we found a number of the most considerable inhabitants of the Roggeveld assembled. Instead of learning that the relays of oxen which had been ordered were here in waiting for us, we were received with excuses, lamentations, and disastrous intelligence. The Bosjesmans had recently been very active in their marauding parties. More than two hundred head of cattle, and a much larger number of sheep, had been driven away by them; several of the herdsmen and shepherds had been murdered, and the inhabitants of the borders had fled into the still parched Karroo, that their lives might be in the greater security. From Tulbagh we had dispatched one of our most trusty Hottentots on foot to the Roggeveld, to bespeak relays for us, and to announce our intended journey to the Sack river, that the Bosjesmans might repair thither to the proposed conference. Some paper-money, and some letters which he had carried with him, were now brought to us, having been taken from his corpse. He had been found by a farmer who was travelling that way two days before, lying on the ground covered with arrows, in a place where a narrow path winds among the chain of hills, where consequently he could, with more security, be assailed by the wretches with their poisoned weapons. They had carried away his musket and powder-horn, but had only cut the buttons from his clothes.

This disastrous circumstance could not but awaken many reflections in our minds. The information of our proposed journey not having, by this means, arrived at the Sack river at the time intended, the whole business must necessarily be delayed: while the timidity of the colonists, and the more than usual boldness shewn on this occasion by the Bosjesmans, might throw still greater hindrances in our way. All these reflections were at first absorbed in our deep regrets at the loss of our honest servant, who was devoted to us with his whole soul, and who besides left a wife and children. Proper methods of obviating all these difficulties must, however, be thought of. But we had not yet heard all. Some endeavoured to persuade us, that, under such circumstances, it was impossible to think of prosecuting our

journey. No one could be so foolish, they said, as to be our guide, or to suffer their sons to serve as our escort: a strong detachment must be sent against the Bosjesmans, who would be able to drive them away by main force. The landdrost, however, explicitly declared that he should abide by the commands he had received: he should only add to the party six or eight of the most able-bodied young men that were to be procured, whom he should seek for immediately, and fifteen Hottentots. With this small number, he said, he would repair to the Sack river, and even much farther; not to subdue the Bosjesmans by force, but to endeavour, by mildness, to bring them to reason. Yet here new difficulties arose. The murrain had raged among the horses very much for the last month, so that their numbers were greatly diminished; while those that remained were weak and poor in flesh, from the drought of the summer; consequently by no means in a situation to undertake so long a journey. Nowhere would pasture for them be found; and, beyond the Sack river, not a drop of water was to be expected. We were resolute, however, to investigate the extent of these difficulties ourselves; and in the night sent forwards to the nearest farm, with orders that relays of oxen for our waggons should be dispatched to us the next morning.

With these we set off immediately, and arrived in a few hours, after experiencing all the usual toils and troubles, at the top of the mountains. A very extensive prospect is here presented to the eye of the traveller. At his feet lies the monstrous Karroo, the hills in which now seemed nothing more than spots in the vast plain. They might easily be overlooked, from their extreme disproportion with the point from which they were viewed, and with the mountains of the Hex river towering in the south. At the farthest verge of the horizon, glistened like a cloud just discernible in the clear winter air, the summit of the Black Mountain above Zwelendam. After contemplating this noble scene awhile, we proceeded onwards, and soon arrived on a perfectly level space, not far from the spot where, a year and a half before, I had encountered the largest flock of ostriches that I ever saw together. At some distance to the north, very high hills were again to be discerned, and the little stream which we crossed seemed to run towards them: a proof that the ground was on the descent, though so gradually as to be scarcely perceptible.

## CHAP. XLI.

*The Jackal's Fountain.—Disagreements among the Colonists.—Trial of the Field-Cornet Olivier.—His Honourable Acquittal, and Reinstatement in his Office.—Visit from a party of Caffres.—The Rosin Tree.—Farther Depredations of the Bosjesmans.—The Bonteberg.—The Riet River.—Extraordinary Manner in which a Lion was killed by the Colonist Van Wyk.—Seldery Fountain.—Channa kraal.—Great Draught of Fish.—Quagga Fountain.—Sack River's Gate.—Kicherer's Missionary Institution.—The Missionary Christian Botma.*

THE first farm that we reached is called Jackal's Fountain. Here we pitched our tents for some days, to prepare every thing for the prosecution of our journey. In the first place, we sent the Governor information of the situation of things, requesting that his farther commands might be forwarded to us at the Sack river. The young men who were required to accompany us on our journey were then sent for. They appeared with their fathers, intreating that they might be released from the service. However plausible were the excuses they made, it was so impossible for us to forego their assistance, that we could not give them any attention. The Governor's orders were positive that the journey should be performed; it was our business to find the means of performing it, nor could the colonists be permitted to shake off the burden. The only thing to be done was, to take all possible care, that it should not press particularly upon any one individual more than another. From one, therefore, his son was required; from another, a couple of Hottentots; from another, a team of oxen; another contributed his best hunting-horse; and others furnished different stores for our bodily consumption. Messengers well-armed were sent anew to the Sack river, to announce our being on the way thither; and there to assemble the inhabitants of the border.

Our ears were here assailed anew with complaints from the colonists of the losses they had sustained from the Bosjesmans, from the murrain among the horses, and from the extreme drought of the last four months. There

was no end of these murmurings and lamentations: we could not get on with our business. Messengers came from the Nieuweveld, to say, that on that side also formidable inroads had recently been made by the Bosjesmans. Fifteen hundred sheep, and a hundred cattle, had, within the space of three weeks, been driven away by them. They also begged assistance, and that a strong body of soldiers might accompany us. The latter was refused, but the landdrost gave them hopes that by his presence the Bosjesmans might be won over to more peaceable behaviour. It would indeed have been unpardonable cowardice, if we had yielded to the representations of these people, and turned back. At no time was the presence of a magistrate on the spot more urgent, to suppress the licentious conduct of these savages, and to restrain the colonists from seeking to revenge themselves. The latter were at length forced to acknowledge, that a large escort would be of no use, on account of the want of horses and ammunition; and that their own interests demanded that they should give every possible assistance in promoting the prosecution of our meritorious undertaking.

We could not, however, proceed on our way, without first reconciling some lamentable misunderstandings, by which these men rendered their unfortunate situation still more calamitous, in associating to furious inroads from without, strifes and dissensions within. This was one of the most important objects of our undertaking, and was too pressing to be delayed till our return. Most of the colonists here had entirely thrown off all obedience to the Field-Cornet of the district, legally appointed by the government: they made heavy complaints of him, and demanded his removal. It had long before appeared to me, that the under-magistrates, chosen from among the colonists, had very little respect shewn them by the rest; and that they must either, contrary to the intentions of the government, forego the rights with which they were invested; or, if they performed their duties strictly, must incur the universal hatred and ill-will of their fellow-citizens.

In this last predicament stood the Field-Cornet in question, Gerrit Marits, who, from his age, his intelligence, and his punctuality in the discharge of his duty, well deserved the office he held. But he was poor; and it was an offence not to be pardoned by his richer neighbours, that one less wealthy than themselves should be set above them. Besides this, he neglected to court the favour of the missionaries and the pious women; and

he was therefore persecuted by them with the bitterest hatred. Chance so ordered, that he, one Sunday afternoon, charged by the government with the commission, summoned several of the colonists to attend a juridical examination, at the very moment when they were assembled at their social devotions, where a person, by name Heenop, presided as reader or preacher. This man was one of the Field-Cornet's most determined adversaries; and, although he waited till the devotions were concluded before he opened his commission, the pious divine immediately began a new sermon against sabbath-breaking, and exhorted the persons summoned to resist the ill-timed requisition. The whole assembly, on this, unanimously declared that they would receive no farther commands from the Field-Cornet, and compelled him, in a tumultuary manner, to quit the house. A letter which he wrote to the landdrost upon the subject was intercepted, broke open, and circulated among the inhabitants; with an agreement affixed to it for their signature, by which they all bound themselves no longer to be *tormented to death* by the hard services which he required of them. These services, however, consisted only in occasionally furnishing a horse or a yoke of oxen for expediting a messenger on the public business.

Accustomed as these people were to an unbridled freedom, it did not probably occur to them, that this agreement was a completely revolutionary measure: for it was remitted, without the least hesitation, to the landdrost, with a long catalogue of grievances against the Field-Cornet. So determined indeed were they to abide by the resolution entered into no longer to yield obedience to his commands, that we discovered afterwards, this, and this alone, was the true cause of our not finding the relays of oxen which had been ordered for us against our arrival. No sooner did we arrive at the Jackal's Fountain, than a shower of *Verklaaringen*, as they are called, was poured in upon us; in which it was asserted, that Marits was an unjust magistrate, an unrighteous Christian, one who disowned the laws of God, and an unfaithful subject of the government:—moreover, that ten years before, at the time of the disturbances in Graaff Reynett, he had worn the tri-coloured cockade. The colonist Heenop, who lived only upon going from house to house, teaching people how to pray, happened to be at present on this spot, and brought in his complaint with the rest. Marits was cited before the landdrost, and appeared, notwithstanding the infirmities of his

age, and that he was but just recovered from a severe illness. A formal trial was instituted, at which the landdrost presided. The cause was opened by M. Winterbach; and M. Van der Byl, with myself, were the counsel. Our tent was laid open on both sides, and a great number of the peasants were collected round it, that they might hear all that passed. The whole was carried on with great regularity, and no bitter expressions against the accused were permitted to break out.

The Field-Cornet defended himself with great steadiness and composure. A principal article of accusation against him was, that he had embezzled the property of the government; having retained, for his own use, one of the waggons belonging to Mr. Trüter, in his journey to the Briquas. Against this charge he justified himself, by producing a letter from Mr. Barrow, under his own hand, in which he makes him a present of this waggou, with some other things, as an acknowledgment of the services he had rendered the party. In like manner he shewed very clearly, that most of the complaints urged against him were either absolute forgeries, or facts wholly perverted in the representation made of them. On one point alone he could not entirely justify himself, that he sometimes delegated his command to one or other of his friends. After three different sittings, in which our patience was very much exercised by the absurd assertions which fell from the bigotted and lawless peasants, on a summing up of the charges and the defence, the case was very easily decided: that Marits should return to his office, with renewed power; that all his orders should, in future, be punctually obeyed; and that all which had passed hitherto should be forgiven and forgotten. It was not without a great deal of trouble, that most of the people could be made to comprehend, that obedience to those in authority, and reconciliation with those with whom we had been at variance, were as essential parts of Christianity, as praying, and singing hymns. Some of the more reasonable, however, now convinced that too much had been said against the accused, solicited a reconciliation joyfully, and in good earnest; the rest followed their example, some from prudence, some from necessity. On the following day we gave a dinner to the principal people in our tent; on which occasion the pious Heenop did not fail to make a long prayer at sitting down to table, returning thanks solemnly that peace was restored among the company.

While we were celebrating this festival of reconciliation, a troop of Caffres suddenly made their appearance before us. Exceedingly amazed to see a party of these people at such a distance from the eastern border of the colony, we hastened up to them, and learnt that they belonged to an emigrant horde, who had now for several years, lived at the sources of the Chamka. Their chief had taken the name of Hendrik, and was in the habit of sending some of his people hither almost every year to beg live cattle, and any other kind of food they could procure. As they behaved with great decorum, and seemed very peaceably disposed,—as they had, moreover, brought with them some trifles, such as their baskets, and carved gourd-shells, &c. &c. to traffic with, they were received with complacency, and some supernumerary sheep were given to them. As they were now come earlier than in former years, they gave as a reason for such a premature visit, that they also had suffered from the Bosjesmans; and, from having been plundered by them, were reduced to very great want. Some were quite in a rage when they talked of the Bosjesmans, and wanted to have the whole nation extirpated with fire and sword. The party consisted of three men and eight women, with a number of children, who were tied fast upon the oxen. Though they had now been for a long time separated from their countrymen, they had not lost that very distinctive characteristic of the Caffres,—their importunate solicitation for whatever they saw. They begged, if not obstinately, yet unceasingly, for some contributions to their already tolerably large flocks of sheep, as well as for several utensils of different kinds, which they saw in our waggons, or in the house of the colonist.

Some of the people complained grievously to the landdrost of these importunate visits of the Caffres, whom they did not dare to drive away by force, lest they should raise themselves up a new enemy. On this our worthy magistrate desired that the three men might be called, when he ordered them to tell their chief, that the government were exceedingly displeased with the frequent visits made by them to the Roggeveld; that they were particularly angry at their coming this year, when the Christians themselves, being very much in want, it was not to be expected that they could have any thing to give the Caffres. If they (the Caffres) were not in a situation to maintain themselves, in the place they then inhabited, by means of their cattle, and other objects of industry, they had better hire themselves to the colonists as

servants. Idle people, he said, were not to be endured in the colony, much less swarms of them roving about together; and he therefore gave them warning, either to quit the country directly, and return among their own people, or to expect that they would be compelled to support themselves by their industry; and that they would be made useful to the state at the expense of their liberty.

At length, on the seventeenth of May, every thing was ready for proceeding on our journey, and the very same evening, when the moon rose, our waggons were sent forwards. During the four days that we remained here, a very cold north-west wind had blown over the plain, which, towards noon, rose so high, that we had some difficulty to keep our tents standing. In the morning and evening it was tolerably still; but the air was so cold, that the thermometer sunk to sixty degrees by Reaumur; while about noon, when the atmosphere was clear, and the sun shone bright, it stood, even in the shade, at seventeen or eighteen. The nights being long, and the air of such a temperature, the growth of the plants was visible every day, notwithstanding the continued want of rain. In the neighbourhood of the Jackal's Fountain were growing among the rocks several sorts of *oxalis*, and of the smallest species of *ixia*; that is to say, the *ixia rosea*, *bulbocodium*, and *tortuosa*. Besides these, I found hereabouts *ornithogalum parviflora*, several *melanthia*, and many plants of the *syngenesia* tribe; as *aster*, *relhamia*, *cotula*, *mussinia*, *gorteria*, *berkheya*, *arctotis*, and *othonna*. Near the spring the *anania laserpitifolia* was in blow, and higher up, the slopes were almost all ornamented with a shrub, which grows from two feet to three feet and a half high, called by the colonists *harpuisbosjes*, the rosin tree, and held in great esteem by them. At the time when it is in blossom, which it was now, a considerable quantity of a sort of rosin, or bitumen, exudes from it; which, hardened into a sort of beads, covers the young boughs almost entirely. This exudation the colonists consider as a true balsam for the cure of wounds, and as such it is eagerly collected by them. It is very glutinous, quite transparent, and has a strong smell. When quite dry, it is covered over with a white powder; and it dissolves entirely in spirit of wine. A salve is prepared from it, which is almost the only specific for wounds ever made use of by the colonists. Although the Roggeveld was frequently visited by Thunberg, he probably never saw this plant in blow, since it is not mentioned in any of

his botanical writings. Professor Willdenow pronounced it a *cineraria*, and called the two sorts which grow together here promiscuously, *cineraria resinifera*, and *polygaloides*. Both have the same properties, only the latter is smaller than the former.

At the very next farm we visited, as we proceeded onwards, we were greeted with fresh complaints against the Bosjesmans. The wife only was at home: the husband had rode out with his Hottentots, in hopes of recovering some cattle stolen the preceding night by the savages. During our momentary stay, several waggons, with the colonists, and their effects, passed by. They had fled their usual habitations, and urgently exhorted every body not to remain any longer in the Roggeveld. The Kuilenburgs river was our place of rest at noon. From hence, the ground began to decline towards the north; and passing through the Little Riet river's gate, we arrived before night at the place of a colonist by name Van Wyk. As the following part of the way was one of the most dangerous, as it was extremely dark, and as a heavy rain fell, we resolved to pitch our tents here for the night, contrary to our original intention. Here again the people were in the same story: nothing was to be heard but complaints of the Bosjesmans. A few days before, they had plundered our host of almost his whole stock, and driven away the people who were attending upon them, with the loss of their muskets. Van Wyk, however, followed them so closely, that he recovered his cattle, without being obliged to fire a shot. The savages fled when they saw him, but not till after they had hamstrung three of the oxen. Van Wyk had quitted his proper habitation, and come hither, where he was more out of the way of these marauders, till there should be water at his winter house in the Karroo. We visited his family in a wretched kind of hut, which was built upon the ruins of a larger house. On account of the cold, the wife and children had got round a charcoal fire. The latter cried and trembled whenever the Bosjesmans were mentioned.

When we arose in the morning, and went out of our tents, we found the whole surface of the ground white with hoar-frost; a thick fog was spread over the plain, and the water in our saucepans was frozen as thick as the little finger. To most of our company this was a perfectly new sight; and the astonishment of our slaves, who had never seen any thing like it, either at Mozambique or in the Cape Town, afforded us infinite entertainment. It

was utterly incomprehensible to them how they could take water in their hands as a solid mass. They made a hundred experiments with it, holding it up against the light, sticking it in the fire, endeavouring to bite and to chew it: they were just like a group of children.

About ten o'clock the sun broke out, the fog dispersed, and a beautiful clear winter air succeeded. While the plain glistened with the dew, the hills still remained white for a time; till, by degrees, the sun cleared them also, and the melancholy dark hue of the masses of rock came forth. Our attention was particularly called to the highest of the mountains about us, the Bonteberg, which lay nearly a mile to the east, and which we were informed was one of the great lurking places of the Bosjesmans. There is only one way, and that a very difficult one, of getting to the flat summit, where there is a spring. Of this circumstance the Bosjesmans avail themselves, and drive the stolen cattle up, there, whence nobody is in a situation to drive them down again. If they find themselves pursued, they skulk among the clefts in the rocks; and the colour of their bodies resembles that of the rocks so much, that they are in no danger of being discovered. They can, therefore, unperceived, assail their pursuers with a shower of arrows, without their having the least idea that a single enemy is at hand. The ascent to the mountain is so steep, that it is difficult to conceive how they succeed in driving the oxen up. It can only be done by pricking and goading them with their hassagais. On feeling them, the poor tortured animals are glad to put forth all their strength.

Not far from hence, the river breaks itself a way through the mountains, forming a pass of about three quarters of an hour in length. This is called the Riet river's Gate. The road lies along the banks of the river, the high reeds preventing the bed of the river itself, which does not very often contain water, from being used as a road. On the other side of the pass, where again is a large plain, in the deeper parts of the river's bed, was some water; but it was strongly impregnated with salt, and about the banks the ground was covered with a thick rind of natron. At no time of the year are these *kuilen*, as they are called, wholly destitute of water; but the quantity increases in winter, even without rain, and the water loses its salt flavour very much.

Near one of these pits was the proper habitation of Van Wyk. On account of the weakness of our horses, he had lent us some of his oxen to

assist in conveying us on to the next place where we were to stop. While our oxen were grazing awhile, and we sought the shade within the door of his house, he related to us the following history. "It is now," he said, "more than two years since, in the very place where we stand, I ventured to take one of the most daring shots that ever was hazarded. My wife was sitting within the house, near the door; the children were playing about her, and I was without, near the house, busied in doing something to a waggon; when, suddenly, though it was mid-day, an enormous lion appeared, came up, and laid himself quietly down in the shade, upon the very threshold of the door. My wife, either frozen with fear, or aware of the danger attending any attempt to fly, remained motionless in her place, while the children took refuge in her lap. The cry they uttered attracted my attention, and I hastened towards the door; but my astonishment may well be conceived when I found the entrance to it barred in such a way. Although the animal had not seen me, unarmed as I was, escape seemed impossible; yet I glided gently, scarcely knowing what I meant to do, to the side of the house, up to the window of my chamber, where I knew my loaded gun was standing. By a most happy chance, I had set it into the corner close by the window, so that I could reach it with my hand; for, as you may perceive, the opening is too small to admit of my having got in; and, still more fortunately, the door of the room was open, so that I could see the whole danger of the scene. The lion was beginning to move, perhaps with the intention of making a spring. There was no longer any time to think: I called softly to the mother not to be alarmed, and, invoking the name of the Lord, fired my piece. The ball passed directly over the hair of my boy's head, and lodged in the forehead of the lion, immediately above his eyes, which shot forth, as it were, sparks of fire, and stretched him on the ground, so that he never stirred more."—Indeed, we all shuddered as we listened to this relation. Never, as he himself observed, was a more daring attempt hazarded. Had he failed in his aim, mother and children were all inevitably lost. If the boy had moved, he had been struck; the least turn in the lion, and the shot had not been mortal to him. To have taken an aim at him from without was impossible, for the shadow of any one advancing in the bright sun would have betrayed him: while, to consummate the whole, the head of the creature was, in some sort, protected by the door-post.

Another circumstance, of a very different kind, rendered this spot doubly remarkable to me, that very near the house, in a large block of stone, I found a very fine *prehnite*, which perhaps had only come there by chance, since the people of the country seemed wholly unacquainted with this sort of stone. Late in the evening of this day we reached the Seldery Fountain, where we found a waggon sent by the Field-Cornet Olivier, with a view to its being dispatched to the Cape Town, for a supply of powder and ball to fit out a company of soldiers as a defence against the Bosjesmans. The Field-Cornet, not expecting to see the landdrost in these parts, had addressed a letter to him, in which he made known his ideas and wishes; urging many new robberies and murders committed by the savages as reasons for what he requested. After some conversation upon the subject, the landdrost agreed that the waggon, with the people appointed to accompany it, should proceed on the proposed journey, giving them a letter to the Governor, with all the necessary explanations upon the subject.

The next day brought us through a terribly dull and uniform country to the Channakraal. We pursued our way, amid very earnest consultations upon the proper measures to be pursued in the not extremely pleasant predicament wherein we stood; and we arrived at our place of rest by no means in the most exhilarating mood possible. The situation of the place, at the foot of a naked hill, separated from the plain only by the dry bed of the Little Riet river, which was now yellow with the decaying reeds, had nothing in it to enliven us and chase away this gloom. A small uninhabited hut was closed against us by rows of slate stones laid against the door one above the other. According to the custom of the country, this wall, which was only intended as a blockade against the wild beasts and the Bosjesmans, was demolished by us, and we took possession of the mansion, which we found just spacious enough to hold four chairs and a table. There would be ample reason to wonder why, in this country, where, in almost every part, there is plenty of stone at hand, sufficient to build immense palaces, with reeds in the greatest abundance to thatch them—there would be, I say, reason to wonder, this being the case, why the people build such very confined habitations, were it not for the extreme difficulty there is in procuring the wood necessary for making spars to support the roof. Since we quitted the Bokkeveld, we had not seen a single tree; and even the Karroo now appeared

to us a cheerful country, since there at least mimosas were growing along the banks of the streams. A *lycium* of two feet high, or a bush of *euphorbium* of a yellow green, was a remarkable thing here, so few plants *two feet high*, or *green*, were to be seen.

Amid these and the like gloomy observations, we wandered a little way along the banks of the Riet river, where we were told that we should find in several places deep pools, with water standing in them. Such places we found in fact, but the water was salt and muddy, and the banks were covered with a thick crust of natron. We observed notwithstanding that they swarmed with fish, and casting our nets, we dragged them entirely along one of the pools; when we perceived they were so full, that we could not draw them on shore. Some Hottentots were therefore sent into the water to support the nets, and take out the fish. There were three different sorts of *cyprinus*, the largest of which was about two feet long, and resembled a very deep yellow carp, only that it had no whiskers. The second answered to Linnæus's description of the *cyprinus gonorynchos*; the third varied from the other two in the number of the fins, and in having a long nose like a snout. The number of fish taken amounted to nearly fifteen hundred, most of which weighed above a pound. We only kept the largest, on some of which we made an excellent supper, and carried away with us two casks of them salted. As the rivers in the colony are generally very poor in fish, and as carp in particular I supposed were nowhere to be found, this abundant draught of fish was a most agreeable surprize; and contributed very much towards dispersing the vapours which were stealing over our minds.

Before we laid ourselves down to rest, we divided our company into three parties, who were by turns to keep watch during the night, since the fires of the Bosjésmans were to be seen on the distant hills. We ourselves rose several times as we happened to wake, and went our rounds, to see that the people were at their duty. All, however, remained quiet; while the barking of our dogs, who were restless and disturbed, kept both the wild beasts and wild men at a distance. On the following morning we proceeded on our way, and were soon without the boundaries of the colony, according to what are usually considered as its boundaries, and laid down as such in Mr. Barrow's map. This gives the Little Riet river as the line of demarcation; but as the

country, quite to the Sack river, is here and there inhabited by whites, this latter river is now generally considered as the boundary.

We experienced this day, for the first time, what afterwards happened to us not unfrequently, that at the place where we purposed to have rested, there was no water. We therefore pursued our way till towards evening, when we arrived at the Quagga-fountain, where, by digging a well, a scanty supply of this first necessary of life was procured. When we had collected what was wanted for ourselves and the kitchen, the next thing was to satisfy the thirst of our poor cattle. This was a very tedious operation, for by the time that three or four of the oxen had taken their draught, the well was exhausted, and it was necessary to wait some time till it was filled again before any more could drink.

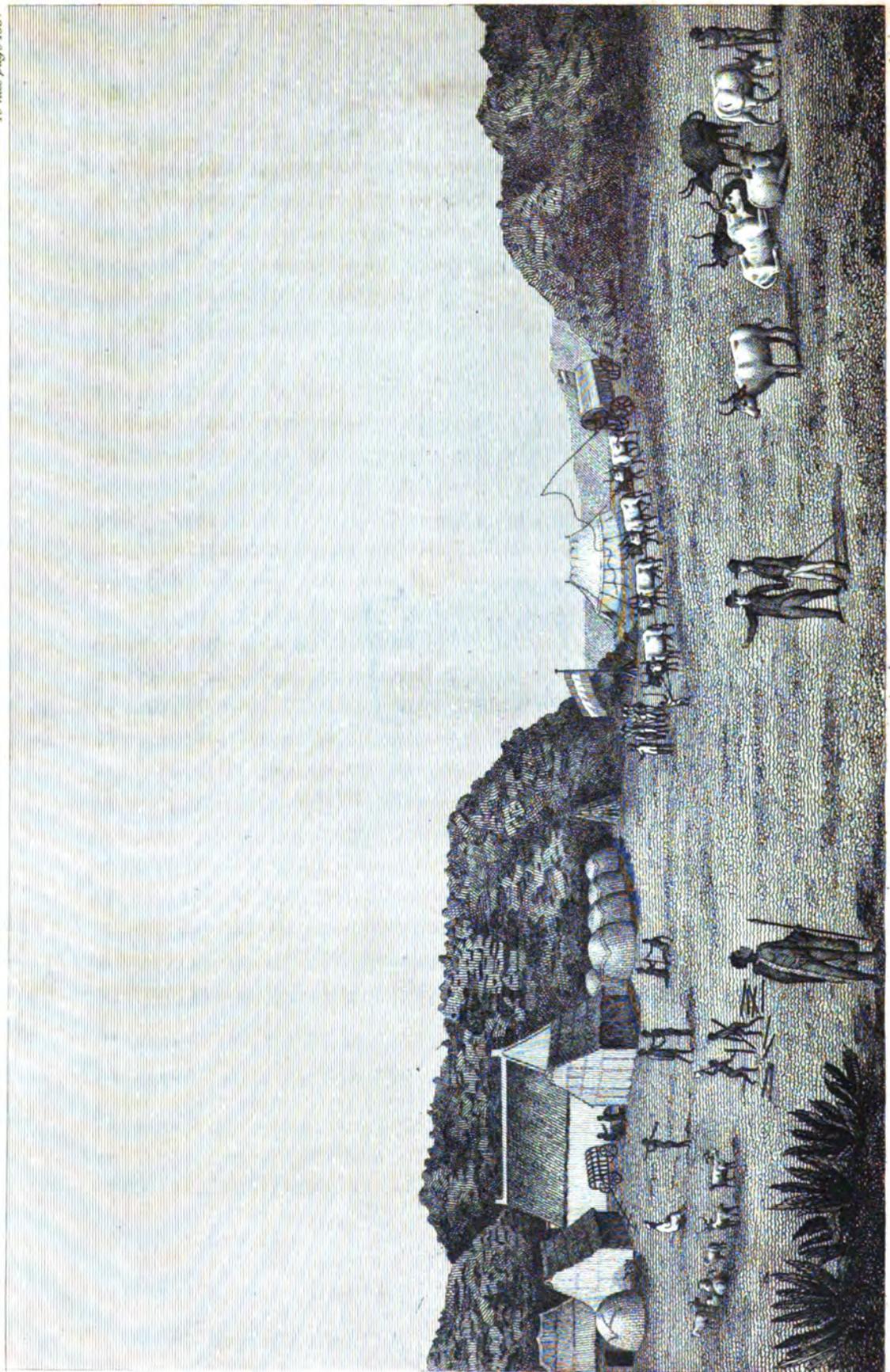
After passing the night under the same regulations as the former, we proceeded the next day again in a northerly direction. The farther we went, the more dry and parched we found the country; in some places it even appeared as if the plants had been burnt on the ground, as is done about the Cape Town, for the purpose of manuring the land and exciting vegetation anew. At noon we stopped at the Dwaal-fountain, and arrived in the evening at the Sack river's gate.

This is the name given to a pass between two rows of naked rugged sandstone rocks, blackened all over,\* which leads into the valley of the Sack river. From the side of these rocks flows a spring of very fine clear water, which never dries up. The pass is about a hundred paces in length, and the soil in it is much more fertile than in most of the country round, since it is to be considered as in some sort the bed of a river, the rains bringing the best earth down higher from the higher plains. For about a hundred paces upwards, on each side, this pass is covered with a short grass, or turf, almost like a lawn, the green of which forms a fine contrast with the dark dismal hue of the rocks.

---

\* All the sandstone that we had seen since the Roggeveld, and farther within the country, had the same thick black covering over it. I will not pretend to decide whether this is to be ascribed to the great quantity of iron that it contains, or whether it be merely the effect of the atmosphere. The latter is the more probable, since, according to the latest observations, all stones in tropical Africa, without excepting even the chalk rocks of Egypt, are blackened over in the same way.

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



Swaine & Co.

*Fischer's Missionary Institute at the Sack-rivers gate.*

*London, Published May 2<sup>d</sup> 1855 by Henry Colburn, Strand Street.*

It was near the entrance of this pass, that in the year 1799, the missionary Kicherer formed his establishment for converting the heathens, of which so much boasting has been made by himself and his friends in Europe. Supported by the missionary societies in England, which are tolerably wealthy, he came hither with a large stock of sheep and cattle, and collected about him a considerable number of Hottentots, and even of Bosjesmans, whom he promised to maintain; provided they would receive and follow the doctrines he should teach them. He built a sort of church, near which the savages constructed their huts,\* and they assembled daily for the worship of God, and to hear him preach the gospel to them; but without his ever thinking of paying attention to forming their minds and manners in any other way. He, as well as Van-der-Kemp, seemed wholly to forget that mankind were destined to work as well as to pray. Besides, these savages were taught to pray in a language of which they understood not a word: their instructor thought it sufficient for them to learn the prayers by heart, hoping that thus they would learn the language, and then understand the prayers, how mystical soever they might be.

Such an institution bore in itself the germs of its downfall. What could be expected, when no provision was made for keeping up a supply of the necessaries of life, by instructing the pupils in agriculture, and the breeding of sheep and cattle. The original stock, however considerable it might be, was constantly diminishing; no recruits were raised; the colonists refused the voluntary contributions applied for; and the Bosjesmans, when they found there was nothing left to eat, hesitated not a moment to apostatize from christianity. Nay, afterwards, when the missionary received some supplies of cattle, they found it more to their taste to steal them and carry them away, than to purchase them, though at the trifling expence of listening to the instructions of their former tutor: thus, the sometimes pupils of the institution, became in the sequel its most formidable enemies. The drought of several succeeding

---

\* The plate here given represents the missionary Institution above described. Among the houses to the left, the largest is the Church, as it is called, the habitation of the missionary; round about are the huts of the Hottentots. Somewhat to enliven the scene, cattle and goats are introduced, but the fact is, that the spot is entirely destitute of food for these animals. Though the soil in the pass is mentioned as being fertilized by a spring which flows from the rocks, that effect ceases close to the house, and the whole plain is naked and barren.

years increased these evils ; remittances from Europe failed ; the number of the pupils constantly decreased ; so that at length, in the year 1803, Kicherer resolved to quit the institution awhile, and take a journey to Europe, to solicit farther support to his undertaking. That he might succeed the better in his application, he carried with him three Hottentots, a man and two women, who had several years before been baptized at the Cape Town by the preacher Fleck ; and these were to be shewn as *élèves* of his institution. The great impression made in London by the Christian Hottentots, and how much they won the hearts of all pious people, by their steadiness in resisting every irregularity of conduct, is well known from the account published by Kicherer, with engravings of them. Mention is also made of these converts in many other publications of the time. As to what farther concerns Kicherer himself, and his merits, I can say nothing, never having known him personally : I can only judge of them by their consequences, of which it remains for me to speak.\*

At his departure for Europe, Kicherer left as his substitute, at the head of the institution, a colonist by name Christian Botma, who, from pure enthusiasm for the cause of christianity, had followed the missionary hither. He now, in the absence of his principal, not only undertook the whole trouble of instructing what pupils remained, abandoning his own affairs for the purpose, but also made great sacrifices of money to support the thing. Him we found here, a quiet, orderly personage, not a man of many words, but who, from his superior knowledge and understanding, was a properer person to fulfil the office of a missionary than most of those sent out from Europe. At his first visit the *Landdrost* requested his advice as to the best course which could be pursued for obtaining the ends he had in view with regard to the *Bosjesmans* ; and he in return for this confidence received us with the utmost hospitality, devoid of all constraint. He offered us the Church, as it is called, for our

---

\* A similar establishment was also formed by Kicherer on the other side of the Orange river, which however he soon gave up to another missionary, by name Kramer. What Mr. Barrow says of him, may be seen in the second part of that gentleman's work, page 54. He did not however go alone among the *Bosjesmans*, but was accompanied by a number of bastard Hottentots. For the rest, Mr. Barrow himself acknowledges the very great preference that is to be given to the establishments of the *Herrnhuters*.

habitation; but as we would not disturb the daily assemblings for the service of God, we had our tents pitched, and only requested that we might have the church as our night-quarters, that affording a better protection against the cold.

This church is really scarcely any thing more than a little barn, for it consists of nothing but the walls, and a roof, without any divisions or fitting up within. To the left of the entrance is a sort of pulpit, built of stone, whence the preacher gives his instructions, and in face of it are half a dozen benches for his auditors. There is not the slightest trace of an altar, a cross, a picture, or any other symbol of christianity. Instead of these, in the dark back ground of the building, is a bed, a table, a couple of stools, with leather thongs crossed over them for the seats, and a couple of old chests: these constitute the whole household furniture of the pastor. A piece of parchment scraped fine, and stretched over a hole in the wall, serves as a window: this is not substantial enough to keep out the cold air, and not transparent enough properly to admit the light: the building is about forty feet long and seventeen broad. Near it stand six or eight *pandokken*, as they are called, a kind of huts made of reeds woven into a wooden frame, which are inhabited by the principal Bastard-Hottentots: the poorer have little low huts in the form of a hemisphere, which consist of a skeleton of wood, with a mat drawn over it.

The whole number of pupils at this moment amounted to forty, among whom were only eight men capable of bearing arms. Some, who formerly lived here, had not long since been sent by Kicherer to another place, which was dedicated to the use of the pupils under the name of Blyde Vooruitzigt, (*pleasant prospect*.) Most of those that remained here were Bastard-Hottentots: several of them were entirely white; and the greater part had been baptized before they came hither: some were even born of christian parents. Not one among them were pure absolute Hottentots: all of that description had forsaken the institution: those that remained were of the old original stock, the elect that Kicherer had brought with him to form and instruct the others: these alone adhered steadily to their calling. Most of them had been educated in christianity, and through their instruction, the end of the institution was apparently amply fulfilled; but the fact is, that they would have been much better employed in the service of the colonists, providing for their wants by

industry, than pursuing, as they did here, lives wholly useless, and abandoned to sloth. Their indolence was indeed absolutely insupportable: instead of occupying themselves in husbandry, or at least in taking care of the few cattle remaining to them, they passed the whole day in their huts in complete idleness. A boy was sent into the field with the cattle, who often suffered two or three to run away in the course of the day, without any idea ever being entertained of going in search of them. Some of our people, one day in wandering about upon a shooting party, found six of their oxen who had escaped, feeding together very quietly upon a hill, while the proprietors asserted that they had been stolen by the Boesjemans. Nay, to such a pitch was this indolence carried, that an absolute command from the Landdrost, to go and bring them back, was necessary, before any one could be made to stir for that purpose.

The whole stock of sheep and cattle, which at first had been very large, was now reduced to about three hundred sheep and forty oxen. The kraals where they used to be inclosed at night were fallen into ruins, and no attempt was ever made to repair them; the cattle lay among the huts, or were left to run about at their pleasure; in consequence of this, the little garden which the missionary once had was all trodden down, the springs were fouled, and other mischief was done by them. In short, such was the universal sloth and negligence, that no one could remain here, but with great reluctance, and from strong necessity. Botma had, indeed, made some efforts to correct these abuses, by setting a good example in his own person. He had enclosed a piece of land of about an acre and a half, with a hedge, which was destined for growing corn, and vegetables for the kitchen; but more than once a whole side of the hedge had been carried away by his pupils, to spare themselves the trouble of going further for firewood. He lamented to us, with tears, that all his endeavours to rouse them to some degree of industry and activity had hitherto been fruitless; means to compel them to it, he said, he had not, and if he had he should scarcely have the heart to use them, since the people were all very pious, and very desirous of godly instruction. The Landdrost, therefore, took upon himself the business of endeavouring to make them see more clearly the consequences of continuing to lead such indolent lives, and threatened that if they would not exert themselves for their own maintenance, they should all be carried to Tulbagh, and there

kept to labour at the public works for proper pay. Botma had, from pure zeal in the cause, sacrificed at least half his property in supporting the institution, that it might not fall to the ground entirely. He continued to furnish from his own means the first necessaries of life, nor, as it appeared, was he likely to shrink back as long as any thing remained to him. He was very anxious for Kicherer's return, when he hoped that a more fortunate era in the institution would commence.

The regulations of the place were as follows : At the sound of an old drum, the pupils repaired to the church, where a psalm was sung, in which they all joined ; afterwards a chapter from the bible was read and explained by the pastor ; the latter was done with a pious unction, but on the whole in a more rational manner than I had generally heard among the missionaries. This service was performed twice in the day, at seven in the morning, and at five in the afternoon : it lasted each time about three quarters of an hour : the rest of the day was passed in sleep and indolence. Men, as well as women, were clothed in garments of tanned antelope-skins, made in the same form as the clothes worn by the colonists ; the women had besides dirty linen caps or handkerchiefs tied round their heads. A few of the women were employed in making these garments ; some were weaving rush mats for covering the huts ; others were cooking, or fetching wood and water ; but all was done in a slow and indolent manner, that bespoke forcibly the evil habits to which they were accustomed. In their whole behaviour, and particularly in their manner of talking, they endeavoured to make a great display of piety, humility, and moderation, excusing their indolence under the veil of indifference to every thing earthly and perishable. That the fault is not to be laid upon them, but upon the spirit in which the institution has been formed, needs no other proof, but the recollection that the same description of men are at Bavians-kloof trained into active and useful citizens.

## CHAP. XLII.

*More Conflicts with the Bosjesmans.—Two Men wounded by them.—The Case of one particularly described.—Conspiracy of some Bosjesman Servants to Murder their Master.—Consequences of this Conspiracy.—A Scheme proposed to the Governor, for endeavouring to Civilize these Savages.—Obstacles to its being carried into Execution.—Description of the Bosjesman Country.—Farther Particulars respecting the Manners, Customs, and Habits of the Bosjesmans.*

THE same complaints with which we had been so often assailed relative to the depredations of the Bosjesmans, pursued us hither. Only a week before, the whole flock belonging to the Hottentots here had been driven away; but the robbery was discovered before it was too late to pursue the robbers, and deprive them of their booty. Of the four Bastards who exerted themselves to perform this service, two were wounded in the rencounter; the one, as it appeared, with a newly-poisoned arrow, for he died in an hour; the other was still lying ill in his hut, and requested my advice upon his case. The wound was now trifling; but, notwithstanding that the arrow was drawn out instantly, the place swelled very much in the course of a few hours, and had occasioned very great pain. I ordered the dressing to be taken off; this consisted of sheep's fat spread on a leathern bandage. The wound was in the lower part of the arm, between the elbow and wrist; the hand, and the arm, even above the elbow half way to the shoulder, was still considerably swelled. An abscess, accompanied with a very bad appearance, was formed about the wound, having spread quite round the arm: it discharged a considerable quantity of a thin and very pungent matter. The edges of the wound were flabby and spotted, and the skin wherever the matter had run was full of little blisters, which were attended with very great smart. The patient said that he had certainly mended within the last two days; he had been free from fever, and felt less pain; at first, he said, the pain had sometimes in the night been almost insupportable. I prepared him a salve of precipitate, and gave him some medicines internally, from which he evidently received much benefit.

during my stay. The wound was however scarcely healed when I saw him two months after, on my return.

At a neighbouring farm, where some *tame* Bosjesmans, as they are called, were employed as servants, a conspiracy had been entered into among a part of them, to murder their master, and carry away his cattle. One of the conspirators revealed the plot, and the leaders were arrested. They were brought before us, when they strongly denied the charge, till four young Bosjesmans, *fads* from sixteen to twenty years of age, were taken prisoners, who confessed that they had intended going farther into the country, and that at the last friendly visit they made to the accused at their master's farm, they had promised to join the party as guides. From these and several other circumstances which appeared in the examination, the guilt of these men seemed indisputable, and at last they acknowledged it themselves. It was therefore resolved that they should be sent to Tulbagh, there to undergo a regular trial. The rest of the Bosjesmans, however, who had hitherto conducted themselves in a tolerably pacific manner towards the colonists hereabouts, only sometimes coming to beg tobacco or brandy of them, were set at liberty, though there was very great reason to suspect them of having been privy to the evil intentions of their countrymen, if not to have been the instigators of them. It appeared to us, however, necessary to shew as much forbearance as possible towards those we had in our power, in hopes of exciting the rest to more peaceable behaviour in future.

We took the opportunity of enquiring of them, by means of our interpreter, where Captain Goedhart was at that time, since he was the person with whom the treaty of peace was now to proceed to a formal conclusion, and we had brought considerable presents for him. Our Bosjesmans assured us that he was a thorough rascal, on whom no dependence was to be placed: he had begun to rob and plunder again immediately after the Landdrost's visit, and the treaty made with him: he was, they said, the instigator of all the depredations committed; and the information that we were coming had therefore terrified him to such a degree, that he, with all his people, had fled into the Karree mountains. There, they added, we might very likely find him, with a herd of four hundred cattle, which he had collected by his robberies within the last few months. Upon this, we offered them a reward if they would go to the captain, and invite him to come to us, that we might negotiate with

him to surrender his stolen cattle, and to enter into a solid treaty of peace. In case of his refusal, they were commissioned to threaten that a strong party of soldiers should be sent to punish his misdeeds. They all, however, declared unanimously that they would not undertake such a commission, since they should most certainly be instantly put to death: he had menaced every one, they said, who had ever lived with the christians with such a fate.

We made these men some little presents, and dismissed them with many wholesome admonitions; but we learnt in the sequel that it would have been more prudent to send them prisoners to Tulbagh. Scarcely a month after, the same lads fell by night upon a farm, to which a few days before they had made a friendly visit, killed the dogs, and carried away the cattle. The proprietor, collecting his neighbours, pursued them, when two were shot dead in defending their prey, and the others were compelled to resign it. On the very same day that these were dismissed, some more Bosjesman prisoners were brought in, who had stolen a yoke of oxen sent to us from the Roggeveld; they were seized in the very act of devouring one of them.

Among the new prisoners, was one who had for a long time been the terror of the neighbourhood, and who, though often taken, had always found means to escape. He was known to the colonists by the name of *the beard-man*, since he was the only Bosjesman ever seen with hair on his chin and lips; and this was supposed to be from his age, which might be between fifty and sixty: his wife, and two children of four and six years old, were taken prisoners with him. He had been informed by those who took him, that the Landdrost was in the country, and would most probably order him to be shot, so that he trembled all over when he appeared before us, and it was a long time before our interpreter could get an answer to any question put to him. He was asked why he had always been so addicted to stealing: by way of answer, he pointed to his body, which hung together in folds, and taking a piece up in his hand, he drew it out as far as it could be drawn, to shew how much it would hold if it was full; then, without waiting for an answer to this demonstrable reason for his depredations he begged for something to eat, although not more than an hour before he had been regaled with a good breakfast. Every answer he made shewed great indifference to what was passing: he seemed to speak with much difficulty, and manifested besides so much stupidity, combined with so much of the weakness of old age, that we were

greatly embarrassed what to do with him. As, however, he appeared still to have sufficient strength remaining to do much mischief, it was in the end resolved that he should be sent to Tulbagh. His wife also being accused by the colonists of instigating him to his robberies, and of having even assisted in them, we were afraid of setting her at liberty; but on account of her children, she was treated more mildly than the husband; and was carried in another waggon chained by only one arm. When the husband and wife were separated, the old *beard-man*, though supposing always that he was to be put to death, gave no sign of being affected in any way: he quitted his children without even casting a look at them. Two other prisoners, brought in at the same time, were sentenced to share his fate, that they might be prevented from incurring any farther guilt. They, however, made their escape by the way, the colonists who were to guard them through the Roggeveld, having in compassion taken off their irons, and in this situation left them unwatched.

We sent at the same time a long memorial to the Governor, stating fully the disastrous situation of the colonists, and submitted to his consideration whether it would not be expedient to send a party of soldiers against the Bosjesmans: his decision upon this subject was requested against our return. In case of an affirmative answer being sent, a supply of powder and ball was desired, since there was so great a want of them in these parts, that the peasants had not the means of defending themselves, much less of resorting to the chase as a means of support, or of making incursions upon their enemy.

In a private letter which I wrote to the Governor, I suggested that if permission was granted for a party of soldiers to be formed for the defence of the colonists, instructions should be given them to spare the lives of the poor savages as much as possible, and rather to endeavour to make them prisoners. A place in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, the Robben-Island, perhaps, might then be set apart to hold them in a sort of easier imprisonment, where they should be kept to moderate work: the profits of their work might, it appeared, be made to pay the state the expence of maintaining them. It might then be hoped that by degrees, though perhaps not till the second generation, they would be led to adopt more active and civilized lives. To this, the teaching them to have more than one want would essentially contribute, since now they had but one—that of food. A double good would in this way

be attained; the borders would be freed from a terrible evil, and these poor creatures would be excited to aim at a higher degree of cultivation. As a reward for good behaviour, the best might gradually be restored to liberty, and allowed to return home, where they might introduce something like civilization among their countrymen. It was not, however, to be denied, that there was a great obstacle in the way of such a plan, viz. that the wild Bosjesmans will never receive again among them any of their people who have lived long among the christians; and that a Bosjesman who had once been in any degree civilized, would never bear to reinhabit his own inhospitable wastes; or, if he did, he must soon lose the milder manners he had acquired and return to his old trades of robbery and plunder.

General Janssens, however, thought, for many important reasons, that it was proper to refuse the request of a company of soldiers. Matters of more importance demanded almost his whole attention at that moment: the expected attack of the English would scarcely allow of his permitting himself to be occupied by divided cares, and it rendered the sparing any ammunition for less important objects a thing scarcely to be thought of. To carry the above proposal into effect was therefore for the moment wholly out of the question; and since those to whom it was made have no longer the power of adopting this or any other plan of the kind, it remains for the new government to exercise all their prudence and circumspection in devising the least objectionable means for removing so great an evil as these perpetual strifes between the Bosjesmans and the European borderers. Above all things, it is incumbent on the colonists themselves, to shew the utmost humanity towards this unhappy race of men; not to shed blood but in cases of the last extremity; rather to make as many prisoners as they can, and send them away to Tulbagh. Nothing like inhumanity on the part of the colonists towards their enemies ought to pass unnoticed by the government: a strict account ought to be demanded of the life of every Bosjesman that falls in the conflict.

Perhaps this is the best opportunity that may occur to add what more I have to say concerning the country of the Bosjesmans, the manners, customs, and modes of life of the inhabitants, so as to give the most connected view of them. These additional remarks will serve as illustrations of the adventures I have to record, and will support the truth of many assertions that will be

The true native country of these people is the district which lies between the Orange river, and the mountains that extend from the Roggeveld eastward to the Snow Mountains; a district in seeing which the traveller is convinced that a country may exist, even more barren and inhospitable than the Karroo itself, and may, notwithstanding, be inhabited. The Karroo is at a certain time of the year refreshed with genial rains; it becomes green and lovely to the eye; it is overspread with flowers. But no such happy moments ever bless this deplorable region. Whole years pass without the soil being fertilized by a single drop of rain. The ductile clay of the Karroo requires nothing but moisture to give life to vegetation, but the ground here is covered with broken masses of rock, and with blocks of stone; while a thin layer of soil, composed only of the smaller particles from these masses, gives life to nothing but a few of the succulent tribe of plants. This tract of country is divided between two very different climates; that which is general throughout the colony of the Cape, and that of the interior of the Caffre country. Yet it does not share with the former the genial winter rains, or with the latter the cooling thunder-storms of the hot season; now and then an irregular and hasty cloud only, in passing over, will discharge itself, as if by a mere chance.

In such a kind of spot few animals can find nourishment; those alone which nature seems to have formed expressly for it. The ostrich, the eland-antelope, the rhinoceros, and the sparing sheep, which was first introduced here through the intervention of the distant settlers that intruded themselves into the more fertile parts bordering on this district,—these are the only objects which are to be numbered among the luxuries that regale the miserable lives of the inhabitants. Their common objects of pursuit are serpents, lizards, ants, and grasshoppers; the larger game seldom fall victims to the imperfect weapons with which alone they can assail them. Little accustomed to drinking, they will remain whole days without a drop of liquid ever passing their lips; as a substitute, they chew the few succulent plants with which their barren soil supplies them; and their food is all eaten without salt. Always seeking their prey from place to place, following the track of the antelope, or of the insects on which they feed, they have no fixed habitation, but pass the night in holes made in the ground; or in the milder season of the year, beneath the branches of such trees as the country affords. The corporeal form of people doomed to such a mode of life, can be no other than

what it is in fact. The Bosjesmans are low in stature, lean, and apparently weak in their limbs; yet from the necessary exertions attendant upon their wandering mode of life, they are capable of enduring much more fatigue than could be supposed at the first sight of them: they are less indolent in their movements than the Corans, and other of the more civilized Hottentot tribes. Their higher organs of sense are particularly acute, as they are daily very much used in spying out their objects of food at a great distance, and in lurking after them. Their lower organs are on the contrary weak: they might almost be supposed to have neither taste, smell, or feeling; no disgust is ever evinced by them at even the most nauseous kind of food, at least what would to us be the most nauseous, nor do they appear to have any feeling of even the most striking changes in the temperature of the atmosphere.

Where each individual thinks of nothing but satisfying for the moment the first animal wants of our nature, without any regard to the future, without thinking of the permanent possession of any property whatever, no social bond can unite any number of men together. Families alone form associations in single small hordes;—sexual feelings, the instinctive love to children, or the customary attachment among relations, are the only ties that keep them in any sort of union. The hardships that attend on satisfying the most urgent necessities of life, preclude the possibility of forming larger societies: these families, even, are sometimes obliged to separate, since the same spot will not afford sufficient sustenance for all. A part wanders one way, a part another: chance sometimes reunites them; and if circumstances are more favourable; if they have been so fortunate as to capture any object among the larger sort of game; if necessity compels them to unite in some scheme of plunder which promises a rich booty, they then continue for a longer time together. No one obtains any ascendancy over the rest by hereditary rank: bodily strength alone procures distinction among them; but this gives sometimes so great a degree of ascendancy, that the weaker, if he would preserve his own life, is obliged to resign to the stronger, his weapons, his wife, and even his children.

In short, there is not perhaps any class of savages upon the earth that lead lives so near those of the brutes as the Bosjesmans;—none perhaps who are sunk so low, who are so unimportant in the scale of existence;—whose wants, whose cares, and whose joys, are so low in their nature;—and who are consequently so little capable of cultivation. Certainly no other tribe of savages

has yet been found in whom so high a degree of brutal ferocity is united with so much craft, and so many proofs of real power of mind. To sleep, to eat, and to drink, are the only wants,—smoking tobacco and drinking brandy are the only joys that the Bosjesman knows,—yet these wants, these joys, he can forego longer than any other person. The very same man, who with five of his fellow-countrymen will devour a fat sheep in an hour, or a quagga in half a night, will be able to fast for three or four days together, even without this abstinence having been preceded by such a feast. Mere sloth is sometimes the principal motive of this forbearance: he would sooner resist the cravings of his stomach, and endeavour to sleep them away, than make any bodily exertion to satisfy them. He will live for months together upon a few little bulbs, which, at certain times of the year, are to be found in the low parts of the country, and never leave the spot till the whole harvest has been consumed. An uncommon degree of perseverance is distinguishable in every thing that he undertakes. He will sometimes spend a whole day together, in low places, scratching up the ground, endeavouring to find water, and if once convinced that there is any to be found, will dig even to the depth of six feet to come at it. The whole recompense of this toil is perhaps a handful of water for each person concerned in the achievement, which they take in rotation, each being obliged to wait the replenishment of the little well after the former has had his quantum. If they perceive the track of any wild animal, they never cease following it till the animal itself is taken: no difficulties, in short, deter them from pursuing any undertaking on which they are once resolved. To the first step alone do they ever shew reluctance; but if once their propensity to indolence is so far subdued as to begin, the object is pursued with boldness, with cunning, and with pertinacity, till it is attained. Yet this boldness is a very different quality from martial courage: they venture much on the idea of good-luck, nothing from confidence in their own power. They never stop to meet an adversary in fight in the open field: a single musket shot will put a hundred to flight, and whoever rushes upon them with only a good stick in his hand has no reason to fear any resistance from ever so large a number. To aim their arrows at an unarmed person from some secure skulking-place is their only mode of making war. Their greatest dexterity is shewn in the use of their weapons, or in watching their enemy and his motions. However imperfect their language is, they

have a very intelligent manner of conveying their meaning to each other, by signs and gesticulations. They have so much adroitness in managing signals, that they will make them understood at the distance of many miles ; in the night particularly, by means of fires on the summits of the mountains, they will indicate to each other the numbers of a herd or flock which they mean to plunder, with the means of defence that the people have who are guarding them. Their sight is rendered so acute, by spying continually around them from a great height, after their prey, that they perceive objects clearly at a distance, which no European, even with the best eyes, could see without the assistance of glasses. Of this I have witnessed frequent proofs, since our Bosjesman servants have sometimes discerned flocks of antelopes at the distance of a mile and a half. Some of the most striking instances I saw of this native gift, as it may be called, of the Bosjesmans, were furnished by a lad of this nation, whom General Janssens carried with him to Europe. In our return home on board the Bellona, this lad would often, as he stood on the deck, discover ships in the horizon, which the sailors at the mast-head could not see, and which we could scarcely discern with our glasses. If, however, he was set to look for a vessel which had been seen by the captain, with his glass, from the mast head, he could never discover it.

As their weapons are their only property, and at the same time the only work of art produced by them, it seems desirable that a short description of them should be given. The bow is commonly about five feet in length, and consists of a staff of very hard wood, thickest in the middle ; the string is made of the intestines of animals, twisted together, and is about the thickness of a straw : the whole is a very rough and simple piece of workmanship. The arrows are upon an average about three feet and a half long : the shaft is made of a strong thick reed, slit at the lower end, that it may catch the string of the bow : it is wound round with entrails, that it may not break farther than is required, and has the feather of a bird of prey fixed to it, to give it a more certain direction in its flight. At the upper end is fastened either a hard hollow piece of bone, commonly the thigh bone of the antelope, sharpened to a point, or a small triangular plate of iron : in both cases it is strongly rubbed over with poison. This poison is of a brown colour and a glutinous quality : when fresh it has the consistence of wax, but it soon dries and becomes hard. It is composed of several substances, the baleful effects of which upon the

animal frame, experience has taught them by degrees. The principal ingredient is always the poison of serpents; but as this is of itself too thin, and evaporates too soon, they mix with it the poisonous sap of one of the larger species of *euphorbia*, called *wolf's-milk*, which thickens to the consistence above-mentioned. Another sort of poison used by them is extracted from the bulb of the *hæmanthus toxicartus*, which is a sharp alkali, and when mixed with the blood, decomposes it immediately. The tame Bosjesmans call this sap in Dutch *bolletjes poison*. Another sort bears the name of *rock poison*, from being a sort of brownish viscous substance, occasionally found upon the rocks. I have never seen this, and cannot imagine what it can be. A colonist, who was well acquainted with it, and to whom I mentioned my conjecture that it was a sort of bitumen, said that I was in an error; he thought it was a sap which flowed from some plant.

These ingredients are mixed according to the object against which they are to be used. If against a man, there is a larger proportion of the animal poison; if against animals in the chase, then the sap of the *hæmanthus* is the prevailing ingredient. Although these people know very well that the poisons are only noxious when mingled with the blood, they cautiously avoid preparing them with the naked hand: they are mixed up with a wooden stick, in a hollow stone which has previously been heated. They are particularly cautious in smearing their arrows, since they might easily wound themselves by giving an awkward turn to the weapon while they are doing it. For this purpose, a stone is used, in which is a sort of small channel, or gutter, and this being filled with the poison, the point of the arrow is laid into it, and the mixture rubbed on with the little stick till the proper quantity is imbibed. A horrible accessary to these weapons is that the arrow is cut half through, about an inch below the point, so that if in wounding it should happen to strike against a bone and rebound, it will break off at this place, and leave the point sticking in the wound. Besides this, to make the matter more sure in wounding the fleshy parts of the body, at least in case of any attempt to withdraw the arrow, a sort of hook made of a small piece of quill, is contrived near the place where the incision is made, and if the arrow be incautiously handled, the point is sure to be left in the wound: no chance of life then remains, for farther help is impossible, the part swells so immediately over the point.

The wood for the bows, and the iron points for the arrows, are both procured from a distance, by exchanging for them, with their countrymen to the east, arrows ready made; or sometimes the iron is procured by plunder, from the Hassagais of the Caffre tribes. They are ignorant, however, of the use of fire in working the iron: the triangular plates they use, are produced by beating the iron with stones, so that a whole day is sometimes occupied in making one. By far the greater part of the arrows are pointed with bone: those with the iron heads are never used in the chase; they are reserved to be employed against mankind. The preparing the arrows, and mixing the poison, are considered by them as arts in which few ever attain entire perfection.

In like manner, it is not every one among them that can distinguish the poisonous sorts of serpents from those that are harmless. In general it may be taken as a rule, that those which move with the greater agility are of the noxious kind. The well-known horned serpent, which among the colonists is esteemed so very dangerous, is little esteemed by the Bosjesmans, because it does not move rapidly. Some which are very poisonous are slow and languid in their movement at the time they are about to cast their skins, and, according to what the Bosjesmans affirm, they have then no effective poison. The greater the trouble they have in catching a serpent, the harder they must hold it down between the stones, the more it writhes and seems enraged, the more pungent is the poison esteemed, the more certain and dreadful in its effects. The dexterity and courage shewn by them in catching these serpents is truly astonishing. No sooner do they see the animal upon the level ground than they set their foot upon its neck, press the head fast together with their fingers, so that the jaws cannot be moved, and then separate the head from the body with a knife, or, for want of that, bite it off. All this is the operation but of a moment. They then take the bag of poison out of the head, and prepare it for use, before time can be allowed for the least particle of its pungency to evaporate. That they greedily devour the body of the serpent, and even prefer it to fish, I have mentioned already.

The quivers in which the arrows are kept are made of the hollow stem of a large sort of aloe; on this account the plant has obtained from the colonists the name of the *quiver plant*: it is nearly allied to the *Aloe perfoliata*. The

bottom, and the cover of the quiver, are of leather; sometimes, to make it the stronger, the whole quiver is covered with leather. It is slung over the left shoulder with a leather thong, hanging so that the arrows can be drawn out directly under the left arm: when, in case of one missing, another is ready at hand in an instant. In this way they can shoot five or six times in a minute. They do not direct the bow on a level, as might be supposed, but inclining, like Sagittarius in the Zodiac: they hold it in the middle with the left hand, the arrows rest on the thumb, and with the right hand they draw the arrow back at the same time upon the string. This is all done at a commodious height below the eye, so that the direction of the arrow may be perfectly calculated, but not its inclination. For this reason they often fail in the height at which they aim, but never in the direction, and can hit to a certainty the stem of any given tree of some height, and half a foot in thickness, while they would almost always shoot over a hedge three feet high, or perhaps not reach it. The distance at which they can take their aim with the greatest degree of certainty is about eighty paces; farther off, the best marksman will often fail; we once, however, saw a man hit his mark at the distance of a hundred and five paces.

In the chase, artifice and dexterity must supply all that is wanted from the imperfection of these weapons; and they are so practised in lurking after the game, that they scarcely find any their masters in this respect. It is no trifling art in these naked barren plains, to be able so to conceal themselves from the shy antelope, and the long-sighted ostrich, that they can get within fifty or sixty paces of them. This is done by almost crawling along the earth upon their bellies, strewing their bodies and garments over with dust, that the colour may not betray them, and never moving if they see that the animal appears to be looking that way. Nor is their patience exhausted, though they are obliged to remain in this situation even for hours, so that an animal seldom escapes when once the pursuit of it is undertaken.

With the same precaution and regularity in their plan, do they proceed in their marauding parties. They never venture on an attack without having first well reconnoitred their ground, and having come to a proper understanding with each other upon the signals to be made in every possible case that can occur. The last quarter of the moon is the time when their incursions are the most to be apprehended, for the depredations can then be completed

during the darkness of midnight, while the morning moon is of great assistance to them in making their escape. Still more must people be upon their guard against them in cold and wet weather: at such a time it is not safe in many places to trust the cattle at night in the pastures: they know very well that in the damp a gun will often miss fire. The Hottentots, besides, who are employed as shepherds and herdsmen, having an extreme sensibility to this damp cold, creep into holes in the rocks, where they make a fire and lie down to sleep: then are the oxen driven away by the Bosjesmans, and their keepers, or those who ought to be so, not unfrequently murdered in their sleep. To be the more secure against all resistance, the murder is often performed by throwing a large stone at the head, which dashes it entirely to pieces.

I have already, in two different parts of these Travels, related many other things concerning the Bosjesmans, which there is no occasion here to repeat. I have, for example, described their cloathing, their food, their propensity to plunder—I have mentioned that they have no names, and scarcely any language, with various particulars of the like kind. When, therefore, I have observed, that they do not seem to have the least idea of a Supreme Being, and are more superstitious than even the Caffres themselves, I think the reader will be possessed of all the most important information that I can give concerning them. I therefore return to the account of our journey.\*

---

\* Some remarks upon their language will be found in the Appendix at the end of this volume.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*The Travelling Party assembled.—Departure from the Sack River.—The Latitude of this River ascertained.—Kopjesfontein.—Patrysefontein.—Lion's Fountain.—The Author and a Party go in Search of Captain Goodhart.—Description of the Karree Mountains.—Large Flock of Ostriches and Quaggas.—Hunting Parties.—Unfortunate Death of Krieger, killed by an Elephant.—His Grave.*

By degrees we collected together some of the colonists and Hottentots who had been required to accompany us. Far the greater part, however, did not appear, excusing themselves by writing, and sending a number of useless testimonies, that it was impossible for them to serve. The Field-Cornets Nel and Van Aart, wrote to say, that it was not in their power to comply with the demand for a certain number of young men from their district to serve in the escort, since all their youth were already gone in a body to the Karroo. Some who did indeed come, were yet so deeply impressed with the recent horrors committed by the Bosjesmans, and of the dangers to be encountered in our journey, that they begged permission to return for a few days previous to setting off with us; and, this permission obtained, we saw them no more.

Thus, instead of the number we ought to have had, only three remained true to the cause. These, however, from their zeal and abilities, almost made amends for the failure of the rest: they were, in every respect, of the greatest importance to us. One of them was a man already somewhat advanced in life, by name Jacob Krieger, who had lived, for several years, among the savages that we proposed visiting; and who was likely to be of the utmost use to us as a guide in these trackless countries. At the time when the colony was in the possession of the English, he, with his brother, were guilty of some crime against the state, for which they were arrested; but while their trial was pending, they found means to escape, and fled beyond the boundaries of the colony, among the tribes of the Corans. After three

years passed there in great misery and want, the other brother lost his life, and Jacob then ventured to return into the colony; when, through the intervention of some friends, a pardon was obtained for him, on condition of his furnishing all the information he could respecting these people. At that time very little was known concerning them. This information, which was indeed somewhat exaggerated, was, in part, the occasion of our present journey; and he was soon to confirm to us himself the truth of his assertions: Guilt and repentance had made deep furrows in his countenance: he spoke little, and scarcely ever was his mouth distended into a smile. In his sunken eyes was an expression rather of contempt of danger, than of youthful courage. A large grey beard, thick eye-brows, and long hair hanging over his face, gave him a wild and formidable appearance. He was armed with a short, thick elephant-gun, which carried shot of a quarter of a pound weight.

The second of these men, Gerrit Vischer, was a youth only eighteen years of age, whose father had, in the course of his life, carried on frequent negotiations with the Bosjesmans, and had succeeded, in the year 1796, in establishing a peace between them and the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. From him our young man had learnt the language of these savages; he had always been his father's companion in his journeys among them. He had even accompanied him once into the country of the Briquas. The third was John Van der Westhuizen, of the same age as Vischer, whose companion he was frequently in the chase. He was a great acquisition to us, both from his youthful cheerfulness and courage, and from being one of the best shots in the country.

Our whole company now consisted, besides the landdrost and myself, of six Christians, including the messenger Mong; of twelve Hottentots, and five slaves; in all, twenty-five persons. We were obliged to have nearly a hundred oxen for the use of our three waggons, besides some that we carried as stores, to be killed when occasion required it; for the same purpose fourscore sheep were added to our convoy. We had only eight horses among us, and they soon became very weak and languid for want of proper food. Only two of them lived to return. Four goats that we also carried with us, held out the best of any of our animals, and never ceased to furnish us with excellent milk for breakfast, however barren of food the country might appear to be.

Before we departed, the colonists of the country once more endeavoured to deter us, by representing, in forcible colours, the hardships attendant upon the undertaking. Krieger had already said every thing that could be urged, with regard to the probable want of water, and of pasture for our cattle; that we might not have, in the sequel, to charge him with having been wanting in his duty, by not giving us due warning of what we were to expect. But we were firmly resolved to obey the Governor's commands, and satisfy our own curiosity as much as possible; and therefore persisted in undertaking the journey, promising only to use the utmost discretion in prosecuting it, and to turn back, as soon as we saw that we could not proceed without manifest danger.

On Sunday, the thirtieth of May, we left the Sack river, and, with it, took our leave, for several months, of any country inhabited by white men, or Christians. Since this river has been made the northern boundary of the colony, its situation is become much more important. In the week that we stayed there, I therefore made observations daily, to ascertain the latitude; and the result was, that the *Sack river's Gate*, which is about a quarter of a mile from the river, may be laid down with tolerable certainty, as in latitude thirty degrees sixteen minutes.\* For the rest, the Sack river does not bound the most northerly part of the colony: that is bounded by the Koussie river, which is among the Khamies mountains. The Sack river, the sources of which are in the Nieuweveld mountains, forms the boundary of the colony for thirty miles, running in a direction from east-south-east, to west-north-west. Farther on, it is so lost in a sandy plain, that scarcely any traces of its bed can be discerned. Still farther, its waters are collected together again, and form a river, but no longer bearing the same name. It is then called the Hartebeests river, and, under that name, falls into the Orange river. At the time we were in the country, the Sack river was entirely dry; and the colonists said, that it had never been otherwise for the last six years. The devia-

---

\* These observations were made with two good sextants. Fortunately my countryman, Mong, who had formerly served as pilot's mate on board a ship, understood how to manage them, so that we could take two corresponding observations every day. The want of a clear horizon was compensated by a quicksilver glass.

sion of the magnetic needle, at the place of observation, was twenty-five degrees and a half north-west.

Directly on the other side of the river, the country was tolerably level, broken only by some small rounded eminences scattered at intervals, but which had by no means the naked, rugged appearance of the more southerly hills. After travelling three hours, we came to a spring called Kopjesfontein. Towards noon we reached the Brakke river. From thence we proceeded to the remains of what had been once a cattle-place, belonging to a colonist by name Corf, but which he had been obliged to quit, when the government would no longer allow of any settlements being made by the peasants beyond the boundaries of the colony. The kraal for the cattle was still entire, and served for night quarters to our animals. Finding here fresh traces of the Bosjesmans, we made a large fire, hoping this signal might entice some of them to come and visit us; but, since in this we were disappointed, we were doubly watchful during the night. The waggons were drawn up to the tents, and guards were placed in them, who relieved each other by turns.

On account of the very poor supply of pasture here, we set off again the next morning with the dawn, and stopped, after some hours, at a small spring between two hills, where was a little grass. This place is called Patrysfontein, (Partridge Fountain.) From this place we went on a shooting party, and killed some hares and stone-antelopes. In the latter part of our day's journey, we met a troop of quaggas, one of which was hit in the haunch by a shot from our party. He notwithstanding attempted to fly, and bit violently when we went up to secure him. However desirous we were to spare our powder and shot as much as possible, we were obliged to fire at him a second time; for all attempts to come near him were vain, and manifestly not to be made without danger to ourselves. When he was killed, our Hottentots immediately began to cut him up, and the best parts were added to the stores in our waggons. We attempted to eat some, but not being Hottentots, we could not find it relishing.

It was night, and still no water was to be met with. How cold soever it was, and how weary soever our poor oxen grew, we were therefore obliged to go on. About midnight we came to a narrow mountain-pass, where, by the advice of our guides, our convoy was so arranged that the loose cattle marched in the centre, between the waggons. We ourselves kept with the waggons,

carrying our guns in our hands. The advanced guard on horseback fired some shots to clear the way; and in this manner we got happily through, without being attacked by man or animal.

It was three o'clock in the morning when we reached the Lion's Fountain, where, to our great joy, we not only found a plentiful spring of water, but a pit made close by, in which a large quantity of water was already collected. When day-light appeared, we perceived the place to be pleasantly situated between two low hills. Through the midst of the valley meandered the dry bed of a river, which was thickly grown over with dried reeds. These we set on fire, partly to drive out the game that might be harboured among them, partly as a signal to the Bosjesmans that we were come on a friendly errand, and did not wish to conceal our arrival, but would be glad to see them if they would come to us. Neither of these objects was, however, attained.

Vegetation was here so poor, that we could not find bushes enough to cook a little soup. Fortunately, some months before, a party of missionaries had travelled through the country, carrying with them a large number of cattle; and the dried dung of these animals served us as fuel both here and in several other places as we proceeded farther. As the poor cattle are obliged in these parts to feed almost entirely upon the woody stems of the *mesembryanthemum spinosum*, the dung contains a great deal of this, which made it burn almost like turf. It was necessary, however, to take great care that the saucepans made use of should be well secured against the smoke getting in; for that gives a very unpleasant flavour to every thing impressed with it.

Our next place of rest was called the Klipfontein.\* Here again we were tolerably supplied with water, which poured out from a large cleft in the rock. The reeds, with which the spot was overgrown, were burned, and we discovered a chasm, a hundred feet deep and twenty wide, enclosed by perpendicular rocks. It is probable, that, in times of hard rain, the water must pour down here with great force; since, at the bottom of the fall, a deep

---

\* All these places received their names from the colonists in the frequent shooting parties which they formerly made beyond the borders. In later times these expeditions have been prohibited by the government, and we were obliged to carry the tri-coloured Batavian flag upon each of our waggons, to shew that we travelled under government authority.

bason was hollowed out, which was now full of clear water. The stone which formed this bason was a soft kind of schist, veined with iron, in thin horizontal strata, sometimes running parallel, sometimes in a curved direction. The part exposed to the air had, in many places, a smooth, shining, dark-brown surface, as if it had been glazed. Among the plants which I found near the spring, in a somewhat green and flourishing state, the most abundant was *myrsiphyllum*, or *medeola asparagoides*. From the heights above our camp, we had, for the first time, a view of the Karree mountains, which, divided into three groups, formed the whole northern and north-eastern horizon, and, gilded by the morning sun, had a truly picturesque appearance. What renders these hills particularly distinguishable from hence is the number of summits, all of an equal height, and all flattened; each having a level of some hours at the top. We had here to encounter a pretty severe degree of cold, so that the water was frozen over by morning to the thickness of some lines, and could bear our youngest slave, a slight made lad of fourteen. So great, however, was the power of the sun, that, by ten o'clock, not a particle of ice was any longer to be seen.

According to the information given us at the Sack river, we might expect to find Captain Goedhart, with his people, in this part of the country; and abundant fresh traces of cattle and sheep, reminded us of him many times in the course of our journey this day. As, however, it was not probable that he would come first to visit us, it appeared desirable that we should endeavour to see him, which would be an indisputable proof of our confidence. I mounted my horse, therefore, with the most resolute of our company, Mong, Krieger, and Vischer, to seek for him; and that there might be nothing inimical in our appearance, we went entirely unarmed. Two Hottentots, who were particular adepts in the use of a gun, were ordered to follow at a distance, so that by a signal given they might soon come to our assistance, if required. The traces that we followed brought us soon to the foot of the Karree mountains, through many a valley, where our hearts certainly sometimes began to beat. After some hours, we came to the Schietfontein's river; and, pursuing our way along its shores, at length reached a plain, where the remains of fires, of bones, of dung, and other indisputable tokens, shewed that men had been here very recently. My companions, experienced in matters of this kind, said, that they could scarcely have quitted the place four-and-twenty hours. We

followed these traces still somewhat farther, and convinced ourselves at length that the Bosjesmans had directed their course entirely westward, that they might keep out of our way as much as possible. As the day, besides, began to decline, it appeared more adviseable to give up any farther pursuit, and rest satisfied with the assurance that the great horde of this Goedhart would not incommode us on our way. According to the quantity of tracks, our colonists estimated the cattle that they had with them at a hundred oxen, and three hundred sheep. With such a stock, the Bosjesmans become shy and full of fears, and are not likely to think of commencing an attack. They are not perfectly happy till all is eaten, and they are secure that their prey cannot be taken from them. Such a stock therefore does not last for more than a few weeks, since all the Bosjesmans, far and near, when they hear of the fare that is to be had, hasten to partake of it, and the company does not separate till every morsel is demolished.

We pursued our way through the long gaping vallies of the Karree mountains, to the river above mentioned, and rejoined our company at night, they having already pitched the tents by the Schietfontein at the foot of the largest and most prominent of these hills. A flock of hartebeests being met by the way, a Hottentot had shot one of them: as it was too late to carry it away the same evening, we covered it with some bushes which we tore up, and fastening a white handkerchief to them, as a little flag, we hoped that the lions and hyenas would be frightened by its waving about, and not venture to attack our booty. This is a very common experiment, but not always crowned with success: in the present instance it succeeded very happily: the animal was found the next morning untouched, and was brought home in safety to our camp. Near the river two of these animals were lying dead. From the bareness of their skins in many places, they appeared to have died of an eruptive disorder, which the colonists call *brandziekte*, and which often in very dry seasons carries off numbers of animals.

The Field-Cornet Olivier, and another young colonist who was to accompany us, had promised to follow in a few days, and were to overtake us, at the latest, at this place. Here therefore we stopped for a day, which I employed in a hunting party among the Karree mountains. I took as my associates some of our Hottentots who were the best shots; and as I had made myself acquainted

the day before with the country to the west, I now directed my course eastwards.

It is difficult to give an adequate idea of the desert wildness of these mountains. The rugged forms of the mountains in the Lower Bokkeveld, and the lofty jagged masses of the Black Mountains, with their deep wooded dells, astonish, and make an impression on the mind that is far from disagreeable. In these wide gaping vallies, on the contrary, where not a tree or a bush is to be seen, not a stream or a blade of grass, where the mountains around are in the form of a ball, a tower, or a table, where the naked trough-like appearance of the low-grounds contrasts with the wavy lines of the heights, and the smooth rounded sides fatigue with their uniformity,—in such a frightful solitude, the first impression made can be only silent melancholy and repugnance. The whole country may very well be compared to the sea in a violent storm, when the waves rise to a mountainous height, and naked vallies alone are stretched out beneath. The eye is carried between mountains through vallies stretched far beyond any distance that it can reach, and at every new turning a new labyrinth opens. Not a trace is to be seen of the valleys ever being trodden by human feet, yet in no direction is the way obstructed by rocks or woods. Not a plant thrives here which could furnish food to a man, were he driven to the utmost necessity, so that even the very Bojesman flies these vallies; and there are probably many into which no human being ever yet entered. It is over a vast circuit that this mountainous ocean extends. As far as we could see the day before nothing else presented itself to our view eastward, and we were assured that the end of it would hardly be reached in six day's journey. The mountains run in a regular direction from west-north-west to east-south-east, and their flat summits appear to be the highest ground on the western side of Southern Africa. If the more distant mountains to the east, in which are the sources of the Orange river, and which no one has yet examined, may perhaps be higher, it is certain that the summit of the Komberg is only on a level with the valleys of the Karroo mountains, these vallies being at a height of from eight hundred to a thousand feet. Whether the extraordinary form of the mountains, their equal height, the horizontality of their summits, the absence of all traces of any mighty convulsion, do not speak a very elevated situation, and a very

early emersion from the great deluge, I must leave to experienced geologists to determine.

Not without the most cautious observation to avoid missing our way in returning, did we proceed from one valley to another; and through what a length of them did we go without discerning the least trace of any living creature. At length one of our Hottentots remarked a narrow path which seemed to have been beaten by ostriches. This we followed awhile, when, at turning round an angle in the mountain, we perceived a flock of about thirty of these gigantic birds directly before us, and behind them a troop of quaggas, amounting to not less than eighty or a hundred.\* As we approached them we were seen by the ostriches, who immediately took to flight, and were followed instinctively by the quaggas; for how different soever these animals are in their habits, they have a great attachment to each other, and are almost always found together. The quaggas follow the ostriches, as I have already mentioned, because the latter can see to so great a distance, and therefore sooner discern food or danger; the ostrich, on the other hand, likes to associate with the quagga, because his dung attracts a sort of large beetles, which are, to this bird's palate, great dainties.

It is impossible to restrain a young and eager Hottentot, fond of the chase, from firing whenever an opportunity is presented. Little did it signify, therefore, that I represented to my lad how wholly useless it was to fire at the quaggas, since we had at the moment an absolute superabundance of fresh meat; besides, we were at such a distance, that it would be impossible to carry any home. I encouraged him, however, to fire at an ostrich, because I wished to get the whole plumage of one, and all the most important parts of the skeleton. He made a circuit therefore on the slope of the hill, and came round the fugitives, so that he could with ease have taken aim at an ostrich; but the other was to him the more tempting morsel, and he brought down a

---

\* The annexed plate gives a view in the Karree mountains which I sketched myself on our return. The general description of this country given above will best explain the print. Ostriches and wild-asses, cited in the Holy-Scriptures as emblems of solitude, are here given as the only inhabitants of these desolate regions. They are to be supposed flying from the hunters, who are behind to the left, out of sight, and to be seeking some still more remote part of the mountains as a place of refuge;

large quagga, even the skin of which we could not carry away. Just as I had collected together some few remarkable plants and insects, and we were about to make a retrograde movement, and seek our camp again, a large rhinoceros appeared in sight: at first it seemed to graze leisurely, but, as we approached, it suddenly trotted off with amazing velocity. It was late in the afternoon when I rejoined my companions, very much tired, but not ungratified with the seven hours that I had spent in these researches. Towards evening the weather became cloudy and rainy, and we had some difficulty to warm ourselves. The next morning the atmosphere was enveloped in a thick fog, and the ground was covered with a white hoar-frost; our tents were frozen quite stiff. We observed in the sequel that a like remarkable turn in the weather almost always took place at the change of the moon, but that it never continued above four-and-twenty hours.

As the sun broke out about noon, and the companions whom we expected to join us did not appear, we determined not to wait for them any longer, and proceeded on our way through the *Schietfonteins-poort*; so a narrow pass between the two principal groups of the Karree mountains is called. After some hours, we arrived at a large plain, inclosed with mountains, the summits of which had the absolute forms of cones and towers, and which might be about six miles in diameter. Some of our people, who were sent forwards with spades and pick-axes to level the worst places in the road for our waggons, having surprised a party of Bosjesmans, went up to them in a friendly manner, hoping to draw them into conversation; they, however, fled immediately, and vanished with incredible speed among the mountains.

To our great joy we remarked that the rain of the day before had been here very abundant, and that there was much more vegetation in the valley than in some parts through which we had passed. One shrub fell under my observation which was very remarkable; every twig from the root upwards, even to the smallest, came forth by three together, so that each one formed with those that stood by its side, as well as with the principal stem, an angle of a hundred and twenty degrees,—that is, the third part of a complete circle. This shrub is known to the colonists by the name of the *Tri-thorn*; it appears to be of the *Lycia* family, having this property in common with that tribe, that the end twig is always sharp pointed. As, however, not the least trace of fruit or flower was to be found upon it, I must leave it for future travellers to examine this

very remarkable plant, and determine its class. Some other shrubs of larger growth, which we had seen within the last few weeks, were also flourishing here in full leaf, but none were in flower. Farther on in the plain the flowers of some of the smaller liliaceous plants were already blown.

Here also the larger sorts of game, as hartebeests, elands, ostriches, and quaggas, were in the greatest abundance. Whole flocks of them were to be seen wherever our eyes were directed. We all dispersed ourselves about different ways upon our horses, and all succeeded in killing something. One of us having discovered a pool of water in the midst of the plain, it was determined that our camp should be pitched near it, so that the whole booty we had made might be safely stowed. When we reached the place, one of our waggons was entirely unloaded, fresh oxen were yoked to it, and it was sent round to collect the produce of our day's sport. Though all was not to be found, a very heavy load was brought home. Among the prey were two elands, that weighed, one seven hundred, the other five hundred pounds, with a hartebeest, several stone-antelopes,\* and an ostrich. The latter I had shot myself.

Such a hunting party as this must be reckoned one of the principal amusements afforded by a journey through these solitary African regions. No great dexterity is requisite to find ample sport in a country abounding so with wild animals; a good gun and a well-trained horse, are the principal requisites for that purpose. Most of the colonists have horses so well-trained, that though little promise appears in their exterior, they are found to have acquired by long practice so high a degree of dexterity and understanding, that the sportsman rider has scarcely any occasion to guide or to stop them. When once well-accustomed to following the game, no sooner are they put into pursuit of one object in particular, than they never suffer themselves to be diverted from it by the intervention of any other: they follow that, and that alone, not with an eager pace, but a constant steady gallop, which by degrees wearies out the animal pursued. When they are got near enough to the object, a signal with the mouth is sufficient to make them stop, so that the rider may take his aim

---

\* These two latter species of antelopes have too many systematic names for me to put them down here, without, at the same time, giving an ample justification of the familiar name by which I have commonly called them. I purpose, therefore, in another place to explain myself more fully with regard to the whole antelope species, and elucidate all these names.

securely. If the shot fails, the horse waits patiently till his master has loaded his piece again, and then resumes the pursuit with the same steady perseverance as before. Sometimes it is better to dismount to take the aim, but then the horse may be left entirely to himself; he stands perfectly still; nay, the rider may even rest the gun upon his neck or back to fire, and be assured that he will never move. Dogs are of little use in pursuing the game after this fashion, because the colonists do not understand how to train them sufficiently so as to restrain their ardour; and because they find it better for pursuing the lion and the tyger, that they should retain a certain degree of wildness.

The following morning was passed in salting and smoaking the best parts of our newly-acquired stores. The Hottentots, according to their usual custom, cut their shares of the flesh into small strips, and hung them upon the bushes to dry. The smell of this brought around us an incredible number of hungry ravens, *corvus albicollis*, which were scarcely to be driven away. From this circumstance our colonists gave the place, which as yet was without a name, that of *Kraayenkraal*. This day again we saw a vast deal of game very near us, but as they were only the same sorts of which we had already so great plenty, they were spared. The quaggas even came among our cattle as they were grazing, and fed quietly with them; a proof how little shy they are in a place where they are scarcely ever pursued. I had plenty of employment now for some days, in preparing the skulls, and other remarkable parts in the skeletons of the animals that we had taken, for being deposited in my collection.

The number of birds of prey, particularly the large vulture, increased so much, that we thought it better to make room for them, and at noon we proceeded on our way. Though we had left these voracious creatures abundance both of flesh and entrails, they soon followed us, and continued to do so during the whole of our journey. That they were always the same birds was proved, because, whenever we killed one, we invariably found in its maw some of the relics that we had left at our camp of the night before. After amusing ourselves very much with hunting in the course of the day, we came in the evening to a spring, now dried up, which has the name of the *Graftfontein*—the fountain of the grave; a name given to it because the brother of our companion Krieger lies buried here. While these two brothers, during

their banishment, lived among the Corans on the other side of the Orange river, they often used to go with the natives to shoot elephants. On one of these occasions they found several elephants together, which they began to chase in all directions. The elder Krieger had already killed one, and while the Corans were cutting it up, he went in pursuit of another which had been fired at. Probably he ventured too near, his shot failed again, and he was killed by the elephant. Certain it is, that when some of the Corans a few hours after went to seek for him, they only found his corpse lying on the declivity of a hill, dreadfully disfigured. Their first suspicions fell, not upon the elephant, but upon their hereditary enemies the Bosjesmans, a little horde of whom they had met at a spring. Without any farther reflections, they immediately sought them out, attacked them with their kirris and their hassagais, and put every one to death.

This horrible deed was performed before the younger Krieger returned from the strifes of the day, when too late he proved to them by the most indisputable tokens that his brother must have been trodden to death by the elephant. He then had the corpse brought hither for interment: it was deposited not far from the spring, and he raised a sort of wall over the grave, of pieces of slate stone piled together, intending it at once as a simple monument to his memory, and a defence to his remains. This wall being now somewhat dilapidated, he calmly occupied himself in repairing it, without appearing in the slightest degree affected with the recollections attached to what he was doing. The large elephant gun which he carried was the same that his brother had in his hand upon this disastrous occasion, and he pointed out a seam upon the stock as a proof with what eagerness the elephant must have trodden it to the ground. The death of this brother laid indeed the foundation of his receiving his pardon; since he now proved that the deceased was the contriver and instigator of the crime for which they were banished, that he had himself only been deluded into it as an accomplice. Thus it appeared, at least, from the act of pardon: he himself never said a word to us upon the subject. He indicated to me the place where the Bosjesmans were killed, and I went thither, in hopes of finding a complete skull; but the lions had broke all the bones to pieces, and strewed them about.

## CHAP. XLIV.

*Great want of Water.—The Salt Lakes.—Jokes among the Travelling Party.—The Modderfontein.—Several Meetings with Bosjesmans.—The Great River's Gate.—Arrival at the Orange River.—Description of this River.—Arduous Passage over it.—Visits from Bosjesmans and Caffres on the other Side.—Bands of Hottentot and European Robbers inhabiting the Country.—The Small-Pox reported to be raging among the Savages.*

We now proceeded through another pass, which carried us entirely out of the Karree mountains; and, before the sun was gone down, we were presented with a view of their northern front. The country became, at every step, more level, more sandy, and more barren. Fresh traces of human footsteps, which we, however, found, occasioned us to press forwards; that, if possible, we might overtake those by whom they had been made. But our endeavours were useless. Towards evening, the cold became very piercing; and continued increasing, till at length we could not sit upon our horses. We were obliged to dismount, and proceeded on foot, as long as the moon afforded us light. Our horses seemed to feel themselves so much in need of our protection, that they followed us voluntarily: there was no occasion to lead them; not the least disposition was shewn by them either to go on before or to linger behind.

A hill, which had been pointed out to us as the boundary of our day's journey, was at length reached, at the moment when the moon was going down; but the spring, at which we had hoped to refresh ourselves and our cattle, was dried up: not a drop of water remained in it. We formed our little camp under the shelter of an immense wall of rock, and made a large fire, which revived us very much. During the night, we all kept watch by turns, with loaded guns, to guard both ourselves and our cattle against the lions, numerous traces of which we had seen in the sands. Soon after midnight the rest of our company arrived with the waggons. The oxen were

extremely fatigued, and had great need of rest; so that the want of water embarrassed us exceedingly. If in the next day's journey we were still to find the springs dried up, our situation would be such as to give much cause for reflection, and that not of a very pleasant nature. It was therefore resolved to send some of our people forwards, to examine the situation of the country farther on, that we might return back in time, if it should be found so unfavourable as to preclude the execution of our enterprise. While they proceeded on their way, we enjoyed, round our fire, as much rest as cold and thirst would allow us; and having become, by degrees, very much accustomed to hardships and privations, we resigned ourselves to our situation with tolerable philosophy. At three o'clock in the morning we set out again, that, in case of good tidings being brought, as little time as possible might be lost in taking advantage of them.\* Many of the company condemned this haste as very imprudent, but they were obliged to comply. We had secretly resolved, notwithstanding any difficulties that might be presented, to penetrate at least as far as the Orange river. This, at the utmost, could not be more than three day's journey from the spot where we were; so that it was very little farther to go on thither, than to return again to the last spring we had quitted.

As none of our messengers were returned by noon, we began to cherish very pleasing presages, since it was agreed that one should return, and give us intelligence if no water was found in the first six hours. They had indeed discovered a spring; and a smoke, which began to be visible at a distance, rising from a fire they had made, soon converted our hopes into a joyful certainty. We hailed with shouts a little pool of dirty water, about ten feet in diameter; which, though supplied by a spring trickling so gently as to be but just perceptible, seemed to us an invaluable treasure. It was not without considerable trouble that we could restrain the horses and oxen, whose thirst had not been allayed for now nearly two days, till we ourselves had drunk, and till they were somewhat cooled. The pool was then enlarged

---

\* This place was called by our guides *Blesfontein*, though by others it is called *Buffelhout*, because a Coran Hottentot was once nearly trodden to death here by a buffalo. As the man had been lame from that time, the above name was given to him, and thence transferred to the spring.

and cleaned; but, notwithstanding this, the momentary supply was wholly exhausted, before the turn came for the last ox to drink.

Very near this place we arrived at a perfect plain, of some hours in circumference; which, in very heavy rains, is filled entirely with water, and resembles a lake. When it dries again, after having been thus overflowed, it is covered with a thick crust of natron. In this situation the valley so entirely resembles a frozen lake, that even in going over it, from the glitter of the natron, and the crackling of the salt under the feet, any one might easily be deceived into the belief that they were actually going on ice. The crust was in many places, particularly about the middle, where the moisture had continued the longest, from two to three lines thick, and might be broke off in large lumps. On every side the footsteps of game of various kinds were perfectly traced in the salt, so that I had to regret the brittleness of the crystals, which would not resist impressions. This place is generally called the Chalk Fountain, the base of one of the hills consisting entirely of a white chalk, while higher up it is composed of a variety of minerals running one into the other. By some the name of Jonkerfontein is given to the spot.

Our business, while we rested here, was confined to writing down our journals; to little excursions about the country; and to some domestic labours for the advantage of the whole party. As night closed in, the whole company assembled round a large fire near the camp, and weighed, in common, the hardships and dangers which had been surmounted, and those which the following day might bring. Not far from us several small fires had been made, and the slaves were occupied in preparing our supper. The Hottentots, more accustomed to the want of wood, were content rather to suffer somewhat from cold, than take the trouble of collecting bushes to make a fire. We found them even sleeping near our fire, and permitted our jovial young men to make a noise and frighten them, that they might recollect they ought to be upon the watch. While they were sitting half asleep, our wags went slyly to a little distance, and shot a couple of arrows from a Bosjesman's bow. No sooner did the slumberers hear the twang of the spring, and perceive the shafts falling by them, than they sprang up hastily, almost tumbling over each other, to get their arms from the waggon. They were received there with a loud burst of laughter from the people about.

For this joke they afterwards took ample revenge. As the same young

men were amusing themselves one dark evening with setting fire to some dried reeds, about two hundred paces from our camp, and were vastly delighted with the crackling and sparkling they made, some of the Hottentots stole directly behind the reeds, and, with the shell of an ostrich's egg, imitated the roaring of a lion so naturally, repeating it three times, every time as if nearer than the former, that at length the young men, recollecting that these reeds were a favourite haunt of the lions, ran away, screaming violently, and came almost breathless to the camp. These, and similar kind of jokes, contributed very much to the maintenance of good humour, in a journey which was otherwise very monotonous. The evening was passed among us amid sportive sallies relative to the Bosjesmans and lions; among the colonists in singing hymns; and among the Hottentots with dancing and other pastimes. After supper we separated, some to our rest, some to mount guard.

About noon the following day we set off again; and, after travelling some hours, found the rest of the *avant-coureurs*, who had been dispatched in search of water. They were seated by a spring, which, like the former, was near a salt lake, and was strongly impregnated with natron. They had surprised a Bosjesman here, who, when they came pretty near him, ran away with almost incredible swiftness; but, after much search, he was found crouching under a bush, rolled up nearly as round as a ball. They took from him his weapons, and brought him to us. He told us, through the intervention of the interpreters, that he belonged to a little horde, whose usual abode was at the distance of some days' journey; and that he had been for several days out on the chase, but had not shot any thing: he therefore begged that his weapons might be restored. His arrows were examined, when only five were found fit for use, very slightly poisoned, and without iron plates. He asserted that he knew nothing of the robberies of his countrymen, nor of the situation of the people who lived farther up the country. As he appeared under great apprehension, it was signified to him that no injury should be done him; but that we would always be the friends of every one of his nation who abstained from robbery. His bow and arrows were then restored to him; and, as he gave us to understand that he was very hungry, a large piece of cooked meat was presented him to eat directly, and a quantity of smoked eland's flesh as store for his journey. He, however, devoured the whole immediately with the utmost dispatch, roasting the latter in the

ashes, while he was regaling on the former. He then begged for brandy and tobacco: the latter he stuffed into a reed, and smoked with such eagerness, that he was soon completely intoxicated, and fell down senseless. He had not puffed out the smoke as he inhaled it, but had swallowed every morsel. Our Hottentots rolled him about upon the ground; and nature assisting to throw up what affected him, he at length came to himself. He soon after began eating again, and evinced such complete satisfaction at the hospitality we had shewn him, that we proposed his accompanying us for the remainder of our journey, with liberty to quit us whenever he might wish it. He readily accepted the proposal, and immediately sought himself out a place near our tent, where he slept quietly the whole night. The next morning, however, when we were about to depart, he seemed seized with a sudden panic. At first he began to steal away sily and slowly; but soon, when he thought he was far enough, he set off running with such swiftness, that he was out of sight in a few moments.

The place where we had now stopped is called Modderfontein. It is remarkable from a row of hills which begin here, stretching a considerable way eastward, and which appear to be composed entirely of a pale green, semi-transparent quartz. No particular regularity of strata was to be observed; but here and there large masses seemed loosened from the general mass, and were either standing free, like pillars with their points erect, or lying in large cubical blocks at the foot of the hill. The exterior of the stone was in some parts more, in some less, affected by the weather. Many pieces had nearly lost their transparency: when fresh broken, they were still clear within, and every where interspersed with flakes of mica. The nearest hill to us was about a hundred feet high, very steep, almost entirely naked, with only a few plants growing upon the summit, or shooting out from the interstices. Among them I observed, with great pleasure, some of the larger aloe species; things we had not seen since we quitted the Bokkeveld. I considered this as an earnest that we were getting into a better country, and I did not find myself deceived in the expectation.

In an hour from our setting out, we came to a third valley, larger than either of the others, and, like them, covered with natron. At the farther end of the valley we discerned five men, whom, on examining them with our glasses, we determined to be Bosjesmans. I made my way up to them,

unarmed, taking an interpreter with me; and though at first they seemed disposed to fly, by calling and making signs, we succeeded at length in prevailing upon them to stop. They all wore little mantles of antelope skins, which served as a proof that they lived by the chase rather than by robbery. My companion employed all his eloquence in their language, to persuade them to go with us, but without success, till he gave them a little tobacco, and promised them plenty more, if they would come to our camp. On this they accompanied us, holding, by the way, an eager conversation with each other, which my companion could not understand entirely; for he remarked that they made use of a dialect very different from that of their countrymen on the borders of the colony. One said that they belonged to the other side of *'t Gariep*, so they call the Orange river, and had come hither only in pursuit of game. They had already shot, he said, two ostriches and an eland; and therefore proposed soon to return. When we asked whether they did not let their women partake of their booty, they answered that they had ants and locusts enough, so they had themselves eaten all they had killed. The spokesman had a good open countenance, with very small lively eyes, which sparkled with joy when the promised tobacco, and some brandy, were given to him and his associates. He was obliged to repeat every thing three times before he could make Vischer comprehend his meaning; and he found no less difficulty in understanding any question put to him. The language of these people had, indeed, a very different sound from that to which we were accustomed. They spoke in a very high tone, particularly in the last syllable of a sentence, which was uttered like a loud shout, and sunk, by degrees, into a low and faint tone. Some of these sounds continued even for four or five seconds. At taking leave they begged for more brandy, which was refused them; but instead of it they were regaled with roasted meat. We gave them also a live sheep to take to their wives and children. They seemed, however, not to think of going away, but ranged themselves round a fire to eat their dinner. In a short time a Hottentot came and told us that they had already killed their sheep, and were busied in devouring it. Indeed, their voracity excited in us the utmost astonishment. Without skinning the animal, they cut out large pieces, threw them, all bloody, into the fire, whence they soon withdrew them, and then began to eat, supplying their place in the embers with fresh pieces. The sheep was small, not weighing

more than about thirty-six pounds; yet it appeared scarcely comprehensible to us, that it was all devoured in less than an hour. Some of the entrails they kept, and had wound them round their legs. They remained at our camp all night, and went away early in the morning, without taking any farther leave.

We now arrived at a pass between two high mountains, which is called, by the colonists, the Great River's Gate. Here, for the first time since we quitted the Karroo, we saw some mimosas; and the place where we now pitched our camp appeared to us, on that account, very pleasant. The want of water was more easily supported, as we had brought some barrels of this necessary article from the place where we last rested, and we found good pasture for our cattle. Besides, the Orange river was not now at a great distance, and we were hastening forwards to reach it as soon as possible. Before we quitted the place, I ascended one of the hills: the chain, of which it forms a part, stretches to some extent from east to west, running parallel with the Great river. I saw, with no small delight, the vallies lying before us, displaying a richer verdure than any we had yet traversed: and, upon the declivity of the hill, I found several beautiful plants: some were even in blow. From all these things it was evident that we were getting into a better soil, and a more benignant climate. The plants were almost all new to me. There were not only succulent plants, such as the *quiver tree*, and others of the aloe tribe, but flowers of the finest perfume, and the richest hues, belonging to the tribes *justicia*, *salvia*, *acanthus*, *röellia*, and others.

The usual signal for our departure being given, that is to say, three smacks with one of the long colonist waggoner's whips, which may be heard to the distance of half an hour, I was too soon obliged to conclude my walk, and rejoin my company. I, however, found in our route, which lay through a wide spread valley, many things to attract my attention. Almost every object presented a new, and most a very striking, form. The greater part of the thickets were composed of a shrub with feathery leaves, and strong thorns curved backwards; by these, myself, as well as my Hottentot, were many times caught, as we endeavoured to seize some very fine beetles that were sitting upon the bushes; nor could we disengage ourselves without much difficulty, and having our clothes torn. Unfortunately the shrubs had not, at this time, either fruit or flowers. Krieger afterwards told us, that when

he quitted the country, he had carried cuttings with him to his own house, and had raised hedges from them, which, on account of the thorns, were impenetrable to all beasts of prey, even to the jackal. Besides these, I saw several sorts of *lycium* and *cestrum*, covered over with the most beautiful insects. Among the latter I particularly distinguished the *buprestis interpunctata*, and the *gryllus mola*. The former is one of the largest and most beautiful beetles of Southern Africa, the latter an animal of the most paradoxical conformation: both were hitherto wholly unknown to me. Upon these bushes I observed, in many places, a parasite plant, with very fine deep red flowers,\* which was a real ornament to the valley. The rocks too partook of the same character of novelty as the plants. Several specimens which I brought with me have been classed by German mineralogists as entirely new mountain productions.†

Occupied as I was with such a variety of interesting objects, I lingered behind the rest of the party, and did not reach the banks of the Orange river till some hours after them; so that I found our camp already formed, under the shade of some tall trees. The sight of the river, a rapid stream, with its lofty banks richly shaded by trees, was most transporting to us, after travelling so long through a barren waste, often in want of water. The present low state of the water, and an island in the midst of the river, which concealed half its breadth from us, at first diminished very much, in our ideas, the representation given by our guides of the frightful depth and force of the stream. On examination, however, it was easy to see, that, under other circumstances, that representation would be found in no way exaggerated. The proper bed of the river is about twenty feet deeper than the nearest level ground; and

---

\* M. Wendland, principal gardener in the botanic garden at Herenhausen, determined this plant to be a new species; and, to do honour to my little merits, gave it my name, under which it is described among his *Collection of Native and Foreign Plants*, Vol. II. Tab. 32. Professor Willdenow has, however, restored it to the species *loranthus*, from which it varies only in the number of its filaments.

† Under this description comes the true *fibrous quartz*, which the principal physician, Counsellor Klapproth, examined, and has described in the *Magazine of the Berlin Society's Friend to the Inquirer into Natural History for the Year 1811*.

the distance of the banks from each other in the broadest part, including the island, is, according to an accurate measurement, one thousand seven hundred and twenty Rhenish feet. The greatest part of this breadth was at present dry. Each arm that enclosed the island might have water to the breadth of a hundred and forty, or a hundred and fifty feet, at the utmost. The island itself may be about six hundred feet in breadth. It is evident to an accurate observer, that this whole breadth is sometimes entirely filled with water; that even the island itself is submerged. Bunches of grass were now hanging to the trees that grow upon it, and the banks bore fresh marks of the force with which the stream must have rushed along. Sometimes even, though very rarely, it overflows its high banks, and spreads itself over the surrounding country, quite to the foot of the nearest mountains. Some of our companions said, that they had seen it in this state four years before; and pointed out, as a proof of the truth of their assertions, some large trunks of trees lying at a certain height upon the hills on both sides, which must indisputably have been carried thither by the waters. The breadth of the river must then have exceeded a geographical mile; and, at a moderate computation, it must have risen at least fifty feet higher than it was in its present state. It would, however, be a great error to ascribe this prodigious inundation to the general immoderate swelling of the whole mass of waters. It arises from the stream being confined, about a German mile and half lower down, in a very narrow chasm between two steep rocks. At both ends of this straight, the hills stretch from the north and south so as almost to form a dam, and appear as if, in ancient times, they had enclosed a lake, the waters of which, by degrees, bore down this dam in the lowest part, and forced themselves a way through. If, as is sometimes the case during the summer months, violent and continued thunder-showers fall along the banks of the river, and among the hills to the east, this narrow chasm is wholly inadequate to affording a passage to the body of water which pours down; and, thus repelled from going forwards with the rapidity necessary for carrying it off, the water must spread itself out on each side. For this reason the waters rise higher just in this spot than in any other part. On the northern side of the river some remains are to be discerned of the old bed of a river: that is to say, the same pebbles are found there, in abundance, as those

which compose the upper stratum in the banks of the present river; namely, agate, jasper, and chalcedony. Some of these are very large, and of great beauty.

Many of the trees which ornament the banks of the river are of a considerable height. Among them may be particularly distinguished the *zizyphus mucronatus* of Professor Wildenow, vulgarly called the *buffalo's thorn*. The stem of this tree is rarely more than two feet in thickness. The branches are all set with thorns, which grow by pairs, the one of which stands erect, the other curves backwards. Lower down, on the steep banks, are mimosas, different sorts of willows, and *Karree bushes*. Among the latter the colonists include several sorts of *rhus*. Between these, and farther into the plain, are many shrubs, particularly of the tribes *lycium*, *cestrum*, and *zygophyllum*. To get down these banks to the river itself, it is best to follow the paths beat by the river-horses, in their nocturnal excursions on shore. Were not such evident traces of their ponderous feet every where to be seen, it would appear almost impossible for such an enormously massive body to get up an ascent so steep.

As we found the water uncommonly low, it was resolved to attempt the passage of the river without any delay, lest a sudden increase of it should augment our difficulties. After a careful examination, that we might be sure of taking the most commodious spot, and having, not without some trouble, made a path, we mounted our horses, and rode by the side of the waggons; while, for their greater security, we made some of our Hottentots strip themselves, and lead the oxen, that they might not swerve, in the slightest degree, to the right or to the left. One of the colonists, who thought all this caution by no means necessary, in going over a bank between the shore and the island, deviated from the direction we had taken, and fell into the hole of a river-horse, where he was in the utmost danger of being drowned: he was only extricated from his perilous situation by the extraordinary strength and dexterity of his horse. Two of our sheep were carried away by the stream, and drowned. The deepest place we found was on the other side of the island, where the water was nearly over the backs of our horses, and penetrated into our waggons. As we had some reason to apprehend this, all the goods had been raised and supported in the waggons, so that nothing was injured. No sooner had we accomplished our arduous task, and reached the

opposite shore, than we pitched our tents, resolved to rest for a day, and recruit our cattle after so much fatigue. Our guides, however, advised us not to stay here very long, since the fresh river-water might prove injurious to the oxen after they had been so long accustomed only to brackish water. We ourselves indeed found a great difference, and were forced in the end to confess that the river-water tasted vapid, and that the salt-petre water we had drank for some time quenched the thirst better.

On the following day, early in the morning, Krieger's large elephant gun was fired several times to notify our arrival to the Corans and Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood. After some hours, two Bosjesmans actually appeared, who saluted us with their '*t Abek*, asked for some tobacco, and having received it, seated themselves behind a bush, by a little fire, to revel at their ease in the delight of smoking. I devoted a considerable time to observing these men very accurately; and though, according to all that is related above, I must allow the validity of their claims to be classed among rational creatures, I cannot forbear saying that a Bosjesman, certainly in his mien, and all his gestures, has more resemblance to an ape than to a man. One of our present guests, who appeared about fifty years of age, who had grey hair and a bristly beard, whose forehead, nose, cheeks, and chin, were all smeared over with black grease, having only a white circle round the eye washed clean with the tears occasioned by smoking,—this man had the true physiognomy of the small blue ape of Caffraria. What gives the more verity to such a comparison was the vivacity of his eyes, and the flexibility of his eye-brows, which he worked up and down with every change of countenance. Even his nostrils and the corners of his mouth, nay, his very ears moved involuntarily, expressing his hasty transitions from eager desire to watchful distrust. There was not, on the contrary, a single feature in his countenance that evinced a consciousness of mental powers, or any thing that denoted emotions of the mind of a milder species than what belong to man in his mere animal nature. When a piece of meat was given him, and half rising he stretched out a distrustful arm to take it, he snatched it hastily, and stuck it immediately into the fire, peering around with his little keen eyes, as if fearing lest some one should take it away again:—all this was done with such looks and gestures, that any one must have been ready to swear he had taken the example of them entirely from an ape. He soon took the meat from the embers, wiped it hastily

with his right hand upon his left arm, and tore out large half raw bits with his teeth, which I could see going entire down his meagre throat. At length when he came to the bones and entrails, as he could not manage these with his teeth, he had recourse to a knife which was hanging round his neck: with this he cut off the piece which he held in his teeth, close to the mouth, without touching his nose or eyes,—a feat of dexterity which a person with a Celtic countenance could not easily have performed. When the bone was picked clean, he stuck it again into the fire, and breaking it between two stones, sucked out the marrow; this done, he immediately filled the emptied bone with tobacco. I offered him a clay pipe, which he declined; and taking the thick bone a great way into his mouth, he drew in the smoke by long draughts, snapping his eyes like a person who with more than usual pleasure drinks a glass of costly wine. After three or four draughts, he handed the bone to his countryman, who inhaled three or four mouthfuls in like manner, and then stuck it, still burning, into his leather bag, to be reserved for future occasions. They both now looked at me with complacence, and seemed to divert themselves very much at my observing them with such eager curiosity. They did not leave us till we ourselves quitted the spot, but we could not obtain from them any information respecting their own countrymen or the Corans.

Soon after them appeared a numerous horde of Caffres—people whom we little expected to have seen here. When by means of our interpreters, we had held a conversation with the chiefs of the party, one of whom was called Oalela, and the other Gola, both being, as we learnt, nephews of Sambèh, we found that this party were emigrants from their own country, and had been now for a considerable time established in these parts. The interpreter who had taken the Dutch name of Danster, (*Dancer*) and who called himself the corporal of the horde, had left his country about ten years before with a large swarm of followers; but he had soon, with a select few, separated himself from the rest, and retired to this neighbourhood. After remaining here awhile, he was driven by want to seek refuge in the colony, where he hired himself to a farmer as his herdsman, while his companions in like manner each procured themselves some means of gaining a subsistence. Having learnt the Dutch language, and served till he grew tired of his situation, he collected the greater part of his band again about him, and established himself with them

upon the banks of the Great river; a part of the country which was become an asylum for all the rabble that were for any reason outcasts from the colony. Here he became acquainted with some of the followers of the wretched Hottentot Africanus, who was leader of the band that cut short the days of the worthy Pienaar, as mentioned in the first volume of this work.\* The fear of falling into the hands of justice, after having been guilty of such a crime, induced the perpetrator to quit the colony entirely, and he retreated at that time to an island in the river, where he intrenched himself very strongly, and whither he always returned after a fortunate predatory excursion. With this man, Danster by degrees entered into so strong a friendship, that a plan was in agitation to unite their two hordes; when suddenly, in the absence of most of the Caffres, the few who remained were slaughtered by Africanus's band, and the women and children were carried away. Danster, too weak to revenge himself, sought, at least, to set the prisoners at liberty, in which he succeeded one dark night, when the robbers were asleep, after having celebrated a festival for some new victory, with dancing and brandy. He stole to the place, and got the women again into his power, but was betrayed too soon, before he was able to put Africanus, with his companions, to death as they slept; he was even obliged to leave the children in the power of this terrible Hottentot. From that time Danster did not dare to remain any longer in the neighbourhood of his former friend, but went farther up the river, where, after encountering for some time great vicissitudes of fortune, he met with a party of his countrymen, who had emigrated at a later period than himself, under the two abovenamed leaders. These people, although more than a hundred strong, united themselves with his little family, and placed themselves under his guidance. From that time they had gained but a miserable existence, partly with breeding cattle, and partly with the laborious pursuit of game, sustaining perpetual conflicts with the Boesjesmans, and constantly wandering about from place to place, though always returning, from preference, to the banks of the river.

We had scarcely entered into conversation with them before they began to exercise their country's charter, and beg of us, not only brandy and tobacco, but a number of sheep, that they might have a substantial dinner. Convinced

---

\* See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 139.

that they would seize by force what they could not obtain by solicitation, we did not venture upon a positive refusal of their demand, but sought to elude it under different pretences. We soon perceived that the two chiefs seemed to have very little authority, but that Danster issued out his orders without referring in the least to them. Him therefore we sought to win by many secret presents, and by treating him with a distinguished courtesy of behaviour: by these means we at length succeeded in getting a release from the tribute required, upon a promise that at our return we would share with him whatever we might then have in our possession. Though we were now pretty well accustomed to hearing stories of murder and plunder, related as matters of little moment; to see a man's life considered as a trifle; so that in listening to such details we seemed only attending to things relating to national customs and manners;—how much soever this was the case with us, it was still not without great internal struggles, that we could suppress the indignation perpetually rising within us, so far as to treat in such a manner with a wretch like this Danster; for he gave us, with the most consummate audacity, and without the smallest reserve or appearance of shame, such histories of the murderous deeds which he had committed among the Corans and Bosjesmans, and talked of so many more which he projected, that we were quite chilled with horror. He also told us of a band of christians who lived farther up the river, subsisting entirely upon the chase and occasional plunder. From all the circumstances, and especially from the christian names of the leaders, which only he could repeat to us, we had no doubt that they were the brothers Bezuidenhout and the brothers Lochenberg, who, in company with some English deserters, had for many years led a vagabond life, and were proscribed by the government.\* Danster farther talked of some christians whom he occasionally saw singly wandering about, whom, from the description of their cloathing, we had no doubt were deserters from the Dutch army. As we inquired about these with particular anxiety, he hesitated in his answer: he only assured us that we should not find them; so that we could not help suspecting that they had also fallen victims to his hardened soul.

---

\* See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 330.—One of these names is there by mistake called Lochenhout, instead of Lochenberg.

I was much struck in contemplating the countenances of Oalela and Gola ; with observing that they both squinted ; a thing I had remarked in almost all the near relations of Sambeh. For the rest, the appearance of these princes was somewhat poor. Instead of the beautiful tyger-skins worn with so much parade by the princes during the conference at the Fish river, they had only garments of sheep and antelope skins, which were indeed of the Caffre fashion, but had holes in many places ; a thing which a Caffre cannot endure. Their skin too wanted the shining hue usual in their country, and they complained to us, as a serious evil, that there was none of the proper dying stone to be found here, that they could only rub themselves over with fat and ashes.

One piece of information, however, with which the Caffres sought to dissuade us from proceeding farther, gave us more uneasiness than all the rest ; this was that the small-pox raged very much among the people whom we proposed visiting, and that many persons had already died of it. Notwithstanding all our precautions, we could not keep this from reaching the ears of our African companions, who were already a little weary with the difficulties encountered in the journey ; but this new danger threw them into such dreadful apprehensions, that they no longer saw any thing but inevitable death in the prosecution of our plans. In the year 1753, the small-pox had raged very much in the Cape Town, so that two-thirds of the inhabitants had been swept off ; the very name of this disease had ever since been sufficient to make an African tremble, and we could not therefore blame our companions much for the anxiety they evinced. They declared that they were ready to encounter every danger with us, which might be overcome by courage and resolution, but to die of this miserable disease was so horrible to their imaginations, that they must renounce serving us any longer. We endeavoured to persuade them that the report was most probably an entire invention of the Caffres, who wanted to prevent our going farther, and that it would appear very foolish in us, if we suffered ourselves to be deterred from our purpose by a mere report, without examining into the truth of it ourselves. By such representations we at length succeeded in somewhat tranquillizing them ; but the impossibility of returning without us, had I believe much more influence in determining them to proceed.

## CHAP. XLV.

*Departure from the Orange River.—Another Meeting with Bosjesmans.—Precocity of their Children.—A Hottentot Wedding.—Description of the 't Gorrah, a Hottentot Musical Instrument.—The broken Red Rock.—Striking Curve of the River.—Re-  
counter with some Missionaries.—John Matthias Kok.—Different Climate of this  
Country.—The Hottentot Republic.—Laauwaterskloof.—Mode of Worship of the  
Missionaries.*

THESE Caffres were so little agreeable to us as neighbours, that, contrary to our original intention, we determined on breaking up our camp the very next morning, to proceed on our journey. The ford of the Orange river, where we had crossed, and which bears the Coranian name of Priskab, is very judiciously chosen for the purpose. The river here makes a curve in the form of an S, so that in the first day's journey we did not entirely quit its banks, but remained always upon, or at a short distance from them. The most northern part of this curve is four hours distant from the ford: but as we loitered a long time upon the road, and a part of our company did not return from the chase till late, we only reached it as the sun was fast declining.

I had, with some of our party, got to a distance from the waggons, in pursuit of a flock of gnus, and were returning back, when we met, in a little valley, with a Bosjesman family, seated under some bushes, who, to our astonishment, waited our coming up to them very quietly. Besides the old ape, who had visited us the day before, and who came towards us with the utmost confidence as acquaintance, there were four men and six women, with several young girls and little children. When we came up to them, they all shouted repeatedly, 't *Abeh*, 't *Abeh*, in which our old man joined; but, excepting him, not one of the party moved from the sitting or recumbent postures in which we first saw them. Soon after, they called, in a gentler tone, *Twak*, *Twak*, holding out their hands for tobacco. When we had dis-

tributed among them the little we had about us, the girls putting in for their share, as well as the rest, they all began to talk very quick : during which, they sometimes looked at us, sometimes rubbed the tobacco in their hands, and stuffed it into their bone pipes. Their conversation was apparently concerning us; but each one seemed only repeating his thoughts aloud, without any view to the rest listening to him, or answering him. A couple of young girls, who looked at us very roguishly, distinguished themselves particularly by the vivacity with which they spoke. They lengthened out the sound of the last syllable interminably; and, when it appeared as if their breath was wholly exhausted, after a pause to draw breath, they recommenced such a clattering, babbling, and snorting, that we were obliged at length to stop our ears.

An old woman now drew out a large root from the ashes, which I afterwards learnt was that of some water plant, and which looked savoury and good. She divided it with the other women; upon which they laid down their tobacco bones, after having taken in several very large quaffs of the smoke. The little children were extremely ugly, and no less shapelessly thick in the body, than the grown people were shapelessly lean. The skull projecting exceedingly behind, and the short hair growing very low down upon the forehead, gave them the appearance of hydrocephalus; and they had almost all such small winking eyes, sunk so deep in fat, that at first I thought there had been some general complaint in the eyes among them. In endeavouring to convince myself whether this was so or not, one of these children began to cry most piteously; and the mother seemed so little to understand my coaxing it, and patting it on the back to make it quiet, that she drew it to her with a distrustful air, and put it under her cloak. The whole party immediately ceased speaking, which we took as a mark of ill-will towards us: but we no sooner began to divide among them the few superfluities we had about us, as, for instance, some of the buttons which we cut from our coats, than their eloquence was recommenced.

Another thing which I remarked in the children was, in what an extraordinary degree, considering their age, they seemed able to help themselves. Quite young creatures at the breast crawled about in the sands, without any help; and many, who did not appear to be a year old, went alone, erect upon their legs: others but a little older, were grubbing about in the fields, to get

up the little bulbs, which they immediately ate. The prettiest among them were the children from eight to fourteen years old. The boys, who were a little older, looked already piteously lean, and their skin had that flabby appearance which characterises the whole nation. Among the men here, as was the case with the old *beard man*, their bellies were hanging down in folds. With some the skin of their breasts hung down also on each side, in such a manner, that, between this circumstance and the want of beard, it was easy in a person of years to mistake the sex. Having no interpreter with us, it was difficult to make them understand, by signs, that we invited them to visit our camp, where they should have some presents. It is, indeed, probable, that they did not understand it at all, although from their nodding their heads, and talking very loud, we supposed they did: for we never received any visit from them, nor did we see them any more. What we observed here, however, confirmed a remark which I have made before, that the Bosjesmans about the Orange river are the most gentle and sociable of any among their countrymen. At taking leave, we repeated to them their '*Abeh*, that we might not go away in an entirely cold and unsocial manner: they, however, laughed, as they only salute each other at meeting, never at taking leave. They observed a strict silence as we quitted them, nor appeared to pay the least attention to us.

In the mean time it was dark before we reached the waggons, where we were expected with the utmost impatience. We were now again by the river side, but not in a place where we could go down to it, and we were therefore necessitated to proceed some way farther by moonlight. As there is no beaten track here, and the way was rendered much more difficult by the dry grass, and the deep gutters which ran down the hills to the river;—as, besides, one of our company had had the misfortune to fall into a pit made by the Bosjesmans for ensnaring the river-horses, from which, however, happily he escaped, without being materially hurt, the usual stake not being stuck into the middle of it,—all these things considered, we were at length obliged to resolve on stopping for the night. Our Hottentots, moreover, had begged very hard not to go farther, because they wished to celebrate a solemn festival this evening by the light of the full moon. At the Sack river we had taken into our company a Bastard Hottentot, who, with his family, was desirous of joining the institution of the Missionary Anderson. A sister,

who previously belonged to our company, soon pierced the heart of this new-comer; and, a few days before, he had requested, with all proper form and ceremony, our permission to make her his wife. Here, then, was the nuptial feast to be solemnized; and no sooner were the tents pitched, and the oxen properly taken care of, than all the Hottentots assembled round a large fire, to prepare their supper, and to enjoy, with singing and shouts of transport, a double ration of brandy, which was allowed them for the occasion. After supper they went through their usual sports round the fire: they had mock-fights, and concluded the whole, late in the night, with a general dance. These pastimes, however, had not much of national character, since the present generation of Hottentots in the interior of the colony have, in this respect, very much adopted the European customs. They seemed to pay little attention to the new married couple, and the whole appeared to be principally a pretence to have a frolic by moonlight, according to ancient custom.

The bridegroom was perfect master of playing on the *'t Gorrah*, one of the proper musical instruments of the Hottentots; one which is not now very often to be met with, and which is seldom well played upon but by old shepherds and herdsmen. It consists of a staff of hard wood somewhat curved, over which is stretched a long catgut string: at the lower end a quill is fastened to it, with a horse hair, and by this only again brought into contact with the staff, so that it is in some sort insulated, and can sound of itself. The person who plays takes the quill in his mouth, and, by blowing stronger or weaker, occasions a vibration of the catgut. The whole has very much the appearance of the bow of a violin; and is, according to the above description, partly a stringed, partly a wind instrument. It is commonly played lying down, and the Hottentots seem scarcely able to play, but amid the tranquillity of night. They wrap themselves up comfortably in their skin, lay one ear to the ground, and hold the *'t Gorrah* commodiously before the mouth. In the latter weeks of our journey, the amateurs would sometimes amuse themselves with this instrument almost the whole night through, although they had been obliged to drive our loose cattle for nearly the whole day. We were, by degrees, so accustomed to the monotonous sound, that our sleep was never disturbed by it; nay, it rather lulled us to sleep. Heard at a distance, there is nothing unpleasant in it, but something plaintive and

soothing. Although no more than six tones can be produced from it, which do not besides belong to our gamut, but form intervals quite foreign to it, yet the kind of vocal sound of these tones, the uncommon nature of the rythm, and even the oddness, I may say wildness, of the harmony, gives to this music a charm peculiar to itself.

I venture to make use of the term harmony, for so it may indeed be called, since, although the intervals be not the same as our's, they stand in a proportion perfectly regular and intelligible, as well as pleasing to the ear. Between the principal tones and the octave lie only three intervals: the first is at least somewhat deeper than our great third: the second lies in the middle, between the little and great fifth; and the third between the great sixth and little seventh; so that a person might imagine he hears the modulation first in the smallest seventh accord. Yet every one lies higher in proportion to the principal tone; the ear feels less the desire of breaking off in the pure triple sound; it is even more satisfied without it. Practised players continue to draw out the second, sometimes even the third, interval, in the higher octave. Still these high tones are somewhat broken, and seldom pure octaves of the corresponding deep tones. Melodies, properly speaking, are never to be heard; it is only a change of the same tones, long protracted, the principal tone being struck before every one. It deserves to be remarked, that the intervals in question do not properly belong to the instrument: they are, in truth, the psalmodial music of the African savages. But to return to ourselves.

Our camp was pitched in a very dangerous place: directly before us was the stream, and directly behind a long steep wall of rock. If the stream should happen to rise suddenly in the night, as is not unfrequently the case, we should have had great difficulty to escape. Instances of such misfortunes, as I have remarked already, when speaking of the Gaurits river, are by no means rare on the banks of the larger rivers in Southern Africa; and the place where we were, as we had occasion to observe on the following day, is particularly distinguished for it. It will easily be comprehended, that, in a place where so powerful a stream takes, on a sudden, a completely contrary direction, the forms of the mountains must be very peculiar; and that they must bear upon them strong marks of the powerful effect produced by the stream working upon them through long-enduring centuries. The steep walls, indeed,

which compel the river to take this extraordinary turn are extremely picturesque. They rear their heads to a vast height, often curving like arches over the willows and mimosas which ornament the banks: vast blocks which have fallen, and between which these trees slowly and sparingly shoot up, display forcibly the vast power of the waters when they rise to a considerable height. From two deep chasms, which divide the chain of mountains into three groups, two periodical rivulets fall directly down into the main stream: their banks are thickly grown over with wood, and in the interior of the vallies are some very wild and bold cliffs. The first rock at the entrance of the southern chasm is of a very extraordinary structure; its strata are exceedingly broken, and sunk at the sides, but are united together again in their present situations by later concretions. For this reason travellers have given it the name of the *Red-broken-rock*, and this name is now extended to the whole spot. The stone of which the rock consists stretches in strata of a sort of slate deep into the river; it is of a fine blue colour, and is esteemed by the colonists extremely durable; they use it therefore very much, when it can be procured, for rubbing over their houses and walls, first oiling it well. Farther within the valley the rocks are covered with a sort of crust of a red yellow ochre, which proves that they contain a great quantity of iron; and almost every where the mass of the rock is interspersed with cubical iron stones.\*

Early in the morning Krieger quitted the camp to seek out a horde of Bastard-Hottentots and Corans who formerly lived on the other side of the river. Towards noon he returned, without having found them; but he communicated the disagreeable intelligence that he had met with some missionaries, who came from the Briqua country, whence they brought no very welcome tidings: they had formed their camp just beyond the turn of the river, where they were waiting for us. We accordingly set out without delay, but were obliged to make a very long circuit through the mountains, to arrive

---

\* The principal physician, Klaproth, who examined also this mineral, found it of so very distinct a nature from any other he had seen, that he pronounced it a new species of mountain, and gave it the name of *Blue-iron-stone*. Its particular hardness, and the durability of the blue colour, which resists fire, are very marked characters in it. An accurate account of its chemical properties, and of all its component parts, is given in the description published by Mr. Klaproth in the Berlin Society's *Friend to the Inquirer into Natural History* for the year 1811.

at a place which in a straight line lay at not more than an hour's distance from us. After ascending and descending constantly for four hours we arrived at the spot, when we saw the rocks, beneath which we had passed the night, as it were directly at our backs.

We were received by the missionaries Van-der-Lingen and John Matthias Kok, the former a Dutchman, who had only a few months before travelled to the Briqua country, the latter an African born, having lived four years among these savages. They told us that they had been under the necessity of quitting the country, on account of a war which had broke out between two tribes of the Brikwas. Two other missionaries they said were also already on their return, and were only three day's journey behind them. They had both numerous families with them: the Hottentots were busied with making a sort of huts of mats between the wheels of the waggons. The disagreeable news of the small-pox having broken out among the savages, was confirmed by them; but they added that the disease was of a very favourable kind, and had already abated much. New terrors were now awakened in our camp. None of our African companions would venture to go near the missionaries for fear of taking the infection from them; nay, their apprehensions were carried so far, that they kept always to windward of the missionary camp, that the infection might not be wafted to them through the air. It was true, that not one among the missionary party was ill with the disease, yet as they had quitted the last village of the Bastard-Hottentots only three days before, some one of them might, unknown even to himself, carry the poison about with him, and might perhaps be taken ill the very next day. We did not say a word against these precautions, lest our good colonists should take a fancy to quit us, and join these people, who were retreating from the danger, rather than remain with those who were running into the midst of it: on the contrary, we commended their attention to preventing the infection from spreading, only representing to them, that in case of the worst they would be safer in our company, since we had medicines, and could take better care of them. The confidence which they had in my medical skill was on this occasion not without its use; the colonists did not the less, however, employ all their eloquence to persuade us to return. It was clear, they said, that our stay among the savages must be in the highest degree dangerous, since these messengers of peace had found themselves under the necessity of taking their departure so hastily. The

same reasons which had obliged them, they alleged, to quit the country, would render our stay in it impossible: one of Kok's Hottentots even whispered them that the king of the Beetjuans had come to a resolution not to suffer any more white men in his dominions, and that the missionaries had in fact been driven away.

Not without reason were we impressed with the suspicion that it was some disputes and jealousies among the missionaries themselves which occasioned their present journey to the Cape Town, or that they had attempted to exercise some stretch of power among the savages, which had ended in their being compelled to remove in haste. If either of these was the case, an additional and very urgent motive was here presented for continuing our journey, that we might execute the more amply the commission we received from the government, who expected to be fully instructed by us of the manner in which these same missionaries conducted themselves. To proceed with all possible circumspection, our apostles were the next morning questioned separately, and the questions and answers which passed with both on this occasion were drawn up by our secretary in a regular protocol for our use.

Van-der-Lingen first urged his ill health as the reason of his returning into the colony, then the want of means for the support of life, then the perverseness of the Beetjuans, who would not receive the christian instruction offered to them; at length he acknowledged, half unwillingly, and as if sorry afterwards that he had made such a confession, that both were driven away owing to the querulousness and thirst of rule shewed by the two last arrived missionaries: he added, also, the war between two tribes of the savages as a principal reason of his quitting them. Kok on the contrary asserted that he should never have thought of returning into the colony, since he found himself very comfortable among the Beetjuans, if he had not received an order to repair to the Cape Town to answer to some charges against him—charges which he asserted could only have been made by wicked calumniators. This order he said was brought to him by Koster and Janssen, and he was the more surprized at it, since these persons had also set out on their return, while he had yet proceeded but a very small part of the way.

These accusations gave us much light upon matters which particularly concerned the objects of our journey." To put Kok the more to the proof,

we told him plainly that nothing should deter us from going to the king of the Beetjuans, to learn from his own mouth all the proceedings of the missionaries in his country, and what restraints it would be necessary in future to put upon them. We were in want, however, of a guide, who was well acquainted with the country and with the language of the savages; and we could not dispense with his joining us, and returning to serve as our guide and interpreter. This he declared himself very ready to do, and added that he was upon such friendly terms with the king of the Beetjuans, that this king had indeed so strong a personal attachment to him, that he had good reason to hope he might render us important services. The only thing which troubled him was that he could not take his wife and children with him, and it was impossible to leave them in that desert country, among the Caffres and the Bosjesmans, without his protection. He however consented that they should join the missionaries, who were expected here in a few days, and travel with them to the Sack river, where they might wait his rejoining them.

We were followed even hither by the Caffres, who put our patience to a very severe trial by their continued and importunate begging. That they might not become too heavy a burden upon the poor missionaries, we gave them several live sheep, and presented them also with some trifles; this however did not prevent their continuing to beg. We had besides again some Bosjesman visitors, as well men as women and children: the men were well armed with an ample store of strongly poisoned arrows, and Beetjuan hassagais. The girls and children had a bald circle round their head, and their hair and faces were thickly powdered over with the dust of a deep yellow iron ochre: they seemed not a little delighted with this decoration. We gave them an opportunity of evincing their voracity, offering them many things in exchange for their bows and arrows. They hesitated extremely what to do, and appeared very suspicious of our having insidious views in making such offers.

I earnestly recommend to the notice of travellers, who may hereafter visit this country, a lovely spot upon the high banks of the river not far from this place. There, seated under the shade of a venerable buffalo-tree, which must have weathered the blasts of centuries, he may enjoy a large extent of prospect over the quiet stream that glides below. Its course may be seen for half a German mile upwards, and its curve downwards may be followed

beneath the high dark walls by which it is enclosed, as far as the Red-broken-rock. The shrubs on either shore, newly clothed with green, the clear watry mirror, whose smooth surface is only broken by a rocky cliff, against which the little billows dash with a pleasing murmuring noise, give, all together, a tranquil and soothing feeling to the heart, which, amid this inhospitable, rude, and barren waste, is a real and solid blessing to the traveller.

The necessary preparations for continuing our journey were now made. Some of our young oxen were slain, and salted; a quantity of bread was baked; candles were made; bullets were cast; a number of axle-trees for the waggons were provided, by cutting down some of the largest trees on the banks of the river; a quantity of powder was distributed among the men, &c. &c. In order to provide ourselves with a supply of bread in our journey, a quantity of flour was among the stores contained in our waggons. An oven for baking it could always be made in a very short time. Our Hottentots used to dig a hole from four to six feet in diameter, in the nearest dry bed of a river, where the soil was the most disposed to clay. It was not very often, however, that we could find wood enough to heat such an oven.

On the fifteenth of June, early in the morning, we set off from the Orange river. It was a clear frost, and the ground was thickly covered with a white clothing. The country was tolerably level: only low gentle risings varied the scene, with large widely-stretched plains. The land appeared, at every step, to increase in fertility: the foliage of the bushes was thicker, the green of it was more vivid, and the trees were less stubbed, than on the southern side of the stream. Large tracts were furnished with what, at some seasons of the year, must be long good grass; but at present it was dried, and our cattle could still find little nourishment, excepting the same succulent plants on which they had been obliged to feed in the desert. All the sorts of grass that I saw were new to me: they seemed, for the most part, to belong to the families of *poa*, *melica*, *aristida*, and *andropogon*.

\*The climate of this country is strikingly different from the more southern district, which forms the colony of the Cape: it resembles much more that of the Kooassa country. In winter, the season at which we now were, a dry fresh cold, with a serene air, seems to prevail. In the night, and more especially towards sunrise, the thermometer sinks below the freezing point;

still, as far as my experience goes, never lower than twenty-seven degrees, by Fahrenheit. In an hour after sunrise, the frost is commonly melted entirely; and, by ten o'clock, the weather is warm, like summer. At noon, the sun's rays are even oppressive; but in the shade it is cool: for a steady equal north wind blows over the plain. This is the almost daily tenor of the weather, without any variation. At a change of the moon alone, and particularly at the new moon, did we remark, in all the three months of our journey, any striking variation: never at any other time. As a prelude to this change, the wind first veered a little towards the west, and settled at length in the north-west. The air was heavy, the frost was thicker in the morning, and snow or rain fell: the weather, however, cleared again about noon; and, in the evening, the wind returned to the north. In one instance, the bad weather continued two days; and the situation of us poor nomades, particularly of the Hottentots, who slept out in the open air, was then really pitiable. But our oxen and horses were the severest sufferers: the greater part of them, in fact, died, some sooner, some later, of cold and hunger. In August and September, the weather is again warmer; the south-wind begins to be prevalent, but the weather continues dry till the setting in of the hot months, when, from the heavy thunder-showers that then prevail, the spring may properly be said to commence. These storms occur several times in the week, sometimes for many days successively, and produce a vegetation, which, according to the account given us by the missionaries, for rapidity and luxuriance, exceeds all description. A short time before the storms come on, the heat rises to an almost insupportable degree; but it cools again the moment the thunder-clouds begin to gather, even in the distance. The autumn months are again dry, with a considerable degree of heat, of the most disagreeable kind, the missionaries said, in the whole year. In this, and in the greater degree of cold in the winter, which must be ascribed to the high situation of the country, the climate differs from that of the Koossas.

After a long day's journey, in which several elands, and other game, became our prey, we arrived, late in the evening, at the first village of the Bastard-Hottentots, where we were received by the heads of the principal families, and by the missionaries Koster and Janssen. The place is called Laauwaterskloof, or sometimes, more familiarly, Bastertskloof. By the Corans it is

called Aa 't kaap. It is one of the six villages of the Hottentot republic which has been formed under the patriarchal government of the missionaries. The whole nature of this remarkable establishment was not perfectly understood till our journey. That such a thing existed at all, had only been known within a few years. Reports not very favourable to these men having reached the government, one of the objects of our journey was to examine into the real situation of the establishment, and give an exact account of it.

Colonel Gordon, at his journey to the Orange river, found a little colony established here of emigrant Bastard-Hottentots. But neither through him, nor through any other traveller into these parts, was more known of them than that they were clothed after the European manner; that they were converts to Christianity; that they lived by breeding cattle, or by the chase; that they had good fire-arms in their possession; and that they obtained powder and ball, with other necessaries of civilised life, by a traffic in elephants' teeth with the inhabitants on the northern borders of the colony. This trade for powder was considered as very dangerous: the Hottentots, it was said, were overreached in it in the grossest manner. It was secretly carried on by some citizens at the Cape Town, through agents on the borders. They bought the powder from foreign ships that touched there, and gave the elephants' teeth in exchange, at a moderate price; thus underselling the East India Company, who had formerly the monopoly of this trade. It was thought, besides, not a thing to pass over unnoticed, that such a number of men should be collected together at the very back of the colony, furnished with European arms, without being under the regular controul of the government. Some English missionaries were sent thither in the time of the former government, and remained there without farther permission. These people exerted themselves strenuously to keep the little state true to the interests of his Britannic Majesty, and that power was constantly prayed for in their daily offices of public worship. It was supposed that they waited only for information of the English having landed, to break loose entirely from the Dutch government. This last assumption, the absurdity of which was self-evident and glaring in the extreme, had attracted the attention of the ruling powers, less on account of itself, than because it led

to an investigation into the nature of the secret traffic for powder; and this was a principal cause of the inquiries we were directed to make concerning the institution itself. The amount of what we learnt is as follows:

A considerable tract of land, including about two hundred square miles, is inhabited by nearly a thousand men, whose regulations as a community, and whose habits and customs exhibit a curious intermediary state between savage and civilised life. They have only recently begun, under the conduct of some shrewd and understanding missionaries, to unite in one general and firm bond of union. Most of them are Bastard-Hottentots, descended, in part, from old Christian families. Perhaps some elucidation may here be necessary. In the middle of the last century, when the country north of the Elephants' river was first peopled, when the customs and manners of the colonists had degenerated less from European manners and customs than they have at present, reciprocal necessities, and more pure religious feelings, united the colonists and the Hottentots in their service more closely together than they are now united, when, in spiritual cultivation, they approach so much nearer to each other. I say, approach so much nearer, because I am afraid it will be found, that, while the heathens have advanced a step upon the ladder of Christianity, the South African Christians have descended a step lower. At that time the Hottentot was considered as a member of the family, which was governed patriarchally by the head of it. The daily exercises of devotion were celebrated in presence of the whole assembled flock. The children of the Hottentot women, in whose veins Christian blood often flowed, were educated in Christianity: they learnt to sing psalms, and to read; and were, even to receiving the sacrament of baptism, as good Christians as the pure offspring of the Europeans. At the death of one of these heads of families, his servant would often assume his name; and not unfrequently sought himself some little spot, to which he retired with all belonging to him, and gained a subsistence for himself and his family by the breeding of cattle. No quit-rent was paid by him to the government: they perhaps did not know of his existence, or thought that a Hottentot had better be exempted from taxes, the imposition of which might have been considered as a tacit acknowledgment of his right of citizenship.

Many Hottentot families of this description had established themselves in the Lower Bokkeveld, when the increasing population of the colony occa-

sioned new researches to be made after lands capable of cultivation ; and the white children of the colonists did not hesitate to make use of the right of the strongest, and to drive their half yellow relations out of the places where they had fixed their abodes. These Bastard Hottentots were then obliged to seek an asylum in more remote parts, till at length, driven from the Sack river, as they had been before from the Bokkeveld, nothing remained for them but to retreat to the Orange river. Here, united more and more every day in a community with each other, their former ties with the Christians growing every day weaker, yet retaining the customs, manners, and opinions which they had imbibed among them, in the utmost purity, they became at length what we found them. It must, however, be acknowledged, that they would not have arrived so rapidly at the degree of cultivation they had then attained, without the intervention of the missionaries, who found the means of making an easy and pleasing impression upon them. When Kicherer founded his institution at the Rietfontein, in 1801, his principal merit consisted in nothing more than in preaching to the Hottentots already established in the country, who had been educated in Christianity; in building, with their assistance, a rude kind of church; and in leaving, when he quitted them after a stay of some months, his assistant Kramer to take care of their souls. His undertaking had, however, the happy consequence, that the families who had hitherto been scattered about, united under his instruction. One pandok after another was constructed, till at length a little village arose. With them were soon united several hordes of pure Hottentots, who lived wandering lives along the banks of the river, under strong suspicions that their hands were not wholly free from robbery and plunder. But these men brought with them no means of subsistence: their only idea was to live in indolence: they expected to be maintained entirely by the Bastards, who were anxious for their conversion. To these were added rabble of every kind, free blacks, and slaves who had escaped from their servitude; some even of Africanus's band were to be found among the motley assemblage. The pretence for joining the institution was always a desire to be instructed in Christianity; but the fact was, that they found it pleasanter to lead a wholly idle life, than to give themselves the trouble even of robbing and plundering to obtain a subsistence.

Among the members of these institutions were accordingly Hottentots of

every tribe and every description. I was much rejoiced to hear from many of them that they were Namaaquas, and had wandered hither ten years before, on account of the drought. The numbers that settled to the south of the Orange river were never considerable: the whole could, at no time, consist of more than four kraals. It was therefore extremely natural that Mr. Barrow, in his journey in 1797, should have sought for them in vain; and it was very hasty and unjust in him to assert, that the whole nation of the Little Namaaquas had been entirely destroyed by the colonists. Besides these, we heard the names of several other tribes which have been long lost in the colony, and are only now to be found in the narratives of former travellers,—as the Giriquas, the Cheisiquas, and others.

The impossibility of finding subsistence for so large a number of people on the same spot, soon began to be manifest. They therefore scattered themselves about, moved from one pasture ground to another, and only assembled all together on a Sunday, when the missionaries held a meeting for public worship. This wandering, unstable life was liable to very great objections; so that the first efforts of the English missionary Anderson, a very worthy man, who came hither in the year 1803, were directed to establishing them in fixed habitations, and turning their attention to agriculture. For this purpose, he divided the whole population into six parts, who were distributed in the like number of villages, under the names of Laauwaterfontein, Rietfontein, Witwater, Taayboschfontein, Leeuwenkuil, and Ongeluksfontein. Here the persons of most distinction among the Bastard Hottentots were appointed as magistrates to inspect and take care of the rest. Anderson, with Kramer, performed the office of pastors.

It cost, however, no small trouble to make the pupils comprehend, that breeding cattle would never suffice for their sustenance; but that agriculture, and the improvement of the meadow lands, could alone secure them against the danger of losing all their stock in years of drought, and at length dying themselves of hunger. Some, indeed, did begin to plough small portions of land; but most of them considered this as wholly superfluous, till the dry year of 1803 drove them to the necessity of wandering into the more northern parts with all their cattle. On this expedition they were conducted by Anderson himself. When they returned hither, at a more propitious season of the year, the prudent missionary immediately sent a waggon to the

Roggeveld to procure seed corn: implements of husbandry were also procured, in part, from the same quarter, while some were of necessity made on the spot, in the best manner that the means would admit of. Thus, in the first year, a tract of land, of fifteen acres, was rendered cultivable; and, notwithstanding that the season was somewhat dry, the ground was rendered so fertile by means of having water conveyed to it, that, on an average, the corn yielded a hundred fold. This fortunate experiment had the desired effect, so that in the very same year corn was sown in all the six villages, and succeeded admirably. The pure Hottentots could not, however, be persuaded that it was incumbent on them to assist as volunteers in the task: they contended that they ought to be hired by the Bastards for the service, and receive wages proportioned to their work.

The place where we were was inhabited by about thirty families, of which one half were Bastards, the rest were Namaaquas, and Hottentots of the Great river, as they are called. The former lived in large clean huts, and were clothed in linen or woollen cloth; the latter lived in dirty pandoks, and had skins thrown over them. The Bastards almost all bore names well known among the colonists, and each family had considerable herds of cattle, of more than a hundred head. In their behaviour there was a certain good-natured ostentation, a sort of vanity, which seemed to shew, that they considered themselves as much superior to the rude Hottentots. Towards us, however, they were uncommonly polite, and often assured us that they knew perfectly well what was due to the ambassadors of the government. They therefore mingled abundantly in their conversation the term *Edele Heer*, (Noble Sir,) as was the form of addressing the members of the government in the time of the Company: and on the following morning, which happened to be Sunday, the whole population of the village, Hottentots included, came in procession, and defiled before us, first the men, then the women, as we stood at the entrance of the tent, to receive their compliments. These compliments consisted in each one stopping, making a low bow, and pronouncing very slowly, *Good morning, noble Sirs*. Some of the most distinguished added a long welcome, and wishes for our happiness. Afterwards they modestly enquired whether we had brought with us any old clothes, or linen and woollen wares for barter. There is nothing of which they are so much in want as a regular supply of clothing, and they are ready to pay a good sum

in cattle by way of exchange. To the speakers and their wives some of the things asked for were distributed in the way of presents: the rest made various purchases of our people, who had brought with them, upon speculation, many of the articles required. Their clothes were so well made, and their linen was so clean and white, that we could not contemplate them without astonishment: the more so, since the times having been bad, and every thing very dear, many, even of the colonists, were clothed only in garments of antelope leather. They explained to us, however, that they had procured a great deal of linen and woollen cloth from the English, when they were in the country, by way of barter for their cattle.

On the same morning the missionaries held a solemn meeting, in the open air, for public worship; since, otherwise, the families living here must have gone to attend church either at Rietfontein or Leeuwenkuil. A psalm was first sung, which the whole audience knew by heart, and which was accompanied by the two missionaries with the violin and clarinet. One of them then laying aside the instrument, preached a long, drawling, heavy sermon, from Klinkenberg, a celebrated preacher in Holland; the matter of which was far beyond the comprehension of the assembled auditors. The service was closed with a general hymn.

Immediately after this ceremony we held a conference with the missionaries. They were both young, and not long arrived from Europe, and made a great parade with explaining their principles. It was never their idea, they said, to make mere devotees of the savages, but to infuse instruction into their minds by mild and pleasing impressions, particularly by the aid of music. One of them had been formerly assistant to a surgeon at the Cape Town, and boasted much of the happy effects which had been produced upon the minds of the savages, by some cures which he had performed among them. As these men had only left the Cape Town a few months before us, we expressed our astonishment at finding them so soon on their return. Those by whom they were sent, we observed, could not be pleased that a journey, the expences of which must have amounted to several thousand dollars, should have served no other purpose than to procure them the casual sight of a country, and a people, whose instruction and civilization they had engaged to undertake: we must, therefore, be particularly anxious to know the reason of a step, which, as appeared upon the face of it, was so little to be justified. Upon this, they

gave us in substance nearly the same account we had heard from the others: adding, that they, as Europeans by birth, and as having received a liberal education, must inevitably feel the necessity of living in an orderly and comfortable manner; that they considered it as their duty, in collecting the savages around them, to set them an example of cleanliness, of order, and regularity, both in their houses and their persons, not to level themselves with them, and occupy themselves in the troublesome unchristian business of hunting: this latter occupation might do very well for rugged colonists (pointing to Kok), but would not do for missionaries sent from more civilized parts, to instruct the savages no less by their example than by their doctrine. Such a peaceable and respectable mode of life, they proceeded, had however been found impossible, and they had been able but poorly to fulfil the purposes of the missionary institute at the Cape, by whom they were deputed. No other alternative remained to them but either to die with hunger, or, contrary to their principles, to take arms into their hands. To the latter, though reluctantly, and unpractised in the use of such weapons, they had been obliged to have recourse: war and scarcity had followed, and the king, how much soever he wished to retain them, had not been able to furnish them with any support in procuring the means of subsistence.

From all this, it was evident that these men had represented to themselves that the business of convert-making would afford them as easy and quiet a life as that of a good country parson; that they conceived the savages to be as much bound to provide them with the necessaries of life, as if they had been their chosen confessors. One of them had besides a young wife, who, born in the Cape Town, probably did not find the privation of her accustomed ease and conveniences very much to her taste, and wished therefore to return home as soon as possible. That all their reasons for returning were unsatisfactory, appeared clearly in the sequel, since they had a sufficiency of European goods by them to exchange for food. And why could not they, as well as Kok, have had recourse to the plough or to breeding cattle, if they found the chase too severe labour for them? Above all things, why did those by whom they were employed think of sending out such poor creatures, not even inspired with sufficient enthusiasm to sacrifice their usual ease and comforts in fulfilling the objects of their mission?

It always appears to me that the African colonists who devote themselves

to convert-making succeed much better with the savages, though they may not be so deeply read in the doctrines of christianity, than most of the European missionaries. They are accustomed to a solitary life, they are in habits of intercourse with these people, they learn their language with facility, they easily fall into their modes of thinking, they know the nature of the country; and from this knowledge are better enabled to make use of its productions, and to turn the fertility of the soil to a good account. It is true, that most of those who undertake the task, do it only with the view of gaining a subsistence, being too poor to purchase a place in the interior of the colony. But while they obtain among the savages as good a subsistence as an ordinary African peasant obtains, their converts receive a full equivalent in becoming acquainted, through them, with many of the advantages of civilized life, no less than in being instructed in the doctrines they come to preach. This was the case with Kok and the rest of the missionaries connected with him, how much soever they might be decried by these new-comers: they did more real essential good among the Beetjuans, than all the rest put together. In the sequel, he alone of the whole body returned into the country: most of the others, after wandering about for a long time, at length established themselves, some in one place, some in another, as citizens, gaining their livelihood by pursuing some mechanical occupation.

The two missionaries here, on being sent away by the king of the Beetjuans, understood that he would no longer suffer any christian to come into his country, but would immediately drive back those who might attempt it. They therefore counselled us earnestly to return, warning us against the inimical views of these suspicious and artful people. We thanked them for their cautions, but earnestly intreated them not to hint any thing of this kind to our companions. Kok, whose counsel we asked upon these matters, said it was very true that the Beetjuans were prone to anger, artful, suspicions, and warlike, that he could not therefore be answerable for our visit being attended with happy consequences, yet he thought that he knew the king of the Beetjuans better than the other missionaries did, and he was inclined to think that there was no reason to entertain apprehensions as to the event. In any case, he said, he was ready to go first himself, and learn how our visit would be received.

When we questioned the missionaries about the Bosjesmans, they said that they had been extremely molested on their journey by numbers of them,

and had found it no easy task to defend themselves against them. Their whole herd had once been seized by these savages, and it was only by a sort of miracle that they were recovered. Part of their company were at the time absent in pursuit of a giraffe, and without knowing any thing of the robbery, answered the signal of alarm from the camp; the Bosjesmans on this thought they were surrounded, and fled in the utmost haste, leaving the cattle behind them.

The account of the small-pox having broke out was here fully confirmed. It had prevailed very much for several months in all the places belonging to Anderson's Institution, but it was of a very favourable kind, since on an average not more than one in twenty-five of those infected had died, although no other remedies had been employed than native emetic and cathartic plants, and after the disease was nearly over, drinking pure whey. I found some persons still ill, and was not a little surprized to recognise all the characters of the true genuine small-pox: till this ocular conviction, I had believed that it was some other eruptive disorder, to which that name was erroneously applied. According to the universal testimony, the disease was brought hither by the Corans from the interior of the country, among whom, as well as among the Caffres, it is known to have been prevalent at various times. The oldest Bastard-Hottentots, having gone through the disease on a former occasion, were exempt from it on this; many of them were indeed strongly marked with it. This dreaded disease had therefore for several generations been frequently in the neighbourhood of the colony, without the inhabitants having concerned themselves about it. The few people whom we found marked with the small-pox among the Koossas, had, as it was generally supposed, received the infection from the crew of a ship; but here we suddenly found the same malady very far in the interior of the country, among a people with whom the inhabitants of the coast had so little intercourse, that they scarcely even knew of their existence; and these people asserted that the malady was brought to them from the north, whither the traditions of the Caffres equally traced it. Certainly this is remarkable enough, and the matter seems well worthy the investigation of future travellers, since the conjectures respecting the true native country of so destructive a disease may receive much elucidation from such researches.\*

---

\* I have given my ideas upon this subject more amply in *Hufeland's Medical Journal* for the year 1810, Vol. 33.

There was no occasion to give any warnings, or to issue any prohibitions to our people, against holding communication with those who were ill; they, however, received an useful lesson that the disease was not so formidable and so fatal as terror had pictured it to their imaginations; they saw also that in our mode of travelling effectual precautions might easily be employed so as to obviate all danger of taking the infection. We had therefore now no great difficulty in persuading them to continue the journey. In order, however, that the disease might not be carried into the colony, and spread there, written orders were given to the missionaries, that in case the small-pox should break out among their people, they were not to pass the borders till a fortnight after the perfect recovery of the last person infected; a precaution, which, as we learnt afterwards, was by no means superfluous.

We made use of the favourable disposition of the Bastard-Hottentots towards us, and their attachment to the government, to solicit from them fresh teams of oxen for our waggons. Our request was readily granted, and in a few hours all the best oxen from this and the neighbouring villages were collected together, while others were to be ready to meet us as we proceeded on our journey. Our lean, and almost exhausted cattle, which we had brought from the Roggeveld, were left under their protection till our return, and they promised that the utmost care should be taken of them.

## CHAP. XLVI.

*Departure from Laauwaterskloof.—Enormous Swarm of Locusts.—Some Remarks upon these Animals.—The Rietfontein.—Account of Cornelius Kok.—Probably known to Le Vaillant.—Description of the Coran Hottentots.—Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot Villages.—Vast Quantity of Wild Animals.—Witwater.—Leeuwenkuil.—The Missionary Anderson.—Account of his Institution.*

As our business here consisted principally in obtaining a complete list of all the heads of families, with the places of their birth, their former modes of life, and the number of their children, this being concluded, on the seventeenth of June we proceeded on our journey. We had scarcely passed the northern entrance to the kloof, when we perceived by our side one of those enormous swarms of travelling locusts which I had hitherto wished in vain to see. It had exactly the appearance of a vast snow-cloud, hanging on the slope of the mountain, from which the snow was falling in very large flakes. I spurred my horse up the hill, to the place where I thought the swarm seemed the thickest. When I was within a hundred paces of them, I heard the rushing noise occasioned by the flight of so many millions of insects: this constantly increased the nearer I approached; and when I got into the midst of them, it was, without any exaggeration, as loud as the dashing of the waters occasioned by the mill-wheel. Above, below, and all around me, the air was filled with, and almost darkened by these insects. They settled about the bodies of myself and my horse, till the latter was so much teased and fretted, that he became extremely restless, turning his back constantly towards the side on which their flight was directed. Every stroke of the riding-cane swept twenty or thirty to the ground, and they lay there so thick that it was impossible to take a step without trampling a number to death. I gathered up some for my collection, but found them all injured; even those who flew before me were obliged almost immediately to settle themselves. Those that settled were indeed only the wounded of the party, such as had a leg or wing broken in their flight by coming in contact with their neighbours:

these formed a very small part of the whole enormous mass. Those that flew the highest, rose to fifty or sixty feet above the ground; those which did not rise to more than twenty feet, rested at every hundred paces, and then flew on again. They all took exactly the same course, not going with the wind, but in an oblique direction against it, directly towards the fields of the Hottentots. I was very much alarmed for the young corn; but on my return I learnt that the swarm had done no mischief; it had gone over at the distance of a thousand paces from the fields. They never deviate from the straight line, so long as the same wind blows. The bushes around were already eaten quite bare, though the animals could not have been long on the spot, since an hour earlier our oxen had been grazing, without the persons who attended upon them having seen a single locust. Finally, that I might complete my survey, I rode against the swarm so as to pass them, and found that the train extended in length to between two and three thousand paces; in breadth it could scarcely exceed a hundred.

It is difficult to conceive how so prodigious a number of these voracious insects can find sufficient nourishment, in so naked a country, till they arrive at maturity; since we must take it for granted that the number of the larvæ greatly exceeds that of the perfect animal. Probably sudden prolific showers, which for awhile renew vegetation, may at the same time assist the hatching of the eggs, and the development of the young larvæ; yet this supposition is not a little contradicted by the observation that such swarms are seen at all times of the year, even after a long and general drought, and in countries the most bare of vegetation. On my first journey I once found in the lower Bokkeveld a whole field strewed over with the larvæ of another sort of insect: they sat by hundreds on a bush, gnawing the rind, and the woody fibres: every thing around was devoured, and nothing was to be seen which appeared capable of affording subsistence to these creatures: it was evident that they must have been hatched upon the spot. We may therefore presume that the eggs are hatched very suddenly, and that the young animals require little nourishment; that it is not till they become perfect, at the time when vegetation is more abundant, that their extreme voracity commences. The locusts of Southern Africa have hitherto been supposed the same as those which infest Asia and some of the south-easterly parts of Europe, *gryllus tataricus*; but on the examination of some specimens which I preserved, they

are determined to be a very different species, and they now bear their appropriate name of *Gryllus devastator*. I did not here see any of the birds *Tardus Gryllivorus*, which usually follow the swarms of locusts.

After some hours, we arrived at the Rietfontein. Here it was that Kicherer first collected around him the Bastard-Hottentots, and here is still a church, which is, if possible, smaller and more wretched than that at the Sack river. His successor, Kramer, having returned into the colony, the care of the flock devolved upon the Bastard Solomon Kok, as the most substantial personage in the place. This man had entirely the appearance of a colonist: he was well made, and spoke the Dutch language tolerably correct, and with tolerable purity. He was the son of one of the oldest and most noted among the Bastard-Hottentots, by name Cornelius Kok, who lives now at the mouth of the Orange river, and who always made one of Colonel Gordon's suite. At that time his principal occupation was elephant-hunting, and he carried on a contraband trade in elephants' teeth, by which he had a prospect of soon becoming a rich man. According to the information we received from his son, it seems probable that Le Vaillant was well acquainted with him. On our enquiring of Solomon whether giraffes were to be found in the country where we now were, he said that the first to be seen were in the Briqua country, whither, in his early youth, he had several times travelled with his father. They had once, he said, killed a very large and beautiful giraffe, the skin of which they had stripped off carefully, with the intention of selling it in the Cape Town. However, on their journey thither, when they were in the Karree mountains, they met with a Frenchman upon his travels, to whom his father sold the skin for twenty dollars: the same Frenchman, he said, had shot various sorts of birds and other wild animals, for the purpose of stuffing them. He travelled with them some way, and made many enquiries of them concerning the country on the other side of the Orange river.

When we had enrolled in our register the names of all the fathers of families in the place, had listened to their complaints relative to the small-pox, and the inroads of the Bosjesmans, and had answered their enquiries whether we had any clothes or gunpowder to dispose of, we proceeded on our way to Witwater, which place we reached the same day late in the evening. On the way we were joined by a horde of Coran Hottentots, some of whom had already visited us at the kloof. These Corans are the oldest original inhabit-

ants of the country; they are a tolerably numerous race, mild, and well-disposed, speaking almost the same language that was formerly spoken by the Hottentot tribes within the colony, but which has not hitherto been sufficiently known by the Europeans to acquire from it much insight into the ancient customs and habits of these people. They still live after the manner of their forefathers, in small villages or kraals, in huts of a hemispherical form, and are slothful, by nature, so that they are not so successful in breeding cattle, though their country is extremely well adapted to it, as the stronger and more industrious Caffre tribes. With these, who are their nearest neighbours, they live on very good terms; but a perpetual warfare subsists between them and the Bosjesmans; the latter are hated by them to excess. The Corans have hitherto been very erroneously confounded with the Bosjesmans; but they are a totally distinct people, having their principal residence on the banks of the Narb and Vaal rivers, north-east from where we now were, and south of the Beetjuan country. They are divided into several tribes, the principal of which are called the Kharemankis and the Khuremankis. In their size and corporeal structure they resemble the Hottentots very much, but the cheek and chin bones are less prominent, and the whole face is more oval than some other of the Hottentot tribes. They have all a kind of voluptuous expression about the mouth, which, united with a peculiar wild roll of the eye, and a rough broken manner of speaking, give them altogether the appearance of intoxication; nor indeed are they falsified by it, since they are truly a voluptuous race, deficient in bodily strength, and destitute of martial courage.

Their clothing consists in a mantle of prepared skin, made either from the hides of their cattle, or from those of the antelopes: it is smaller, and of a somewhat different form from that worn by the Beetjuans, and is never made of several small skins sewed together. A favourite mode with them is, to scrape figures of various kinds on the hairy side of these mantles. They trade with the Beetjuans for ornaments for the ears, neck, and arms. The cattle are held in high consideration by them: they take much more care of these creatures than the other tribes, or than most of the colonists. They are so much celebrated for training the oxen, as riding and draught animals, that the Beetjuans acknowledge them to be in this instance their masters, and purchase of them those that they use for riding. These animals go an exceedingly

good trot or gallop, and clear a great deal of ground in a very short time. There is no occasion ever to be harsh with them: 'tis sufficient to touch them with a thin osier. The rider never neglects, when he dismounts, to have the animal led about slowly for a quarter of an hour, that he may cool by degrees. The bridle is fastened to a wooden pin, stuck through the nose, and a sheep's or goat's skin serves as a saddle. On this the rider has so firm a seat, that he is in no danger of being thrown by even the wildest ox. The Corans do not apply themselves at all to agriculture: their dwellings are spherical huts, very much like those of the Koossas, but not so spacious. Some skins and mats, on which they sleep, some leather knapsacks, and a sort of vessels somewhat in the form of cans, which are cut out of a piece of solid wood, with some calabashes and bamboo canes, compose the whole of their household furniture. Most of them wear a knife of the Beetjuan manufactory, in a case slung round their necks, with a small leather bag, or the shell of a tortoise, in which is the pipe, the tobacco, and the flint for striking fire.

They have no fixed habitation, but often move from one place to another, always carrying with them, as is the custom among the other tribes, the staves and mats of which their huts are built. All the goods and chattels are packed together within a very small compass on the back of the patient ox; and thus a whole Coran village is struck, and in full march in a few moments. Their form of government is the same as with the other Hottentot tribes: the richest person in the kraal is the captain, or provost: he is the leader of the party, and the spokesman on all occasions, without deriving from this office any judicial right over the rest. His authority is exceedingly circumscribed, and no one considers himself as wholly bound to yield obedience to him; neither does he himself ever pretend to command them. Only in case of being obliged to defend themselves against a foreign enemy is he the first, because, being the richest, he suffers most from the attack. Plurality of wives is not contrary to their institutions; yet I never heard of any body who had more than one wife. They are by nature good-tempered; but they are indolent, and do not take any great interest for others; less cunning than the Hottentot, therefore easy to be deceived in trafficking with them, and, from their simplicity, easily won to any purpose by the attraction of strong liquors, tobacco, and the like luxuries.

The company who now joined us were a certain Sigebe, with eight or ten of

his people, whose habitation was at that moment only at the distance of a few hours. He had lived awhile in the colony, and had been, with several of his followers, in the service of a farmer. Here his good behaviour acquired him many friends; and it was not without regret that they saw him, after some years, return to his native country. He himself repented of this hasty measure, and requested, when we should pass that way again, that he might be permitted to join us, and seek his old acquaintance among the colonists. He said that it was impossible for him to remain longer where he was, on account of being so grievously molested by the Bosjesmans: if the Bastard-Hottentots were not so near, and had not sometimes taken him under their protection, he should long ago have lost all his cattle, perhaps not even have escaped with his life. But these good friends were now destitute of powder, and could not, without great difficulty, protect their own herds. He was desirous, therefore, once more, to seek his fortune in his ancient situation. Some of our company recollected him, and observed, that when he was in the colony, the name of Slapparm was given him, because he was lame in the left arm. His corporal was, for the same reason, called Buffelhout, because he had once been thrown down by a buffalo, and wounded by him with his horn in the thigh. It was after him that the Biesfontein, where we stopped on the sixth of June, received the same name. Another of these people had, in like manner, been thrown down by a buffalo, and was so much hurt as to be rendered an absolute cripple; it was not without great difficulty that he could sit upon an ox. We afterwards saw many of the savages, who bore about them strong marks of the ill-treatment they had received from these mischievous animals; among others may be mentioned a Beetjuan, whose left ear had been severed from his head by the tread of a buffalo, as if it had been cut off by a razor: he was named by his countrymen after this accident.

The inhabitants of Witwater were almost all Hottentots: there was only one bastard family among them. As, from fear of the small-pox, we pitched our camp at a little distance from the village, we were very much disturbed in the night by the jackals and lions; they ventured so near, and terrified our oxen and sheep to such a degree, that these creatures broke loose, and were with difficulty collected together again in the morning. We also heard the noise of quaggas near our camp incessantly the whole night through.

The next morning we proceeded onwards, the weather being very cold.

The wives of the Corans, who had associated themselves with us the day before, joined the party, running by the side of our waggons, while the husbands rode in great state upon their oxen. These lords of the creation were exceedingly angry that their ladies would not stay quietly at home; and took great pains to excuse themselves to us, and to assure us that they had come out against their express commands. Upon some little presents being made them, they, however, soon quitted us, but the husbands proceeded a considerable way farther. The extraordinary protuberance of the hinder parts of some of these women excited our utmost astonishment; the more so, as they were otherwise in general very slender. Perhaps the custom of carrying their children always on their backs may have some share in this singular conformation, but it is certain that the principal cause must be sought for in the original organization. Examples of this structure about the hips are to be seen among the women in almost all the Hottentot tribes, even among those in the service of the colonists, who have never had any children; and one cannot forbear again observing, that this is also the country which produces the enormous fat-tailed sheep.

We were now again in a district abounding exceedingly with game, and, after having passed Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot villages, leaving it a little to the left, the fields were overspread with elands, gnus, and springbucks. They were soon frightened by the noise of our train, and began to fly, but we dispersed ourselves about in pursuit of them. I followed first a troop of springbucks, one of which I killed; but my attention was soon diverted from them by a party of very fine large ostriches. I also saw at a distance a herd of buffaloes; but as I was on foot, and alone, it was impossible to think of following them. After some hours, I rejoined our company, and sent a Hottentot in search of my slaughtered springbock; but the Bosjesmans had already made a prize of it, leaving only the entrails as my share.

Towards evening, as we were proceeding on our journey, rain came on, with which, after sunset, snow was mingled: this incommoded us extremely, when, on arriving at Leeuwenkuil, our tents were to be pitched in the dark. We were, moreover, obliged to forego our supper entirely, since we could not get the fire to burn; this, as adventurers now pretty well seasoned to hardships, we should not much have regarded, had not the cold made the comfort of a hot meal particularly desirable to us. As the wind besides blew

with considerable violence, we were every moment afraid of the tents being blown down ; so that we all together passed a very sleepless and comfortless night. Added to these grievances, and worse than all the others combined, a lion broke into our camp, dispersed our cattle, and carried off our best milch goat, directly from the side of one of the waggons. We could hear the cry of the poor animal to a great distance, without being able, from the darkness, to afford it any assistance ; and the next morning we could trace the course which the robber had pursued, by the drops of blood along the snow. The bad weather did not subside till noon the following day, but the evening was mild and serene.

We were now at the dwelling-place of the missionary Anderson, in the largest of the Hottentot villages, which contained between three and four hundred inhabitants. We paid our visit to the patriarch, who was very ill, and so weak, that he could not quit his hut. His habitation was a Coran hut, only somewhat larger than the usual size ; it was very poor within, but kept perfectly clean ; the bed was shut up from the rest of the room by a curtain : in the middle was a table, and round about, some chests and coffer instead of chairs. Some small English prints were hanging about the roof of the hut, such as the apotheosis of a child's soul, and portraits of Van-der-Kemp, with other celebrated missionaries. We found in Anderson an amiable appearing man, about thirty years of age, with great serenity and piety in his whole deportment. His features were fine, and his eye beamed with a spirit of religion and resignation ; this, combined with the evident traces of a long-standing sickness, gave him wholly the aspect of a saint, and could not fail, at the first glance, to win the heart of every one who approached him. He spoke the Dutch language tolerably well, sufficiently so to make himself perfectly intelligible to the Hottentots, but he was not a little rejoiced at being able to talk with us in his mother-tongue. He assured us that our arrival was most gratifying to him, for he had long wished to see the attention of the government turned towards his institution, that he might, with the greater confidence, address his petitions to them for support. He was sensible that many obstacles must exist to this assistance being granted ; and his penetration did not go far enough to meet all that might be urged by evil-minded individuals against the interests of the government, and of the institution.

Our missionary had already been four years in the country, yet he com-

plained, that notwithstanding his most strenuous exertions in his vocation, he had accomplished but little. This he thought was partly to be ascribed to the successive years of drought which had intervened, and which obliged them perpetually to move from one place to another; partly also to the high degree of indocility which unfortunately characterized most of his pupils. It was only since their being permanently fixed on that spot that he could see any prospect of his efforts being attended with the happy consequences which his wishes had anticipated. Since that time, he could perceive among them an increasing spirit of industry, of docility, and desire of improvement: the example of the best among the Bastard-Hottentots seemed to make some impression upon their wholly savage brethren. His great object at present was to keep the institution fixed, and for this purpose he was endeavouring, by all possible means, to excite a spirit of attention to agriculture, and to wean them from their attachment to the nomade life. He had already persuaded some of his people to build themselves permanent houses instead of moveable huts; he was even occupied with having a large building erected, partly as a habitation for himself, partly as a place of assemblage for divine worship. He had had canals dug in some of the low grounds to drain them, they being too marshy for use; and he hoped, by this means, that they would the next year be fit for cultivation; he hoped also, by such exertions, to increase the spirit of agriculture, as one of the best means of rendering the people stationary.

The Leeuwenkuil is a long valley between two ridges of flat-topped hills: at the upper end of the valley is a copious spring, which renders the whole a sort of morass; further down, the waters are collected into a bed, and the slopes on both sides are amazingly fertile. This part has been particularly devoted to agricultural purposes: equal shares of from five to six acres are portioned out, and allotted to those who have industry to cultivate them. On the slopes of the hills which border the great valley, some small stone houses are already erected; and somewhat lower down is a very neat house, built of wood and bricks, with a kitchen garden adjoining, which belongs to the most distinguished among the Bastards, by name Moses. The greatest industry and spirit of order reigned in this household, more than is often to be found in African farms. Maize and tobacco were cultivated in the garden with the usual vegetables for culinary purposes. Not far from the spring was the half-

finished building designed for a church, which in size was much the same as that at the Sack river, but of a very superior construction. If the two institutions be compared with each other, one cannot be sufficiently astonished that Kicherer's should hitherto have been so exceedingly extolled, and Anderson's treated with so much contempt.

From the most accurate inquiries that could be made into the situation of the institution, and the relations which it held with the colony, the following results were obtained. It is undoubtedly true that these men carry on a sort of contraband trade for powder and fire-arms with some of the citizens at the Cape-Town, who have *cattle-places* on the borders of the colony, giving in exchange for them horned-cattle, elephants' teeth, ostrich feathers, and the hides of animals. In this traffic the disadvantage is so much on their side, that they cannot obtain a musket of even a middling quality for less than five or six oxen, or a hundred weight of ivory. And yet, perhaps, since in all cases merchandize can only be estimated according to its relative value, it may appear hard to call this traffic unjust. At Amsterdam it would undoubtedly be a gross imposition, if an ignorant person were taken in to barter a large elephant's tooth at a frippery shop against an ordinary coat; but on the other side of the Orange river such an exchange might be far from unfair. Individuals among the Bastard-Hottentots have sometimes come privately to the Cape-Town, where they have bought arms and powder more advantageously; but experience has taught them that it is better to give the higher price, and be spared the fatigue and expense of the journey. The breed of elephants, however, begins to diminish very much in this country, so that they fail in their most valuable article of traffic, and for some time they have not been able to purchase powder. Till very recently, a small supply, which they procured from the English commissaries in 1801, had not been wholly exhausted, but at length even that failed, and the whole little colony was reduced to great distress for the want of so necessary an article. This calamity was the more severely felt, since the Bosjesmans had begun to discover that they could no longer use their fire-arms, and had therefore become much more troublesome, and bolder in their incursions.

This specimen alone is sufficient to shew the dependence of the institution upon the colony, and the folly of asserting that it is ever likely to become dangerous to the European establishments. How little an incursion from these harmless men is to be apprehended, is obvious from their considering

themselves as fellow-citizens of the colony, and subjects of the colonial government; they are even ignorant of the boundaries fixed by the government for the colony. Anderson's regarding himself as completely under the controul of the government, his inculcating on his followers a strict obedience to it, and even relying on it for assistance, proves no less the falsehood of the reports circulated against him, than it attests the real purity of his views. It is very true that another English missionary did in his prayers mention his own king; but this never happened among the Bastards; nor could such a thing be any designed injury to the Batavian republic, since its relations with the other European powers were then wholly unknown.

Undoubtedly this little State deserves not only the attention but the earnest support of the government at the Cape. However necessary it may be that the extending the boundaries of the colony should be prohibited to European adventurers, it is on the other hand no less advantageous that so fertile a tract of land should be cultivated and rendered useful; that it should be inhabited by people who will readily barter the superfluity of corn and cattle, with which heaven may bless them, against European commodities; who are too remote from the colony, and are separated from it by so inhospitable a country, that there is no danger of their ever being engaged in contests with the colonists on the borders. All will depend in future upon a careful choice being made of the missionaries who are allowed to come hither; that, like Anderson, they may unite with an eager enthusiasm for spreading the principles of true religion, enlightened views with regard to human policy. No less important will it be that a strict attention to rectitude and good faith should be observed in the interchange to be carried on between the Hottentots and the colonists. For this purpose, it will be well that persons of tried integrity should occasionally be sent into the country to reconcile any little misunderstandings that may occur, and to punish any offences committed against the laws.

We made use of the opportunity now presented us to recommend the instructions of the worthy missionary in the strongest manner to the attention of his pupils, and to enforce upon them obedience to him as one of their first duties; assuring them that the neglect of it would be considered as an offence against the government, and would be punished accordingly. The diligent were encouraged to occupy themselves still more assiduously

with husbandry, and hopes were given them that the government would lighten the taxes upon the produce of their labour, and endeavour to have them supplied with European commodities at an easier rate. The slothful were admonished to forsake their bad habits and imitate the industrious, otherwise they were threatened with being sent away for ever from the institution. Some of the most untractable among the Hottentots were pointed out to us by Anderson, as those who stood in the greatest need of these exhortations and admonitions; nay, their comrades complained no less of these people, that they would not even work for hire, but expected to be maintained by the more wealthy in total indolence; that thus they were a heavy burthen upon the whole society. The aggressors themselves could not deny that they were strong and healthy enough to work; they acknowledged also that sloth was a crime, but answered, when asked why they would not work, that it was the *sinfulness of the flesh, the innate bad principle of man*. They could not, they said, renounce this fault; but God was merciful; and as they were so ready to acknowledge their transgressions, he would forgive them; for he alone who had Jesus within him, who was humble of heart, and full of faith, could be saved. Here again is a fresh proof how contrary the doctrine taught by most of the missionaries is to the true welfare of the human race, and how much harder it is to convert men to christianity, whose minds are not prepared for it by early cultivation, than to make pious and religious people of polished Europeans. Anderson himself told us that it was always the most lazy and worthless people in his institution, several of whom had even been detected in attempts at robbery and murder, who talked the most about religion, who had the most piety in their mouths; with regard to some, the fear alone of making them wholly villains, who would become dangerous to the institution itself, induced him to retain them; he should otherwise discard them entirely, and abandon them to their fate.

From hence, dispatches to the governor, and letters to our friends at the Cape-Town, as well as some to be forwarded to Europe, were sent by two Hottentots, who were returning to the Sack river on riding-oxen; and thus, our business here being concluded, on the twenty-first of June, we took leave of the worthy Anderson and his pupils. We had here deviated in some measure from the exact direction towards the country of the Beetjuans, and now once more resumed a due westerly course.

## CHAP. XLVII.

*Departure from Leeuwenkuil.—Ongeluksfontein, why so called.—Grotesque appearance of the Travellers.—Remonstrances of the Party against the Prosecution of the Journey.—Two Hottentots murdered by the Bosjesmans.—Their Families rescued by the Travelling Party.—John Bloom's Fountain.—The Dogs of the Bosjesmans.*

OUR course was now over a flat desert country, which scarcely produced any thing but some dry grasses, and a few small plants of the *syngenesia* tribe, as *asters*, *gorteria*, and *berkheya*. By the dry bed of a stream were several sorts of mimosas, altogether new, and such as I never yet found described: the formation of the leaves was very remarkable. Here we first found some single shrubs of that favourite among the Beetjuans, the *grewia obtusifolia*; farther on grew in abundance, rising even to the height of a man, the *tarconanthus camphoratus*. This is one of the bushes in which the Bosjesmans particularly delight to make their nests: its aromatic leaves were chewed with the greatest delight by our Malay slaves, since they found the flavour very similar to that of some of the plants of their own country.

After ascending a small hill, towards evening we arrived at Ongeluksfontein, so called, because some years before a Bastard-Hottentot had the misfortune at this spot, by handling his gun incautiously, to shoot his companion in the chase.\* This is the most northern of the villages inhabited by the disciples of Anderson. We found it inhabited only by Namaaquas, and Hottentots of the Great river; they were nevertheless equally civil and obliging as the others. They brought us milk, panther-skins, and oxen,

---

\* All these places have likewise Coran names, which I had collected with the intention of inserting them equally in my work. I soon found however either that these names belonged to the whole district, or else that the residence of each single horde had a different appellation, or was pronounced differently. Besides, as these names are in general very long, and as the pronunciation of them is extremely difficult, I have confined myself to giving the Dutch names, which are much more used by the present inhabitants of the district, and afford less danger of alteration.

which they offered in exchange for our European goods upon very reasonable terms. As the last day's journey had been very long, and as the next spring lay at the distance of more than a day's journey, we determined to proceed a part of the way only on the twenty-second, taking with us a provision of water sufficient to satisfy our wants for the night. We did not set off till the afternoon. Such long rests are often very necessary in journeys like the present, not only to relieve the cattle, but also for preserving the health of the travellers, who otherwise would be liable to suffer much from a want of cleanliness and proper food. It was not indeed possible for us to pay all the attention that could have been wished to our dress, and to the neatness of our external appearance. From the time that we quitted the Sack river we had constantly passed the night with our clothes on, that in case of danger we might be ready in a moment; nor did we ever sleep in a bed till three months after this, at our return to Tulbagh. From circumstances, we were obliged often to remain a week together without being able to change our clothes. Our large trunks were in the waggons under a quantity of other goods, and seldom could be unpacked: we had only each a little cloak-bag with some changes of linen, and these we were often obliged to wash ourselves, since the slaves either had really not the time to spare, or did them so ill that we could scarcely wear them. In like manner we were also obliged occasionally to mend our clothes, and even our shoes, ourselves, because there was no one amongst us who could do it better.

In the early part of our journey we had made a point of shaving ourselves regularly; but as we found that the water, being strongly impregnated with natron, could not, from the particles of sulphuric acid which it contained, be easily made to froth with the soap, and besides, that perhaps for five or six days we had no opportunity of performing this ceremony, we at length agreed to wave it altogether, and we began now to have all of us very respectable beards. Krieger and Van-der-Byl in particular acquired by this means a most venerable aspect, which sometimes produced a very favourable impression upon the savages, and pleased them exceedingly. Our whole exterior indeed gave us so strongly the appearance of adventurers, that we often could not forbear laughing at it ourselves: it would have afforded an interesting spectacle to any European who had suddenly come among us. We had among us people of all colours, and clothed in a variety of fashions;

natives of Mozambique in Malay garments, with a sort of turbans on their heads, and full short breeches; brown Malays with their hair twisted up in curls upon the head; half-naked tame Bosjesmans with bodies smeared over with grey ashes; yellow Hottentots with cloaks of sheep-skin and skin caps; Bastards, with brown leather waistcoats and breeches, large white felt-hats ornamented with black ostrich-feathers, and black mustachios; colonists in their light national costume; and lastly, Europeans in old half-worn-out clothes of various fashions; one was in a short shooting-jacket, with a night-cap and fur-boots, another in an uniform with a helmet cap and military shoes, perhaps large woollen stockings drawn over the leather breeches. These varied costumes composed particularly picturesque groups, when in a cold evening they were collected together round a large fire, and the light was thrown from below upon the black or bearded countenances; the fire perhaps illuminating a rugged mass of rock in the back-ground. A faithful sketch of such a group, with the horses standing near, and the arms and saddles lying about, would have afforded a most admirable frontispiece to some terrible romance, in which a troop of banditti were to play a principal part.

We had here again another conflict to sustain against the reluctance of some of our party to proceed on the journey. The Namaaquas had only a few days before been attacked by a numerous horde of Bosjesmans, and the sufferers asserted that the district before us was the true native country of these marauders; that they were here bolder and more formidable than near the colony, and their numbers were so great, that if they were to make a serious attack upon us, our force would not be sufficient to resist them. Our guides added, that we should not meet with a human habitation between that place and the Beetjuan country; that our horses would be famished, and no longer able to move; that we were ill-provided with powder; that we had not more than three or four effective dogs; that several of our guns were no longer fit for use; with many other objections of a similar nature. Moreover, even supposing that we had the good fortune to escape with safety from the Bosjesmans, it was not at all improbable that we might find ourselves in a very disagreeable situation with the Beetjuans, whose dispositions were, to say the best of them, at least very doubtful. How would it be possible to defend ourselves against this numerous and

warlike nation, in case they should choose to seize our waggons, our horses, and our oxen; and how much harder should we find it, supposing we escaped with our lives, to be obliged to return through the Bosjesmans' country on foot, and unarmed. Kok himself, whose advice we asked, seemed to feel his courage droop. He had now for some time expected two Hottentot families who were in his service, and who were to follow a few days after his departure: he had hoped to meet them at the Rietfontein, since nothing had detained them from setting out from the Beetjuan country, but some little repairs which were wanting to their waggon: having the most perfect dependence on their good faith, he had purposed trusting his family to their protection; on their journey to the Sack river. Some disaster he was convinced must have happened to them: either they had been coercively detained by the Beetjuans, or murdered in the way by the Bosjesmans.

All these representations were however insufficient to shake our determined resolution, and our companions were necessitated to yield to our will, which was immediately and decidedly declared without the least hesitation. Kok submitted joyfully, and assured us that our resolution determined him to proceed with us as far as we chose, for he must now believe that it was inspired by God, who willed our journey; he should therefore think no more of fear.

Soon after noon, therefore, we set forwards along the declivity of a small hill which lay to our right. At the distance of about three miles to our left, we saw a high ridge of hills running parallel with it for a great length of way, which, on account of the distance that it extends from north to south, is called the Long-Mountain. The declivity over which our route lay was interrupted in several places by small dells, the beds of so many periodical streams. Though we sent some of our people forwards with pick-axes and spades to level the ways over these places, they were often dangerous to our waggons, and wearied our oxen extremely. Besides this, there was now scarcely any beaten track to be discerned: here and there only could we perceive in the grass some faint impressions made by the wheels of the missionaries' waggons. From hence therefore we were obliged to trust wholly to the compass and to the direction of the mountains as our guides. The way we pursued was chiefly over a plain, uninterrupted by cliffs, dells, or high shrubs of any kind. In this country it was that we first discovered

the footsteps of giraffes: these we took some pains to examine accurately, that we might know how to distinguish them in future.

When we had almost reached the place where we were to encamp for the night, a most tragical scene was presented to us. I had gone on before wit Kok, who, according to our usual custom, was giving me a lecture in the Beetjuan language, when we discovered in a little thicket before us the tilt of a waggon. As we approached it, Kok recognized the wives and children of the people he was expecting, and exclaimed joyfully: "There they are!—There are my Hottentots, Jantje and David."—We hastened up to the waggon, and reached it before we were observed by any of the party. At the moment when we came up, one of the women, seeing us, uttered a loud and piercing shriek, and falling prostrate to the earth before Kok, embraced his knee in a tumult of agony. In an instant after, the children ran towards us crying, sobbing, and lamenting, in the most piteous manner, so that it was some time before my worthy companion, down whose cheeks tears were streaming, had power to ask the unfortunate woman where her husband was. For a while renewed sobs were the only answer he could obtain, till at length the woman pointed with one hand to a little distance, while she held the other over her eyes. We looked up, and saw a few paces from us a boy about twelve years old making a grave with an old iron axe, and near him, lying on the ground, the body of his father wrapped in a mat. "The Bosjesmans have murdered him," exclaimed the unfortunate lad; and letting his axe drop, he broke out into the most bitter cries and lamentations. After awhile, from several incoherent answers, which were all we could at first obtain, we comprehended that the other Hottentot also, with one of his children, had fallen victims to the barbarity of the Bosjesmans; but by degrees having succeeded in somewhat calming these poor creatures, we learned from them the following particulars.

These men were brothers, unmingled Bastard-Hottentots, who had long been attached to our Kok, and who had accompanied him, with their families and their property, in all his travels for the work of conversion, giving every day new proofs of their devoted adherence to him. The inclination which led Kok among the Beetjuans extended itself to them: they lived upon the best terms with these savages, they learnt their language, they adopted their customs, nevertheless avoiding any interference in the

contests which were perpetually taking place between these people and the Bosjesmans; not one of this miserable race had ever fallen by their hands. They saw therefore no reason to apprehend being molested on their journey, and strongly rejected the warnings of the Beetjuans not to follow their master, who must already be so far before them, through so solitary a country, with their worn-out waggon. A number of elephants' teeth which they had collected together they hoped would sell to great advantage at the Cape-Town, and they expected to return well equipped with new implements for husbandry, clothes, and tools for work.

On the third day of their journey they were joined by some Bosjesmans, who begged for the offals of the game they had killed, which being given them, they sat down quietly at a little distance and eat them. A herd of sixty oxen, however, which the Hottentots carried with them, strongly excited the appetites of these voracious guests; but too dastardly to attempt to seize them by open force, though the little convoy consisted of no more than two men capable of bearing arms, with their mother, their wives, and fourteen children, they formed a plan to get them by degrees in a number of petty contests. The watchfulness of the brothers prevented their commencing the execution of their plan the succeeding night, but the next morning these men, being at work at some distance from each other, the wretched invaders seized the favourable moment when one of them had bent himself down to do something to the shaft of the waggon, and while a party engaged him in conversation, one of the boldest thrust a sharp bassagai into his back, quite through to his breast. A girl of eight years old, the darling of her father, and who was standing near him, seeing his danger before the thrust was actually made, uttered a violent shriek, for which a spear was run through her by another Bosjesman. Alarmed by the cry, the brother looked up, and saw the horrid deed performed, without the possibility of coming in time to prevent it. Enraged, he rushed forwards, having nothing in his hand but a short axe, when the murderers, notwithstanding they were eight in number, hastily took to flight. After having in vain aimed a stroke with his axe at the head of the hindmost, he seized his gun, and firing after the fugitives, wounded one of them in the shoulder; but before he could load his piece again, they were all out of sight. Bows, arrows, spears, all were thrown away by them, that they might fly with the greater haste.

The bodies of the poor murdered father and child being removed into the waggon, the party immediately proceeded on their way, lest the Bosjesmans should return upon them with increased numbers. In order to conceal from the savages the place where the bodies were deposited, since it is a custom with them to misuse exceedingly the corpses of those who have fallen by their hands—to obviate this, they were buried in the dark the following night. The next day the unfortunate party continued their flight under the most painful anxiety, the Bosjesmans appearing every now and then at a distance upon the heights, without daring to renew their attack: the night was passed in the open field, under the strictest watch, to keep the enemy at a distance. The next morning, however, the route lay at the edge of a considerable thicket of mimosas, whence the travellers were assailed with a shower of poisoned arrows, by which some of the children were touched. Those who were in the waggon found an extraordinary protection from the dried skin of a buffalo, which was hung on the side of it by mere chance, and in which many of the arrows stuck. Yet the wretches were terrified at the courage of a single man, and a shot from the Hottentot's gun drove them from their lurking-place, and put them to flight. Somewhat farther on, the attack was renewed, but the arrows were then principally aimed at the draught oxen, that the progress of the party might be stopped. Some of these fell, but they were immediately replaced by others; while the man and the eldest boy, however, were doing this, the latter received a very slight wound, the father a more severe one. This did not prevent his still defending his children and his herd: eleven of the children, notwithstanding, as they continued their course, one after the other received wounds from the miscreants. The morning of the next day put the final seal to this catastrophe; the robbers appeared in greater numbers upon the heights around, and at length moved towards the little convoy in several divisions, so as to surround it. The Hottentot fired his piece; but this was the moment for which they waited: all the arrows were then aimed at him, and while he was endeavouring to load his piece again, he was mortally wounded in three places. That he might not fall before their eyes, he hastened, half-fainting, to the waggon, his son following him: and the miscreants with a shout of victory drove away the whole herd.

The wounded man soon lost his speech and recollection, and died in the space of an hour. All hope of escape was lost to the sufferers, when, about

noon, at the place where we met with them, the axle-tree of their waggon broke. Plundered, languishing with their wounds, inevitable death seemed before their eyes. Some lurking Bosjesmans were seen spying about the hills, as, it appeared, with a view to possessing themselves of the last remaining draught oxen. The uncertainty alone whether the wounded defender might not be still alive, whether his little remaining strength might not yet be employed against them, seemed to make the cowards keep aloof, to make them hesitate in putting the finishing stroke to the misery of their victims: and it was probable that they waited only for the closing in of night to renew their attack with the greater security. Fully convinced that it was this alone which afforded them any respite, the women collected their children around them, and employed the interval in prayer, when suddenly the Bosjesmans, probably having seen us, disappeared, and hope once more revived in the bosoms of these unfortunate people: it seemed possible that they might be able to reach Ongeluksfontein, which they knew to be at no great distance. They were therefore hastening to deposit the dead body in the earth, purposing, when that was done, to employ all the strength left them by three days of anguish, passed without rest, sleep, or nourishment, in flying with the utmost speed that the circumstances would permit.

Our companions, who now began to justify their former apprehensions, and again to mention our returning, were soon however obliged to confess with shame, that had it not been for our perseverance, all these people would have fallen victims to a horrid and painful death; an hour later, and we had probably not found one of them alive. The people themselves considered our incomprehensible appearance in a place through which scarcely a single traveller passes the whole year round, and that at the moment of the most imminent danger, as an absolute miracle, as a visible interposition of heaven for their preservation. Kok, to whom they poured out their hearts in the most affecting manner upon this subject, thanked us eagerly with tears of gratitude for the firmness with which we had that morning adhered to the prosecution of our journey. Disposed by all this to be satisfied with our determination, we found a still farther justification of what we had done, in the manifest cowardice, which, according to the tragical relation we had heard, was displayed by the Bosjesmans: from this cowardice we received the surest pledge of that determination being sanctioned by the event.

Our first business was now to take care of these unfortunate people. Three of our Hottentots were sent back in the night, well armed, to Ongeluksfontein, to fetch some of the Namaaquas from thence, that they might, the next day, convey the women and children to a place of security. Some other of our people were employed in a complete repair of the waggon, and others dug a grave to bury the corpse. This, though dead only a few hours, from the strong and dreadful nature of the poison, was already in a state of total corruption; the large wounds in the back, in the belly, and in the thigh, were immoderately swelled, and were surrounded with a greenish blue circle. The smell which proceeded from them was far worse than what proceeds from an ordinary putrid corpse. The grave was made very deep, and the earth pressed hard down upon it with stones, to keep it from the beasts of prey.

I, for my share, occupied myself with attending to the wounded children: I washed their wounds with wine, while the cook made some strong broth for them to take. Happily, scarcely any of the wounds were more than skin deep, the miscreants having fired at too great a distance to do any essential injury; with most of them I therefore did nothing more than rub the whole body over with warm oil, which I have always found the best specific that could be used against the poison of the Bosjesmans' arrows. To the deeper wounds I applied, according to the experience I had had of its efficacy, a mercurial salve; the freshest wounds I only endeavoured to lubricate, and found them, the next morning, vastly amended, less swelled, and looking much better than the older wounds. I gave the people besides some medicines to carry with them on their journey, and, by the careful attention of the mothers to the directions they received from me, united with their extreme cleanliness, they succeeded happily in saving the lives of all; at least, none had died when we repassed the same way a month and half after, although the health of several of the sufferers was by no means entirely restored.

At day-break our three Hottentots returned, accompanied by some Namaaquas, who had shewn themselves very ready to give all possible assistance to the sufferers, and repeated to us, several times, that they considered it as a Christian duty. They would have the whole story in the snorting Hottentot language, from the women, and then first began to make preparations for their departure. We now took leave of our *protégés*, making them some presents at parting of live sheep, bread, and wine. Some of these poor creatures were stowed in the waggon; others were mounted upon riding-oxen, which the

Namaaquas had brought with them; and as we set forwards in one direction, we saw them depart in the opposite.

We found on our way abundant traces of the conflict above described. The frequent deviations of the track of the waggon wheels from the straight line shewed plainly how often the oxen had started aside, terrified with the arrows; and we found two of these poor creatures dead in the road. They were swoln to an enormous size, and were so dreadfully offensive to the smell, that even our dogs would not endure to go near them. On both sides of the waggon tracks, we found such numbers of arrows scattered at intervals, that we might with ease have collected more than a hundred. The Bosjesmans despise an arrow that has once failed of its mark; and, on the contrary, consider one that has hit as of double value. They will therefore rather make new arrows, how much time and trouble soever it may cost them, than collect those that have missed, and use them again. All that we found were newly poisoned, and most of them had fresh-sharpened iron points; the form of these points, however, differed from any that we had hitherto remarked, inasmuch as they did not describe a rectangular triangle, two sides having a degree of convexity, the third a degree of concavity, so that they formed a sort of heart, with crooked points on the sides made very sharp.

The place at which we passed the night is called John Bloom's Fountain; for here had lived about ten years before a colonist of that name, the remembrance of whom was held in abhorrence both by the Heathens and Christians of the country. He was the first of all the white men who arrived at any accurate acquaintance with the Beetjuans, but he misused the consideration which his superiority in understanding, and their ignorance of the mighty power of fire-arms, gave him over them, to plunder them of vast quantities of cattle, partly by craft, partly by main force; nay, he even carried his criminality so far, that he once set on fire a whole Beetjuan village, the inhabitants of which had fled from him and his companions. When he had made a successful expedition of plunder, he used to return to this spot, and send the stolen cattle by his Hottentots into the colony, to exchange them for powder and ball, and other things, of which he stood in need. The Beetjuans, who at first received him with the utmost confidence, were, through this disgraceful conduct, so embittered against all white people, that when, happily for them, John Bloom died, they would not permit any Christians to remain in their

neighbourhood, till the two brothers Knieger, who, the Corans assured them, were very well disposed men, by degrees removed their prejudice; and on this disposition Kok contrived to improve so well, that he was received with the utmost confidence.

According to the indications given us, we dug up the elephants' teeth, which the Hottentots had buried in the ground, in order to lighten their waggon. Here also we found the remains of some oxen, which the women mentioned as having been killed by the poisoned arrows; notwithstanding which, they were almost devoured by the lions and hyenas. The people of the country assured us that these wild beasts have no objection to things killed by poisoned arrows, as long as they are fresh, but that they will not touch them when once the putridity, which so soon takes place, has commenced. While my companions went in pursuit of some gnus and kudus that appeared in the vicinity of this place, I occupied myself, the horizon being very clear and level, with ascertaining the inclination of the magnetic needle, and I found it to be twenty-four degrees thirty minutes north-west. According to the most accurate calculations, from former and later observations, the latitude of this place must be twenty-six degrees twenty-seven minutes.

The following night was not passed without some uneasiness, on account of the Bosjesmans. Soon after sunset a strange dog was discovered in our camp, which we knew immediately to be a Bosjesman's dog; and we had reason to suppose that his master was not far off. The poor beast was, according to all appearance, attracted by the odour of our cookery; for although he seemed very shy of us, and whenever any one went near him, ran away immediately, he always came back to the spot where our cookery was going forwards; and if a morsel was thrown to him, swallowed it with incredible greediness. These dogs, in their size and form, have a striking resemblance to the black-backed fox of Southern Africa, the jackal, as he is falsely called, *canis mesomelas*; so that it seems very probable that the one is really a descendant from the other; only that the properties of the animal are, in the course of time, somewhat changed, from its having been tamed, and trained by the hand of man. The colour is nearly the same; but in the dog the black stripe down the back, which is so distinctive a characteristic of the fox, is wanting: the likeness is striking in the stiff erect ears, and the pointed snout: these features are much stronger than in any of the European breeds of what are called fox-

dogs. I had opportunities in the sequel of seeing a great many of these dogs, and found them all very much like each other; but I never saw any so well fed as Mr. Barrow met with in his journeyings. His supposition, that, for want of better food, they will feed upon locusts, I can confirm from my own experience. For the rest, it is not a little remarkable, that they are never heard to bark; but whether this be natural to them, or whether, as the colonists assert, it arises from their being trained to silence by their masters from their earliest youth, I must leave undecided. They are employed only in finding out the tracks of the game, for which they have an excellent scent, but they are never employed in the pursuit of the animals: they are cowardly, and by no means watchful in their nature.

Our own dogs, even after they had driven these guests from our camp, were more than usually uneasy, barking almost incessantly, while, as to every thing else, the most profound silence reigned on all sides. This excited in us great apprehensions with regard to the Bosjesmans, some of whom, we were afraid, must be lurking about: our dogs, we were sure, would not be so restless without a cause; and we could not suppose lions, hyenas, or jackals, to be near, since they would have betrayed themselves by their noise. At length, however, the voice of a lion, which was heard about midnight, satisfied us as to the cause that had so much disturbed our faithful guards. Hitherto we had all been very watchful in the fear of an attack; the cattle were collected together within the waggons, and a watch was placed at each waggon, who patrolled diligently from the one to the other. Our fire was also extinguished, because it at once hindered us from seeing so well around, and made us conspicuous to the enemy. The kitchen fire alone was kept burning, so that nobody experienced greater terrors than our cook, whose duty chained him to this post. Scarcely, perhaps, was there ever a better creature in the world than this thick-lipped Mozambic slave. Wholly unawares that cowardice is a failing, yet well aware, from experience, that negligence in his service would be punished, he never thought of taking any pains to conceal his deficiency in courage, and strongly intimated a wish that his masters would be pleased to content themselves with a cold supper, or at least with meat not half cooked. Though in his very confined sphere of enjoyment, life might, to a philosophic mind, appear scarcely to him a moral good, the dismal stories he had heard of wounds and murders, had made such an impression

upon him, that it outweighed every other consideration, and his whole attention was divided between his boiling pot and the Bosjesmans, so that he never once observed how much amusement was afforded to others by his truly comic gestures and behaviour. The most trifling noise terrified him to such a degree, that his eyes, which sparkled like the very fire with which they were blended, and with which he stared wildly into the dark desert around, became three times as large as they were before. If a dog approached, and was driven away, he followed him eagerly with his eyes, watching, by his movements, which side he might expect the enemy to advance, and then crept awhile under a bush, till the pot boiling over, roused him, and he sprang forwards to check its fury, forgetful for the moment of danger, thinking only of the consequences attending a neglect of duty.

At the return of day, from many indications, we saw plainly that five or six of the Bosjesmans must have been lurking about in the vicinity of our camp at night : in some places it was clear that they had been lying flat on the ground, within a few paces of our waggons. On this and other occasions we had to regret the neglect of an article in our equipment, which I had earnestly recommended as of essential importance, and which was only omitted through the inattention of the man to whom the care of providing every thing in the list given him was confided : this was rockets and other fire-works. From the total unacquaintance of the savages with these fires in the air, they would have inspired, particularly those that make a great explosion, greater terror than the fire-arms themselves. They are, moreover, partly from being more harmless, partly from keeping alight for a longer time, exceedingly to be preferred as objects to inspire terror. I think I may strongly recommend to any future travellers through this country a particular attention to this hint ; the rather, since the fireworks may not only be made of the greatest use under this point of view, in case of a hostile disposition among the savages, but if friendly relations be established, they might be rendered a high source of amusement and enjoyment to them.

## CHAP. XLVIII.

*The Caves of Sibihlong.—A Buffalo shot.—Stompjesfontein.—Batavian Deserters.—Hunting the Giraffe.—Extraordinary Manner in which this Creature moves.—A young one shot.—Maputi.—Rissipien.—The Valley of Koossi.—More hunting of Giraffes, and Danger encountered by the Author in consequence.—Arrival of the Party in the Country of the Beetjuans.*

A CONSIDERABLE hill, with a high conical summit, was the first object worthy of remark that presented itself, as we proceeded on our way. It was composed of brown iron stone, and on the east side was a cavern with a broad entrance, rugged, and running deep into a vast stratum of ochraceous iron. The whole base on this side consisted of an iron clay, sometimes of a more or less deep rose colour, sometimes of an ochre yellow, sometimes of a brownish iron clay, mingled abundantly with crystals of mica, very brittle, and of a lead colour. This substance, rubbed to powder, and mixed with fat, is much used by the Beetjuans to smear their skin and hair; and for that purpose large quantities of it are brought by them from this spot. The cave bears the name of Sibihlong, and it is the most southern point to which the wanderings of the Beetjuan people extend. The colonists call the mountain Blinklip (*glittering rock*), and formerly used to relate stories concerning it of extravagance beyond all bounds.

We went into the cavern, carrying lighted lanthorns in our hands; and when we had descended about thirty paces, came to an archway not more than a foot and a half in height. Through this we were obliged to crawl, when we entered a sort of passage, running in a horizontal direction, by which we soon arrived at a spacious lofty-arched room, whence issued six or eight other caverns. All about the arched sides and roof, the chrystals sparkled with the reflection of our lights, and our hands and cloaths had acquired, from the soft and greasy nature of the stone, quite a shining brown appearance. Large pieces of the stone were broke off with a little exertion, and great masses about the roof seemed ready to be shaken down with any convulsion.

A few weeks before, as Kok told us, three Beetjuans, having broke off a piece of the stone incautiously, or perhaps, in order to see the better, having made too large a fire, occasioned a violent shock; and when search was made for them, it was found that they had fallen into a large cavern in the interior of the mountain. Although there was nothing disagreeable in our situation, as far as damp or cold were concerned, yet the idea of so dreadful an example made us soon retrace our steps, and quit the cavern: two of the company still endeavoured to explore a steep passage to the left, just at the entrance. They, however, returned almost immediately, having found the fresh dung of a lion: this seemed to indicate that it was not safe to venture farther.

After we had examined two other small cavities on the opposite side of the mountain, and given our cattle food and water, with the latter of which they were furnished from a stream that flowed at the foot of the mountain, we proceeded on our way, and came to a tolerably extensive plain, lying on a regular even slope, which had scarcely any soil: the surface consisted almost entirely of a grey quartz, whence shot out, in some places, single hard crystals, capable of resisting, for a long time, the impression of the air. From the crevices in this slopy surface a few small succulent plants sprung up, particularly of the *stapelium* and *mesembryanthemum* tribe: of the latter, were several wholly new to me: these were not a little annoying to our horses and oxen, into whose hoofs they frequently stuck. On this plain we espied a considerable herd of buffaloes, to which we immediately gave chase, and a large bull was shot. He was still alive when we came up to him, and so enraged, tearing the ground with his horns, notwithstanding that a large quantity of blood had already flowed from the great artery of the neck, which was shot through, that nobody dared to go near so powerful a creature, struggling with the agonies of death, till the conflict was ended. He was then cut up, and one of the waggons was freighted with some of the best pieces of his flesh. While we were performing this business, I was struck with a peculiarity in the structure of this animal, which has been overlooked by Sparrman and other accurate observers: this is the extraordinary breadth of the rib-bones; they almost unite the one with the other, so that on the outer side nothing at all is to be seen of the intercostal muscles.

At a little spring, which is called the Stompjesfontein, our people found some tin buttons with the number nine upon them, which we immediately

recognized as buttons belonging to the uniform of the ninth battalion of Bata-vian jägers ; probably, some deserter from that corps had here ended his life. Another unhappy being of the same description, a German, was mentioned to us by Kok, who described, in an affecting manner, the questionable mode of his appearance, the solitary unsteady life that he led, without arms, and almost without clothes, wandering about these widely-extended deserts, with no other companions than wild beasts and wild men. Kok had promised to carry him back into the colony, and recommend him to a person of his acquaintance ; but our arrival had terrified him with the idea that he would be taken and delivered up to us. He had, for this reason, disappeared, nor was he ever after heard of.

Our hunters expected to find a great deal of the larger sorts of game in the country we were now to traverse, and therefore rode on before, since the noise of our whole convoy together would probably frighten them. The horse that I brought with me from the Cape-Town being almost exhausted with hardships, and the want of proper food, I was obliged to forego the pleasure of accompanying them, and to content myself with insect-hunting near the waggons. We had scarcely travelled an hour, when the Hottentots called our attention to some object on a hill not far off on the left hand, which seemed to move. The head of something appeared almost immediately after, feeding on the other side of the hill; and it was concluded that it must be that of a very large animal: this was confirmed, when, after going scarcely a hundred steps farther, two tall swan-necked giraffes stood almost directly before us. Our transports were indescribable, particularly as the creatures themselves did not perceive us, and therefore gave us full time to examine them, and to prepare for an earnest and serious chase. The one was smaller, and of a paler colour than the other, which Vischer immediately pronounced to be a colt, the child of the larger. Our horses were saddled, and our guns loaded in an instant, when the chase commenced. Since all the wild animals of Africa run against the wind, so that we were pretty well assured which way the course of these objects of our ardent wishes would be directed, Vischer, as the most experienced hunter, separated himself from us, and, by a circuit, took the animals in front, that he might stop their way, while I was to attack them in the rear. I had almost got within shot of them, when they perceived me, and began to fly in the direction we expected. But their flight was so beyond all idea extraordinary, that between laughter, asto-

nishment, and delight, I almost forgot my designs upon the harmless creatures' lives. From the extravagant disproportion between the height of the fore to that of the hinder parts, and of the height to the length of the animal, great obstacles are presented to its moving with any degree of swiftness. When Le Vaillant asserts that he has seen the giraffe trot, he spares me any farther trouble in proving that this animal never presented itself alive before him. How in the world should an animal, so disproportioned in height, before and behind, trot? The giraffe can only gallop, as I can affirm from my own experience, having seen between forty and fifty at different times, both in their slow and hasty movement, for they only step when they are feeding quietly. But this gallop is so heavy and unwieldy, and seems performed with so much labour, that in a distance of more than a hundred paces, comparing the ground cleared, with the size of the animal, and of the surrounding objects, it might almost be said that a man goes faster on foot. The heaviness of the movement is only compensated by the length of the steps, each one of which clears on a moderate computation from twelve to sixteen feet. On account of the size and weight of the fore-parts, the giraffe cannot move forwards through the power of the muscles alone; he must bend back his long neck, by which the centre of gravity is thrown somewhat more behind, so as to assist his march; then alone is it possible for him to raise his fore-legs from the ground. The neck is however thrown back without being itself bent, it remains stiff and erect, and moves in this erect form slowly backwards and forwards with the motion of the legs, almost like the mast of a ship dancing upon the waves, or, according to the phrase used by the sailors, a *reeling-ship*.\* It is not difficult to overtake the giraffe with a tolerably good horse, especially if the ground be advantageous, and somewhat on the rise; for it will be easily comprehended that it must be extremely difficult for a creature of such a structure to move upon the ascent.

The extraordinary motion of this animal, the fatigue he seemed to experience in heaving up his fore-legs, and the stiff manner in which they

---

\* It has been said that the movement of the *knight* at chess was borrowed from that of the giraffe. If there be any truth in this notion, it can refer only to the springing over every thing; not to its oblique motion, which is wholly foreign to that of the giraffe.

came to the ground, so rivetted my attention, that my ardour in the pursuit of him was for a moment checked, and recollection was wholly lost in observation. I soon however set my horse again into a gallop, and sprang towards this wonderful figure, while he, probably never before interrupted by a human being, and perfectly unsuspecting of our evil designs, stood there, looking with an eye of curiosity towards me, without seeming to be aware of my companion. That companion had already approached the animal in front, but unluckily he had not patience to wait a few moments longer before he fired, and taking his aim at too great a distance, the shot failed. Alarmed, the creatures now ran with redoubled swiftness; besides which, a minute was necessarily lost in re-loading and cocking the gun, in which they got the start of us very considerably. Our horses, though already out of breath, were again spurred on; but we should never have come up with the giraffes, if they had not suddenly turned round, having probably seen some of our companions, who had gone on before, or had the idea of some other danger, and come directly towards us. By this means they were soon within our reach, when Vischer, hastily dismounting from his horse, fired, and the young one fell. The old one immediately renewed her flight more eagerly than before, and was hit by my fire, but not in a mortal part. I followed her still awhile by the track of the blood, but she quickly got the start of me very much, and my horse was so completely wearied, that I was forced to give the thing up. I then returned to my companion, whom I found sitting upon the neck of our fallen prey. He called to me not to approach incautiously, since the animal, though wounded in the spine, had yet a great deal of strength remaining, and had made several efforts to spring up again, which he was seeking to prevent by keeping the neck down. As our companions soon after re-joined us, we released the poor giraffe from his confinement: this was no sooner done, than, though almost at the last gasp, it endeavoured by a powerful spring of its long neck to raise itself up, and remained for some instants with its body half raised from the ground. It then fell again, from weakness; but in falling, the left horn struck against a stone, which considerably injured the beauty of the skull.

As night was coming on, we all united with the utmost diligence in cutting up our prize, the skin of which, with the most important parts of

the skeleton, and some pieces for the kitchen, were carried away. After the head was separated from the neck, and the whole fore-part was laid open, we began four of us to work at stripping the thighs, when a last convulsive palpitation of the whole tendon muscles scattered us on all sides, not in a very gentle manner. Two Hottentots who were at work on the hinder hoofs were struck with such force as to be thrown to the distance of three or four paces, and I myself received a blow on the head from the front hoof which I felt pretty severely for several days. In all the larger quadrupeds, particularly the buffalo, I have observed an extraordinary irritability in the muscular fibres, which probably arises principally from the vital warmth remaining so much longer in so large a mass before it can be wholly expended. The muscles in the thighs, for example, I have known not unfrequently tremble at being touched with the knife even an hour after they were separated from the body.

Very reluctantly did we leave the rest of our prize a prey to the Bosjesmans, whose fires were already to be seen on the neighbouring hills. We passed the night without being molested by them, taking up our quarters at the foot of a pretty high hill, from a wild wooded dell in which flowed a plentiful stream, called by the colonists Klipfontein, but by the natives *Maputi*. We remained here half the following day; that we might pack and arrange our booty with the utmost possible care. The skin of the giraffe was well cleaned, and rubbed over with various sorts of spices and other preservatives; but though every possible precaution was taken, such was its thickness, that we could not wholly preserve it from injury: in several places the outer skin had decayed and fallen off with the hair. When well cleaned and spiced, it was spread upon the tilt of the waggon to be dried, and almost covered it, the long neck reaching to the middle of the shaft, and the feet almost touching the ground. The height of this young animal in front, from the point of the horns to the end of the toes, was thirteen feet four inches; the neck was somewhat more than five feet in length, the leg from the tip of the shoulder-blade to the toe was nearly eight feet; the hinder legs were six feet and a half; the length of the body to the beginning of the tail seven feet. At dinner we had a most luxurious repast from the produce of our hunting parties, and our cook exerted all his art to make us excellent buffalo-soup, ragout of steinbock, fricassee

of pintados, and roasted giraffe. The latter in particular was uncommonly tender, and no less well-flavoured, extremely white, and strongly resembling veal: It was the unanimous opinion of the whole party, that among all the wild animals of Southern Africa, none was in flavour equal to the giraffe.

We had scarcely travelled an hour farther in the afternoon, when we discovered, not more than a hundred paces from the road side, the place where the unfortunate Hottentots had buried the father and daughter who first fell by the hands of the Bosjesmans. They had described the spot to us very accurately, and begged that we would examine whether the bodies were untouched. We found the grave not only disturbed, but both bodies dragged out of the ground, and mangled in a horrible manner; they were however little corrupted, the victims having been stuck through with hassagais, not shot with poisoned arrows. We stopped to bury them in deeper graves, and, according to the Hottentot custom, pressed down the earth upon them with large stones. As it began to grow dark, we stopped upon a very barren spot, destitute of water, so that we were obliged to give our cattle the water we had brought with us in two large wine casks. At our arrival in this place, we met a considerable flock of gnus, and after dark a numerous troop of quaggas passed our camp at full gallop.

We spent this night again without sleep, the whole party being under the greatest anxiety lest a serious attack should be made upon us by the Bosjesmans. Our dogs barked incessantly on all sides, and some of the most courageous among us, who, favoured by the darkness, had crept upon all-fours under the low bushes at a little distance from the camp, returned with the information that not far off there were a considerable number of men assembled. Our precautionary measures were therefore doubled, and we all remained the whole night under arms. This watchfulness probably saved us from some mischance, for the next morning, when we examined the environs, we discovered in a circle of about two hundred paces round our camp abundant footsteps of the Bosjesmans. Our experienced hunters pronounced, from the marks left, that there must have been at least fifty prowling about.

We now hastened forwards in search of water for our thirsty cattle, and after travelling more than three hours, came to a half-dried lake, overgrown with reeds, called by the Beetjuans, Rissipien: here were abundance of

wild-ducks and water-hens. Among the mimosa bushes around the lake traces were visible of its having been very recently the abode of a considerable horde of Bosjesmans. The boughs were in a great many places bent down to the ground, some were even fastened into it with small pins, after the usual fashion of these people: there were also many loose and broken arrows scattered about. As we proceeded forwards, towards evening, some of our hunters, who had rode on, came back with the agreeable information that about two hours distant they had killed a very large male giraffe, entirely of a dark brown colour, which they had covered over well with bushes, hanging a pocket-handkerchief upon a staff as a flag, to secure it from the wild beasts, and they had no doubt of finding it safe in the morning. Kok assured us that he had never seen a larger and handsomer animal: he thought that it could not be less than twenty feet in height.

We stopped for the night in a pleasant valley, which was indeed almost an entire meadow: through it meandered a small stream, every part of which contained water, though not in great abundance; this spot is called by the Beetjuans *Koossi*, that is, *the rich*. On the north side stretches a long hill, flattened at the top, and, towards the plain, richly overgrown with trees and shrubs. We found our situation here so much the more agreeable, since our camp stood in an entirely open place, so that no Bosjesman could approach it undiscovered. Although our Hottentots had scarcely had any rest for several days, they passed half the night in sports round the fire, which enlivened and amused us scarcely less as spectators than them as actors. At day-break we set forwards in search of the giraffe, which our friends supposed they had left in perfect security; but, alas! when we arrived at the spot, we found nothing of the animal remaining except the entrails; the rest had been carried away by the Bosjesmans. To our astonishment, we could only trace the footsteps of four men, who must therefore in that short portion of time have conveyed away a weight of at least a thousand pounds. I have always been assured that the Bosjesmans, notwithstanding their diminutive size, and apparent slightness of structure, are capable of supporting almost incredible burthens, and they can carry away a large quantity of flesh so much the more readily, since they never stop to flay the animal, but cut flesh, skin, and hair off all together. How gladly would we have spared them all the flesh, provided they would have left us the skin and the bones.

In our return to the camp, we met a large flock of antelopes, of a species quite new to me, and little known in the colony: they are only to be found north of the Orange river, and are called by the hunters bastard-elands. They approach in size pretty near to the genuine elands, but differ from them in being a darker colour, and in having horns that bend backwards. They are considered as the most mischievous of all the antelope species, and instances have been known among the savages, not only of their turning and running at their pursuers with their pointed horns, but even of their wounding them mortally. I never but once besides saw a flock of these animals; and that was in our return: but in both instances they were at a considerable distance from me.

While we were thus vainly seeking the slaughtered giraffe, our companions had not been idle; they had not only killed some quaggas, two large troops of which had in the night passed by our camp to the river, but had also shot a great number of pintados and partridges. These birds were in such abundance here, that not less than fifteen or twenty partridges sometimes fell at a shot. The pintados, of which there were commonly some hundreds together, ran with incredible swiftness among the bushes, and we were forced to send our dogs to hunt them out again. We afterwards learnt a better manner of pursuing them, and shot them in great numbers at the closing in of night, as they were perching upon the trees about. But as their flesh is somewhat hard, and not very well-flavoured, we in the sequel did not much concern ourselves about them, but rather confined ourselves to their eggs, which are particularly good, and of which we collected very large quantities. On our return we took some of the young ones alive, which soon became so tame, that when we stopped for the night, we suffered them to run about unrestrained and perch upon the trees, whence they always returned to us in the morning very punctually to be fed, and were then put into their cages to proceed on the journey with us.

On the following day, at noon, after having maintained a constant hunt of antelopes and quaggas for several miles, we met at length with four giraffes, to which immediate chase was given on all sides. When we had pursued them some time, a troop of ten of the same creatures appeared from another quarter, and uniting with the first, they all took a direction favourable for us, up the declivity of a long hill. The hope of being able

here to come near enough to get a fair shot at them was doubly disappointed by my falling from my horse, and by the gun of another of the company going off unintentionally, from the owner carrying it in a careless manner. The report of it frightened the animals, and they fled with much greater speed than before. A third of the company did indeed afterwards wound one of them, but at the same moment, when we had got so near as to have been able to fire with effect, we were all unfortunately destitute of weapons. My piece had been injured in the lock by my fall, and while I was trying to repair it, the objects of my aim were soon out of my reach. We would not however wholly abandon the pursuit, since we observed that the animal who had been shot lost blood very much; and as our horses were extremely wearied, we followed them awhile on foot, having seen them halt upon the plain. On drawing near them, they however again took to flight, so that we were ultimately constrained to desist, and to think of returning, as the pursuit had carried us southwards; the sun was besides already declining pretty fast.

Large troops of quaggas, hartebeests, and ostriches, now passed us, without our thinking of molesting them: it was more difficult to resist ten or twelve gnus who came towards us, and who, by their boldness, and the wonderful springs they made, seemed to court us to the attack: we shot one, which proved to be a female. As we had not yet obtained an entire skin or skull of this animal, we carried away both, as well as a foetus which we found within. So much time was spent in this, that it was almost dark when we once more set forwards. It now appeared, to our no small chagrin, that our horses were absolutely exhausted; that two of them, even, from the pitiless manner in which they had been treated, could not easily be made to move from the spot. I resolved therefore to dispatch Mong, who was our best rider, to the camp, with a commission to procure fresh horses to be sent to us, while I and Van-der-Westhuizen followed slowly. We still awhile led our horses on, but at length I was compelled to abandon mine entirely to his fate, as he was too much fatigued even to proceed at a foot's-pace. After some hours, we came to a low spot overgrown with bushes, which gave us some uneasiness, as it was very likely to be a haunt of the Bosjesmans; but we soon found that they were not the only enemies to be feared. We had scarcely gone a hundred steps, when our ears were saluted with the

roaring of a lion. I suggested that we should not attempt to go any farther, but make a fire, and wait the arrival of the fresh horses. This my companion opposed, assuring me that our death was inevitable if the light of the fire should betray us to the Bosjesmans, and they should see that we were only two. To go farther, however, seemed equally unadvisable, on account of the lion; since, if we proceeded, as we should get at length to the windward of him, he might find prey to be at hand, and might chuse to make a meal of us. To complete our disaster, we were nearly destitute of arms: my gun was rendered useless by its accident; Van-der-Westhuizen's was, indeed, loaded, but he had no more balls, and some that I had were of too small calibre for his piece. We returned back to the height, and by the feeble remains of light afforded us for the next quarter of an hour, we thought we discovered that the upper part of the valley was not bushy, and that by taking a circuit we might avoid the thicket and the lion.

This circuit we made, and came directly under a hill through a deep rocky valley, along which we were often obliged to climb our way with our hands and feet. Scarcely were we again on even ground, when our horse, who smelt the lion, or some other beast of prey, suddenly sprung from us, and, notwithstanding his weariness, galloped away at full speed. It was not without great trouble that we caught him again, but with the loss of our whole day's booty, for the skin and skull of the gnu, with which he was loaded, were gone. The moon, which had hitherto favoured us, was now set; the night was completely dark; and the track of our waggons was entirely lost, owing to the circuit we had been obliged to take. Seeking our way with our hands and feet, we kept along the edge of the thicket, and after groping for a considerable time, felt at length, as we thought, very decidedly the tracks of wheels.

We now hoped to find our companions at the foot of a hill which lay before us; and by the exertion of our last strength, which was nearly exhausted, as we had not eaten any thing for four-and-twenty hours, we at length reached it. How great however was our disappointment not to find any traces of them! how much greater, when ascending a little way, we looked around in hopes of seeing a fire, which might indicate to us where they were, but could not discern any thing like one! all was involved in continued darkness. In the valley below we heard the noise of numberless

Jackals, the usual companions of the lions ; and the idea of this new danger brought the courage of my companion, which hitherto I had supported tolerably well by my consolations and exhortations, once more into question. He could no longer restrain his murmurs and repinings : first he cursed the giraffes, then the landdrost and me, who had inveigled him into taking this journey, through which he should now at this early age come to such a miserable end. It was clear, that whether we should stop or proceed, the danger was equal ; probably Mong himself had not reached the camp. Our strength was wholly exhausted, and as we must not venture to make a fire, the cold would deprive us wholly of our senses, and leave us a certain prey to the wild beasts.

Although I was not myself in the most courageous humour possible, and in my heart was disposed to be extremely angry with our careless companions, I rallied my young man very much upon his cowardice, and endeavoured even to render it laughable to himself. In any case, I observed it was expedient that we should endeavour to defend our lives ; and in order to do so the more effectually, alike against the cowardly Bosjesmans, and the fierce beasts of prey, it was essential to make a fire, that we might at least have one enemy the less in the cold. I proposed, therefore, that each should watch alternately, while the other was taking rest, having with him the gun, with our last remaining charge ; and standing at a little distance from the fire, the better to espy any danger that might approach. Without waiting for his consent, I proceeded to execute my plan ; and taking the gun upon my shoulder, went out upon the watch, leaving him to rest and warm himself by the fire. I had not been long at my post before I heard a shot, the joyful signal that our companion Mong was not far off, and I immediately answered by firing my piece. His joy at finding us was scarcely less than our own, for he had experienced no small uneasiness on our account. The company had been obliged to proceed on a long way, in order to obtain water, and Mong, from his horse being so extremely fatigued, was very late before he arrived in the camp. He brought horses with him, on which we immediately mounted, and soon after midnight rejoined the rest of the party. Here we were refreshed with a warm drink of wine and ginger, which revived us exceedingly, and in the evening of the next day our horses were brought back to us by some Hottentots whom we sent in search of them.

We were now upon the very verge of the Beetjuan country : a little hill alone separated it from us. This we ascended early the next morning, and on quitting an opening like a gateway in the last row of hills, a wide extended plain, scattered over with single large trees, was spread out before us. Kok now welcomed our arrival in the promised land, and made us observe that all things here wore a very different and much more pleasing aspect than what we had been accustomed to see of late. The country was every where green with excellent grass, and decorated with trees and shrubs ; the sight of it filled our hearts with joy, and expectation was strongly awakened with respect to the many new and remarkable objects with which we were to be presented.

THE END OF PART VI.

## PART VII.

STAY WITH THE BEETJUAN TRIBE OF MAATJAPING BY THE RIVER KURU-  
RUHMAN, RETURN TO THE CAPE TOWN, AND VOYAGE TO EUROPE.

---

 CHAP. XLIX.

*First Interview with some Beetjuan Herdsmen—Arrival at the Residence of the King Mulihawang.—Visit of the King to the Travellers.—Friendly Intercourse with the Savages.—Solemn Audience given by the King.—Description of the Town.—A House described.—Visit to the High-priest.—Names of Individuals.*

UNDER the shade of a tall and wide spreading giraffe tree, the *acacia giraffe* of Wildenow, were lying the first men whom we saw after we entered the celebrated district, by which our curiosity was so much excited. They were herdsmen watching their numerous herds of cattle, that were grazing in the meadows around. They seemed struck at the sight of our cavalcade, and observed it awhile as if irresolute and undecided what they were to think of it, but at length approached, after repeating the word *Morra*, meaning *good morning*, which they had learnt from the missionaries. When they perceived Kok among us, they evinced the utmost astonishment and delight, by clapping their hands, and by repeated bursts of laughter. They begged some tobacco of us, and then, according to their duty, returned back to their posts.

Although, to judge from the first friendly reception, there seemed no occasion to have any apprehensions of what was to follow, I nevertheless resolved to advance first with Kok and M. Winterbach, to investigate the dispositions of the people, and particularly that of the king, before we ventured too far. We soon came to a little village of about thirty flat spherical huts, from which a number of women and children and some men came out, observing us with eager curiosity, but with perfect confidence. Here we stopped till our waggons came up; and here also we found Kok universally known, and, as it appeared, highly beloved. The children pressed around him, kissing and caressing him, while the grown people asked him a thousand questions con-

cerning his unexpected return, expressing great astonishment at it; they enquired also of every thing that had happened to him among his own people. Nothing seemed to excite their interest so much as the unhappy fate of the Hottentots David and Jantje. Kok seated himself upon the front bench of a waggon, and related to them in their own language all the particulars of this catastrophe, to which they listened with downcast looks, yet eager not to lose a word that fell from his lips, now and then repeating something after him, as a mark of their attention: at the end of every period they said, *Eh, Eh, (yes, yes)* to shew that they understood him perfectly. When he had concluded, they broke into lamentations for the death of their two friends, assuring Kok that they had given them the most earnest warnings not to undertake the journey. The lengthened tone with which they repeated the words of exhortation they had used *tiba Jantje, tihba, tihba* (stay Jantje; stay, do stay) had something in it so truly impressive and affecting, that even the most rugged among our company were struck, and seemed to feel it deeply. For the rest, they had already some knowledge of the affair from the neighbouring Bosjesmans themselves. From them they had also heard at the same time, when we could scarcely have left the last village of the Bastard Hottentots, that a train of four waggons was upon the road towards their country, so that our arrival was not wholly unexpected. They assured us, that the Bosjesmans have such an uninterrupted communication with each other through their signals by fire, that they know every thing that is going forwards in the country much earlier and more accurately than any other nation. Individuals of these people, they said, sometimes came to their herdsmen alone and unarmed to beg food of them, and in return would communicate any news of which they were possessed.

They now in a courteous and friendly, but somewhat pressing manner, asked us for tobacco, and no sooner was any given to one than all came forwards, stretching out their hands, in hopes that they also might be equally favoured. We made Kok tell them that we were unwilling to diminish our stock by mere presents, that we wished to give it in exchange for articles of their cloathing or ornaments. To this they answered with great simplicity, that they were too poor to have any thing worth offering to us, since they were only herdsmen; we must make these proposals when we should reach the river Kuruhman, where lived the rich people of the country, to whom

these herds belonged. As each received a little of the tobacco they grew much more talkative, and gabbled so fast to each other that it was scarcely possible to distinguish one word from another; I could only make out the words *manati*, good, and *makua*, white person, which they frequently repeated as they rubbed the tobacco, and rammed it down into their bone pipes: this seemed done to make us understand that we were welcome into the country.

As we had been taught to believe that the Beetjuans were very distrustful, and that there was great reason to be anxious about our own lives while in their power, such decided proofs of their confidence rejoiced us very much, and disposed us to be equally confiding. While we took our cold dinner, as usual, upon a mat spread on the ground, they all seated themselves round us, at first without asking for any thing, though very much pleased to receive whatever was given them, for we every now and then offered some of them a piece of our meat. By degrees they drew nearer and nearer, and at length came and seated themselves between us upon the mat, and did not wait to be invited before they helped themselves. In this the female part of the company were much more forward than the men, exactly as if they presumed that we should expect some favours from them in return. A little lively woman in particular, who did not appear more than fourteen or fifteen years of age, and who had laid her sucking child down upon the ground a few paces from us, seemed to have such confidence in the power of her roguish eyes, that, without any scruple or hesitation, she took the best bits from the dishes, and even from our hands. As we examined with great attention her clothes, her earrings, her necklace, and other ornaments, she seemed extremely delighted; she even took off some of the ornaments, and gave them into our hands to examine, reaching out her hair, richly smeared over with fat and mica, for us to feel it: nay, she did not even evince the least distrust when we took in our hands the weapons which the people had brought with them.

Extremely satisfied with this first reception, I proceeded on my way with Kok and Winterbach, while the waggons followed slowly; after awhile they stopped entirely at a place indicated, where they were to wait our return. We soon came to the banks of the river Kuruhman, towards which we had descended for some hours, and arrived at the spot Kok had inhabited, and where his hut was now standing. From hence there was only a half

hour's ride to the principal place, the residence of the king Mulihawang. A pleasant way through a not very thick wood of tall thorns carried us thither. A short time before we arrived at the place, we passed through an open field, where a number of men were employed in business, others seemed only taking a walk in the evening sun. On the opposite side of this field was again a little thicket of mimosas; beyond which, rose one pointed roof after another, as far as our eyes could reach. Three large giraffe-trees stood at equal distances among them, dividing the site symmetrically, for the center one was the largest; this, as Kok told us, was the king's favourite tree, under which he sat very often. We were no sooner espied than the whole population of the place swarmed out upon us, so as almost to obstruct our way. All greeted Kok in the most friendly manner, while he on his side, to free himself in some sort from their importunities, eagerly inquired after the king; on this they made way, and pointed to the spot, where Mulihawang himself was coming slowly and solemnly towards us.

A tall figure was now presented to our view, having very marked features, and appearing about sixty years of age; he was clothed in a large mantle, and wore on his head a rough high pointed cap. He was followed by four other men in a row, all clad in the same manner, and appearing nearly of his own age: a number of people pressed about him on all sides. We dismounted, and while we were still embarrassed how to salute him, he reached out his right-hand in silence to touch our's; then turning to Kok, who, as an old acquaintance, he greeted more heartily, he took both his hands, pressing them eagerly. Here again some time was passed in the necessary explanations of Kok's speedy return, and the occasion of our visit. To my great joy I discovered, that through my diligence in learning the Beetjuan language, I could even now make out the general sense of what passed; indeed, I understood almost every word said by my instructor Kok, who himself spoke the language with a Dutch accent and construction. The king expressed himself as extremely pleased with our visit, and promised to bid us welcome that very day in our own camp. Then followed again the history of the two Hottentots, which I begged to abridge, that we might not be kept too late before we returned to our companions, and that the curious populace might not get there sooner than ourselves, which would very much have impeded the formation of our camp. We soon therefore took our leave, and hastened

back, when we found our company at the river, close to Kok's habitation, busied in making the proper arrangements for our longer stay; they were exceedingly rejoiced at hearing of the good reception we had experienced.

The precautions necessary for securing our property against the little thefts to be apprehended from so numerous a train of visitors, and to keep out of sight things which might have drawn upon us troublesome importunities, were scarcely completed, when the *corps d'avance* appeared; they were followed almost immediately by the king himself. We went towards him, and when he had saluted my colleagues by touching their hands, we led him to our tent, where he was informed, standing (for he seemed to despise the seat offered him) of the objects of our visit. The principal object Kok represented to be the wish of the Dutch government to enter upon an intercourse of traffick with his country, and to live in friendship with him and his people: we were sent, he said, to bring him assurances of good-will on the part of our government, and, as a proof of it, to make him some little presents. He answered, not without dignity, and as if the presents were a matter of perfect indifference to him, that he had not the least objection to strangers visiting his country, provided they came with pacific views; in particular, any one would be welcome who was brought by his friend Kok, whom he was not a little rejoiced to see again. He had suspected Kok, he said, to have some secret reason for leaving the country, and that he never intended to return, so that his re-appearance gave him the greater pleasure, since it afforded a new proof of his good disposition—his *white heart*, as the king expressed himself. We now learnt, that the four old men, who immediately followed him, were his counsellors, and that two younger men of his train were his sons. One of them, who was heir to the throne, Methibe by name, appeared about thirty years old: he had a very pleasing countenance, with much intelligence in his features: the other, by name Molimo, was third son to the king: he was tall in stature, large boned, and with an ugly but good-humoured physiognomy. Both of them, like all the other young men, were bare-headed, having their hair drawn into short tufts, and rubbed over with the shining metallic ointment. During the conversation, the king threw open his mantle, and displayed a profusion of ivory rings upon his arms; both above and below the elbow: he had, besides, necklaces of several sorts, from which hung amulets of various descriptions, made of the

bones of animals, and other materials. All the men wore a short garment, closed round from the middle of the body, half way down the thigh: it was made of a sort of shining tanned leather: they had sandals of thick leather on their feet, and round their legs, instead of stockings, leather thongs were twined: the knees, the body, and the breast, were entirely naked.

While the king was speaking, all the rest of the company observed a profound silence; but when he had concluded, those who were at some distance began to beg tobacco of our people. This reminded us that it would be proper to offer the king a pipe; we therefore presented him and both the princes with clay pipes filled with tobacco, which they immediately lighted, and began to smoke with great solemnity, squatted upon the ground, according to the custom of all the savages in Southern Africa: they drew in very large draughts, great part of which they swallowed, Mulihawang himself performing the greatest feats in this way. When he was satisfied, he reached the pipe over his shoulder to his minister, who drew in ten or a dozen strokes, and then, with deep sighs, which brought the water into his eyes, nose, and mouth, gave it to his next neighbour. In like manner, the pipes of the princes were handed to their train, and travelled for some time from mouth to mouth, till at length they returned to them again. A little comical fellow, who was very busy about the king, and more familiar with him than the rest, who we afterwards learnt was his *valet-de-chambre* and *principal fool*, would not be easy till the king had ordered one of the people to hand him the pipe. When he had got it, he drew in the smook so eagerly, that in a few minutes he was entirely stupefied. Some of the other attendants laid him on the ground, and trampled gently with their feet upon his body, which drove out again the smook he had swallowed, and he soon recovered.

As the evening was coming on, the king began to prepare for his return home. At taking leave, he said he was sorry that we had established our camp so far from his habitation, since it would prevent his seeing as much of us as he wished, moving about not being very easy to him. As we were, however, fully convinced how necessary it must be to avoid too great an intimacy and community at first with this numerous tribe of savages, we excused ourselves from changing our quarters, saying, that the present situation of our camp was more convenient to us, on account of the good feed and water it afforded for our cattle, who were in great need of being recruited.

We promised his majesty, however, that our frequent visits should spare him the inconvenience of coming to us. At the same time we begged permission to wait upon him the next morning, to have some farther conversation on the objects of our mission, and to see the town. Kok accompanied him a part of his way home, and at his return told us that the king had communicated to him secretly his wish that only the presents destined for him as king should be given him in public; that any ornaments or delicacies for eating, should be presented in private, since, if his people should know of his possessing them, he should have no rest; they would be continually begging, and he should not be able to avoid sharing even the smallest trifle with them.

Scarcely was the king's back turned, when the people who remained became much more importunate, asking for tobacco, brandy, and other presents. As Kok was gone with the king, we were afraid lest our hesitation should give occasion to misunderstandings and discontents, and I therefore endeavoured to put forth all my treasure of knowledge in the Beetjuan language, to make them understand that the traffick should be opened the next day, but that they could not have what they wanted at that moment, at least, as presents. Instead of murmuring at this, they remained with the same confidence as before: their whole attention seemed absorbed by my addressing them in their own language. *Muhnto-si bua Beetjuana*, the man speaks Beetjuan, they repeated to each other a hundred times, forgetting every thing that they had asked for before; and all began talking to me with such rapidity and vivacity, that I could not understand a word. I was obliged therefore to break off the conversation, somewhat ashamed of myself, that I had been so forward in putting forth my knowledge.

To our astonishment, not a single woman appeared among this party. By the intervention of a Hottentot who could speak the Coran language, which is understood by many of the Beetjuans, and spoken by them with considerable fluency, we asked the reason of this, when we were answered that they were at home, and must work. Very few among them had brought arms of any kind; a fresh proof that they entertained no injurious suspicions of us. The thing which gave us the most pleasure during this conversation, was to learn that the war with Murublong, of which the fugitive missionaries seemed to be in such extreme terror, had never absolutely broke out. Mulihawang had expected support in the attack he meditated, from the Corans of the Vaal-

river, and sent his son Mathibe to them with this view. But this prince had returned three days before, not having been able to prevail upon them to take any part in the attack, and Mulihawang did not think himself sufficiently strong to undertake it without assistance. By degrees all our guests departed, except a few of the poor, as they stiled themselves, who remained, and slept quietly at night near our waggons.

The next morning some of our acquaintance were very early at our camp, when we remarked that they were dressed as if it was a holiday. Some wore handsomer cloaks of the skins of jackals or genet-cats, and all were fresh rubbed over with the shining ointment; the hair being particularly thick and glittering with it. As they had walked fast, and were in a great heat, big drops of dew stood on their countenances, which, mixed with this shining material, looked like beads of quicksilver. A young man soon appeared, with a really noble aspect, and dressed more sumptuously than the rest, having a number of ivory rings round his left arm: he was announced to us as a messenger from the king, and he came to say that he was appointed by his majesty to be our guide and protector for the day (a sort of guard of honour), and was ordered to conduct us to the town. We followed him through the thicket of mimosas by a nearer foot-path, and soon came to a very pretty well-shaded spot. About halfway we saw some women employed in cutting down wood, who immediately came up to us, repeating very earnestly the word *Montjuko*, tobacco. As we were going to give them some, our protector withheld us, and scolded the women exceedingly, bidding them go back to their business, and threatening to strike them with his *sjambok* if they did not obey instantly. They, however, far from minding him, grumbled exceedingly, and disregarding his menaces, renewed their importunities. We therefore at length gave them a little, but this was taken very much amiss by our protector; he complained to Kok, and said it was not right that tobacco should be given to these ordinary women, which had been refused the day before to men of distinction, and he desired the missionary to hint to us that we must never offend again in the like manner.

When we arrived at the plain where stands the town, a great number of people came out to meet us, women and children, as well as men. These our protector put aside, ordering them to make way for our train; those who were the most troublesome, he drove away with his *sjambok*. On entering

the town,\* we came immediately into a pretty wide street, running part between houses, partly between the hedges that surrounded the kraals for the cattle. The houses were all of a circular form, with the roof running up to a point; the roof rests upon a circle of posts, which are united together below by thin walls of loam; above, for a little way below the roof, they are left open to admit light and air. At the doors, which are almost all to the street, sat a great many women and children, who looked at us very quietly as we passed by. Farther on, we came to some places where there were neither shrubs nor grass, and then again to several little crooked streets, of unequal breadth. As the circular houses, and the quadrangular kraals between them, are placed in all directions, with regard to the neighbouring houses, the streets are, properly speaking, little else than open spaces, having no regularity, either in their direction or their breadth.

The tall giraffe-tree reminded us that we were approaching the habitation of the king. We entered a large quadrangular space, well-fenced round, in the middle of which this tree, having three stems, rose. The place was now empty; only Mulihawang with his counsellors lay upon the ground at the entrance, basking in the sun. He no sooner saw us than he rose up, received us very cordially, and while he gave his right hand by turns to us all, with his left he pointed to the tree, as if inviting us to accompany him under its shade. He went slowly and silently before us, till we were directly under the tree, then turned round, and seemed waiting to know our pleasure. At the same time he made up a very solemn mien; and throwing all possible dignity into his somewhat melancholy countenance, in which there were many venerable wrinkles, he gave us to understand that here, between the stems of this tree, he was, as it were, upon his throne in full majesty.

Kok was now desired by us to repeat the assurances of friendship from the Dutch government at the Cape, and to represent us as ambassadors from the governor. The king, having no conception of the nature of the establishment in the colony, could not easily be made to understand our relation with the government. At first, he took the landdrost for the governor himself, and could not be reconciled to the idea of an inferior magistrate. As I had heard

---

\* I call this place a *town*, though it has neither walls nor gates, for an assemblage of six hundred houses, and five thousand inhabitants, seems too large to be denominated a village.

that among these people, the king's sons alone were sent on embassies, I advised our calling ourselves the sons of the governor, and then the king seemed thoroughly satisfied upon the subject. We now produced the presents. They consisted of a thick stick five feet in length, with a large metal head, on which was engraved the letters B. R. the cypher of the Batavian republic, with the name of Mulibawang, and the date of the year, of a roll containing about ten pounds of tobacco, some pounds of glass beads of all colours, some dozens of large smooth steel buttons, some knives, some brass-wire, &c. &c. This was only a part of the presents destined for him: according to his desire, Kok carried him the rest in the evening secretly: in them was included a small quantity of our dried European pulse, and some new bread, which he had particularly desired. All these things seemed to please him very much: he received them with much ceremony, but avoiding any expressions of great delight. The stick he placed by him against the tree: the rest of the things were consigned to the care of his *valet-de-chambre*, Mutiri, who was in attendance near him, and who contemplated them with great eagerness and curiosity.

As we were going to enter upon the other objects of our embassy, he desired that we would not detain him too long, and answered, not with absolute indifference, but with no great interest, that as to the principal question whether he would in future ever permit white people to live in his country, he had no objection to it, provided they brought with them the means of subsistence. When asked whether he was satisfied with the missionaries who had just quitted the country, living among his people, he answered, that he knew very little of them; that he believed they were good kind of men, and he had nothing to say against their returning; but he wished, above all things, that Kok would remain there, since he was well acquainted with husbandry, and had already given them some very useful instructions in it.

During this conversation, which lasted almost an hour, a great number of people had come into the inclosed place. All crowded forwards to hear something of what passed, so that our young protector and the king's counsellors had some difficulty to keep them from pressing upon us. Mong, and some others of our party, had brought with them little papers of snuff and tobacco, with which, after the audience, they purposed to present some of the most

distinguished persons that might be present. Unluckily, they suffered these papers to appear too soon, and suddenly there burst forth such a tumult, such crying out among the people, and such a scrambling, that it was impossible for the conversation to be thought of any more. The king, who himself got a thrust in the ribs, endeavoured at first to quiet them, by crying with a loud voice *zhumaja, zhamaja*, go away; get you gone; and indeed all were silent who heard his voice. But those who were too remote to hear it still continued their clamour; the women in particular, stretching out their arms, cried with all their might, *lekoano montjuko*, give us tobacco, till the monarch at length losing all patience, took his large mantle under his left arm, and with his right swung his tremendous *sjambok* of rhinoceros leather, striking on all sides; till he fairly drove the whole multitude before him. This was a signal to his courtiers to do the same, so that the blows were dealt handsomely every way, and nothing was heard but the strokes of the thongs upon the leather cloaks; nay, those who did not make their retreat with sufficient speed, got a stroke or two upon their naked legs. Mutiri, who, as guardian of the presents, remained near us, justified this proceeding of his master very warmly, assuring us that it was contrary to the customs of the country for women to enter that place, and this was what made the king so exceedingly angry. In less than a minute, the court was entirely cleared, when Mulihawang, having placed a guard at the entrance, came back to us, and listened awhile longer to our interpreter, yet with constantly decreasing attention, till at length, his wholly abstaining from any answer gave us to understand that it was time we should take our leave. At parting, we invited him to dine with us the next day, which seemed to please him very much, and he gave us free permission to walk about the town, ordering some of his people to conduct us. As we were going away, he called after them, that they should use the *sjambok* if the women were again equally troublesome.

We were now carried through an absolute labyrinth of little alleys, large places, and broad streets, to the quarter in which stood the principal houses. Here we were first introduced into the inside of one; it was that of our conductor. A number of children, the greater part of whom were entirely naked, were playing in the warm sand before the door, and the rest were made to come out, that we might see every thing more commodiously. While Kok was explaining to us the structure of the house, and the uses of

the various implements and utensils which it contained, the inhabitants remained on the outside, leaving our numerous company, without the slightest appearance of distrust, quietly to take down and handle every thing; they did not even look in to see what we were doing. It is also worthy of remark, as a proof of their confidence, and as a matter of forbearance on their part, that during the whole time of our stay, not one of the people appeared armed; as if they were desirous to avoid every thing which might have in the slightest degree an inimical appearance. It was only in our visits at the houses that we saw their shields and hassagais: among the rich there were generally thirty or forty of the latter standing in some remote corner.

The commodiousness and durability of the houses was what struck us most at this first visit. As the great care and exactness with which they are built forms one of the principal features in which these people differ from the Caffre tribes of the east, and especially from the Koossas, a particular description of one seems not to be here out of its place. A Beetjuan tribe always fix their abode in the midst of a wood of mimosas, the stems of these trees, which here grow to a considerable height, being one of the most essential articles in building their houses. Twelve or fourteen of these stems are requisite to build a good house; eight or ten of these must be nine foot high, the rest three or four feet higher. The shorter are stuck upright in the ground at equal distances, forming a circle, the diameter of which is from sixteen to twenty feet; and this serves as the outer scaffolding on which the roof rests; the long stems form a small circle within, to which the roof is sloped; but the highest part of the roof is not exactly in the centre, because it rests upon one of these posts which is longer than all the rest, and thus the roof has the appearance of a not perfectly regular dome. The thatch with which it is covered is either straw or reeds, very ingeniously woven together. A wall, the height of a man, is formed of mimosa boughs interwoven between the pillars, the thorns of which are turned in so dexterously, that passers-by are in no danger of being caught by them, while at the same time not the smallest beast of prey could press through. This hedge is plaistered over within with a smooth and firm plaister, composed of argillaceous earth and ox-dung. A similar wall, but higher, is formed by the circle of posts within; and this is the principal abode of the family, the outer part being allotted to the servants. The

entrance is by a doorway between two of the posts. The inner beams and cross spars on which the roof rests, serve for hanging up the clothes and skins; a reed mat also is often stretched over these beams, on which, as in a granary, or garret, many sorts of food are spread out to be dried, and kept for store. Also for keeping the stores, a sort of pantry is often built up in the back part of the house, with twigs and clay, in a spherical form, and five or six feet high. There is never any bad smell in these houses, because of the free circulation of air: the inhabitants are entirely sheltered from rain, and in the heat of summer it affords them a cool shade.

The huts of the poor are smaller, not being above eight or ten feet in diameter; sometimes even they consist only of a conical roof, resting upon the ground, having neither light or air but through a low door: a low fence is then commonly made round, within which the smaller domestic animals, as the kids and others, are kept. The kraals for the cattle are spacious; they commonly join the house, and besides the outer hedge, which is generally the height of a man, they are often stuck round within pretty thick with palisades, at a little distance from the hedge, that the latter may not be injured by the animals themselves.

After we had examined several houses, in all of which we met with a most friendly reception, some of the inhabitants, entertaining us with slices of dried gourd, and the sweet berries of the *grevia obtusifolia*, Kok carried us to see the high-priest of the place, recommending our shewing him the utmost respect and politeness, since he had great influence with the king and the people, and was not particularly well-disposed towards strangers. We found a man advanced in years, with a sort of woeful countenance: he was sitting on the shady side of his hut, occupied with sewing jackal-skins together. The work went on very slowly, since he first bored with an iron piercer the holes through which the tendon thread was to be run. But when done, the work was particularly firm, and the surface perfectly even; the skins were indeed so well united, that no appearance of seams could be discerned on the hairy side. The old man would scarcely give himself the trouble of looking at us, but continued intent upon his work, answering in a very short manner the conversation Kok addressed to him, as well as our offers of a present of tobacco, beads, and buttons. He however accepted the present, and laid the things down by him quietly, not

appearing the more disposed to speak; we therefore soon left him. The whole business of this priest consists in circumcising the youths, which is performed every other year with much the same ceremonies as among the Koossas; in consecrating the cattle against the commencement of a war; and, in case of victory, with presiding over a festival, where some simple solemnities are performed. He is besides in possession of some medical knowledge; understands the influence of the stars; prepares charms, in the infallibility of which the people have the firmest belief; in short, every thing which relates to the popular creeds and superstitions emanates from him. These priests differ in one point essentially from the enchanters among the Koossas, that they are not merely dealers in magic, whose works may be deceitful, but they are distinguished by various kinds of knowledge, being educated, during their whole lives, as men destined to the priesthood.

The remainder of our time was employed in a walk to the western side of the town, towards the foot of a high hill, from which point we could see all over this Beetjuan capital. At a rough guess, we estimated the number of houses at between five and six hundred. Kok, who had in the latter years of his residence here travelled northwards, and visited the tribes of Muruhlong and Matsaraqwa, assured us that their principal towns were much larger; so extensive, that the whole could scarcely be included in one glance of the eye. The tribe of Maatjaping, where we were, was, five or six years before, much more numerous: it was at that time united with the tribe of Muruhlong, under a chief by name Makrakki. It was in this situation when the English commissaries, Trüter and Somerville, visited the country in 1801, on which occasion these gentlemen estimated the population at fifteen thousand. This estimate was confirmed by Kok, who said that when about a year after Mulihawang and Makrakki agreed upon an amicable separation, two-thirds at least followed the latter, so that not more than five thousand subjects remained to the king of Maatjaping. At that time they lived commonly at the spring of Takuna, three days' journey farther to the north-east; and from this name those travellers derived that of Litakoo, by which they called the place. Never has the town, however, any proper name of its own: it always bears that of the chief, and nearest natural station: here, for instance, the

name of the river Kuruhman equally serves as the name of the capital of Maatjaping.

In the sandstone, of which the base of this mountain is composed, we saw all about a number of figures symmetrically carved, the meaning of which we enquired both of Kok, and of our Beetjuan guide. They both assured us that they had no particular meaning, that they were done by the herdsmen as an amusement to pass away the time while they were attending upon their herds. Similar figures are to be seen burnt in the wooden working tools here: this evinces a pleasure in regular forms, and must be considered as a preliminary step in the art of design.

We now took leave of the guide appointed by the king, making him some little presents, and returned back to our camp. On our route, however, we got a little out of the regular path, and were obliged to enquire of a herdsman the right way through the wood. He conducted us himself, and was exceedingly unembarrassed and talkative all the time he remained with us. I asked him his name, and he told me it was Manong. I had already learnt that this word signifies a falcon; and as I expressed my wonder that he should bear the name of such an animal, he told me that it was a very general custom; one of his brothers, he said, was known by the name of *Tjoni*, ape, and his uncle was called *P'hnhuhje*, jackal. Kok, however, assured us, that this custom prevailed only among the common people; that princes and people of distinction had all of them names, the sense and connexion of which, with other words, was not known.\* These names were, moreover, often changed upon particular occasions, or else the people acquired surnames derived from some important occurrence in their lives, or some memorable act performed by them. It was indeed by no means uncommon for a very distinguished person to have more than one such name.

---

\* That most of the names of distinguished persons, and even those of the tribes themselves, are derived originally from the Arabic, I have demonstrated in my essay, which I have often mentioned before, upon the languages of the savage tribes in Southern Africa, in *Bertuch's and Vater's Ethnographical Archives*. If traces of Arabic derivation are to be found in the languages, it is very probable that they may be discovered, in the first instances, in the names of princes and persons of distinction.

Mulihawang alone, for instance, had four. We might be assured, he said, that every one of us strangers had already some name given us by which we were designated among these people; indeed, I soon learnt that I was called *Thammakuhna*, red-neck, because I had a red cape to my uniform. When we questioned them about the English commissaries, they always called Mr. Trüter, *Angokorra*, ugly-face, because he had a sort of gloomy look with his eyes, and thick dark eye-brows.

## CHAP. L.

*Dinner given to the King of the Beetsjuans at the Camp.—Conversation with the three Princes.—Their Confidence in the Europeans.—Traffick with the Natives.—Visits from the Women.—The King's Wives.—The Traffic continued.—Slaves offered for Sale.—A Dance.—Embarrassing Proposal made by the King.—Motives for a hasty Departure from the Country.*

WE found at the camp a number of visitors, who were very much in the way of our preparations for dinner; we put them aside however more courageously than we had ventured to do the day before, without their appearing the least offended at it. As our tent was too small to entertain so large a company, we had two waggons fastened together, the linen tilts to which served as a shade against the sun and weather: at the end was placed a guard of honour. About noon the king appeared, accompanied by the two princes, without any other train. We invited him to sit down before our tent, till the dinner was ready, to smook a pipe, and, according to the custom of the Cape, to drink a glass of wine before he began to eat. He declined both, but sat down upon one of our camp stools, which by chance was somewhat high, and did not stand very firm in the sand. It was obvious how entirely he was unaccustomed to this manner of sitting, and how much he was afraid of falling, for every movement he made was with the greatest attention to preserving the equilibrium very exactly. He, however, took great pains to avoid betraying any symptoms of fear, and did not quit his seat till we rose from ours. To entertain him, several European works of art were brought and exhibited, as a gun, a watch, a compass, &c. &c. Nothing pleased him, however, so much as our phosphoric matches, and a burning-glass. As some paper was set on fire by the latter, he exclaimed eagerly, several times successively, *Mutelo Leetshaatsi*, fire from the sun. Prince Molimo shewed quite a childish delight at the smart occasioned by putting the finger too near the focus of the sun's rays. He begged to have the glass for a few minutes, and stealing behind a number of the people, he burnt the nearest to him directly in the back; a joke which pleased the rest exceedingly, and

which was repeated several times to the very great entertainment of his highness and all his countrymen.

We now conducted our guests to the table, seating the king in the uppermost place; and, that he might no longer be embarrassed by the stool, a heavy chest was placed for him to sit upon. The Landdrost and myself took our seats on each side of him, and the princes were mingled with our party. The conversation at table, as will easily be comprehended, could not be very animated, since it was necessarily carried on almost entirely by means of interpreters; besides which, the pressing and noise of the crowd assembled round was so great as almost to drown the voices. The king seemed somewhat more at his ease than in the morning, now and then addressing some words to the bye-standers, and handing them, at intervals, something from his own plate, or sending his bounty by Mutiri, who was always in waiting at his side. When this was the case, however, the valet was not always faithful to his trust; the best pieces never reached their ultimate destination, they stopped by the way in his own mouth: heavy complaints and clamours were raised against this breach of confidence, but the king did not condescend to turn round and pay them any attention.

His majesty now remarked, among the company standing about, his fourth son, Molala, a beautiful youth of about sixteen: he immediately called to him to come and eat with him. As there was no place left at the table, and as our people had not politeness and respect enough to make room for him, he sat down upon a chest which was standing close by his father. A tin plate with soup was handed to him, which he took upon his knee, but that being naked, it was soon burned by the hot metal, which made him start, and the greater part was poured down his legs. The king took great pains to learn the use of the knife and fork, and soon managed them very tolerably, but the princes took out their own double-bladed knives, and, in their usual way, putting the meat into their mouths, cut the bit off very dexterously close to the lip. Among all the dishes served, the vegetables pleased the king the most, particularly the cooked rice, and the dried fruit and bread; he also relished the buffalo's flesh very much. He was exceedingly surprised at our liking small roasted birds, and made himself very merry at seeing us enjoy what, as he observed, was almost all bones. Such things as were unknown to him he would not taste, till he had enquired of Kok *whether they also were*

*good*. He drank three glasses of wine, but when a fourth was offered, he declined it with thanks, saying that he was not accustomed to such liquor, and was afraid of being intoxicated. Indeed, with what he had drank already, he was become much more animated and talkative, and asked so many questions, with such rapidity, that Kok, as interpreter, could scarcely get in answers to them all.

In the first place, he gave us to understand that the people whom we had seen scarcely constituted a sixth part of his subjects. A great number of the men, capable of bearing arms, were out in different hunting parties; another party, under the conduct of his second son, Tellekella, were gone to the *'t Garieb*, the Orange river, to make a treaty of alliance there; and still another troop were on an excursion to the Corans. He was very sorry, he added, that the country was in so weak a state at that moment, since otherwise he should have proposed to us to unite in an expedition against the Bosjesmans, and revenge the murder of David and Jantje. He then descanted on the perfidious conduct of his former associate Makrakki, who, he said, had driven away the herds belonging to himself and his people, for which he hoped to make him pay very heavily. We begged Kok to break off the conversation upon this subject, as we did not wish to be invited to take any part in his punishment; and to enquire on our behalf after the monarch's wives, not one of whom we had as yet seen. The king replied that they would be very glad to visit us, and to ask us for presents; and then proceeded to enquire whether we, like Kok, had only one wife each. What was his surprise when he heard not only that none of us had more than one, but that most of us had none; this he thought almost incredible. As in this country a number of wives forms part of a man's riches, and he concluded us to be all very rich, he could scarcely conceive that we were speaking the truth, when we talked of having no wife at all. When we explained to him, that, by the laws of our country, people could not marry till they were of a mature age, and then could never have more than one wife, he said it was perfectly incomprehensible to him how a whole nation could submit voluntarily to such extraordinary laws. He had five wives, he said, and children by them all, and his relation Masjouw, king of the distant tribe of Muruhlong, eight years before had ten wives, and it was very probable that he had now several more.

When we rose from table, the king sought out a retired and quiet spot, where he laid himself down on the grass, first smoked a little tobacco, and then slept a short time, his counsellors sitting in a circle round him, and Mutiri waving a long bunch of ostrich feathers backwards and forwards, to keep the flies off. The Landdrost also withdrew, as did the rest of the company, so that at length I was left alone with the three princes, when they all began to make me the confidant of their wishes. The friendly eagerness of Methibe, in particular, made a strong impression upon me. I was much delighted with the *naïvete* of his gestures, as he repeatedly said *Ke ratan jehnu—I will thee*, which I afterwards learnt from Kok is an expression, meaning *I will do thee all the good I can*. As our conversation was carried on with difficulty, Kok not being present, we were obliged to assist it as well as we could by signs. I gave them to understand that I would make each of them a present as a remembrance of me, and that they should chuse what they would have. For this purpose I ordered my chest of clothes to be brought, from which I took a variety of trifles and laid before them. Methibe chose a razor, Molimo a dozen of plain buttons, and Molala a silk handkerchief. A looking-glass, some small buckles, some ribband, some stockings, and some linen cloth, they set entirely aside. Molimo expressed a very great longing for my helmet-hat, in which he admired himself very much, but, as a part of my uniform, it could not be disposed of, though at length he offered six oxen in exchange for it.

Methibe reproved his brother for his importunity, and reproached him with offering so high a price for an useless ornament; but, he said, the razor was of great value to him, for his beard had become very inconvenient, and since the war with Muruhlong was not likely to take place (for the Beetjuans only let their beards grow in time of war, or upon a journey), he wished very much to be shaved immediately. At the same time he pointed out to me how badly this operation must be performed with their own short knives, since every single hair must be plucked up which occasioned great smart. Although I took particular pains to make him understand the manner in which the razor must be used, he cut his cheek in the very first attempt. Without asking any more questions, he seized my hand, and led me to the stump of a tree, on which he made me sit down, when he put the open razor into my hand, and seating himself upon the ground between my

legs, rested his head upon my knee, as a sign that I must shave him. So quickly had we gained the confidence of these people, that in less than four-and-twenty hours after our arrival, a prince trusted his head without the least hesitation to my hands thus armed. This proof of confidence delighted me the more, from being unsought on my part, and from my having no idea that I was giving him so much pleasure. I ordered soap and water to be brought, and having first washed off the ointment which was rubbed pretty thick upon the beard, began my operation. Not, however, being very much accustomed to perform it, and the razor being somewhat blunt, as I had been careful not to present his royal highness with my best, I was very tedious, and occasioned so much smart to the operatee, that the tears rolled down his princely cheeks. He, however, remained perfectly still, contemplating himself from time to time with great complacency in a small looking-glass. The spectators around stood mute with admiration during the whole performance, gazing with the utmost eagerness in their countenances, and bursting at length into a general peal of laughter—this being their customary mode of expressing delight, astonishment, admiration, nay, even embarrassment and fear. Every one now who had any trace of beard on his chin wanted to be shaved by me; I, however, begged, rather unpolitely, to decline the honour, and, indeed, the prince would not allow his razor to be used any more. The people afterwards said that they liked our beards much better than the smooth effeminate faces of the two young missionaries, though they were not sorry to learn that in a quiet domestic way of life it was customary among us to part with them.

The time seemed now arrived for producing our stock of tobacco, and other objects of barter, of which every one was to have a portion in exchange for trifles of their own workmanship. A formal market was therefore opened, and one of the enclosed waggons was allotted as the place of traffic. Mong was appointed the head shopman, and two assistants were given him, one of whom was to take care of the things purchased, and place them in security, the other was to attend to the objects of barter. Scarcely had a few copper rings been purchased at the price of a small roll of tobacco, about as long as the finger, when crowds pressed around the waggon with their hands full of rings, necklaces, earrings, and other objects, all offering them in exchange for this favourite commodity. Others ran to their houses

and brought hassagais, spoons, knives, and a variety of household implements, which they offered in abundance, for a couple of inches of African roll tobacco. The purchaser could scarcely repel their earnest entreaties, and while he was making a bargain with one, another pressed in between, assuring him that his wares were infinitely superior, and might be had much cheaper, shewing with the finger how short a piece of roll tobacco would be taken for them. All appeared afraid lest our merchandize should be exhausted before they could make their bargain. It was soon obvious that they had no idea of the ordinary usages of barter, for when they had agreed for so much tobacco for a ring, they were afterwards not satisfied and wanted more, which, if granted, more still was required. Many, after taking the payment, went away with their wares, so that the purchaser was at length constrained to hold his purchase-money fast, and not let it go till the equivalent was delivered.

A general spirit of trade was now so much roused, that while this commerce in trifles was carried on in the waggon, some of our colonists commenced a traffic for cattle, which they could not, however, obtain but at very high prices: the owners would not part with them for tobacco; they required bar-iron, nails, silk, or linen cloth, European clothes, and other articles of equal consequence. On this occasion a saw was perceived among our stock of iron tools, and these people having learnt the use of it from Kok, very high offers were made to obtain it. Unfortunately we had only this one. In our equipment we had not sufficiently recollected that we were to deal with a nation not wholly destitute of civilization. Future travellers will find it very expedient to carry a stock of tools for mechanical works with them to this country, particularly articles of steel, since the Beetjuans have not any idea of hardening iron. They were not less delighted with a file, a thing which they had never seen before, and in the use of which they were now first instructed: for this they would have given a price out of all proportion. Next to their cattle there was nothing on which they set so high a value as their larger objects of clothing, and it was not without great difficulty that I could make a bargain for a cloak, very neatly sewed together, on which I had fixed my mind strongly. I offered beads, nails, and cloth, but all in vain; such a cloak, they said, was never given but for live cattle. I therefore commissioned one of our

Hottentots to purchase two oxen for me, with which I afterwards purchased the cloak, and thus obtained it at a lower price than I had before offered for it: it belonged to one of the king's old counsellors. Elephants' teeth were to be procured at a much cheaper rate, and I got a part of one that might weigh from twelve to sixteen pounds for a piece of roll tobacco of only the same length.

A great many women were among the company on this occasion; indeed, their numbers kept constantly increasing, till in time they far outnumbered the men. They brought a profusion of trifles to exchange for tobacco, for they, like the men, roasted it a little, then rubbed it in their hands, stuffed it into their bone pipes, and inhaled the fumes with the utmost avidity. Some mixed the tobacco when it was rubbed small with wood ashes, then ground both together between two stones to a fine powder, and drew it up through a reed into their nostrils; this, as well as smoaking, they called *chocha*, which signifies properly, *sucking*.\*

Although these women behaved to us with the same confidence, and with as little embarrassment as the men, they all shewed great modesty and reserve. The least disposition to improper freedom shewn by any of our party was repelled with anger, but they seemed to like our company extremely when proper respect was shewn them; and Kok assured us that their esteem was only to be obtained by treating them in such an honourable way. Among them, however, as among the Koossas, the ideas of maiden reserve are not so strict: the same may indeed generally be said with respect to the women here as is related in the first part of my work, respecting one of the much longer and better known Caffre tribes.†

It was almost evening when the king, who, during all these tumultuary transactions, had been little thought of, returned among us. His presence

---

\* It is remarkable that the custom of smoaking and snuffing up certain pungent narcotic plants prevailed here long before any intercourse ever took place between these people and the Europeans: this I can assert from the strictest investigation. It is very probable that the practice may have been carried to the West-Indies by slaves of African descent, from whence we have derived it; thus it is by no means unlikely that the Beetjuans are our oldest instructors in a custom which has now for some centuries prevailed all over Europe.

† See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 264, and following.

in some degree, quieted the outrageous noise; at least nobody who was near him ventured to talk and gabble so loud as before. He brought two of his wives with him, who came on purpose to see our camp: he addressed a few words to them, and then left them, together with the men of his train, to amuse themselves, while he retired where he could be quiet. Kok, who was now summoned again to take upon himself the office of interpreter, introduced us in all due form to the ladies. The one was the king's third wife, Makait-schoäh, about two-and-twenty: she had regular features, a fine form, and was very pleasing in her whole appearance. The other was the youngest of all the queens, scarcely fifteen years old, with brisk animated eyes, but somewhat of a negro countenance: her name was Marani. The high rank of both might be presumed at first sight from their cloathing: they wore cloaks striped alternately with the skins of the gerboa, and of genet cats, and the eldest had a bunch of grey cats tails fastened to her left shoulder, which hung very ornamentally over the cloak, both before and behind. Over the breast of both was a piece of leather finely tanned, which was fastened with straps over the shoulders, as well as round the body: they had both a profusion of necklaces, made of glass beads, of pieces of cut bone, and little plates of copper: a small part of the body was bare, but from the hips, some way below the knee, hung leather aprons both before and behind, which only, occasionally in walking, allowed the knee to be seen; the legs were wound round with leather, and on the feet were sandals fastened with several leather straps crossed over each other. The lower part of the arm was ornamented with a number of rings, made of giraffe's hair, twined round brass wire. Makaitschoäh wore on her left arm, as a token of her rank, no less than seventy-two of these rings, which must have weighed some pounds, and was exceedingly pleased with our taking notice of them and counting them. Her hair was dressed with great care; it was divided into small bunches, which were well rubbed over with the shining ointment, and hung down from the crown of the head, looking like a profusion of silver thread or cord. She invited us to examine it more accurately, and informed us that the hair of the young girls was always kept cut very closely round the face, that it might grow more profusely upon the crown of the head, and that the bunches might fall more gracefully about, than could be the case if the whole hair were suffered to grow.

We had tea prepared in the tent, and invited our royal visitors to come in and drink some: the invitation was accepted, and they sat down upon a chest, but our beverage was not to their taste: they appeared, however, exceedingly delighted when we gave them wine: perhaps brandy would have pleased them still better. In our conversation, which began upon their children and their household affairs, but which was afterwards turned to the situation of the female sex in European countries, Makaitschoäh shewed a great deal of good sense and sound judgment; she often comprehended our interpreter fully, before he had done speaking. Among other things, she remarked very judiciously, that laws such as ours would not suit the Beetjuans, because there were so great a number of women, and the male population suffered such diminutions from the wars. At seeing European works of art, till then unknown to them, both the ladies, particularly the youngest, evinced their delight by repeated loud bursts of laughter. The countenance of the elder gained exceedingly, by being thus enlivened, particularly as she did not laugh so unreasonably; a generally sweet expression about her mouth, and the uncommonly beautiful teeth which she displayed, obliged us to confess that the taste of the old king was abundantly justified; for he had raised this woman from a low station to her present exalted rank, on account of her beauty and discretion. Marani, on the contrary, was daughter to the prince of a neighbouring tribe, that of Chojaä.

Our wine, and the pains we took to amuse the ladies, by shewing them a variety of things, to them objects of novelty and curiosity, detained them longer than they had probably intended. We at length found their company somewhat tedious, and were not very sorry, when evening coming on reminded them that it was time to think of returning; this they did under the care of Kok, who had received from the king a secret commission to that effect. A hint was given us by these royal visitors themselves that some presents must be made them at their departure, which we attended to very punctually, and they in return left us some of their necklaces and arm-rings. By degrees the company in general now took their leave; a few of the men only, among others the herdsman, Manong, remained at our camp all night.

The next morning early, to our no small satisfaction, we received from the king a present of two beautiful black-spotted oxen, and a very fine cow, with a bull calf. We afterwards purchased four more oxen exactly the same, and

carried the whole team to General Janssens, as a specimen of the beauty of the Beetjuan cattle. After the necessary business of the camp was completed, I went, under the guidance of Kok, again to the town, to visit the king and the princes in their houses. As I passed along among the numerous inhabitants of this populous town, and met frequently a face that I knew, my heart felt a secret delight that fate had appointed me, in preference to so many others, to visit a nation so well worthy of attention; whose existence as a half civilized race had long been utterly unknown, and whom I found every hour more reason to love and esteem. What I had seen and heard within the last few days sometimes appeared to me wholly like a dream; and the conviction of the reality of every object by which I was surrounded gave me inconceivable delight.

I found the king (who has, properly speaking, no house of his own, but who lives alternately among his wives) with his oldest wife, the mother of Methibe, whose name I forgot to note down: to judge by appearance, she must be older than Mulihawang. She received our visit with perfect indifference: the work in which she was engaged, cutting a sort of beaker out of a piece of mimosa wood, seemed wholly to absorb her attention. According to Kok's account, the king had a very high value for this woman, and Methibe had the most profound love and respect for her. I did not perceive any thing very distinguished in the house, except a large quantity of leopard skins, with one of which, to my no small satisfaction, the king presented me.\* He then carried me to one of his cattle kraals, where we found the cattle all very lean: this the king said was owing to the treacherous conduct of Makkraki, which constrained him to keep them in the neighbourhood, lest they should all be stolen; the consequence was, that all the fields near were eaten quite bare, and scarcely any means of subsistence now remained for the cattle. We next visited Makaitschoäh, who we found surrounded by four children; the whole head, the ridge of the nose, and a circle round the eyes, in each of the two eldest, were dyed with a very deep yellow ochre, a kind of ornament which I had before observed in many of the children about the streets. We gave the beautiful princess a little packet of snuff, which she had begged the day before; of this she not only immediately took a large

---

\* It was of that sort of leopard so rare in the neighbourhood of the Cape-Town, *felis-jubata*.

pinch herself, but gave some to her children, even to the youngest, who was at the breast, without the infant's making the least wry face at it, or, which appeared to me still more extraordinary, being excited to sneeze. The usual manner of taking snuff here, is to lay a quantity upon the upper lip, and throw it up with that into the nostrils.

From this, and some other transient visits, in which we saw mothers with their children, an attention to cleanliness struck me more forcibly than ever, as one of the most commendable of all features in the female character. The infinite trouble which it costs these women to clean and nurse their children, half naked as they are, and with nothing but leather to wrap about them, must be seen, to make the value of linen, and the importance of it to arriving at a state of high cultivation, justly understood and appreciated. At our visit to the heir-apparent, we also saw two of his wives, who, as well as his whole household, bore marks of distinction which I little expected to find. Here I saw a Bosjesman's bow, and quiver full of arrows, which I suppose were kept as trophies of some victory. The prince, however, said that they found it necessary to employ against these depredators the weapons which they themselves used, for that in any conflict with them, if their people were only armed with hassagais, they always came off with the worst; they now, therefore, kept the arms of such as were slain, though formerly, from their horror of such destructive weapons, it was a law among them that they were to be burnt.

Kok had talked to me so much of Pollachani's (the high-priest) knowledge of the planets, and of their courses, for every one of which he had his own peculiar name, that, notwithstanding the uncourteous reception we met with the day before, I was very desirous of repeating my visit. We found him in his cattle kraal, occupied in doing some repairs to the palisade. Over the entrance hung the hinder half of a scaly lizard, an animal not the least trace of which I had seen before in Southern Africa;\* and in the midst of the space lay an enormous bulb, which must have measured nearly a foot in diameter, probably of the *hæmanthus* or *ornithogalum* species. I would gladly, almost

---

\* *Manis gigantea*, or the *quogelo* of Desmarchais's Travels, now considered as a variety of the *manis brachyura* or *pentadactyla*, the true *pangolin* of Southern Asia. Hitherto this species was only known to us from the Coast of Guinea; it has never been brought from the Cape.

at the risk of my life, have carried off both, but Kok earnestly intreated me not to attempt it: they were charms, he said, by which the cattle were preserved from enchanters, and would not be parted with by the possessor at any price; he might perhaps even be offended with the mere proposal to traffic for them. We were in no way better received than the day before, and were obliged to wait a long time before the indifferent questions with which we began the conversation could obtain even a monosyllable answer. But when we began to ask about the stars, he observed the strictest silence, and gave us moreover to understand that our company was by no means agreeable to him.

From hence Kok carried me to another old man, who had equally the reputation of having great knowledge and experience, and whom I had already seen in the king's train. This man, in his early years, had taken repeated journeys to most of the other Beetjuan tribes, and furnished me with much information relative to the situation and distance of these people, the most important parts of which shall be given in their proper place. He gave the population of each tribe in comparison with that of Maatjaping, only when he spoke of the *Macquini*, the most remote of all, he dropped this medium; and to show that they were innumerable, took up a handful of sand, and let it run slowly through his fingers, repeating frequently, till his hand was emptied, *itzintzi*—much. The names of the tribes on the eastern coast, Koossa, Mathimba, Imbo, &c. were wholly unknown to him; and he was much surprised to hear that in manners and customs they were so much like the Beetjuans, yet were not called by their name.

On our return to the camp, we came to a house, the building of which was not yet completed: from this we could understand the manner in which they were put together much more clearly. None but women were employed in the building, for almost all the hard work is put upon them. Six of them will complete the building a house of the usual size in a week. The roof was very ingeniously woven together with reeds and rushes, without any other materials to bind them; the cross-beams were, however, fastened to the main posts with leather thongs, and string made from the fibres within the bark of the trees.

Among the many persons who were attracted to the camp by the spirit of traffic, was a man who brought two boys of eight and ten years old to sell as

slaves. They had fallen into his power, as infants, in a war some years before with the tribe of Chojaa, and as lawful booty were his slaves for ever; he had even full power over their lives. He demanded a live sheep for each, and added, that he wished very much to dispose of them, since he had nothing for them to eat, and he was afraid they would die with hunger. Very much surprised at this offer, and at hearing that all the servants of the rich were in like manner the property of their masters, being prisoners taken in battle, or their descendants, we shewed very plainly how revolting to us was the idea of such a traffic, and positively rejected the offer.\*

In the afternoon the throng increased exceedingly, yet the traffic went on much more heavily, for on the one hand our stock of tobacco was very much diminished, so that we were less willing to part with what remained ;

---

\* In the description of the Beetjuans, which I published in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides*, for the year 1807, I mentioned this propensity to traffic in slaves, as a consequence of the institutions of these people, and controverted Mr. Barrow's too hasty representation of their love of freedom, not a word of which is to be found in the original from the pen of Mr. Trüter. My opinion has since been confirmed, in the description given by the Englishman, Mr. William White, of the Caffre tribes in the neighbourhood of Da Lagoa Bay. He mentions, with much sympathy, the situation of those among these people who are the property of others, and adds:—"Though no advocate for the slave trade, yet I am sure that it would have been a christian-like act to have purchased some of the slaves offered to us for the immense price of a bottle of rum, or arrack. They were perfectly destitute of every sort of clothing, and had no food given them. I enquired how they could possibly subsist. *Same as bullock*, was the answer given me by one of the natives: he added, that in time of scarcity they themselves were obliged to eat grass." Probably the slave trade owed its origin in the first instance as much to the hard situation of those who traded in the slaves, as to the cupidity of the European purchasers; and I do not hesitate to assert, that a very accurate knowledge of the institutions of the people in the interior of Southern Africa is requisite, before the question can be decided whether the sudden abolition of this traffic is desirable even for the poor slaves themselves: were it abolished, the lives of the prisoners taken in battle would not be spared as they are now. For the rest, I am very far from denying, that this traffic is a disgrace both to the buyer and seller; and I am perfectly of opinion that the ill usage experienced by the slaves in their transport on board the ships is a terrible stain upon the character of every nation that can be reproached with it—a blot in the history of human nature itself. I believe, notwithstanding, that the situation of the slaves in the East Indian colonies, and at the Cape, where they are much better treated than in the West Indies, is happier than that of the servants hired from among the people of the country.

and on the other, we were now pretty amply provided with the articles for which the traffic had been commenced. Among the few things that I wished earnestly to possess was a pair of dice, if so they might be called, which one of the most distinguished among them wore fastened to a leather thong round his neck. I say, *if they might be called dice*, because, though they were employed much in the same way, the form of the objects in question was not cubical like that of a die; they had the figure of equal sided pyramids, and were cut out of the cloven foot of an antelope, being stuck upon small thin quadrangular plates of the same material. The use of these things, as I learned, was to determine, when any thing of importance was to be undertaken, whether it would terminate happily or not. But few persons, the priests only, as far as I could collect, know how to prepare them; they descend as an inheritance in families, and the more ancient they are, the greater reliance may be placed on their prophetic spirit. In order to see how they were used, I intreated the owner to tell me whether our journey would be happily ended or not. He immediately bent himself down on one knee, smoothed the ground with his hand, and then held the dice between the points of his fingers, one in each hand, and after making several movements with his hands up and down, and pronouncing some incomprehensible words, threw them on the ground. He then bent himself down, appeared to examine very carefully the situation of each, and their direction towards each other; and, in about two minutes, pronounced that we should reach home without any accident. My very great desire to possess these magical objects made me not object to the high price required for them, and, after purchasing two young oxen with some beads and knives, I gave the oxen for my dice; recollecting, as a balance against this somewhat unreasonable bargain, many other very equal ones which I had concluded.

We received also another visit this day from the king, who wanted to see some specimens of our dexterity in shooting. Accordingly, a mark being set up, some of our marksmen, with their best pieces, took their aim in his presence, and hit it very happily. He expressed very great astonishment, but begged that the experiment might not be renewed, as the noise of the gun was very disagreeable to him. The general expression of astonishment among the spectators was a short O, O, often repeated. I never heard any of them whistle, as the Koossas do, when they would express astonishment.

In order to afford us a new species of entertainment, the king ordered some men and women to dance before us: this was performed in the same way as among the Koossas, and was in like manner accompanied with a disagreeable howling kind of singing. All the men dancers wore an ornament upon their heads, which had really a good effect. It was a sort of wreath of porcupine's quills, standing erect, which, being taken from the neck of the animal, where they are the longest and the most pliant, waved backwards and forwards not ungracefully with the various movements of the head. Night coming on, put an end both to business and amusements, and in a short time all our guests quitted us.

It was somewhat extraordinary, that notwithstanding the abundant opportunities afforded for stealing, and the impossibility of keeping all our things out of the way, or watching them, that scarcely any thing was ever missed, except now and then some pieces of meat or other articles of food. A trifling piece of deceit, which I myself experienced in the course of this day, was almost the only one of which they were guilty towards us. I had given a woman a little piece of tobacco in exchange for an ivory ring, when another, who was standing by, and who had for some time been begging for a little tobacco very earnestly, and who saw two more pieces in my hand, again urged my giving them to her as a present. I, however, represented that it would be unjust, when I had required payment from the other woman, to let her have any gratuitously; but if she would give the same price I was ready to part with my tobacco. An ivory ring was immediately produced by her, which I put in my pocket, and paid her for it; this was no sooner done than a third was offered me, for which I gave my last piece of tobacco. I now withdrew from the crowd, in possession, as I supposed, of my three rings, but when I examined my pocket I found only one: it had been twice taken thence for the purpose of being resold to me.

Kök, who had accompanied the king a little way, soon returned, and told us that his majesty had been making a serious proposal, that we should enter into a solemn league with him against Makrakki, and had commissioned him to inquire upon what conditions we would be willing to support him with horses and fire-arms in an attack upon his enemy. This proposal occasioned us to hold a very earnest consultation whether it would be expedient to make a longer stay in this place, and what plans should be pursued for the remainder of our journey. I was very eager for proceeding farther to the north, and

proposed to leave the tribes to the west, who were likely to be involved in war, wholly out of the question, and direct our course northwards to Chojaa and Thamacha. From thence we might return through the yet untracked country of the Corans, crossing the Orange river in some other part, passing over the Snow-Mountains, and through Graaff-Reynett again to the Cape-Town. This plan, however, was controverted by my otherwise adventurous colleague, the Landdrost, who gave reasons for his opinion, to the importance of which I found myself, alas! compelled to yield. Our cattle were exhausted and enfeebled to a very great degree, particularly the horses, most of which we must leave behind us: there was little reason to hope that we should find better food for them farther northwards; indeed, all the best information we had been able to obtain, gave us reason to expect directly the contrary. Farther, our stock of powder, as well as provisions, wine, brandy, and vinegar, were all so diminished, that at the utmost the remainder could not last more than three weeks: our waggons were, moreover, exceedingly out of repair, and our people for a considerable time had been weary, and longing to measure back their steps. The principal objects of our journey, he farther urged, were already attained, and the views of our government would perhaps be better promoted by communicating with the utmost possible expedition the information already procured, than by setting our lives farther to the hazard. Had our stock of powder and other necessaries been greater, and the strength of some of the horses been more restored, I should perhaps have continued my researches, accompanied by some Hottentots, or, I might even have trusted to the aid of the Beetjuans alone, leaving the Landdrost and the rest of the company to return without me; but the reasons against any of us proceeding farther were too weighty to be resisted. Had I not yielded, the political occurrences which soon after took place at the Cape, might, perhaps, have made me grievously repent my obstinacy.

## CHAP. LI.

*Departure from the Beetjuan Country.—The Fountain of Klaborugani.—Information concerning the Beetjuan Tribes.—Their Modes of Life, Cloathing, and Ornaments.—Their Institutions, their Manner of making War, and various other Particulars.*

OUR return being resolved on, it was thought expedient that it should take place as soon as possible, before the good understanding hitherto so fortunately maintained with these people should have time to receive interruption. On the following morning, therefore, the preparations for our departure were commenced; in particular, the repairs to our waggons, which had gone on very slowly, were hastened by every means in our power. In this the Beetjuans, who are, many of them, very expert smiths, were of great assistance to us. Two of these people were hired, for wages agreed upon, and performed their work with a celerity which appeared scarcely credible to our people, considering the imperfect nature of their tools. The most essential part of their work was to shorten the iron bands of the wheels, which from the drying of the wood had become too large, and were very loose. For this purpose they made a sort of pile of wood embers, and to keep them alive used bellows made of a couple of goat-skins, very similar to those already described as used by the Koossas: they had heavy iron hammers, which had a sharpened side that served as an axe; instead of tongs, they had only two thick pieces of stick, with which they took up the hot iron, and for an anvil they used a large block of stone. Notwithstanding so many impediments, the work was finished before evening.

The day was passed amid a variety of business, in making many visits, and in collecting and noting down all the information that could be procured relative to the situation, manners, and customs, of these people. Towards evening I visited the king, accompanied by Kok, to intimate to him that it was impossible for us to comply with his wishes, the want of many necessaries, and the strict injunctions of our government, requiring our speedy return. He appeared more struck with this than with our declining the support he had requested, and gave us very clearly to understand that he

suspected there were other motives for our departure besides those we had acknowledged. He should have been very happy, he said, in our longer stay, that he might have formed a closer connexion with us, even if we would not have taken any part in the war—it was scarcely worth having travelled so far, if we would not stay some weeks with him—it was mortifying that we should depart before he had time to know us well, and enter into a strict friendship with us. Although in my heart I was very much of his opinion, to please my impatient companions I was obliged to urge the necessity of our departure, and endeavour by all sorts of pretences to make it comprehensible to him, and prepare him for our somewhat sudden disappearance. This at least seemed to me more adviseable than wholly to conceal our intentions, which perhaps would have created in his mind injurious suspicions with respect to our real views, and would consequently have been very prejudicial to any future travellers who should happen to visit the country. My companions, however, were much displeas'd with me, and said that we must set off the next morning by break of day, else it was very probable that the king would detain us by force. I did, notwithstanding, prevail so far as that Kok was sent early in the morning to announce that we were actually going.

In the mean time all our preparations were made, so that we were ready to decamp the moment Kok returned from his mission; but, to our shame be it spoken, we were, on this occasion, outdone in politeness by the savages, for with Kok came the princes Methibe and Molimo to take leave of us, and make apologies from their father that he could not visit us himself. He would gladly, they said, have come to our camp to see us once more, with many of his people, who were all extremely surprised and concerned at our hasty departure. The princes got into one of our waggons to accompany us a little way, as they should like, they said, to go in such a house. They then took a most cordial leave of us, reminding Kok that he was expected to return speedily, and stay in the country.

About noon we reached the place, where, at our entrance, we had seen the first Beetjuans, and learned that it was called Segonjana, from a little stream that flows through it. As the source of the Kuruhman, a very copious spring which bursts out in the open field, was not far from hence, we now went to visit it. When we had followed the stream upwards for a

little way, we came to a mass of rock, twenty or five-and-twenty feet in height, below which the water rushed out as from a sluice, forming immediately a stream sufficient to bear small boats. Two free standing natural pillars, on which rests the margin of the cleft, divide the cavern into three dark chambers. Some lanterns which we had with us lighted us into the cavern, from the arch of which hung abundance of stalactites, some as much as a foot and a half in length. The farther we went, the greater was the noise and rushing of the water, and the more difficult it was to get on over the slippery stalactitic masses under our feet. We besides felt such real inconvenience from the extreme cold, that we judged it better to return, and not explore any further.

Kok told us that sometimes an enormous serpent was seen about the entrance to this cavern, at which his Hottentots had once fired, without, however, doing it any injury. It was fortunate, he said, for them that they had not killed it, since the Beetjuans consider it as a sacred animal, and assert, that in case of its death, the water of the river, on which they depend for drink for their cattle, would all be dried up. If the Hottentots had injured this aquatic deity, it is very probable that their lives might have answered the offence. This spring, which bears the name of Klaborugani, is celebrated far and near in the Beetjuan country. Kok imagines that the water rises originally in the mountains which lie at a distance in the south-east, and runs for many miles in a subterranean channel: he assured us that three days' journey down the river it loses itself under-ground, and six hours farther comes forth again in much the same way as here.

While we were stopping at this spring, some Beetjuans from Segonjana, who were holding our horses to drink, seized one of our white slaves, and wanted to have washed him by main force, as they could not be convinced that the colour of his skin was natural: they were persuaded it must be rubbed over with something. They indeed firmly believed that we were all as brown as themselves, but had dyed our bodies white. We were soon separated from these last of our friends among the Beetjuans, and pursued our way over the plain. Before we quitted it we cut down a large giraffe-tree, that we might carry a good block of this excellent wood as a present to the Governor. As night was setting in, we reached the hill which forms the boundary of the Beetjuan country. Before I proceed, however, to

a narrative of occurrences during the remainder of our journey, I must give an abstract of what I could collect during our short stay respecting the customs, manners, and institutions of the Beetjuans;—of such particulars at least as have not been given in the foregoing details.\*

The observations which I have made in my first volume,† upon the universal character of the great Caffre nations, taken collectively, answer perfectly to the particular tribe now in question: what is there said of the bodily structure of the Koossas, of their colour, of the growth of their hair, &c. &c. will equally serve to describe the Beetjuans. The great differences observable between the two nations, and which are chiefly to the advantage of the latter, consist in the more durable construction of their houses, the greater art displayed in making their weapons, their clothes, and their household utensils, the higher respect in which their princes are held, and the greater permanency of their establishments. The Koossa is more rough and warlike, more fiery in his disposition and in his actions; the Beetjuan is more industrious and persevering, more disposed to a quiet life, to cultivate the peaceable arts of husbandry; in the latter indeed

---

\* In the year 1801, the expedition of the two English commissaries, Trüter and Somerville, which has been already many times alluded to, was undertaken by order of the then government at the Cape. This was the first regular expedition ever dispatched from the Cape to the Beetjuan country; and Mr. Barrow, in the account of his travels to Cochinchina, has given many particulars with regard to it from the journal of Mr. Trüter, his father-in-law: hence the public attention was first led towards this nation. Trüter's journal was also put into my hands by the Dutch government, when I was about to undertake the present journey; and I found it of much use, as furnishing hints for my observations and inquiries. At my return to Europe, Mr. Barrow's abstract of this journal was well known in Germany: a translation of it appeared in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides* for February and March, 1807, and in the number for May, of the same work, I published my account, in order to correct and complete the former from the hands of Mr. Barrow and Mr. Trüter. I have therefore thought it unnecessary here to refer to what has been said by these my meritorious precursors, and have confined myself to giving such other particulars as arose out of the adventures of the journey, and are connected with the description already given of the Koossa tribe. It is consequently very far from being my intention to represent the earlier work alluded to as useless and superfluous, on the contrary many things which I pass slightly over are there more amply explained, and the work may be earnestly recommended to the attention of all who take an interest in the Beetjuan nation.

† See the English translation, Vol. I. part III. chap. 18.

he is much more experienced than the Koossa. These different propensities are even distinguishable in the exterior. Among the Beetjuans, few men are to be found of so great bodily size and strength as among the Koossas; few with the same daring and determined countenances. The physiognomy of the Beetjuan has in it something mild and engaging; the women in particular are far handsomer and more interesting than the Koossa women. The nation appears milder and more gentle, or, perhaps, we should rather say, that the others, from being molested in a greater degree by enemies from without, from being less united among themselves, from inhabiting, besides, the mountainous regions of the coast, may have imbibed more rugged manners, and have fallen behind them some steps in civilization. That they have the same origin, appears in nothing more clearly than in the striking conformity between all the principal radical words of both languages. This is so striking, that I cannot suppose, but that a Koossa and a Beetjuan, meeting by chance, must understand each other ultimately, though perhaps slowly. The experiment is perhaps not very likely to be made, since neither nation knows any thing of the other: the inhospitable nature of the country north of the Orange river has—at least such seems the probable way of accounting for their total ignorance, even of each other's existence—the nature of that country is the probable cause which has hitherto kept them strangers, and this is an impediment not likely soon, if ever, to be removed.

Under the name of *Beetjuana*, *Sihtjuana*, or *Muhtjuana*, are to be included all the tribes that inhabit the country which extends from the river Kuruhmaa, as its most southern boundary, thirty or forty days' journey northwards; several tribes inhabiting this latitude, extend quite to the eastern coast of Africa. To the west, the same latitude is inhabited by tribes of Hottentots, as the Namaaquas and Dammaras; while a part of the country to the Orange river is the abode of the Coran Hottentots.

The principal tribes among the Beetjuans, as far as I could learn, are:

1. That of Maatjaping, the nation which we visited, containing a population of not more than five thousand souls: to these people the following description will principally refer.

2. The tribe of Thammacha, ten days' journey to the eastward of Maatjaping, a much more numerous tribe, divided into several villages, and governed by several regularly established chiefs.

3. Chojaa, to the north-east of the former, and, like that, but little connected with Maatjaping; known, however, to be exceedingly populous.

4. Still more remote, directly to the north of Chojaa, lie the Muchuruhzi: they are governed by the bravest of all the Beetjuan kings, Sebochori.

5. The Wanketsi, three strong days' journey to the south-west of the Muchuruhzi, whose king is named Muranmuleta. This is the weakest of all the Beetjuan tribes.

6. One day's journey nearer to Maatjaping, and south-west of the Wanketsi, is one half of the tribe of Muruhlong, governed by two chiefs, Mašjouw and Lessomo.

7. The other half of Muruhlong, governed by king Makrakki. Some time back, this half tribe separated itself from the former, and united with that of Maatjaping, during which, the two lived together at the well of Takuna. A few years ago, this community being dissolved, the half tribe of Muruhlong turned northwards, and settled in the country it now inhabits, upon the river Setaabi: its population is estimated at ten thousand souls.

8. To the west of them live the Matsaraquas, a peaceable tribe, whose chief is called Keissi. They inhabit a part of the banks of the Kuruhman, which is here increased from the union of many other streams.

9. The most numerous tribe of all, that is the Macquini, are quite to the north-east, beyond the Muchuruhzi. It is from these people that the other Caffre tribes receive their metals: they are reported to be dug out of a vast mountain, one side of which yields iron, the other copper. These people are equally known to the Koossas and the Beetjuans, both calling them by the same name: it is the most distant, and the most important country known to both. They procure from it hassagais, knives, needles, earrings, and arm-rings, in exchange for which they give cattle. But this is not an immediate traffic: it passes through four or five hands.

All these tribes speak the same language, and their modes of life, customs, and manners, vary little from each other, as to the most essential points. The neighbouring tribes are generally at enmity one with another: the remote, more or less known to each other, are often united against those that lie in the centre. None but the sons of the kings, particularly the heir-apparent, are employed as ambassadors, by which means the chiefs have always the most extensive knowledge of the country. Till John Bloom's

appearance, it was a generally received opinion here, that the notion of white men—and rumours that such did exist, had reached them from the east, particularly through the Macquini—the notion that such people did exist was till then treated by them as a mere fable. Makrakki, who often expressed a wish to see a white man, and was ridiculed for his credulity, triumphed not a little when one actually appeared.

The principal wealth of the country consists in the breeding of cattle. Their herds are much more numerous than those of the Koossas, and they have as great a veneration for them. One man alone will sometimes be the owner of eight or ten considerable herds, each herd being of a different colour, and differently marked from the other. The attendance upon the herds is also here exclusively the business of the men. Milk, whey, and cheese, are the favourite food of these people. The chase, besides, affords them a variety of food; nor is there any sort of wild animal wholly rejected by them; even beasts of prey, when killed, are in case of necessity eaten. They do not even abstain from the hyenas, as the Koossas do, because in that country these animals eat the dead bodies. But among the Beetjuans, this is not the case: there the dying are not exposed, and the dead are buried quietly in the cattle kraals, without the habitation being thereby rendered impure, or any necessity of quitting it being imposed on the owners. There are only certain ceremonies of mourning, which the nearest relations must observe, and which are very similar to those among the Koossas: when these are accomplished, they appear again in society as usual. I never heard of the chase being preceded by any solemnities, or that any particular honours are paid to the conqueror of a beast of prey. Next to their cattle, nothing is so much valued among them as the goat: they like its milk exceedingly, as well as the flesh of the young kids; but the great value of the animal consists in its skin, of which they make fine leather for the under garments and for aprons. The breed of goats is not large; the horns are small; the hair shining, and the colour in general white, with black, brown, or bluish spots. There are no sheep in the country, though the people love the flesh of this animal, which is but lately known to them, exceedingly.

They pay much more attention to agriculture than the Caffres: their fields are commonly fenced round, and they cultivate, besides the Caffre-millet, two sorts of beans, gourds, and water-melons; all, as it should seem, of new

sorts, which have never yet been described. The women alone are employed in husbandry: iron spades are used for digging the ground. The harvest is got in very carefully, and the corn is laid by, as store for the winter months. The fruits of many sorts of trees that grow wild are also collected, and dried for winter stores. Fish, and amphibious animals, are universally held in abhorrence as food, being considered as unclean. They have even a dread of meddling with them in any way; accordingly, when I visited the spring at Klaborugani, the water swarmed with fish.

The Beetjuans drink water very unwillingly, preferring much to quench their thirst with the juice of the water-melon and other fruits, or with milk and whey: the milk is brought from the fields where the cattle graze, in a sort of vessels made of goat skins. The practice which prevails among the Koossas, of extracting a sort of spirit from their corn by fermentation, is here wholly unknown: the people are, however, very fond of wine and brandy, when they come in their way. Salt, properly speaking, they have none; instead of it, they make use of natron, or the ashes of a certain salt succulent plant: their favourite mode of dressing their meat is to roast it in the ashes.

Skins of animals, tanned with great nicety, are the only materials of which their cloathing is made: the poor wear antelope-skins entire, but the rich wear cloaks of the finer skins of jackals, of gerboas, of wild cats, and others, neatly joined together, the value of which depends greatly upon their size. The hairy side is always worn inwards, but the cape, which is made of the skin from the heads of the animals sewed together, always falls back over the shoulder, and the skins of the feet are made into a border below. There are no armholes to the cloak; it is fastened over the breast with two strips of leather, so that it can be turned over either side of the body where it is most wanted, as a defence against the sun and weather. When not in motion, the cloak is often thrown quite behind, that the arms may be left the more at liberty, though very little gesticulation is used in conversation.

The nakedness which sometimes shocks so much among the Koossas is never to be complained of here: the Beetjuans are extremely modest, even among each other. It has been already mentioned, that both with men and women, the greater part of the body is covered: the women wear several aprons, one over the other; the inner one has a number of strips of leather sewed to the bottom, forming a sort of fringe, which moving about as

they walk, keeps the flies from their legs. Both sexes wear necklaces of little plates of metal, rushes, or the bones of animals, as amulets; it is also not uncommon to wear the caul of a fresh slain ox tied round the neck, and to let it remain there till it falls off of itself. The double-bladed knives, in wooden cases, which they make themselves, or their bodkins, with tortoise-shells, and little bags, containing a variety of trifles, like the pockets of an European, are also worn hanging from the neck. Rings of ivory, of which, among the Koossas, a certain number only could be worn, and that solely by persons of the royal family, because all the elephants' teeth are the king's property: such rings are very common among the Beetjuans, but they are scarcely ever worn any where, excepting on the lower part of the arm, between the elbow and wrist. The making these rings is very tedious; for although they are mere parallel circles, cut from the hollow part of the elephant's tusk, yet as the use of the saw is unknown, they would not be able to cut them through, but for a method they have discovered of softening the ivory. They let it lie for some days in sour milk, by which it becomes so soft, that it may be cut with a knife; the operation is, however, performed very slowly, and not without a great deal of trouble.

Much more extraordinary is it, that these people should have found the means of making elastic rings of brass-wire. This wire is flat, being beat with a hammer till it is made thin to a degree almost incredible, and which cannot be accomplished but at an immense expense of labour. I should think that they must have received the first idea of such a manufacture through the medium of the commercial intercourse subsisting between the people on the eastern coast, and the Europeans. They shewed me some pieces half prepared, by which I perceived that they could not make any above a foot in length, so that the rings cannot be composed of one entire piece; they must be bound together at certain distances with a thicker piece of wire. The poorer Beetjuans wear heavy copper rings\*, and those who

---

\* It is worthy of remark, that the chief physician, Klaproth, having examined one of these rings, found the metal of which it was made to consist of ninety-three parts of copper, and seven of tin; consequently, that it was very much the same as caldaric ore. As no mineral containing tin has yet been found in Southern Africa, it is very probable that these rings come farther northwards, and perhaps in some of the former wanderings of the Caffres were brought hither.

cannot afford even them, wear leather ones, cut whole out of the skin of the rhinoceros or the river-horse. Only old people have caps on their heads: they are made of skins sewed together, with the rough side worn inwards. Young men and women go with the head bare, the hair being rubbed over with the shining ointment, and made up into little bunches. Here is, consequently, a difference between the Beetjuans and Koossas, since among the latter the women never appear with their heads uncovered.

For what concerns their diseases, and their superstitious modes of curing them, the physical education of their children, the usual length of their lives, the ceremonies in contracting and celebrating their marriages, they are, with some very slight deviations, the same as among the Koossas, to which, therefore, the reader may be referred.

The power of the chief or king among the Beetjuans is much more extended than among the Koossas. This is a natural consequence of their having permanent habitations, which renders the means employed with so much effect by those more wandering tribes to resist all encroachments in power on the part of the prince impracticable. The king of the Beetjuans has nearly uncircumscribed power, since he can punish all offences according to his own pleasure, and no one has any right to oppose his decisions. He seldom, however, exercises his power, for there is no positive law of which the king can be regarded as the executor. Single combats for the possession of property, or against acts of oppression, take place before the king, without his interfering in them in any way, even though they should be carried on to the death of the parties. If, however, a complaint be laid before him, and his judgment be requested, he takes the matter up very warmly; and the missionaries have seen examples when he has scourged some of his subjects almost to death for robberies committed by them. He is himself the executor of his own sentence, even when the criminal is condemned to death, which is the constant punishment of any one who has betrayed the cause of his country in war. The mode of execution is, that the criminal is laid upon the ground, and the king thrusts him through with a *hassagai*. The title of the chief is *Murina*—lord; a word strongly resembling *Murimo*, which expresses the Godhead. He has no other outward mark of distinction, but the people have a certain veneration for his person, and for every thing about him. He receives, as a tribute, the breast and tongue of every ox killed, and of every

animal taken in the chase. He has, besides, a right to all the elephants' teeth, and to the skins of all leopards and lions taken by his subjects; yet he seldom uses these skins for cloathing. His counsellors are chosen by him from among the richest and most distinguished of his people: he commonly takes their counsel on the subject of peace or war, though he has himself full power to regulate all the relations of the exterior by his sole will. His sons are born leaders of the armies, and ambassadors; and the eldest is the heir to the throne. The tribe of Maatjaping has been governed by the ancestors of the present king from time immemorial. There is a species of nobility among the Beetjuans, which is derived from the wealth and distinction of their ancestors, and from relationship with the family of the chief.

In their wars, they observe the same proceedings as the Koossas, and in the negociations which precede and accompany the breaking out of hostilities the utmost openness and contempt of all chicane or deceit is manifest; a proof of innate rectitude, and consciousness of natural strength. Their weapons differ very little from those of the Koossas, only that the hassagais are of better workmanship; the blade has commonly two points on the back, and the inner shaft is jagged at the edge. The shields are scarcely half so large as the Koossas' shields, but the kirris, on the contrary, are longer in the handle.

A singular custom prevails here not to be found among the Koossas. After a successful war, a festival of triumph is held, of which every warrior who has killed an adversary partakes. As a proof of his achievements, he must bring a piece of flesh from the person he has killed, with the skin cut from the body, having the navel in it. The priest collects the heroes by night in an enclosed place, with a low fence round it: here no man enters who cannot produce this piece of flesh; the rest of the men, with the women, remain on the outside as spectators. The warriors range themselves round a large fire, stick the piece of flesh into the glowing embers, and when it is sufficiently roasted, eat it. This custom is not the result of any cannibal ideas, but arises from an ancient superstition, that eating human flesh inspires courage, and by degrees makes the warrior invincible; so far, however, are the people from considering this repast with delight, that most of them feel a sort of abhorrence of it, and yield to it only from superstition. But the ceremony does not end here. The priest now takes a sharp hassagai,

with which he makes a long cut in the skin of each warrior, from the hip down to the knee, which, for the remainder of his life, is a palpable token of his heroism. Notwithstanding this wound, the festival concludes with a dance, which is often continued till sun-rise. One of the king's old counsellors had no less than eleven of these cuts in his thigh, and I saw several men with five or six.

Kok, in relating this custom to me, mentioned a circumstance which I afterwards heard fully confirmed by Koster and Janssen, as equally eye-witnesses of it. A few weeks before our arrival, a horde of Bosjesmans had been attacked by the Beetjuans, with such a superiority of numbers on their part, that many of the combatants must necessarily return without the requisite testimony of their valour. One of them, who, however, was well-known to be far from deficient in bravery, was so mortified at the idea of being excluded from the festival, that, no longer master of himself, he ran home, killed one of his own bondsmen, and carried away the proper trophy as a passport for his admission. Kok added, that this was the only instance in which he ever saw a Beetjuan weep: rage had forced the tears from his eyes, before he thought of having recourse to the above horrible expedient. The deed, for the rest, was never condemned; it was rather applauded as an ingenious device: a proof that the life of prisoners taken in war is at the absolute disposal of the conquerors, and is considered as a present whenever spared. These bondsmen are regarded, indeed, as a separate class of people, and are called Mutjanka; no other servants are included under this appellation, only the prisoners of war.

But among the most remarkable superstitions of the Beetjuans, is the consecration of their cattle by the priest, before they go to war. By this ceremony, these animals, the possession of which is often the subject of the contest, are secured against the enchantments of the enemy, and even against all danger of being forcibly carried away by him. This consecration consists in the priest's taking each animal individually, as it is brought to him, and painting a particular mark upon its hind leg, with a jackal's tail dipped in a kind of black paint. This he performs kneeling, pronouncing at the same time certain mysterious words, during which, another person, kneeling behind him, repeats the same mark with a little brush upon his back or arms. Among their most common charms, is to put round the necks of their

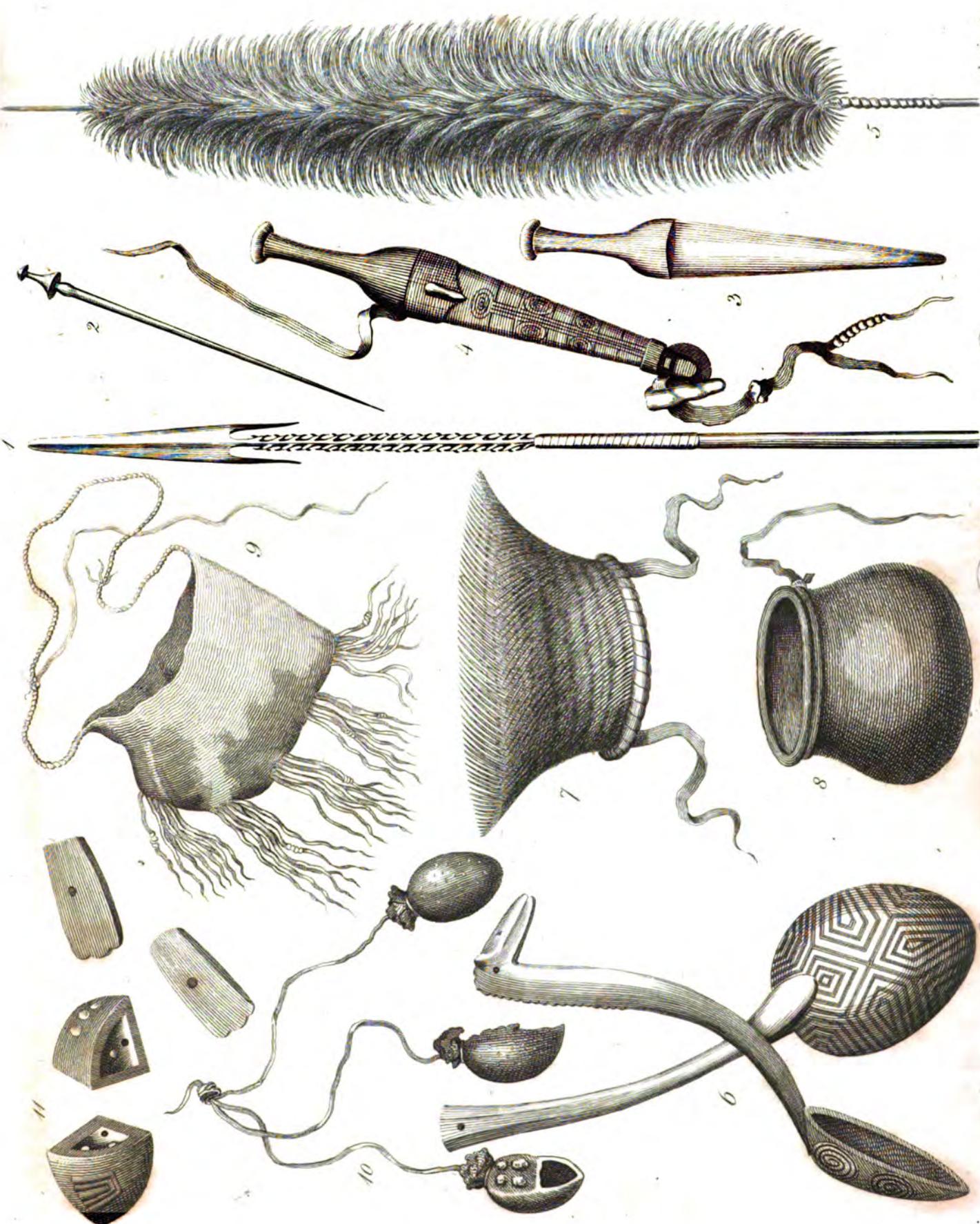
children a number of the shells of a large beetle, the *brachycerus apterus*, strung on a little strip of leather. This is believed to be an effectual preventative of certain diseases, particularly to facilitate the cutting of the teeth.\*

Their ideas with respect to the deity are not much clearer than those of the Koossas. They venerate an invisible Being, whom they call Murimo, as the cause of all appearances in nature, and the origin of all the good and evil that happens to them, without any act of their own. They are not, however, agreed among themselves whether this being is an entirely beneficent or malevolent being; and if on the one hand they thank him for any good received, they never hesitate to shew their indignation at any ill experienced, or any wish unaccomplished, by the most bitter curses. They have no religious worship, and could never be persuaded by the missionaries that this was a thing pleasing to God. Of their language I shall treat in a separate Appendix: I now return to our journey.†

\* A representation of these shells is given in *Edwards's Natural History of Birds*, Vol. IV. Table 178. He obtained one from a friend, who brought it from the island of Madagascar, and supposes that they are used by the Caffres as a sort of whistle to call their herds together.

† The annexed plate represents various objects of ornament and household utensils, with other things particularly worthy of note among the Beetjuans.

1. A hassagai, of a form very much in use among them. The blade, terminating at the back in two points, and the jagged shaft, render it a much more formidable weapon than the hassagais of the Koossas. A part of the handle only is here given: the whole weapon is seven feet in length, always tapering towards the end.
2. An iron bodkin, used for boring the holes in the skins that are to be sewed together; also used in weaving rushes; and as a chirurgical instrument: it is worn frequently hanging to a strip of leather round the neck.
3. The double edged knife, made by the Beetjuans.
4. The wooden sheath to the knife, having the figures burnt upon it, and the leather straps affixed, by which it is hung round the neck. A piece of hard wood for whetting it, and some copper rings, as ornaments, are attached to the leather.
5. A fan of ostrich feathers used by Mulibawang to keep off the flies; a present to me from the king's own hand. The poorer people use a jackal's tail fixed to a stick for the same purpose. Both are also employed to wipe the sweat from the face.
6. Beetjuan spoons, made of mimosa wood, with figures burnt upon them. The handles are sometimes made to represent the head and neck of a giraffe, or of some bird, and are remarkable as the first essays of an uncivilized nation in the art of sculpture.
7. The head-dress of a dancer, made of porcupine's quills, as described in page 318.



Household Utensils, Ornaments, and Weapons of the Boeyman.

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

8. A pot made of dark red clay, hardened in the sun: instead of a handle, a leather strap is fastened to the brim.

9. A leather bag, worn slung round the neck, for keeping various trifles. The women wear it very commonly hanging on the arm. The tufts of strips of leather are attached to it as ornaments.

10. An amulet of the shells of beetles, as described in page 332.

11. The magical dice made of the cloven feet of antelopes, as described in page 317. I could not learn the signification of the figures carved on the outside: one is not unlike the double Hebrew *schin*, a sign to which great consequence was attached by the Jewish priests, and which, in common with many other things in the customs, manners, and modes of life, among these people, reminds us very much of the ancient eastern nations. The antiquarian would perhaps find in these dice the *tali* and *astragali* of the ancients.

## CHAP. LII.

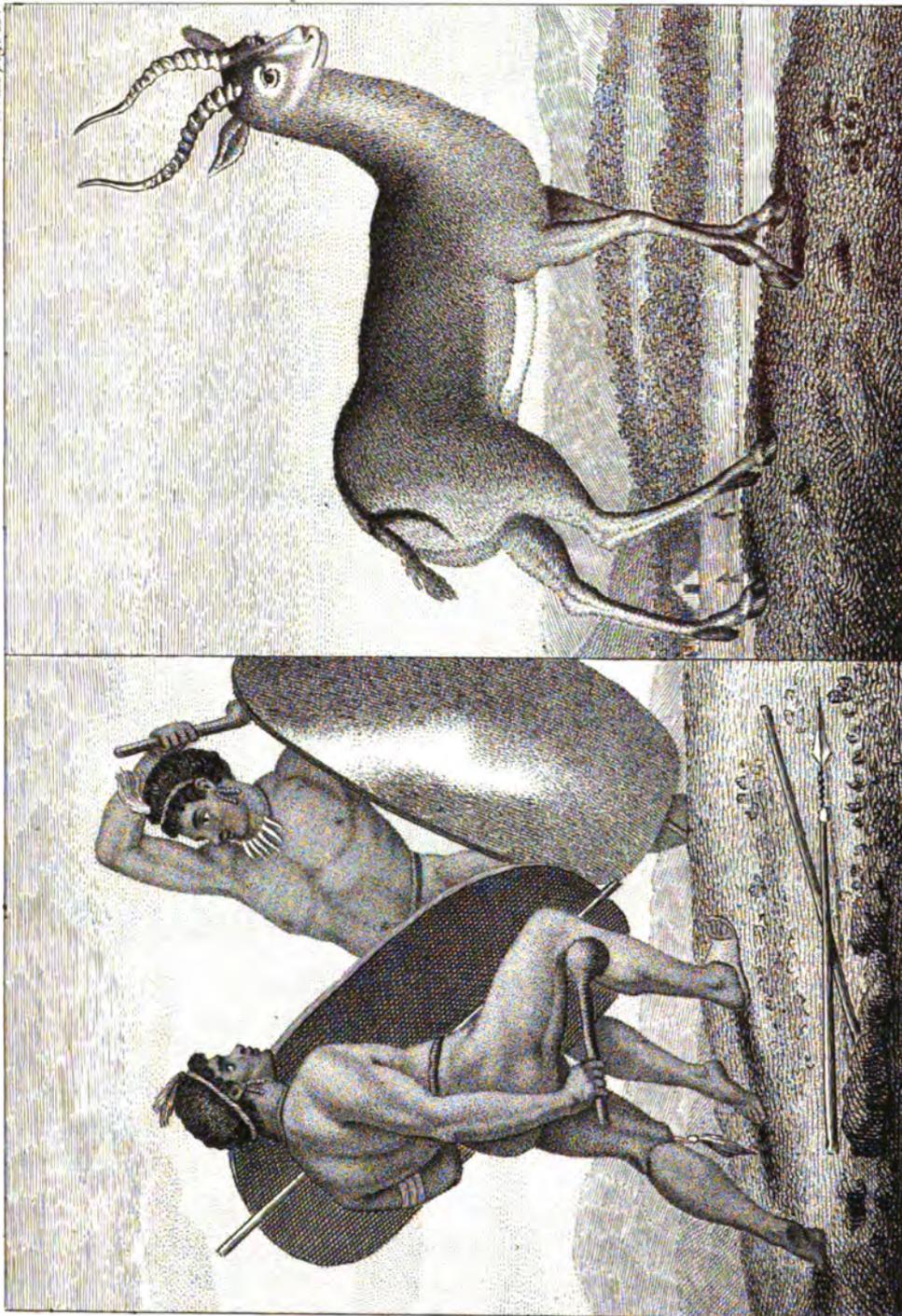
*Return to the Colony, amidst various Hardships and Privations.—The Author obliged to abandon his favourite Horse.—The Travellers joined by two young Beetjuans.—Some of the party ill with eating Bulbs.—The Dancing and Music of the Corans.—Dangers in repassing the Orange River.—The Red Ebony Tree.—Fruitless Endeavours to shoot River-Horses, and to catch Gerboas.—Baviunbak.—Eruptive Disorder among the Cattle.—Sufferings of the Travellers from Wet and Cold.—The Leeuwenfontein.—The Silurus Anguillaris.—The African Wild-Goose, and its remarkable Nest.—Small-pox among the Bastard Hottentots.—Arrival again at the Sack River.—Extraordinary Train of Caterpillars.—The Roggeveld.—The Karroo.—Arrival at Tulbagh.*

ON the morning of the second day, we arrived again in the valley of Koossi, having by the way chased several giraffes and antelopes: some of the latter were killed. We also met a flock of that beautiful species of antelope, hitherto unknown to me, which is called by the Beetjuans *p'halla*, but to which I gave the name of *antelope melampus*. We were so fortunate as to kill a very fine male, of which the annexed plate is a faithful delineation. This animal is particularly distinguished by the strikingly disproportionate size of its beautiful angular horns, by a black stripe down the back, which from the root of the tail spreads out on each side in the form of a crescent over the thigh, and by the brilliant black spots upon the outside of the knee and heel. The colour of the back is a chesnut brown, which towards the neck softens into a reddish yellow; about the eyes and under the chin the animal is white. The brown of the back also softens into the same reddish yellow, as it approaches the belly: the belly itself is white. The length of the animal, from the tip of the nose to the end of the tail, is about five feet and a half. Its height in front to the tip of the shoulder is about three feet.\*

On the second day, the fifth of July, in the evening, we arrived at the Klipfontein, where we experienced a pretty severe degree of cold. From this, our oxen and horses, already extremely exhausted, and for whom in the

---

\* With the plate of this animal is given that of two Caffres fighting with the kirri, which by mistake was omitted in the first volume.



*Antelope Melampus,  
or Phalla.*

*Caffres fighting with  
the Hurri.*

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR, LENOX  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

latter days but a very scanty supply of food could be procured, suffered so much, that several from weakness and lameness could go no farther, and we were obliged to leave them behind. Among them was my best horse, from whom I parted with sincere grief of heart, thinking of the faithful services I had received from him, and the melancholy fate to which he was abandoned. Notwithstanding this, I could not resolve to put an end to his life, especially as my companions persuaded me, that here, where some few small green plants were growing, which would serve him as food, he might recover. I afterwards reproached myself exceedingly with this mistaken feeling of compassion, this want of a little resolution, convinced that he must soon have been discovered by the Bosjesmans, at whose hands he would doubtless receive a death of tortures, instead of the mild one he would have found from mine.

Indeed, the melancholy situation of our cattle, on whose account we had even more to apprehend from the cold than from want of food, called upon us very urgently to hasten our journey as much as possible. Nor this circumstance alone—the state of our provisions, our wine, and other objects of the first necessity, as well as our small remaining stock of powder, all concurred to excite in us an almost painful longing once more to reach an inhabited country. We therefore generally travelled by night, leaving our oxen time to rest and feed in the day. In this manner, we arrived, on the eighth of July, at Ongeluksfontein, having in the night passed by the grave of the Hottentot Jantje. Here again the Bosjesmans had taken up the body and mangled it; we only found some of the limbs strewed about, which had been torn off either by the savages or the hyenas: these we collected, and replaced them in the grave, which was still open, covering it over hastily with stones.

Leaving Leeuwenkuil on our left, we came by a shorter way to Witwater, where we rested for a day with the Bastard Hottentots, exchanging with them twenty of our weakest oxen and two horses for their fresh cattle. At the Rietfontein, we received a visit from our Coran chief, Sigeb, who reminded us of our promise to take him and his company with us to the colony; from hence, therefore, he joined our convoy, providing for his own subsistence, and his own means of travelling.

From the Bastard Hottentots, at Laauwaterskloof, we received the oxen that we had left under their care; but they were not in much better condition

than when we parted from them, and our anxiety for the rest of our journey was not much diminished. We also made an exchange here at a considerable loss for some fresh cattle, and continued our journey with them, notwithstanding that a frost had come on so severe as to have covered the little stream with ice as thick as the finger. On the eleventh of July, we arrived at the Orange river, on the bank of which we pitched our camp. We were here much surprised at the arrival of two young Beetjuans, who, as they told us, urged by a desire to see foreign countries, had left their parents secretly, and followed the track of our waggons in hopes of coming up with us. They now begged us earnestly to take them into our service, and to let them accompany us to the colony.

We at first endeavoured to dissuade them from pursuing their idea, representing to them that if hereafter they should feel a longing to return to their native country, the journey over the inhospitable district which they must traverse would be very fatiguing and dangerous. To this they answered, that young men must seek to establish themselves in the world; that their father was a poor herdsman, and had scarcely any thing to eat himself; that at home their situation in the service of the rich was not very happy, and that they were not uneasy about their return, for they were accustomed to hardships, and could go so well on foot, that they had been only seven days in coming from the Kuruhman hither, consequently, notwithstanding our superior means, they had been more expeditious by two days than we. From the Bosjesmans, they added, they had nothing to fear, since they had no cattle with them; like them, they were themselves often constrained, at the worst season of the year, to live on such little bulbs as they could scrape out of the ground, and sometimes for days together they were hard pressed indeed with hunger.

As we found them so resolute, and could collect from other assurances they made that they had conceived the greatest confidence in us, and were resolved to pay the entertainment they solicited by the most faithful discharge of their duty, if we would only take them into our service, we at length consented, and never had any reason to repent the compliance. During all the remainder of our journey, they were eager to do every thing that their confined knowledge of our habits and ways of life would permit, and omitted no pains to learn many little arts, such as harnessing the oxen, pitching and striking the tents, or any thing else in which they thought they could be

useful. They also laboured so earnestly to learn the Dutch language, that they could make themselves understood by the Hottentots in so short a time as to excite our utmost astonishment. Both took names of animals, according to the custom of their own country: one called himself *Makabi*, a draught ox, the other *P' holla*, a Kudu antelope. When we arrived at Tulbagh, they remained in the house of the Landdrost, who fed and clothed them, and paid them wages; and they conducted themselves with great diligence and regularity. After four months, however, they suddenly disappeared, yet taking nothing with them but the clothes which they had on. Most probably they returned home, though, notwithstanding all possible inquiries, no trace of them could be discovered on their route to the boundaries of the colony.

In a valley where we stopped during the latter days of our journey, some of our party had collected a quantity of bulbs, which, when roasted in the embers, were found to have a very pleasant flavour, much resembling that of chesnuts. Probably from not being sufficiently acquainted with these roots, it was not the proper eatable bulb of the *iris edulis* that they had got, but one of the sorts that are of a pernicious quality, for all that had eaten of them were soon after seized with violent cholicky pains, from which they suffered so much, that however urgent it seemed to lose no time, we were obliged to postpone our journey, and exert all our cares for their restoration. By the use of proper remedies, the next day they were so much recovered as to be able to proceed.

The preceding night being the full moon, the Corans who accompanied us spent it in singing and dancing: the dance was of so peculiar a nature, that I had seen nothing at all resembling it in any other tribe with which I was acquainted. One of the men stood in the middle, leaning on two sticks, which he supported against his shoulders, with his arms twined round him, now bending to the right, then to the left, at the same time stamping with his foot to beat time. Eight or ten women were squatted upon the ground in a circle round, with their hands joined together, and held up towards him. They all made a howling noise, intended for singing, with their utmost might, in which they were joined by a number of men, who were sitting quietly without the circle: some of these men accompanied the singing with a small deadened hollow sounding drum. This drum consisted of a simple kind of vessel made of the stem of an aloe, the original use of which was to keep milk in, over which was stretched a sheep-skin, not prepared in any way.

The dancer, who was commonly the aged Sigebe, turned himself constantly during all this singing upon his crutch-like sticks, first one way, then the other, with his head stretched out, bowing himself now to one of the women, then to another, all preparing to receive him in their arms; till at length, after he had appeared for a long time to be making his choice, he sunk into the lap of one, and fell with her to the ground. Soon, however, starting up again, they returned to their places, the others remaining all the time squatted, and the same was repeated over again, till after awhile they were replaced by fresh dancers.

Their singing was divided into the same extraordinary intervals, as have been noticed before in speaking of the *t'gorrah*, and which, if written down according to our system of notation, would be nearly as follows:



Only it must not be forgotten in this figure, that there is no pure third, fifth, or little seventh, but that the tones are always between two pure intervals and the nearest half-tones, and always nearer, the greater the interval is, so that it appears very doubtful whether the modulation is in a *sharp* or a *flat*, and any one who hears it scarcely knows how to decide either for the one or the other. So much is this at variance with what are considered among us as the fundamental rules of harmony, that it seems as if among the nations of Southern Africa the whole diapason was an octave divided into four parts, formed by their smallest intervals. According to this, the interval following the principal tone would be equal to our third, *minus* two rests; the second interval would be like our fifth, *minus* four rests, therefore nearly a little fifth; and the third would be only two rests higher than the sixth, consequently nearer to this than to the little seventh. This is a matter worthy the investigation of future travellers, and the Cape offers a rich field in this respect to an experienced inquirer, since the various slaves from different nations, from Mozambique, and Madagascar, the Malays, and above all the Bugonese, have each their own peculiar melodies, with intervals not in any way adapted to our diatonic scale.

In the same night we had an eclipse of the moon, for which, owing to the neglect of fixing the true time, I was not prepared beforehand, and

therefore, to my great mortification, so good an opportunity of ascertaining in some measure the longitude of the spot where we were was wholly lost.

On the twelfth of July, we sent the waggons alone round by the tedious way, which we ourselves had equally taken before, on account of the turn in the river, and went on foot the nearest way along its banks. Here, for the first time, we again saw Karroo mimosas, which do not grow north of the Orange river: they seem the exclusive produce of the countries near the coast in Africa. In the parts we had lately visited, their place was occupied by several species nearly related to them, as the beautiful *giraffe tree*, the *elephant's thorn*, and the *red ebony tree*. The wood of the latter is the hardest and finest of any in this country, next to the giraffe tree, although the stem is seldom more than four inches thick in diameter. The trouble which our people had when they were sent out for firewood to cut the boughs of this tree first led my attention to the hardness of the wood. From the experiments I then made, I found that in its specific weight, closeness, and hardness, it far exceeds the black ebony, and in working acquires so fine a polish, that an attention to it may very well be recommended to the inhabitants of the colony, as an object of trade from which great profit might be derived.\*

At the Red-broken-rock, we waited the arrival of our waggons, and from its summit enjoyed the fine prospect over the whole turn of the river, and the peninsula formed by it. When, after a short rest, we set forwards again, we soon met with an immense swarm of locusts, of the sort already described, which in a short time completely covered the ground all round us. They were pursuing their course northwards across the river, into which so many had fallen, that the whole surface of the water, as far as we could see upwards, seemed overspread with them. In a quarter of an hour we had passed

---

\* This wood, for example, is of a remarkably fine quality for making wind-instruments, as I can affirm from the experience of a flute made of it by M. Eisenhardt of Gottingen, a most excellent musical-instrument-maker. The tone of this flute, from the hardness of the wood, is particularly fine and full. For the rest, none of the sorts here enumerated have as yet been arranged in the system, the giraffe-tree excepted, of which some account has been given by Patterson; even the names of the others are not known. From the specimens which I brought, Professor Wildenow classes them all collectively in the species *acacia*, and calls these two principal sorts *acacia giraffæ*, and *acacia hæmatoxylon*. This is a little piece of information by the way for botanists; in the sequel they shall find the subject more amply discussed.

through this cloud, as it might truly be called, when we saw it spreading out a great way behind us to the right.

Between hills, whose summits were crowned with large stems of aloes, we proceeded on our way to the ford of Priskob, on the Orange river. I hastily cut off a branch of an aloe, but was obliged to forego my wish to carry away a whole stem, since most of them were at the root a foot in diameter. We found the water in the river still lower now than when we crossed it before, and therefore commenced the passage immediately: it was not performed without some danger. The Hottentot boys, who led the foremost oxen in the waggons, and who, on that account, were obliged to be breast high in the water, were so benumbed with its extreme coldness, and had so much difficulty to resist the force of the stream, that they failed in taking the right direction, and sinking into a hole, they could only save themselves by holding fast to the leading rein. The drivers sitting in the waggons endeavoured, in vain, to turn the oxen right: they had now got the cords under their feet, and were so much entangled with them, that it was necessary to stop the whole cavalcade in the midst of the stream. Nothing but the presence of mind of these Hottentot drivers, who hastily sprang into the water, and loosened the oxen in an instant from the yoke, saved the waggon and the whole team from being carried away. By this means the oxen were disentangled, and we happily arrived in safety on the other side of the river.

Near the place where we had before encamped on the south side of the stream, we found so many marks of river-horses, that we resolved immediately to commence a chase of them. Although night was setting in, we went downwards along the banks of the stream, and soon heard the snorting of three of these monstrous creatures, as they came up to the surface of the water to breathe. There was not, however, sufficient light remaining to distinguish the place where the nose was above the water with sufficient accuracy to take a successful aim; and when once a shot was heard they all vanished immediately, so that after watching them awhile, in vain, we were obliged to return, wholly disappointed and half frozen, to the camp. As little successful were we the next morning in our pursuit of the gerboas, the holes of which we found in vast numbers at the foot of a neighbouring mountain. Although all our Hottentots set to work with spades and pick-

axes, to remove the earth, and find out the subterranean passages to their retreats, and although we every where found fresh remains of them, we were at length obliged to abandon the attempt, since the passages crossed each other so repeatedly, forming such an absolute net-work, that it was impossible to follow the course of any one in particular. Our Hottentots also assured us that these animals make their way under ground much faster than it is possible for any man to follow them with his spade; that the only means of taking any number is to turn the water of the river into their habitations, which would immediately drive them out; but this, on account of the height that we were above the river, could not now possibly be done. In hasty showers, a man may catch as many of them as he pleases with his hands only: the wet which drives them out of their holes deprives them at the same time of that agility, which enables them, by taking leaps of three or four ells at one spring, to outstrip the swiftest dogs.

On the thirteenth of July we passed through the Great River's-gate. In the afternoon a number of antelopes were shot, among others a beautiful striped female kudu.\* The night was passed at Baviansbak, where, the next morning, we were obliged again to leave some of our sick oxen behind us. From the general and increasing weakness of these creatures, a sort of eruptive disease, not unlike the itch, began to prevail among them, of which many at length died. This, though in some respects a great disaster to us, had yet an advantageous side on which it might be viewed—that henceforward we were spared all apprehensions of being molested by the Bosjesmans: they always found a sufficient supply of food at any place where we had encamped. By this means, during the whole of our return, we never saw any of these people; and if, sometimes, we stopped for the night, our dogs never appeared uneasy, except when the roaring of the lion, or the howling of the fox, was heard. As little did we see on our return, to our no small joy, the importunate Caffres, from whom we should not easily have disengaged ourselves, all our objects of traffic having been disposed of among the Beetjuans. It is much to be feared that our poor Corans fell either into their hands, or into those of the Bosjesmans, for we had never seen them since we crossed the Orange river, and expected in vain that they

---

\* *Antelope Strepsiceros*. The male only of this species has horns.

would rejoin us; neither had any thing been heard of them in the colony as long as I remained in Africa.

When we were in the neighbourhood of the Saltpans, a cold rain fell, which continued for two days, changing to snow in the evening, so that at every step the travelling became more difficult, and wearying both to men and animals. We had not now indeed to struggle against the want of water, which had been so great a distress to us on our journey into the country; but the want of shelter, and the difficulty of making a fire to warm ourselves, was even a greater evil. Our waggons being, according to the custom of the country, more calculated to protect us against the sun than against the cold and wet, kept us dry but for a very short time: the rain soon came through the thin linen tilts, soaking not only our clothes but all our packages, even the very mattresses and coverlids which we used at night. Our tent, which was not set up without some difficulty, stood upon ground entirely wet: every thing was wet that was brought into it, or soon became so from the rising vapour: ship-biscuit, and dried flesh, were our only articles of food; and the night was passed in conversation, wrapped in our wet cloaks. I had a better protection than any of the party in my Beetjuan mantle, on which, well rubbed over as it was with the ointment of fat and mica, not a drop of rain stood. Our people, however, suffered the most in their leathern jackets, without either shirt or upper garment, obliged to spend almost the whole day in the wet, and at night even less protected from the snow and frost than ourselves. Hitherto the great want of firewood had in some sort been supplied by the dung of the oxen left in our journey upwards at the places where we stopped, and which was now so dried as to make excellent fires. But the rain having deprived us of this resource, our people were sometimes an hour collecting a quantity of the low brushwood, which was burnt out in a few minutes. Indeed, if this weather had continued for six or eight days, we should have suffered much more severely from it than from any of the former vicissitudes we had experienced. Perhaps, considering the manner in which our cattle were evidently affected, not one of them would have survived, and we should have been under the greatest embarrassment how to pursue the remainder of our journey. Such an example is sufficient fully to confirm all that has hitherto been said of the many hardships and difficulties which travellers are liable to encounter in this country; it is

almost impossible, indeed, to calculate upon all that may occur, consequently no provision can be made against them.

On the third night the wind abated, and turned to the south: it snowed hard till midnight; and the sun rose in a very clear sky, casting a bright purple tint all over the wintry landscape. Our tent was frozen so hard that it remained standing after we had loosened the cords, intending to strike it. We were, therefore, constrained to wait till the sun had melted the snow, nor could we proceed till about noon; we were even then obliged to leave behind six of our oxen, they being so entirely lamed that they could not move. Here we were again in the neighbourhood of the Karree mountains, the remarkable summits of which were at every moment more and more distinguishable. Innumerable icicles glittered in the crevices of the highest stratum, which gave the even borders of these hills the appearance of each summit being encircled with a broad silver band. About noon a large rhinoceros came pretty near to our tent; he was pursued, but the ground was so extremely slippery, that his pursuers could not make any way; and as he trotted off, he was soon lost among the heights. We stopped awhile at Krieger's grave, and enjoyed for the first time, after so long a privation, a hot meal and some refreshing sleep.

In the great plain which was bounded to our left by the varied mountains and deep vallies of the Karree, we again saw a profusion of wild animals, as ostriches, quaggas, eland-antelopes, and springbocks: of these a sufficient number to serve us for several days were shot with very little trouble. On the seventeenth of July we reached the Shietfontein, and on the eighteenth the Leeuwenfontein, where we agreed to take a day's rest. We observed here, in one of the basins of the spring, a number of large fish; but when we threw our nets to catch them, they took refuge very adroitly under the rocks, so that our nets, when drawn out, were scarcely half filled. To my great astonishment, when I came to examine our prisoners, I found them to be the *silurus anguillaris* of Linnæus, a species nearly allied to our *silurus glanis*, or sheath-fish, which in the *systema natura* is given as an inhabitant of the Nile. Some among them were three foot long, and weighed eight pounds: we thought them very well-flavoured, and were exceedingly glad of the change, after having lived for so long a time on nothing but flesh. At first it appeared to me wholly incomprehensible how these fish could have come into so small a place, unconnected, in the remotest degree, with any

river, at the utmost having some mode of communication with a stagnant lake. Soon, however, finding in the vicinity a nest of the large African wild-goose,\* which we saw not far off swimming on the water, the idea very naturally occurred to me that these birds might probably have brought the spawn of the fish with them from the Orange river, where, as we were told by our companions, they abound. The nest itself excited my attention very strongly. The foundation of it was thick hard reeds, very artificially woven together; it was of a regular quadrangular form, and laid dry and soft upon reed-straw and leaves; within, it was lined with feathers and the wool of certain plants. There were no eggs in it, but it seemed quite fresh made, as if this was the season for laying and setting. Some of these animals whom we shot at the Orange river appeared then to be moulting.

When we arrived at the Brakke river, on the twentieth, after a very fatiguing chase of some quaggas, to our great astonishment we found there the missionaries Koster and Janssen, and learnt from them, that by the time they arrived at the Orange river, some of their Hottentots fell ill with the small-pox, on which account they had not been able to proceed on their journey. To prevent any farther delay, Koster immediately inoculated all his people, even his wife, and none of them had the disorder severely. Most were able to go out on the tenth day, and attend to their work; and he was only now staying the time required by the Landdrost, according to the written instructions which had been given him, for obviating all danger of infection either from the persons themselves, who had had the disease, or from their clothes. The last of his people who was ill had now been recovered a fortnight, and he, therefore, hoped soon to receive full permission to return into the colony. As it was our own intention to stop some days at the Sack river, the missionaries were desired to follow us into that neighbourhood, where, after an accurate examination into all circumstances, they should receive their final orders. On the following day we arrived at Kicherer's Institution, where was the family of our Kok: among these people also this formidable disease had broke out. They had, therefore, faithful to our orders, not gone among the Hottentots, but taken up their abode at about half an hour's distance

---

\* This goose is considered by some persons only as a variety of the *Anas Ægyptiaca* of Linnæus: with what justice I cannot pretend to decide, as I know so little of either. They are certainly, at least, very nearly related.

from them. I examined those who had gone through the disease, most of whom had been recovered some weeks. Some of them were pretty strongly scarred. My advice was, that after well cleansing and purifying every thing belonging to them, they should remove in about a fortnight into the Roggeveld. This advice was followed: and the evil which, perhaps, at a hotter season of the year, and in the houses of the colonists, might have assumed a very malignant character, was, through these precautions, happily averted. But for the accidental circumstance of our journey lying in such a direction as that we came into the proximity of the places where the disease prevailed, the consequences might have been more disastrous. The government of the colony must, however, be always very careful, supposing a greater intercourse to be hereafter established between the European colonists and the nations on the other side of the Orange river, to prevent this evil becoming more serious. I gave my free opinion to the Governor respecting the regulations that ought to be made on this point; together with an account of all that I had myself witnessed, and all the information I could obtain.

During our stay at the Sack river, we occupied ourselves very much with examining into some small establishments which lay scattered within a circuit of about three or four miles. All these places were the habitations only of single families, and all had a like melancholy aspect. A little scanty spring, a hut of rushes, full of filth and vermin, a little cattle kraal, with a low fence round it, and, at the utmost, eight or ten meagre oxen, are the most striking objects by which such a spot, standing in the midst of a most naked and unfruitful district, is distinguished. The Hottentots who have selected such a place of residence belong to Kicherer's Institution; but have separated themselves from the rest, as being the richer part of the community, and not willing to share their wealth with their poorer brethren. They only go to the principal institution on a Sunday, to attend divine worship at the church. There is no doubt that even the wild Corans lead more active and happier lives than these men; and there is probably not one, even of the poorest, among the Beetjuans, who would change situations with them.

On the news of our return being spread in the neighbourhood, the Field-Cornet Olivier, and some other colonists, who had been ordered to form a

part of our escort, came to our camp, and endeavoured, by a thousand hollow excuses, to apologize for having failed in their duty. Some confessed, with great frankness, that fear was the sole cause of their neglect; since they were perfectly convinced, in their own minds, that not one of our party would survive the expedition. Had they conceived the smallest idea that we should return so soon, and so happily, they should never have thought of eluding the orders they had received. We pardoned them so much the more readily, as they had not been at all missed by us, and as their company would only have contributed the sooner to exhaust our stores of all kinds.

On the twenty-sixth of July, we again set out from the Sack river, and encamped for the night at the Quagga Fountain, where we were much annoyed by the lions: their roaring kept both us and our cattle upon the alarm all night. From the different noises, we could make out plainly that there was a whole family together, the father, the mother, and the child. Not far from the Karree mountains, we had, in the middle of the day, roused such a company from their rest; when, taking to flight, we could trace their footsteps for three days along the waggon road. They seemed to have followed it by preference, as the most convenient route they could take. Perhaps it was the very same party that we now heard, and in a country so poor in wild animals they were driven by hunger to come so near us.

On the following day's journey we met with another remarkable phenomenon, an enormous train of caterpillars. They were the larvæ of a species of the *bombyx*. Several millions of them, pressed closely together in rows, were crawling in the same direction. Every row was a foot, or a foot and a half from the other, and was the breadth of five or six of the animals. It did not appear as if they were urged by the want of food; for not one sat quietly on any plant; all crawled along restless upon the ground; and, farther than the eye could reach north and south, these parallel rows appeared, pursuing their course. The origin of such an enormous number of these creatures, and the motive of their migration, is certainly still more difficult to be divined than the history of the locusts. The specimens that I carried away changed in a very short time; but not a single one remained alive, so as to arrive at its full developement.

This country again abounded exceedingly with ostriches; several of which,

single ones only, we hit when we fired at them, and killed one. That it was their time of sitting was evident from the great number of nests which we discovered in our hunting parties. We collected a pretty good stock of eggs, to carry as presents to our friends at the Cape Town. Even here the Bosjesmans had been evidently indulging themselves in their thirst of destruction. The produce of whole nests were trodden to pieces, and the impressions of the feet by which they had been crushed were still remaining in the sand. The superabundance of which these plunderers cannot avail themselves, they are resolved no other shall enjoy. They have a particular hatred to the ostrich, on account of his being so long-sighted and so suspicious, that he often betrays them to the antelopes and quaggas, whom they are lurking after, when they are got pretty near to them. Many of the remarks which I have made upon the ostrich, on a former occasion, were the result of the opportunities which I had in this district of investigating their habits and manners.

We made another capture of fish in the Little Riet river, at the Gannakraal, among which were abundance of carp; and in this region also was the botanical harvest again plentiful; while on the heights, none but small liliaceous plants were beginning to blow. At Seldery-fontein, a colonist, by name Meintjes, was brought before the Landdrost, to answer charges made against him of harsh treatment of his Hottentots. From these people we learnt, that, a few weeks before, some of the neighbours had been robbed of all their cattle in the night by the Bosjesmans; but, having united in pursuing the robbers, they were overtaken, and three, who had shot poisoned arrows from a lurking place, were themselves shot in return. Two of these were among the number whom we had had in our power at the Sack river, but had released.

In our journey from the Groote river to Kuilenberg's river, we had again some very cold weather, with snow showers; and in the Roggeveld we found the snow not only drifted in the hollow ways to the depth of several feet, but the fields were also covered with it. The houses were all empty, the inhabitants being still at their winter habitations in the Karroo. The nearer we came to the edge of the Roggeveld mountains, the more severe was the cold; and if we had not found a house and cattle kraals at the farm in the Jackal valley, we should hardly have remained all night in the open air;

we should, notwithstanding our fatigue, have been constrained to hasten, with all possible expedition, down to the Karroo. Immediately on our arrival here, a messenger was dispatched to announce our being returned into the neighbourhood of the Karroo, and to order fresh teams of oxen to be prepared for us. He returned before daybreak, bringing with him some fresh bread, and a flask of brandy. These were costly presents to us; since, for the last week, we had had nothing but ginger-water and mutton tea, or tea of antelope's flesh, to drink. He also brought a packet with newspapers and letters from the Cape Town, which had been some time waiting there for us. With what eagerness they were read may easily be imagined. The pleasure I had found, however, in all the novelties which I had been witnessing, was now wholly embittered by the afflicting news of the death of Lieutenant Janssens, my former pupil, and the companion of my earlier travels, whom I so ardently longed to see again. With him died a thousand fond hopes, which my heart had cherished, of the future figure this amiable youth, with such talents as he possessed, would make in the world; nor could I now think, but with the most poignant anguish, of returning among the melancholy circle whom I should find lamenting so severe a loss.

In descending the Roggeveld mountains, one of our waggons ran against the rock, in a most dangerous place. Most of the things in the waggon suffered no less by the shock than the waggon itself. What I had, above all things, to regret, was, the injury done to my collection of skulls and bones of animals. Some of the most rare were wholly lost; and I found others, when I came to examine them the next day, broken almost to pieces. In arranging the things in the waggon, after the accident, the Hottentots had paid very little attention to them; as they could not conceive that mere bones could be of any value.

In the Karroo we were heartily welcomed home by the whole collected inhabitants of the Roggeveld, at the place of John Van der Westhuizen; and since the stock of bread, wine, pulse, and fruits, began to run very low also among these people, for the harvest of the former year in these articles was very poor, and the like luxuries do not, at any time, abound very much in this part of the colony, one brought this, another that, according to what they could best spare from their own little stock, to supply our wants.

The difference in the temperature of the air was striking; and, while we saw the edges of the mountains every morning bordered with a white frost, we found ourselves here in a very pleasant degree of warmth. Indeed, sometimes at noon it was rather more than pleasant; it was almost overpowering. We stayed here some days, partly to get the waggons repaired, partly to settle with the colonists the damages to be paid for the oxen that had perished in the journey. My attention was particularly called by my hosts to a phenomenon observable in the diseased oxen who had reached their homes. They sought out the half-decayed bones, which were every where strewed about, and would masticate them, for hours together, with great pleasure, as it appeared, particularly at night, or when they laid down to chew the cud. We had several times on our journey observed them doing the same thing; and we were told here that this principally occurs when they are removed suddenly from one kind of feed to another, particularly if the feed is changed from the *sweet* to the *sour fields*. It is very probable that the practice may arise from these animals being troubled with acidity in the stomach, which instinct teaches them the bones will correct.

At this time, the body of an unknown female Hottentot was found dead in a field some miles from hence, and the Field-Cornet Nel ordered some of the people of his district to assemble there for a judicial examination of the body. In the hope of being able to procure some interesting preparations, I did not hesitate to take half a day's journey, in order to be present at the investigation: but when we arrived, the body was already in such a state of corruption, that nothing but the skull could be saved.

On the fourth of August we quitted this place, and, at the same time, took leave of our faithful travelling companions, Vischer and Van der Westhuizen; to whom, as well as to all the rest, handsome presents were made, in the name of the government. Spirited horses carried us, in one day, through the still green and cheerful-looking Karroo; and, on the seventh, after passing over the Witsemberg, we arrived again happily at Tulbagh, where we were received with shouts of joy by the family of the Landdrost. We had been absent exactly three months; and, in this short time, had travelled nearly three hundred and fifty German miles, the farthest point we

had reached, lying a hundred and seventy-eight miles from the Cape Town. Our first care was now to make ourselves fit for the society of civilised beings; to change our linen regularly, and to have our beards shaved. So powerful, however, is the influence of custom, that the first night we went regularly to bed, we almost all found ourselves far from comfortable, and were not so much refreshed as we had often been with a short sleep upon the ground, wrapped in our cloaks, and our heads rested on our saddles.

## CHAP. LIII.

*A Leopard caught alive by a Colonist.—Fight between him and the Dogs.—Return of the Author to the Roggeveld, to spread Vaccination among the People.—Poorness of Living among the Colonists here.—Their Devotion.—A Hottentot killed by the Author's Side, shot by a Bosjesman, with a poisoned Arrow.—Return again to Tulbagh, and afterwards to the Cape Town.—Death of Kok.—A new Journey over the Black Mountain to the Bosjesveld and the River Zonder-end—The Colony attacked by the English in 1806.—Capitulation of the Dutch Troops.—Departure from the Cape.—Stay at the Island of St. Helena.—Return to Europe.*

FROM the Sack river we had sent dispatches to the Governor, to announce our safe return into the colony, and to give him a general sketch of the fruits of our journey. In former dispatches, the prevalence of the small-pox beyond the colony had been mentioned; and I suggested, in order to preclude, as much as possible, all danger of the disorder rising to any height in the colony, supposing it to be brought thither, that every encouragement should be given to vaccinating all persons who had never had the small-pox. In case this advice was followed, I offered to go myself into the country where there was the most danger of the infection being communicated, to recommend this preventative, and inoculate as many as were willing to avail themselves of it. I now only waited here to receive the Governor's orders, with those of my chief, the Director of the Hospitals, Dibbetz.

During this interval, I occupied myself very much in wanderings about the valley of Roodezand, which was now in high beauty: and indeed, from the great variety of plants that it boasts, it is one of the most important spots in the colony to the botanist. One of the colonists, who lived not far from the drosty, having, just at this time, caught a large leopard, he sent round to his friends to inform them of it; inviting them, according to the custom of the country, to assemble on a day appointed, in the afternoon, to see the combat between this animal and the dogs, who would bite him to death. After partaking of an excellent dinner, we were conducted to the snare where the creature was still confined, whence he must be taken very cautiously to be

carried to the place of combat. This snare was in the remote part of a mountain dell, and was enclosed by a wall of rough pieces of stone; so that two large blocks like the others formed the entrance: for the rest, with regard to the mechanism, it was constructed upon the same principle as a mouse-trap, only with the proper difference of proportions. The snares made for hyenas are of a similar construction, excepting that they are open above: this, on the contrary, was covered with rough planks, between which we could look down upon the beautiful and enraged beast; and on which stood the people who were now to fetter him. They began with throwing in slings, by which first one paw, then another, was caught; and the legs were thus drawn together, while he in vain raged and roared most terribly. When this was done, another person went in, who threw a sling over the head; by the assistance of which, the creature was half drawn out. A strong muzzle was then tied over his mouth; and, thus secured, he was carried to the place of combat. A cord was now thrown round his body, just above the haunches, to which a chain was affixed, and that was fastened to a strong post. By degrees his bandages were taken off, and at length he was left with no other confinement than being tethered to the post. He soon recovered his strength and agility, and began alternately his wild springs and his graceful movements to and fro, exhibiting indeed a very fine spectacle. It was one of which no person can have an idea who has only seen these animals in the cages where they are shewn about by the exhibitors of wild beasts in our own country, humbled and tamed as they are by chastisement, hunger, and the damp cold of an European climate. This South African leopard differs from that of Northern Africa, the true panther, in the form of its spots, in the more slender structure of its body, and in the legs not being so long in proportion to the body. In watching for his prey, he crouches on the ground, with his fore paws stretched out, and his head between them, his eyes rather directed upwards. In this manner he now laid himself down; and, being held fast by the chain, stretched himself to such a length, that he appeared entirely a different animal. He then unexpectedly twined his body about sideways, this way and that, so that his movements very much resembled those of a snake. Convinced that he was sufficiently secured by the chain, we ventured close to him. We even sought to teaze and provoke him to spring and roar, by throwing little stones

at him, and by playing other tricks. As evening was, however, coming on, a consultation was held, whether it would not be adviseable to set the dogs upon him; for hitherto they had been kept in confinement, that we might first see as much as we wished of the manners and behaviour of the prisoner. The question being determined in the affirmative, most of the company went to prepare these new combatants for the field; when the leopard, making a grand effort, broke the chain, and, being thus left entirely at liberty, made a formidable spring at the Landdrost and me, who had ventured rather too near him. We took to flight, under the utmost alarm and astonishment; but happily the leopard's strength being somewhat exhausted, he missed his aim, and, at that important moment, before he could attempt a second spring, the dogs, who were now let loose, rushed upon him, and immediately seized him by the throat and ears. One of them, who had from age lost a tooth upon our journey, was easily shaken off by the monster, who killed him immediately, by a desperate bite on the head. The rest of the dogs now fell furiously upon him; and two of them bit him in the throat so effectually, that in less than a quarter of an hour not the least spark of remaining life was to be discerned. In the conflict another of the dogs was so severely wounded, that he died the next day. In dissecting the animal, I found all the muscles about the throat and neck bit, but not the smallest hole made in the skin. As it was wholly uninjured, I purchased it of the farmer at the usual price given here for leopard skins, ten dollars. I took, besides, as an addition to my collection, the skull, and some of the most important parts of the bones.

As no letters had been received from the Governor by the fifteenth of August, I prepared to accompany the Landdrost to the Cape Town; when, just before the time appointed for our departure, a messenger arrived, by whom I received a commission to repair immediately to the borders of the colony; and, according to my proposal, to spread the vaccine inoculation as much as possible among the colonists; also to take any other precautions I might think adviseable for preventing the introduction of the small-pox. For this purpose matter for the vaccine inoculation was sent, and an order, on my behalf, to the Field-Cornets of the several districts to furnish me with every thing that might be wanted for the prosecution of my undertaking. I accordingly set off again from Tulbagh on the seventeenth of August; but, on account of a trifling indisposition, which obliged me to stop two days by

the way, I did not arrive at the foot of the Roggeveld mountains till the twenty-fourth. Here I took up my quarters at the house of my friend Van der Westhuizen. I performed the whole journey on horseback, never having any other companion than a single Hottentot, who was furnished me from one station to another. Thus it was impossible for me to carry any provisions with me: I was obliged to content myself with partaking the very humble fare to which the good people, whose guest I was, are accustomed from their youth. In this way I got upon more confidential terms with my hosts, and became more thoroughly acquainted with the domestic economy of the houses, and with the manners and habits of the colonists in these parts, than in my former travels; and learnt, farther, that such a confidential intercourse alone can enable any one to give a really fair and just account of a foreign nation. Many features in the characters of these Africans, both censurable and commendable, were now first known to me; and I was enabled to correct many errors into which I had fallen with respect to them.

That the object of my journey might be fulfilled without delay, immediately on my arrival I inoculated some Hottentot boys, belonging to the followers of Kramer and Edwards, who were on their way to Anderson's Institution. Moreover, as these two sensible men were already convinced of the efficacy of this preventative, I gave them a written memoir, with directions for the inoculation, establishing the full security it afforded against the infection of the small-pox. By them the vaccine inoculation was carried to the Sack river, where Krieger and Botma, equally instructed by me, were active in engaging the families on the borders to avail themselves of it. It was much more difficult to persuade the incredulous and prejudiced inhabitants of the Roggeveld to conform themselves to our wishes. I, however, won at length so much upon their favour and confidence, that I succeeded in removing their scruples; the rather, since the examples I could shew, in the Hottentots vaccinated under my care, convinced them that the illness attending upon this mode of inoculation was very trifling indeed. Thus by degrees the fame of this preventative offered against a disease so much dreaded as the small-pox, was so widely spread over the country, that the people in the Karroo, on the days appointed for inoculation, brought their children, their slaves, and their Hottentots, in great numbers to undergo the

operation: nay, several fathers of families themselves, with their wives, were inoculated. Some of the old people, however, thought it scarcely worth while to make the experiment, thinking that they had no reason to have any apprehension of catching the small-pox. In the four weeks that I stayed here, I inoculated nearly three hundred persons; and, through the zeal of the Field-Cornets Nel and Marits, the good opinion of this practice even increased after my departure. Thus I could happily consider the views with which I undertook the journey as fully answered.\*

But, during this space of time I had to endure many inconveniences, and lived even more sparingly than in the latter half of my recent journey. Scarcely any other food than mutton ever appeared at the table of my host, or of his neighbours. Two or three sheep were killed every day: the entrails and feet were cooked with the fat of the tail, for breakfast, after a fashion which is very much in vogue throughout the colony, under the name of *pens en pootjels*. The dinner consisted generally of a strong soup, and roasted mutton: the remaining scraps of the sheep were made into a sort of hash for supper. Not a morsel of bread had we to eat with our meat; and, for a while, not even salt, for none was any where to be procured. It did indeed require a pretty strong appetite and sound health, to live in such a way for several weeks together. But the worst part of the story was, that the water was scarcely drinkable, on account of its being so strongly impregnated with natron. A sort of decoction of tea was the constant liquor at all our meals. Wine, beer, brandy, and vinegar, were things wholly out of the question; and milk I only got occasionally, as a present from patients who wished to pay me some tribute of gratitude. Almost all the milch-cattle, from the scarcity of grass hereabouts this year, were sent to a distance, where feed was more abundant. My worthy host, to whom I complained that the want of bread was the greatest privation I experienced, spared no pains in endeavouring to procure some corn from his neighbours; but a hatful of barley was all he could obtain. Of this the good wife made me a sort of cakes, which were kept entirely for my use: no one besides was allowed to touch them. For-

---

\* The cow-pox was brought, in November, 1803, to the Cape Town by a Portuguese slave-ship from Mozambique, after the English Government had in vain attempted to introduce it from England.

tunately, at this season of the year single colonists were occasionally coming from the blessed Bokkeveld into the Karroo, with fruits, brandy, and tobacco, which they bartered with the peasants of the Roggeveld, at a high price, for their fat sheep. After long expectation, some of these people came, and I procured from them a stock of pomegranates, and a flask of very indifferent brandy, for which I paid them in ready money. They, at the same time, from pure friendship, let my host have some pounds of salt. All these things, how insignificant soever they may appear, made the remainder of my stay much more supportable to me.

At first I found ample employment in writing down directions to distribute among the Field-Cornets of the district, in case the real small-pox should, notwithstanding all our precautions, break out. Two things in particular I inculcated very strongly, as duties of the utmost importance: one was, the immediately removing any person on whom the disorder declared itself, with their clothes, and every thing belonging to them, to a situation remote from all danger of others taking the infection from them; the second was, that all strangers, coming from the farther side of the Orange river, should undergo a strict examination before they were permitted to travel into the interior of the colony. When I was afterwards more at leisure, I did not omit my usual walks in search of rare insects and plants; and I often took rides, both to near and distant neighbours, who wished to have my medical advice. Several days were spent in endeavours to prepare soda from the ashes of certain salt plants of the species of *salsola* and *salicornia*, that grow abundantly hereabouts. In this I succeeded so happily, that the specimens I carried with me were thought equal to the best Spanish barilla.

Much time was also passed in the services of devotion, at which I regularly attended; although it must be acknowledged, that for the most part I found them very tiresome. The day was begun regularly with a psalm being sung, and a chapter from the Bible being read. Not only the children, but all the slaves and Hottentots, were required to attend. Among the latter, almost all the women had learnt the favourite psalms by heart, and joined in singing them with their sharp and shrill tones. The flocks were then driven into the field, the shepherds received their portions of raw meat, and, after breakfast, every body retired to their respective employments. When the flocks returned home in the evening, and had been counted over,

and when the shepherds had received their evening rations, the whole collective body of people belonging to the house were again assembled. In the first place came a female Hottentot, with a large tub full of water, in which the feet of every individual in the family, from the father to the smallest infant, were washed. A table was next set out, at which all the Christians seated themselves; the slaves and Hottentots squatting, as in the morning, round the room. The father then read some extracts from his old sermons, which was followed by the whole company singing a psalm. The ceremony was concluded by the evening blessing. Besides this, on the Sunday morning a solemn service was performed; at which a long sermon was read. Since there were no other books in the house but the sermons and the Bible, and I was observed to study the latter by preference, I acquired the reputation not only of being very pious, but of being deep read in scriptural learning; and I was soon requested to undertake the evening readings, explaining, as was the custom among the travelling missionaries, every evening, a chapter of the Bible. I was so much the more ready to comply with the wishes of these good people, as I found the pious discourses of the old preachers very wearisome, and began to be heartily tired of them. The exposition of my own religious opinions I thought would be much more edifying and entertaining. In choosing the subjects for my commentaries, I studied chiefly to select such passages in the Bible as would afford me the best opportunities of correcting the false principles of devotion inculcated by the missionaries, or of enforcing upon my auditors, in the strongest manner, that there could be no true piety without the love of our neighbour; without forbearance and complacency towards each other (virtues in which the African colonists are apt to be somewhat deficient); and that we must not hope, merely by affected humility and self-abasement, to render ourselves acceptable in the sight of God. Notwithstanding these somewhat bold and free hints, I had the satisfaction of observing that my doctrines were received with approbation. A striking proof of this was, that the neighbours soon began to attend at our evening devotions, and to listen to me with attention and applause. I could not help often being inwardly amused with the very singular situation in which I now stood, as a member of the Lutheran Church, transformed into a Dutch reformed preacher. So grossly ignorant and intolerant, however, are these people, that, if they had conceived the least

idea of my being a Lutheran, they would all have deserted me with no less disgust than they now attended to me with satisfaction.

A short time before my departure the news arrived of a fresh inroad made by the Bosjesmans, and one of a hitherto unheard-of nature. They had set one of the empty houses upon the mountains on fire; and, since this could not be prompted by hunger or cupidity, since it could proceed only from malice, from a desire to do all the injury possible, it occasioned the greatest terror and consternation among the colonists. The old active Field-Cornet resolved, however, to examine into the matter himself; and, as it was to be the excursion of a day only, I determined to accompany him. We had two Hottentots with us, armed; one of whom, from the many conflicts in which he had been engaged with the Bosjesmans, was become a most skilful combatant. He even made it a great boast, that he had shot more than one of these marauders.

We arrived about noon at the farm designated, which was indeed only an insignificant cattle-place, upon the Little Fish river; but we found, to the justification of the Bosjesmans, that the dwelling-house was not injured: a small outbuilding only was burnt down; and it seemed probable, from appearances, that they had not intentionally set it on fire, but had made a fire too near, for the purpose of warming themselves, and cooking the victuals they had plundered; and, in their careless way, neglecting to extinguish it at their departure, it had caught the building, and destroyed it. With this consolatory information we returned home at night, not attending, as much as we ought to have done, since darkness was coming on, to keeping in the right road. By this means I was placed in a situation of more imminent danger than any I had hitherto encountered. It was almost dark when we crossed a little branch of the Rhinoceros river, and came to the foot of a considerable rocky hill. As we were very cold, we agreed to dismount from our horses, and warm ourselves by ascending the hill on foot. The Field-Cornet, with one Hottentot, went on before, and I followed with the other at a little distance. On a sudden we heard the twang of a bow on one side of us; and, at the same moment, my Hottentot gave a scream, and exclaimed that he was wounded: then hastily turning round, fired his gun. The arrow stuck in his side, between the sixth and seventh ribs, and entered nearly two inches deep. Our companions hastened up to us

immediately, and assisted me to draw it out carefully. In this we partially succeeded, notwithstanding the hook that turns back ; but we found, alas ! that the iron point, which is generally loosely fastened on, was left in the wound, and with it, as we were afraid, some of the poison. Destitute as we were of every kind of remedy, nothing remained but to seek the nearest house with all the haste possible. We turned therefore directly to the right, and descending the hill by a steep path, brought our wounded man to a winter habitation directly at its foot, though the latter part of the way he experienced such dreadful agony from the wound, that he was scarcely able to sit upon his horse. Every possible assistance was here given us by the good people of the house ; but a too great length of time had elapsed before this assistance could be obtained : in an hour and a half after our arrival the poor creature expired. Probably the poison was of a very subtle nature, for the patient lost all recollection, and died in strong convulsions. It seems very probable that we had been seen in the day by the lurking Bosjesmans, who recognised their old antagonist, and resolved to be revenged on him. A bunch of white ostrich feathers, which he wore in his hat, rendered him very conspicuous, even though it was nearly dark, so that they could see to take their aim with tolerable certainty, and nothing could avert his doom. Amidst all the affliction which this accident occasioned me, I had much reason to rejoice that the Bosjesmans were such skilful marksmen ; for, if the arrow had deviated the least from the direction it took, I was so close to the Hottentot, that I should have received it, and he would have been saved.

I now longed more ardently than ever to quit this melancholy region, and with the utmost delight mounted my horse on the twentieth of September to set out on my return. I pursued a different route from that by which I had come thither, visiting by the way some colonists with whom I was already acquainted, and examining the *Schoorsteen* Mountain with that part of the Karroo of the Bokkeveld which it borders. Through the ignorance of my guide, I was wandering about half one night in the waste, the remainder of it being passed, as we could not find the habitation we sought, sleeping upon the ground with my saddle once more for a pillow. After all these adventures, I arrived safe at Tulbagh on the twenty-fifth, where I remained a few days, and then proceeded to the Cape Town, re-entering it on the thirtieth, having been absent exactly five months.

During some part of my return, I had travelled in company with our friend Kok, who now first, having concluded his business in the Karroo, visited the Cape Town. An examination into his conduct while among the Beetjuans having been instituted by the government, as well as the department of the European Missionary Societies at the Cape, he was determined to have acted with perfect propriety and rectitude. This done, he furnished himself with every thing necessary for making a stay of many years among his old friends, and in a few weeks set out on his return. Although he continued to be generally beloved both by the king of the Beetjuans and the people, he happened, in the year 1808, unfortunately to get into some private quarrel with an individual, by whom he was killed. His widow returned into the colony, having first received a solemn promise from the king, that the offender should be punished with the utmost rigour. Whether he kept his promise was not known at the time that the last intelligence I received from the Cape was dispatched. The information we had brought from the Beetjuan country continued then to be the latest. A party extremely well equipped set out in the year 1807, under the auspices of the then English governor, Lord Caledon, at the head of which was a physician of great knowledge and science, Dr. Cowan. The object of this expedition was to pass through the Beetjuan country, and if possible to penetrate by that route to the settlement of the Portuguese, in the neighbourhood of Mozambique. There is reason to fear that it has ended unfortunately. In May, 1810, no tidings had been heard of the party; nothing was known subsequent to dispatches which they had sent in September, 1807, when they were only on the borders of the colony. From the spirit of inquiry, however, so prevalent among the English, we may be allowed to hope that they will not be deterred by one disastrous experiment from pursuing their researches, and I must still flatter myself with the idea, that before the expiration of many years, I shall find my observations confirmed, and my knowledge encreased by some enlightened and enterprising person of that nation.

A few week after my return, General Janssens once more sent two officers, the captain of dragoons, Labat, and the captain of artillery, Mossel, to visit some of the nearer parts of the colony. Once accustomed to an unsettled life, I availed myself with pleasure of his permission to accompany these gentlemen, principally for the purpose of obtaining a more accurate know-

ledge of the mountainous country about the sources of the Zonder-end, and ascertaining whether they were properly laid down in the map of the colony, on which I was now employed. We set out from the Cape Town on the twenty-third of October: in two days we reached Stellenbosch, and then crossing the mountains, arrived at the warm-baths on the Black Mountain, on the very day when Doctor Hassner laid the first stone of his new bath-house. A very numerous assemblage of persons was collected together upon this occasion, among whom were many even from the Cape Town: several were now staying here to use the baths, and spoke highly of the very improved accommodations which the guests already found. Three dollars per day was the price given by each person for lodging and board, not including foreign wine; that, if required, was paid for separately.

From hence, we visited again the brethren at Bavianskloof, where we found a sort of little inn established, which, from the constantly increasing number of strangers visiting these parts, answered, as we were informed, tolerably well. Then proceeding along the banks of the river Zonder-end, and the woods upon the neighbouring mountains, once more I had the pleasure of finding myself in Zoetemelk's valley. Here, on the second of November, we experienced one of the most dreadful hurricanes that was ever known in the colony. The venerable old oaks before the house of the postholder were deprived of their largest and soundest boughs by the impetuosity of the storm; and such a violent rain fell at the same time, that the river was in a few hours swelled beyond example. On the same day, all the ships in Table-Bay were torn from their anchors, and most of them, among others the beautiful French frigate the *Atalanta*, were stranded. From Zoetemelk's valley we went along the banks of the river upwards, traversed the mountains where it rises, with the whole Bosjesveld, and came, on the seventh of November, to Tulbagh. Some days were passed with our friends here, and we then returned by Waggon-maker's-valley, Paarl, and Stellenbosch, to the Cape Town. A few days before I arrived for this last time at Tulbagh, the old *beurd-man* had died in prison. I got his corpse taken up, that I might have his skull, which, while he was alive, I had observed to be in many respects very remarkable. At my return to Europe, this, with the skin of his face, was deposited in the admirable collection of Counsellor Blumenbach, at Gottingen.

The following weeks of my stay at the Cape Town were passed in drawing out a detailed report which I was to make to the government, and in arranging my papers and natural curiosities. Notwithstanding the increasing favour shewn me by my superiors, and the former bonds in which I was daily united with my equals, I began, while I was thus occupied, to feel an eager longing after my native country, my dear Germany, there to talk over all I had seen, and all the knowledge I had acquired, with the learned and scientific men whose friendship I could boast. The wish at last became so powerful, that I could not forbear communicating it to the Governor, when he promised to promote my views by every possible means. Though from the interrupted communication with Europe, and the high price of transport, he was afraid that I should find very great difficulties. Fortune, however, as it seemed at the first glance, threw in my way a Danish ship, the physician to which had died at Batavia, and I was entering upon a treaty with him, which would have proved a mutual accommodation, when suddenly the news arrived that a large English fleet was approaching, and that an immediate attack upon the colony was to be expected. The news was brought by an American ship, the captain of which said that he counted sixty sail; that they were somewhat south of the line, and were steering southwards: the truth of this statement was confirmed a few days after, when a French vessel was driven on shore by an English frigate not far from Hout-bay. All remained quiet, however, till the fourth of January, 1806, when, at daybreak, this large enemy's fleet was espied at a distance, which, the nearer it approached, appeared the more formidable: towards evening it came to anchor between Robben Island and the coast, to the amount of sixty-three sail.

The detailed account of the attack that ensued, and of the measures of defence taken by the general-in-chief, belong properly to the historical part of my work, where they will be introduced in regular connexion with the preceding events, and with some strictures upon the military situation of the Cape Town. I was myself an eye-witness of some of the most important circumstances, being at the place of landing, when the battalion in which I served made a feeble attempt at resistance. I consequently retreated with this battalion to the principal corps, with which, two days after, on the eighth of January, I was present in the engagement that decided the fate of the Cape Town, and ultimately, though not immediately, that of the whole

colony. The town, weakly defended by the citizen militia, and the auxiliary troops, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Von Prophalow, capitulated on the ninth, and the Waldeck battalion became prisoners of war. General Janssens, steady to the plan he had formed, retired with the small remains of his army to the heights of Hottentot's-holland. Here, from the precautions taken to provide stores on the other side of the mountains, his little army of scarcely fifteen hundred men might long have bid defiance to the overpowering force of the enemy, at least till from Tulbagh he could be taken in flank; even then the passage of the Houhoek would always have furnished a favourable point of defence. But the council of war were unanimously of opinion that it was better to accept the honourable terms of capitulation repeatedly offered by the English; so that the General at length consented, and the whole colony was surrendered, on condition of the army being transported free to Holland. This capitulation was signed at the foot of the hill on the twenty-third of January, by persons empowered on both sides, and the following day we removed to the Wine-hills, where we were to be encamped till our departure.

I accompanied the General to the Cape Town, where all possible respect was shewn him by the English commanders, Sir David Baird, Sir Home Popham, and General Beresford. The month of February was passed in making the necessary preparations for the departure of the troops, and early in March they were distributed on board the seven cartel ships destined to receive them. The very convenient and spacious transport ship, the Bellona, was placed at the entire disposal of the General, on board of which, besides his family, he carried a small train, among whom I was so fortunate as to be included. On the fifth of March, we went on board. Much as I wished to return to my own country, I could not without lively emotions take leave of a town, and of friends to whom I owed so many obligations, and should probably never see again. We set sail the next day under a favourable south-east wind, being saluted by the castle and the English ships of war. By degrees the well-known country faded from before our eyes, which now, as we parted from it, seemed much more dear than it had ever appeared before. In a few hours the Table-Mountain was seen only as a dark cloud in the horizon, and before night closed in, no other objects were in view but the sea and the sky.

On the twentieth of March we arrived at the Island of St. Helena, and

anchored the same day at noon before James-Town. The governor of the island, Sir Robert Patton, not only gave us permission to come on shore, and purchase refreshments, but received us with the most distinguished attention and politeness. Every day a number of the Dutch officers were invited to his table, and the opulent inhabitants of the place seemed emulous to vie with him in hospitality. Nobody received a more ample share of these civilities than myself. General Janssens thought it not adviseable, for many reasons, that he should leave the ship: he considered it as inconsistent with the dignity of a general, who was not a prisoner of war, to be seen in the fortress of an enemy. For himself, therefore, he declined all the governor's invitations, pressing as they were: this did not prevent these truly honourable men feeling the most sincere esteem for each other, and the frequent communications they had respecting exchanges of prisoners of war, or the surrender of ships taken, gave them reciprocal opportunities of knowing how much both were worthy of esteem. Governor Patton, therefore, did not hesitate to relax somewhat on his side, and to pay the first compliment, by coming voluntarily on board our ship. A repeated invitation, that the ladies of the General's family might be permitted to make those of the governor a visit at the country-house of the latter in the interior of the island, was for the same reasons declined. General Janssens, however, had the kindness to think of my love for natural history, and obtained permission of the governor for me to make a little tour about some of the most important parts of the island. It was a general regulation that no foreigner was to be permitted to ascend the heights, since some years before, two travellers, who were considered as wholly unsuspecting persons, were detected upon the heights in taking drawings of the fortifications about the town. The governor, notwithstanding, complied with the general's request, and at day-break I went on shore. After breakfasting with this polite Englishman, I found an excellent horse prepared for me, and the overseer of his gardens, a certain Mr. Porteus, ready to accompany me.\*

---

\* Captain Krusenstern, the Russian circumnavigator, mentions in the account of his voyage, that foreigners are not allowed to go about the island of St. Helena, assigning the same cause for this regulation that is here given: he also mentions that an exception had been made, a few weeks before, in favour of Dr. Lichtenstein, who happened to be at the Cape when it was captured by the English, and had a particular recommendation from Sir David Baird.—TRANSLATOR.

St. Helena combines in itself the excellencies of several climates. It lies in the torrid zone, under the sixteenth degree of southern latitude; but being, as it were, one enormous rock, with a vast plain at the top, which is almost always enveloped in clouds that entertain an unvaried moisture, and being surrounded by the sea, the heat is never insupportable. Besides, which is very remarkable, the south-east wind constantly blows here at all seasons of the year, and the strongest at the time when at the Cape of Good Hope, which lies directly to the south-east of it, the north-west wind prevails there. About the equator, at this time of the year, navigators have often to complain of calms, by which they are extremely annoyed—a phenomenon not easily to be explained. James-Town lies in a narrow dell, among the mountains, through which a small stream flows into the sea. This is the landing-place, and it is defended by a respectable battery upon the shore. The road is commanded by very formidable works, erected at different heights upon the mountains on each side. The island is considered, in its present situation, as wholly impregnable. A convenient and substantially built mole facilitates the landing of the boats; which otherwise, from the heavy swell of the sea, would sometimes be very difficult. From hence the road goes to the right wing of the strand battery, beyond which a fine avenue of the large Indian fig-trees, *ficus religiosa*, leads to the gates of the town. This lies nearly in the centre of a wall which runs from one hill to the other, and which divides the town from the strand. On entering the town, the Government-house, a very spacious building, lies directly to the left; and from hence runs a long street, which, with some houses scattered upon the heights, comprehends the whole town. Directly at the end of the street lie the gardens of the governor, and some private gardens: behind the latter stands a centinel, who prevents any stranger going farther.

In the governor's garden are plants from all climates. The principal walks are bordered with the *ficus religiosa*, or the *ficus bengalensis*. Some of the bye-walks are formed of bamboo-canes, which grow to a great height, and afford ample shade. Here are to be seen European plants by the side of natives of Africa, of the East Indies, of New Holland, and of South America, all appearing equally thriving and healthy. Nothing excited my interest and attention so much as a tree, which the celebrated Cook, at his return from his second voyage, planted here himself, giving it the name of the *Barringtonia*

*speciosa*. It is now of a considerable size; and, at the present moment, when every branch was full of the most splendid flowers, it really presented one of the most glorious spectacles that the world of plants could offer. Some idea of it may be formed by conceiving a very beautiful lime-tree, with a large flower of the *cactus* at the end of every twig. The smell is indeed scarcely less balsamic than that of the beautiful *cactus*, which we prize so much in our hot-houses, and which blows only in the night. *Protea*, *erythrina*, *sophora*, and other well-known plants of the Cape, were presented to my view, as if once more to bid us farewell: while in the moister parts of the garden were cocoa-trees, with date and fan-palms. These latter seemed to have found here a soil much more congenial to them than that of the Cape, where they never will thrive.

When we had gone over this garden, which indeed I had visited before on the first day of my arrival, we proceeded on our way. This led first still deeper into the dell, and then ascending, for about half an hour, by a very steep path, we arrived at the plain. Here we saw every way a number of farms among fine verdant fields and meadows, which reminded me more of European, particularly of English houses, than any I had seen in the colony. Fat cattle were feeding upon luxurious grass; yet my companion said that the island could not furnish such a supply of food to these creatures as they required. The character he gave of the inhabitants was such as may be applied to European colonists in most parts of the world. Courage, hospitality, propensity to oppose the government, eternal quarrels with their neighbours, neglect of cultivating the mind,—these, as he said, are the principal features of their characters. The country soon became more uneven and hilly, till we reached a highly romantic spot, where neat farms, in deep recesses in the mountains, planted round with oaks and poplars, presented themselves on every side. I absolutely revelled in the enjoyment so long denied me, of the moist mountain air, and luxurious pastures. Our route carried us to the north-westerly and highest point of the island. Here the soil was less fertile, and the houses smaller. About the hills stood many single trees, natives of the country, in general from ten to twelve feet high, with naked stems and large broad leaves, the systematic names of which my companion could not give me. Three sorts of them are here called *cabbage-trees*, and two other sorts *gum-trees*. The higher we went, the more moist

we found the soil, and the more did the grasses, which were almost all of the pure European sorts, give way to ferns. We rode constantly in a mist, or small rain; and I learnt that the sun is here seldom seen. Clouds are always resting on this part of the island. After seeing many very rare and beautiful plants of the *polypodium*, *asplenium*, *blechnum*, *jungermannia*, and *marchantia* species, with a variety of others, we came at length to the spot which is the true native place of the largest among all the ferns, *dicksonia arborescens*. This plant may very fairly be likened to the palm, which, however, it far excels in the beauty of its leaves. The stems of many of the plants were from twelve to fourteen feet in height: they stood singly, growing out of crevices in the rocks. They are only found on this one spot in the island, and grow in no other country; so that it would not be a difficult matter to extirpate the race from the earth.

My companion now led me along the crest of this hill to one of the finest points in the island, from which the eye wanders over a very remarkable country. To the left, the green heights stretch in a direct line, declining always towards the western border of the island; behind which the horizon of the sea, seen from this height to an immense distance, seems to rise in an immeasurable arch. On the other side tower, in fearful contrast, monstrous naked masses of rock, of equal height with the opposite jagged summits. It seems wholly inexplicable why there should be here no symptom of vegetation, when in most parts of the island it is so luxurious. Nothing, however, is to be seen about these rocks, excepting the nests of the sea-fowl, which are built in the cavities, and seem to be suffered to remain there undisturbed. That the wild and romantic character of the valley may be preserved even in its name, the first discoverer consecrated it to the memory of one of the heroes of Ossian; and, at this day, it bears the name of *Ryno's Vale*.

From hence we were obliged partially to measure back our steps, since there is only one path by which these heights can be reached. We then turned towards the northern shore of the island; and in the afternoon arrived at the governor's country-house, where we found him himself, surrounded by his three most amiable daughters. The good taste displayed in the house, and in laying out the gardens, reminded me, in the most pleasing manner, of England. Each of the young ladies was mistress of some art. The eldest

played very finely, and the second sung with equal taste, while the third shewed me a room filled with the most excellent oil-paintings, the produce of her own hands. Six large pictures represented the finest views, on the island. I knew them immediately; and contemplated, with transport, such a spirited and faithful representation of Ryno's Vale. A better judge than myself, seeing these pictures in a gallery, might have supposed them the production of some great master. The few hours that I spent with this interesting family, will always be reckoned among the happiest of my life. After dinner, which was not over till night was closing in, I returned back to James-Town, in company with Lieutenant Pritchard, Adjutant to the General. I just arrived at the town in time to go on board my ship with the last boat.

The next day we weighed anchor, and pursued our voyage with a continued favourable wind. On the twenty-ninth we passed the island of Ascension; and on the fourth of April crossed the line, in twenty degrees of longitude west of Greenwich. We soon came into the course of the north-east trade-wind, which continued to prevail till the twenty-seventh of April. It had brought us by that time to the latitude of the Canary Islands. A storm then came on from the north-west; in the midst of which, on the fifth of May, we passed the Azores. On the sixteenth, we first found a bottom at eighty-five fathom water, and the next day the Scilly Islands were visible. We were here at the entrance of the Channel visited by several English ships of war; and our proud Captain, not always choosing to give an immediate answer, we were fired at by some. On the twentieth, we came to anchor before Plymouth. Here we learnt all the most important political occurrences that had recently taken place, but not one of us was permitted to set a foot on shore. After as short a stay as possible, we pursued our course; and, at length, on the fifth of June, arrived safely and happily at Flushing. I remained four months in Holland, and in October once more reached my native country, having been absent five years and a half. In the arms of my friends, I found a most delightful recompense for all my toils and labours.

END OF PART THE SEVENTH, AND OF THE TRAVELS.

# APPENDIX.

## No. 1.

---

---

### *On the Language of the wild Hottentot Tribes, particularly of the Corans and Bosjesmans.*

**I**N the colony, and in the service of the Europeans, very few Hottentots are to be found who are not able to speak the Dutch language, or who speak their own language pure and entire. Most of them only retain some particular expressions, which are mingled with the Dutch, Portuguese, and Malay languages, spoken by the slaves and common people, in the proportion of not more than a fourth part. On the borders alone are some Hottentots to be found who speak their own language; but among them several foreign words are introduced, spoken with the Hottentot accent and snort. It is, therefore, a vain endeavour to become acquainted with this language in the colony itself: it is only beyond the borders that any one can hope to procure such results upon the subject as may serve for a foundation on which to confirm or refute what has been said by former travellers. Much of the information I have procured from other writers, who have occupied themselves with such researches, illustrated by many observations of my own, has already been given to the world, in the Essay which I published in *Bertuch and Vater's Ethnographical Archives upon the Languages of the Savage tribes in Southern Africa*; I shall, therefore, only give here, in addition, such general observations as appear to me the most worthy of attention.

The extraordinary characteristic of these languages has attracted the notice of all travellers. The Portuguese, who first landed here with Vasco de Gama, called the Hottentot manner of speaking stammering. Later observers, among the English and Dutch, repeated this inapplicable comparison, finding the pronunciation so difficult, that, for instance, in Lancaster's voyage in the year 1601, not one of his people, during a stay of seven weeks, could pronounce a single word accurately. Dapper compared the Hottentot manner of speaking with the gobbling of a turkey-cock; but, this set aside, he describes the language as fundamentally good. Ten Rhyn is the writer who speaks with more accuracy upon this subject than any other, when he gives the clacking with the tongue, and the speaking with open rounded lips, as the most striking characteristics of the pronunciation. Le Vaillant is the most diffuse of our modern travellers; but he heard too little of what can be called pure Hottentot, to judge of it fairly; and many

## APPENDIX.

things said by him are therefore erroneous. For various reasons, indeed, it is almost impossible to give, in writing, information that shall be intelligible upon languages of such a nature, or to treat of them after the manner in which we should treat of a language reduced to a regular system. My remarks must therefore appear desultory, and, in some sort, like broken fragments; yet, I trust, they will be found not destitute of merit or utility, in comparison with those of former writers.

To give an idea of the general impression made on the ear by the sound of this language on first hearing it, a man must figure to himself that he is listening to short sentences, pronounced with a quick and rough voice, deep in the throat, accompanied by a sharp aspiration and clucking with the tongue, in which double vowels occur perpetually. Nothing strikes so much as the croaking in the throat, and clucking with the tongue. Most of the tones are formed deep in the mouth between the back of the tongue and the gums. Labial letters are scarcely to be heard at all: or only, as it were, by chance, at the end of a sentence in closing the mouth. This clucking seems the most striking distinction to be observed between the pronunciation of these languages, and of all others. Le Vaillant was the first who taught us that there were several degrees of it to be distinguished, of which he particularly describes three. Van der Kemp describes six, which, he observes, all have their different powers; those powers, arising from the point of the tongue, being struck against the inside of the double teeth, or of the front teeth, or from the back of the tongue being struck against the roof of the mouth. The smallest degree is compared by Le Vaillant to the tone with which a man drives a horse. For the stronger, it is difficult to find a comparison; and it is nearly impossible to be imitated by an European. The peculiar conformation of the skull of a Hottentot, where the bones of the gums are less wide asunder, and the roof of the mouth is less arched than among us, at the same time that the tongue is shorter and thicker, must be considered as the foundation of this very extraordinary sound. The principal difficulty is not so much in producing the sound singly, as in following it immediately with another letter or syllable. It will easily, therefore, be comprehended that it cannot accord with many consonants, since they must be produced by the lips: that the sound must much rather be expressed by vowels, or guttural letters; though occasionally *n*, *s*, and *t* occur. Le Vaillant made use of signs invented by himself to express these sounds; but I think they will be more easily comprehended by following Van der Kemp's method,\* and employing the numbers 1, 2, 3, to distinguish the degrees of the sound; and, after the example of Sparrman, to precede many words with the *t*, which gives a pretty accurate idea of that particular sound.

In sounds which may be described by the letters of our alphabet, the Hottentots have none corresponding with *l*, *f*, *v*, *w*, and *x*; nor have they any sound similar to the hissing of our *sch*. In guttural sounds they abound much more than we do: they have all that proceed from *h*, through the Arabic *hha*, the *ch*, the Dutch *g*, to our German *g*, *k*, and *kch*. The strong aspiration, which occurs in so many words, is, above all things, characteristic in these languages; yet Le Vaillant goes too far when he would give it a distinctive sign, since it

---

\* This enthusiastic converter of the Hottentots, printed, with his own hands, in the year 1806, a catechism in the Hottentot language for the use of the missionaries.

APPENDIX.

is much better expressed by the sounds given above. The gradations in this sound are so minute, that an European ear has often much difficulty in distinguishing one sound from another, which presents a directly opposite idea, and is distinguished only by the greater or less degree of aspiration. In the sounds formed by the teeth and lips, they are much more careless, and confuse every moment *d* with *g*, and *b* with *d*; so that one is doubtful which of these letters ought to be employed to express the sound. The abundant terminations in *ihb* and *ihng*, in *uhb* and *uhng*, have often the same meaning. The termination in labial letters, on the contrary, as *b* and *m*, have a marked distinction from those ending in *s*. The *b*, or *m*, is always the sign of the masculine, the *s* of the feminine; as, *t'ghub*, a ram; *t'guhs*, an ewe; *chaib*, a man; *chaisas*, a woman; *t'kaam*, brother; *t'kaans*, sister.

Vowels and double vowels abound, and are very distinct in all their gradations: *o* and *u* are those that occur the most frequently; *e* the most rarely. They are pronounced throughout much more long than short, and the sound rests upon them. The radical words are, for the most part, of two syllables: in these the consonants are pronounced much more rapidly. *A* and *o* have here, as in most languages, the greatest variety of shadings; and occur, in various ways, as double sounds with the other vowels. It is, therefore, with a particular view that I make use of different signs to distinguish such double sounds, although in our language they would pass for the same as *aa* and *ah*; and with equal design I write *ou*, *au*, *eu*, *oi*, *öi*, *ö*, *eh*, *ee*, *ä*, *ei*, *ai*, as indicating gradations which must be expressed by distinctive symbols, if we would make the Hottentot understood in writing. An idea of what I mean may be collected from the following list of words nearly allied to each other:—

t <sup>1</sup> a u b . . . . . the neck.	t <sup>1</sup> k c h a u b . . . . . a fish.
t <sup>2</sup> a a u b . . . . . blood.	t <sup>2</sup> k c h a a u b . . . . the field:
d a u b . . . . . the zebra.	k o u b . . . . . the heart.
d a a u b . . . . . a road.	t <sup>1</sup> k o u b . . . . . fat.
g a u b . . . . . the gnu.	t <sup>1</sup> k o o b . . . . . flesh.
t <sup>1</sup> g a a u b . . . . . cold.	t <sup>1</sup> k h o o b . . . . . a knapsack.
t <sup>1</sup> k a u b . . . . . a snake.	t <sup>1</sup> k o b . . . . . a child.
t <sup>1</sup> k a a u b . . . . . a buffalo.	t <sup>2</sup> k o o b i . . . . . death
t <sup>2</sup> k a a u b . . . . . a party of soldiers.	

*Ai*, *ei*, *eu*, and *oi*, have in other words similar relations; as here *au* and *ou*, which must all be distinguished by the different degree of clucking with the tongue, and of which it is therefore very difficult to give an idea in writing.

As to what concerns the grammatical formation of the language, the following remarks seem to me worthy of attention. There is no article; so that there is no means of shewing the declensions of nouns but by the connexion, the intonation, and the gestures. In some particular cases these are assisted by the particles, which are very abundant, and which appear to be introduced very arbitrarily; so much so, that at first, people endeavoured to convert them into terminations, or into the article itself. Farther, there are no auxiliary verbs; and the Hottentots, even in speaking Dutch, do not know how to make use of them. As little

## APPENDIX.

could I succeed in finding out any thing like conjugation of verbs; so that there reigns throughout in the language a want of precision, which is only to be supplied by the variations of the countenance, and the animation of the gestures. The arrangement of the words seems also very arbitrary; at least, notwithstanding all my endeavours, I could not arrive at any satisfactory results in this respect. Indeed, every inquiry which I made as to the reason why such a word was put in such a place, or what was the use of an intermediate syllable, only led to my being more and more embarrassed. There is no doubt, however, that much elucidation of this matter might be obtained by remaining for a long time with one particular tribe, so as to obtain a complete knowledge of the language. All that I could learn, respecting these intermediate syllables, was, that they used them principally to render the expression more clear and more forcible. They are, therefore, the most in use among the most rude and wild of the tribes, abounding much more in the Bosjesman language than in the Coran. They change, indeed, almost in every single horde; and where the nouns and verbs themselves are the same, the thought is expressed by a different intermediate syllable. The verb, standing by itself, always signifies the third person: there are appropriate pronouns to distinguish the first and second. The want of auxiliaries to express the time, is often transferred by the Hottentots into the Dutch language. Personal pronouns are as little declined as substantives. The adjectives are, for the most part, either verbs or substantives, with such trifling variations, that they can scarcely be distinguished from participles.

Among all the Hottentot dialects, none is so rough and wild, and differs so much from the rest, as that of the Bosjesmans; so that it is scarcely understood by any of the other tribes. It is, in the first place, much poorer in sounds: many sounds, which may be expressed by our letters, in the Gonaqua, the Coran, and the Namaqua languages, are either totally wanting among them, or very rarely occur. Pure vowels are seldom to be heard; but the cluck and the diphthongs are much more frequent. The cluck, in particular, seems the most completely at home among them: scarcely a word occurs without it. The gurgling in the throat is much deeper, and hence ensue the most disagreeable nasal tones. The speech ends with a sort of singing sound, which dies away by degrees, and is often some seconds before it wholly ceases. To avoid saying any thing about the language, I rather give a short vocabulary of words and modes of speech. I do not make it very ample, since no one who may happen, after me, to visit this people, will wish to learn so rude a language, except upon the spot itself: they may yet, however, be glad to have some specimens of it.

---

## VOCABULARY.

	<i>Coran.</i>	<i>Bosjesman.</i>
One .....	t <sup>1</sup> ko-ei.....	t <sup>1</sup> ko-ai.
Two .....	t <sup>1</sup> koam.....	t <sup>1</sup> kuh.
Three.....	t <sup>1</sup> norra.....	They are entirely destitute of
Four .....	hakka .....	the other numerals.

APPENDIX.

	<i>Coran.</i>	<i>Bosjesman.</i>
Five.....	kurruh .....	t <sup>1</sup> kubi.
Six.....	t <sup>1</sup> nani .....	t <sup>1</sup> naa.
Seven.....	honko .....	t <sup>1</sup> saguh.
Eight.....	t <sup>1</sup> kaissee .....	t <sup>1</sup> nuhutu.
Nine.....	t <sup>1</sup> goissee .....	tub.
Ten.....	diissi .....	t <sup>1</sup> kei.
—————		
A Man.....	köhn .....	t <sup>1</sup> inn.
The head.....	minnong .....	t <sup>1</sup> nomm.
The eye.....	muhm .....	t <sup>1</sup> uki.
The nose.....	t <sup>1</sup> geub .....	t <sup>1</sup> no eingtu.
The mouth.....	t <sup>2</sup> kchamma .....	t <sup>1</sup> kaü.
The teeth.....	t <sup>1</sup> kuhm .....	t <sup>1</sup> neintu.
The tongue.....	tamma .....	t <sup>1</sup> oo.
The beard.....	t <sup>1</sup> nomkoa.....	t <sup>1</sup> aa.
The hair.....	t <sup>1</sup> onkoa .....	t <sup>2</sup> kauki.
The ear.....	t <sup>1</sup> naum .....	t <sup>2</sup> kautu.
The neck.....	t <sup>1</sup> aub .....	t <sup>1</sup> geun.
The breast.....	t <sup>1</sup> hamma* .....	t <sup>2</sup> kooih.
The arm.....	t <sup>1</sup> koam .....	t <sup>1</sup> hee.
The hand.....	t <sup>1</sup> koam } .....	t <sup>2</sup> koah.
The finger.....	t <sup>1</sup> unkoa } .....	t <sup>2</sup> noah.
The body.....	t <sup>2</sup> kaab .....	
The belly.....	t <sup>2</sup> komma .....	
The entrails.....	t <sup>1</sup> geunkoa .....	
The back.....	t <sup>2</sup> kam, t <sup>1</sup> kaib† .....	
The thigh.....	tiim .....	
The leg.....	t <sup>1</sup> nuh .....	
The foot.....	t <sup>1</sup> keib .....	
—————		
Father.....	Aboob .....	Oa.
Mother.....	Eijoos .....	Choa.
Brother.....	t <sup>2</sup> kaam .....	t <sup>2</sup> kang.
Sister.....	t <sup>2</sup> kaans .....	t <sup>2</sup> kaach.
Husband.....	{ köub } .....	t <sup>1</sup> aa.
	{ keub } .....	
	{ chaib } .....	

\* The same word in the Beetsjan language signifies the neck.

† Literally, the *behind man*.

APPENDIX.

	<i>Coran.</i>	<i>Bosjesman.</i>
Wife.....	chaisas	t <sup>1</sup> aiti.
A girl.....	t <sup>1</sup> kos }	t <sup>1</sup> koang.
A youth.....	t <sup>1</sup> karoob	t <sup>1</sup> kat <sup>1</sup> koang.
A child.....	t <sup>1</sup> kob	t <sup>1</sup> nuh.
Sir, master.....	t <sup>1</sup> gausab	
<hr/>		
A garment.....	t <sup>1</sup> nama	t <sup>1</sup> no-eing.
A cap.....	kabaab	t <sup>1</sup> ki.
Slippers.....	t <sup>1</sup> abokoa	t <sup>1</sup> kuki.
A hassagai.....	koans	t <sup>1</sup> gorkëka.
A bow.....	kehaab	t <sup>1</sup> hau.
An arrow.....	t <sup>1</sup> koab	t <sup>1</sup> gnoa.
A quiver.....	guruhs	t <sup>1</sup> ko-ai.
A bag.....	t <sup>1</sup> khoob	t <sup>1</sup> koih.
<hr/>		
Game.....	chammarieb	t <sup>1</sup> kaai.
A lion.....	chamma	t <sup>1</sup> kaang.
A leopard.....	choassaub	t <sup>1</sup> kuih.
A hyena.....	t <sup>1</sup> juhkam	t <sup>1</sup> goang.
A jackal.....	t <sup>1</sup> gen-eeb	t <sup>1</sup> kooru.
A dog.....	Arrieb m. Arries f. ..	t <sup>1</sup> köing.
An elephant.....	t <sup>1</sup> koab	t <sup>1</sup> koah.
A river-horse.....	t <sup>1</sup> kaaus	t <sup>1</sup> gah.
A buffalo.....	t <sup>1</sup> kaaub	t <sup>1</sup> kau.
Cattle.....	gummande	choro.
A bull.....	kchrama	t <sup>1</sup> go-aih.
A cow.....	gumango	t <sup>1</sup> goaiti.
An ox.....	dwiman	dibi.
A calf.....	t <sup>1</sup> nom	t <sup>1</sup> goorköa.
A sheep.....	t <sup>1</sup> guh	t <sup>1</sup> gai.
An eland.....	t <sup>1</sup> kannam	t <sup>1</sup> sah.
A gnu.....	gaub	t <sup>1</sup> kori.
A springbock.....	t <sup>1</sup> huuns	oai.
A hare.....	t <sup>1</sup> koamp	t <sup>1</sup> knau.
An ape.....	t <sup>1</sup> naitaab	t <sup>1</sup> hobo.
A bird.....	t <sup>1</sup> kariude	t <sup>1</sup> kanni.
A crow.....	t <sup>1</sup> guraab	t <sup>1</sup> aaki.
A fish.....	t <sup>1</sup> kchaub	t <sup>1</sup> ko-eings.
<hr/>		
The sun.....	soröhb	t <sup>1</sup> koöra.
The moon.....	t <sup>1</sup> khaam	t <sup>1</sup> kaukaruh.

APPENDIX.

	<i>Coran.</i>	<i>Bojesman.</i>
The stars .....	kambrokōa .....	t <sup>1</sup> koaati.
Fire .....	t <sup>2</sup> aib .....	t <sup>2</sup> jih.
Water .....	t <sup>1</sup> kamma .....	t <sup>1</sup> kohaa.
Land, the field....	t <sup>2</sup> kchaaub .....	t <sup>2</sup> kauguh.
A river.....	t <sup>1</sup> kahp .....	t <sup>1</sup> ka.
A spring.....	muhmt <sup>1</sup> kamma .....	t <sup>1</sup> kohaat <sup>1</sup> saguh.*
A tree.....	heikoa .....	t <sup>1</sup> huh.
Wood .....	t <sup>2</sup> nomma .....	t <sup>1</sup> hauki.
Rain .....	t <sup>1</sup> huus .....	t <sup>1</sup> huus.
Thunder .....	t <sup>2</sup> guruh .....	t <sup>2</sup> guruh.
Lightning .....	t <sup>2</sup> abaa .....	t <sup>2</sup> koahkaung.
Wind.....	t <sup>2</sup> koaab .....	t <sup>1</sup> kooih.
Day .....	sorōkoa .....	t <sup>2</sup> gaa.
Night .....	t <sup>2</sup> kaib .....	t <sup>2</sup> kaankuh.
Summer .....	t <sup>1</sup> kuraam .....	t <sup>1</sup> koara.
Winter .....	tsauba.....	t <sup>2</sup> naa.
A mountain .....	t <sup>2</sup> eub .....	t <sup>2</sup> aa.
A road .....	daaub.....	t <sup>1</sup> kau
Flesh .....	t <sup>2</sup> koob .....	aa.
Fat .....	t <sup>1</sup> gneub .....	s <sup>1</sup> jeuni.
Milk .....	diib .....	t <sup>1</sup> koaiti.
Honey .....	dariings.....	t <sup>2</sup> kaau.
—		
Good .....	t <sup>2</sup> kain .....	teteini.
Bad .....	t <sup>1</sup> huh .....	t <sup>2</sup> kauaki.
Young .....	t <sup>2</sup> aa .....	t <sup>2</sup> aa.
Old .....	geida .....	t <sup>1</sup> nutara.
Warm .....	t <sup>1</sup> koang.....	tant <sup>2</sup> jih.
Cold .....	t <sup>1</sup> goaub .....	tissariti.
Ill .....	t <sup>2</sup> aissen .....	t <sup>2</sup> koaising.
Dead.....	t <sup>2</sup> koab .....	t <sup>2</sup> kuhb.
Easy .....	sūih .....	t <sup>2</sup> kirri.
Hard .....	t <sup>2</sup> kom .....	t <sup>1</sup> nangua.
White.....	t <sup>2</sup> chatih .....	t <sup>2</sup> ko-eita.
Black .....	t <sup>1</sup> nuh.....	t <sup>1</sup> nua.
Red .....	t <sup>1</sup> abaa .....	t <sup>2</sup> kūja.
—		
I .....	tire .....	ää oder mm.
Thou.....	saats .....	aa.

\* Literally, *the eyes of the water*. In almost all the Eastern languages, the word *ain* signifies equally the *eye*, and a *spring*.

APPENDIX.

	<i>Coran.</i>	<i>Bosjesman.</i>
He .....	t <sup>1</sup> naakeub (this man.)	haba.
We .....	sida .....	ji oder sisi.
Ye .....	sakaar .....	ǃ-ǃ.
They .....	t <sup>2</sup> naakaar .....	(wanting.)
Mine .....	tli .....	inng.
Thine .....	sachuhb .....	aaka t <sup>1</sup> so-ing.
His .....	t <sup>2</sup> naa keub huhb (this man good.)	haka t <sup>2</sup> so-ing.
Ours .....	sidachukōa.....	sisika t <sup>2</sup> so-ing.
—————		
To eat .....	uhng .....	haa.
To drink .....	t <sup>1</sup> kchaa .....	t <sup>1</sup> koa.
To smoak .....	t <sup>1</sup> kei .....	t <sup>2</sup> ohii.
To sleep .....	t <sup>1</sup> kchom .....	t <sup>1</sup> ko-ing.
To hunt .....	t <sup>2</sup> kchammi.....	t <sup>1</sup> kohaa.
To ensnare .....	t <sup>1</sup> koo .....	t <sup>2</sup> keia.
To strike .....	t <sup>1</sup> naau .....	t <sup>2</sup> gauchu.
To shoot .....	t <sup>1</sup> noaa .....	t <sup>1</sup> khaaiti.
To hit .....	t <sup>1</sup> noaa-hó .....	
To fail .....	t <sup>1</sup> noaa-sá .....	
To stand .....	maa.....	t <sup>2</sup> khee.
To go .....	t <sup>2</sup> kuhung .....	t <sup>2</sup> aii.
To run .....	t <sup>1</sup> ku-üh .....	t <sup>1</sup> koachi.
To speak .....	kabaa.....	t <sup>1</sup> kakki.
To laugh .....	t <sup>1</sup> kaing .....	t <sup>1</sup> koaing.
To stop.....	t <sup>1</sup> koo.....	t <sup>2</sup> kaa.
To be hungry ...	t <sup>1</sup> karroo .....	t <sup>1</sup> kanga.
To be thirsty.....	t <sup>1</sup> kang .....	t <sup>1</sup> keunja.
To live .....	t <sup>1</sup> ko-ing .....	t <sup>2</sup> kaaa.
To die .....	t <sup>1</sup> koo .....	t <sup>1</sup> kuki.
To lie .....	t <sup>1</sup> kamüh .....	t <sup>2</sup> koaja.
—————		
Good day .....	dnabeh .....	t <sup>1</sup> abeh.

- |                        |   |   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| Whence come you? ..... | } | C. Hamt <sup>1</sup> kuhb saat goacha.* |
|                        |   | Whence you come?                        |
|                        |   | B. Achang t <sup>2</sup> ain'tidi.      |
|                        |   | Whence come?                            |

\* The syllable *Ham* or *ha*, among the Corans, as well as the Bosjesmans, always denotes a question, as *Acha*, *Achang*, *Achasing*, and spares a change of tone. Under what circumstance these syllables are changed, and whether they are introduced arbitrarily, or according to any rules, I could not learn.

APPENDIX.

I come from thence .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>noa daaub tir' goacha. This way I come.</p> <p>B. t<sup>2</sup>kang ing t<sup>2</sup>ainti. There I come.</p>
What is your name? .....	<p>C. Ham-ti sa unna. What thy name.</p> <p>B. Achang aa taide. How you call.</p>
I am a colonist, an European, a white man .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>uhmbe tire. Colonist I.</p> <p>B. Mm t<sup>1</sup>koanga t<sup>1</sup>huh. I man white.</p>
Have you seen any game? .....	<p>C. Chammaring muhsti ha. Game seen ask.</p> <p>B. Achasing t<sup>1</sup>au t<sup>1</sup>kaaiti. Ask seen game.</p>
Yes .....	<p>C. Eijoo.</p> <p>B. Kangee-ha.</p>
No .....	<p>C. Aa or Haa.</p> <p>B. t<sup>1</sup>kau-iha.</p>
Where did you see it? .....	<p>C. Babaatsi muhsti ha. Where seen ask.</p> <p>B. Tire chasing t<sup>1</sup>aua. Where ask seen.</p>
Whither do you go? .....	<p>C. Babaatsi t<sup>2</sup>kuhung ha. Where go ask.</p> <p>B. Acha kaung t<sup>2</sup>aintidi. Ask where go.</p>
Give me some tobacco. ....	<p>C. Bachab maa. Tobacco give.</p> <p>B. Ake twakka. Give tobacco.</p>
I have none .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>gaiah. Bachab orekc-aa. It fails. Tobacco have not.</p> <p>B. Mm t<sup>1</sup>koang t<sup>2</sup>au t<sup>1</sup>keikei. I man none have.</p>
Take it .....	<p>C. Uh.</p> <p>B. t<sup>1</sup>kaa.</p>
Are you thirsty? .....	<p>C. t<sup>1</sup>kaantsi t<sup>1</sup>kang. Thirstest thou thirst.</p> <p>B. Acha t<sup>1</sup>keunja. Ask thirst.</p>

APPENDIX.

I am thirsty .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>kaare t<sup>2</sup>kang. Thirst I thirst.</p> <p>B. Mm t<sup>1</sup>koang t<sup>1</sup>keunja I thirst.</p>
Drink, here is water .....	<p>C. t<sup>1</sup>kamma t<sup>1</sup>kohaa. Water drink.</p> <p>B. t<sup>1</sup>kohaa t<sup>1</sup>kaukhe. Water drink.</p>
You are a good man .....	<p>C. Sa-t<sup>2</sup>kaina keub. You good man.</p> <p>B. Aa t<sup>1</sup>koang tetéini. You man good.</p>
This man is not good .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>kaina tite t<sup>2</sup>naa keub. Good not this man.</p> <p>B. hua t<sup>1</sup>koang t<sup>2</sup>au teteini. This man not good.</p>
Do you know him? .....	<p>C. Entse hen keub. Know ask man.</p> <p>B. Achaa injii. Ask know.</p>
Give me meat .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>koob mas.</p> <p>B. Ake aa.</p>
You shall come to-morrow .....	<p>C. t<sup>1</sup>aati uh. Morrow take.</p> <p>B. t<sup>3</sup>uhkaissi ahat'sgavi. Morrow.</p>
You must come again .....	<p>C. t<sup>2</sup>kaaba ha. Come ask.</p> <p>B. Aa kossi t<sup>2</sup>kangsi</p>

# APPENDIX.

No. 2.

---

## *Upon the Language of the Beetjuans.*

**ALTHOUGH** this has been already mentioned as a dialect of the Koossa language, and that there is a striking resemblance in the radical words of both, yet the same differences are to be found as between two dialects of any European language. That of the Beetjuans is full-toned, soft, and pleasing to the ear; rich in simple sounds, poor in diphthongs, and is spoken slowly and in short sentences. It is deficient in some of the simple sounds of the Koossas; but it has also some not known to them. The snorting of the Hottentots does not prevail among the Beetjuans; and the *f*, with all the relative sounds, is wholly wanting: the croaking *r*, however, occurs in many words, and the cluck with the tongue, which I also distinguish here by the mark -, is much more prevalent than among the Koossas. What is said of the declamation and of the construction of the language among the latter, is equally applicable to the Beetjuans; but in the use of the auxiliaries, and the preceding mute syllable, there is a great difference. They do not mark the relations of time, like them, by the declension of the pronouns, but have actual auxiliary verbs: *acho*, have, for the past—*rata*, will or shall, for the future. They have no word to represent the idea *his*; nor have they, like the Koossas, augmentatives by introducing the *m*, *n*, *am*, or *in*; but they have the less occasion for these, as their language, from not having the croaking in the throat, and from not being overcharged with words that begin with vowels, is very easy to be spoken.

The annexed vocabulary, I collected, with great diligence, from the mouths of the Beetjuans themselves: some particular remarks I have subjoined in their proper places. It is true, that upon our journey into the country, the missionary Kok imparted to me many observations which he had made upon the language; but none are put down here upon credit only; all have been proved and corrected by my own experience. The two young men of this nation who accompanied us in our return, gave me moreover a fine opportunity for extending my enquiries.

c c c 2

APPENDIX.

VOCABULARY

*Of Words of the Beetjuan Language.*

A man .....	Muhntö.
Men, people .....	Baatö.
A husband .....	Monuhna.
A wife .....	Massari, Bassari.*
A pregnant woman .....	Magatza.
A father.....	Raacho.†
A mother .....	Maacho.
A child .....	Unjana.‡
A youth.....	Mossihmao.
A virgin.....	Mossisanna.
A brother or sister .....	Naka.
An elder brother.....	Muchuluöh.
A younger brother .....	Minna.
A king, a master.....	Murinna.
A slave, a servant.....	Mutjanka.
—	
The head .....	Kocho.
The hair .....	Murihr.
An eye .....	Liklo.
The eyebrows .....	Loossi.
The ear .....	Zäbe.
The nose .....	Ongkö.
The mouth .....	Mulumö.
The tongue .....	Lolehmi.
The teeth .....	Meno.
The beard .....	Litehro.
The neck .....	T'hama.
The breast .....	Sehuba.‖
The back .....	Makotja.
The body.....	Mmele.

\* *B* and *m* are very often changed among the Beetjuans, in the same manner as was the case in many of the Grecian dialects. *Ari* is here the feminine termination, as among the Koossas the syllable *asi*.

† The Beetjuans swear by their father, *Kar raacho*. The Corans make use of death as a word to excite terror, and as a curse; *t'koobi muhisi*, death sees thee; or, *t'koobi kamsi*, death take thee.

‡ *Ana*, or *jana*, is also in this language a diminutive termination.

‖ As the Beetjuans have not the *f*, they put another sound instead into the word where the Koossas use it; thus of *Isifuhba* is made *Schuhba*; of *Imfeeni*, *Tjönti*; of *Imfuhbu*, *Kuhbu*; of *Infuhla*, *Puhla*, &c. &c.

## APPENDIX.

The stomach .....	Mochohru.
The entrails .....	Mmala.
The arm.....	Maboch.
The hand .....	Sscaakja.
The finger ..	Munona.
A nail.....	Nonaala.
The thigh .....	Siruhpi.
The leg.....	Lessaapo.
The foot .....	Lonaö.
-----	
Wild animals in general .....	Polleholla.
An ape .....	Tjöni.
A lion .....	Tau.
A leopard.....	Onkoöh.t
A grey wild cat.....	P'haach.
A red wild cat .....	T'huaní.
A mottled wild cat .....	Zipa.
A hyena.....	P'heeri.
A jackal.....	P'hákujeh.
A dog.....	Intja.
An elephant.....	Kau.
A rhinoceros .....	K'homba.
A river-horse.....	Kuhhu.
A giraffe .....	T'hókosa.
Cattle in general .....	Komo.
A bull .....	Paaha.
A cow .....	Komóna-namagári.
An ox.....	Komotuna.
A draught ox .....	Makába.
A calf.....	Namáni.
A buffalo .....	Nerri.
An eland antelope.....	Pohu.
A kudu antelope .....	T'holla.
A hartebeest .....	K'ham.
A gnu.....	K'hokong.
A springbock .....	Zebe.
A sheep .....	Ongkuh.
A goat .....	Puhri.

---

\* *Ongkó* signifies the nose; probably the name of the leopard is therefore derived from the acuteness of his smell. In like manner *sebe* signifies the ear, *sebe* a springbock, doubtless from the quickness of hearing in this animal.

APPENDIX.

A horse, a quagga .....	P'heetsi.
A bird .....	Nonjani.
A vulture.....	Manong.
An ostrich .....	Intjeh.
A crow .....	Makakābi.
Fish .....	Tjapi.
<hr/>	
Flesh .....	Nama.
Fat.....	Mahur.
Milk.....	Maassi.
Fresh milk.....	Maassi lobehsa.
Honey .....	Rinoossi.
Corn, bread.....	Mabehli.
Victuals in general .....	Lijo.
Tobacco.....	Montjuko.
A pipe .....	Kakanna.
A house, a hut, a waggou ...	Moossi or Ontjuh
A garment, a cloak.....	Kobō.
A head-dress .....	Kurru.
Sandals .....	Sittako.
Beads .....	Sehacha.
Buttons .....	Thalama.
A bag.....	K'heetsi.
A hassagai .....	Leruhmo.
An arrow.....	Musa.
A bow .....	Bura.
A quiver .....	K'hobuhlo.
<hr/>	
Land, the field .....	Lehaatsi.
A river .....	Malappo.
A spring.....	Noka.
Water.....	Meetsi.
A tree .....	Moka.
A shrub .....	Sekar.
A thicket.....	Sekarre.
Wood.....	Lochuhm.
Fire .....	Mulehlo.
The air, the heavens.....	Maaro.
The sun .....	Leetshaatsi.
The moon .....	Köhri.
The stars .....	Linaleeri.
Rain .....	Puhla.

## APPENDIX.

Thunder .....	Tjarre.
Lightning .....	Lechorima.
The wind ... ..	Peehu.
A mountain.....	Majeh.
A hill .....	Majanna:
Stone, a rock.....	Lintsjoäh.
Hard, heavy stone.....	Linjakomo.*
Soft stone .....	Linjapuri.
Smooth stone.....	Tootsjo.
A road, a path.....	Sela.
Day .....	Motsichari.
Night .....	Bussecho.
Twilight.....	Bussecho-Bussehlo.
	(Dark, clear.)
Red morning .....	Mukuku.
The year.....	Ongachaf
Summer .....	Selehmo.
Winter.....	Marichcha.
To-day.....	Chompijeno.
To-morrow .....	Kammuschö.
—	
Good .....	Manati.
Bad .....	Bussuhla.
Great.....	Buchula.
Small .....	Patsijana.
Young .....	Khubuka.
Old.....	Muhtsjuäh.
Warm.....	Choteetsi.
Cold.....	Seraami.
Ill, sick .....	Bukuhk.
Dead.....	Sjoa.
Alive .....	Sirihle.
Light, in weight.....	Meheehu.
Heavy .....	Tatta.†
Rich.....	Koossi.
Poor.....	Malaala.

\* Literally, *ox-stone*, as the following is literally *goat-stone*.

† The Beetsjuans divide the year into thirteen lunar months, some of which are named after certain colours. In this designation of the seasons they seem to be followed by the Corans, by whom they are still more used and better known.

‡ This word signifies equally *hard, strong, hasty, quick*; and, to describe a high degree of any of these qualities, it is frequently repeated.

APPENDIX.

Long .....	Telehle.
High.....*	Chorimo.*
Alone.....	Heessi or Noossi.
White.....	Mosjeho.
Black .....	Muhntju.
Red .....	Kuhnu.
Red-spotted.....	T'hammacha.
Black-spotted .....	Tiluhri.†

---

To eat .....	Jah.‡
To drink .....	Noa.
To sleep.....	Roballa.
To smook.....	Chocha.
To hunt .....	Tjuma.
To ensnare .....	Tjoarra.
To strike .....	Beetsa.
To hit.....	Beetsahula.
To miss .....	Beetsahoossa.
To fight .....	Ent'hõa.
To stand.....	Eema.
To lie down, to be at rest...	Rula.
To rise up .....	Zchuca.
To go .....	Z'hamma.
To run.....	Z'hamma tatta.
To dance .....	Pina.
To sing .....	Opehla.
To beg .....	Rapohla.
To speak .....	Bua.
To lie .....	Maaka.
To laugh .....	Zecha.
To see.....	Bona.¶
To hear, to feel .....	Hukoa.
To give.....	Na.
To take .....	Meh.
To have, to possess.....	Najo.

---

\* This is one of those words, that, in the sense in which it is used, has a great resemblance to the Arabic and Chaldæic. Words with an Arabic sound are, however, principally to be observed in the names of the tribes, and of the chiefs.

† The two last words are applied principally to distinguishing the different cattle.

‡ In this language the verbs end almost all in *a*, and very few have more than two syllables.

¶ The hammer, being a tool with which they have only lately become acquainted, has, therefore, received from them the derivative appellation of *sedonja*.

APPENDIX.

To hold, to grasp .....	Sjuarra.
To hack, to cut.....	Choremma.
To slice .....	Lootsa.

---

I.....	Ke.
I myself.....	Ke-nah.
Thou.....	Oina or O.
He .....	Muhnto-sih.*
	(The man here.)
We.....	Tjona.
Ye .....	No-ina or No.
They .....	Baato-sih.

---

Mine .....	Aami.
Thine.....	Chago.
His.....	Akkamuhnto.
Us .....	Atjona.

These positive pronouns are, as among the Koossas, substantives, to which the idea of possession is attached.

*This* — *sih*, or *tio* (not *zio*) is, as among the Koossas, a demonstrative article added to the words.

This thing .....	Ssehlo-sih.
This dog.....	Intja-sih.
There is the dog.....	Intja-tio.
What? .....	No.
What is that?.....	No ssehlo-sih.
Who is that man? .....	No muhnto-tio.
Where? wherein? whither?..	Kai.
There .....	Koah.
How .....	Ing.
How large?.....	Buchuhlu-ing.
A little.....	Jana.
Very hasty.....	Tatta.
Only, simply .....	Heela.

*Mongaheela*, the number *one*—*Ke z'hama heela*, I go only so, I wander—*Nama si heela*, this meat only; that is to say, this is all the meat I have: all that was given me. *Th heela* precedes almost all particles with various significations; it always ends the phrase, and increases the force, like other particles, by repetition.

---

\* The *s* at the beginning of a syllable is always sharp.

## APPENDIX.

Much .....	Itzinzi.
Very much.....	Itzinzin-zi.
Yes.....	Eh.
No.....	Njaa.
Not .....	Chasih or Chagoh.

---

### *Exclamations.*

To express astonishment, ad- miration .....	} O-ø.
Joy, applause .....	
Suspicion, distrust.....	O-a-h.
Pain .....	Uhsch.
An oath .....	Karr-re.

---

### *Numerals.*

One .....	Mongaheela.
Two .....	Babeeri.
Three .....	Tharro or Bararro.
Four .....	Inuni.
Five .....	————
Six .....	T'hanno.
Seven .....	Liasjupa
Eight .....	Arrinuni.
Nine .....	————
Ten .....	Sjume.

The numbers are commonly expressed among the Beetjuans by fingers held up, so that the word is rarely spoken: many are even unacquainted with these numerals, and never employ any thing but the sign. It therefore occasioned me no small trouble to learn the numerals; and I could by no means arrive at any denomination for the numbers *five* and *nine*. Beyond ten even the most learned could not reckon, nor could I make out by what signs they ever designated these higher numbers. For the rest, the resemblance between the proportional numbers of three and six, of four and eight, is worthy of remark. The word for the number ten is the same in both the Caffre dialects, and accords with that given both by Sparrman and Mr. Barrow, though the rest of my numerals differ essentially from theirs.

APPENDIX.

*Specimens of Phrases.*

Good day .....	Krumehla or Churimurihsa.
Whence come you?.....	O z'ha. kai. (Thou comest whence.)
I come from Koossi .....	Ke z'hakoah Koossi. (I come thence —.)
What is thy name? .....	Lina chaagoing. (Name thine what.)
I am a colonist.....	Ke Makua.* (I colonist.)
Have you seen any Bosjesmans?	O-achobona Makau(u). (Thou hast seen Bosjesmans.)
I have seen none.....	Ke chasih heela. (I not so only.†)
Nor I neither .....	Kenah chasih. (I myself not.)
They have stolen some oxen..	Acho meh komona. (Have taken oxen.)
Who will follow and bring } them back?..... }	{Tjona z'hamma sjuarra tatta tatta. {(Who go hold fast fast.)
I am hungry .....	Ke bola ke tjala. (I suffer I hunger.)
I am thirsty .....	Ke bola ke linjora.
I have a pain in my head ....	Ke bola ke kocho. (I suffer I head.)
Give me some drink .....	Leekoanno ke noa heela. (Give here I drink.)
Drink, here is milk.....	Noa maassi-tio. (Drink milk here.)
There is a party going to hunt	Leetju-ehlo polleholla koah: (A number armed game there).
They are going to hunt } springbocks .....	{Rata tjuma Zebi. {(Will hunt Zebi.)
I have seen a great many gallinas	Ke acho bona K'haka itzinzi.

\* This was the name by which they heard the first white man called that ever came into their country, and they now designate by it all foreigners who are not Hottentots or Caffres.

† This is also used to express, *I never thought much about it.*

## APPENDIX.

They are good for nothing ...	Chagoh manati. (Not good.)
Their flesh is hard .....	Nama rabihe tatta. (Flesh hard very.)
Take him, hold him awhile...	Sjuarra jana. (Hold awhile.)
I will go with you .....	Ke z'hamma jana.
Whither are you going?.....	O-z'hamma kai.* (You go whither.)
I am going to the Kuruhman..	Ke khamma koah Kurumana.
Do you go alone?.....	Z'hamma heesi Oina. (Go alone thither.)
Are you hungry? .....	Tjala bola O-ina. (Hunger pain thee.)
The sun is going down .....	Leetshaatsi sjule. (Sun dies.)
The sun rises .....	Leetshaatsi leetjabihle.
I am weary .....	Ke acholappa or kelappihle.
We will go home and sleep...	Zhamma roballa na Moossi. (Go sleep at home.)
Go along .....	Z'hammája.
Go a little out of the way....	Z'hammajána.
Give me tobacco.....	Leekoanno montjuko.
I have none.....	Cbago na seepi. (Not have any.)
I will not.....	Ke channa. (I decline.)
I will readily, I am ready....	Ke achorati. (I have willed.)
I do not understand .....	Nachasi hukða. (Not hear.)
Have you found water?.....	Na hukða meetsi.
Have you tasted the bread?..	Na hukða mabeeli.
I smoke tobacco.....	Montjuko ke hukða heela.†

---

\* Although the same word signifies *to go*, and *to come*, it will be observed, by comparing this example with the above, that the pronouncing the word short gives it a different sense; and that by this alone is determined whether the moving *to* or *from* a place is intended. I have observed the like with other words, without being able to find the circumstances under which it was done.

† The same word, *hukoa*, signifies to hear, to smook, to taste, to feel, to perceive, to understand, to find, to be aware of. From hence it is easy to see how poor the language is still, and how much this want of precision in the words requires the assistance of gesticulation.

APPENDIX.

I have killed a kudu .....	Ke acho beetsa T'holla.
I hit it directly .....	Acho beetsa hula hula.
Have you seen a leopard? ...	O-acho bona Ongkoäh.
Where did you see him?.....	O-bona-kai. (You saw where.)
Do you know the river?.....	O-ina heetsi Malappo-sih.
Is the river deep? .....	Chorimo malappo-sih.
The river is deep.....	Malappo-sih chorimo.
Give me an egg to eat.....	Leekoanno maji ke jah. (Give egg I eat.)
You shall have it to-morrow..	Ikekeh kammuhscho. (Wait a little, morrow.)
You must return .....	O charocha chapeh. (You come again back.)

# INDEX.

## A.

- Accident*, a colonist caught in a snare for wild beasts, 16
- Acorus Palmita*, or Palmiet reeds, this plant described, 118
- Æthiopian tribes*, Bruce's account of them compared with those of ancient writers, 47, note—Like the modern Bosjesmans, *ib.*—Pliny's account of these tribes, 49, note—And Pomponius Mela's, *ib.*
- African Colonists*, their manner of travelling, 38
- Africanus*, the Hottentot, account of him and his depredations, 226
- Agriculture*, course of it in the colony, 155
- Aloe perfoliata*, or quiver plant, 198
- Anderson*, an English missionary, his exertions in civilizing the Savages, 243—His habitation, 257—Description of him, *ib.*
- Animals*, a profusion of wild ones in the Karree Mountains, 211
- Ants*, the white, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44
- Arbutus*, or strawberry tree, 104
- Aromatic plants*, salutary food to animals, 24
- Atjar*, an African dish described, 84
- Auctions*, how carried on in the colony, 80
- Auge*, the blind botanist, the author's visit to him, 133
- Ausspannplatzen*; the principal ones in the Karroo, 65

## B.

- Barilla*, extracted by the author from plants in the colony, 356
- Barringtonia speciosa*, a tree planted by Captain Cook at St. Helena, 365
- Barrow, Mr.* strictures on some of his opinions of the African colonists, 5
- Bastard Eland*, a species of antelope, 223
- Bastard Hottentots*, arrival of the travellers at their settlements, 239—First knowledge of the existence of this republic, 240—Situation in which it was found by the travellers, 241—Institutions, 244—Reception of the party, *ib.*—The small pox prevalent among these people, 248—Their traffic with the colonists, 259—Deserving the attention of the government, 260—Cases of two who were wounded by Bosjesmans, 188

- Baviansklooff*, visited again by the author, 124—His last visit to it, 361—An inn established there, *ib.*
- Beard-man*, a Bosjesman so called, account of him, 190—His death, 361—The author gets his skull, *ib.*
- Beetjuana*, unfortunate expedition of a party of English thither, 360
- Beetjuans*. Arrival of the author and his party in their country, 288—First interview with the king, 291—The king returns the visit, 292—Visit to the capital, 296—Audience of the king, *ib.*—Presents made to him, 297—The capital described, 298—Construction of the houses, 299—Unsuspecting behaviour of the Beetjuans, 290, 299, 307—The high-priest, 300, 314—Population, 301—Names of persons, 302—Carvings on the sand stone in the mountains, *ib.*—Entertainment given to the king, 304—Plurality of wives, 306—Market opened with the people, 308—The women, 310—The king's wives, 311—The king's presents to the visitors, 312—Love of snuff and tobacco, 295, 313, 318—Cleanliness, 314—Hard work done by the women, 315—Traffic in slaves, 316—Prophetic dice, 317—Mode of expressing astonishment, *ib.*—Their dances, 318—Reasons of the travellers for quitting the country, *ib.*—Their departure, 321—Corporeal structure of the Beetjuans, 323—General characteristics, *ib.*—The different tribes, 324—Their food, 326—Cloathing and ornaments, 327—Works of art, 328—Their institutions, 329—The kingly office, *ib.*—The princes, 330—Their wars, *ib.*—Their weapons, *ib.*—Their festivals of victory, *ib.*—Consecration of their cattle, 331—Their belief in charms and amulets, 332—Ideas with respect to the Deity, *ib.*—Superstition concerning a serpent, 322
- Beetjuan youths*, two, join the travellers on their return, 336
- Berg-valley*, the district of, very fertile, 100
- Bokkeveld, Warm*, one of the most fertile parts of the colony, 161
- Bones*, eaten by the diseased oxen, 349
- Bonteberg*, a great lurking place for the Bosjesmans, 178

## INDEX.

- Bosjesmans*, four skeletons of in a field, 21—Those of the Sea-cow river tolerably peaceable, 39—Visit of some to General Janssens, on the Orange river, 42—Their stature and colour, *ib.*—Their physiognomy, 43—Modes of snaring animals, *ib.*—Live much on the banks of rivers, *ib.*—Their modes of catching fish, 44—Objects on which they feed, *ib.*—Extremities to which they are sometimes reduced for food, 45—Their great propensity to robbery and plunder, *ib.*—They have no settled residence, 46—Their voracity, *ib.* and 219—Indolence which follows it, *ib.*—Make themselves nests in the bushes, *ib.*—Hence their name derived, 47—Called by some travellers Wood Hottentots, *ib.*—No household utensils, *ib.*—Their mode of drinking, 48—The matrimonial tie among them, *ib.*—No social union, 49—No individual names, *ib.*—Compared with the ancient Æthiopian tribes, 47, note, 49, note—Their passion for destruction, 50—Animosity of the colonists against them, *ib.*—The more peaceable to be distinguished by their dress, 53—Names given to some of them by the colonists, *ib.*—Their ornaments, 54—Their exertions to get a river-horse that had been shot, *ib.*—And to save a colonist from being drowned, 55—One taken into the service of General Janssens, 59—Depredations committed by them, 169—More depredations, 171—Complaints made against them by some Caffres, 175—More complaints, 177—Lurk very much about the Bonteberg, 178—Other complaints, 188—Conspiracy of some to murder their master, 189—Several taken prisoners, 190—Request to the Governor to send troops against them, 191—Suggestions of the author for civilizing them, *ib.*—Inhospitable nature of their country, 193—Animals that inhabit it, *ib.*—Great scarcity of water, *ib.*—Corporeal structure of these people, *ib.*—Acuteness of some senses and dulness of others, 194—Their societies, *ib.*—Nearest to brutes of any class of men, *ib.*—Their perseverance, 195—Their address in making signals, 196—Instances of their extraordinary acuteness of sight, *ib.*—Their weapons, *ib.*—Poison used by them for their arrows, *ib.*—Their manner of using it, 197—Mode of ascertaining the most poisonous serpents, 198—Dexterity in catching serpents, *ib.*—The quivers for their arrows, *ib.*—Manner of lurking after game, 199—A party seen in the Karree mountains, 210—
- One at the natron lake, 217—Remarks upon him, *ib.*—Intoxicated with smoking, 218—He steals away, *ib.*—Five more met by the travellers, *ib.*—Two more, 224—Ape-like appearance and manners of these people, *ib.*—A family met beyond the Orange river, 229—Ugliness of the children, 230—Their forwardness, *ib.*—A party falsely accused of setting fire to a house, 358—A Hottentot servant killed by them, *ib.*
- Botma*, a missionary, his zeal in the cause, 184—Sacrifices made by him to support it, 187
- Bread*, scarcity of it in the colony, 120
- Breedt*, signification of the word, 82, note
- Buffalo*, a man nearly trodden to death by one, 215, note—Other instances of a similar kind, 255—A buffalo shot, 276—Peculiarity in the rib-bones of this animal, *ib.*
- Buffalo's thorn*, a shrub so called, 223
- Bulbs*, a sort much eaten by the Bosjesmans, 45—The travellers made ill by eating some bulbs, 337.
- ### C.
- Caffres*, a party of, come to beg of the travellers, 175—Another party, 225—Their emigration from their own country, and subsequent history, *ib.*
- Camphor tree*, several in one particular spot, 104
- Carp*, abundance caught, 181
- Caterpillars*, a remarkable train of, 346
- Cattle places*, many farmers have them on the coast, 119
- Church*, a very handsome new-built one, at Stellenbosch, 97
- Climate*, beyond the Orange river, remarks on it, 238
- Cold*, sufferings of the travellers from it, 334, 342
- Colonists*, not very blameable for their animosity to the Bosjesmans, 50—Comfortable situations of those about the Berg river, 99—Their modes of living, 355—Their devotions, 356
- Colony* attacked by the English, 362—Capitulates, 363
- Compass-mountain*, height of, 2
- Corans*, the oldest original inhabitants north of the Orange river, 252—A totally distinct race from the Bosjesmans, 253—An enervated people, *ib.*—Their cloathing, *ib.*—Celebrated for training oxen, *ib.*—No regular habitations, 254—Form of government, *ib.*—

## INDEX.

Nicknames common among them, 255—Instances of several wounded by buffaloes, *ib.*—The Coran women, 256—Their extraordinary conformation, *ib.*—Their dances, 337—Their music, 338  
*Costumes*, great variety among the travellers, 263  
*Cozan*, Dr. unfortunate expedition of him and others to Beetzana, 360  
*Cynanchum obtusifolium*, or monkey's cord, vast length of its runners, 131  
*Cyprinus*, abundance of, caught, 181.

### D.

*Danster*, a Caffre, account of him and his party, 225  
*David and Juntje*, two Hottentots, murdered by the Bosjesmans, 266  
*De Beer*, the colonist, his singular character, 69—Names of his children, 70  
*De Clerk*, a colonist, his productive farm, 32—Tyranny exercised by his mother, 33  
*Desserts*, the excellent ones in the colony, 84  
*Devil's bush*, botanical visit of the author to it, 130  
*Devotion*, much time spent in it by the colonists, 356  
*Dishes*, several African ones described, 83  
*Dogs*, the breed among the African colonists described, 13—The Bosjesman dogs, 272—They never bark, 273  
*Dyke*, curious account of one made in the Berg river, 97.

### E.

*Education*, an institution for the purpose of, 97  
*Eland*, the largest species of antelope, described, 23  
*Elephant*, a colonist killed by one, 213  
*Elsenberg*, a farm celebrated for its fertility, 100  
*Enchanted spring*, and Enchanted mountain, 20  
*Epidemic disease*, a terrible one among the troops at the Cape, 145  
*Everlasting flowers*, much prized in the colony, 121.

### F.

*Farm*, Meyburgh's excellent one, much visited by strangers, 110  
*Fashion*, women in the colony dressed in the height of it, 123  
*Feathers*, the ostrich's much valued in the colony, 27

*Fern*, an extraordinary large species in the Island of St. Helena, 367  
*Ferry*, one over the Breede river, 128  
*Festival*, a wedding one celebrated by the Hottentots, 231  
*Fiefs*, the nature of them in the colony, 93  
*Field-Cornet Marits*, accused of misconduct, 172—Honourably acquitted, 174  
*Fig trees*, extraordinary size of them, 161  
*Fires*, two alarming ones at Stellenbosch, 102—Fires in the kraals, not uncommon, 168  
*Fish*, a prodigious draught of in the Riet river, 181  
*Flamingo*, a Bosjesman servant, so called by General Janssens, 59  
*Frost*, a pretty severe one, 177—Astonishment of the Mozambique slaves at it, *ib.*

### G.

*Geitjes*, a species of lizard, reputed poisonous, 167  
*Gemsbock*, a very daring kind of antelope, 23—Defends itself with its horns against dogs and wild beasts, *ib.*  
*Gerboas*, difficulty of catching them, 340  
*Giraffes*, two seen by the travellers, 277—Extraordinary manner in which this animal moves, *ib.*—One shot, 279—Excellent food, 281—Another killed, 282—But carried away by the Bosjesmans, *ib.*—Four more seen, 283—And afterwards ten more, *ib.*—Chased, but none killed, 284  
*Gnu*, a species of antelope described, 40—One sent a present to the Empress Josephine of France, *ib.*—Called by the Africans *het wilde beest*, *ib.*  
*Goedhart*, (good heart,) a Bosjesman so called, 151—Bad character given of him by his comrades, 189—The author and others go in search of him, 206  
*Gorrah*, the 't gorrah, a Hottentot musical instrument, 232  
*Great river*, called by Colonel Gordon the Orange river, 40—Arrival of the travellers at the Great river's gate, 220  
*Green-hill*, a beautiful hill so called, 93.

### H.

*Harpuisbosjes*, or rosin tree, description of it, 176  
*Heroism*, a characteristic of the colonist women, 34  
*Hex-valley*, the, described, 81  
*Hommes des forets*, the Bosjesmans so called by some French writers, 47

## INDEX.

*Horses*, those of the colonists well trained for hunting, 211  
*Hottentots*, their vengeance to dead bodies, 21  
 —Deplorable fate of two murdered by Bosjesmans, 265, 266  
*Hottentot-figs*, a fruit so called, 45  
*Hottentots' Holland kloof*, 104—Fine view from this mountain, 105  
*Hunting parties*, interesting ones in the journey to Beetjuana, 211—Address of the horses in them, *ib.*  
*Hurricane*, a violent one in the colony, 361  
*Hussar*, the author taken by an old one for one of Prince Lichtenstein's family, 76  
*Hyena*, the spotted, described, 15.

### I.

*Ill-humour* of a colonist and his wife, 127—Curious mode of giving vent to it, 138  
*Indolence*, extreme of the Hottentot converts, 186  
*Inns*, nature of them in the colony, 103—A place fixed on for establishing one in the Karroo, 167—One established at Bavianskloof, 361  
*Invalid soldiers*, their comfortless situation in Africa, 77  
*Itch*, a disorder resembling it, among the oxen, 341

### J.

*James Town*, St. Helena, its situation and strength, 365  
*Janssens*, General, extract from his Journal, 37—Visits the Bosjesmans on the Sea-cow river, *ib.*—Death of his son, 348  
*Jantje and David*, two Hottentots, murdered by Bosjesmans, 268  
*John Bloom's fountain*, bad character of Bloom, 271  
*Jokes* played upon a colonist by the travellers, 114—Practised among each other, 216  
*Josephine*, Empress, a gnu presented to her, 40.

### K.

*Kalebassbreedi*, an African dish, described, 82  
*Kambroo*, a bulb so called, 46  
*Karree mountains*, first view of them, 206—Described, 208—Large flock of ostriches and quaggas there, 209  
*Kerri*, an African dish, described, 83  
*Kicherer*, the missionary, his institution at the Sack river, 183—Ill success of it, *ib.*—His return to Europe, 184—Interesting particulars respecting the institution, 185—

Wretched state of some habitations connected with it, 345  
*Kok*, Cornelius, father to the missionary, probably known to Le Vaillant, 252  
*Kok*, Solomon, the missionary, first meeting of the travellers with him, 235—Alarms excited among some of the party by his followers, *ib.*—Engaged to join the party, 236—Enquiry into his conduct by the government, 360—His honourable acquittal, *ib.*—His death, *ib.*  
*Komberg*, height of this mountain, 2  
*Kraals*, the dung in some on fire, 168  
*Krieger*, a colonist banished among the Corans, 201—He joins the travelling party, *ib.*—Description of him, *ib.*—His brother's grave, 212—Manner in which the latter lost his life, 213  
*Kweek valley*, fertility of De Beer's farm there, 67—Medical plants raised by him for the apothecaries, 68—Quantity of fruits dried there in one year, *ib.*—Character of De Beer, 69.

### L.

*Laboratory*, one erected at Zwellendam, 210—Unfortunately blown up, 147  
*Lattignant*, a colonist, caught in a snare for hyenas, 16  
*Leeuwenkuil*, a missionary village; described, 258  
*Leopard*, combat between one and the dogs, 351—Superior beauty of these animals when running wild, 352  
*Lions*, the proper mode of attacking them, 29—Two anecdotes of lion-hunting, 30—Three different sorts of lions in the colony, 31—A large number assembled together, 74—Extraordinary manner in which one was shot by a colonist, 179  
*Little-ride*, the term how used by the colonists, 79  
*Lizards*, a poisonous species called geitjes, 167  
*Locusts*, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44—Manner in which they are caught, *ib.*—A vast swarm of them, 250—Observations upon these animals, 251—Another swarm, 339

### M.

*Marits*, the field-cornet, accused of misconduct, 172  
*Merwe*, Van der, the mixture of children in his family, 82  
*Mesembryanthemum*, a species of this plant eaten by the Bosjesmaus, 45

## INDEX.

*Meyburgh*, his excellent farm on the Eerste river, 110—All sorts of trades carried on there, *ib.*—His journeys to the Orange river, 111—Nice works performed by his daughters, 112

*Missionary*, curious account of one at Goudinle, 86

*Missionary Institution*, Kicherer's, at the Sack river, 183—The church, 185—Extreme indolence of the pupils, 186—Order of the devotions there, 187—Clothing of the pupils, *ib.*—Their occupations, *ib.*

*Monkey's cord*, extreme length of the runners, 131—Sticks made from the stem of this plant, *ib.*

*Moon*, an eclipse of, 338

*Morkel*, Captain, his farm, 113—His hospitality, 114—Jokes played upon him, *ib.*

*Mostertshoek*, the pass of, described, 160

*Mozambique slaves*, their astonishment at seeing ice, 177

*Murder of a colonist by a Malay slave*, 156

*Musical instrument*, a Hottentot one described, 232—Notes played upon it, 233.

### N.

*Natron*, a remarkable circumstance attending it, 74—A thick crust of natron about the Riet river, 178—A natron lake, 216—Another, 217—Another, 218

*Nieuweveld mountains* described, 35

*Noxious animals*, credulity of the colonists upon this subject, 167.

### O.

*Oaks*, plantations of in the Warm Bokkeveld, 162

*Orange river*, the name given by Colonel Gordon to the Great river, 40—Subject to terrible inundations, *ib.*—Lost in the sands on the western coast of Africa, 41—Journeys of the colonist Meyburgh along its course, 111—Arrival of the author and his party upon its banks, 221—Description of the river, *ib.*—Arduous passage of it, 223—Bands of robbers settled on its banks, 226, 227—Extraordinary curve in the river, 229—More remarks on this curve, 231—Danger of the travellers in recrossing the river, 340

*Ostriches*, their habits particularly described, 26—Their nests, *ib.*—Their eggs a favourite food with the Hottentots, *ib.*—Their feathers, 27—A large flock seen in the Karree mountains, 209

*Otter*, a fish-otter, from the Hex river, given to the author, 82

*Oxen*, often unable to work from the scanty supply of food, 119—Bones often eat by the diseased ones, 349.

### P.

*Paarl mountain*, the name whence derived, 98—Errors in some descriptions given of it, *ib.*

*Paarl*, village of, described, 97—A curious work to restrain the waters of the river, *ib.*

*Palmiet reeds*, *Acorus palmita*, numbers growing in several of the rivers, 118

*Parents*, respect shewn them by their children, 34

*Partridge*, an English physician of that name, drowned, 118

*Partridges*, a vast profusion of, 283

*Pasties*, great variety at an African dinner, 34

*Phænomenon*, a curious one, with regard to some of the rivers, 156

*P'halla*, a species of antelope, described, 334

*Pintadoes*, vast numbers of them, 283—Their eggs excellent, *ib.*

*Pliny*, his account of the ancient African tribes, 49, note

*Plunderers*, a band of Christian ones on the Orange river, 227

*Poison*, wild beasts killed by baits of poisoned flesh, 17—Different sorts of poison used by the Bosjesmans for their arrows, 196

*Pomponius Melu*, his account of the ancient African tribes, 49, note

*Pools*, several in the Riet river, full of fish, 181

*Prehnite*, a very fine one found by the author, 180

*Protestantism*, the genuine spirit of, where to be found, 96.

### Q.

*Quagga*, a tame one, 162—One killed, extreme wildness of these animals, 204—A large flock seen in the Karree mountains, 209

*Quagga fountain*, scanty supply of water there, 182

*Quartz, green*, hills of this mineral, 218

*Quiver-plant*, a sort of aloe so called, and why, 198.

### R.

*Ravens*, a great number assembled about the camp, 212

*Red-broken-rock*, a curious one so called, near the Orange river, 234

*Red-ebony-tree*, hardness of the wood, 339

*Refugees*, French, a number settled on the

## INDEX.

- Berg river, 95**—The genuine spirit of Protestantism retained among them, 96
- Rensburg, a colonist, killed by a lion, 31**
- Riet river's gate, the pass of, 178**
- Ring mountains, definition of this appellation, 163**
- Rivers, a curious phenomenon relative to some in Africa, 156**
- River-horses, or Sea-cows, abundance in the Orange river, 42**—One shot by the followers of General Janssens, 54—Carried away by the stream, *ib.*—Efforts of the colonists and Bosjesmans to recover it, *ib.*
- Roodenzund kloof described, 92**
- Rosin tree, the, 176**
- Ryno's vale, a valley so called in the island of St. Helena, 367**
- S.
- Sack river's gate, pass of, 182**—Latitude of it ascertained, 203
- Saint Helena, island of, the author arrives there, 363**—Description of the island, 365—A tree planted by Captain Cook, *ib.*—Departure from the island, 368
- Salicornia, a saline plant, barilla extracted from it, 356**
- Salsola, another saline plant, 356**
- Sambal, an African dish, described, 84**
- Sambeh, the Caffre, two nephews of his met by the travellers, 225**—Both cross-eyed, 228
- Scriptures expounded to the colonists by the author, 357**
- Sea cows, or river horses, abundance in the Orange river, 42**—Modes of catching them among the hunters, *ib.*—Pits for snaring them made by the Bosjesmans, 43
- Sea-cow river, the country about not altered from its original state, 37**
- Serpents eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44**—Ideas of the Bosjesmans concerning the most poisonous, 198—Superstition of the Beetsjuans with regard to a serpent, 322
- Sheath-fish, the *Silurus anguillaris*, resembling them, 343**
- Shrub, a remarkable one, excellent for making hedges, 220**
- Sibihlong, curious caves of, 275**
- Silurus anguillaris, numbers of this fish caught, 343**
- Sigeb, a Coran, with his followers, met by the travellers, 254**—Some account of him, 255—Called in the colony Slapparm, *ib.*—He rejoins the party, 335—His apprehended fate, 341
- Signals established about the country, 139**
- Skeletons, four of Bosjesmans, lying out in the field, 21**
- Slave, a Malay one, murders his master, 156**
- Small-pox, reported by the Caffres to prevail in the country, 228**—The news confirmed by some missionaries, 235—Prevalent among the Bastard Hottentots, 248—Ideas concerning the native country of this disease, *ib.*—Broke out among the Hottentots, 344
- Snares, those made for catching hyenas, 16**—A colonist severely hurt by one, *ib.*
- Snow mountains, the, described, 2**
- Soda, or barilla, extracted by the author from saline plants, 356**
- Springs, the African ones often dried up, 18**
- Spring guns used for shooting wild beasts, 17**
- Stellenbosch, village, or town of, 102**—Twice much damaged by fire, *ib.*—Bad situation of the tradespeople there, *ib.*
- Stell Van der, various useful objects introduced by him into the colony, 104**
- Sticks, pretty ones made of the plant called monkey's cord, 131**
- Strawberry tree, or arbutus, 104**
- Straw hats, very neat ones made by the African women, 112**
- Surgeon major, the author appointed to this office in the Hottentot battalion, 145**
- Sus *Æthiopicus*, or wild boar, one seen, 32.**
- T.
- Tame Bosjesmans, a conspiracy of some to murder their master, 189**
- Tangua, a river, dangerous from its overflowings, 168**
- Termes fatale, or white ants, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44**
- Time, a Hottentot's curious mode of defining it, 71**
- Tjaurd, Van der Walt, his dexterity in shooting a lion, 30**
- Toit Du, a numerous family in the colony, 83**
- Towerberg, many mountains in the colony so called, 20, note**
- Towerfontein, the name explained, 20**
- Trading class, their uncomfortable situation in the towns, 102**
- Trial of Marits, the field-cornet, for misconduct, 173**—Acquittal, 174
- Trithorn, a shrub so called, 210**
- Tromp, a missionary, troubles excited by him, 96**
- Tyger mountain, fine view from it, 153**
- Tyranny practised by a colonist woman over her son, 33**

## INDEX.

### V.

- Vaccine Inoculation* introduced into the colony, 353  
*Valley*, a curious rugged one, among the Black mountains, 73  
*Vegetation*, rapidity of it in Africa, 137  
*View*, very fine one from Hottentots' Holland kloof, 105—Another from the Tyger mountains, 153—Another above the Karroo, 170—Another on the Orange river, 237  
*Vogel valley*, or Bird valley, a dried lake, described, 93  
*Vultures*, the travellers followed by a number, 212

### W.

- Wandering men*, a class of persons in the colony so called, 66  
*Warm baths*, those in the Black mountain, 140—First stone of a new bath house laid, 361  
*Warm Bokkevelds*, a very fertile district, 161  
*Water*, scanty supply at the Quagga fountain, 182—Great want of it, 214

- Water-sport*, three thousand sheep destroyed by one, 33  
*Wax tree*, or *Myrica cordifolia*, 142—Manner of collecting the wax, 143—Quality of the candles made from it, *ib.*  
*Weddings*, the manner in which they are celebrated, 79—Celebration of the eve of one, 163—A Hottentot one, 231  
*Wilde beest*, signification of the term, 40  
*Wild boar*, one seen by the travellers, 32  
*Wild goose*, the large African one, 344—Its curious nest, *ib.*  
*Wolf's bane*, a poison used for destroying wild beasts, 17  
*Wolvehuis*, a snare for catching hyenas, 16  
*Women*, manners of those in the colony, 123  
*Wood Hottentots*, a name given by some travellers to the Bosjesmans, 47  
*Wyk Van*, a colonist, the daring manner in which he killed a lion, 176.

### Z.

- Ziekenhuis*, a small cave, why so called, 139.

THE END.

















B'D OCT 15 1915

